

FOOD AND THE  
PRINCIPLES OF DIETETICS

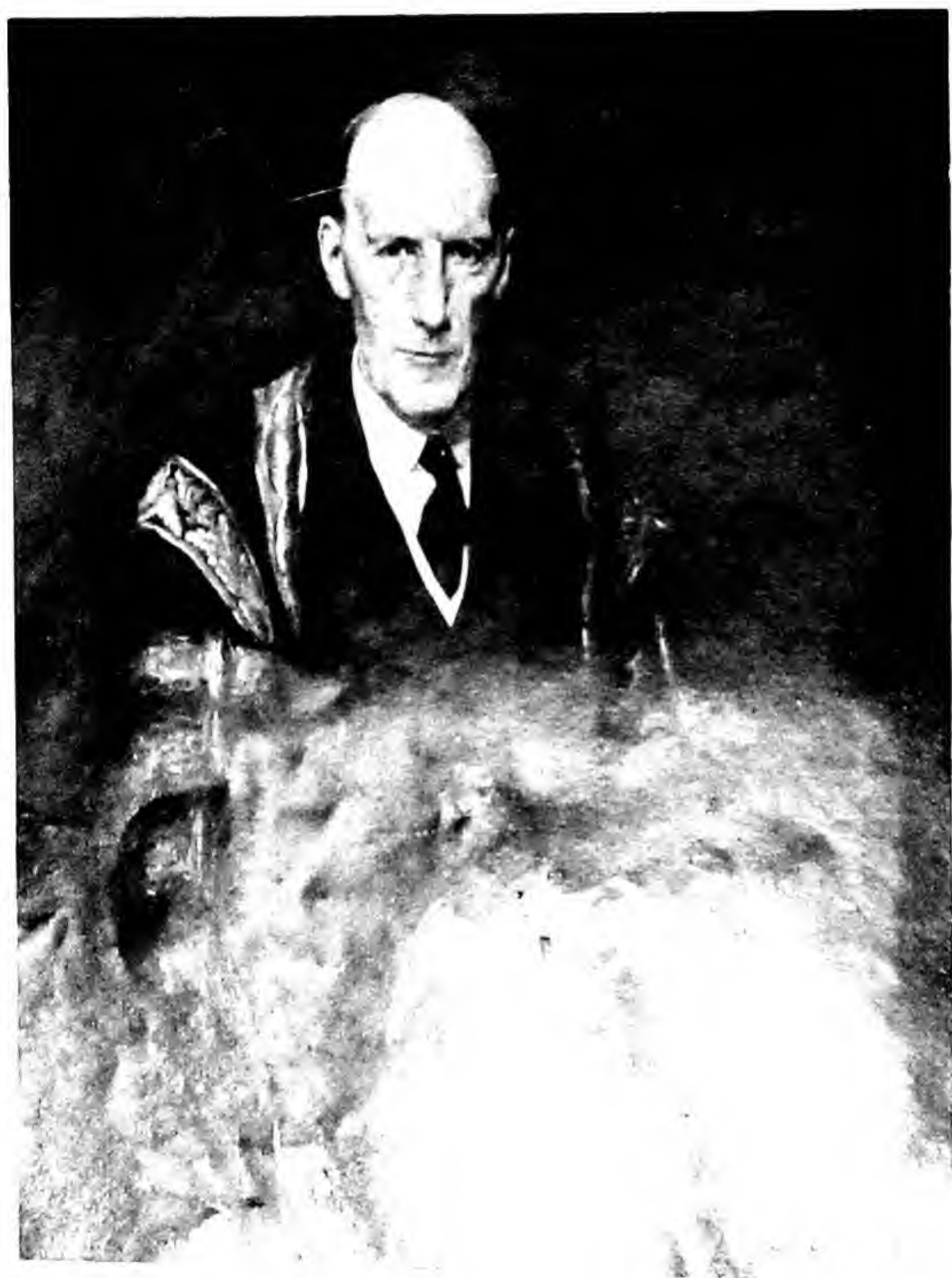


*Extract from "Greek Byways," by T. R. Glover*

The day will yet come, when the progress of research through long ages will reveal to sight the mysteries of nature that now are concealed. A single lifetime, though it were wholly devoted to the study of the sky, does not suffice for the investigation of problems of such complexity. It must take long successive ages to unfold all. The day will yet come when our descendants will be amazed that we remained ignorant of things that will to them seem so plain. Veniet tempus quo posterī nostri tam apertā nos nescisse mirentur.

SENECA. *Nat. Quaest.* VII, 25, 2.





# HUTCHISON'S FOOD AND THE PRINCIPLES OF DIETETICS

REVISED BY

V. H. MOTTRAM, M.A. (Cant.)

SOMETIME FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND LATE PROFESSOR  
OF PHYSIOLOGY AT KING'S COLLEGE OF HOUSEHOLD AND SOCIAL SCIENCE  
(NOW QUEEN ELIZABETH COLLEGE), UNIVERSITY OF LONDON

AND

GEORGE GRAHAM, M.A., M.D. (Cant.), F.R.C.P. (Lond.)

CONSULTING PHYSICIAN TO ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S HOSPITAL

ELEVENTH EDITION



20057



LONDON

EDWARD ARNOLD (PUBLISHERS) LTD.

<i>First published</i>	.	.	.	1900
<i>Reprinted (3 times)</i>	.	.	.	1901
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1902
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1904
<i>Second Edition</i>	.	.	.	1905
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1906
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1909
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1910
<i>Third Edition</i>	.	.	.	1911
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1913
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1914
<i>Fourth Edition</i>	.	.	.	1916
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1918
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1919
<i>Fifth Edition</i>	.	.	.	1922
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1923
<i>Sixth Edition</i>	.	.	.	1926
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1928
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1931
<i>Seventh Edition</i>	.	.	.	1933
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1934
<i>Eighth Edition</i>	.	.	.	1936
<i>Ninth Edition</i>	.	.	.	1940
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1941
<i>Reprinted (with corrections)</i>	.	.	.	1943
<i>Reprinted (with corrections)</i>	.	.	.	1944
<i>Reprinted</i>	.	.	.	1945
<i>Tenth Edition</i>	.	.	.	1948
<i>Eleventh Edition</i>	.	.	.	1956

## CONTENTS

CHAP.		PAGE
	THE HISTORY OF DIETETICS . . . . .	ix

### PART ONE. DIET IN NORMAL LIFE

I.	INTRODUCTORY, DEFINITIONS, DIFFICULTIES, LIMITS OF ERROR AND ACTION IN DIETETICS . . . . .	1
II.	THE FUNCTIONS OF FOOD. (I) SUPPLY OF ENERGY . . . . .	15
III.	THE FUNCTIONS OF FOOD ( <i>continued</i> ). (II) SUPPLY OF BODY-BUILDING MATERIAL . . . . .	60
IV.	THE FUNCTIONS OF FOOD ( <i>continued</i> ). (III) THE SUPPLY OF ELEMENTS OTHER THAN CARBON, HYDROGEN, OXYGEN AND NITROGEN . . . . .	90
V.	THE FUNCTIONS OF FOOD ( <i>continued</i> ). (IV) THE SUPPLY OF VITAMINS . . . . .	116
VI.	PRACTICAL ASPECTS OF KNOWLEDGE OF CALORIES, PROTEINS, MINERAL ELEMENTS AND VITAMINS . . . . .	160
VII.	<u>THE PROCESSING AND STORAGE OF FOODS</u> <del>✱</del> . . . . .	<u>166</u>
<del>✱</del> VIII.	THE COOKING OF FOODS . . . . .	177
✓ IX.	HYGIENE OF FOOD . . . . .	188
✓ X.	THE DIGESTION, ABSORPTION AND METABOLISM OF <u>FOODS IN HEALTH</u> . . . . .	195
✓ XI.	NORMAL DIETETICS . . . . .	223

### PART TWO. THE NATURE OF FOODS

XII.	FOODS TAKEN MAINLY FOR ENERGY PURPOSES . . . . .	248
XIII.	FOODS TAKEN CHIEFLY FOR PROTEIN . . . . .	315
XIV.	FOODS TAKEN CHIEFLY FOR PROTEIN ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	323

CHAP.	PAGE
XV. FOODS TAKEN FOR MINERAL ELEMENTS AND FOR VITAMINS A AND C (ASCORBIC ACID) . . . . .	378
XVI. FOODS TAKEN MAINLY FOR FLAVOUR. CONDIMENTS . . . . .	393
XVII. <u>BEVERAGES</u> . . . . .	399
XVIII. PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN INFANCY . . . . .	456
XIX. PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN INFANCY ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	472
XX. PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN INFANCY ( <i>continued</i> ). TRANSI- TIONAL FEEDING. SOME PROPRIETARY FOODS . . . . .	489
XXI. THE PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN DISEASE . . . . .	498
XXII. THE PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN DISEASE ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	522
XXIII. SOME DIETETIC "CURES" AND "SYSTEMS" . . . . .	592
XXIV. ARTIFICIAL FEEDING AND ARTIFICIAL AND PREDIGESTED FOODS . . . . .	605
INDEX . . . . .	615

## PREFACE TO THE ELEVENTH EDITION

Fifty-six years ago the first edition of Robert Hutchison's *Food and the Principles of Dietetics* appeared, when the present editors were about to enter a university. From that day to this it has held a pre-eminent position among books dealing with the nature of food and the application of the science of nutrition to the feeding of the sound, the sick and the convalescent. For long it was the only serious work devoted to this study and practice, and to-day, despite competition from the United States and from Scotland, two countries in which they take the science of nutrition seriously, it still holds its own.

One cannot esteem too highly the foresight of the then young assistant physician to the London Hospital and to the Great Ormond Street Hospital for Sick Children in thus, so early, gauging the importance of nutrition in the health of the people, nor give too great credit to the authorities of the London Hospital for instituting a course of lectures on dietetics by Dr. Hutchison to medical students, to whom he dedicated the first edition.

True, there was a hereditary interest in nutrition at work in him. His father had published investigations into the dietaries of Scottish and English agricultural labourers in 1868 and 1871.<sup>1</sup> This may account for the sociological and economic aspects of his book. They are evident throughout it, but in the application of the science of nutrition to the prevention and cure of disease Sir Robert was a pioneer.

Perhaps he did not foresee the astonishing development of the continent which he was one of the earliest to explore, though he may reasonably have quoted the passage from Seneca which we have placed on the flyleaf: "The day will yet come when our descendants will be amazed that we remained ignorant of things that will seem to them so plain."

And as he dedicated his first edition to his pupils, may we, in many ways his pupils, respectfully and affectionately dedicate this edition (our last) to him?

\*

\*

\*

The inexorable march of scientific knowledge and the need for

<sup>1</sup> In the First Edition there is a plaint that these publications have not received the attention they deserve. In this we concur. They are worth reading after eighty-five years. When we consulted the relevant copies of the *Transactions of the Highland and Agricultural Society of Scotland* in the Library of the University of Edinburgh, the pages of Robert Hutchison's contributions were still uncut.

compression have compelled considerable rewriting in the earlier part of this book. New methods of measuring basal and total metabolism and the mass of active tissues of the body throw new light on Calorie needs, and some of our dogmas about Calories are in the melting pot. The section on proteins has been thoroughly revised and the pages on the mineral elements needful in diet, particularly those on iron, iodine, potassium magnesium and fluorine, largely rewritten. The hard and fast recommendations for vitamin intakes are treated sceptically and this may do something to counteract the 'vitamin racket'. Changes, too, will be found in the chapters on the processing of foods, on the hygiene of food and on the cost of an acceptable and nutritionally satisfactory diet. Dr. Harris, in his section, gives an account of modern methods of weaning babies from a wholly milk diet to one containing solid food.

In the clinical section the pages on sprue and fatty diarrhoeas have been entirely rewritten and those on diseases of the liver, diabetes mellitus and the new insulins, the treatment of obesity, gastric ulcer, cardiac oedema and the low sodium and potassium diets revised and largely emended. New sections are devoted to allergy and the hypoglycaemia associated with the 'dumping syndrome' after partial gastrectomy or due to innocent or malignant tumours of the  $\beta$  cells of the islet tissue of the pancreas; and to the treatment of surgical shock and of renal function after incompatible blood transfusion.

V. H. M.

G. G.

1955.

## INTRODUCTION

### THE HISTORY OF DIETETICS<sup>1</sup>

Dietetics is really a very young branch of science; it was not indeed until the middle of the last century that it could fairly be described as a science at all. This, it need hardly be said, was inevitable, for diet could not be studied satisfactorily until organic chemistry and the physiology of nutrition had made considerable advances. Even down to the beginning of last century the very word "diet" was not always used in its modern acceptation, but still generally included a consideration of all of what used to be termed the "non-naturals" (air, aliment, exercise and rest, the passions and affections of the mind, wakefulness and sleep, repletion and evacuation). Thus Willich, writing as late as the year 1800, defined dietetics as "a systematic view of all objects relative to health in general and to food and drink in particular"; it embodied, in short, everything that was known as to physical and mental hygiene and the promotion of individual health. This use of the term must always be borne in mind when studying the earlier history of the subject.

It was natural, of course, that some attention should have been given to the feeding of the sick so soon as anything like a systematic study of disease had begun, and we find indications of this in the Scriptures and, as far as the Egyptians were concerned, in the writings of Herodotus, while Pythagoras, the founder of vegetarianism, flourished as long ago as the sixth century B.C. ¶ It was with the dawn of Greek medicine, however, that the first faint beginnings of dietetics, as we now understand the term, may be discerned; but in no sense could Greek dietetics be described as scientific. It was not based even upon the result of observation, but was distorted by a false pathology and by unintelligible and semi-metaphysical hypotheses. We can see this if we glance at the writings of Hippocrates, Celsus, and Galen—the three great Masters of Ancient Medicine. Hippocrates (460–377 B.C.), in his *Treatise on Ancient Medicine*, says that men first learned from experience the science of dietetics; they were compelled to ascertain the properties of vegetables products as articles of food. Then they learned that the food which is suitable in health is unsuitable in sickness, and thus they

<sup>1</sup> An article first published by Sir Robert Hutchison in *The Practitioner*, January, 1934, and reproduced here by permission of the Editor of that Journal.

applied themselves to the discovery of the proper rules of diet in disease; and it was the accumulation of the facts bearing on this subject which was the origin of the art of medicine. This may be true enough; but on turning to his practical dietetics as expounded in his books *On Regimen in Acute Diseases* and *On Nutriment* we find how empirical he was and how far from any scientific conception of the subject. He insisted that the diet should be full in winter and spare in summer. He disapproved of the habit of eating a full dinner, and condemned the use of new bread. The nutritious properties of pulse in general were insisted upon. He called the flesh of fowls one of the lightest kinds of food and stated that eggs are nutritious and strengthening, but flatulent. He remarked that the flesh of wild animals is more digestible than that of domesticated. He objected to goat's flesh as having all the bad qualities of beef, which he called a strong, astringent, and indigestible article of diet. Milk, he said, sometimes causes the formation of stones in the bladder. Cheese he considered flatulent and indigestible. Fishes were light food; sea fish lighter and better for delicate persons than fresh-water fish. Honey, when eaten with other food, was nutritious, but injurious when taken alone. He discussed also in great detail the use of barley gruel in acute diseases.

Celsus (53 B.C.-A.D. 7), who flourished about the time of Augustus and Tiberius, in the preface to his great work *De Re Medica* (in eight books),<sup>1</sup> states that in dietetics there are two schools—the Rationalists, who proceed on theory and principle, and the Empirics, who rely upon experience. Celsus belonged to the former. In his first book generalities are considered, in the second he discusses the nature of foods and divides them according to their "materia" into (1) the strongest, (2) the medium, (3) the weakest; the strongest have most nutriment. He was rather arbitrary in placing foods in each class; for example, he thought that large animals were more nourishing than small, and birds which use their feet "stronger" than those that fly, but in the main his allocation is sound enough. The more powerful the "materia" the less easily was it digested, but, being digested, the more it nourished. Further, some foods were of "good juice" and some of bad; some were palatable, some acrid, some made the more crass Pituita<sup>2</sup> in us, some the thinner kind; some were flatulent, others not; some heated, others chilled; some turned sour; some were diuretic, others had the contrary effect, and so on. He gave examples of foods of each quality. In the third book he describes the dietary of diseases; in fevers, for instance, the diet should be strong, simple, dry, frigid, e.g. toasted bread, roast meat, dry wines. In apoplexy game was the best food and

<sup>1</sup> RIDDELL, W. R. (1931), "The Dietetics of Celsus," *Med. Journ. and Record*, 134, 247.

<sup>2</sup> Phlegm or mucus.

warm water the best drink. In ulcerated stomach he recommended light and viscous foods—none that is acid. He did not give any "scientific" reasons for his diet in disease or any principles, but his practice is not so much amiss.

Galen (A.D. 130–200) wrote three books on the *Faculties or Powers of Aliments*. In Book I he says that many ancient writers had treated of the power of aliment but differed so greatly amongst themselves that a new work was required "founded on reason and experience." He gives an account of numerous foods—e.g. wheat and the articles prepared from it; barley; oats and other cereals; beans and vetches, etc. In the second book, which has 71 chapters, he deals with fruits and vegetables. In the third book he discusses animal foods. He also wrote a work on "the good or bad juices of Food," a kind of commentary on every variety of aliment. He recommended the use of human milk in phthisis and had a good deal to say about wines. On the whole, the writings of Galen are decidedly more modern than those of his predecessors.

The Arabian physicians added little to the knowledge of dietetics which they took over implicitly from the Greeks. They were more concerned with the prescription of drugs, though Rhazes (850–923), the "Galen of the Arabs," provided the excellent maxim: "When you can heal by diet prescribe no other remedy."

To the Arabians' succeeded the mediæval school, and we can get some idea of mediæval dietetics from the *Isagoge* of Joannitius (809–873), which was a textbook of medicine throughout the Middle Ages.<sup>1</sup> Speaking of foods he says: "Foods are of two kinds. Good food is that which brings about a good humour, and bad food is that which brings about an evil humour. And that which produces a good humour is that which generates good blood: namely, that which is in the mean state as regards quality and working. Such is clean, fresh, fermented bread, and the flesh of lamb or kid. Bad food brings about the contrary state, and such is old and bran bread, or the flesh of old beeves or goats. Foods producing good or evil humours may also be heavy or light. Of the first kind are pork and beef, of the second chicken or fish. And of these the flesh of the middle sized and more active kinds is better than that of the fatter and scaly varieties. Certain kinds of vegetables produce evil humours; for instance, nasturtium, mustard and garlic beget reddish bile. Lentils, cabbage, and the meat of old goats or beeves produce black bile. Pork, lamb, purslain, and attriplex beget phlegm. Heavy foods produce phlegm and black bile, and either of these is evil." We can here see the distorting influence of the humoral doctrines in full operation.

Perhaps (the best known,) however, of mediæval writings is the

<sup>1</sup> CHOLMELEY, H. P. (1912), *John of Gaddesden*, Oxford, The Clarendon Press, 145.

*Regimen Sanitatis*, produced at the famous school of Salerno about the year 1100. It was a popular treatise on health in general, written in rhyme. We may quote two verses dealing with diet:<sup>1</sup>

Doctors should thus their patients food revise—  
What is it? When the meal? and what its size?  
How often? Where? lest, by some sad mistake,  
Ill-sorted things should meet and trouble make.

We hold that men on no account should vary  
Their daily diet until necessary:  
For, as Hippocrates doth truly show,  
Diseases sad from all such changes flow.  
A stated diet, as it is well known,  
Of physic is the strongest cornerstone—  
By means of which, if you can nought impart,  
Relief or cure, vain is your Healing Art.

The *Rosa Anglica*, written by John of Gaddesden (?1280–1361) about the year 1314, was intended for medical readers in the first instance, but was apparently largely borrowed from the *Regimen Sanitatis*. It gives a good idea of fourteenth-century medicine but shows little advance on the views of Hippocrates. Here is a sample of his dietetic teaching: "Some eat more of fruit than of other food, wherein, they do not well, for all fruits make watery useless blood, and prone to putrefaction— On the whole it is best to do without fruit altogether."

Andrew Boorde (1490?–1549) wrote his well-known book, *A Compendyous Regyment, or A Dyetary of Helth*, about 1542, a century after the close of the Dark Ages. It is a popular work and deals with the general management of health, but has many chapters on the different classes of foods, and others on the diet for different kinds of diseases. His statements about foods are often rather arbitrary and, of course, coloured by the prevailing humoral pathology of his day. Here are some extracts: "Bread having too much bran in it is not laudable." "Barley doth breed cold humours." "Butter is made of crayme and is moyste of operation." "Al maner of fysshe is cold of nature and doth ingender fleume." "Hare's flesh is dry and doth ingender melancholy humors." "Peason and beanes repletyth a man with Ventosyte." "Milk is not good for them the which have gurgulacyons in the bely."

About a century after Boorde's *Dyetary of Helth* two notable books on the subject were published in this country:<sup>2</sup> *Κλινική* or the *Diet*

<sup>1</sup> WALSH, J. J. (1920), *Medieval Medicine*, London, 53.

<sup>2</sup> Mention should also be made of a book by THOMAS MOFFET (?1540–1604) entitled *Health's Improvement: or Rules Comprizing and discovering the Nature, Method and Manner of Preparing all Sorts of Food Used in this Nation*, which must have been written towards the end of the sixteenth century although it was not published until 1655, fifty years after the author's death. A revised edition with an Introduction by Dr. Robert James and a biographical account of Dr.

*of the Diseased*, by Dr. James Hart of Northampton, appeared in 1633, and the other, *Via Recta ad Vitam longam*, by Dr. Tobias Venner (1577-1660) of Bath, was first published in 1620, the last edition appearing in 1660. The latter is perhaps the better known, though Hart's is really the more interesting and important, but both writers use the word diet to cover general rules of health. *Κλινική* is a handsome folio and is written in a delightful style recalling often that of Burton's *Anatomy of Melancholy* which had appeared a decade earlier. It contains short descriptions of the foods then in use and of their qualities, but is largely compiled from the writings of Galen, Dioscorides, and other classical authorities. This passage is characteristic:

"Marjoram is a sweet, pleasant and well-smelling herb, hot and dry in operation . . . It comforteth all the noble parts, especially the stomacke, and may with good success be used to further concoction, comfort the stomacke and discusse wind. It much comforteth the braine also and is good against all cold diseases of the braine and nervous parts."

There are some satirical touches as when, in speaking of potatoes (then recently introduced into England), the writer says: "That outlandish root brought with us from the West Indies, called commonly Potato, and by some Batato, is of the same nature and property as the Skirret root or at least goeth a little beyond it but this pre-eminence it hath that it is, according to the common proverb, 'Farre fetcht and deare bought and therefore good for Ladies.'" There is also a chapter, unique perhaps in the literature of the subject, entitled "Of strange and uncoth [sic] Diet, which some people have in ordinarie use; as of Dogges, Cats, Horses, Mules, Asses, Rats, Locusts, Frogges, Snailes and Man flesh."

The *Via Recta*, neither so elaborate nor so well written as *Κλινική*, had greater popularity. The first part deals with the "Nature and choice of Habitable places" and then there follows an interesting section on "Bread," in which the great brown bread controversy is already foreshadowed. In a chapter on the "Divers kinds of Drinks," the author speaks eloquently in praise of wine:

"Many and singular are the commodities of Wine: for it is of it selfe, the most pleasant liquor of all other, and was made from the beginning to exhilarate the heart of man. It is a great increaser of the vitall spirits, and a wonderfull restorer of all concoction, distribution, and nutrition, mightily strengtheneth the naturall heat, openeth obstructions, discusseth windnesse, taketh away sadnesse, and other hurts of melancholy, induceth boldnesse and pleasant behaviour, sharpeneth the wit, abundantly reviveth feeble spirits, excellently amendeth the coldnesse of old age, and

Moffet appeared in 1746. *Health's Improvement* is much on the same lines as the books of Hart and Tobias Venner and contains a general classification and description of foods and their properties as then understood.

correcteth the tetrick<sup>1</sup> qualities which that age is subject unto; and to speak all in a word, it maketh a man more coragious and lively both in mind and body."

He adds the comfortable advice that wine should be given "with a liberall hand to men in the later part of old age—from sixty yeeres upward." He discusses also "whether it would be expedient for health to be drunk with wine once or twice a month" and concludes not, but thought it good for those who are "wearied with great cares and labours" to drink sometimes "until they be merry and pleasant but not drunken." He next considers foods in detail. A few examples will show the nature of his teaching and how full it is of dogmatic statements and how entirely based, like that of his predecessors, upon the humoral doctrines:

"Bisket-bread is only profitable for the phlegmatick and them that have crude and moist stomacks, and that desire to grow lean because it is a great drier; and therefore let such as are cholerick and melancholick beware how they use it."

"Eels are very hurtful to those with gout, dropsy or stone."

"Lampreys increase melancholy and are hurtfull to those with weak sinews."

"Mullet breedeth grosse and excrementall humors."

"Beanes are cold and hot in the first degree."

"Chestnuts are hot in the first degree and dry in the second."

The chapter "Of the Manner and Customs of Diet" contains, however, much sound general advice, e.g.:

"The dining-room must not be 'bloomy' hot; for that may soone occasion faintness and swooning by weakning the naturall heat and extracting the spirits."

"To feed upon more than foure dishes even at a geniall meale, is somewhat immodest and excessive."

Three things, he thought, were necessary at meals, an easy mind, thorough chewing and "not to reside in the chair of intemperance."

After the *Via Recta* no important book on dietetics appeared in this country for another hundred years, when Dr. John Arbuthnot, the well-known physician of Queen Anne's reign, published his essay "Concerning the Nature of Aliments and the Choice of them" in 1732. It is a popular work, for he remarks in his preface, "I do not presume to instruct the Gentlemen of my own Profession," and it is written in the form of a number of dogmatic propositions, for example:

"Honey is the most elaborate Production of the Vegetable kind, being a most exquisite soap, resolvent of the Bile, Balsamick and Pectoral."

"Acrimony and tenacity are the two qualities in what we take inwardly most to be avoided."

<sup>1</sup> Bitter or morose.

"The constituent parts of animals are (1) earth, (2) a peculiar spirit analogous to that of plants, (3) water, (4) salts, (5) oil."

"The fruits of most vegetables are soaps; all soaps (which are a mixture of salt and oil) are attenuating and deobstruent, resolving viscid substances."

In a later edition he said that part of his treatise had been censured as obscure and unpractical—as well it might be—and indeed the whole book shows little advance upon Andrew Boorde, or, for the matter of that, upon Hippocrates. The contributions of the eighteenth century to the science of dietetics were, indeed, negligible, notwithstanding the fact that it was in this century that the curative effect of fruit and green vegetables in scurvy was first clearly recognized; but that came about through the practical observations of the great voyagers such as Captain Cook, and not through the labours of scientists. Grateful mention must be made, however, of the work of William Stark (1740–70), who was one of the first experimental dietitians in this country, although his well-meant experiments conducted upon himself tended probably to shorten his life (he died at the age of 29) rather than to add to knowledge.

How little dietetics had even been influenced by the advance of chemistry, especially in France, throughout the century, is shown by Willich's *Lectures on Diet and Regimen* (1800), for he describes fat as "the cellular substance of animal jelly" and salt as "an excellent solvent of fat." Nor had he entirely shaken off the humoral doctrines, for he describes apples as "serviceable in diseases of the breast; to remove spasmodic contractions, to neutralize acrimony and to attenuate viscid phlegm," and says of veal that it "contains many nourishing and earthly particles, and is the most proper food for persons who have a disposition to hæmorrhage." On account of the great proportion of "viscosity" it contains, persons disposed to "phlegm" and complaints of the abdomen ought to refrain from it. He considered that it would be beneficial to Society if the making of butter was prohibited. Dripping was equally bad and should only be used "for greasing cart wheels." On the other hand he anticipated modern teaching in recommending two-thirds of vegetable to one-third of animal food as the best proportion in the diet.

By the time of the first publication of Forsyth's *Dictionary of Diet* (2nd edition 1834) the influence of chemistry had begun to make itself felt, though uncertainly, and he speaks of alcohol as "inferred to consist of two atoms of carbon, one of oxygen, and three of hydrogen," and honey as "supposed to consist of sugar, mucilage and an acid."

Paris's *Treatise of Diet* (5th edition 1837), however, showed a real advance and is almost the first book dealing with the subject on modern lines. His classification of the nutrientia into fibrinous, e.g.

flesh; albuminous, e.g. eggs; farinaceous, e.g. wheat, and so forth, is a great improvement upon his predecessors, of whom he justly says in his introduction: "Were the popular works on dietetics subjected to a healthy digestion, how meagre would be the proportion of real aliment extracted from their bulky materials." He has incidentally much interesting information on the history of foods; thus he tells us that cabbages were not cultivated in England until the time of Catherine of Aragon and that "this queen could not procure a salad till a gardener was sent for from the Netherlands to raise it"; and that carrots were introduced by the Flemings in the reign of Elizabeth and turnips by Lord Townshend, in 1730.

Jonathan Pereira, who was Assistant Physician to the London Hospital, brought out in 1843 a *Treatise on Food and Diet*, in the preface to which he states that his book "contains an account of the chemical elements of food—a subject which previous writers had almost altogether passed over but to which the recent researches of Boussingault, Liebig, and Dumas have given additional interest." He speaks of foods as "compound aliments" and classifies the "alimentary principles" composing them as "the aqueous, the mucilaginous, the saccharine, the amylaceous" and so on. He gives a general description of the different foods with the time required for their digestion (largely based on Beaumont's observations on Alexis St. Martin) and full analyses of most of them, sometimes in terms of carbon and nitrogen, sometimes in those of "alimentary principles." His figures for the composition of milk, for example, are, casein 4·2 per cent., butter 3 per cent., sugar of milk 5·3 per cent., and salt 0·75 per cent., which is not so far wrong. He also recognized that alcohol is a fuel in the body and he speaks for the first time of "proteine" which had recently been discovered by Mulder.

The advance of chemistry had therefore already begun to affect dietetics, but by the middle of the century great progress was also being made in the physiology of nutrition, as the result chiefly of the labours of the German school; and by the seventies the relative values of the different nutritive constituents of food and their equivalents in heat and work had been made out, and the proof of the conservation of energy in the body was on the way to being established. The effect of this work on dietetics was immediate and it is from this time that it can fairly claim to be regarded as an exact science. The changed aspect of the subject is reflected in three books which appeared in the 7th decade of the century—Letheby's *Cantor Lectures on Food* (1870), Edward Smith's *Foods* (1873), and, most of all, in Pavy's *Treatise on Food and Dietetics* (1874). Full analyses of foods are given in all of these, though there is still sometimes noticeable a tendency, traceable to Liebig, to express the results in terms of nitrogen and carbon instead

of in those of protein, carbohydrate and fat. The dynamic and heat values of different foods are stated and Liebig's heresy that protein is the source of work, which had been contradicted by Traube ten years earlier (1861), is now finally discarded. Pavy's book, indeed, is entirely modern in its treatment of the subject, and very little was added to what it contains throughout the following 25 years. During that period, it is true, the metabolism of food was further worked out chiefly by Carl Voit and Rubner in Germany, and by Atwater, Lusk and others in America, but in the main it may be said that the quantitative aspect of dietetics was exhausted by the end of the nineteenth century. By that time the importance of the Calorie as a measure of food values was firmly established and the chief controversy which agitated dietitians concerned the much discussed "protein optimum." This had been fixed originally by Liebig at 150 g., but was reduced by Voit to 120 g., and this figure was accepted by Atwater. There had always, however, been physiologists who were inclined to challenge these figures as too high and Chittenden in his book, *Physiological Economy in Nutrition* (1905), showed that health and activity could be maintained for indefinite periods on as low an intake as 36 g., and Hindhede subsequently went even lower. It was reserved for the work of the present century to show that the quest of a protein optimum is illusory, for it varies with the kind of protein consumed. The real protein minimum could only be attained by cannibals consuming solely a form of protein identical with that in the human body, but so far as we are aware no observations on the protein consumption of cannibals have been made; it might, perhaps, be risky to attempt them!

If the nineteenth century was the quantitative epoch of dietetics the present century has so far been a qualitative epoch. Attention has been shifted from the amount of the different food constituents required for satisfactory nutrition to the influence of the "imponderables" of the diet in health and disease. This has necessitated the abandonment of the chemical and physiological methods of approach for the biological, that is to say the influence of the diet as a whole on the whole animal. Stark, as we have seen, had already foreshadowed this method in the experiments he made on the effect of different diets on himself towards the end of the eighteenth century. Paris also showed more than an inkling of the importance of qualitative considerations when he wrote in 1837: "Those bodies which have possessed life can alone be strictly considered capable of affording aliment to animals; yet there exist a certain number of inorganic substances, such as water, salt, lime, etc., which, although incapable by themselves of nourishing, appear, when administered in conjunction with the former, to contribute essentially to nutrition." These he called alimentary "adjectives" as opposed to alimentary "substantives" or true foods.

Research in recent years into the qualitative aspects of the diet has met with success in three chief directions. First, it has shown that the proteins differ greatly in their biological value depending upon the amount and kind of the amino acids composing them; second, and most important, the existence of "accessory food substances" or "vitamins" has been brought to light; third, the significance of the mineral constituents of the diet and especially of calcium, phosphorus, iron, and iodine, has been clearly demonstrated. Of these advances the discovery of the vitamins has been by far the most spectacular. The time has not yet come to write the full history of this brilliant chapter in dietetic research, but the chief milestones have been the discovery by Eijkman (1890-1897) that beri-beri is a deficiency disease; Hopkins's feeding experiments on rats, published in 1912, in which he showed the importance of "accessory food factors" in normal dietaries; the introduction soon afterwards of the term "vitamines" afterwards changed in 1920 to vitamins) by Funk; the production of scurvy in guinea-pigs by Holst and T. Frölich in 1907; the discovery of "fat-soluble A" by McCollum and Davis in 1913 and of "water-soluble B" in 1915; and the proof by E. Mellanby in 1918 that rickets is due to a vitamin defect in the diet. The War<sup>1</sup> gave a great impetus to the study of the qualitative side of dietetics by providing "biological experiments" on an enormous scale and our knowledge of the "accessory factors" has grown rapidly ever since.

Just, however, as the importance of the Calorie was over-estimated at the end of last century, so the vitamins are probably being over-valued to-day. They are not, any more than the Calorie value and protein content, the only criterion by which to assess the worth of a diet. It is possible, also, that too much importance is now being attached to the mineral constituents—perhaps a reaction from their neglect (in spite of the writings of Bunge) during the quantitative epoch. Their recent emergence into notice has been the result mainly of the work of McCollum and Sherman in America and of Orr in this country.

What direction the future progress of dietetics will take it is impossible to say. It is probable that more "vitamins" will be discovered or that those already known will be further subdivided. New "accessory food substances," not vitamins, but comparable to the "hæmatogenous principle" of the liver, may also be brought to light. It is unlikely, however, that Nature holds many dietetic surprises up her sleeve, and it is difficult to believe that progress in the next seventy years from now will equal, either in variety or extent, that which has been made since the middle of the Victorian era.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. of 1914-18.

PART ONE  
DIET IN NORMAL LIFE

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY. DEFINITIONS, DIFFICULTIES,  
LIMITS OF ERROR AND ACTION IN DIETETICS

Dietetics is a subject which springs into prominence whenever there are wars and their consequent famines and pestilence. The war of 1939-45 is no exception; in fact more prominence has been given to dietetics than ever before, both by combatant and non-combatant nations, their governments, army and national commissariats. They learnt, when economizing on transport, that margarine yields 3.96 million Calories per ton whereas canned turnips only 0.07 million.<sup>1</sup> In Great Britain a flourishing and active society, the Nutrition Society, was formed under the stimulus of war conditions and is having, and will have in the future, great influence upon the collection and distribution of hypotheses, facts and information about nutrition.

It will be noticed that the term "nutrition" is beginning to oust that of dietetics, for it is felt that the term "dietetics" is narrowing in meaning and becoming that of the treatment of illness by special foods. Originally the word diet meant "a way of life" especially concerning food and dress; also it could mean a dining-room or a summer-house. In 1800 the term meant "a systematic view of all objects relative to health in general and to food and drink in particular"! The restriction of its meaning to the science of food and drink in particular was complete when this book was first produced, but by now it is in process of becoming restricted to the treatment of disease by modification of the diet. This is almost inevitable, for until recently almost the only way of earning a living for those who had made a scientific study of food and drink was in the diet kitchens of the hospitals in this country which had followed the transatlantic example of recognizing dietary treatment as a part of curative medicine. The same distinction is in evidence in the United States, for McCollum and his colleagues call their book *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition*—not of Dietetics. Nutrition therefore

<sup>1</sup> See a remarkable article, KING, J. (1948), *Chem. and Ind.*, 739.

means the study of food and drink in all its aspects; dietetics is coming to mean the use of this study in curative medicine. That is not the meaning the authors give to the word in this book; they use it in the sense that Sir Robert Hutchison gave it—they can hardly alter the book's original title—viz. the study of food in its relation to human need. In this book the practical aspects of nutrition will always be allowed to outweigh the severely scientific. Thus the authors are not so much interested in the chemistry and distribution of some recondite vitamin as in the practical difference to living which that knowledge might make.

The applications of our knowledge of nutrition are numerous and far-reaching. They touch not only the care of the sick, but the feeding of the well. They concern public health at most points—no health authority should be without its dietitian. Community feeding, whether in schools or factory canteens, needs dietetic supervision. Educational authorities cannot afford to be without advisors trained in dietetics. This subject runs in closest contact with agriculture, and therefore with politics, alas. It should have, and is having, a great influence upon world politics.<sup>1</sup> In fact each year opens up new horizons in dietetics.

But while we welcome this expansion of the influence and applications of dietetics we have sundry warnings and reservations to make, and the rest of this chapter will be concerned with these. Most of us have recollections or knowledge of what happens in a gold rush. Much the same happens in any new territory opened up by science. Adventurers, good, bad and indifferent, rush in, and the ore they bring back is often anything but auriferous. Great caution is advised in accepting glitter as authentic fact. Further—to change the metaphor—the subject of dietetics is developing so rapidly that change of perspective alters the relative size and importance of a discovery. Old dogmas disappear. New ones, alas, arise. In fact, to quote Stefánsson, the Arctic explorer, "Unless it be religion, there is no field of human thought where sentiment and prejudice take the place of sound knowledge and logical thinking so completely as in dietetics."<sup>2</sup>

Now dogmas have no place in science. In fact the main duty of a scientific man is to do his utmost to pick holes in his most cherished beliefs. This is essential for the dietitian, if he wishes the study he has taken up to become a science, still more an "exact science," a claim proudly made for it by Sir Robert in the introductory chapter of this book. He writes:

"The effect of this work on dietetics [the work of Carl von Voit and his school] was immediate and it is from this time that it [dietetics] can fairly claim to be regarded as an exact science." Most good work in

<sup>1</sup> See publications of F.A.O.

<sup>2</sup> STEFÁNSSON, V. (1921), *The Friendly Arctic*, 1910.

dietetics springs from Voit, for he was the first to apply the exact and elaborate methods of physics and chemistry to the study of nutrition, but Voit himself would have been the first to deny that the exactitude which physics can employ in weighing a non-living substance or chemistry in estimating the atomic weight of an element, can be achieved in the science of nutrition. The very weight of a 2-kg. Belgian hare changes by several hundred milligrammes during the process of weighing, as one of us saw in Voit's own laboratory. How much more difficult, then, must it be to weigh a man with an accuracy of 1 in 20,000. Such an accuracy is, of course, far beyond what is ever claimed in dietetics, but it must be recognized that when an argument or theory is based on the fluctuation in weight by a few grammes, an error of 1 in 20,000 in a 70-kg. man's weight may involve a final error of 1 in 10 or even 1 in 1!

Because the layman has such exaggerated views of the capabilities of the dietitian and the exactitude of dietetics it is perhaps worth while thus early in the book to set out its limitations, and the factors which prevent its ever becoming so exact a science as physics or chemistry.

We are met at the outset with the difficulty of **definition**. This, however, is not surprising. Is it not said that the physicist Tait had some twenty definitions of matter in his famous text-book of physics and that the best of them was, "that which is a permanent possibility of sensation"? Our definitions of "food" and "dietetics" will be almost as unsatisfactory. Voit in Hermann's *Handbuch der Physiologie* defines food as a "palatable mixture of food-stuffs which is capable of maintaining the body in an equilibrium of substance, or capable of bringing it to a desired condition of substance." The reader will note the intrusion of the word "palatable," which introduces into the definition a whole range of imponderables from the realms of psychology. Is a food less a food when it is not palatable? Is cod-liver oil not a food because it was unpalatable to most Victorians and Edwardians? And is it a food only to the neo-Georgians who have been brought up to take it from their first month of life? Is it "not-a-food" when it is concentrated, and a food when it forms an ingredient of a palatable fish sauce or savoury?

If we want dietetics to be an exact science it must dispense with psychological considerations<sup>1</sup> or at least delimit their relations to and intrusions into dietetics. We offer the following definition of food: anything which, when absorbed into the body via the alimentary tract, is capable of doing one or more of three things, (i) furnishing the body with material from which to produce heat, work, or other forms of

<sup>1</sup> RENNER (1944) in *The Origin of Food Habits*, Faber & Faber, London, protests against this exclusion of psychology from dietetics, much as Ruskin years ago exclaimed against its exclusion from economics, possibly with similar justification. We shall deal with this later.

energy, (ii) enabling it to grow or to repair its wear and tear, and (iii) supplying regulators of its functions of growth, repair, and production of energy. Thus milk is usually called a food, and is to the dietitians the food *par excellence*. It can be used to supply energy in the form of heat and work. The combustion of the materials of 1 pint of milk in the cells of the body would yield energy equivalent to 378 kilocalories. It promotes growth in the body and repair. Milk also contains some thiamine, some riboflavine, some nicotinic acid or possibly nicotinamide, much vitamin A, a little ascorbic acid, and, in summer, vitamin D. All these substances are catalytically concerned in the production of energy changes in the cell, and, without them, it must die. On all three counts milk is to be considered a food. Other foods, e.g. the lemon, will come into consideration practically on the third count only. Its contribution to body building is infinitesimal; to production of energy, negligible; only because of its marked power of supplying vitamin C is it included in the category of a food.

Our definition is as unsatisfactory as all definitions of fundamental ideas are, but at least it is less open to criticism than those which have preceded it.<sup>1</sup> It is difficult to exclude substances which can be metabolized when injected under the skin or into the blood and yet they are excluded by the above definition, which none the less permits the inclusion of drugs. It brings into prominence, however, the three main functions of food. Food provides the materials for growth and repair of the fabric of the body. It supplies materials which can be oxidized in the body, with the result that the energy set free by oxidation may be used in performing work and in producing heat. It also supplies the body with substances (catalysts, food hormones, vitamins) which control, though present in almost inconceivably minute amounts, the various processes of the body. Food is responsible for the conservation of the material of the body, for the maintenance of its output of energy and for the regulation of these functions.

We need not worry, however, about the logical unsatisfactoriness of our definition of food, except perhaps when dealing with the layman. "But tell me, Doctor," he says, "are not turnips good food? Have not onions a high food value?" We cannot answer his questions until we discover whether he means by food what a dietitian means; whether he is aware that food has a three-fold function, and which of the functions, if any, he has in mind.

At this point it may be well to inveigh against the vague terms which have invaded popular and not so popular dietetics. Dietetics can never

<sup>1</sup> To show how difficult it is to devise an adequate definition, let us take the examples of tea, coffee, cocoa, and meat extracts. In common parlance they are foods. But to the biochemist tea and coffee are almost certainly not foods, whereas cocoa certainly is. Meat extracts creep in on the score of their nicotinic acid. All come into the net of our definition.

become an exact science while such terms as "food value," "balanced diet," "nourishment," "malnutrition," etc., go undefined. If "food value" is used of a food to mean its quantitative yield in body-building material, in energy value or in vitamins the term is a useful one; but if, as is usual, it means "this food is liked and eaten by people" it is useless—in dietetics. "Balanced diet" may have a meaning to the dietitian, though how one can pretend in the present state of our knowledge that there is a right and proper equilibrium between protein, fats, carbohydrates, the six or ten essential metallic and non-metallic elements and the twenty or more vitamins, and that we know that balance passes comprehension. Probably the term means, if used by the scientific dietitian, a diet in which no particular one of the groups of substances enumerated in the preceding sentence is in defect or excess. Thus if there are no carbohydrates, or only 5 mg. of iron per day, or 300 mg. of calcium, or 100 international units of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> (thiamine), or 20 or 20,000 international units of vitamin D, we might justifiably say that the diet is unbalanced. If the term "balanced diet" means no more than a good all-round diet, then we can have little quarrel with it. But it has an air of exact science and is used by the charlatan to deceive the layman, and even the elect. It is significant that a search for such vague terms shows that they are not used in modern text-books of dietetics. They can be utilized as a danger signal, warning one of charlatanry, much as the spelling of protein as "proteid" and the use of "albuminoid" stamps a book on dietetics as being out of date.

(**A definition of dietetics** is that it is the science of applying the hitherto discovered facts about food and its use in the body to the feeding of the individual, the family, and the nations. There is no finality about dietetics, for though much has been discovered about food, much remains to be discovered. Until about 1900 all the emphasis in dietetics fell upon Calories. It then shifted to the proteins. Thence to the vitamins and the mineral elements. To-day we say with Sherman that dietetics stands foursquare upon Calories, proteins, mineral elements, and vitamins, and it is only with an effort that we can imagine that there may be still more legs for dietetics to stand upon. Instead of being a quadruped it may become even an octopod or a centipede. Who knows? That it is altering in detail is seen from the dethronement of spinach as a source of calcium and iron to the body. The whole of the calcium (595 mg. per 100 g.) in spinach may be sterilized by the oxalate present and it has been shown that tomatoes with only  $\frac{1}{4}$ th of the iron of spinach yield more iron to the body. Pediatricians accustomed to give sieved spinach for iron to a baby six months old must revise their training. And as dietetics alters in detail so may it alter in gross. We dare not, as dietitians, dogmatically claim any finality in the subject. One dogma

after another is discarded as sound reasoning and experimentation take the place of prejudice and custom.<sup>1</sup> We must approach the science sceptically and with a readiness to throw overboard our most cherished dietetic beliefs. Dogmatism about food is an excellent danger signal of the presence of ignorance and charlatanism.

Probably the feeding of the individual as compared with that of the family and the nation claims most attention in dietetics; partly because dietetics unfortunately in this country is used more in treatment of ill health than in preservation of health, and partly because we are all egoists and more concerned with our own bodies than with those even of our children. The Victorian parent regularly sent, and the rich parent frequently to-day sends, his offspring to boarding-schools where the diet was and sometimes still is such as he would not give to his servants. (Things in that respect, however, are improving and even the most famous public schools are beginning to consult the dietitian.)

In one way attention to individual diets is an advantage. A child, whatever its age, should be considered as an individual and not lumped in with the rest of the family. The custom has grown up in dietetic work in Great Britain of considering the family as a whole, in which a child of, say, 5 years of age counts as some fraction of an adult male for all his needs. That plan should be abandoned. A pregnant woman is not a non-pregnant woman multiplied by some factor; dietetically she is a different individual altogether. A child of 5 may need more calcium than an adult and a boy of 14 certainly does. Consequently, though the family is the catering unit in this nation and is likely to remain so, the family considered dietetically consists of a number of units each with its own individual wants as regards proteins, Calories, mineral elements, and vitamins.

This again applies to the nation. You have not solved the problem of the feeding of the nation when you have supplied, let us say, sufficient Calories and protein, though you will have gone a long way in that direction. You have not solved it till every individual has had a sufficiency of all the desiderata in diet—proteins, Calories, mineral elements, and vitamins—has had in fact an optimum diet, i.e. one which gives no improvement in health and growth when any of its constituents is increased or reduced in amount. How far we are in Great Britain—indeed in the world—from that position will be seen in the sequel, though it must be said emphatically that there is no reason, save gross ignorance, sloth, and a touch of poverty, why we should not, at any rate in this country, be properly fed. It is the function of the dietitian to see that we all are properly fed.

<sup>1</sup> e.g. the danger to normal kidneys of a high protein diet, the need for a low Calorie diet in fever, the need to cut starch from the diet when feeding a coeliac patient.

(There are three types of dietitians apart from other people engaged in nutritional work. They are:

(i) *The Hospital Dietitian*, whose work is in the wards and out-patient departments of hospitals, adjusting the Calorie, protein, mineral elements and vitamins of a diet to the needs of patients and demonstrating and explaining to patients how to carry out in the home the preparation of diets given in hospital.

(ii) *Dietitian-caterer*, whose work consists of large-scale catering in institutions such as boarding-schools, hospitals, infirmaries, school and factory canteens. In the past and for the most part in the present this work has been carried out by caterers with no dietetic training.

These two classes of dietitians have been and will be naturally recruited from among nurses and graduates of colleges of domestic science. There is a great and growing demand for caterer dietitians.

(iii) *Public Health Dietitians*. Attached to the Ministries of Food, Health, Education and Agriculture and to the local authorities in Health and Education there should be, and in a few cases already are, dietitians trained in the science of nutrition to a research standard, whose duty should be to advise those Ministries and local authorities concerning the nutrition, present and future, of the People. The Hot Springs Conference of the United Nations, 1943, definitely recommended that all public authorities should have such an adviser attached and that his training should be in the highest degree scientific and of a research nature. The recruits for this type of work are those with University degrees in science—particularly physiology and chemistry. During the war of 1939-45 the Ministries of Food and Health secured the help of several such dietitians and doubtless in the future this class of dietitian will be increasingly needed and utilized.<sup>1</sup> /

There are two main reasons why dietetics as applied to the individual, the family, and the nation suffers from a condition of inexactitude. The first is the varying composition of food or even of its individual parts. No one piece of bread has the same analysis as any other piece. The red side of a strawberry has more ascorbic acid in it than the white side. The outer leaves of a cabbage have more calcium and pro-vitamin A than the inside leaves. Consequently unless we analyse a sample of what is being eaten by the person investigated we cannot be sure what he is actually getting. Thus the number of Calories obtainable from a pound of white bread varies from 1037 to over 1200; in other words, the error of taking one figure rather than the other is about 15 per cent. In the daily diet of a working-class man the difference per day might easily be 200 Calories or about 7 per cent. of the day's

<sup>1</sup> According to *Lancet* (1949), I, 367, Prague has a public diet restaurant, run by the Czech equivalent of our T.U.C., serving five diets: gastric, salt free, low fat, nephritic and diabetic (three levels).

total. Governments and food faddists have fought the dietitians for less. Nor is it different with the protein content of bread. Figures from 7 to 10 per cent. are given, and judging from analyses made on bread from London bakers this may happen in bread purchased in the same locality. As this may lead to an uncertainty concerning 13.5 g. of protein out of the day's total of 80 to 100 g., the uncertainty is of the order of 13-17 per cent. Such uncertainty hardly belongs to an exact science.

Nor is this all. The protein in bread is calculated by estimating the nitrogen present and multiplying it by a conventional figure—usually 6.25. This assumes that proteins have 16 per cent. nitrogen in them. This is untrue. Some have more and some have less. The conventional figure 6.25 is far from the true figure for egg albumin (6.45) or for edestin (5.38). Thus according as the higher conventional figure or the more accurate lower figure has been used by the analyst there will be a difference of over 10 per cent.

In the calculation of Calories conventional figures instead of the accurate figures have been used. Thus all carbohydrate is lumped together and it is agreed to say that each gramme yields 4.1 kilocalories on oxidation in the body. So if a food, say a sweetmeat weighing 10 g., consists mainly of glucose, its estimated calorie value will be  $10 \times 4.1 = 41$  kilocalories, whereas the actual value is  $10 \times 3.75$  or 37.5, i.e. nearly 10 per cent. less. With the decrease in the consumption of starch (4.12 kilocalories per g.) which is taking place to-day and the increase in cane-sugar consumption (3.95 kilocalories per g.) a small over-estimate of the calorie consumption results if we accept the conventional figure 4.1.

The figure for protein (4.1 kilocalories per g.) and that for fat (9.3) are both of the conventional. *Which conventional figures are used must be stated by the author and dietitian.* In the calculations made incidentally in the course of this book, Rubner's conventional figures, as given above, will be used. There is no guarantee that the authors quoted will have used the same convention.

If other uncertainties are to be enumerated we may point to the fact that "fat" in a food analysis usually means "petrol ether soluble substance" or even "ether soluble substance." This is certainly not always fat and not always metabolizable. The nitrogen of foods does not always represent protein, and the carbohydrate may include (though not in more modern analyses) indigestible and therefore unmetabolizable material. In fact, in any analysis of food and in any estimate of the intake of proteins, fats, carbohydrates, Calories, etc., by a person on a known diet there is an unpleasantly large margin of uncertainty, an inexactitude which we wish were not there. We cannot help it. Life and money are too short to achieve accuracy in dietetics,

and we must be content with saying that A's diet contains the possibility of yielding 3000 kilocalories approximately. The approximation certainly does not lie within 100 kilocalories, so that in accepting 3000 kilocalories we are assuming no more than that the true value is probably between 2900 and 3100. The estimation of a diet's values to more than the second significant figure is absurd. There is thus, in the analysis tables which are the basis of our calculations in dietetics, an uncertainty and inaccuracy which may be daunting to the neophyte and must be devastating to one "hot for certainty in this our life." But as long as it is recognized and allowance is made for it, it is no bar to the usefulness of dietetics.

There is, however, a second ground for inexactitude in dietetics and that is to be found in the extreme dietetic variability of the human race. We can make average estimates; we may lay down average "laws" for the feeding of people: their basal metabolism varies as a function of their surface area; the average man needs so many Calories per day and the average woman so many less. We may speak of average figures, but if we apply these figures to the individual we are lost.

Two good illustrations came to light as the 9th edition of this book was being prepared; the one in an article in the *British Medical Journal*<sup>1</sup> and the other in a book upon Mass-observation.<sup>2</sup> The former is that of a boy, son of vegetarian parents, who at 9 years of age weighed 4 stone 3 lb., was 4 feet 2 inches in height, and was intelligent and energetic. His diet included but little animal protein—cheese and milk—the nitrogen output was low (about 4½ g. per day, equivalent to 28 g. of protein) and his Calorie intake 800 daily. This boy's height was normal for his age, though he was 10 lb. underweight as compared with the Christ's Hospital figures.<sup>3</sup> Yet he seemed fit and healthy, though his protein intake was not half the normal and his Calorie intake about one-third that recommended by the Technical Commission of the Health Committee of the League of Nations.

The second example was that of an all-in wrestler, a champion. "And he says that to get that feeling [i.e. that you want to tear the other man into little pieces] you have got to eat meat and plenty of it. He buys a whole joint at a time. He eats whenever he feels like it, not at any fixed time. Once he tried a vegetarian diet for six months. He wanted to try it and see if it was good for him. He found that it made him feel fitter than ever before in his life, but, as he puts it, 'I didn't seem to have that little bit of fire.' So he came back to meat in the end."<sup>4</sup>

Again, the capacity for absorbing the nutrients in food may vary.

<sup>1</sup> HILL, L. (1938), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 2, 417.

<sup>2</sup> *Britain by Mass-observation* (1939), 127.

<sup>3</sup> FRIEND. (1935), *The Schoolboy*, Heffer & Sons Ltd.

<sup>4</sup> *op. cit.*

Thus McCance and Widdowson have shown that on the same diet one person may be in positive calcium balance and another in negative balance; and Meulengracht that the use of purgatives may prevent the absorption of calcium. One of us (G. G.) had a patient whose apparent need of vitamin C was three times the average need. Such instances could be multiplied indefinitely.

With such contradictory evidence one might reasonably ask whether there is any reliance to be put in quantitative results. There certainly is in average figures, but they must not be taken too rigidly. It would be wrong to say to either of the people quoted above that he must change his diet to bring it nearer the normal, and also wrong to say to the average man that he must imitate either vegetarian boy or meat-eating wrestler in departing from the normal. Even in carefully collected data on individual intakes in food we find extraordinary departures from the mean. In the case of men, the Calorie figure per day may vary from about 1800 to 5000, and the figure for women from approximately 1500 to 3100. The figures for total protein, animal protein, fat, carbohydrate, calcium, phosphorus, and iron vary from one figure to another nearly its double. There is no significant correlation between Calorie intake and body weight. Nor does there seem to be any relation between occupation and Calories on the one hand or between Calories and the percentage surplus or deficit in weight. A person may be overweight for height on far below the average Calorie intake, or be normal in weight and yet take 5000 Calories.<sup>1</sup> Similar variations, though with not so large a spread, were found for women.<sup>2</sup>

All these departures from the mean or average figure are not adduced here to cast discredit upon dietetics, but to check the too eager student of the subject from applying average rules which have hitherto been discovered in dietetics ruthlessly to all people. Dietetics is by no means "totalitarian" in its "laws"—in fact, very much the reverse. It lays stress, or should lay stress, upon individual requirements and personal peculiarities and idiosyncrasies. Perhaps some day we may be able to explain why, in the research quoted above, one subject, a university teacher of 28 years, is slightly overweight on an intake of 1772 kilocalories per day, while another subject, an electrician one year older, obtains 4955 kilocalories per day from his food and is not overweight. At present we have no explanation and it is a disservice to the science of dietetics to pretend that we have.<sup>3</sup>

Dietetics, though fundamentally quantitative, has difficulty with the extreme variability of the individual. Nevertheless there are rules

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, **36**, 269.

<sup>2</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M., and McCANCE, R. A. (1936), *ibid.*, **36**, 293.

<sup>3</sup> Microbes, even, show similar individuality! POWELL, E. O. (1954), *Chem. and Ind.*, 928.

and quantitative rules for the majority, just as there are laws for the behaviour of the molecules in a gas if we take them in quantity. And just as physics discovers that the behaviour of individual atoms and molecules is unpredictable, so too in dietetics the individual may have a behaviour far from the mean.

That this individuality in practice in dietetics is partly due to psychological make-up is fairly certain. The aphorism "one man's meat is another man's poison" has often been used to justify the refusal to eat a specified food. Doubtless the aphorism is not meant dietetically, but if it is, in most cases it is emphatically not true. Only with the allergics can a definite food be termed a poison. An asthmatic who is sensitive to egg-white or to cheese is justified in calling egg-white and cheese poisons to him. Cow's milk may cause an allergic child to get eczema, and cow's milk may certainly be termed "poisonous" to such a child; dermatologists who naturally see a great deal of allergic eczema may be inclined to believe that cow's milk is a poison. But the case of allergics is no definite ground for proclaiming that "one man's food is another man's poison," for the percentage of allergics in the populace is not high, though they make themselves heard, particularly those prone to hay-fever. What the phrase means is that what one man loves to eat is hateful to another, and of that there is no doubt. We have all met people who aver that they cannot touch this food or that and inflict their likes and dislikes upon their friends and relations, often with an unctuous and odious rectitude.

It will be worth while to examine these likes and dislikes of food, for they circumscribe very severely the practice of dietetics. It is not much use giving even the best of foods to a sick person if he has an aversion from it; a second-rate dish, if he likes it, will actually "do him more good" as the phrase goes.<sup>1</sup> It is not much use trying to feed a school dietetically if what you serve at table goes into the pig tub. The practice of dietetics is severely conditioned by food habits.

In the first place these food habits are not instincts. More and more we are coming to the belief that when man took to reason he scrapped the guidance of instinct. Certainly there is evidence for this in dietetics. If instinct in the matter of food were at all paramount such things as deficiency diseases—scurvy, rickets, and beri-beri—would be unheard of. Rickets was rife in Elizabethan days before any industrial revolution. We were a seafaring race. But did instinct tell our sailor forebears to consume fat fish and cod livers? On the contrary some physicians

<sup>1</sup> Marie Lloyd. 'A little of wot yer fancy does yer good.' Edwardian music-hall song. As an example of this we quote Polly, a girl aged 8 with dropsy due to heart failure. She had vomited all the carefully chosen food given to her for several days. In despair the physician said she might have what she liked. Polly chose, and was given, fried sausages. She was not sick and from that day began a rapid recovery from the dropsy. Such exceptions prove (i.e. probe) the rule.

associated living by the sea with rickets. Up till 1800 scurvy was a common late winter and early spring complaint in England, but did instinct tell our fathers to eat the potato which was certainly introduced into Europe in the sixteenth century? Instinct does not tell the Aki-kuyu to eat more of the foods which would give him strength and stature, though tribal custom does, interestingly enough, allow the woman more of the foods which supply calcium than the man—a possible adjustment of diet to child bearing.<sup>1</sup> Instinct does not lead the Eskimo in contact with white folk and therefore inclined to adopt his food to eat the salmon berry,<sup>2</sup> which might prevent his getting scurvy. He has to be taught to do so.

In fact, unless it be in the matter of Calories, instinct is a poor guide to the right food. It tells us nothing about the amount of first-class protein, nothing about the mineral elements, nothing about the vitamins needed per day. And this is true too of domestic animals such as the dog and the laboratory rat.<sup>3</sup> The puppy has to be taught to eat meat<sup>4</sup> and the laboratory rat can be fooled as to what food "did him good." Instinct does not guide.<sup>5</sup>

What probably enables a rat to choose the diet with vitamin B<sub>1</sub> in it as against one which is deficient, while he cannot do so when vitamin A is in question, is the euphoria which results on taking the right thiamine diet. We have a euphoria as the result of taking alcohol or other drugs such as morphine, cocaine, or heroin, but the euphoria is no proof, though it is often accepted as such, that such potions are doing us good. The fact is that food-likes and dislikes are largely habits, conditioned reflexes, learnt automatic reactions and have little or nothing to do with instinct, defence mechanisms, and so on.

It is a commonplace that we can learn to like a food which has at first filled us with nausea. To the English the eating of green olives is an "acquired" taste; eating black olives still more so. Some of us can remember acquiring the taste. To the Spaniard the acquirement comes so early in life that olives appear to be an obvious and natural food. Similarly tastes for food may be lost and distaste take their place. Stefánsson has a story of a sailor who had acquired a distaste for fat in early life. He had stolen some fat, was made by his mother as a punishment to eat a large quantity of it, became violently ill as a result and

<sup>1</sup> ORR and GILKS. (1931), *Medical Research Council Special Report Series*, No. 155.

<sup>2</sup> STEFÁNSSON. (1921), *The Friendly Arctic*, Macmillan & Co., 63.

<sup>3</sup> HARRIS, CLAY, HARGREAVES, and WARD. (1933), *Proc. Roy. Soc., B*, 113, 161.

<sup>4</sup> PAVLOV. *Conditioned Reflexes*.

<sup>5</sup> RICHTER. (1942-3), however, strongly opposes the views here set forth. *Harvey Lect.*, 38, 63. Also RICHTER, SCHMIDT, and MALONE, (1945), *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 76, 192. Cited *Lancet*, 1945, 2, 467.

thereafter "could eat no fat." Many of us can match such an observation. A food may have been the cause of or accompanied some alimentary upset and after that that food tasted unpleasant. The upset need not be alimentary. It can be emotional. A child may connect some food with discipline from parents and not be able to eat it for the rest of his life.

Naturally these food habits are usually acquired in early life. What one is brought up to eat, that one likes. As Stefánsson puts it, bread seems a natural article of diet to a Western civilization, and rice something that one eats occasionally. To an Eastern civilization rice seems to be the natural "staff of life" and bread a not very interesting adjunct. The rice-eating Bengali in 1944 preferred to starve to death rather than eat wheat flour. In various books and articles Stefánsson has shown this principle to be working amongst his colleagues in Arctic exploration, the Eskimos he met, and the dogs who drew his sleighs. Of his colleagues, the University men were the most willing to change their food habits. To eat meat and little else for a year was an adventure—it attached itself to a conditioned reflex (adventure) and became part of it. To those who had been brought up on but a few foods it was a hardship to live entirely on meat. They hankered for bread and flour, with disastrous results in one case. It was the same with the Eskimos. They would not eat what they were not accustomed to. The males were less conservative than the females; the children were experimental but always checked by the females. Among the dogs it was the same. Dogs brought up on fish had to be starved into surrender before they would eat caribou (deer); dogs brought up on caribou had to be starved into surrender before they would eat game; and so on. Fortunately if the food were allowed to go putrid dogs would eat it whatever its source. The females had stronger new food "resistance" than the males. Among human beings and dogs it is the females who teach food habits to the young.

The wonder is that any food habits change, for there is a circle "what-one-eats-when-young, that-one-likes-and-hands-on-to-one's-offspring" which theoretically should rotate for ever. Fortunately there are progressive and rebellious spirits who break away from family traditions, travel and bring home new habits. And there are the intellectuals who will not be subservient to their tastes. None the less it takes a long time to introduce a new food. It took at least 200 years for the potato to get a hold upon Europe, and the tomato a hundred years. More recently the grape fruit has conquered us in England in about 30 years and it may be that the avocado pear, the lichee, the persimmon and the grenadilla will be added to our lists of common foods more rapidly still.

All this, dietetics has to recognize. It has to realize that there are

limits set upon its scope of action. It cannot be accurate to within definite wide limits because the composition of foods varies within wide limits. It cannot lay down dietetic laws applicable to everyone, because of the variation in men's needs (? habits), because some take more than their share (are pleonectic) and some take less than their share (are meionectic). It dare not impose, as most food faddists and fanatics try to impose, its discoveries concerning one man or group of men, upon all and sundry. It must realize that the psychology of the individual may play havoc with any plan of diet based even upon wide observation and that unfortunately therefore a poor diet may suit such a person better than a well-conceived diet. Although its task is to educate the general public to the belief that a food is a food only in its capacity to supply fuel, building, and regulative materials, not in its capacity to please the palate at first bite, none the less it must recognize that food habits are fairly unshakable, and that to do any immediate good it must work within the ambit of those food habits and prejudices. One part of the work of practical dietetics is to feed the sick, and this can only be done if their likes and dislikes are recognized. But another part of its work is to educate the individual, the family and the state in the best methods of feeding themselves to advantage. This will often mean the breaking down of food prejudices, and the question is where in the vicious circle of food habits to make your attack. The probable answers are (i) at the point when the mother has her first baby, (ii) sometime in adolescence when one is always hungry and reacts against one's upbringing, and (iii) when the intellect takes charge, if it ever does, of a person's reactions.

## CHAPTER II

### THE FUNCTIONS OF FOOD. (I) SUPPLY OF ENERGY

Food has been defined in the first chapter as anything which, when absorbed into the body through the alimentary tract, is capable of one or more of three things, (i) furnishing the body with materials from which to produce heat, work, or other forms of energy, (ii) enabling it to grow or to repair its wear and tear, and (iii) supplying regulators, or the raw materials for regulators of its functions in producing energy, growth, and repair. It will be noticed that this definition is *physiological*, i.e. it deals with what the foods do in the body—what are their functions. Perhaps the third function needs some explanation. There are reactions which go on in the body at a definite speed in the normal person, but in the abnormal person may go faster or slower. If the thyroid gland elaborates too much thyroxine its owner burns up fuel materials too rapidly; if too little, too slowly. The iodine and the tyrosine from which the thyroid gland elaborates thyroxine are found in food. Similarly the oxidation of carbohydrates in the cell is directed and regulated, among many other things, by thiamine, riboflavine, and nicotinamide, three vitamins preformed in food. Without these preformed catalysts the normal processes of the body will proceed at abnormal velocities or not at all. This third function of food, which will be dealt with in Chapters IV and V, is a discovery of this century. It receives its main impetus in the second decade and has almost monopolized attention in research in dietetics to the present day.

Though the outlook of the dietitian must be physiological, this does not mean that the outlook of the chemist can be dispensed with. On the contrary dietetics must keep in close collaboration with the chemist without, however, allowing his concepts to dominate the field too much. Without the chemist and the biochemist we could not have obtained any idea of the nature and mode of operation of the vitamins. They would still be mysterious somethings, the cynosure of every food faddist and quack medicine and food advertiser. The more we know about their chemistry the more accurately we can use them in dietetics.

On the other hand dietetics must keep in touch with the caterer. It is not enough to know what substances are necessary for adequate nutrition, we must know how and where to obtain them in foods and the most convenient and possibly the most economical ways of buying

them. To take an extreme example: should an Arctic explorer live "off the land" as Stefánsson and the late Gino Watkins did, or should he carry food in its most condensed form from temperate climes?

The outlooks of the three types of persons interested in dietetics are here arranged tabularly:

<i>The Physiologist.</i>	<i>The Chemist.</i>	<i>The Caterer.</i>
Foods are useful for—	These foods contain respectively—	These substances are found mainly in—
1. Energy production.	1. Fat, carbohydrates, and (though not so important) proteins.	1. Dripping, lard, suet, butter, margarine, cereals, sugar, dried fruits, pulses, and things made from these.
2. Growth and repair.	2. Proteins mainly, and to a less extent calcium, iron, etc.	2. Milk, eggs, cheese, fish, and meat.
3. Control, regulation, and direction of processes in the body.	3. "Mineral" elements and vitamins.	3. Dairy foods, certain specified fruits and vegetables, and the fat man.

This classification is not perfect, nor is the alignment between the three columns perfect. For instance, although we in Great Britain obtain only about 10 per cent. of our Calories from protein—and, as it were, incidentally and by accident—perforce in the Arctic Circle and among the Masai by choice, 44 and 39 per cent. of the Calories respectively are derived from protein. Whereas it would be true to say that in Europe the energy value of our diet arises largely from the fats and carbohydrates, it would not be so among the Eskimos and the male Masai. Again the mineral elements in our diet are mainly used for catalytic purposes, but (notably) calcium and phosphorus, though essential for such purposes, are also used in relatively enormous quantities for building the skeleton, with the result that the child's and the adolescent's need for calcium and phosphorus is greater, much greater, than the adult's. Further, it is true that whereas we get our energy-producing foods mainly from the grocer and baker, and the body-building foods from the dairyman, the butcher, and the fish-monger, we cannot say (as has unfortunately often been said) that we get our regulators of bodily reactions—our mineral elements and vitamins—from the greengrocer. Calcium and phosphorus we get in large amounts from milk and cheese; iron from eggs and treacle, and our vitamin D from eggs and (pre-eminently) fat fish. Nor, again, are *all* fruits and vegetables of use for mineral elements and vitamins: the grape and the pear among fruits and the marrow, to take three examples from many, being nearly worthless so far as is at present known as

purveyors of these necessities. For the purpose of supplying sources of vitamin C, a vitamin relatively rare in the dietary of many preparatory and public schools, fruits and vegetables must be closely scrutinized and chosen from appropriate tables.<sup>1</sup> Too often does one read on a school prospectus "abundance of fruit and vegetables given for the vitamins."

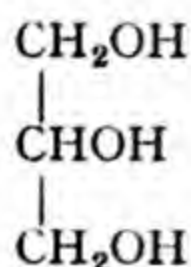
On looking at the third column of the table on page 16, it will be seen that some foods appear (or would appear if we could make our lists complete without overloading) more than once. For example, cheese appears as a body-builder (25 per cent. or more protein); it also appears as a supplier of mineral elements (800 to 900 mg. calcium and 650 mg. phosphorus per 100 g.); it would reasonably, too, appear under the energy-producing foods for 410 Calories per 100 g. are obtainable from it. Milk too appears as body-builder (the best there is) and as supplying mineral elements (calcium and phosphorus) and vitamins (A, and riboflavine). It, too, is not negligible for energy. The herring is excellent and cheap for body-building material; fair for vitamins A and D and contains some calcium. Moreover, it can supply energy. These foods—milk, cheese, eggs, and herrings—appear then to be the most important foods from the point of view of dietetics. It is unfortunate that these valuable foods are not more used.

**The Chemistry of the Food-stuffs.** Any food may have any or all of the following classes of chemical substances in it:

1. Proteins, e.g. caseinogen, albumin, myosin, gluten, legumin, gelatin, etc.
2. Fats, e.g. triglycerides of fatty acids such as butyric, caproic, myristic, palmitic, stearic, oleic, linoleic and clupanodonic acids.
3. Carbohydrates, e.g. starch, dextrins, glycogen, sugar, cellulose.
4. Mineral elements either as salts or in combination with organic material, e.g. common salt, and compounds of calcium, phosphorus, potassium, magnesium, iron, and iodine.
5. Extractives and flavouring matter.
6. ~~Vitamins~~
7. ~~Water~~.

We will defer consideration for the time being of any but the fats and carbohydrates, for these are the main sources of energy in the body.

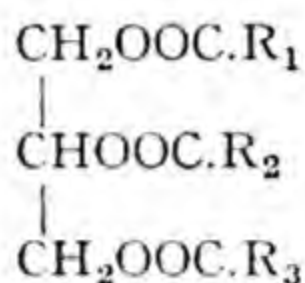
**Fats.** The majority of what we call fat consists of molecules of glycerol, each combined with three molecules of fatty acid. Glycerol is represented as



<sup>1</sup> *Nutritive Values of Wartime Foods*, Med. Res. Council War Memorandum, No. 14, H.M.S.O., 1945.

and some of the fatty acids which combine with it to form fat are butyric acid,  $C_3H_7COOH$ ; palmitic acid,  $C_{15}H_{31}COOH$ ; stearic,  $C_{17}H_{35}COOH$ ; and oleic,  $C_{17}H_{33}COOH$ . Acids of the series  $C_nH_{2n-4}O$ ,  $C_nH_{2n-6}O_2$  and  $C_nH_{2n-8}O_2$  may be found in the fats of foods.

Rarely is only one acid present in a fat, with the exception of olive oil, which is mainly triolein, i.e. glycerol united with three molecules of oleic acid. Generally the fats are mixed triglycerides and if we represent the part of the fatty acid in front of the  $COOH$  groups above, by  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ , and  $R_3$ , the fats are of the type



The fats of different animal and plant foods are different because of the nature of the fatty acids present in them. Olive oil has oleic acid almost entirely. Butter has some butyric acid. Vegetable fats have no butyric but fair amounts of acids like caprylic. Mutton fat has palmitic, stearic, and oleic acids. Cod-liver oil and fish oils generally have many of the highly unsaturated fatty acids.

This variation of composition has some bearing on the *dietetic value of fats*, though but small bearing on their energy value in diet. It is true that a highly oxidizable fat, like cod-liver oil, will give out more Calories when oxidized than a saturated fat, but in practice this difference is neglected. We take the value of 9.3 Calories per g. as the conventional standard whatever the actual Calorie value of the fat may be.

The **Carbohydrates** comprise a group of substances more unlike each other superficially than are the fats, but none the less having more likeness in the units from which they are made. As the term suggests, they are composed of the elements carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, the latter two being in the proportion of two to one as in water. The elementary units of the carbohydrates important in food are the simple sugars containing six carbon atoms: the hexoses or monosaccharides, glucose, fructose, and galactose, and into these monosaccharides all carbohydrate foods have to be resolved by digestion before they can be of use to the body. Two monosaccharides united form the disaccharides, cane sugar (sucrose), malt sugar (maltose), and milk sugar (lactose), all of which have importance in dietetics. Starch, glycogen, and dextrins are complexes of many monosaccharide units (glucose in every case) and are therefore called polysaccharides. Starch grains contain two polysaccharides: amylose and amylopectin. Amylose has the glucose units arranged in a long chain, while amylopectin has a laminated structure, the end of one short chain being united to the middle of the next group.

Any number of glucose units up to 2000 are found in starch, while each group in the laminae of amylopectin may contain 20-25 glucose units. Glycogen's structure resembles that of amylopectin, but 12-18 units form the individual groups.

Amylopectin in the raw state is indigestible, which accounts for the fact that raw potato starch (73 per cent. amylopectin) causes colic when eaten in any large amount.

Of the monosaccharides glucose is found in nature in fruits such as grapes, in vegetables, and in honey; fructose in the majority of fruits and in honey; while galactose is not found free. Cane sugar, among the disaccharides, is found in the sugar cane and sugar beet, in other root vegetables and in most fruits. The commercial product "sugar" is practically 100 per cent. cane sugar. Syrup and treacle contain 70 per cent. hexose sugars. Malt sugar is found in malt and malted products and milk sugar in milk.

Starch is present in all the cereals, in the pulses, in chestnuts, and in potatoes. Dextrins occur in manufactured foods as the result of submitting starch-containing foods to dry heat or to diastatic enzymes. Consequently the crust of bread and cakes, biscuits and breakfast foods and also the crumb of bread contain dextrins.

Glycogen, the only carbohydrate of animal origin, is found in liver, in shell fish, and to a much smaller extent in all muscles ("meat").

In addition to these carbohydrates, which may be termed the "*available*" carbohydrates, because the body can utilize them as fuel, there are a number of substances occurring in fruits and vegetables which dietitians loosely and incorrectly call "cellulose." They are plant cell-wall products. One, pectin, which is responsible for the "jelling" of jams, is a mixed colloid with a pentose, galactose or methylated galacturonic acid as the units of structure. Others have derivatives of glucose, mannose or galactose as their basic units. Neither pure cellulose nor these other substances are digestible, absorbable, or metabolizable by the body. Their only function in diet is to hurry a meal along the alimentary tract owing (i) to their mechanical action (e.g. lettuce leaves the stomach more rapidly than many a digestible food), and (ii) to the irritating effect of the chemical products of their decomposition by bacteria in the large intestine. The value of these "*unavailable*" carbohydrates or "*roughage*" in diet has been, and still is, over-rated. It is assumed that some roughage is essential in diet for normal people; more still for those who possess a sluggish large intestine, and it is possible that its absence from a diet is essential for those who possess a spastic colon.

*The fuel value of the available carbohydrates* is assessed at 4.1 Calories per g., although that of starch is nearer 4.2, while that of cane sugar is 3.95 and of glucose 3.75; 4.1 is a "conventional" average

figure. In most food tables under the heading "carbohydrate" the figure for the available carbohydrates is given; but in older tables often the carbohydrates of the fibre (i.e. cellulose, pentosans, etc.) is included and the Calorie value is too high.

**Proteins**, as stated above, can be and are used by the body for the production of energy. Indeed they are used entirely for that purpose if no carbohydrate is taken along with them at a meal.<sup>1</sup> This is so because in the breakdown of their constituent amino acids in the liver they pass either through a carbohydrate (glucose) stage or a fatty acid stage and are oxidized as such. A little more than half of the protein is oxidized via the glucose path and somewhat less than half goes by the fatty acid path.

The conventional figure for the *fuel value of protein* is 4.1 Calories per g. Outside the body the fuel value of protein burnt in oxygen is 5.6 Calories. The reason for this discrepancy is that the body does not, and could not without danger, burn the protein as completely as it is burnt in the calorimeter. The body oxidizes the protein to a stage in which it is safe and convenient to get rid of the end products of combustion. The bomb calorimeter oxidizes protein to carbon dioxide, water, and oxides of nitrogen (the last-named are poisonous). The body oxidizes protein to carbon dioxide, water, urea (mainly), and uric acid and other nitrogenous substances. Urea and the other nitrogenous substances would yield a considerable amount of heat if burnt in the bomb calorimeter and it should be clear, from the doctrine of the conservation of energy, that the caloric value of a protein to the body is its bomb calorimeter value minus the bomb calorimeter value of the waste products—urea, etc.—in the body. This has been investigated many times and found to be true (within the limits of experimental error of the apparatus). We may take it as beyond doubt that the doctrine of the conservation of energy is true for the human body,<sup>2</sup> and that the average value for the proteins consumed in the body is 4.1 Calories per g. Further consideration of the proteins is deferred till we come, in the next chapter, to their function as body-builders.

**Energy.** The words energy, work and heat have been used above as though they were one and the same thing. To the layman "energy" probably calls up a picture of rate of doing work (which the scientist dubs "power"), or even a fussiness in doing work—an idea best represented by the American slang word "pep." To the scientist, on the other hand, energy is probably the fundamental reality pervading

<sup>1</sup> CUTHBERTSON and MUNKO, (1939), *Biochem. Journ.*, **33**, 128.

<sup>2</sup> No sane scientific man ever doubted this. There could be no science of dietetics were it untrue. But it was well to demonstrate the fact for the discomfiture of the crank.

the universe. Matter, hard and impenetrable as it appears can be resolved into electrical energy. The prime source of all energy on this earth is the breakdown of matter in the sun in its slow passage from a bright largish star to a dark, heavy dwarf. If energy pervades everything it must be protean in form, as indeed it is. It appears now as electricity, now as light, as muscular and machine work, as potential work in the high mountain lake or reservoir, as kinetic energy in the waterfall, the tides, or the turbine race, as chemical energy and as heat. And it almost follows that since energy appears now in one form and now in another that these forms are interconvertible. We know that energy (say) of Niagara Falls may be made by appropriate machinery to appear as electrical energy throughout southern Ontario and in adjacent parts of the United States; or that energy radiated as electric waves from Daventry may activate a radio set in New Zealand. Similarly one day the energy of the tides in the Severn estuary may be made to run machinery in and to light Bristol, Gloucester and Cardiff.

The source of energy of the infinitesimally small speck of planetary matter which we inhabit is the sun, which for many billion years has been radiating, and will continue to radiate for many more billion years, energy into space in the form of light and heat and other electromagnetic waves. Of this energy the earth intercepts a tiny fraction and on the use of some portion of this fraction life depends. Without energy, life is impossible. Living plants imprison energy in their seeds and storehouses such as tubers, rhizomes and roots. Animals, including man, prey upon these sources of energy. Or the plant in ages past having imprisoned energy in its tissues, dies and leaves a heritage of coal to be used millions of years later by man as a source of energy. Every muscular movement we make, whether cardiac, respiratory or mechanical, is based on stored chemical energy derivable in the first instance from the sun via the plants upon which animals prey. The physiologist can demonstrate that each drop of saliva, sweat or urine secreted requires energy to produce it. Possibly, even, though of this there is still reasonable doubt, each thought we think necessitates the expenditure of energy. All this energy comes from our food, which originally comes from plants and initially from the sun, trapped by plants and twisted to the uses of life. Consequently the study of food as a source of energy, in the strict scientific usage of that term, must be of prime importance to the dietitian.

Energy then pervades everything, appears in manifold interconvertible forms, is indestructible, is essential to life. Through energy we live and move and have our being. Our source of energy is food, i.e. energy stored in the first place by plants from the squandered energy of the sun.

Naturally the dietitian wants to know how much energy the human

body needs per day and therefore how to measure it. As all energy is indestructible and interconvertible it hardly matters in what form we measure it, so long as we know the conversion factors from one form of energy to another. Thus when we lift one pound one foot against the pull of the earth we do one foot-pound of work. When we heat 1 lb. water through one degree Fahrenheit we put energy into the water equivalent to 772 foot-pounds of work. Knowing that factor, 772, it does not matter much to us whether we measure the work of the body in thermal units or in foot-pounds. Actually in practice we prefer to measure the daily output of energy of the body in thermal units—usually as Calories.

For this there are two reasons, (i) the figure it gives us is convenient to handle—it is expressed in thousands<sup>1</sup> rather than millions or billions, and (ii) all energy in the body, and elsewhere, ultimately appears in the form of heat. Our muscles contract and at once produce heat. The friction in our joints produces heat. To put our muscles into a state in which they can contract again produces heat. The stone we hurl through friction against the air produces heat. In its final contact with the earth its kinetic energy is transformed into heat. Moreover the transformation of heat energy into mechanical work involves a wastage of about *two-thirds* of that energy—as heat. As the body must be assumed to work in accordance with the laws (i.e. “rules”) of thermodynamics—heat and work are interconvertible in definite proportions, and it is impossible to produce a constant supply of energy by any isolated self-acting machine—the majority of the energy of the body appears as heat. In fact if you isolate the human body by placing it in a calorimeter (see below) all the energy it puts forth *must* appear as heat. That therefore is the most convenient form in which to measure the output of energy by the body and therefore—energy being indestructible and uncreatable—the energy *needs* of the body. We measure the output and needs of the body for energy by calorimetry.

We have mentioned the Calorie as being the measure we adopt of the body's output or needs per day. The Calorie is the amount of heat requisite to raise the temperature of one kg. of water (2.205 lb.) one degree centigrade ( $\frac{9}{5}$ ° Fahrenheit).<sup>2</sup> For those who think in pounds and degrees Fahrenheit, as is “natural” in this country, the Calorie is almost exactly four times the size of the “natural” British unit, i.e. the heat necessary to raise one pound of water one degree Fahrenheit.

If the body gives out heat in the course of a day which would raise

<sup>1</sup> e.g. 3000 Calories per day instead of 1,292,000 kg.-m., 9,370,000 foot-pounds or 1,265,000,000,000,000 ergs.

<sup>2</sup> The actual unit of heat used by the physicist is the small calorie, or the heat necessary to raise the temperature of 1 g. (not a kilogramme or 1000 g.) of water one degree Centigrade—a cause of considerable confusion. The great Calorie or Kilocalorie should always be written with a capital C to distinguish it.

either 3000 kg. of water through  $1^{\circ}$  Centigrade; or 300 kg. through  $10^{\circ}$ ; or 30 kg. through  $100^{\circ}$ ; we say that the body has given out 3000 (kilo or great) Calories. This indicates that the food must supply 3000 (kilo or great) Calories to the body in the course of the day.

### Calorimetry

**Direct Calorimetry.** We can measure the heat given out by the human body and the heat of oxidation of foods by calorimeters. *Human calorimetry* has been raised to a point of great accuracy. Originally the calorimeter or container was the size of a tiny room  $9' \times 6' \times 6'$ . Such calorimeters are still in use and can contain a bed, or a table and chair, or a stationary bicycle with magnetic brakes upon which "work" may be done. The "room" has copper walls and is enclosed within three other shells, the inmost zinc and the outer two wood, all insulated from each other. A series of close-fitting doors through these shells gives access to the calorimeter and there is a window through which food can be passed to the subject or excreta passed out for analysis.

To measure the heat produced by the subject iced brine is circulated through radiators in the calorimeter. The volume of brine circulated during the experiment is weighed, and this weight multiplied by the rise in temperature of the brine, which is measured by very accurate electrical resistance thermometers, gives a measure of the Calories absorbed by the radiators. If we add to this the heat absorbed in vaporizing water in the lungs and by the skin, we have, subject to small corrections, the total heat produced by the subject during the experiment. The air in the calorimeter is purified by sucking it out with a rotary blower. It is then passed through a container with sulphuric acid in it to remove moisture, then through one with soda lime to extract the carbon dioxide, next through another container with sulphuric acid to trap any water from the soda lime, and last back into the calorimeter. As the air would be depleted of oxygen if further oxygen were not admitted there is an apparatus attached which automatically allows pure oxygen to enter from a cylinder whenever the pressure within the calorimeter falls to an appreciable extent.

The apparatus thus measures not only the heat given out during the course of the experiment but also the oxygen absorbed and the carbon dioxide and water given out by the subject. We can, from these data, together with the nitrogen excreted by the kidneys, calculate what materials have been consumed in the body of the subject during the experiment.

We can also, if the subject spends a long time in the calorimeter, compare the heat he gives out with the theoretical amount he could get from burning the food he has eaten. This must be, as explained above,

the heat obtained from oxidizing the food in oxygen minus the heat obtainable from oxidizing the excreta in oxygen. When the experiment is made, as has been done many times, it is found that the directly observed output of Calories equals almost exactly that indirectly calculated. The difference between the two is within the error of experiment. In fact the difference is about 0.2 per cent.

Modifications of such calorimeters are in constant use in the richly endowed hospitals of the United States, and for further information the reader is referred to Du Bois' book<sup>1</sup> on Basal Metabolism.

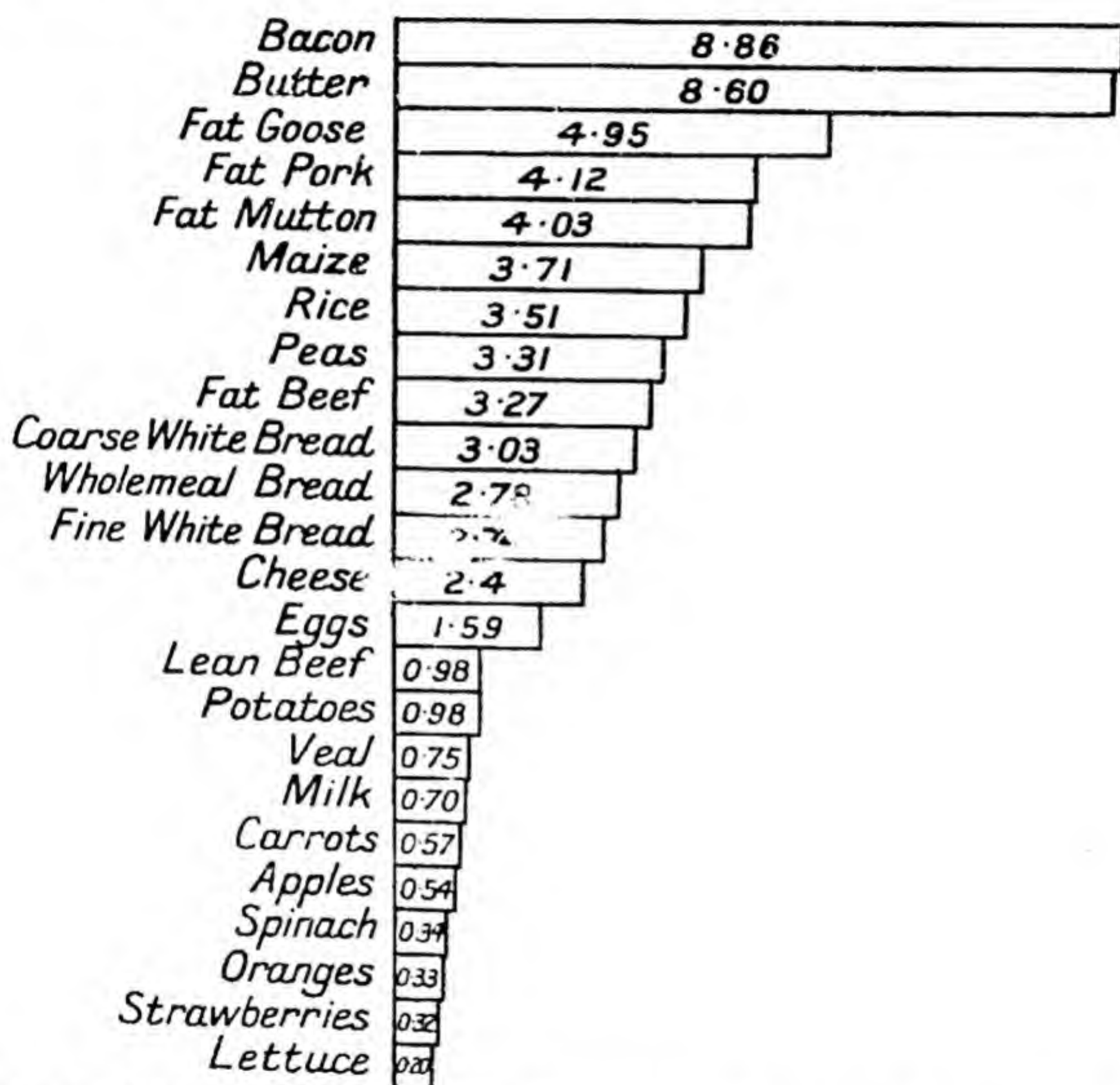


FIG. 1.—NUMBER OF CALORIES YIELDED BY THE COMPLETE COMBUSTION OF ONE GRAMME OF VARIOUS FOODS.

Calorimetry of food—in which the food is burnt outside the body in a calorimeter—is usually carried out in the *bomb calorimeter*. This consists of a thick-walled nickel steel vessel in which a fifth of a gramme to a gramme of the food under consideration is burnt in oxygen under

<sup>1</sup> Du Bois, E. F. (1936), *Basal Metabolism in Health and Disease*, Ballière, Tindall & Cox.

considerable pressure.<sup>1</sup> The food is placed in a platinum crucible, and lowered into the bomb, the bomb is closed by a massive accurately fitting screw plug, oxygen under several atmospheres pressure is admitted through a small vent into the bomb, which is then closed. The whole is lowered into a metal calorimeter filled with water. When the temperature of the water becomes constant, the food is fired by means of electrical leads passing through the stopper of the bomb, the food burns instantly to carbon dioxide, water, and oxides of nitrogen with evolution of heat. This heat passes to the water of the calorimeter and the rise in temperature of this water, subject to many corrections, gives a measure of the Calories given out when the food is combusted.

As explained above, the figures for fats and carbohydrates are the same for combustion in the body as in the bomb calorimeter; but for proteins a considerable amount less is obtained by the body because it does not oxidize protein so completely.

In the same way the Calorie value of the excreta produced during long experiments on animals or human beings can be obtained. The substances are dried, powdered, and aliquot portions of about half a gramme to a gramme compressed into small tablets and combusted in the bomb calorimeter.

As explained above it is found that the actual direct calorimetry as measured by the human calorimeter gives the same results as those from indirect calorimetry as measured by the bomb value of the food eaten minus the bomb value of the excreta produced from that food.

Such a method of estimating the Calorie output of a man takes much time and is very costly and cannot be used on any large scale. It certainly could not be used to ascertain the Calorie value of the diet of a family, an institution or the nation. There are two convenient methods of indirect calorimetry—one applied to the individual and one more useful in estimating the Calorie value of a diet. The first method needs rather expensive apparatus, such as the Benedict-Roth portable apparatus which can be used at the bedside, and the other no more than a book of tables, a balance and logarithm tables, slide-rule or a calculating machine.

### **Indirect Calorimetry: by gaseous exchange**

The former method is chiefly adopted in hospital practice in measuring the Calorie output of a person's basal metabolism, i.e. the rate at which he is giving out heat some 12–16 hours after his last meal and when in a state of rest. The Benedict-Roth apparatus estimates this in so short a time as 10–15 minutes by measuring the

<sup>1</sup> For technical details, see TINKLER and MASTERS. (1932), *Applied Chemistry*, 2, 266–75, Crosby Lockwood & Son.

consumption of oxygen during that time. If we make the assumptions that the protein consumed during that time is negligible and that the carbohydrates and fats during that time are completely consumed to carbon dioxide and water we can estimate the heat given out from the

TABLE FOR CALCULATING CALORIE OUTPUT FROM OXYGEN ABSORBED  
(After Zuntz and Schumberg, modified by Lusk)

Non-protein Res- piratory Quotient.	Calories per Litre. O <sub>2</sub>	Per cent. Calories derived from:	
		Carbohydrate.	Fat.
0.707	4.686	0.0	100
0.71	4.690	1.1	98.9
0.72	4.702	4.76	95.2
0.73	4.714	8.40	91.6
0.74	4.727	12.0	88.0
0.75	4.739	15.6	84.4
0.76	4.751	19.2	80.8
0.77	4.764	22.8	77.2
0.78	4.776	26.3	73.7
0.79	4.788	29.9	70.1
0.80	4.801	33.4	66.6
0.81	4.813	36.9	63.1
0.82	4.825	40.3	59.7
0.83	4.838	43.8	56.2
0.84	4.850	47.2	52.8
0.85	4.862	50.7	49.3
0.86	4.875	54.1	45.9
0.87	4.887	57.5	42.5
0.88	4.899	60.8	39.2
0.89	4.911	64.2	35.8
0.90	4.924	67.5	32.5
0.91	4.936	70.8	29.2
0.92	4.948	74.1	25.9
0.93	4.961	77.4	22.6
0.94	4.973	80.7	19.3
0.95	4.985	84.0	16.0
0.96	4.998	87.2	12.8
0.97	5.010	90.4	9.58
0.98	5.022	93.6	6.37
0.99	5.035	96.8	3.18
1.00	5.047	100.0	0.0

oxygen absorbed and the carbon dioxide exhaled. The volume of carbon dioxide given out divided by the oxygen absorbed is called the respiratory quotient, and during the post-absorptive stage (i.e. 12-16 hours after a meal) is 0.82. From the Lusk table above we see that every litre of oxygen absorbed should represent 4.825 Calories at a

respiratory quotient of 0.82. Similar figures from the carbon dioxide evolved can be used.

Actually it is usual, following Benedict, to calculate the Calories from the oxygen absorbed, though Poulton, in this country, gave evidence that it is better to calculate it from the carbon dioxide evolved, on the grounds that all the oxygen absorbed does not reappear as carbon dioxide evolved. In hospital practice it is usual to accept absorption of oxygen as a sufficiently accurate measure of the Calories probably produced. At any rate the measurement is accurate enough to aid the physician in diagnosis of such diseases as hyper- and hypothyroidism, leukæmia, and Addison's disease.

A new, light, portable calorimeter—really a gas meter with a by-pass to take samples, something like the original Calorimeter of Voit—has been evolved in Germany.<sup>1</sup> It gives figures in admirable correspondence with those derived from food intakes.<sup>2</sup> Carried on the back it can be used to measure the heat given out in various occupations.

**Indirect Calorimetry: by food intake.** As was said above, the average calorie value of carbohydrates burnt in the body is assessed at 4.1 per g., that of fats 9.3, and that of proteins 4.1. Therefore from the analyses of foods we can calculate their Calorie value to the body. To take an example:

Suppose that we analyse a food and find that it consists of

Protein	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	5.0 per cent.
Fat	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	10.0 "
Carbohydrate	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	20.0 "
Water and mineral material to 100.								

Then its Calorie value per 100 g. would be

Protein	.	.	$5.0 \times 4.1 = 20.5$
Fat	.	.	$10.0 \times 9.3 = 93.0$
Carbohydrate	.	.	$20.0 \times 4.1 = 82.0$
Total			195.5
or per oz.	.	.	$1.955 \times 28.36 = 55.44$
or per lb.	.	.	$1.955 \times 453.6 = 886.8$

For all practical purposes 196 per 100 g., 55.4 per oz. or 887 per lb. are sufficiently accurate values.

Tables of the composition and Calorie values of foods have fortunately been made by various workers in different countries and the commonly used ones are here given:

<sup>1</sup> KOFRANYI, E., and MICHAELIS, H. F. (1941) *Arbeitsphysiologie*, 11, 148.

<sup>2</sup> PASSMORE, R., THOMSON, J. G., and WANNOCK, GRACE M. (1952), *Brit. J. Nut.*, 6, 253.

*Proximate Composition of American Food Materials.* Chatfield, Charlotte, and Adams, Georgian, U.S. Dept. Agric., 1940.

*Nahrungsmitteltabelle.* Schall, 10th edn. Kabitzsch, Leipsig, 1932.

*Chemical Composition of Foods.* Medical Research Council Special Report No. 235, 3rd impression. McCance and Widdowson. H.M.S.O. 1942. 3 shillings.

*Nutritive Values of Wartime Foods.* Medical Research Council War Memorandum No. 14. H.M.S.O. 1945. 1 shilling.

Excepting the last two sets of tables, those mentioned deal mainly with raw food as purchased, but those compiled by McCance and Widdowson contain also very many analyses of cooked foods, including made dishes. Moreover they give us a fairly exhaustive analysis of the "mineral" elements contained in the foods and do not lump them all together as "ash." A further advantage is that they give the available and unavailable carbohydrate in fruits and vegetables, instead of combining them, so that we know the amount of "roughage" these foods contain and also have a more accurate estimate of the Calories obtainable from the carbohydrate and the total Calories yielded by the food under consideration. Such tables are naturally to be preferred and probably will oust all others.

Given good analyses tables, it might seem an easy task to obtain the calorie and other intake of an individual, a family, a boarding school or other institution or the nation, and manifold attempts to secure such information have been and are being made, and the results accepted without reasonable criticism. It should be said at the outset that such results approximate only roughly to the truth, the approximation being closest when applied to the individual and least accurate when applied to a group of people of mixed ages and sexes.

(i) No food table can ever give the exact composition of the food actually eaten because the analyst cannot collect samples from every part of the country and analyse them. At best he takes "34 samples from different shops." He cannot, for example, analyse the egg eaten. Food tables give only the probable composition of the individual foods eaten.

(ii) Food tables compiled in this country do not apply to foods consumed in another. When American tables are compared with British it is seen that there are wide differences. The herring caught around the coasts of Great Britain has  $2\frac{1}{2}$  times more oil than the American. On the whole British foods are moister than American with the one exception of jams. Each country should have its own analyses made.

(iii) When made dishes are eaten, it must not be assumed that the recipe used is that of the samples analysed by the analyst nor the time and nature of the cooking is the same. We all know how milk puddings

can vary in consistency. The utmost which can be done to estimate the food value of a particular made dish (apart from sampling it then and there and analysing it) is to obtain the recipe from the cook, if she knows it, and assume that in cooking it loses the same amount of water as a similar dish analysed in the tables. (Personal communication from Miss M. W. Grant.)

Such are the difficulties which meet the scientific person at the outset. More will appear as the investigation proceeds.

There are three main methods of carrying out an estimate of food intake: the individual method, the housekeeping or store cupboard method and the budgetary method. Of these the individual method is to be preferred.

The *individual method* consists in weighing at table the food actually consumed at each meal every day for a week. It has been shown that the day is not a long enough period, but that a seven-day period gives a fairly accurate picture of the day's average intake. The weighing is best done by a laboratory trained worker. Scales accurate to (say) 2 g. are advisable. Care must be taken to weigh back the waste, the inedible and the uneaten parts of the food, the unwanted and the inevitable losses due to the sticking of sauces, gravy, etc., to the plates, knives and forks. Where milk, sugar, butter and jam or marmalade are concerned it is worth while to keep a bottle of milk, a bowl of sugar, a pat of butter and a jar of preserve for the subject of the experiment and measure or weigh them at the beginning of a meal, or day, and the end.

If the weighings are carried out by a trained worker we may assume that the actual food taken in is correctly estimated, but not the actual food *needs*. Some people eat more and others less under observation. Children may show off by eating more than usual. The actual weighings make the meals abnormal. The observer may even unconsciously deter the subject from eating foods difficult to analyse. If, however, the experiment is carried out for a week with perhaps a day or two's trial runs immediately beforehand, the results can be taken as representing the food taken during the period of the experiment.

Nor should the results be much less reliable if an educated but untrained person conduct the observation. This is the method used in this country by McCance and Widdowson in their investigations of individual intakes, and the instructions they give to their investigators are here appended.<sup>1, 2</sup>

### INSTRUCTIONS

1. Weigh each kind of food separately, just as it is served to you. If raw, say so. If you are eating any food such as fish or chops that contain

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, McCANCE, and WIDDOWSON. (1936), *J. Hygiene*, 36, 269, 293.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, WIDDOWSON, and VERDON-ROE. (1938), *ibid.* 38, 596.

bones or fruit with skin or stones, please say whether your weight included the waste.

e.g. Kipper, weighed with bones.  
Orange, weighed without skin.

There is no need to weigh the *waste*, but please weigh any *food* you leave and deduct it from the food you first weighed out.

2. If you weigh anything on a plate do not forget to subtract the weight of the plate before entering the result on the form.

3. You need not bother to weigh eggs. Just count them and put the number. Sugar may be weighed, or measured in lumps or by the teaspoonful (say whether level or heaped).

4. Please say whether your bread is white or brown.

5. Do not forget to put down all sweets and chocolates under "Extras."

6. Please say whether your fruit was fresh, stewed, or tinned in syrup. For stewed and tinned fruit weigh the fruit and juice together.

7. Do not include gravy in the weight of the meat; measure the gravy separately in tablespoons. Please say what kind of meat or fish you eat.

8. It is a good plan to weigh out for yourself at the beginning of the week  $\frac{1}{4}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of butter and always use from this piece. You need not then weigh the butter as you eat it, but simply put " $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. of butter started" and " $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. of butter finished," when it is so. If any of the butter weighed out to you remains at the end of the week, say what it weighs.

9. We are very anxious to know how much milk you drink per day and how you drink it, so please weigh the milk if possible or measure it in tablespoons. Say how much milk you drink alone, and how much you put in a cup of tea, cocoa, etc. Do not forget to put down how many lumps or teaspoonfuls of sugar you take in your drinks.

THIS INDICATES HOW TO ENTER THE RESULTS AND IS NOT MEANT  
TO BE A PLAN OF AN IDEAL DIET

Food.	Amount.	Weighed (Raw or Cooked).
BREAKFAST:		
Cornflakes . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$ oz.	—
Sugar . . . . .	2 level teaspoons	—
1 boiled egg . . . . .	—	—
Bread (white) . . . . .	2 oz.	Toasted
Butter started . . . . .	4 oz.	—
Milk on cornflakes and in 2 cups of tea (no sugar taken in tea) . . . . .	5 oz.	—
DINNER:		
Irish Stew:		
Mutton weighed with bone . . . . .	2 oz.	Cooked
Carrots . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$ oz.	"
Potatoes (boiled) . . . . .	$3\frac{1}{4}$ oz.	"
Gravy . . . . .	2 tablespoons	"
Stewed plums weighed with stone . . . . .	3 oz.	"
Boiled custard (made with egg) . . . . .	2 oz.	"

## TEA:

Bread (white)	3½ oz.	—
Butter from ¼ lb.	—	—
Jam	1 oz.	—
Plain cake	2 oz.	—
2 chocolate biscuits (cigarette size)	½ oz.	—
Milk in 2 cups of tea	2 tablespoons	—

## SUPPER:

1 cup of cocoa:

Cocoa	½ oz.	—
Milk	4 tablespoons	—
Sugar	1 teaspoon (level)	—
2 plain biscuits (digestive)	1 oz.	—
1 apple (weighed with skin and core)	3 oz.	Raw

## EXTRAS:

Milk at school	½ pint	—
Boiled sweets	1 oz.	—

When working-class diets are being collected the task is more difficult and the accuracy of the results more debatable. A promise of co-operation must be obtained through welfare clinics, health visitors or medical officers of health. A visit is paid preliminarily to the investigation and the diet sheets and what is to be attempted explained. A further visit each day during the investigation is generally necessary to check errors and remove misunderstandings. The accuracies of the records must be estimated by the visitor and the data obtained rejected or accepted on that estimate. While the accuracy can never be that of a trained worker it is considered that data so obtained give some sort of picture, both qualitative and quantitative, of the diet habits of the person under observation.

One modification of the individual method used by officials of the Ministry of Food during the war of 1939-45, to investigate the food habits of munition workers, must be mentioned. They enquired from each worker who was willing to co-operate what and how much he had eaten at the various meals of the preceding day. If, for example, he said that at the morning break he had eaten a hunk of bread and a lump of cheese they got him to specify the size of each by choosing a particular sized piece of bread and of cheese to imitate what he had consumed. Such a method is very rough, but it is contended that it gives data of value—certainly of the type which a statistician can analyse. Experiments made upon University students suggest that estimates correlate well with actually measured intakes.

It should be clear that the individual method of estimating the Calorie and other intake of the subject of the experiment gives a moderately accurate picture of what a person consumes and, if the

experiment continues long enough, of his actual needs. Naturally the most accurate estimates are those made under an approximation to laboratory conditions by trained workers. It is probable that we may have to revise many of the estimates of the daily needs of people for Calories, proteins, mineral elements and vitamins when sufficient data have been collected, for it is an unfortunate fact that by no means sufficient individual data, despite all the efforts made from the time of Voit and Lyon Playfair down to to-day, have been collected and analysed. We need individual data by the hundred, if not the thousand, made in each country and walk of life, by workers using identical methods of collection.

Before proceeding to discuss the group methods of collection of data it would be well to consider the tables and what information they can yield. It might be thought that once the data are collected all the investigator has to do is to turn to the tables and by some tedious arithmetic<sup>1</sup> calculate the approximate values of the foods eaten. This is not so. In the first place the introduction to the sets of data made by the compilers should be read and thoroughly understood. Too often they are skipped, or if read, forgotten, with the result that tables are used to support contentions they could never support.

In some of the analyses we meet the terms "*as purchased*" and "*edible portion*." The terms are almost self-explanatory, but confusion often arises in the minds of students and lay folk and even in the minds of well-recognized exponents of dietetics.

Foods "*as purchased*" often have portions which have to be removed or are discarded before the food is eaten. Good examples are the skin and bones of fish, the bones and gristle of meat, the shells of eggs and nuts, and the peel and core or stones of fruit. The "*edible portion*" will then be a fraction only of the food as purchased. The fraction will be high in some foods and lower in others. In bread, biscuits, butter, and cakes it will be 100 per cent. "*Edible portion*" will equal "*as purchased*." In cheese, with its rind, it will be a little less. With many meats it is about 83 per cent.; with fish, particularly small and flat fish, much less—e.g. 40 per cent. With fruits we may have 100 per cent. (blackberries) down to 40 (melons); and in walnuts it sinks to the low figure of 26.

One pound of food as purchased will therefore have a lower Calorie value than one pound of the edible portion of the same food. In one

<sup>1</sup> We certainly recommend the abandonment of arithmetic for the slide rule with its automatic approximations. Food values cannot possibly be accurate to more than the second significant figure. Still more time-saving than the slide rule is the calculating machine, a portable form of which is on the market. Anyone can learn to use such machines with skill, speed and accuracy in a few days. Their only disadvantage is that they encourage the user to state results with a supposed accuracy to the eighth significant figure!

pound of food as purchased there will probably be less than a pound of edible material and the Calorie value of this will be lower than the corresponding Calorie value of a pound of edible portion. When estimating the Calorie value of a diet this distinction has to be borne in mind. If it be an individual diet which is being investigated the weighing of foods will be carried out at table and it will be the edible portions either cooked or ready to serve which will be weighed, except perhaps when flat fish and herrings or fruits are taken. Even then the waste can be weighed and the edible portion estimated. When the diet is that of a family or institution it will probably be the weights of foods *as purchased* which will be estimated. The item which will have greatest influence on the total will be the meat, for the other items which supply the bulk of the Calories—bread, butter, milk, and sugar—should have no waste.

Unfortunately the edible portion is not wholly consumed. It is inevitable that some should stick to the plate and to knives and forks. The fat of meat is often discarded; unpleasant-looking portions are dissected away (e.g. veins); burnt and underdone portions put aside.

This table wastage is an individual affair. It is lowest among the poorest and during times of scarcity.<sup>1</sup> It depends upon training and is greater in one country than another. Institutional feeding apparently leads to great wastage, though training may keep the table wastage as low as 1 per cent.<sup>2</sup> It may rise much higher<sup>3</sup> and in institutions known to us it has risen over 10 per cent. In estimating an individual's diet, when the food is weighed at table it is quite possible to allow for table wastage, but in calculating the value of the diet of a family or institution this is by no means easy. There are losses due to carelessness in preparing the food. One person will pare away much more of a potato than another. One cook will utilize much less of the fat that cooks out of a joint than another. Sauces, even "pouring sauces," will not wholly leave the saucepan for the sauce-boat or the sauce-boat for the plate. Consequently we can give only an approximate figure for the food consumed by a group of people—an outside figure. It is usually thought that the actual amount consumed is as much as 10 per cent. below this outside figure, and that allowance is commonly made. It ought, in a well-regulated family or institution, to be considerably less.

Edible portion minus kitchen and table wastage we may term "input."<sup>4</sup> This "input" food is never wholly digested and absorbed by

<sup>1</sup> CATHCART and MURRAY. (1931), *Med. Res. Council Spec. Rep.*, No. 151. In the army it was 2.76 per cent. ARNEIL, G. C., and BADHAM, D. R. (1949), *Brit. J. Nut.*, 2, 310.

<sup>2</sup> FRIEND. (1935), *The Schoolboy*, Heffer & Sons Ltd.

<sup>3</sup> GEPHART. (1917), *Boston Medical and Surgical Journal*, 176, 17.

<sup>4</sup> We have borrowed this term from wireless telegraphy as a convenient if ugly word.

the alimentary tract. There are indigestible fibres in plant and animal foods which are not only unabsorbable by the alimentary mucous membrane but also prevent the absorption of otherwise absorbable products of digestion. By hurrying food along the small intestine they may impede complete absorption. Sometimes as much as 20 per cent. of a food material is lost to the body owing to incomplete absorption.<sup>1</sup> Moreover the alimentary tract and its secretory glands may have to pour out more digestive juices and lubricating material on some foods than others. The net gain to the body (which alone concerns us) will be greater when there is less outpouring of digestive juices.

Estimates have been given of the loss of Calories through non-absorption of various foods and in mixed diets. The following figures are given:

	Per cent.
Rice. . . . .	2.6
Milk. . . . .	4.4
Bread . . . . .	4.5
Meat . . . . .	5.5
Potatoes . . . . .	6.8
Carrots . . . . .	20.2

(RUBNER)

For the mixed diets we can calculate that 4 per cent., 7 per cent., and 11 per cent., respectively, of the "input" Calories are lost through defective absorption in the following diets: (i) Diet containing much animal food, (ii) diet containing a moderate amount of animal material, (iii) diet containing little animal material.<sup>2</sup>

"Input" Calories minus loss through defective absorption we may term "Intake" Calories. By the principle of the conservation of energy "intake" Calories must, eventually, and when the body is in equilibrium, equal "output" Calories, i.e. the Calories as measured by the calorimeter.

We have therefore a means of estimating roughly the Calorie output, or the Calorie needs of a person or group of persons, by collecting data of their food consumption and calculating the Calorie value of the foods eaten from analysis tables. The method involves but a little arithmetic and intelligence and is far easier than the more scientific and direct methods of estimation by human Calorimetry or via gas analysis. Its results, however, must not be unreservedly accepted.

We may sum up the relations of the figures as given in the analysis tables to the actual output of energy by the subject of experiment, thus:

<sup>1</sup> See below, p. 145, under "Availability."

<sup>2</sup> WAIT. *U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. Bull. 53.*

As purchased (usually abbreviated to A.P.)  
 minus waste (bones, peel, core, etc.) = Edible Portion.  
 Edible portion (usually abbreviated to E.P.)  
 minus table waste = Input.  
 Input minus unabsorbed or secreted material = Intake.  
 Intake must equal Output, when the body is in equilibrium.

The relation of these values to one another is a variable one. We have seen that the relation E.P. to A.P. may be 1 : 1 (bread, milk, butter), or it may be as low as 1 : 3 (nuts). We cannot give any average figures and it is absurd to pretend to do so. The tables give the relation when wanted. In calculating the Calorie value of a diet we have merely to be careful to see which set of figures is appropriate.

How much is wasted at table is a variable quantity depending largely upon training, and the loss due to incomplete absorption plus secretion of digestive juices varies from 4 to 10 per cent. or more, depending upon the nature of the diet. It is a convention to assume that the other two together approximate to 10 per cent.

If this be true, the Calorie value of the edible portion of food minus 10 per cent. will equal the Calorie value of the intake, and this in turn the output of Calories by the body. Ordinarily we do not concern ourselves so much with the output of Calories by the body but by the more easily estimated Calorie value of the food bought. We speak of the Calorie value of a diet, meaning by that the Calorie value of the food eaten without making any allowance for unavoidable waste on plate or in the alimentary tract. This is in fact the Calorie value of the edible portion.

**Group Dietaries.** Often we wish to know the average value of the diets of a group of people, whether of the family, institution or a nation. This presents no real difficulty except in interpreting the results.

*The Housekeeping Method.* If the family is the unit,<sup>1</sup> the food in the house at the beginning of the period of investigation (usually a week at least) is estimated and allowance is made for that at the end of the period. All food bought during the time is weighed and so is the waste. The food consumed equals that of each commodity at the beginning plus that bought during the period minus that at the end and minus the waste. Usually in such an investigation the wastage of each food (crusts of bread, etc.) can be ascertained and we can obtain a fair measure of the Calorie, protein, fat, carbohydrate, mineral elements, and vitamin content of the whole diet and therefore the input of the family.

Much the same methods will be used in an institution, e.g. a boys' school. The accounting department of the institution can supply the

<sup>1</sup> CATHCART and MURRAY. (1931), *Med. Res. Council Spec. Rep. Series*. No. 151 and (1932), *ibid.*, No. 165.

data for the food entering the institution in a definite period, and, assuming no leakage, this gives over a period such as a month or a term the gross consumption of food. From this must be subtracted the wastage which may be itemized if the accounting department is efficient. It may be waste bread; waste fat (either sold to soap merchants or converted on the premises into soap); or garbage which goes to the pigsties. If the amounts of the two former are known, their dietary value can be directly assessed, but if all waste goes into the garbage can, an analysis of mixed samples is essential for accurate evaluation of the loss. Usually all the wastage goes to the pigs and it is difficult to make an allowance for it except in vague approximations. Where the waste is small this does not much matter. For example, fairly careful estimates of the nature of the waste at Christ's Hospital<sup>1</sup> suggest that it accounts for, on the average, but 0.7 per cent. of the total gross Calorie value of the food. In other institutions the table wastage may be much greater, e.g. St. Paul's School, Concord, U.S.A.,<sup>2</sup> where it was in the Upper School 22 per cent. in the protein, 23 in the fat and 7 in the carbohydrates. In public schools in this country the weight of the table wastage is often some 10 per cent. of the food served, though in a vegetarian house of a school investigated by one of us, where there was very little cooked food served, the waste was practically negligible. (Clearly much can be done to cut down the wastage and caterers should consider a high wastage a sign of bad catering and bad training of the recipients of the food.)

The net Calories, after subtraction of the Calorie value of the waste, divided by the number of people fed and the number of days in the period of estimation, gives the average Calorie intake per person per day.

This method gives a satisfactory and understandable result if all the people under consideration *are of the same age and sex*. This is rarely the case except in some institutions such as the army and some public schools where all can be counted as adults. Usually women and children are included. For example, in a preparatory school there may be children from about 6 years of age to 14, maids, matrons, and masters all fed from the same stores and kitchen. In a public school there will almost invariably be kitchen staff, infirmary staff, and house-keeping staff to complicate the Calorie issue. In a co-educational school the complication is still greater.

There has been a conventional method of obviating the difficulties involved by these complications. It is known that on the average a man eats more than a woman, and both more than a child, say, of five. It is

<sup>1</sup> FRIEND. (1935). *The Schoolboy*, Heffer & Sons Ltd.

<sup>2</sup> GEPHART. (1917), *Boston Medical and Surgical Journal*, 176, 17.

also known that their Calorie output varies in a similar way. So dietitians in the past have composed scales of values purporting to represent the Calorie needs of children at each age and of women expressed as fractions of the need of an adult male. The needs of the adult male in sedentary occupation are taken as unity. He has a "man value" of 1.00, while the adult female is given another value (e.g. 0.83 or 0.7 according to whose scale you adopt) which is her "man value," "index" or "co-efficient." Children are given coefficients according to their age, e.g. at 3 years of age the coefficient given may be 0.5—the "man value" of this child is half that of his father, and so on. Of such scales there were in 1936 no less than thirty-eight<sup>1</sup> and they have received additions and complications since.

Such scales have been used in this way: Suppose we wish to assess the Calorie needs of a family consisting of a father (say a lawyer), his wife, son of 14, daughter of 10, and two domestics, and we adopt the Cathcart and Murray scale.

Father	= 1.00
Wife	= 0.83
Son of 14	= 1.00
Daughter of 10	= 0.80
2 maids	= 1.66
<hr/>	
Total	<u>5.29</u>

One "man" = 3000 Calories. Therefore the total Calorie needs is  $5.29 \times 3000 = 15,870$  or (say) 16,000 per day.

A boarding school or other institution can be reckoned in the same way.

200 boys all 14 or over <sup>2</sup>	= $200 \times 1.00$	"men"	= 200.00
10 male teaching staff	= $10 \times 1.00$		= 10.00
5 female " "	= $5 \times 0.83$		= 4.15
5 male non-teaching staff	= $5 \times 1.00$		= 5.00
10 female " "	= $10 \times 0.83$		= 8.30
<hr/>			
Total			<u>227.45</u>

$\therefore$  Daily Calorie needs =  $227.45 \times 3000 = 682,350$  or say 700,000 Calories.

This method of calculation seems to us to have no advantage whatever over saying that a man's needs are 3000 per day, a boy of 14's 3000, an adult woman's 2500, a girl of 10's 2400 and adding these figures. But perhaps the method is held to be of value when different occupations are to be taken into account.

It is known that *on the average* the needs of an agricultural labourer

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 269.

<sup>2</sup> All later scales quite rightly give a much higher assessment for adolescent boys.

are more than those of a professional man. The agricultural labourer's "man value" is often taken at 1.3. Suppose that among the male non-teaching staff of the school considered there is a gardener. Then we should have to separate out this staff into  $4 \times 1.00$  and  $1 \times 1.30$  and make their "man value" 5.3 instead of 5.00. We cannot see any particular gain in this method of computation.

In former editions of this book we have given a few of the more popular of the tables used, and anyone interested in them may find them there. We have come to the conclusion that the index should be discarded because (i) it tells us nothing new, (ii) it hardly shortens any calculation, (iii) it applies only to Calories, but there is a danger that it may be applied to first-class protein, calcium,<sup>1</sup> iron and vitamin intakes and even the cost of living. It is a waste of time and energy to have an index, or man value, for each of the essential principles of diet, (iv) it is based on an assumption or set of assumptions which bear little relation to fact—of which see later, and (v) it makes dietetics appear more "scientific" than it is.

Scales of Calorie values based on "man values" are suspicious commodities. This is unfortunate, for that suspicion corrodes the value of all the work done on group diets from the First World War until the publication of Lord Boyd Orr's book, *Food, Health and Income*, 1937. We have to take them "for what they are worth," and their worth depends upon values largely subjective. It is a fact that the family or group diet should be investigated via the individual diets of each member of the group. This will receive further confirmation when we study factors of diet other than Calories.

Despite these considerations, it is essential for practical purposes that some yardstick should be adopted. A standard may be wrong and unscientific, but it is better than none at all. All standards in dietetics are based to a great extent upon guess-work influenced by personal predilections, and are therefore open to suspicion. But it must be remembered that the guess-work is that of intelligent scientific men trained in dietetics and therefore more likely to be near the truth than the guess-work of the layman. The guesses we are choosing to hold up for inspection and use are those of the National Research Council of the United States. After all, the science of dietetics has flourished much longer and more fully in the United States than in any other country, and that Council is more likely to be nearer the truth than one in any other country. Although we think it satisfactory this is a personal impression only.

Here it is for Calories:

<sup>1</sup> One well-known dietitian fell into the error of applying the index to calcium needs. The Calorie "index" for a child of 3 may be 0.5 but its calcium index may be 1.25 and its cost of living index 0.75.

Man (70 kilos or 11 stone)	Children,	1-3	1200
Sedentary . . . . . 2500		4-6	1600
Moderately active . . . 3000		7-9	2000
Very active . . . . . 4000		10-12	2500
Woman (56 kilos or 8 stone 11 lb.)	Girls,	13-15	2800
Sedentary . . . . . 2100		16-20	2400
Moderately active . . . 2500	Boys,	13-15	3200
Very active . . . . . 3000		16-18	3800

The way to use this table is not to apply it in any hard and fast way. It represents average values only. If a group of people on the average are taking Calories equal to the American recommendations, or even 10 per cent. less, their diet may be considered satisfactory, so far as the Calories are concerned. This is not true, as we shall see, for individuals. One may be taking 30 per cent. below the recommended figure and yet be overfed, and another 50 per cent. more without taking too much. That, at least, is the deduction we make from individual Calorie intakes dealt with in more detail below.

*Group Dietaries Continued.* The *Budgetary Method* is used more to ascertain whether the income of a family is sufficient to give it a satisfactory diet rather than to discover whether it actually does. The investigator has to estimate the family income and all the necessary outgoings for rent, insurance, clothing, light, fuel, burial clubs, etc., and see if the balance left after such necessary expenditure is sufficient to purchase an adequate diet. It is quite possible to assess the minimal cost of a satisfactory diet in any town given the market prices in that town at the time of the investigation. This was shown in the British Medical Association's report in 1933, and confirmed in 1954.<sup>1</sup> Social science surveys use the British Medical Association figures and multiply them by some factor representing the rise in the cost of living since 1933. This is wrongheaded, since the British Medical Association figures are almost pre-vitamin figures, and views concerning nutritional needs have altered in the course of more than twenty years. The figures should be calculated afresh for each investigation for the time and place of the investigation and by a dietitian resident in, or at least conversant with the social conditions of, that locality.

Such investigations are useful in assessing the needs of people receiving public assistance. For example, supposing the bread-winner of a family is incapacitated by tuberculosis and removed to a sanatorium, what public assistance should be given to the family while he is recovering? It is clearly absurd to give so little that after the necessary overhead charges are met there is not enough left for adequate food. That would push the other members of the family down the slope towards tuberculosis. It is absurd, too, to fix the rents in a new housing

<sup>1</sup> MEIKLEJOHN, A. P. (1954). *Lancet*, 1, 1284.

area so high that families living in them have too little to spend on food. Morbidity rates on a new estate have been shown to be higher than in the slum property from which the families have moved and the probability is that the increased rent reduced the available balance for food. *Local authorities need the help and advice of the dietitian in many of their undertakings.*

The budgetary method has also produced much evidence in favour of family allowances. To-day it is a commonplace that the main causes of malnutrition throughout the world are backward agriculture, often aggravated by malaria, hookworm, etc., and human fecundity.<sup>1</sup> Where, in this country, the family is large it may actually be the case that the money available for food, after rent, light and fuel and clothing and insurance are accounted for, is not sufficient to buy an adequate amount of Calories.

Which method of investigation of a diet should be adopted must depend upon circumstance. The individual method is the most accurate, but it has its drawbacks when the diet of an institution is investigated over a period of time. The subjects of the investigation may leave the institution, and a false picture of the change introduced by a change of management be given, even if the greatest care to choose comparable individuals be taken. The housekeeping method will be naturally preferred in dealing with an institution or a family if the bookkeeping in that group is accurate and reliable. The budgetary method will be used by schools of social science where rapidity and rough results are all that are necessary. The investigator, as the pupils of one of us have found, must adapt methods to the investigation in hand.

**Basal Metabolism.** We have so far been discussing the heat given out by the body in ordinary conditions of life, and have given more than a hint, which I be justified later, that there is as yet no fixed quantum of heat output, which we can say is "correct" for any individual. We have indicated that in the normal person who is neither gaining weight nor losing it—who in other words is in equilibrium—the output of Calories exactly equals the intake of potential Calories in the food assimilated. And we have given an account of means by which the output of Calories can be measured and the putative intake of Calories can be measured from the input.

We naturally ask, is there anything fixed and constant in the energy output of an individual, from which we can build up a quantitative science of dietetics? The answer is that Basal Metabolism provides the indication that there is.

What happens to the body when there is (i) an insufficient input, and (ii) no input at all (i.e. starvation)? In both cases the body is forced

<sup>1</sup> See reports by the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations and also *Report of the Committee on Nutrition*, British Medical Association, 1950.

to consume its own muscles or its fat and carbohydrate depots to meet the inevitable demands for energy. Whenever the body receives less Calories than it gives out there is a loss of weight and we utilize this fact when we are wanting to get rid of an excess of body weight. (The matter will be discussed in a later chapter under the treatment of obesity.) What concerns us now is basal metabolism, i.e. the inevitable loss of heat from the living body when at rest, and its relation to total metabolism. Do these give any theoretical figure for the output of Calories per day?

The animal body, unlike the non-living machine, needs fuel for its maintenance and repair, even when at rest. The body never is at rest completely, even when in a state of extreme quiescence. The heart pumps blood against pressure through arteries and capillaries. The chest muscles do mechanical work in respiration. Probably even the muscle tone of the striped muscles consumes energy which needs replacing. Energy is needed for the secretion of fluids by the body, e.g. saliva, sweat, and urine, and also for some of the chemical transformations which occur in the body. There is therefore a loss of energy from the body at rest and this loss is expressed as a loss of heat.

This inevitable production of heat when at rest is the base-line, the jumping-off ground, of metabolism. It is presumably its irreducible minimum. A whole literature has grown up round the study of this irreducible minimum which is termed "basal metabolism." (For the human being the basal metabolism is taken to be the output measured in Calories of the body in a state of complete rest some twelve hours after the last meal. The time most convenient for the estimation is in the morning after the night's sleep. The subject of the experiment is placed in a Calorimeter and his heat output measured over a period of one to two hours. The daily basal metabolism is calculated from the result obtained. Experiments upon animals (swine) suggest that the body does not reach its basal output quite so soon as twelve hours after the last meal, but the results are sufficiently near the basal value to be of great practical use. For details of the methods of estimation of the basal metabolism, readers are referred to the original treatises on the subject.<sup>1</sup> What we have to consider now is the influence upon basal metabolism of such factors as height, weight, and skin area, of age and sex and of the endocrine organs.

#### **Influence of Height, Weight and Skin Area upon Basal Metabolism.**

It was natural to assume that the loss of heat from the body would vary directly as the area of the skin, for the skin regulates heat loss. The greater the area of skin the greater the loss in relation to the bulk of the body. A tall thin person has a greater area of skin in relation to his

<sup>1</sup> Du Bois, E. F. (1936), *Basal Metabolism in Health and Disease*, Baillière, Tindall & Cox. See also ADAMS and POULTON. (1932), *Jour. Physiol.*, 77. Proc. i.

bulk than a short stout man. A sphere has the smallest area of any solid in relation to its volume and the more nearly spherical a person is the less area he has to dispose of his surplus heat. And, in fact, when it came to be measured carefully the basal metabolism *did* vary as the skin area and not as the body weight. Owing to the work of such physiologists as Rubner, Graham Lusk and Du Bois it is accepted that the correlation is very close indeed. It is not only true of man but of animals so different as mice, dogs and horses. The output of heat in all cases is approximately 1000 Calories per square metre skin area per day, so long as the subjects are in the "post absorptive state" and at rest.

Basal metabolism, then, varies directly with skin area and it would seem that here we have something fundamental in nutrition, though it may be difficult to explain how the relation comes about. It has nothing to do with Newton's law of cooling which states that the loss of heat from a body in a cool environment varies with the area of the body and the difference between its temperature and that of its surroundings, for basal metabolism falls but very little in the tropics where the air temperature may even be *above* that of the body. Basal metabolism of a person is much the same at the Equator as in Europe or North America.

Despite the vast amount of experimental evidence that the close relation of basal metabolism to skin area holds good, physiologists have always been a little uncomfortable in accepting it. Some have even preferred to calculate it compared with body weight, though in that case the relation is obviously not a direct one. Clearly the metabolism of adipose tissue and of bone cannot be anywhere near so great as that of muscles or glands. (The temperature of the liver, where so much chemical activity is invariably going on, is one degree higher than that of the brain or even of the rest of the abdominal cavity.) Therefore we should expect that a man with heavy bones and much adipose tissue would produce heat at a slower rate than a slender man with light bones and little fat even if the skin area be the same. Until recently there have been no means of measuring the proportion of bone and adipose tissue in relation to the active tissues of the body, but to-day we are in a position to make these determinations. The fat is measured by the specific gravity of the body and the lean body mass by estimating the total and extracellular fluid of the body. In the experiments so far made it has been found that basal metabolism is correlated more closely with the lean body mass than with the area of the skin. On this point the newer work on the subject should be consulted.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See BROŽEK and KEYS, A. (1950), *Nut. Abst. and Rev.*, **20**, 247. GAM, S. N., CLARK, L. C., and PORTRAY, KENNEDY. (1953), *J. appl. Physiol.*, **6**, 163, and MILLER, A. T., BLYTH, C. S. (1953), *ibid.* **5**, 311. Also see BEATTIE, J. and HERBERT, PHILIPPA, H. (1947), *Br. J. Nutr.*, **1**, 185. DAHLSTRÖM, H. (1950), *Acta Physiol. Scand.*, **21**, supp. 71 and BERNKE, (1953), *Ann. New York Acad. Sc.*, **55**, art 6.

None the less basal metabolism shows sufficient correlation with skin area to be of practical clinical value, and this correlation is used regularly in hospital work in diagnosis of hypo- and hyperthyroidism, etc. It is much easier to estimate the skin area than the lean body mass, for it bears a relation to the body weight and height which are easily measured. The relation has been reduced to a set of figures and to a nomogram from which, knowing the height, weight, age and sex of a person we can read off the skin area and the normal basal metabolism. (See Fig. 2.) The reliability of such estimates is in the region of 5 to 10 per cent., and the Calorie values per square metre of skin in basal metabolism are fairly constant, not only from individual to individual, but from race to race and species to species.

The figure for an adult male is approximately 40 Calories per square metre per hour or 960 per day. Taking the skin area of an average adult male as 1.75 square metres, this represents a basal metabolism of

$$40 \times 1.75 \times 24 = 1680 \text{ Calories per day.}$$

**Influence of Sex and Age upon Basal Metabolism.** As indicated immediately above sex and age influence basal metabolism. It is lower in the adult female, viz. 37 Calories per square metre per hour or 1350 Calories for a woman of 1.5 square metres of skin area, though some workers believe that it makes no difference whether the lean body belongs to a man or a woman.<sup>1</sup>

Once an individual has reached adult age the figure remains very nearly constant. It does, however, fall gradually, till in old age it has decreased by 10 per cent. This is true of both women and men.

On the other hand, the basal metabolism of infants, children and adolescents shows a very different picture. It starts at about 30 and rapidly rises till at 6 years it reaches a peak of 60 Calories per square metre—a rate 50 per cent. greater than that of the adult. Thence it falls fairly rapidly at first and then more slowly till it reaches the adult figure of 40. According to Du Bois, there is a second peak at or about the age of puberty when the Calorie figure rises to 50.

In general we see that the vigorously-growing tissues of the young have a much more active metabolism than the mature tissues of an adult, even though the body is resting and fasting. This accords with the fact that the food requirements of the young have no direct relation to age or to weight. That there should be a rise in the basal metabolism in adolescence is not unexpected. It is a period of rapid growth in the

<sup>1</sup> Is there any fundamental reason why female protoplasm with its XX chromosomes should have a different efficiency from that of male protoplasm with XY chromosomes? From anatomical investigations and data of athletic prowess it seems that there is. It would be interesting to have calorimetric data of androgynes, of bisexual pigs, of freemartins and intersexual birds and investigations of the oxygen intake of slices of tissues under the influence of œstrone and testosterone respectively.

first place and in the second there is the stimulating effect upon metabolism of endocrine organs, particularly thyroid and pituitary. So far as experiment has gone, this pubertal rise has not been observed in animals. A nomograph for finding the normal basal metabolism of a person of given sex, height, weight, and age is given in Fig. 2.

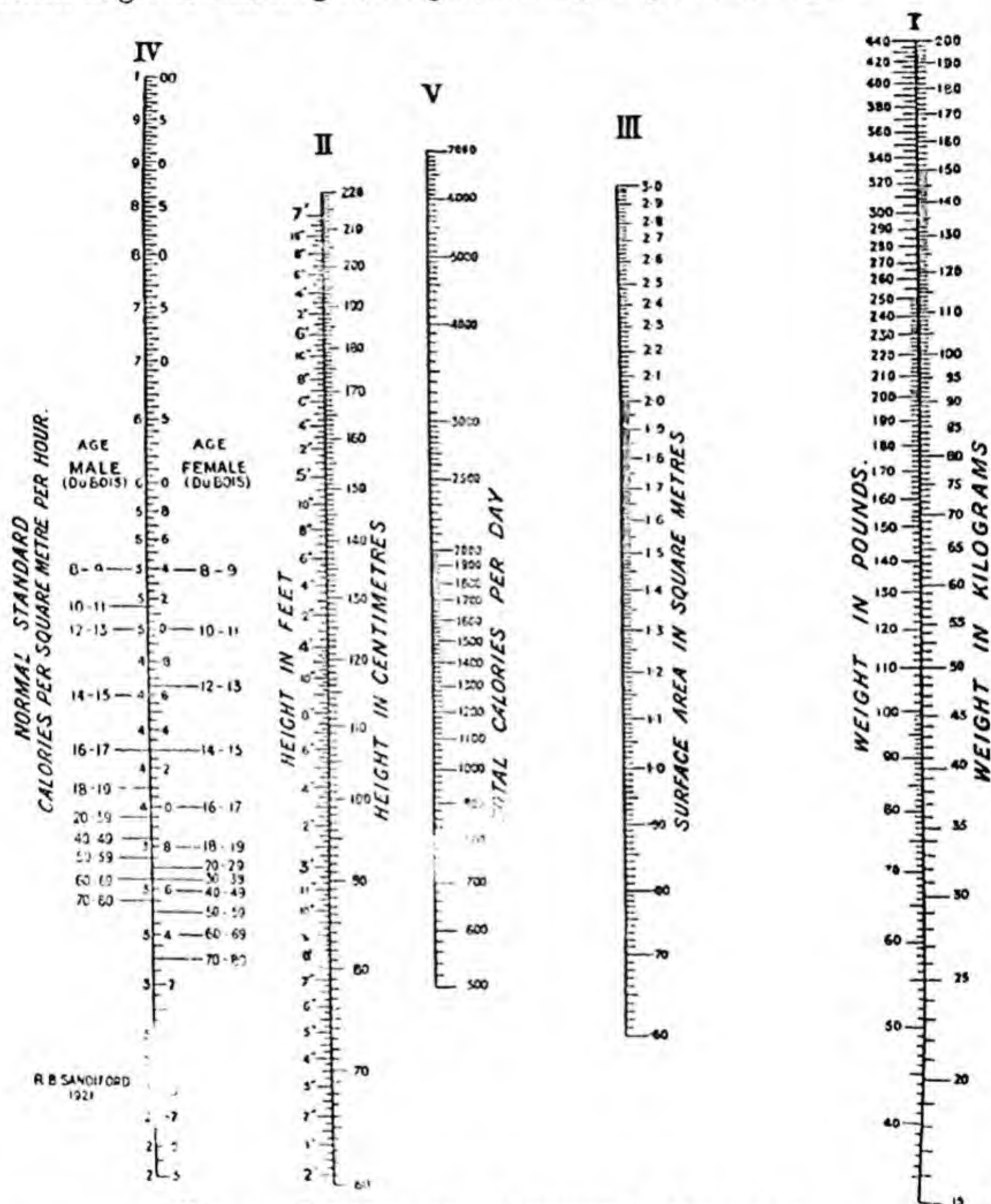


FIG. 2.—BOOTHBY AND SANDIFORD'S NOMOGRAPH

The weight in pounds or kilogrammes is shown on Scale I. The height in inches and centimetres is shown on Scale II. The surface area in square metres is shown on Scale III. The normal standard calories per square metre of body surface per hour are shown on Scale IV. The total calories per diem are shown on Scale V.

**Directions.**—Keep the chart flat. Use a flexible ruler with a straight edge, or a strip of stiff paper such as a postcard. (A) Locate the position of the weight and height on Scales I and II respectively. Apply the straight edge of the ruler and note where it cuts Scale III. Read the figure on Scale III, which will give the surface area of the body in square metres. (B) Locate the surface area on Scale III, and the normal standard Calories per square metre per hour for the age and sex of the subject on Scale IV. Apply the straight edge of the ruler, and see where it cuts Scale V. Read this figure, which gives the total basal calories per 24 hours.

**Other Factors influencing Basal Metabolism.** That the relation between area and basal metabolism is not quite so constant as has been suggested above is shown by the fact that the *previous history* of the person or animal under experiment does have some influence upon the basal metabolism.<sup>1</sup> A period of under-nutrition lowers the basal metabolism<sup>2</sup>; a period, of heavy exercise raises it. A holiday in the country raised the basal metabolism of the experimental animals of the Russell Sage Institute, though it soon returned to the normal in the surroundings of New York. Doubtless this is true of man. Sleep, if deep, results in a lowering of the basal metabolism by some 5 or 6 per cent.

The influence of such a gland as the thyroid is great. Of all the endocrine organs it is the one which has greatest influence on metabolism. In cretinous and myxœdematous patients this falls 10, 20 and even 40 per cent. below the normal, and in hyperthyroidal persons it may rise to even 100 per cent. above the normal. So marked is the influence of the thyroid that the measurement of basal metabolism is used in diagnosing thyroid disease and the effect of treatment upon that gland. The pituitary anterior lobe and the suprarenal also have great influence upon the basal metabolic rate.

To sum up this section upon basal metabolism, i.e. the metabolism of the body in a state of rest 12 or more hours after food intake, we may say that—

- (1) It is approximately constant for the individual.
- (2) It is constant per square metre body surface for men and animals.
- (3) The amount per square metre per hour is 40 for the adult male and 37 for the adult female.
- (4) The amount falls somewhat with advancing age.
- (5) In children it rises to 60 at the age of six with a second peak of 50 in adolescence.<sup>3</sup>
- (6) Previous history has some influence upon it.
- (7) Pathological conditions of the body, particularly thyroid, pituitary, suprarenal (cortex and medulla) disorders and fever, influence it very markedly.

## BASAL METABOLISM AND TOTAL METABOLISM

That total metabolism, i.e. the total energy output of the day on full diet, bears some relation to basal metabolism, hardly needs stating. Total metabolism includes the work done in carrying one's body

<sup>1</sup> e.g. After a period of undernutrition it is raised even when the body weight has returned to normal. KEYS, A. (1948), *J. Am. med. Ass.*, 138, 500.

<sup>2</sup> See WISHART. (1934), *Journ. Physiol.*, 82, 189.

<sup>3</sup> NITSCHKE and SCHNEIDER. (1932), *Zeit. f. Kinderheil*, 50, 1, find on giving a vitamin D concentrate the basal metabolism rises.

## DIET IN NORMAL LIFE

## ESTIMATED DISTRIBUTION OF CALORIE EXPENDITURE IN BOYS OF DIFFERENT AGES. (AFTER HOLT).

Age.				Basal Needs.	Wasted in Excreta.	Growth.	Activity.	Total.
1 year	.	.	.	500	150	200	150	1000
2 years	.	.	.	650	150	200	150	1150
3 "	.	.	.	700	150	200	200	1250
4 "	.	.	.	750	150	200	250	1350
5 "	.	.	.	800	150	200	300	1450
6 "	.	.	.	800	150	200	400	1550
7 "	.	.	.	850	150	200	520	1720
8 "	.	.	.	920	200	200	630	1950
9 "	.	.	.	1020	200	200	680	2100
10 "	.	.	.	1080	200	200	740	2220
11 "	.	.	.	1100	250	220	880	2450
12 "	.	.	.	1100	300	280	1020	2700
13 "	.	.	.	1180	320	280	1220	3000
14 "	.	.	.	1300	350	400	1350	3400
15 "	.	.	.	1400	400	600	1400	3800
16 "	.	.	.	1500	380	420	1680	3980
17 "	.	.	.	1550	300	250	1720	3820
18 "	.	.	.	1550	300	100	1630	3580
19 "	.	.	.	1550	300	—	1580	3430
20 "	.	.	.	1600	350	—	1300	3250

about and so varies with the *weight* of the body. Basal metabolism varies with the *area* of the body which has a mathematical relation to the height and weight. Consequently, total metabolism is influenced by basal metabolism. Clearly the *physical work* undertaken immensely influences the total metabolism. Heavy physical work entails an output of energy which must be made good, either by the consumption of food or of the tissues of the body. Therefore an increase of physical work entails an increased consumption of food.

There are thus three sources of the energy output per day, viz.:

1. The basal metabolism.
2. The energy output due to being up and about.
3. The energy output due to mechanical work.

Perhaps we ought to add to these for the sake of completeness:

4. The loss of heat in the excreta.
  5. The endothermic loss in the growing young due to growth (Holt).
- The table above due to him gives a rough average set of figures useful as indications of what may be expected rather than actual fact.

The basal needs we have already considered. The "up and about"

needs are about 33 per cent. higher than the basal metabolism. The third theoretically depends only upon the mechanical work done, although in this we have to consider training and temperament of the person under consideration. If we consider the training perfect and ignore the temperament and loss in excreta, the sum-total, it is tempting to argue, should work out somewhat as follows, assuming 8 hours' "up and about," and 8 hours' mechanical work:

8 hours' sleep at a basal metabolism of 1680 Calories	=	560	Calories.
8 hours "up and about" at a rate of 33 per cent. higher	=	747	"
8 hours' work at 940 Calories plus metabolism at the			
"up and about figure"	=	1687	"
		<hr/>	
	Total	=	2994 or

about 3000 Calories per day.

The third item needs some explanation. It has been estimated that a moderate amount of muscular work represents 100,000 kilogramme-metres (324 foot-tons) for one day.<sup>1</sup> The heat equivalent of this is 235 Calories. Now no machine using fuel can transform all the energy of oxidation of that fuel into work. In fact the efficiency of the most perfect machine working between ordinary temperatures cannot rise above about one-third, i.e. it transforms only one-third of the heat energy used into mechanical work and wastes the remaining two-thirds. Most engines are very much more wasteful than this, e.g. the efficiency of the railway engine is about 10 per cent. only. If we make the assumption that the efficiency of the body is at the high level of one quarter, the performance of mechanical work in 8 hours equivalent to 235 Calories entails an expenditure of  $235 \times 4 = 940$  Calories.<sup>2</sup> To this we must add the energy output of the basal metabolism and for 8 hours being "up and about" = 747. Therefore, while doing mechanical work equivalent to 235 Calories the body must expend

$$940 + 747 = 1687,$$

which accounts for the third item in our sum.

This figure of 3000 Calories represents the theoretical daily output of a man doing eight hours' moderate physical work per day and corresponds with considerable nicety with the average intake as discovered in numerous investigations. If we add 10 per cent. to

<sup>1</sup> A measurement of the work done by a long-distance cyclist during 8 hours' pedalling on an ergometer gave the result of 370,000 kilogramme-metres. WIS-HART. (1934), *Journ. Physiol.*, 82, 189.

<sup>2</sup> In experiments upon trained cyclists pedalling against known brake resistances in a calorimeter, Benedict and Cathcart showed that every extra Calorie of work needed 3.343 extra Calories of energy—an efficiency of nearly 30 per cent. Quoted in *Med. Res. Council Spec. Rep.* (1918), No. 13.

account for the loss in digestion and utilization of food, we see that the edible portion of the food should represent approximately 3300 Calories.

It is indeed tempting to measure the Calorie output by means of gaseous exchange of people engaged in various avocations and activities, to add up throughout the day the Calorie output during these activities, and then to state that the food requirements for such and such people should yield Calories to that total plus 10 per cent. to allow for inevitable losses.

Thus, sitting at rest has been measured to need 30 extra Calories per hour; dressing and undressing, 50 Calories; running, 500; swimming, 550; playing the piano, 55; or in the case of playing Liszt's music, 140. Dancing the polka heads the list among the dances. Sewing and peeling potatoes demand 40; writing, 10-30; carpentry, 137-176; sawing wood, 400; and coal-mining, 114 to 205, according to the nature of the work.<sup>1</sup> Using such figures we can estimate the theoretical output of anyone if we know his day's activities and thence estimate the Calories he should take as food. And doubtless such figures would show some sort of correlation with reality if we accept them *as an average figure only*. Thus we might assess the coal miner's work as needing 3500 Calories per day and if we were feeding all the workers in a mine all the time we should be wise to see that the average Calorie value of the diet fed reached a level of  $3500 \div 10 \text{ per cent.} = 3850$  Calories per day. It would be foolish to insist that everyone engaged in mining took his 3850 Calories or that one who took less was under-eating and that one whose intake was near the 5000 level was greedy. Figures will be given later to show how absurd such an attitude would be.

Meanwhile we must record the general opinion that the average Calorie intake for the adult male should be about 3000 and that of the adult female, 2500 (or it may be 2200), but this figure is by no means universally accepted. There are always people, even scientists, who think that it might be lower. The military mind seems to think that wars may be won by 'pulling in one's belt' despite evidence to the contrary. It is almost certain that one factor in the winning of the war of 1914-18 was the better feeding of the armies and the populace of the United Nations as against that of the central European countries. Whereas we in Great Britain were obtaining more than 3000 Calories per head per day, the official (and therefore putative) figure for Germany was 1600, and in actual fact much less. In 1936, thirty-three potential recruits to the British army, turned down for physical unfitness, were won back to normality by a special course of training

<sup>1</sup> Figures collected by J. R. MARRACK, (1942), *Food and Planning*, Gollancz, London, 35, 36. See also PASSMORE, R. (1954), reported *Lancet*, (1954), **I**, 41. Miners at rest evolved 1.5 Calories per minute, walking to the coal face 5.0 and working at the coal face 7.5 Calories. Even listening to the Boat Race affected the Calorie output. PASSMORE, R., *et alii*, 1952, *Brit. J. Nut.*, **6**, 253.

plus a diet which supplied 4738 Calories per day. At the end of three months twenty-four were up to the physical requirements and six were on the border line.<sup>1</sup>

Moreover, experiments made by Benedict, which have been quoted to uphold the idea that 3000 Calories per day is luxurious do not seem to bear that interpretation. Two squads of students cut down their food intake to about 2000 Calories per day for a period of fifteen weeks. The effect was to lower the body weight till a new equilibrium was reached and there was a fall in basal metabolism. This showed that it is possible to keep a constant, though relatively low bodyweight, on a lower Calorie intake. Further, some of the squad could maintain athletic ability of no mean order. But they were anæmic, they felt the cold more than fellow students, demanded excessive bedclothes even though sleeping in a centrally heated bedroom, were disinclined to patronize the warmed indoor swimming bath, cut down involuntarily the amount they walked, and *could not keep their minds off food*. This does not suggest that a Calorie intake of 2000 per day is satisfactory for American college students who to some extent could regulate their extra activities. Much less does it suggest that 2000 is enough for the average man who has to perform muscular work to schedule.<sup>2</sup>

It is true that the League of Nations Technical Commission assessed the minimal figure for male *and* female at 2400 Calories, but the male's need was subject to various additions to compensate for activity, raising it somewhat for light work and for moderate work to between 2800 and 3200. The Ministry of Food during the war of 1939-45 aimed at 3600 as a gross figure.

It is clear that there is no absolute agreement Nor is this astonishing. We have not yet made up our minds at what we are aiming, nor do we know yet how what we may be aiming at is to be obtained. Do we wish merely to keep people alive, or to obtain the maximal physical efficiency from a given amount of Calories, regarding man as a machine, or to ensure the "buoyant health," which seems to be the goal of American dietitians? Should we encourage the production of the small wiry person or the giant; is 5 ft. 7 in. our goal or 6 ft.?

We are not saying this to decry any attempts at fixing the Calorie figure. We are sure that on the whole where people take 3000 Calories or more per day the public health is sounder, the morale higher, the expectation of life longer. The diet of Southern India and Assam yields about 2000 Calories per day, though Northern India has a more

<sup>1</sup> Quoted from MARRACK. *Op. cit.*, 157.

<sup>2</sup> For the results of a similar experiment made by Ancel Keys and his colleagues in 1943-44 on an intake of 1570 Calories per day see *The Biology of Human Starvation*. Oxford Univ. Press 1950, and citation in *Lancet* (1951). 1, 95. A brief account of this work is given by Ancel Keys in *J. Amer. Diet. Ass.* (1936), 22, 582.

generous diet. The expectation of life of a new-born child in India is 27 years while that in England is 61.<sup>1</sup> One important factor in causing that difference is food. Accounts from enemy-occupied Europe told a similar story. France had been obtaining only 1000 Calories per head per day and the health and morale were appalling.<sup>2</sup> In Belgium in 1942 the basic ration was 1230 Calories and tuberculosis increased greatly. In Greece according to Cawadias<sup>3</sup> they "ceased bothering about tuberculosis," other diseases being still more rampant. In Great Britain it is notorious that health during 1939-45 was better than ever before—despite all drawbacks of black-out, ventilation, overwork and anxiety—and part of this must be due to the fact that we kept the Calories up above the 3000 level, though perhaps the main result is due to the better distribution of food, particularly the distribution of milk, among the people.

Calories matter. Deprivation of Calories is starvation. Without water the body dies after a few days. Without Calories it may last some 50 days or even more. Under-supply of Calories provokes a continuous hunger when the mind cannot "keep off the subject of food." In fact if instinct be a guide in the choice of food its clearest effect is in the search for Calories. There seems to be some self-regulating mechanism, often, it is true, overlaid by custom and habit, which guides us in the right choice of the amount necessary. As Du Bois, Marrack and others have pointed out, many people remain constant in body weight for periods of 20 and 30 years as the result of this self-regulating mechanism, and it is Calorie intake which largely governs body weight. And as this mechanism, when allowed to work unfettered by supply and ability to purchase food, seems to set a value around 3000 Calories per day as the figure of choice, we may accept it, for the present, as the desirable though perhaps marginal average figure for the adult male doing light work.

In earlier editions of this work figures were quoted to show that this corresponds with reality where there is no reason for restriction of expenditure on food. The average of figures given in the Medical Research Council's Special Reports from 1917 to 1932 is 3098. Figures collected by Widdowson<sup>4</sup> average 3067.

In 1946-8 an elaborate series of investigations were made in Eire.<sup>5</sup> The results seem to us to suggest that the Calorie intake is not related to need, but rather to the amount families are accustomed to spend on food. Thus even in the slums of Dublin if more than 20s. per head was

<sup>1</sup> ORR. (1943), *Food and the People*, The Pilot Press, London, 45.

<sup>2</sup> *Lancet* (1943), 2, 703.

<sup>3</sup> *Loc. cit.*

<sup>4</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 269.

<sup>5</sup> National Nutrition Survey, Part I, 1948, Part II, 1949; Part III, 1949; Part IV, 1949. Dublin Stationery Office.

spent, the Calorie intake rose to the high figure of 3740. Artisan and middle classes took well over 3000. In the congested districts of Ireland in autumn an astonishing figure of 4000 approximately was reached. In small and large towns the story was the same, and the average for farming families was 3500. We fail to see that instinct leads to any 'correct' standard. What is clear is that restriction of the money spent on food or the availability of food (congested districts in spring) brings the Calorie figure below 3000. Otherwise it rises well above it.

Turning to figures from people engaged in more strenuous livelihoods and avocations we may quote: Lumbermen, Maine, 6995; Miners, Tomsk, 6015; Brickmakers, New England, 7551; Wrestler, Finland, 4662; Wrestler, U.S.A., 4741; Olympic athletes, 4700.

Most of the figures were obtained by the housekeeping method, though some were obtained by the individual method. Now when the people are all of an age and sex—say all adult—no complications are involved in obtaining the average figure. But in many of those given above the sexes and ages are mixed, so the figures are suspect because the method of an "index" to represent the "man value" of women and children has been used. In fact we know as yet but very little about the Calorie intakes of women and children as will be shown later. Consequently the coincidence of the average of the British figures with the magical estimate of 3000 must be viewed with suspicion. We need to start with individual dietaries collected from men, women and children in circumstances in which poverty does not limit choice of food. It might be thought that for men and women we had such figures prior to 1935, and we certainly have had some figures for children in New York and New England. But until the publication of figures for men<sup>1</sup> and women<sup>2</sup> in 1936, and the collection of over 1000 dietaries for children,<sup>3</sup> we had no data for this country which probe the correspondence of reality with the theoretical treatment usually given to the subject. The figures are somewhat shattering to theory.

With the men, though the average figure was 3067, the variations from that mean are very wide, and it is stated by the author that "the adoption of 3000 Calories as the requirement of an individual man may be most misleading."

Perhaps it would be wise to go more closely into these figures and the way in which they were collected. We quote from the original article. "The subjects of this investigation were sixty-three healthy men of the English middle-class and all lived at their homes. Their ages ranged from 18 to 89 years. Sixty of the subjects were in regular employment,

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 269.

<sup>2</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M., and McCANCE, R. A. (1936), *ibid.*, 36, 293.

<sup>3</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1947), *Med. Res. Council Special Report Series*, No. 257.

the remaining three had retired. The occupations, which were very varied, . . . were mainly of a moderately active kind, though about eight might be classed as sedentary and three as very active. None of the subjects was judged to earn an income which was too low to provide him with the food he required, so the dietaries could be considered to be freely chosen so far as money was concerned. They would all probably fall into Orr's three highest income groups.

"Each subject was provided with a spring balance weighing by  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. up to 1 lb., a plate on which to weigh the food and a form on which to enter results. The subjects were interviewed personally in almost every case and the exact procedure to be adopted was explained to them individually. A record was taken of their heights and weights.

"All food eaten during the period of one week was weighed. The weighings were carried out on the edible portion of the food, and where bones, skins of fruit, etc., were included this was stated so that allowance could be made in calculating the results. . . ."

It will be seen that the people concerned relied on their appetites and instincts to guide choice in the amount of food eaten and its nature. There was no stinting or deprivation due to poverty; no reason to suppose that anything but inclination led them to eat the foods they did eat and in the quantities they wanted. Yet though the mean figure was 3067, one took actually less than the "Sewing girl, London, low wage" quoted as an example of undernourishment in earlier editions of this book, viz. 1772, while another took more—20 per cent. more—than a member of a University boat crew, viz. 4955! Moreover, the highest Calorie inputs are not necessarily those of the most strenuous workers and the widest variation occurs among men of similar occupations. The university teacher of 28 years who took 1772 Calories per day was slightly overweight, while the man, one year older, an electrician, who achieved the record figure of 4955, had a normal weight for his height and age. And these were not freak figures. The spread of the individual figures was much that of a probability curve and the standard deviation, 714 Calories. Reputations in dietetics have been wrecked for less than this.

Observations which have been made on diabetic patients of all ages taking insulin show that they can maintain their weight as a rule, year in year out, on diets containing C 130-150 g. P 70-80 g. and F 100 g., and yielding Calories 1770-1850. It is rarely that the Calories of the diet have to be raised above 2000, though this is necessary in the young adolescents or in patients with a wasting disease like tuberculosis.

Summing up the matter, we may say that though the average figure 3067 fits in very well with our theoretical calculations, nothing else does. Although there can be little doubt that *on the average* increase of physical work and increased height and weight run parallel with

increase of Calorie needs, there is absolutely no ground for rigorously applying this to the individual. One man on moderate work may be consuming food appropriate to very hard work and not be putting on weight; another on light work may consume food 25 per cent. *below* the League of Nations figure and yet be putting on weight. In fact, so far as we have gone in dietetics, it is difficult when dealing with the individual male to see any rhyme or reason in his Calorie intake. There must be reasons why one man is pleonectic as regards food and another meionectic, but we do not yet know them. It is a disservice to pretend that such variations between individuals do not exist, or that we can explain them. And such considerations throw the gravest doubt on the usefulness of the "coefficient" or "index" (see p. 37).

**Fact and Theory in the Calorie Input in Women.** We have seen that the Calorie input in men when measured individually shows an enormous variation. We have been given evidence that the "average" man's input is 3000 Calories approximately. We have been given the guess that a woman's average input should be, on Lusk's and Cathcart and Murray's scales, 0.83 times that of a male, i.e. 2500 per day.

When the input of Calories in women is estimated individually<sup>1</sup> it is found that the spread of inputs is almost as great as that of the men above quoted. The lowest figure was 1453 per day, and this was the amount taken by a secretary leading an active life with a body nearly 12 per cent. *above* the normal standard weight and height. Nine out of the 63 women investigated were leading active lives on intakes of less than 1700 calories per day. "Three of these were housewives, two were secretaries, two were cooks, one a dietitian, and one a student, all people with free access to food." Of those on a high input, 2900-3100, two were markedly underweight for their heights, one just slightly overweight and one, a cook, 6.1 per cent. overweight. Again there is no rhyme or reason in the figures so far as can be seen.

The average input of calories was nearly 2200 Calories per day, so that if we place our credit in "coefficients" or "indexes" a woman becomes 0.73 of an adult male, instead of the 0.83 of Graham Lusk and Cathcart and Murray. It is true that the latter did find, in five individual cases they investigated, a coefficient of 0.7 for the woman, but they preferred to calculate the family intake "per man" on the old conventional basis of 0.83. Estimates of the Calorie input by women University students at King's College of Household and Social Science, 1939, gave figures usually below the 2400 level but in one student of 3000. When, however, we note that in Widdowson and McCance's figures the index runs from 0.48 to 1.03 in individual women we may wonder if the index has any value whatever. Each individual is a law to him- or herself, and so long as body-weight and activity appear to

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M., and McCANCE, R. A. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 293.

be unimpaired we cannot say that such and such a diet, deviating widely from the mean, is wrong or unsuitable.

In this discussion we have been in danger of assuming that what people do, on the average, in the way of diet is right. If the average male, not in want, takes 3000 Calories and the average female, in similar circumstances, takes 2200, then those figures become in some way right and sacrosanct. If there is any truth in the idea that our food habits are instinctive, there might be some reason in paying attention to these figures. Perhaps there is. Introspection does seem to show that so long as one is healthy and leading a healthy existence one's appetite leads one to eat an amount of food, if *simple*, commensurate with one's Calorie need. On the other hand, fashion in woman in the search for a definite silhouette, a "refined" attitude towards food or a desire for attention on the part of solicitous relatives and friends may, and frequently does, upset the instincts. We have no *a priori* reason for assuming that any of the figures obtained by observation upon man or woman are optimal figures. We do not know if all these women had taken more food (or even, possibly, less) they would not have been in better health. All we can say is that each individual diet was apparently "safe" and not obviously leading to trouble. For the present we may accept the figures 3000 and 2200 as respectively satisfactory for the average man and woman, while always admitting that the true input for any individual may range far from these means without danger of under- or overfeeding.

We have here an anomaly which needs scientific investigation. We have seen that estimates of basal metabolism do show some uniformity in that the Calorie output per square metre of body surface or per lean body mass varies but little from the average in different individuals. Anything 10 per cent. on either side of the average figure throws doubt upon the health of the person with that variation. Yet when we investigate total metabolism we find that each person is a law unto himself. He may be 40 per cent. below the norm or 60 per cent. above it and yet appear perfectly healthy.

We must assume that man as a machine for doing physical work outside that for keeping the machine alive is a most unstandardized piece of machinery, and unpredictable till we know much more of his endocrine, nervous and—dare we breathe it in a work on dietetics—emotional make-up. It will take much more research upon individuals as individuals before we can resolve this anomaly. So far we have shut our eyes to it in spite of the publication by Graham Lusk of curves representing the Calorie intakes of three boys of different types as in Fig. 3.

**Theory and Fact in the Calorie Input in Children.** In view of the discussion we have had above concerning the index for children and

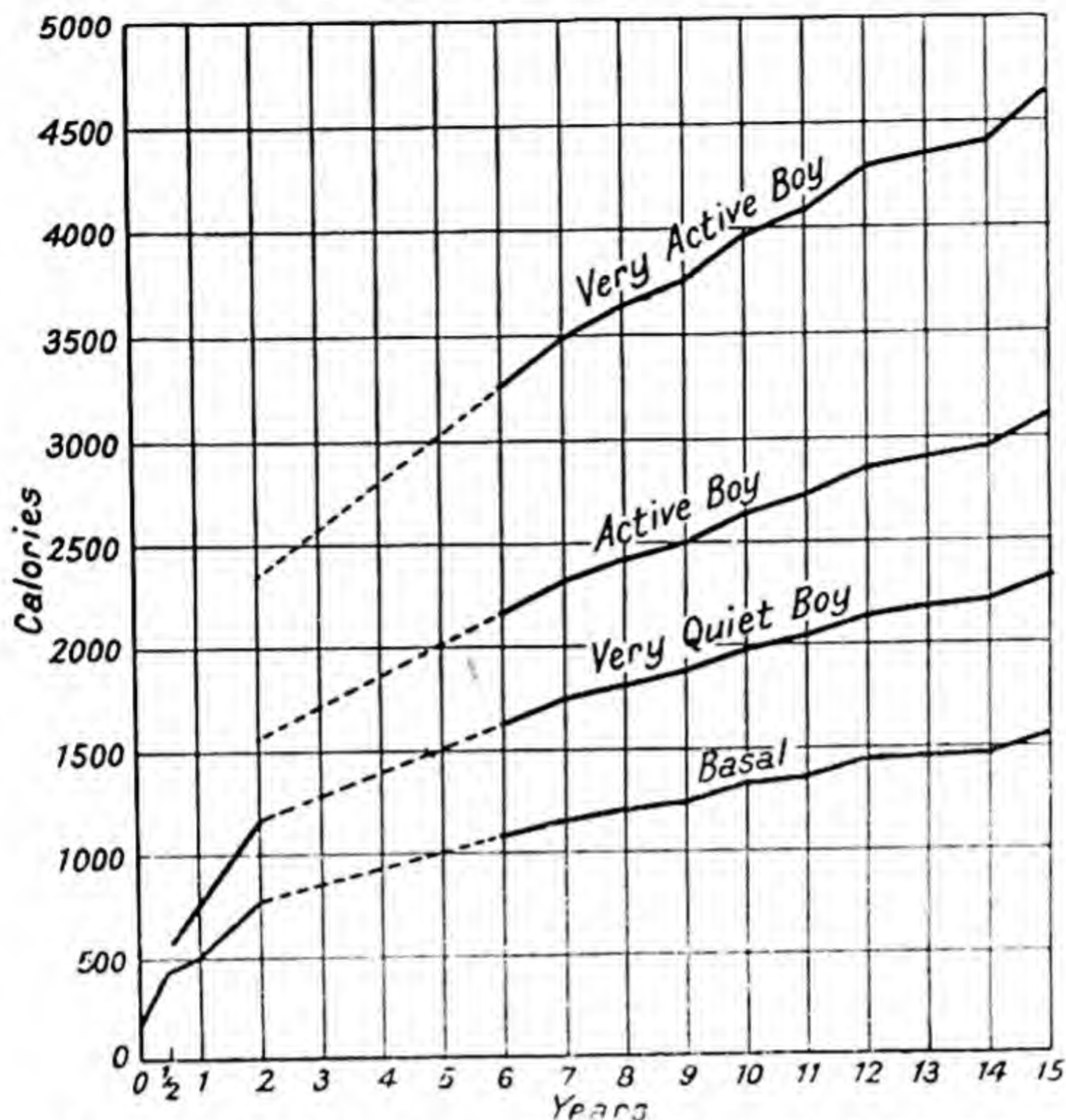


FIG. 3.—CALORIE INTAKE OF BOYS OF DIFFERENT ACTIVITIES.

adolescents it may come as a shock and surprise that these indexes are based on little experimental work. So far as is known, with the exception of the figures of Holt and Fales already quoted, there have been published no consistent observations for any large number of individual children.

Figures have been collected in this country of the inputs of over 1000 middle-class children of all ages up to 18 by the individual method in the years immediately preceding the outbreak of the war of 1939–45.<sup>1</sup> They are sufficient to show that it is impossible to apply the index method of estimating Calorie needs to individual children. At any age we may find a child taking twice the amount of Calories (and also protein, etc.) that another child in that group takes. We give, with all reservations of a scientific nature, the *average* Calorie inputs at each age investigated, side by side with those of Holt and Fales,<sup>2</sup> the League of Nations Technical Commission, and the National Research Council, U.S.A. A graph plotting Dr. Elsie Widdowson's figures against the American estimates is also given.

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1947), *Med. Res. Coun. Special Report Series*, No. 257.

<sup>2</sup> HOLT AND FALES (1921), *Amer. Journ. Dis. Child.*, 11, 1.

Age.	Widdowson.		Holt and Fales.		League of Nations.		National Research Council, U.S.A.	
	Boys.	Girls.	Boys.	Girls.	Boys and Girls.	Boys. with allowance for activity.	Girls.	Boys. Girls.
1	1154	1152	950	940	840			1200
2	1406	1431	1135	1110	1000			1200
3	1691	1533	1275	1230	1200			1200
4	1839	1718	1380	1300	1200			1600
5	1732	1708	1490	1410	1400		2040	1600
6	1940	1985	1600	1520	1400		2040	1600
7	2178	1995	1745	1660	1680		2280	2000
8	2170	2088	1920	1815	1680		2280	2000
9	2443	2165	2110	1990	1920		2520	2000
10	2501	2345	2330	2195	1920		2520	2500
11	2521	2292	2510	2520	2160	2760 or more <sup>1</sup>	2760	2500
12	2630	2370	2735	2860	2400	3000 or more <sup>1</sup>	3000	2500
13	2756	2500	3040	3210	2400	"	"	3200 2800
14	3065	2637	3400	3300	2400	"	"	3200 2800
15	3400	2588	3855	3235	2400	"	"	3200 2800
16	3105	2363	4090	3160	2400	"	"	3800 2400
17	3223	2515	3945	3060	2400	"	"	3800 2400
18	3427	2513	3730	2950	2400	"	"	3800 2400

Before commenting on these tables we may note (i) Widdowson's and Holt and Fales' figures are based on actual measurements of Calorie inputs in educated middle-class children; the former are based on over a thousand observations, the latter on but 100. (ii) Holt and Fales' figures are "smoothed" while those of Widdowson are not. (iii) The League of Nations and the National Research Council's figures are estimates only (i.e. guesses based upon past observations, but still guesses) of what children should take.

We see that, compared with American children, English children do their eating young. They outstrip Americans by at least 200 Calories—400 Calories per day (no mean amount) at each age up to 10. If the English figures are an accurate measure of needs and not due either to greed or maternal solicitude, children fed on the League of Nations scale up to the age of 5 would be somewhat starved and on the American scale hungry up till 10 years of age.

<sup>1</sup> Or more according to activity.

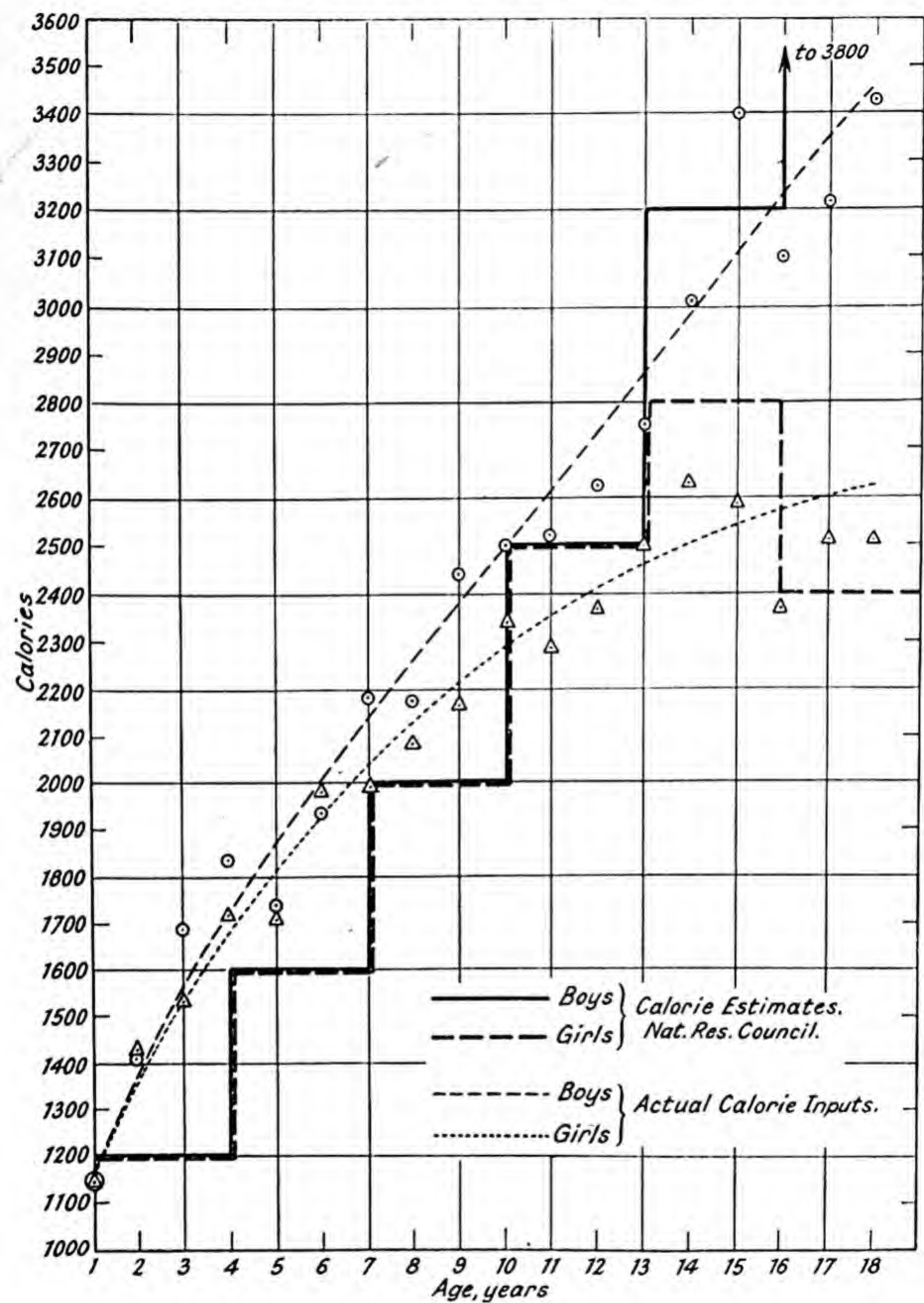


FIG. 4.

It will be noted that an English girl of 10 is already eating as much as her mother and at 18 is still at a high level—i.e. above the League of Nations' and the National Research Council's figures.

On the other hand, adolescence in the boys does not call for such high figures as Holt and Fales and the National Research Council suggest. Thus English boys do not reach the 4000 level of Holt and Fales or the 3800 level of the National Research Council, and are well behind the still higher figures for American boarding-school adolescents given by Gephart.<sup>1</sup> Observations by one of us gave the input of 14 English boarding-school boys ranging in age from 14 years 4 months to 18 years 7 months, average age 16 years 5 months, as 3300 Calories, a close agreement with Widdowson's average figure for the same ages. Although we do not admit that the practice of a section of the public, albeit an educated and well-to-do section, is a guarantee of rightness—an assumption often too lightly made—we consider these average figures of Widdowson a saner standard by which to judge the Calorie input of children than any hitherto published. Even so they must be applied in no Procrustean way to the individual child.

SUMMARY. We have seen in this long chapter that food can be considered from the point of view of its chemical nature or of its use in the body. The first important function of food is to supply energy to the body which can be used either in maintaining the temperature of the body or conversion into mechanical or chemical (or even electrical) work. All can be measured in terms of heat. The chief sources of energy in the food are the fats and carbohydrates, though proteins can be and are utilized in the same way. The energy output of the body can be measured either by direct or by indirect calorimetry via gaseous exchange. The input can be estimated by investigation of the diet and calculation from food analysis tables. Intake equals output in experiments made to investigate this. Consequently to measure approximately the output of a person we may make an inventory and analysis of his diet and calculate his input from food tables. When this is done it is found that for the average man the daily figure is 3000 Calories for the edible portion of his food, or 2700 for intake. As a result we say that the average man's Calorie needs per day is 3000.

To compare families one with another a convention has been adopted that each child and each woman has a need for Calories which is some definite fraction of an adult male's need. To a woman and to each child according to age and sex a "man value," "coefficient," or "index" is given. It is assumed that from these can be calculated the Calorie needs of any family. When, however, we turn to facts we find that there is no correspondence between theory and fact for the individual and the "index" belongs to mythology. Man's Calorie intake may vary from

<sup>1</sup> GEPHART. (1917), *Boston Med. Surg. Journ.*, 176, 17.

1700 to 5000 per day without obvious cause. A woman's may vary from 1400 to 3000 (average figure 2200) again without obvious cause. There are figures for British children which show that there is the same spread of the figures. The actual Calorie needs of a given family cannot be predicted and their Calorie input can be usefully gauged only by direct observations on each member of that family as an individual.

## CHAPTER III

### THE FUNCTIONS OF FOOD (*continued*).

#### (II) SUPPLY OF BODY-BUILDING MATERIAL

Life as we investigate it in the laboratory is always found in relation to protoplasm. This is the name given to that substance, half jelly half liquid, in which life inheres. Life organizes it and its activities, and much of its structural organization consists of protein. Moreover in the water in its numerous interstices are a multitude of enzymes, agents which bring about, under the control of life, the chemical reactions that are typical of the living cell.

For growth, for maintenance of the cells which make up the body, for the creation of enzymes and, moreover for the manufacture of hormones—agents which regulate the activities of the body, both simple, such as thyroxine or complex, such as insulin—proteins are essential. These the animal body must have in its food, or it will die and disintegrate. Proteins then are essential to life.

Originally the idea gained ground that there was one protein only—an idea not entirely given up by the more ignorant—but as research proceeded, from early days of the nineteenth century till now, it has been shown that there are millions of different proteins. Each species of plant and animal has its own specific proteins. At first it was shown that they differed in their physical and chemical reactions. Some are soluble in water, others need the presence of salts to make them soluble. Some are coagulated by boiling, others not. Most are insoluble in alcohol, but a few are soluble. All have large molecules and belong to the class called colloids which, though in solution, will not pass through an animal membrane. Many are crystallizable and can thus be prepared in pure form. All are composed of carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, hydrogen and sulphur, and some in addition contain phosphorus.

On digestion with ferments in the gastric, pancreatic and intestinal juices proteins break down into their component parts and these ultimate parts are amino acids. The brilliant work of Emil Fischer at the turn of the century showed that proteins consist of long chains of amino acids, linked together through their amino groups combining with the acid part of the next door amino acid.

Slowly the constituent amino acids of proteins were isolated. Early ones to be discovered were tyrosine and leucine. It is possible that even

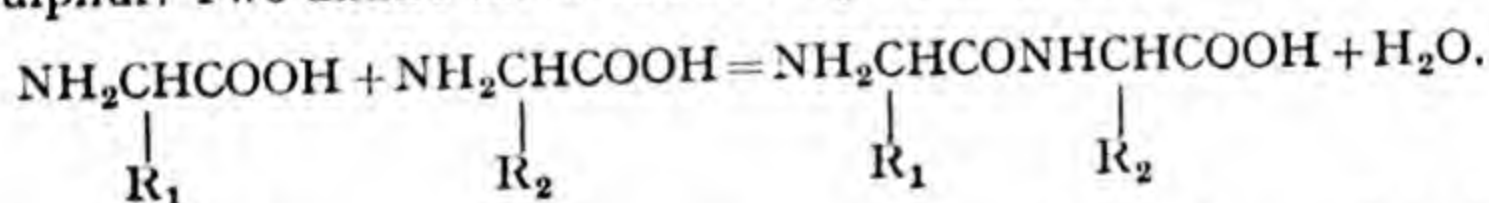
yet we are not at the end of the list. Chromatography is pointing the way to fresh discoveries. At present there are at least twenty of them, the chemical formulae of which are given below.

Originally it was thought that digestion's function was merely to make proteins diffusible through animal membranes. Egg albumen is not diffusible through parchment; peptones made by digestion from egg albumen are. It was argued that it would be a waste of energy to digest proteins further than peptones. None the less amino acids were found in intestinal digests and the small intestine secretes a ferment which rapidly digests peptones to amino acids.

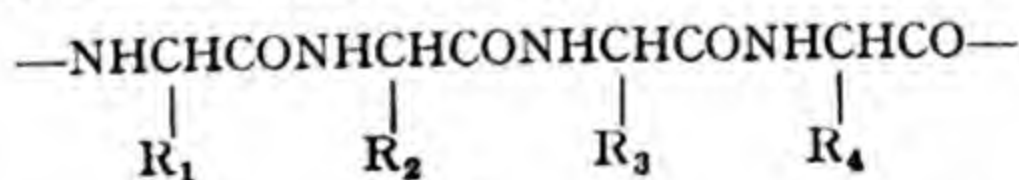
In 1901-3 came the discovery and isolation of an amino acid with a specific colour reaction viz. tryptophane.<sup>1</sup> Sundry pure proteins (e.g. zein from maize and gelatin from connective tissues) do not give this colour reaction. *Such proteins cannot support life.* From the pioneer work of Hopkins in Great Britain and Osborne and Mendel in the United States it became clear that the body, in digesting proteins, is seeking the amino acids it needs to build up its own particular and specific proteins. From this conception it was an easy step to the view held to-day that there are definite indispensable amino acids which must be present in a protein before it can support life when given in addition to sources of Calories, mineral elements and vitamins.

Hopkins' work pointed the way, and Rose, in the United States, brilliantly showed which ones are indispensable for human existence.<sup>2</sup>

Amino acids are all of the type  $\text{NH}_2\text{CHCOOH}$   $\begin{smallmatrix} | \\ \text{R} \end{smallmatrix}$ , where R is some simple linkage of carbon and hydrogen with, possibly, an amino group or sulphur. Two amino acids can link up as in the equation



The compound (a dipeptide) can link with another amino acid to form a tripeptide; this with another and so on to make a long chain (polypeptide), and X-rays show some proteins to be long chains of amino acids of which the following may represent a middle portion:

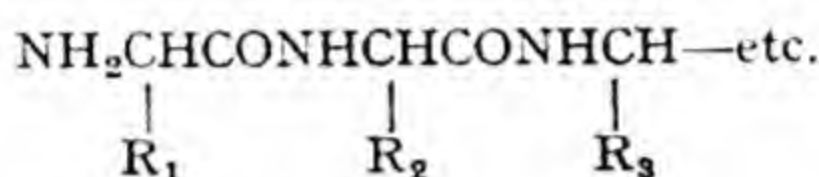


As there are some 22 amino acids available for the building of proteins and there are 250 or more links in the chain of the simpler it

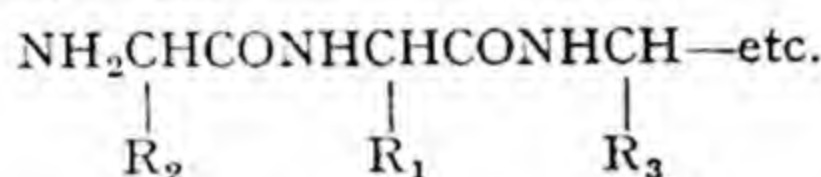
<sup>1</sup> HOPKINS, F. G., and COLE, S. W. (1901), *J. Physiol.*, **27**, 418, and (1903), *ibid.*, **29**, 451.

<sup>2</sup> ROSE, W. C. (1949), *Fed. Proc.* **8**, 546.

will be seen that some or all of the amino acids must be repeated several to many times in the molecule. It will also be seen that there is an enormously great possibility of difference between proteins, for the amino acids in a protein may differ in (i) their number, (ii) their nature, (iii) their mutual proportions in number, and (iv) their order. Each difference will entail a difference in the protein constituted. A protein with 200 links would be different from one with 400 links; a protein with all the amino acids would differ from one with all but one of the amino acids; a protein with much glutamic acid would differ from one with little; and a protein with the formula



would differ from one with



It does not follow that the chains are straight. The  $\text{R}_1$ ,  $\text{R}_2$ , and  $\text{R}_3$ , etc., may attract each other or repel. They may even join up with each other and so on and form girder-like structures or frames as of a steel building.<sup>1</sup> Most of this is not important in dietetics, except perhaps as bearing on the digestibility of certain proteins, but what is of importance is that the nature and proportion of the amino acids in proteins may vary, for herein lies the explanation for some food proteins being preferred to others.

The formulae of most of the amino acids found in proteins are here given.

Glycine	$\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2\text{COOH}$ .
<i>d</i> -Alanine	$\text{CH}_3\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH}$ .
<i>l</i> -Serine	$\text{CH}_2\text{OHCHNH}_2\text{COOH}$ .
<i>d</i> -Threonine	$\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCHNH}_2\text{COOH}$ .
<i>d</i> -Valine	$\begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{CHCHNH}_2\text{COOH}$ .
<i>l</i> -Leucine	$\begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{CHCH}_2\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH}$ .
<i>d</i> -Isoleucine	$\begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array} \text{CHCHNH}_2\text{COOH}$ .

<sup>1</sup> JORDAN LLOYD and AGNES MORE. (1938), *Chemistry of the Proteins*, 2nd edn., Churchill. ASTBURY. (1941), *Chem. and Ind.*, 60, 491, says "that most proteins are gigantic, organized polypeptide chain systems and the chains are in specific configurations and are linked one to another . . . they are polypeptide chain systems heavily disguised."

<i>l</i> -Aspartic acid	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{COOH} \\   \\ \text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH} \end{array}$
<i>d</i> -Glutamic acid	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{COOH} \\   \\ \text{CH}_2\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH} \end{array}$
<i>d</i> -Hydroxyglutamic acid	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{COOH} \\   \\ \text{CHOHCHNH}_2\text{COOH} \end{array}$
<i>d</i> -Arginine	$\begin{array}{c} \text{NH}=\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{NH}_2 \\ \searrow \text{NH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH} \end{array} \\ \text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH} \\   \qquad   \\ \text{N} \qquad \text{NH} \\ \backslash \qquad / \\ \text{CH} \end{array}$
<i>l</i> -Histidine	
<i>d</i> -Lysine	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH} \\ \text{SCH}_2\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH} \end{array}$
<i>l</i> -Cystine	$\begin{array}{c} \text{SCH}_2\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH} \end{array}$
<i>l</i> -Methionine	$\text{CH}_3\text{S}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH}$
<i>l</i> -Phenylalanine	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH}$
<i>l</i> -Tyrosine	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH}$
<i>l</i> -Tryptophane	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{C} \\ // \quad \backslash \\ \text{HC} \quad \text{C}-\text{C}-\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH} \\   \quad    \quad    \\ \text{HC} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{CH} \\ // \quad \backslash \quad / \\ \text{C} \quad \text{NH} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array}$
<i>l</i> -Proline	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \\   \qquad   \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}\cdot\text{COOH} \\ \backslash \quad / \\ \text{NH} \end{array}$
<i>l</i> -Hydroxyproline	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHOH}-\text{CH}_2 \\   \qquad   \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}\cdot\text{COOH} \\ \backslash \quad / \\ \text{NH} \end{array}$

The following amino acids are indispensable for man: valine, leucine, isoleucine, threonine, methionine, phenylalanine, tryptophane, and lysine. Any others can be synthesized by the human body given the above.

Any protein not containing all these indispensable amino acids is useless, *by itself*, in human nutrition, though it may be of considerable

value in conjunction with other proteins. As a matter of fact most food proteins contain all the indispensable amino acids, though not in the proportions in which they are found in human proteins. Moreover most foods contain more than one protein—for example an egg contains seven—and often one protein makes up for the deficiencies of another.

Consequently man can live on almost any food containing proteins, though it may be difficult to get enough into one without becoming pot-bellied. (The prime example is potatoes.) Clearly, too, a man could theoretically do best, with least metabolic effort, on a diet which contains all the essential amino acids in exactly the proportions and amounts that are found in human beings, as, indeed Sir Robert Hutchison points out in his short history of dietetics (p. xvii, above). As however we live on animal and plant proteins and not on human proteins, and as food proteins vary very much in their amino acids content, some foods are more advantageous than others. Thus milk proteins and egg proteins have 56–62 of their whole molecules made up of the essential amino acids whereas white flour, and wheat-germ proteins have only 41 and 40 respectively.<sup>1</sup> Consequently we should expect eggs and milk to be better for growth and maintenance than white flour and wheat germ. Another way of stating this is: that while 100 g. of milk proteins will more than cover all the needs for essential amino acids per day, meat proteins fall short in valine, white flour proteins in lysine, tryptophane, threonine and probably valine, bread made with milk in lysine, threonine and valine, maize proteins in lysine and tryptophane and soya bean proteins in methionine and valine.<sup>2</sup>

That one protein is better than another in human nutrition is generally expressed by saying that it has a higher biological value, and to this term is often given quantitative values. Thus if 100 g. of a protein in a food will replace 100 g. of protein in the human body it is said to have a biological value of 100; if only 60, its biological value is 60. No food protein can be expected to reach the upper level though the mixed proteins of milk and of eggs are considered to approach this ideal figure.

Early work by Voit and Korkunoff showed that a smaller amount of potato proteins than of wheat proteins would prevent loss of nitrogen from the body; Rubner and Röse confirmed this observation and Karl Thomas extended these observations on the biological values of proteins to those of milk, cereals, meats, bony fish, shell fish, spinach and

<sup>1</sup> Quoted from A. B. CALLOW, *Food and Health*, 3rd edn., 1946. The late author would make no claim that these figures are absolutely correct, for amino acid analysis is very difficult, but they show the order of the difference between these food proteins.

<sup>2</sup> BLACK, R. J., and BOLLING, D. (1945). *The Amino acid Composition of Proteins and Foods* (Chas. C. Thomas).

cherries. Though no one to-day accepts the actual figures he gave it is admitted that the order in which he placed the proteins was right: animal proteins at the head of the list, potato and rice proteins high, wheat proteins next and maize somewhat lower.

The next outstanding work on the biological value of proteins was made by Martin and Robison.<sup>1</sup> The assay on human beings is one of almost incredible difficulty as anyone who reads their account will realize. The first step is to reduce the subject's protein metabolism to the minimum by feeding him massive amounts of fat and carbohydrate but starving him of protein. The body slowly settles down to an output of (say) 3 g. of nitrogen a day.<sup>2</sup> This equals a loss by wear and tear of  $3 \times 6.25$  g. protein = 18.75. Then the protein to be tested is added to the diet in increasing amounts till the intake via the intestinal mucous membrane exactly equals the loss of protein from the body as measured by the nitrogen in the urine and faeces—till, in other words the subject is in *nitrogenous equilibrium*. Theoretically, if it takes 37.5 g. of the tested protein to get the body into nitrogenous equilibrium, its biological value will be  $100 \times \frac{18.75}{37.5} = \frac{100}{2} = 50$ . Martin and Robison showed that it is not necessary to get the body into nitrogenous equilibrium—a thing very difficult to achieve. The biological value of a protein can be calculated from the slope of a curve relating the intake and output of nitrogen at stages below the point when equilibrium is reached.

The difficulty of carrying out the estimations on man has led to the growing use of adult rats for this purpose. This introduces a doubt in accepting the results: may not a protein have a biological value for man different from that for a rat? The doubt is reasonable, though not very compelling. When the results of the different methods are collected a close agreement between them is found.<sup>3</sup> They all put milk and egg proteins at the head of the list—which, after all, is not astonishing in view of their functions in life—with meat and fish proteins as runners up. Next came cereals, followed by the pulses, with nut proteins in the rear. There is evidence that storage and cooking lowers the biological value of proteins, probably due to reaction between sugars and the amino acids lysine, methionine and histidine.<sup>4</sup>

As said above and contrary to the view held at the opening of this century we do not take proteins for their own sake but for the amino acids they contain. It has become possible to give a figure to represent the biological value of a protein according to the distribution of the

<sup>1</sup> MARTIN, C. H., and ROBISON. (1922), *Bioch. J.*, **16**, 401.

<sup>2</sup> As an example from actual experiment 2.29 g. in the urine and 0.8 in the stools.

<sup>3</sup> BOAS-FIXSEN, M. A. (1935), *Nat. Abst. and Rev.*, **4**, 447.

<sup>4</sup> BENDER, A. E. (1954), *Food Manufacture*, **29**, 183.

amino acids in that protein, and it is agreed that such figures show approximation to those obtained by actual experiment. Nevertheless it is still very difficult to estimate amino acids and it is therefore impossible to accept the figures given as absolute.

The main thing which comes out of all this research in the practice of nutrition is that we should mix the proteins in the diet. No protein should be labelled bad and avoided because of a low content of the essential amino acids, nor prized particularly because it has them in super abundance. (In any case foods containing the latter are expensive.) Often the deficiencies of one protein may be counteracted by another protein, itself deficient! As the late A. B. Callow expressed it: two blacks can make a white. A good example is the combination of gelatin and bread. The biological value of gelatin is zero; that of bread proteins is only moderate when compared with egg proteins. Yet the mixture of the two has a biological value higher than that of bread proteins. Gelatin, though poor in most of the essential amino acids, has a moderately good amount of lysine, in which bread proteins are poor.

On the whole, proteins from animal sources—eggs, milk, meat, fish and cheese—have more of the essential amino acids than foods of vegetable origin—cereals, pulses, nuts, fruits and vegetables. But even so it is possible to choose mixtures from plant sources that are useful in human growth and maintenance. A notable example is a mixture of cereal proteins with those of the soya bean, which has been used by Dean in feeding children in the Wuppertal area of Germany and in Uganda.<sup>1</sup>

Of the essential amino acids lysine, methionine and tryptophane have come in recent years into prominence; lysine because it is the only amino acid which is built directly and without change into the animal protein molecule, methionine, a sulphur containing amino acid, because it is particularly valuable in rebuilding damaged tissue, particularly of liver and skin (e.g. necrotic<sup>2</sup> and cirrhotic liver and burns) and tryptophane because the body can manufacture a vitamin, nicotinamide, from it. Doubtless future research will ascribe specific functions to other amino acids, as it has to these and to phenylalanine (formation of thyroxine and adrenaline). But the main function of amino acids is synthesis of new protein, for growth and repair of wear and tear and chemical damage, with subsidiary, though essential, functions of manufacture of hormones of both low molecular weight—thyroxine and adrenaline—and high molecular weight (e.g. insulin), and of enzymes and antibodies.

There are two other points to be considered before we pass on to ask

<sup>1</sup> DEAN, R. F. A. (1953), *Bull. W.H.O.*, 9, 767.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. after chloroform and T.N.T. poisoning and damage to the liver due to underfeeding with protein.

how much protein we should take per day and these are (i) the individual variation in need for essential amino acids and (ii) the relation in time which must subsist in taking the different amino acids. In Rose's experiments it was found that the minimum levels of the essential amino acids varied from individual to individual. Some amino acid minima were consistent from one person to another; others showed a variation of 100 per cent. This variation we have come to expect. We have seen it in Calorie intakes; we shall meet it again in protein, mineral elements and vitamin intakes. The amino acid requisite minima showed no correlation with surface area, and therefore with basal metabolism. When we come to consider protein metabolism later this will not appear so astonishing though it is disconcerting. Further, there is evidence that the essential amino acids must be given all together and not at different times. No storage of them exists. Even if so short a time as one hour elapses between the giving of some of the essential amino acids and the rest, the growth rate (in the rat) is impaired. Something similar has been observed in work on the biological value of proteins. Bread proteins have a moderate biological value; cheese proteins a high one. Bread with cheese has a biological value as high as cheese alone. But if bread and cheese are fed on alternate days the cheese protein does not supplement the value of bread proteins. The same is true of potato and milk proteins. If this applies to man, and the probability is that it does, the poor proteins must have their supplementary good proteins at the same meal. The bad Victorian way in our public schools of bread and butter breakfasts and evening meals was not only poor, nutritionally speaking, but wasteful of the meat proteins at the midday meal. The essential amino acids should all be presented to the intestinal mucous membrane at the same time.

This raises a theoretical point: are the amino acids released from the proteins at the same rate? *In vitro* they are not. If not so released in the small intestine there is bound to be wastage of one or another amino acid. Prolonged storage, canning and even cooking seem to make the proteins of the foods less digestible and their contained amino acids liberated at a slower rate. This may account for the lower biological values of proteins so treated.

The bearing of all these experimental and theoretical considerations on the practice of dietetics is clear:

1. We deal in dietetics with mixed proteins and consequently the biological values of isolated proteins are of theoretical interest only.
2. We have the strongest theoretical and experimental reasons for advocating a dietary in which the proteins are well mixed.
3. We are practically forced into the position of stating that there should be foods with proteins of the higher biological value in the diet

every day, and, possibly, at all the meals. By proteins of high biological value we mean those of animal origin—the proteins of milk, eggs, meat, fish and cheese. These are usually referred to as first-class proteins, and the proteins of cereals, pulses, nuts and vegetables relegated to the second class.<sup>1</sup>

### DAILY INTAKE OF PROTEIN

As dietetics is a quantitative subject two questions at once arise: how much should our *total intake of protein* be per day? and how much *first-class proteins* should there be? We have to admit that though we can give practical answers which are based on empiricism we have little incontrovertible fact. We can say that for a male adult the total intake of protein may reasonably be taken as 80–100 g. per day of which nearly one-half should be of first-class quality, because we know that these estimates generally “work.” The League of Nations put the figure for total proteins as 1 g. per kg. body weight, or 70 g. per male, and the National Research Council of the U.S.A. adopts the same figure. But we shall do wrong if we proclaim that these estimates are right for every living male and are established upon sound scientific bases.

An ingenious set of experiments to measure the least amount of protein which will maintain the body in nitrogenous equilibrium was made by Leitch and Duckworth. Subjects were put upon low intakes of protein and the amounts gradually increased. The intake nitrogen was plotted against the output of nitrogen in the urine. If the body behaved ideally the result would be as the continuous line MEX in Fig. 5. As the intake increases the output would fall along ME, horizontally. At E where the output exactly equals the intake, the graph would ascend in a straight line at  $135^\circ$  to ME along EX. In actual experiment this condition is never attained. It is found that very often equilibrium, or even gain, is reached at a lower figure on one day or in one person than on another day. But if intakes are plotted against outputs the balances fall roughly on two parallel lines. The negative balances are on a line above the ideal line and the positive balances below it. On the line for ideal balance a point can be found which is equidistant from the negative and positive balance graphs. This may be assumed to give the figure for the ideal intake at which nitrogenous equilibrium can be maintained indefinitely. The actual figure chosen by Leitch and Duckworth was 8.35 g. nitrogen which equals 52.4 g. protein per day.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> We are quite aware that a mixture of cereals and pulse proteins can almost imitate animal proteins. Expert nutritionists can prescribe such mixtures, but for the average person it is best to rely on the undoubted values of animal proteins.

<sup>2</sup> LEITCH, I., and DUCKWORTH, J. (1937), *Nut. Abst. and Rev.*, 7, 257.

Experiment, therefore, seems to suggest that a normal man could live on 52 g. of protein per day so long as he remained in health. To guard against inevitable upsets of the ideal routine it has been suggested that a figure 50 per cent. above the minimal figure should be accepted. This comes to 78.6 g. or about 80 in round figures.

As a matter of fact, this intake occurs very commonly among the people who carry out metabolism experiments. It is approximately 1 g. of protein for 1 kilogramme in weight. If it holds good for women their intake should be about 56–60 g. per day.

This estimate has been very widely adopted. It was Sherman's original suggestion and, as stated above, it has been adopted by the

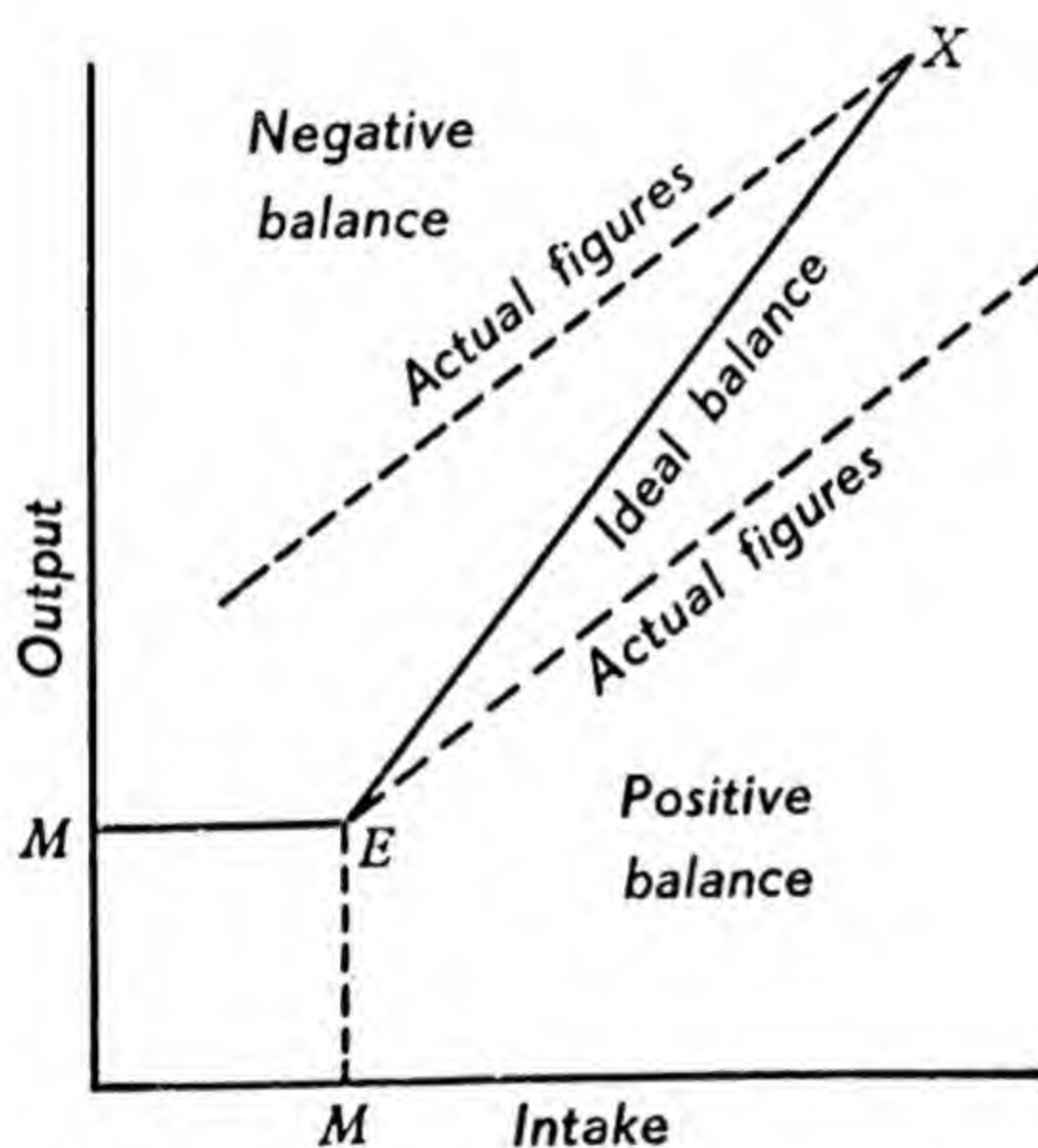


FIG. 5.

League of Nations Technical Commission on Nutrition and the National Research Council of the U.S.A. Examination of the nitrogenous output of laboratory workers often corresponds with the estimate. And we may as well accept this figure for the average adult male until we have something more certain to replace it.

It is by no means accepted by everyone. There are those who maintain that the figure is too high. There are some who aver that it is too low. Sometimes these attitudes are based on experiments on a few isolated individuals, but more often, it seems to us, there is more prejudice than science behind them. A high protein diet usually means

a high meat diet and those of us who like meat, throwing back to the hunting prehistoric ancestors of all of us, exalt the value of proteins in the diet. There is an exploded view that meat is essential for muscular work; the breadwinner must have meat. On the other hand, protein foods are expensive. Economy demands a low consumption of protein, though, as a matter of fact, a diet in which wheaten bread is present in large amounts is a high total protein diet. Vegetarianism, and the emotional trends which make some people take up vegetarianism, are on the side of a low protein diet. The state of war has proved to many of us that we can subsist on a low protein diet. Before this last war a sentimental adulation of the peasant way of life was fashionable, and peasant diet is often a low protein diet.<sup>1</sup> Finally—and this consideration seems to us to be important—there is a big gap between the amount of protein necessary to replace the loss due to wear and tear and the amount which is recommended above, viz. 70 g. per day of total protein.

Before discussing this serious discrepancy let us assemble a few of the facts known about the minima claimed. Nitrogenous equilibrium has been obtained on so low an intake of potato proteins as 25 g., of wheat proteins at 60; Martin and Robison put the figure for milk proteins at 38 and wheat proteins at 69. On long extended dietary régimes Chittenden, the pioneer of the low protein (and low Calorie) diet, showed that his average intake was only 36, though his athletes took amounts which, as Marrack points out,<sup>2</sup> were not far from the League of Nations standard. Hindhede maintains that he and his laboratory assistant Madsen remained in nitrogenous equilibrium on as little as 22 g. per day, year in year out, though his compatriot Johanne Christiansen will not allow that his experiments are trustworthy. Röse, whose work seems to be best authenticated, lived for 15 years on a diet of 38 to 40 g. of protein per day and at the age of 70 could walk for 16 hours a day and climb 11,000 feet on a diet containing somewhere about 25–30 g. It is true that he suffered from numerous colds, but his physical capacity would put most of us to shame.

On the other hand, a collaborator, Schmid of Thun, Switzerland, found that *he* could not live on Röse's 29 g. per day and considered that it was not possible for *him* to maintain health on less than 60 g. per day. Consonant with this, Süsskind, who weighed at the time of the experiment but 52 kg., found that he could not live on as little as 63 g. The League of Nations figure, 1 g. per kilogramme, was not enough for

<sup>1</sup> This seems to be at the back of Terroine's views quoted below. It may reasonably be pointed out that the non-peasant agricultural methods of Great Britain prior to 1939 produced more food—much more food—per person employed, than in any European country run on peasant cultivation. As there is a world shortage of food the less said about peasant cultivation of the soil the better.

<sup>2</sup> MARRACK, J. R. *Food and Planning*, 49.

him. Corry Mann remained in health when his intake was between 60 and 65 g. of which nearly 42 were animal protein, but failed when he cut down the milk protein even though he replaced it by meat.

What are we to make of this diversity of opinion and experiment? We cannot throw overboard all the low figures by impugning the scientific methods of the observers, nor need we attribute to those of the higher figures psychological instability due to the monotony of the diets they consumed. It may easily be that each person has his own specific level of intake. We know<sup>1</sup> that men in good health and having an income sufficient to meet demands for food take from 53 g. to 167 g. per day. In these estimates there was to be found little or no correlation between the size of the figures and the weights, ages and activities of the consumers. The protein inputs ran mainly parallel with the Calorie figures: a high-protein input nearly always accompanied a high Calorie intake. The frequency distribution diagrams of total protein and of Calories showed considerable likeness. All we can say about such figures is that some people eat more than others without apparent reason and perhaps we may say also of the experiments on protein minima that some people can attain minima unattainable by others. At any rate it should make us very chary of cutting people down to the minima of Chittenden, Hindhede or Röse. In fact some people would go so far as to say that in prescribing a diet for a nation or large group of individuals you should legislate for a maximal intake rather than the minimal, lest some should not reach a subsistence level.

Now is there any explanation of the fact that though the wear-and-tear loss of protein in the body is at the level of about 18–20 g. a day, most of us take 60 or 70, or even more protein to replace this amount? The wear-and-tear loss is due partly to the growth, and subsequent loss, of nails, skin and hair. The skin is continually, though usually imperceptibly, being sloughed off. The alimentary and respiratory tracts desquamate gently. Mucus produced by each tract is lost to the body. Further, such a secretion as adrenaline, which must be manufactured from the tyrosine or phenylalanine of the protein eaten, is oxidized and lost. Some of the creatinine lost in the urine also must come from the breakdown of amino acids in the body. Enzymes also are excreted in urine and faeces. In addition, it is usual to imagine that the tissues in their activity wear out and let proteins, especially perhaps nucleoproteins, out into the lymph and blood stream after which they are broken down into their component parts and excreted as carbon dioxide, uric acid and urea. The wear-and-tear protein is pictured as the protein which has been built up into the tissues or secretions of the body and as the result of wear and tear has been "rubbed off" those tissues or excreted

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 269.

because no longer wanted. This view of wear-and-tear protein metabolism was developed by Folin and by him dubbed "Endogenous protein metabolism." The metabolism of any protein (in the form of amino acids) which was not built into the tissues of the body but used for combustion and the production of Calories was termed "exogenous protein metabolism."

There is apparently a big gap between the figures for the necessary minimum wear-and-tear protein, i.e. the endogenous protein metabolism, and the total protein metabolism. Most of us, though not the Chittendens, the Hindhedes and the Rösés, live a prodigal existence, throwing most of the protein we eat on the bonfires of the body to produce energy. It is even worse than this. Protein has a "specific dynamic action," as it was termed by Carl Voit, its discoverer.

When food is fed to the body in amounts which should theoretically cover the output of Calories the body promptly steps up its output to a still higher level. There is a "luxus" consumption on the part of the body—it apparently finds an increase of income irresistible and behaves in a spendthrift manner. Now protein has an effect on expenditure of Calories far greater than that due to fats and carbohydrates. Whereas these raise the level of expenditure some five per cent. above the original level, protein may raise it by 30–37 per cent. Thus in an experiment by Voit, often quoted, an amount of protein which on combustion by the body theoretically should yield 100 Calories, evoked an outburst of 137 Calories, and Du Bois<sup>1</sup> calculates that at least 30 per cent. of the available Calories of a large beefsteak breakfast eaten by himself went in this wasteful specific dynamic action. For the heat has to be wasted; it cannot be used for muscular energy. It is true that it can be used to keep up the body temperature. In animals exposed to a temperature approaching freezing point, the specific dynamic action of protein is low and only rises to its extreme when the surrounding temperature of the air is tropical. But man everywhere contrives by clothing and housing, even within the Arctic Circle, to maintain a tropical or subtropical temperature next to his skin, consequently protein consumption has nearly its full specific dynamic action, and therefore protein consumption appears to be an extravagance.

The cause of this action, though investigated for many years by Graham Lusk and his pupils, is still somewhat obscure. As said above it is not evident when the temperature of the air surrounding the body is low. Nor is it present when protein is used in manufacture of fresh tissue, or, as Folin would put it, for endogenous metabolism. It appears only when protein is fed in amounts considerably greater than those needed to replace "wear-and-tear" protein. In fact it is conceivable that if we took protein in small amounts at frequent intervals throughout

<sup>1</sup> Du Bois, E. F. (1936), *Basal Metabolism in Health and Disease*.

the day there would be no specific dynamic action evidenced. It is known from the work of Voit and Graham Lusk and his pupils that it is not the digestion of protein which causes it. Each individual amino acid has its own specific dynamic action and the results are additive. The specific dynamic action of a protein is the sum of the actions of each of its contained amino acids. Therefore, since the action of glutamic acid is less than that, say, of alanine, the specific dynamic action of a protein with much glutamic acid in its constitution (e.g. the cereal proteins) is less than that of a protein with a greater proportion of the other amino acids (e.g. meat proteins).

The case against high-protein consumption, on these grounds, appears to be getting strong. All the protein we eat in excess of that necessary to replace wear and tear is apparently tossed on to the bonfires of the body, there to provoke an extravagant and useless waste of heat not only by the combustion of its component amino acids but of fat and carbohydrate as well. We leave out of this indictment of high-protein consumption all the supposed and largely imaginary evidence that a high-protein diet damages the kidneys or produces a high blood-pressure. The Eskimo, eating five times the amount of protein that the American of European origin eats, has no greater kidney or arterial blood-pressure troubles. Nor has the Masai with his diet of meat, milk and blood. Besides, as Marrack<sup>1</sup> very reasonably points out, why should we have special solicitude for the kidneys? Why not for the heart and therefore prescribe no exercise, or for the brain, and prescribe no thought? Moreover, man, ancestral man, in the million years before the dawn of civilization must have lived on a diet predominatingly protein, and we are here to tell the tale.

There is a case against a high-level consumption of protein if Folin's conception of exogenous and endogenous metabolism of protein be accepted. But is Folin's conception sound? We have assumed for years that the amino acids arising from the digestion of protein were used in one of two ways: (i) they are destroyed at once in the liver, the nitrogen excreted as urea, and the fatty acid or the glucose formed from the residue used for fuel (exogenous nitrogen metabolism), or (ii) they are built by the body into human protein.<sup>2</sup> So many molecules of alanine, of phenylalanine, of lysine and so on are taken from the circulating blood, are placed end to end in their right order and riveted together, and, lo! the miracle of human protein. When, in the course of time, owing to "wear and tear," this protein is no longer serviceable, it is disintegrated into its component amino acids and these in turn are converted into glucose or fatty acid and ammonia by the liver, and the

<sup>1</sup> MARRACK, J. R. *Op. cit.*, 49.

<sup>2</sup> Small amounts are needed for the manufacture of enzymes and of hormones, such as thyroxine, adrenaline, secretin and insulin.

end products lost to the body as carbon dioxide and urea. Some amino acids built up into nucleo-protein do not reappear in the form in which they were used in the process of building, but take a different path and appear as uric acid. This process of the building of amino acids into the proteins of the body's tissues and the subsequent disintegration of their constructions we termed "endogenous protein metabolism." This is the doctrine we have been wont to teach to our pupils for the last forty years. It is wrong.

Suspensions of the doctrine had been aroused by the fact that when the protein intake by the body (human or animal) is reduced to zero the nitrogen output in the urine does not at once fall to the lowest level accepted as "endogenous"; nor, again, does the output at once rise to the "exogenous" plus "endogenous" level when the intake is raised from zero to a normal figure. There may be a lag of four or five days before constancy is reached. It appears as if the body were reluctant to part with some nitrogenous material not truly "wear and tear" protein when submitted to protein starvation, and also, as if, when again raised from zero to normal intake, it makes a point of restoring those reserves before excreting the same amount of nitrogenous material as it is receiving. Of course the explanation of sheer inertia could be given of these phenomena, but such explanation did not wholly quieten suspicions that the true explanation lay deeper. The discovery of isotopes by Aston and the subsequent isolation in quantities of these isotopes of elements has put a means of investigation into the hands of experimental biologists which has thrown much light upon what is happening in the body in the process of protein metabolism. The result is that whereas the terms exogenous and endogenous metabolism are still useful terms, the distinction between them, once held to be so sharp, is very tenuous.<sup>1</sup>

It is clear that if you give an animal an amino acid, say leucine, to eat with its normal diet you cannot discover whether that leucine is metabolized at once or if it is built up into the protein molecules of the tissues of the body. It might go via the exogenous path or it might replace a leucine in, say, the serum or the heart or even the skin proteins. No one could tell. But if it could be labelled in some way which would enable it to be identified, then we could track it down and discover if it were changed at once into urea or built up into tissue protein. We should expect that if it were given in addition to a satisfactory protein diet, one that much more than covered the needs for replacement of wear and tear of the proteins, it would be metabolized and excreted at once as urea, i.e. it would follow the exogenous path of protein metabolism, at any rate in the main.

<sup>1</sup> SCHOENHEIMER. (1942). *The Dynamic State of Body Constituents*, Harvard University Press.

Schoenheimer<sup>1</sup> and his associates have accomplished this labelling by inserting heavy nitrogen ( $N^{15}$ ) into the amino group of amino acids and by replacing the hydrogen either of the amino groups or of the carboxylic group with heavy hydrogen (deuterium). Feeding such amino acids to an animal enables the observer to discover whether they are built into the protein molecules or metabolized at once. If the latter, the heavy nitrogen and the heavy hydrogen which had been inserted into the amino group of the amino acid would appear in the urea excreted. Supposing it is built into the protein of the tissues it can be found there or if endogenously metabolized it could be discovered in part, in the allantoin excreted by the animal.

In the first place it was found that the animals treat these labelled amino acids exactly like the normal amino acids. The animal body cannot distinguish between the two. One is as useful as the other in metabolism.

Secondly when labelled amino acids are fed to the laboratory rat, mixed with a high (16 per cent.) protein diet, the tissues build into their substance 44 per cent. (labelled glycine) or 56 per cent. (labelled leucine) of the labelled acids. Intestines, kidney and spleen are the most active tissues which do this and the skin the least. Thus instead of, at the most, 20 per cent. of the fed amino acids being concerned with endogenous protein metabolism, at least double and sometimes treble that amount was so concerned. Further, it was found that amino acids doubly labelled, i.e. in their amino groups and their carboxylic groups, were not built in their entirety into the proteins of the tissues—the *amino groups parted company from their associated carboxylic groups*. Labelled leucine fed to an animal might be used in the construction of tissue protein which on hydrolysis would yield not only labelled leucine but labelled glycine. Those results show that the amino acids continuously interchange nitrogen atoms. Glutamic and aspartic acids, acids appearing abundantly in cereal proteins but less abundantly in animal proteins are the most active in this interchange, whereas lysine, which occurs to the amount of 6.6 per cent. of human muscle protein and but 1.9 per cent. in the glutelin of wheat flour,<sup>2</sup> is a complete exception. It may yield up a labelled amino group to another amino acid but it never accepts one. It is the single indispensable chemical unit which has to be supplied as such in the diet.

The picture we must build up of protein metabolism is one in which the amino acids in the circulating blood and tissue fluids are being continually exchanged with those forming part of the body tissue proteins, some *in toto* (e.g. lysine) and some as regards the carbon chain (leucine and histidine) but not as regards the amino groups. These, too,

<sup>1</sup> For a condensed account of these experiments and a full list of literature on this topic, see SCHOENHEIMER, *op. cit.*

<sup>2</sup> Quoted by MARRACK. *Food and Planning*, 45.

may be held to exchange places between the amino acids forming part of the tissue proteins and the circulating amino acids. When an animal is in nitrogenous equilibrium the equilibrium is not a static but a dynamic equilibrium. There is a continual interchange between the circulating amino acids and those composing the proteins of the tissues.

In fact endogenous protein metabolism and exogenous protein metabolism fade off the one into the other. All the architectural pictures we have made in the past, of amino acids as Bausteine (building stones) and the proteins of the body as permanent buildings must be abandoned unless we push the conception to an extravaganza, in which stones and bricks and chimney-pots continuously fly out of passing lorries and exchange places with similar objects in the houses on the road along which the lorries are passing.

This rapid, extensive and even violent interchange between circulating amino acids and those of the tissue proteins is a mark of life and must sink to a lower level of activity if the circulating amino acids are few. At what height should this mark of life be set? Clearly the interchange cannot be so rapid if the body is at minimal protein intake. The dynamism of the proteins of the tissues is at a low ebb when the circulating amino acids are not being continuously replaced by the products of protein digestion. Consequently we have to ask ourselves whether there is any evidence that producing this low ebb of tissue metabolism is good for one and all.

Some of us suspect that the next move in nutrition will be to demand a higher intake of protein. The highest figure recommended was that of Benedict (125), Voit's figure was 118. The usual text book figure for many years was 100. During the 1914-18 War workers in University College, London, estimated their protein metabolism at about 80. On the low side we had Chittenden 36, Hindhede 25, Röse 29. Intermediate figures are Schmid's 60, Süsskind's 63, and Corry Mann's 60-65. The lower and the intermediate figures are minima. Meanwhile the Eskimo may take 250, and such a figure may be accepted as the intake, when fortune smiles on our palæolithic ancestors.

Low protein intake is dangerous. In the very young it leads to enlarged and fatty livers, macrocytic anæmia, depigmentation, oedema and often low serum albumin; in the older to cirrhosis of the liver. In low protein diet enzymes in the liver decrease out of all proportion to the decrease in protein,<sup>1</sup> and in the case of amino acid oxidases and transaminases the change is irreversible. A plentiful supply of protein is needful to cover emergencies, e.g. fractures, burns, damage to the liver by alkylchlorides. (One dry cleaning material on the market contains carbon tetrachloride.) King Edward VII's Hospital

<sup>1</sup> MILLER, L. S. (1948), *J. biol. Chem.*, **172**, 113; (1950), *ibid.*, **186**, 253 also in report of work at Coonoor reviewed *Lancet*, (1954), **1**, 1130.

Fund<sup>1</sup> asks for a "light" hospital diet with at least 100 g. protein, nor must we forget the use of high protein, high vitamin diet in eclampsia.<sup>2</sup> The view that high protein promotes dangerous putrefaction of protein residues in the colon, and damages the kidneys is clearly ridiculous, for if it were so we should never have been here.

In this country we have been wont to ask that a considerable amount of the protein per day should come from animal sources—eggs, milk, meat, fish and cheese—whereas in the United States they ask merely that the total protein should be at the level of 1 g. per kilo body weight. Both attitudes of mind are reasonable. In the United States a poor rather marginal dietary is estimated to contain 227 eggs per year and the consumption of milk is high. In Great Britain until the war of 1939–45 the poor were inclined to go short of eggs and milk, though perhaps not so short of meat and bacon. These foods are, and always will be, expensive in comparison with cereal foods. Nutritionists<sup>3</sup> even gave a figure of 37 g. per day as the desired amount. Clearly this figure was guess work.<sup>4</sup> And during the war our average intake of animal proteins was only three quarters of this, and apparently we did reasonably well on this, though it was maintained at the time that recovery from illnesses was slower than before the war.

The Ministry of Health pamphlet which accepted this figure pointed out that it was by no means an extravagant figure, for middle-class folk took an average of 55 g. per day. This is obvious when we translate 37 g. into actual amounts of food which contain this quantity, although the recommendation to take some animal protein per day has no sound scientific basis—for we could conceivably get on quite well with a carefully constructed diet containing plant proteins only—we think that it has great practical value. The average person is not nutritionally trained and knows nothing about proteins and amino acids. Animal proteins supplement plant proteins which are often deficient in essential amino acids. Animal foods have proteins concentrated into small bulk (milk is an exception) whereas plant proteins are often in low percentage, cumbered with much carbohydrate, water and fibre. The proteins of animal foods are often accompanied by other important nutrients—milk and cheese have much calcium and vitamin A, herring, salmon, sprats and mackerel with vitamins A and D and nicotinamide, whereas cereals are devoid of vitamins A and D and are poor in calcium. Finally the antipernicious anæmia vitamin, B<sub>12</sub>, is found only in association with animal foods. Consequently we think it wise to recommend that a third to a half of the total protein taken should come from animal sources.

<sup>1</sup> Annotation in *Lancet*, (1949), I, 233.

<sup>2</sup> HAMLIN, R. H. J. (1953), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 46, 393.

<sup>3</sup> *Criticism and Improvement of Diet*. (1933), H.M.S.O.

<sup>4</sup> See 10th edn. of this book, p. 84.

The following amounts of food contain 37 g. protein.

CHEESE		MEAT	
Cheddar . . . . .	4½ oz.	Bacon, back, A.P. . .	11¼ oz.
Dutch . . . . .	3½ "	" " fried . . . . .	4½ "
Little Wilts. . . . .	4¼ "	Bacon, streaky, A.P. .	10 "
EGGS . . . . .	5-6	" " fried . . . . .	4½ "
FISH		Beef, corned, tinned .	4½ "
Cod, steak, A.P. . . .	9½ "	" sirloin, roast, E.P.	3½ "
" " steamed, E.P. . .	5½ "	" steak, lean, raw . .	5½ "
Haddock smoked, A.P. .	8½ "	" " stewed, E.P. . .	3½ "
" " steamed, E.P. . .	4½ "	" " grilled, E.P. . .	4½ "
Herring, A.P. . . . .	7½ "	Chicken A.P. . . . .	8½ "
" " fried, E.P. . . .	4½ "	" " roast, E.P. . . .	3½ "
Plaice, A.P. . . . .	11½ "	Ham, smoked, A.P. . .	9 "
" " fried, E.P. . . .	5½ "	Liver, calf, A.P. . . .	5½ "
Soft roe, fried . . . .	4½ "	" " fried . . . . .	3½ "
Sole, A.P. . . . .	10 "	Mutton, leg, A.P. . .	6½ "
" " fried, E.P. . . .	5½ "	" " boiled, E.P. . . .	4 "
" " Lemon, A.P. . . .	8½ "	" " roast, E.P. . . .	4½ "
" " " fried, E.P. . .	6½ "	Pork, leg, A.P. . . . .	7½ "
Sprats . . . . .	8½ "	" " roast, E.P. . . .	4½ "
" " fried, E.P. . . .	4½ "	MILK . . . . .	1 quart

If we turn to actual investigations of what is taken we find that men who have no restriction of money to spend on food consume on the average 67 g. daily.<sup>1</sup> Very rarely does the figure fall below 37.

To sum up this section on the adult male's need for total protein we may say that on the average it may be taken as 1 g. per kilo body weight, though there is evidence that some people can maintain efficiency on less and some apparently seem to need more. Why most of us do not take protein equivalent to the wear-and-tear protein loss is possibly because life necessitates a continuous interchange between the amino acids of the circulation and those of the tissues and this dynamic level of interchange varies from person to person. In most countries, except perhaps Canada, the U.S.A., New Zealand and Australia, it is wise to insist that some of this protein be first-class protein, i.e. protein of animal origin. About half the total protein, or approximately 37 g. of animal protein per day, represents a figure below which the first-class protein should not fall.

**Adult Women.** There is naturally less information concerning the needs of the adult female. There is no reason to believe that the needs of the adult non-pregnant women are proportionally any higher than those of the adult male. In fact as her metabolic plane seems to be lower than the male's it might conceivably be less. None the less the League of Nations put the figure at the same in proportion to the body weight as the males, viz. 1 g. per kilo body weight, and the National Research Council puts it higher, viz. 60 g. per 56 kg. or 1.07 g. per kilo.

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 269.

When we turn to the figures collected for this country (in London and its environs) by McCance and Widdowson<sup>1</sup> we find that the average protein intake has a value of 67.3 which is rather more than 1 g. per kilo body weight, and that the spread of the figures is great. The maximum (90) is more than three times as great as the minimum (28). First-class protein on the average was well above the figure of 37 g., viz. 46.0. Fifteen out of the 63 women took less than 37 g., but apart from the one extremely low figure (9) the majority of the low figures were at about 30 g. level. No one apparently has made any suggestion concerning the minimal amount of first-class protein necessary for women. If we assume her needs to be 0.83 that of a male the figure would be 30 g. approximately, if 0.7, then 26 g. Only 2 women out of the 63 fall below the 26 level and only 5 below the 30 g. level. There is little guidance here as to what either the total protein or the first-class protein should be, but at the most only an indication that middle-class women in Great Britain exceed the standards of the League of Nations and the National Research Council, and the highly hypothetical standard for first-class protein. Looking at the frequency diagrams of protein intake by women we see that they, unlike those of the men, do not follow the shape of the Calorie intakes, but whether this has any significance is uncertain.

Pregnant and lactating women theoretically need more total protein and more first-class protein than the normal. McCance, Widdowson and Verdon-Roe<sup>2</sup> estimate that the total intake of protein in the later stages of pregnancy should be 90 g. per day, but in the 120 diets they collected they found that only the well-to-do classes approached this figure with 80 g., and the others were by no means so high. These figures were collected before the war of 1939-45. It is to be expected that the activities of the Ministry of Food in subsidizing the consumption of milk in pregnancy and lactation will have improved considerably the low intakes found by McCance and his colleagues among the working classes, and it is to be hoped that this improvement will continue even though prices have risen steeply.

The League of Nations put the figure for the first three months of pregnancy at the usual level of 1 g. per kilo body weight; from the fourth to the ninth month 1.5 is suggested and during lactation 2.0 g. The National Research Council put the figure at 85 g. per day (i.e. 1.5 per kilo) for the last half of pregnancy and at 100 (approximately 1.8 per kilo) during lactation.<sup>3</sup> Until we know much more of the physiology of pregnancy and lactation we must be content with these figures which

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 294.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, WIDDOWSON and VERDON-ROE. (1938), *Journ. Hygiene*, 38, 596.

<sup>3</sup> Clearly no sudden jump at the fifth month of pregnancy and at full term is intended, but a smooth grading from the lower figure to the higher.

represent guesses, but perhaps reasonable guesses, concerning the amounts of total proteins required in pregnancy and lactation.

**The Protein Needs of Children.** Here again we are in as great difficulties in giving even average figures as we were with women. There has been only one large-scale work done to discover the actual intake of foods by children, let alone what they ought to take. Before the war of 1939-45 Widdowson investigated the intakes of boys and girls from the age of 1 year to 18 years of 916 middle-class children. The results were published in 1947.<sup>1</sup> Children show the same spread of protein consumption as they do of Calories. At any age we may find a child taking an amount of protein (whether first class or no) double that taken by another child in the same age group. There is, in the figures, no guidance concerning the necessary intake of any one child at a particular age, but perhaps the average figures may be allowed to act as a standard of reference, in this country at any rate. They represent what is done on the average by children of educated well-to-do people with no reason to stint money spent on food, and so might reasonably, for the time, take the place of the scales based largely on guesswork.

Of course one way to study the protein needs of children would be to observe their rates of growth on different amounts of protein in the diet. This has been done in a small way in the U.S.A. and apparently on a larger scale in the U.S.S.R.<sup>2</sup> with children of  $1\frac{5}{12}$  to  $1\frac{10}{12}$  years. 2.5 g. of protein per kilo body weight produces growth only in the warm part of the year; 3.5 g. allows growth in cold weather but not optimal growth. The Russians therefore suggest 4 g. per kilo body weight for children from 1-3 years of age. It will be sufficient to put in parallel columns suggested and actually found intakes of children at different ages. A graph is also given, Fig. 6.

The first thing we notice is that the actual intakes of boys and girls of the well-to-do classes in this country run very close to the estimates of the National Research Council of the U.S.A. whereas the Russian and League of Nations estimates are much higher from the age of 10 onwards. The average observer cannot but be impressed by the coincidence of the American estimates and the actual findings among English children, and it may remove some of the inferiority complex over against the U.S.A. from which dietitians in this country quite rightly suffer, to realize that the growth of these English children is up to the Woodbury, and the Baldwin and Wood standards, and that their diet is as good as American dietitians consider it should be. In fact it might be argued that we are reaching something fundamental here.

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1947), *A Study of Individual Children's Diets*, Med. Res. Council Special Report Series, No. 257.

<sup>2</sup> See LEITCH, I., and DUCKWORTH, J. (1937), *Nut. Abs. and Reviews*, 7, 257.

PROTEIN INTAKES, ESTIMATED AND ACTUAL

Age.	L.o.N.	Russian.	N.R.C.	Actual.	N.R.C.	Actual.
	Children.	Children.	Boys.	Boys.	Girls.	Girls.
1	34	39	40	37	40	38
2	42	48	40	41	40	42
3	42.9	54.4	40	49	40	46
4	47.6	55.5	50	52	50	50
5	43.1	55.2	50	50	50	49
6	49.9	58.8	50	55	50	59
7	56.7	61.3	60	63	60	60
8	62.3	62.3	60	60	60	59
9	70.8	70.8	60	68	60	62
10	77.8	77.8	70	73	70	67
11	87.3	87.3	70	72	70	64
12	94.0	94.0	70	76	70	69
13	104.0	108.0	80	79	80	72
14	119.5	124.5	85	89	80	77
15	108.8	136.0	85	100	80	78
16	118.8	148.5	100	94	75	71
17	94.2	125.6	100	95	75	73
18	97.2	129.6	100	97	75	76

A comparison of the various estimates of the needs of children for protein with those actually taken by middle-class English children according to Dr. Elsie Widdowson. L.o.N. = League of Nations Special Committee. N.R.C. = National Research Committee of the U.S.A.

When growing children in one country take the amounts of foods considered to be necessary by experts on nutrition in a dietetics-conscious nation like the U.S.A. there is a temptation to say that this correspondence indicates an approach to absolute truth. But scientific caution steps in with the consideration that it may be racial make-up and pattern of life which determine the likeness of the food intake of the two countries. It is true that racially the United States is no longer predominantly Anglo-Saxon, nor even Anglo-Celt, and their repertoire of foods is much wider and more interesting than that of Great Britain. None the less, their racial characteristics are predominantly European and their pattern of life more like our own than like other nations'.

Turning to minor discrepancies, it will be noted that the intake by boys in this country is *above* the American figures till about the age of 15, and so is the intake by girls until the age of 9. This was to be

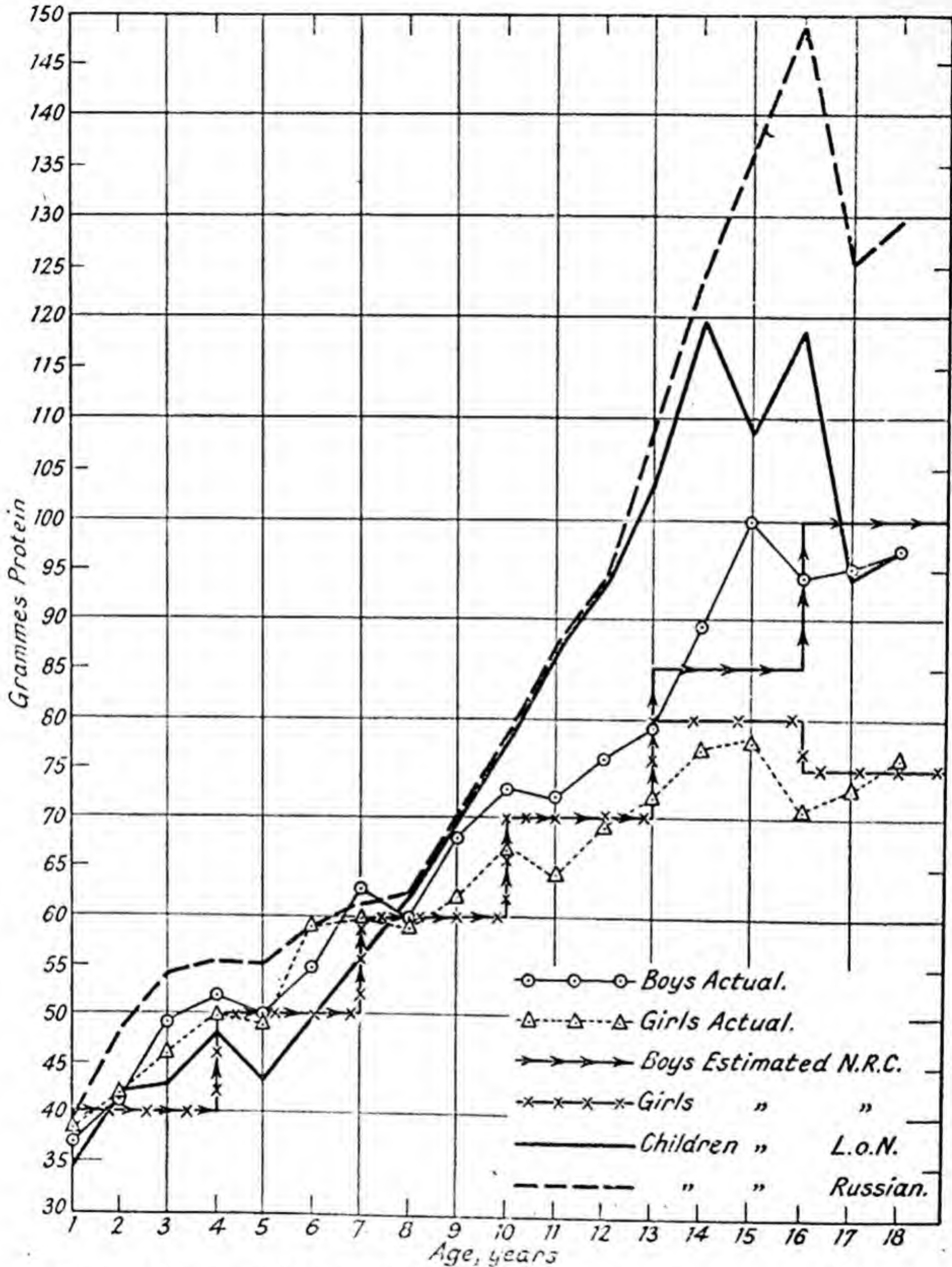


FIG. 6.—ESTIMATED AND ACTUAL INTAKES OF PROTEINS BY BOYS AND GIRLS.

expected in view of the figures for Calories. With the Anglo-Saxon diet, more particularly middle-class diet, it is usually found that the protein intake runs parallel with the Calorie intake. The English child does his eating early in life and therefore takes protein early. Whether there is

any more in this than a reflex of parental solicitude it is for future research to show.

The Calories these English children obtained from protein show but a negligible deviation from 12 per cent. of the total Calories all along the scale from 2 years to 16. This, however, does not indicate any inevitable "rightness" of this proportion but is a reflection of the constancy of the nature of the food eaten. We can, however, take the figures for the protein intake after the curves have been smoothed as a standard with which to compare the dietary protein of children in the future. If their intake is up to this standard then we may accept their diet as satisfactory as regards protein, for the growth of these English children is up to the American standard and we have every reason for believing, both from the esteem in which dietetics is held and practised in the U.S.A. and from what we have seen of their manhood during the war of 1939-45 that America has achieved a sound dietary. If, however, a child's intake is not up to this standard but there is no reason, such as lethargy, pallor or anæmia for assuming that the child is not fit, dietary standards should be forgotten.

We have said nothing so far about first-class protein for children. We have quoted with approval the plea for including some first-class protein in the diet of the adult. How much more is it necessary for children who are continually adding protein to their bodies? They are not merely replacing "wear-and-tear" losses of protein, but manufacturing new human proteins especially in the first year of life and during adolescence. Theoretically, the growing child (like the convalescent from a wasting illness, the pregnant and lactating woman, and the athlete in training) should have a higher percentage of animal protein in his total protein intake than the adult who has finished growing. Even Terroine,<sup>1</sup> who has stated a case against the academic figure of 37 g. of animal protein, admits that children need more first-class protein in proportion than adults. He claims, with some considerable support from experimental data, that the biological value of proteins for growth differs from their value for maintenance, and though he pleads for a peasant diet for the adult with only a suspicion of meat and milk to make it palatable, he allows the growing child more of the first-class proteins. Schoenheimer's work on labelled amino acids points out the particular case of lysine<sup>2</sup> which must be presented to the body preformed. If we argue that this amino acid is indispensable in the manufacture of protein we emphasize the need for animal protein in the young. There is 6.6 per cent. of lysine in human protein, 7.6 per cent. in the chief protein of milk, 5.0 per cent. in egg protein and only

<sup>1</sup> TERROINE. (1936), *League of Nations Quarterly Bulletin*.

<sup>2</sup> The unique position of lysine among amino acids is brought out by work on its metabolism by NEUBERGER and SANGER. (1944), *Biochem. Journ.*, 38, 119.

0.2 and 1.9 per cent. in the proteins of wheat. Therefore the argument suggests that to manufacture human protein rapidly it is much better to use milk and eggs than wheat proteins. In this we completely concur, but the argument can be carried too far.

A child puts on 2 or 3 kg. body weight per year until he reaches puberty. Let us take the higher figure. About  $\frac{2}{3}$  of this is water, so the solid material added will be 1 kg. Let us assume that this is all human protein, neglecting the laying down of fat and manufacture of bone. 1000 g. per year is 2.8 g. per day. Making the very low estimate of 50 for the biological value of the first-class protein eaten we see that the extra first-class protein needed per day for growth of the child is, on the most extravagant theoretical estimates, but 5.6 g. a day—the protein to be found in less than  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a pint of milk!

In our present state of ignorance about protein metabolism in the young we had better content ourselves with the vague statement that children need more first-class protein in proportion than the adult and urge that the efforts of the Ministries of Food, Agriculture, Health and Education, which have resulted in an increased consumption of milk during the war be continued and further strengthened. It looks as though the extra needs of children for first-class protein for growth can easily be covered by the pint of milk a day which, in this country, is the goal of dietitians.<sup>1</sup> (In the U.S.A. it is a quart or about  $1\frac{5}{7}$  English pints.)

Summing up the paragraphs on the protein needs of children, we see that the estimates of different authorities disagree. Curiously enough the American figures, except at 1 year of age and from 4–6, are the least generous. The Russian figures are the most generous from 1–8 and again during adolescence. Actual data, and not mere estimates, collected by Widdowson in this country of the diets of 916 children give results which on the average closely approximate to the American estimates. They are slightly above at most ages except those of adolescence. It is suggested that until we know much more about metabolism in the young we accept the English figures as our frame of reference in this country, rather than "estimates" by however competent people.

Turning to the needs for first-class protein we see that the theoretical needs of children for extra first-class protein for growth when put on a numerical basis are smaller than might be expected and should easily be covered by a pint of milk per day.

**Sources of Protein.** Before we close this chapter there are a number of practical considerations to be discussed in applying what we know about proteins to dietetics. The first is the source of protein in foods.

<sup>1</sup> Actually the children of the middle classes in England take on the average two-thirds of their protein as first-class protein and at most ages far and away more than the "standard" 37 g.

Very few foods other than sugar and lard and other frying fats are totally devoid of protein. That is obvious from their origin. But that does not mean that we can rely on any food, with those exceptions, for our daily ration of protein. With the exception of milk it is a safe rule to take only those foods which have 10 or more per cent. of protein. If we include foods with less than 10 per cent. as a source of protein we encumber the alimentary tract with much bulk. We smile at an earnest student who proclaims a diet of bread and butter, jam and tea as satisfactory because of the animal protein in the butter, but are guilty at times of a similar mistake. Thus the pulses—dried peas, beans, and lentils—are recommended by many dietitians for their protein content. It is true that uncooked haricot beans have 21.4 per cent. of protein, but they are inedible in that form. When cooked they have but 6.6 per cent. and have far too much bulk to be used as the sole source of protein. To obtain even 37 g. of protein from cooked pulse we should have to eat about 1½ lb., and then we should have obtained only 540 Calories.

The rule of counting no food a protein food unless it has 10 per cent. of protein excludes all leaf, root, and seed vegetables and all fruits, even though leaf proteins have an excellent biological value (CHIBNALL). It includes eggs (11 per cent.), most fish (9–15 per cent. as purchased), meats (11–17 per cent.), soft cheese (over 20 per cent.), and hard cheeses (25–35 per cent.). Cooked fish vary from 17 to 24 per cent. and meats 20 to 32. Pure vegetarians having had the ground thus drastically cut from under them, may put in a plea for nuts in which the figures run as high as 31 (pine kernels) and 28 (peanuts).<sup>1</sup> These can be eaten raw and even when cooked contain a large amount of protein. But we must point out that nuts are not easily digestible, nor are their proteins of good biological value. Unless some unforeseen and radical change occurs in our ideas concerning the amount of protein necessary per day, we shall have to give pride of place to foods of animal origin.

When should the protein foods be taken during the day? We cannot avoid taking some protein at each meal, but should there be a meal in which the emphasis is on protein? It used to be the custom in our public schools many years ago to crowd the animal protein, mainly as meat, into the midday meal, and let breakfast and supper be mainly carbohydrate and fat. This almost certainly involved the waste of a large quantity of Calories due to the specific dynamic action of the protein. If protein is taken in smaller amounts throughout the day the specific dynamic action is not so marked, so that the rule "little and often" with adequate amounts of carbohydrates at the same meals is a practical

<sup>1</sup> In fairness to the vegetarians it must be said that a high bread diet, coupled with milk, eggs and cheese, is a high protein diet.

rule, followed by most people of the well-to-do classes, which has theoretical backing.

That carbohydrates should accompany proteins in a meal has been clearly demonstrated by Cuthbertson and Munro.<sup>1</sup> In their experiments four meals daily were given, and these were alternately carbohydrate only or protein and fat. The carbohydrate meals consisted of cooked corn starch and sugar. In such a diet the carbohydrate was almost completely separated by some hours from the protein. Even though 80 to 100 g. proteins and Calories from 2700 to 3400 per day were taken, the subjects of the experiment lost *all* the nitrogen of the protein eaten plus some extra nitrogen which could only have come from the tissues of the body, probably the muscles. In other words, *unless carbohydrate accompanies protein in the diet the eater might as well starve for protein*. It is essential that some of the protein—say one quarter—should be associated with carbohydrate. Otherwise it is useless for body building.

This has been confirmed for animals as well as for man. Also it has been found that amino acid mixtures and protein digests are useless as tissue builders if they are not given accompanied by glucose.<sup>2</sup>

Weight reduction could be accomplished by separating the carbohydrates and proteins in a diet, but it would clearly be dangerous, for a person on such a regimen would be living on his own tissues—debilitating himself by using up his muscles.

The explanation of the results of their interesting experiments given by Cuthbertson and Munro has resolved a problem which must have puzzled physiologists for forty years. Proteins are digested to amino acids in the small intestine and are absorbed as such into the blood. This blood passes directly to the liver which contains, among others, potent ferments called deaminases. These proceed to eliminate the nitrogen from the amino acids and therefore make them useless for body building. This appears to be a most ingenious plan for preventing the tissues of the body from ever getting any amino acid from which to synthesize protein except the ones which the liver had not time to metabolize. In fact it seemed to be a dangerous mechanism. Cuthbertson and Munro suggest that glucose derived from the starchy and sugary foods of the meal depresses the activity of the deaminases, which can only effect their devastating purposes in the absence of carbohydrates from a meal containing protein.

We have seen above that there is a case for taking definite amounts of total protein and animal protein per day. Do these bear any fixed

<sup>1</sup> CUTHBERTSON and MUNRO. (1939), *Biochem. Journ.*, **33**, 128.

<sup>2</sup> These observations should once and for all give the quietus to a once fashionable diet which forbade the taking of potatoes with meat, bread with cheese, or a meat course followed by a farinaceous pudding.

ratio to the fats and carbohydrates of the diet? In the past a suggested ratio of 1 : 1 : 4 for these component parts of a diet crystallized almost into a dogma. We may say at once that there is no evidence from the history of, and observations on, mankind that there is any sacrosanct ratio. The reason for maintaining a diet similar in its protein content to the normal British diet, i.e. one in which the protein yields from 10–12 per cent. of the Calories, is mainly economic. A dense population, and therefore a civilization as we understand it, cannot be maintained upon a high protein diet. It takes many more acres to produce protein than to produce carbohydrate. A dense population first became possible when the value of cereals in diet was realized and exploited. Even dairy farming cannot by itself support so dense a population as wheat farming.

Such considerations make us realize the extraordinary latitude of diet which the human body tolerates. In the days of the cave man, diet must have been predominantly protein; in the more recent days of nomadic existence the diet was still largely protein; in modern times it has swung over to being predominantly carbohydrate. Among different races in modern times the percentage of calories obtained from protein may vary from 40 per cent. (Greenland) to 8.9 per cent. (Java), and while we may consider the latter unduly low, the former is not dangerously high. Even in England, with all the pressure of custom to fix the ratio, it may swing from 8.3 to 19.3.<sup>1</sup> So long as the relation of protein, fat, and carbohydrate is such that the fat in gross amount does not rise above the relation expressed in the equation

$$F=2C+\frac{P}{2},$$

when ketosis may occur, we may adopt a diet of almost any relation between the main constituents. The most we can say is that if there is an optimum ratio we do not know it yet.

A final point for discussion is whether among the proteins any one has a particular virtue apart from the high biological values of the animal proteins. We are thinking more especially of meat. It holds such a high place of esteem in the minds of most of us from, it is said, a pre-eminent statesman to the man in the street.<sup>2</sup> Meat, it is thought, makes for muscle and energy. By common consent among the working-classes of this country the breadwinner gets the lion's share of the meat. In the now obsolete system of diet of the rowing man, in vogue when the authors were undergraduates, the subjects of the régime were told to eat huge meals of meat and then "work it into the system" by

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, **36**, 269.

<sup>2</sup> This is by no means confined to the British. According to a manager of tin mines in Nigeria, the natives will do almost anything to obtain meat, even if it be only the flesh of rats and lizards. (Private communication.)

arduous exercise. So far as we can see, there is nothing but prejudice in favour of the view that there is anything which places meat, in so far as the protein it contains, in a position apart from the other protein foods. The reasons for curtailing its consumption are economic rather than dietetic, though there is evidence that meat is contra-indicated in some forms of dyspepsia.

But there is one circumstance in which it is theoretically wise to cut down meat, and other sources of first-class proteins, viz. in hot weather and hot climates, particularly hot climates which are humid. Animal proteins have a higher specific dynamic action than vegetable proteins; moreover, most of the sources of animal protein have a fairly high concentration of protein whereas vegetable sources have not. Consequently it is easy to have a surplus of protein at a meal when meat is eaten, but not so easy when vegetarian foods are used, and the specific dynamic action of protein has thus a good chance to show itself when animal protein forms the main part of a meal. The difficulty in hot humid climates is to get rid of this inevitable waste heat and so it might plausibly be argued that meat eating be cut down with advantage in such climates, but on examination this argument is not unassailable.

The lowering of the specific dynamic action of protein in cool surroundings and its raising in warm surroundings was observed in animals. Man by his clothing and by his housing accommodation maintains a tropical climate next to his skin. Consequently the specific dynamic action of protein will have its full effect whether the shade temperature is high or low. None the less it might be well in a hot humid climate to reduce the protein to the minimum necessary and to spread it throughout the day, and not to take it all at one meal. If, however, the nights are cool in a hot climate the concentration of the protein into the evening meal would not matter so much, for the specific dynamic action would not be in evidence till 3 to 6 hours later. To have, however, a large protein meal at midday would involve an outburst of heat in the late afternoon at a time when the thermometer is at its highest.

In view of the fact that proteins supply only 10–12 per cent. of the Calories of a diet, it might seem that the suggestions in the last paragraph are pushing hypothesis too far. Thus if all the protein of the day's diet were taken at 8 p.m. its maximum specific dynamic action (37 per cent.) would entail a surplus production of 152 Calories. This would probably be evolved from the body between 11 p.m. and 2 a.m., i.e. at the rate of 50 extra Calories per hour. As the normal rate when resting will be above the basal metabolic rate of 70 Calories per hour and below 125 per hour ( $3000 \div 24$ ), the extra Calories due to the specific dynamic action of the protein would cause an increase in the rate of evolution of heat by 40 to 70 per cent. This certainly is a large increase

and where there is difficulty in eliminating excess of heat, i.e. where the nights are hot and humid, experience may prove that a heavy protein meal in the evening is unadvisable. It must be admitted that custom in the hot humid climate known to us flouts theory.

**Summary.** As proteins are the main architectural element in living protoplasm and as the body cannot synthesize proteins from simple inorganic substances, proteins are essential in diet for growth and repair of the body. Proteins are complex chains—condensation products—of simpler organic compounds, amino acids, of which there are twenty or more examples in most proteins. There may be 250 molecules of amino acids in any protein and therefore some of them must be repeated more than once, indeed many times. Proteins differ from one another according to the number, nature, proportion and arrangement of their constituent amino acid. Some food proteins are better body builders than others, because the amino acids composing them are like those of the human tissues in number, nature and proportion. (Arrangement does not matter because before they are used by the body they are digested to their component amino acids.) Such proteins are said to have a high biological value, and the proteins with high biological value are those of milk, eggs, meat, fish and cheese.

It is therefore considered wise to have some proteins of high biological value in the diet every day. How much is uncertain, but there is a provisional estimate for the adult male of 37 g. per day. Many did not reach the level during the war 1939–45. How much the total protein should be is also uncertain. Again provisionally it is fixed at 1 g. per kilo body weight. In practice there are large departures from this suggestion without any disease.

Pregnant and nursing women need more protein than the non-pregnant. The League of Nations estimate is to increase it by one-half in the later days of pregnancy and by 100 per cent. during lactation. American estimates are lower. In practice their recommendations are rarely achieved.

Proportionally to their weight children need more protein than adults and theoretically more first-class protein. The estimates given by different groups of dietitians differ markedly from one another, the Russian figures being greatest during the first few years of life and during adolescence. Until the third decade of this century no one has collected data of children's intakes on any large scale and the results prove disconcertingly variable. The average figures for the protein per day collected by Widdowson are suggested as a scale of reference for children in Great Britain.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE FUNCTIONS OF FOOD (*continued*). (III) THE SUPPLY OF ELEMENTS OTHER THAN CARBON, HYDROGEN, OXYGEN AND NITROGEN

So far we have dealt mainly with substances in food usually studied by organic chemists—the proteins, fats, and carbohydrates. It is necessary now to turn to the supply of the elements usually studied by inorganic chemists. They are often referred to as the mineral constituents or mineral salts in the diet. This is wrong. Sulphur, for example, enters the blood stream as part of an amino acid. Sulphur in the form of mineral salts is absorbed with difficulty and excreted unchanged. The cumbrous phrase of the title shows what is meant, but for practical purposes we shall call them mineral or ash elements.

We can best realize their importance by reference to the amounts of these elements which enter into the structure of the body. The following amounts of inorganic materials are found in the body of an adult man of 70 kilogrammes weight (=11 stone approx.):

Calcium . . .	1050	g. <sup>1</sup>	Cobalt . . .	a trace
Phosphorus . . .	700	„	Silicon . . .	„
Potassium . . .	245	„	Aluminium . . .	mere traces
Sulphur . . .	175	„	Arsenic . . .	„ „
Chlorine . . .	105	„	Boron . . .	„ „
Sodium . . .	105	„	Copper . . .	„ „
Magnesium . . .	35	„	Fluorine . . .	„ „
Iron . . .	2.8	„	Nickel . . .	„ „
Manganese . . .	0.21	„	Zinc . . .	„ „
Iodine . . .	0.028	„		

It will be seen from this table that at least 19 elements enter into the composition of the body though in very different amounts. It must not be thought, however, that the order of magnitude indicates either the order of their importance or gives a clue to the amount necessary in the daily diet. For example, there is much more potassium in the body than sodium, yet we need a much greater intake of sodium than of potassium per day. There is but a small amount of iodine in the body, a trace of cobalt and mere traces of copper and zinc. Without the iodine

<sup>1</sup> Analyses by Sherman and others. McCOLLUM and associates in *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition*, 5th edn., put the figure for calcium at 1400 to 2000 g.

life would be impossible and the "mere traces" of copper and cobalt are essential in making the hæmoglobin of red blood corpuscles and of zinc, in the manufacture of insulin and of carbonic anhydrase. It is possible that we could dispense with the traces of aluminium, arsenic, boron, and silicon, though this is by no means proved. Fluorine in minute amounts makes for hard enamel in the teeth.

The functions of these elements are twofold. They enter into the structure of the body and they aid in catalysing the reactions of the living body. Thus the spectacular amounts of calcium and phosphorus given in the table go to make up the solid structure of the bones and teeth, which account for one-fifth of the weight of the body. Iron is an integral part of the colour-bearing nucleus of the hæmoglobin. Phosphorus is indispensable in cell nuclei, in nerve tissues, in enzymes and important food proteins. Sulphur is present in practically every protein and more particularly in those of the skin. Potassium is essential to cell activity. Magnesium enters into the composition of the bones, and the muscles and the other soft tissues of the body contain magnesium in greater proportion than they contain calcium. Depletion of magnesium leads to tremors and convulsions in animals and possibly man.

These elements may be used for catalytic as well as for structural purposes. Thus traces of ionized calcium salts are essential for the maintenance of the activity of the skeletal, cardiac, and unstriated muscles of the body. So essential is the maintenance of the correct amount in the blood (about 8-10 mg. per 100 c.c.) that a set of four glands, the parathyroids, have that function deputed to them. Should there not be sufficient in the food to keep that quantity normal, these glands mobilize calcium from the bones to tide over the emergency, and if the deficit of calcium is long continued a condition of tetany supervenes. Phosphorus, as phosphates or pyrophosphate, in combination with thiamine and nicotinamide, acts as a catalyst in carbohydrate metabolism and is essential in combination with creatine in initiating muscle contraction. In fact, wherever there is active metabolism in progress the presence of phosphorus as a catalyst is suspected. As a phosphate it is utilized in buffering, i.e. modifying the hydrogen ion concentration of the plasma of the blood and of the red corpuscles. Also it is utilized in the secretion of an acid urine from an alkaline blood plasma. Sulphur in glutathione is important in catalysing oxidation in the tissues. Copper catalyses the manufacture of hæmoglobin and manganese and cobalt aid in this or similar processes. Four iodine atoms are present in thyroxine, a secretion of the thyroid gland, which catalyses the metabolic processes of the body. Thus 5 mg. of thyroxine, containing about 3.6 mg. of iodine, injected into the body, raise the basal metabolic rate by 40 per cent. Zinc, as we have said, may be essential in formation of insulin, the internal secretion of the

pancreas, which catalyses carbohydrate metabolism. Zinc also is a constituent of anhydrase, an enzyme found in the red blood corpuscles, essential in respiration.

These facts illustrate the importance of obtaining a sufficiency of various mineral elements in the diet. The elements to be considered are the metals calcium, magnesium, potassium, sodium, iron, cobalt, manganese, copper and zinc and the non-metals fluorine, chlorine, iodine, sulphur and phosphorus. Some are needed in large amounts and some only in traces, whence they get the name "trace elements". Among these "trace elements" are cobalt, manganese, copper, zinc, fluorine and iodine. Convenience and not chemical order has dictated the precedence of these substances in the sequel.

### Calcium

This element enters into the composition of bones and teeth as the phosphate and carbonate. There is evidence that these two compounds are associated as they are in the mineral apatite. It is absorbed, probably in inorganic form in the small intestine and this absorption is aided by the presence of vitamin D in the diet. How the vitamin works is obscure. It is known that the hydrogen ion concentration of the contents of the small intestine increases in the presence of vitamin D, and this has led to the supposition that to increase the acidity in that organ is the function of that vitamin. Calcium salts are much more soluble in acid media than in alkaline. But that cannot be the only explanation, for calcium in the presence of vitamin D is well absorbed even when the small intestine is rendered alkaline by large doses of alkali.<sup>1</sup> The calcium circulates in the blood, in the plasma of which it is present to the amount of about 10 mg. per 100 c.c., and is presumably deposited in the bone and the excess excreted in the urine. The traditional belief that excess of absorbed calcium over the needs of the body is re-excreted into the colon is almost certainly false.<sup>2</sup> All calcium in the faeces is calcium which has failed to be absorbed or has passed into the gut in the digestive juices. Anything which hurries the food along the intestine, such as purgation or the use of large quantities of roughage, is inimical to the absorption of calcium. Meulengracht<sup>3</sup> has described a case of severe depletion of the calcium of the bones (osteoporosis) which he thought was the result of prolonged daily purgation with sulphates. Phytates which form insoluble salts with calcium prevent the absorption of that element.<sup>4</sup> Excess of phosphates and

<sup>1</sup> GRAHAM, G., and OAKLEY, G. (1938), *Arch. Dis. Child.*, **1**, N.S., p. 1.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1939), *Biochem. Journ.*, **33**, 523.

<sup>3</sup> *Lancet*, (1938), **2**, 774.

<sup>4</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Journ. Physiol.*, **101**, 304.

unabsorbed fatty acids, as in coeliac disease, chronic pancreatitis, fibrocytic disease of the pancreas and sprue, work in that way. If calcium in the food is in the form of a phytate (calcium magnesium inositol hexaphosphate) it will not be absorbed. Calcium oxalate (e.g. in spinach) is not absorbed.<sup>1</sup> While 90–100 per cent. of the calcium of skim milk, and from 80–100 per cent. of that in green leaves of the cabbage and its allies is absorbed, only 15–20 per cent. of that of spinach is available.<sup>2</sup>

To ensure absorption, the diet must contain available calcium, such as that in milk and cheese, and vitamin D must also be present. A low calcium diet is of more use to the body in the presence of vitamin D than a high calcium intake in the absence of that vitamin.

The lack of calcium in the diet leads to osteoporosis of the bones, and the lack of vitamin D calcium and phosphorus to rickets and to osteomalacia, which is almost certainly adult rickets. The power of forming new bone is not confined to the young. According to Roholm, quoted by Leitch,<sup>3</sup> workers who have been forced to leave their employment in a cryolite factory on account of deposition of calcium around the bone show the deposits well organized as normal bone when examined post-mortem years later. Meulengracht and Meyer, also quoted by Leitch, give examples of men and women verging on old age who were able to manufacture new bone on treatment with calcium and vitamin D. They had suffered for years with "rheumatic pains" which did not yield to treatment till osteomalacia was diagnosed and they were treated for that complaint. It is possible that the fragility of the bones of the aged and some of their "rheumatism" are due to a prolonged deficit in the diet of calcium.<sup>4</sup> The condition called senile or spinal osteoporosis, in which the vertebræ contain much less calcium than usual and are liable to undergo crush fractures, has a different pathology from osteomalacia, since there is no osteoid material present.<sup>5</sup> It cannot therefore be caused by lack of vitamin D and its causation is still unknown,<sup>6</sup> though it seems probable that a long-continued lack of calcium, phosphorus and perhaps vitamin C may be responsible. The final report of the League of Nations Technical Commission on nutrition calls attention to the disappearance of rheumatoid pains in pregnant women on treatment with calcium and

<sup>1</sup> FAIRBANKS and MITCHELL. (1938), *Journ. Nutrit.*, **16**, 79.

<sup>2</sup> KUNG, YEH, and ADOLPH. (1938), *Chin. Journ. Physiol.*, **13**, 307.

<sup>3</sup> LEITCH, I. *Nut. Abs. and Rev.* (1937), **6**, 553.

<sup>4</sup> LYALL, A. (1944), *Proc. Nutr. Soc.*, **1**, 143.

<sup>5</sup> BURROWS, G., and GRAHAM. (1945), *Quart. J. Med.*, N.S. **14**, 147.

<sup>6</sup> Sex hormones apparently are needed, in addition to calcium and vitamin D. COOKE, A. M. 1955, *Lancet*, **1**, 877 and 929. See below, p. 546.

vitamin D. Maxwell,<sup>1</sup> late Professor of Obstetrics and Gynæcology in the University of Peiping, often had to perform Cæsarean-section on women with osteomalacia resulting from lack of calcium and vitamin D in the diet. The babies of these patients also suffered from foetal rickets. He thought that the intense activity of the foetus in utero in such women was the result of a tetany due to lack of calcium and vitamin D. The diet of the Chinese is notoriously deficient in calcium. Though European diet is better supplied there is evidence of a deficit. We have as proof the surveys by Orr<sup>2</sup> and Crawford and Broadley<sup>3</sup> and the fact that Stettner<sup>4</sup> finds a very high percentage of the children of the hospital class with osteoporotic bones at all ages, with a minimum at 3 years of age, and that osteoporosis also occurs in middle-class children. Calculations by the students of King's College of Household and Social Science (now Queen Elizabeth College), showed that in war-time and upon war rations it was possible by careful purchase of calcium-containing foods and making use of all priorities to obtain calcium up to the assessed requirements except during adolescence.<sup>5</sup>

There is obvious reason, therefore, for estimating the need for calcium of people of all ages, for many people in all parts of the world are in danger of obtaining too little. The minimum amount for maintaining balance of calcium in the adult has been obtained in a similar way to that used for protein. It is not sufficient to take the lowest amount of calcium in the food which just balances the loss of calcium from the body in the excreta, for both positive and negative balances may occur on quite a large or small intake. This is due to mobilization from the bones by extra parathyroid activity or to deposition of calcium in the bones under the influence of vitamin D.

The figure obtained by Leitch<sup>6</sup> is 550 mg. per day. If, as seems reasonable, we allow a 50 per cent. margin for safety, we reach a figure of 825 mg. per day. There are certainly many people who do not attain that figure, though the average figure in the 63 men investigated by Widdowson was 870. In the women it was 630. It may be that the figure of 825 mg. is too high. Sherman suggests 680. But whatever the truth may be we can be sure that our needs for calcium will be easily covered if we increase the consumption of milk in this country to the level the

<sup>1</sup> MAXWELL. (1923), *China Med. Journ.*, **37**, 625; (1924-5), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **18**, 48; (1925), *Journ. Obst. and Gynæc. Brit., Emp.*, **32**, 433; MAXWELL and TURNBULL. (1930), *Journ. Path.*, **33**, 327; (1935), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **28**, 265.

<sup>2</sup> ORR, J. B. (1936), *Food, Health, and Income*, Macmillan & Co.

<sup>3</sup> CRAWFORD and BROADLEY. (1938), *The People's Food*, Heinemann.

<sup>4</sup> STETTNER. (1931), *Zeit. f. Kinderheilk*, **51**, 435, and 1932, **52**, 1. Quoted by Leitch.

<sup>5</sup> TODD. (1934), *Journ. Home Econ.*, **26**, 605, quoted by McCOLLUM, ORENT-KEILES and DAY. (1939). *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition*, states that osteoporosis is common in adolescence in the U.S.A.

<sup>6</sup> LEITCH, I. (1937), *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, **6**, 533.

dietitian demands, i.e. at least 1 pint per day. One pint of milk contains 680 mg. of calcium.<sup>1</sup>

*Pregnancy*, in its last three months, entails an increase in calcium consumption on the part of the mother. Otherwise her bones will be depleted to make good the needs of the foetus when its bones are ossifying. Maxwell gives evidence from his experience in China that earlier pregnancies so deplete the skeleton of the pelvis that in later pregnancies it is deformed and the infants have to be delivered by Cæsarean-section. It is possible that the funnel-shaped pelvis seen in this country in multipara of the poorer classes are due to such loss of calcium.

The main work on the calcium needs of women in the last 2½ months of pregnancy we owe to the Toveruds<sup>2</sup> of Oslo. They investigated the calcium of women during that time in a small maternity hospital which preferred to have the mother in hospital throughout that period. Making assumptions based upon analysis of the bones of prematurely still-born children they could, by analysis of the food and the calcium excretion of the mother in the excreta, discover whether their women were in positive or negative calcium balance. At first they could never obtain a positive calcium balance on the diet usually served in the hospital. They then altered the diet, increasing the amounts of milk, cheese, and green vegetables, and adding cod-liver oil in the winter months and still could not obtain a positive calcium balance till they brought pressure to bear upon the women to take the new diet. Then when the calcium intake rose to the high figure of 1.6 g. per day they were able to establish a positive balance.<sup>3</sup> Such a figure we must therefore take as a requisite for women in the last months of pregnancy. Similar results have been obtained in the United States.<sup>4</sup> One confirmatory piece of evidence is that X-rays showed the bones of the skull and the long bones of the child when born to be better calcified when the mother had had a diet satisfactory in calcium than when she had not. The figure of 1.6 g. has been accepted by the League of Nations Technical Commission and by most who have investigated the subject.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In fact, according to experiments on undernourished children by R. A. McCANCE and E. M. WIDDOWSON (*M.R.C. Special Report* 287, 1954), the chief value of milk in nutrition is in supplying calcium.

<sup>2</sup> KIRSTEN and GUTTORM TOVERUD. (1931), *Acta Pædiatrica*, 32, Supplement II.

<sup>3</sup> A simpler method might have been to double the dose of vitamin D.

<sup>4</sup> E.g. in COONS and HUNSCHER and also by MACY and associates. (1930). See *J. Biol. Chem.*, 86, 59, and (1931), 90, 675.

<sup>5</sup> The observations of GRAHAM, G., and OAKLEY, W. G. (1938), *Arch. Dis. Child.*, N.S. I, 1, in cases of renal rickets showed that a positive calcium balance can be obtained with 1 g. of calcium when large doses of vitamin D—3000 to 6000 I.U.—were given. These experiments suggest that it may be unnecessary to give so large an amount of calcium as 1.6 g. if larger amounts of vitamin D are added to the diet.

Of the 120 pregnant women investigated in this country one only reached this optimal figure.<sup>1</sup> She belonged to the well-to-do class and owed her high calcium intake (1.75) g. mainly to the large quantity of milk taken (37½ oz. or nearly 1 quart.) 17 took over 1.0 g. per day and in most cases this was due to a high milk intake. In only one case did cheese partly account for the large amount taken. If the estimate we have accepted be correct, the majority of the women investigated must have been depleting their bones of calcium or would deplete it, according to the stage of pregnancy they were in, if they continued on this régime.

*Lactation* also involves a strain upon the maternal organism. Assuming a secretion of 1½ litres of milk per day with a calcium content of 0.32 g. per litre, we get a loss per day of 480 mg. of calcium. This plus the normal daily need will demand an intake of at least 1160 mg. or a quantity found in about 1½ pints of milk. Should the milk secreted contain still greater amounts of calcium, and figures are quoted by Leitch<sup>2</sup> up to 0.72 g. per litre, the intake of calcium will have to be still further increased. A quart of milk per day would not cover such an output.

The *calcium needs of infants* can be calculated from a knowledge of the relation of weight of skeleton to the body weight and the calcium content of the skeleton. From the records we have, we gather that a figure of 8 g. of calcium per kilogramme body weight represents the calcium of the body at birth. To maintain, but not to increase this proportion, the retentions for the first six months of life would be 104, 248, 200, 192, 176, and 135 mg. per day respectively at a moderately slow rate of growth. The retentions observed on babies of the working-class quoted by Leitch, are actually below these figures, so that, if the assumptions made are correct, the bones of the babies will be less ossified at six months than at birth. Only if the yields of mother's milk are above 175 c.c. per kilo body weight of the baby and the milk contains over 0.3 per mille. of calcium are the retentions of calcium likely to be enough to cover the baby's needs.

With cow's milk a sufficient retention is more difficult to obtain because though the calcium content is high the curd of cow's milk is difficult to digest. Treatment of the milk with acid or with calcium chloride and feeding it to the baby along with cod-liver oil overcomes the difficulty of digestion and absorption. Iowa pediatricians<sup>3</sup> claim by these means to have obtained retentions in excess of those necessary to maintain the skeleton as well calcified as it is at birth.

Similar calculations can be made for children over the age of one

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, WIDDOWSON, and VERDON-ROE. (1938), *Journ. Hygiene*, 38, 596.

<sup>2</sup> LEITCH, I. (1937), *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, 6, 553.

<sup>3</sup> JEANS. (1933), *Amer. Journ. Dis. Child*, 44, 69, quoted by Leitch.

year. We give the figures obtained as a guide to the calcium requirements of boys at different ages.

mg. per day				mg. per day			
0.5-1	.	.	785	9-10	.	.	1000
1-2	.	.	702	10-11	.	.	1267
2-3	.	.	734	11-12	.	.	1375
3-4	.	.	737	12-13	.	.	1341
4-5	.	.	650	13-14	.	.	1494
5-6	.	.	849	14-15	.	.	1381
6-7	.	.	845	15-16	.	.	1937
7-8	.	.	890	16-17	.	.	1841
8-9	.	.	841	17-18	.	.	1231

The figures are compiled from average weights for American children up to 5-6 and thence on from figures for preparatory and public school boys. Until the age of 10 the amounts suggested do not reach the level given by Sherman as desirable. Beyond that age they are much in excess. The greatest increase in height occurs around the 16th year and if the skeleton is to be reasonably ossified it is at that time that the greatest need for a good calcium intake occurs. It will be remembered that Friend, the medical officer of Christ's Hospital, states in his book<sup>1</sup> "that the incidence of broken bones increased remarkably in the rationing years 1917-1919 and did not fall to normal till 1923." At that time they were having difficulty at the school in supplying sufficient milk. Leitch's figures have been criticized adversely as exaggerations of the truth, but all admit the truth of the trend of the calculations.

We have painted a sufficiently gloomy picture of the attainment or the lack of attainment of the needs for calcium in the diet among several groups of the populace. Figures given by Orr and Crawford and Broadley do not relieve the gloom. Only the wealthiest classes obtain enough and estimates vary from 25 to 35 million out of the 45 million for those whose diet is inadequate. And yet a sufficiency is so easy to obtain! We quote the cheapest conceivable diet: 5 oz. of cheese, 2 lb. 3½ oz. 80 per cent. extraction bread, and 4 oz. cabbage. This diet contains 1084 mg. of calcium, assuming that none of the calcium of the bread is available. The diet of a vegetarian who kept a complete record of the weight of all his food during the course of a week yielded no less than 2310 mg. of calcium.<sup>2</sup> And in view of the foods which contain plenty of calcium—relatively cheap foods—there is little need that any but the poorest strata of society should go without their quota.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *The Schoolboy* (1935), Hefler & Sons.

<sup>2</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 269.

<sup>3</sup> But see note above, p. 94, on the difficulty of obtaining calcium upon war rations.

CALCIUM CONTENT OF FOODS IN MILLIGRAMMES PER 100 G. AS PURCHASED  
All CEREALS and cereal products from 4 (rice) to 55 (oatmeal).<sup>1</sup>

MEAT and meat products from 7 (duck) to 30 (sausages) except tripe 127.

FISH, white 11 (cod) to 24 (skate).

fat 686 (smelts) to 859 (whitebait).

shell 18 (crab) to 144 (shrimps), but those with calcareous shells have high figures for edible portion.

DAIRY PRODUCTS. Hard cheeses (Cheddar, Gruyère, Parmesan) 810–1200

Soft cheeses, 362 (Stilton) to 540 (Gorgonzola).

Milk 120, skimmed milk 124, condensed whole sweetened 344, condensed whole unsweetened 290, condensed skimmed sweetened 384, dried whole 895, dried skimmed 1225.

butter 15.

FRUITS, fresh, from 3 (apples) to 77 (rhubarb and that probably unavailable because of the presence of oxalates) 30 (dried apples) to 95 (currants) but figs 284.

NUTS from 9 (coconut) to 102 (barcelona nuts).

VEGETABLES mainly from 8 (broad beans) to 46 (carrots and cabbage) but Kale (108) and watercress (189) are exceptions.

**Distribution of Calcium in Foods.** *Meat* is of little value, the only exception being tripe, which has been dressed with lime (127 mg. per 100 g.). *Fish* frequently contain large amounts of calcium, especially those in which one can or is forced to eat the backbone. *Milk* and its various products except butter contain large amounts. Contrary to current dietetic superstition *vegetables* and *fruits* contain almost useless amounts. *Brown bread* is extremely poor and probably a good percentage is unavailable; *white bread* has less but probably it is all available.<sup>2</sup> (The problem of the milling of flour will be considered later.) Should a person drink one quart of water with the hardness of London water (17 grains per gallon) he would obtain 243 mg. calcium, no mean amount. But if the water had been boiled previously, as in the making of tea, some of the calcium would have been precipitated. *Vegetables* boiled in hard water actually increase their quantity of calcium because boiling the water precipitates the calcium and the vegetables form a convenient nucleus upon which it can be precipitated. Soft water, like that of Liverpool, is useless in supplying calcium.

The practical politics of obtaining sufficient calcium is easy; it is to increase the intake of milk and cheese. McCance and Widdowson in various dietary studies have shown a close correlation between total calcium and milk intakes.

They further state<sup>3</sup> that wholemeal bread so depresses the calcium

<sup>1</sup> Commodities with higher figures are either fortified with calcium or are made from parts of the cereal, e.g. bran which contain phytates. Their calcium is unavailable.

<sup>2</sup> There is but little phytate in white flour.

<sup>3</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Journ. Physiol.*, 101, 44.

uptake by the body that wholemeal flour should be fortified with 200 mg. calcium to every 100 g. flour and 85 per cent. flour with 120 mg. The eating of 1 lb. of unfortified wholemeal bread needs the consumption of an extra  $\frac{9}{10}$  pint of milk to balance its adverse effect on absorption of calcium. This emphasizes the need of extra milk, or cheese, in maintaining the calcium balance, especially when whole cereals are eaten, as in many "advanced" diets. There is evidence that the consumption of bread made from a flour of 100 per cent. extraction conduces to rickets in Dublin.<sup>1</sup> None the less it is claimed that in the sunny high altitude of Johannesburg in South Africa calcium can be absorbed despite high extraction of wheat.<sup>2</sup>

### Phosphorus

/ We have seen that phosphorus appears in many parts of the body both in its framework and structural units and as a catalytic and a buffering agent. Its use in the latter capacity in the urine results in a loss to the body of approximately  $\frac{3}{4}$  g. of phosphorus per day. That at least must be made up. In fact there is a demand for phosphorus in foods at least as high as, or higher than that for, calcium. In the adult, if phosphorus be lacking in the diet, the body can draw upon its apatite quarry of the bones for the lacking element; in growing animals this is not possible and a low phosphorus intake limits growth. There is an optimal relation between calcium and phosphorus in the diet which is about 1 : 1 or possibly 1 : 1.5. It is known that in rats a high calcium : low phosphorus and a low calcium : high phosphorus ratio both limit the rate of growth and, in the absence of vitamin D, conduce to rickets. In milk the ratio of Ca : P is as 1.27 : 1. Most text books accept Sherman's suggestions for a reasonable intake of calcium and phosphorus which lead to a ratio of Ca : P of 1 : 1.94, but there is no evidence of what is the optimal ratio. Let us assume at the present it is 1 : 1, that is to say that if the adult man needs 680 mg. per day, the non-pregnant woman needs 476 (i.e. 0.7 of the male need); the pregnant woman up to 1474 at the end of pregnancy and growing children from 785 to 1937.

Now there are parts of the world where phosphorus is deficient, e.g. South Africa, and there is evidence of phosphorus deficiency among farm animals in all parts of the world. But the human diets investigated reach even the high estimates of phosphorus need by the League of Nations Technical Commission which are higher than those suggested here. Consequently there need be little trouble concerning phosphorus

<sup>1</sup> PRINGLE, REYNOLDS, and JESSOP. (1943), *J. Med. Ass. Eire* and CROASDAILE, COLLIS, PRINGLE, and JESSOP, *ibid.* June, 67, 69. Reaffirmed in 1954 by JESSOP.

<sup>2</sup> WALKER, A. R. P., FOX, F. W., and IRVING, J. T. (1948), *Bioch. Journ.*, **42**, 452.

intakes. It is almost certainly true that if the *calcium in the diet is adequate the phosphorus will be adequate too*. That is because milk, cheese, and the fish, which we take for their calcium, have a high phosphorus content as well.

This raises the question: In what form does the body obtain its phosphorus? It is certainly mainly, but not entirely, in organic combination. Half the phosphorus in milk is in combination with the protein caseinogen. The vitellin of egg-yolk also has phosphorus as an integral part of its molecule. Again in the nucleo-proteins it is in combination. Possibly in meats the creatine phosphate, the compound of riboflavin and phosphoric acid, and the adenylyl pyrophosphate are all hydrolysed during digestion so that the phosphates are free and uncombined. Anyhow we know that the phosphoric acid is freed by digestion from the caseinogen and vitelline, where it is in combination with the amino acid serine. And we know that a young growing animal can obtain all the phosphorus it needs from inorganic phosphates. Consequently we assume that phosphorus enters the blood-stream as a phosphate.

One organic compound of phosphorus is found in cereals, pulses, and nuts and to a less extent in vegetables: calcium magnesium inositol hexaphosphate. There is evidence that this is of little or no value in nutrition, for man possesses no ferment, such as plants and rats possess, which hydrolyses the phytates. This shows that we must not accept the phosphorus contents of those foods as all available, nor indeed their calcium and magnesium contents. We must subtract from the total the phytate phosphorus<sup>1</sup> (see below).

Turning to the actual intakes by middle-class people we find that all the men investigated obtained enough available phosphorus<sup>2</sup>; so do most of the non-pregnant women, though there was one out of the 63 consuming considerably less.<sup>3</sup> Amongst the pregnant women<sup>4</sup> there were few up to the standard that we have set, and all those who achieved it had plenty of money to spend on foods. The rest were moderately poor, or had unemployed husbands.

**Distribution of Phosphorus in Foods.** There is no point in giving extended tables concerning the phosphorus content of foods, for very few foods have insufficient phosphorus. Only by living on fruit and vegetables (omitting the pulses) can a person avoid taking enough phosphorus in the diet.

It is enough to say:

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1935), *Bioch. Journ.*, **29**, 2694.

<sup>2</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, **36**, 269.

<sup>3</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M., and McCANCE, R. A. (1936), *ibid.*, **36**, 293.

<sup>4</sup> McCANCE, R. A., WIDDOWSON, E. M., and VERDON-ROE. (1938), *ibid.*, **38**, 596.

	mg. per 100 g.
Cereals (whole)	213-380
„ (milled)	29-99
Condensed milks	238-270
Eggs	218-256
Fruits (fresh)	7-54
„ (dried)	91-116
Hard cheeses and dried milk	545-772
Meat, poultry, fish	100-270
Nuts	74-510
Pulses (cooked)	122-169
Soft cheeses (Stilton, Gorgonzola)	304-375
Vegetables (except pulses)	10-93

### Iron

There is but very little iron in the body—only 4 to 5 g. in the adult male, or 0.007 per cent. of the whole body—yet this iron is extraordinarily precious. Some 75 per cent. of it is found in the red corpuscles of the blood, as an integral part of the hæmoglobin. The next important iron-containing substance is ferritin, a crystallizable protein, 23 per cent. of its molecule being iron. This is found in the liver, spleen and red marrow and it accounts for some 14 per cent. of the total iron. It is also found in the mucous membrane of the alimentary tract and there it has importance in the transfer of iron from the lumen of the gut across the columnar epithelium to the blood stream. In the blood stream iron is found in a protein, siderophillin, a globulin which in the presence of carbon dioxide forms a compound with iron and transports it to the iron storage depots where this iron is laid down as ferritin. If large amounts are transported from the gut to the blood stream the iron is first of all laid down as hæmosiderin in the Kupffer cells of the liver sinusoids and in comparable cells in the red marrow. This iron is histologically demonstrable by staining with ferrocyanide, but it rapidly disappears, being transformed into ferritin. There is one other compound of iron in the cells of the body—cytochrome—which, though it accounts for very little of the total iron, is of extreme importance in metabolism.

All the iron in the body comes from the food, and the wonder is that we can build up a store of 4-5 g., seeing how little iron there is in food stuffs. Moreover it has to be remembered that iron even in moderate amounts is a poison; also that if too little is absorbed nutritional anæmia results, and if too much, over a long period of time, the body suffers from hæmachromatosis. Fortunately the normal body loses very little iron per day. Some passes out via the bile, and a small amount is shed in desquamated skin cells. This is true for the male and the non-menstruating female; but the female between puberty and the

menopause loses in addition considerable amounts of iron in menstruation and parturition, and, also, in pregnancy the mother hands on iron to the foetus. Therefore from the nutritional standpoint the feeding of a female from puberty till the menopause presents a different problem from that of the male or the pre-pubertal and post-menopausal woman.

In males the daily loss has been estimated to be no more than 1.2 mg. per day, but the figure for women of menstrual age has been placed as low as at the rate of 2.1 mg. per day and as high as 15 mg. (The latter figure must surely be an over estimate for the National Research Council recommends that the diet of a woman should contain 15 mg. of iron per day and by no means all of this is absorbed.) Be that as it may it is known that males can have a normal hæmoglobin on a diet containing as little as 8 mg. of iron a day whereas women who are menstruating or are parous become anæmic on that intake. The problem in both males and females is to build up storage depots of iron to meet emergencies—of hæmorrhage, destruction of red corpuscles by poisons or, as is so common to-day, blood donation. Obviously a woman needs more of iron-containing foods than a man, and, generally speaking, she gets less.

The foods containing relatively much iron are few, often expensive, or difficult to take in any large amount.

#### IRON IN FOODS,<sup>1</sup> MG. PER 100 G

Fish.	White	1.0	Cereals. Highly milled	1-2
	Sprats	4.0		
			iron unavailable.	
Meat offal.	Heart	8.0	Dairy produce. Cow's milk	0.1
	Liver	13.9		
	Kidney	18.4	Dried fruits Currants	1.6
Meats	Beef	4.0	Figs	4.2
	Mutton	4.0	Fresh fruit about 1 mg.	
	Pork	1.0	Green vegetables	0.7-2.5
	Bacon	1.0	Except spinach, iron unavailable.	
			Black treacle	8.0

A few points remain to be made: cooking makes the iron of meat more available, boiling leaches out but insignificant amounts of iron from the vegetables, and preparation of foods with rusty implements or in chipped enamelled ware actually adds iron to them. In these days of stainless steel and aluminium cooking vessels we have to forgo that source of iron.

A moment's consideration of the figures in the table will show that it is by no means easy to obtain the requisite 12 to 15 mg. per day.

<sup>1</sup> All figures in this table are from the *Nutritive Value of Wartime Foods*, H.M.S.O., 1945.

Nutritional anæmia, therefore, should be common, and, in fact, is by no means rare. It is seen in artificially fed babies, it is common in our slum population, and in women between puberty and the menopause, especially in multipara. Moreover the acceptance of a lower figure for hæmoglobin in the blood in women than the figure for men is questionable. Women laboratory workers can raise their blood hæmoglobin to the level of men's by iron medication; whereas such medication leaves the men's figure at its usual level. This suggests that such women are not getting enough iron in their food.

It looks as if many people do not take sufficient iron, and it is a fact that even if the food is, comparatively speaking, loaded with iron, the eater may be anæmic.<sup>1</sup> And yet, theoretically, if the adult male absorbs about 2 mg. of iron per day from his food he should have enough to keep him from nutritional anæmia, and, if he absorbs more over a long period, he should suffer from hæmachromatosis.

A subtle mechanism is needed to enable a person to tread the narrow edge between under and over supply to the cells of his body, with iron. The body can separate out and seize 1 part of iron in a million or more parts of food, can take this into its system only when it is needed and transport it to where it is needed or where it can lie perdu till some emergency calls for its use. In nutritional anæmia, after hæmorrhage, and in pregnancy, iron is readily absorbed; if it is not needed, it is rejected.

The linch pin of this mechanism is apoferritin. It is found as an iron free protein in the mucosa. Just as hæmoglobin can pick up oxygen from surroundings where the oxygen pressure is relatively high and give it up again where the oxygen pressure is low, so apoferritin can pick up iron from the gut and yield it to the blood stream when the amounts in the blood stream are below normal. The amount of ferritin-apoferritin in the mucosa is low but it can be raised somewhat by iron medication. It is however readily satiated with iron, and then will take up no more. Iron is absorbed only in ionized form and best as ferrous iron. The presence of ascorbic acid in the gut facilitates absorption of iron by reducing ferric ions to ferrous ions at a pH of 5. A low pH aids absorption, and the iron passes into the mucous membrane most rapidly in the duodenum. Naturally achlorhydria decreases absorption.

How the iron is transferred from the ferritin to the siderophillin, the transporting agent in the blood, is a matter of conjecture. It is thought that at the inner edge of the columnar epithelium, near the blood capillaries of the villi, the ferritin is dissociated again to apoferritin and iron when the oxygen in the blood is low in pressure—e.g.

<sup>1</sup> According to MARTIN HYNES (1948), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 41, 545. 64 per cent. of 1400 N.W. Indian soldiers had hypochromic anæmia curable by iron medication, though they had 65 mg. iron per day in their diet.

in anæmia. The freed iron ions in the presence of carbondioxide form a complex of one molecule of carbondioxide, one atom of iron and a molecule of siderophillin.

Iron, then, is given up by the ferritin to the siderophillin when wanted in the body, and not otherwise. There is no absorption of iron from the alimentary tract when the iron content of the blood is normal. It is readily absorbed in iron deficiency anæmia and in pregnancy, but hardly at all in polycythæmia.

Storage of iron in the body is essential to meet emergencies, for a sudden call for the manufacture of red blood corpuscles after hæmorrhage cannot be met by the trickle of iron absorbed daily from the intestine. It is stored as ferritin. An excessive invasion of the blood by iron under iron medication, fills the Kupffer cells of the liver sinusoids with hæmosiderin, a condensation product of ferritin. Also this appears in the endothelial cells of the marrow sinusoids. This storage is temporary only, for it disappears soon and passes to the liver cells, the spleen and the stroma of the marrow. There it lies until needed.

We are born into the world with an amount of iron in the form of hæmoglobin far in excess of what is needed in extrauterine life. (It was needed *in utero*.) The excess of hæmoglobin is disrupted and its iron is stored. The usual estimate of 400 mg. has been contested,<sup>1</sup> and a range of 201–372 mg. given. This stored iron is supposed to tide the baby over between birth and weaning, for milk contains but little iron. McCance and Widdowson maintain, however, that there is enough iron in human milk to supply new hæmoglobin for the slowly growing human child.<sup>2</sup> However, even in the breast-fed child, the hæmoglobin may fall to 70 per cent. of the normal, and in the artificially fed baby, when cow's milk is given, the fall may be to 40 per cent.<sup>3</sup> This suggests that the human baby, whatever its birth stores of iron are, is in a marginal state of security, for the health of the baby—its resistance to infection—is affected by the low hæmoglobin and is better under iron medication. The early introduction of babies to iron-containing foods, practised to-day by pediatricians is valuable in building up their iron reserves.

In any case—infantile, youthful and adult—it is advantageous to have a reserve of iron to meet emergencies, for any sudden deficit due to blood donation or hæmorrhage cannot be rapidly made good from food. Donation or loss of 500 ml. of blood means a loss of 250 mg. of iron. This cannot rapidly be made good from the food, for it might take as long as 120 days, and yet the normal hæmoglobin figure is reached

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1951), *Journ. Physiol.*, **112**, 450.

<sup>2</sup> HUGGETT, A. ST. G., and WIDDAS, W. F. (1950), *Journ. Physiol.*, **110**, 386, deny the storage altogether in the laboratory rat.

<sup>3</sup> MACKAY, H., GOODFELLOW, and BRADFORD HILL, A. (1931), *Med. Res. Council Report*, No. 157.

in a few days. This rapid recovery must be due to drawing on the reserves of iron, stored as ferritin, in liver, spleen and marrow. It is the function of nutrition to build up these large reserves of iron. It is not an easy task, but despite that, with a knowledge of the available iron in foodstuffs, it is a problem that can be readily solved. Attention is called to *General Hospital Diets* (1954) published by King Edward's Hospital Fund for London which gives twelve weeks (one a month) menus at three price levels. These menus give the nutrients recommended by the British Medical Association's Committee on nutrition (1950). For iron they recommended 12-15 mg. per day.

### Iodine<sup>1</sup>

/However tiny the amount of iron necessary for health may be, the need for iodine is a hundred times smaller. Whereas 12 to 15 mg. of iron is enough, only 140  $\mu$ g. of iodine is needed per day by the adult. Yet this microscopic amount is infinitely precious.

Since 1840 it has been known that iodine lack bears some relation to simple goitre and in 1920, at the end of a four years' experiment on the girls in schools in Akron, Ohio, carried out by David Marine, it was demonstrated without a doubt that the giving of a regular daily dose of three grains of sodium iodide stopped the development of goitre. The results of the four years' experiment on 5,000 girls were as follows:—

#### *Of those taking iodide.*

If normal at the beginning no goitre at the end.

If goitrous at the beginning two thirds became normal.

#### *Of the controls.*

If normal, 50 per cent. became goitrous

If goitrous, none returned to normal.

The experiment could not have been more diagrammatic.

The story is exactly the same wherever iodine medication has been adopted. In Michigan in 1924 nearly 39 per cent. of the schoolchildren had swollen thyroids; in 1951 only 1.4 per cent. had goitre. In Switzerland in 1900 at least 10 per 1000 of the army recruits were rejected for goitre in some cantons, and the figure rose as high as 100, 200 and even more in cantons such as Valais, Grisons and Argoire. In 1944-6, following the use of iodized salt, there were no rejections in many cantons and the highest figures were 2 per 1000. In Argoire where the use of iodized salt is the lowest among the cantons, the incidence of goitre is highest. It is certain that if the salt used as a condiment by

<sup>1</sup> This section on iodine is based on articles by TOWERY, B. T., STANBURY, J. B., SELWYN TAYLOR, MURRAY, M. N., KELLY, F. C., HOLMAN, J. C. M., KIMBALL, O. P., MATOVINOVIĆ, J., NICOD, J. L., RAMALINGASWAMI, V., and STACPOOLE, H. H. (1953), *Bulletin of W.H.O.*, 9, 175.

most people carried 1 part of iodine as iodide (or better iodate) per 100,000, goitre would disappear from the world, together with the cretinism and deaf mutism correlated with it. And yet it is estimated there are nearly a million and a half sufferers in Yugoslavia, while in the Karakoram 90 per cent. of the inhabitants are goitrous. The trouble is rife in mountainous regions, particularly limestone regions. The Himalayas, the Andes, the Rockies, the European Alps, the Pyrenees, the Caucasus are regions where goitre is all too common. In Great Britain, we see it in the Pennines (especially in Derbyshire whence the name of Derbyshire neck for goitre), the Cotswolds and the Mendips.

Normally we obtain our iodine from foods, particularly sea fish and the edible seaweeds, though vegetables grown on soils containing iodine yield a few  $\mu\text{g}$ . per 100 g. Fish have a much higher value, e.g. herrings, 200 mg. per 100 g.; cod, 120 and salmon, 140.<sup>1</sup>

The Iodine is absorbed as an inorganic salt, passed into the blood stream and is rapidly picked up by the thyroid gland. There it is united with tyrosine to form di-iodo-tyrosine and this is further elaborated into thyroxine, a tetra-iodo-parahydroxy-phenyltyrosine ether. It is stored in the gland as thyroglobulin. It circulates in the blood as thyroxine or possibly as triiodothyronine. Thyroxine has the remarkable effect of raising the metabolic rate: 1 mg. doubles it in 24 hours. Triiodothyronine is three times as active as thyroxine.<sup>2</sup> To regulate the level of metabolism is obviously the function of the hormones manufactured by the thyroid gland, and for this, iodine in the food is essential. Endemic goitre could be wiped out if seafoods were regularly eaten, or, more simply, if iodised salt up to 10 or 15 g. a day, were the salt used in cooking and at table. There is no danger of producing overactivity of the thyroid gland by such expedients.

### Sodium

The study of sodium in the diet has become important, as the result partly of the effects of the loss of sodium from the body in intense perspiration and partly of the discovery that the cortex of the supra-renal body governs the excretion of sodium salts by the kidney. Some of the symptoms of Addison's disease are almost certainly due to the direct loss of sodium and chlorine from the blood.<sup>3</sup> (The apparent increase in potassium is due to the decrease of the volume of the blood in this disease.) As much as 28 per cent. of the sodium and 33 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> A very long list of the iodine contents of foods is given in *Bridge's Dietetics for the Clinician*. H. H. JOHNSON, 5th edn., pp. 804-8. Noteworthy are the low figures for fruits and vegetables from goitrous regions of the U.S.A.

<sup>2</sup> GROSS, J., and PITT-RIVERS, R. (1952), *Lancet*, **1**, 439 and 593.

<sup>3</sup> Loeb, quoted by GRAHAM. (1937), *Postgrad. Med. Journ.*, 88. See also HINDS HOWELL. (1934), *Lancet*, **1**, 1116.

of the chlorine may be lost from the blood in Addison's disease. It is almost certain that the loss of the sodium is the operative factor, for other sodium salts can take the place of sodium chloride in alleviating the symptoms.

Loss of sodium, as the result of intense sweating, may produce symptoms very similar to those seen in Addison's disease, viz. muscular weakness, dyspnoea after slight exercise, languor, mental confusion, drowsiness. Stoker's and miner's cramp is now recognized as being due to a loss of sodium from the body which is not replaced unless salted water is taken instead of water or similar beverages. Sweating in hot climates may give rise to unrecognized ill-health, and this may be serious and even fatal. A man may lose 3000-4000 mg. of sodium in a day by sweating, as was shown in a series of experiments by McCance and his colleagues, with resulting symptoms closely paralleling those of Addison's disease.<sup>1</sup> Three hours' exercise in the sun may result in a loss of sodium chloride in the perspiration equal to a whole day's salt ration.<sup>2</sup> The symptoms of Addison's disease may be aggravated by cutting down the sodium intake and increasing the potassium intake by an exclusively vegetarian diet. "Heat Exhaustion," Type I, with its main symptoms vomiting and cramp, as the result of exposure to desert climate, is due to a loss of sodium and can be obviated or cured by increased salt consumption. In extreme cases intravenous injection of normal physiological saline is advisable.<sup>3</sup>

In normal dietetics there is never any likelihood of a depletion of sodium, for most of us take more than enough in food. But if work or exercise is undertaken in hot surroundings there is a danger of such a depletion. Some persons lose sodium in their perspiration much more readily than others and these, if they undertake arduous work or exercise in hot weather or hot surroundings, should make up their deficit by drinking slightly salted water. A level teaspoonful of common salt to a pint of water, which is approximately "normal saline," forms a convenient drink for replenishing the body's store of sodium in these conditions.

In medicine, when there is a depletion of the stores of sodium by excessive vomiting or diarrhoea, or of course in Addison's disease, saline should be given instead of water for the same reason. In all cases when a "salt-poor" or "salt-free" diet is indicated the effects of depletion of the sodium in the extracellular fluids of the body must be borne in mind. Anchovies, bacon, caviare, cheese, haddock (smoked), ham, kippers, green olives, salt fish and salt pork, and sausages are acceptable as a means of supplying sodium in sodium depletion if saline is disliked.

<sup>1</sup> *Lancet*. (1936), 1, 823.

<sup>2</sup> DILL, HALL, and EDWARDS. (1938), *Amer. Journ. Physiol.*, 123, 412.

<sup>3</sup> LADELL, WATERLOO, and FAULKNER HUDSON. (1944), *Lancet*, 2, 491, 527.

### Potassium

Ringer, in the early eighties of last century, when investigating the osmotic effect of sodium chloride on the heart beat, and following up the results of a mistake of a laboratory assistant in making up solutions, discovered the activity of the positive ions, calcium, potassium and sodium. A balance between these three ions is essential for the functioning of striped and unstriped muscle and of nervous tissue.

It is usual to state that the cells of the body contain potassium ions predominantly, whereas the extra cellular fluids contain sodium. For example potassium predominates in the red blood cells and sodium in the plasma, the cell membrane is considered impermeable to sodium from without and to potassium from within. The carriage of carbon-dioxide by the blood plasma was explained upon the basis of this impermeability. This *apartheid* of potassium and sodium is by no means absolute. Muscular contraction results in an escape of potassium into the extracellular fluid and passage of sodium into the fibres,<sup>1</sup> whereas when glycogen is laid down in muscle or liver, potassium is required in the cells and passes into them from the plasma.

Normally the balance between intake and output of potassium in the body is so well regulated by the suprarenal<sup>2</sup> and the kidney that neither deficit nor excess, both inimical, shows up. Most foods contain such an abundance of potassium—from 0·1 to 1·0 per cent.—that there is little likelihood of a deficient intake. In fact a low potassium diet is difficult to devise and maintain.<sup>3</sup> (Such is needed in Addison's disease, in which sodium is lost via the kidney from the blood and potassium, to some extent, takes its place and a hyperpotassæmia results.) After severe surgical operation potassium passes from tissues into the blood, sodium enters the cells and should the kidneys not be functioning normally too much potassium may accumulate in the extracellular fluids, i.e. a state of hyperpotassæmia results. If then the kidneys start functioning again, the tissues, having lost much of their potassium, will show symptoms of having too little. The symptoms of too much and too little potassium are unfortunately somewhat alike, but a differential diagnosis can be made by electrocardiography and biochemistry.<sup>4</sup>

So far as normal nutrition is concerned, nothing but an extremely freakish diet, consisting of various fats, cream cheese, stewed tripe,

<sup>1</sup> See in particular and for references McDOWALL, R. J. S., and SOLIMAN, A. A. I. (1954), *Lancet*, **1**, 1106.

<sup>2</sup> SIMPSON, S. A., TAIT, J. F., and BUSH, I. E. (1952), *Lancet*, **2**, 226.

<sup>3</sup> ABRAHAMS, M., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. *Modern Dietary Treatment*, 3rd edn. (1951), p. 208.

<sup>4</sup> For further information on this important subject see GRAHAM, G. (1954). The Harveian Oration, *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **1**, 225.

well boiled shell fish, sugar, tea, lemonade, overboiled vegetables and white bread could possibly produce a deficit of potassium.<sup>1</sup>

### Sulphur

Sulphur is the one element apart from carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen which is absorbed into the body almost entirely in the form of an organic compound. It is present in most proteins as the amino acids methionine or cystine or both and is absorbed into the system in that form. Sulphates, as such, in the diet are absorbed with difficulty. The amino acids mentioned are important not only in the construction of human proteins but also of glutathione, a cell catalyst. Further, the sulphur from them must be used in the synthesis of vitamin B<sub>1</sub>. There is sulphur in insulin and in taurocholic acid, one of the acids in bile salts which play an important part in the digestion of fats.

Most of the sulphur in the food when metabolized is converted into the sulphate and excreted in the urine as such, though some is detached as cysteine, or converted into glutathione, thiocyanates, etc., which perform essential functions in the body. Some sulphur-containing amino acids in the form of protein, are essential in the diet and it is probable that methionine is the main one. In a mixed diet there is little likelihood of a deficiency, for egg albumin, lactalbumin, myosin, ovovitellin, and gliadin, proteins from egg, milk, meat, and cereals, all contain over 1 per cent. of sulphur. It is suggestive that egg albumin and lactalbumin, proteins pre-eminently connected with growth, contain the largest amounts of sulphur, i.e. 1.62 and 1.73 per cent. respectively.<sup>2</sup>

### Magnesium

If magnesium is absent from the diet of experimental animals marked vasodilatation, nervous irritability, convulsions and death result.<sup>3</sup> Deficiency in a normal human diet is unlikely because magnesium is widely distributed in all foods in small but significant amounts. The body can extract it even from the phytates present in whole cereals.<sup>4</sup> 150–200 mg. are excreted per day. Excess in the blood is excreted rapidly in the urine.<sup>5</sup> We are, however, warned that magnesium balance may have to be considered in the future.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See *Chemical Composition of Foods*. M.R.C. special report, 235, by McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M.

<sup>2</sup> OSBORNE, quoted by SHERMAN. (1937), *Chemistry of Food and Nutrition*. Macmillan Co.

<sup>3</sup> MCCOLLUM, ORENT-KEILES, and DAY. (1939), *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition*, 161.

<sup>4</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1954), *Med. Res. Council. Rep.* 287.

<sup>5</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1939), *Biochem. Journ.*, 33, 523.

<sup>6</sup> *Lancet*. (1954), 1, 1067.

### Chlorine

Chlorine is an element which is taken into the body almost entirely as a soluble chloride and mainly as the chloride of sodium, or common salt. The majority of people add salt to their food as a condiment in amounts which altogether outweigh that naturally in the food. That this is a matter of taste and not necessity is shown by the fact that the Eskimo does not do so, and salt was unknown in the Amazon basin for thousands of years before the white man introduced it. The natives now prize it highly—as a condiment.<sup>1</sup> That salt is more essential in hot climates than cold has already been mentioned, but it must be realized that this is more for the sodium that it contains than for the chlorine.

The body is tenacious of its chlorides and in chloride starvation it reduces the excretion from the high level of 7 or 8 g. per day to as low as 0.2. In pneumonia the excretion of chlorides may be suppressed till the crisis is past.

Chloride intake is essential for the production of the hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, for maintenance of osmotic pressure in the tissue fluids and in enabling the blood to carry carbon dioxide. If it were not for the chloride shift from plasma to red blood corpuscle as the blood becomes venous, the blood could not carry its load of carbon dioxide from the active tissues to the lungs. The presence of normal amounts of chloride in the plasma of the blood is thought to be necessary in keeping the calcium of the plasma ionized, thus preventing tetany.

Chlorides (estimated as chlorine) in foods vary from the trace found in apricots, cherries, plums, and similar fruit to such a high percentage as 4.5 in fried bacon, most of which is added in pickling. As the majority of people add salt to nearly every cooked and uncooked food with the exception of fruit (though Americans are known to take salt with fresh cantaloupe melon) there is no likelihood of any deficit in the diet. There are occasions, however, in dietetics when a salt-poor or a salt-free diet is indicated, in which such foods as bacon, baked beans, corned beef, salt beef, bloaters, salt butter and margarine, smoked haddock, kipper, meat extracts, olives, tinned salmon, sardines, sausage, and shellfish are forbidden<sup>2</sup> (see p. 595).

### Trace Elements

In the table given on p. 90 some elements are stated as being present in the body as traces and others as mere traces. Taking them in alphabetical order: aluminium, arsenic, boron, cobalt, copper, fluorine,

<sup>1</sup> MERRIMAN, W. N. (1945), *Northern Caballero*, p. 198.

<sup>2</sup> ABRAHAM, M., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1951), *Modern Dietary Treatment*. Baillière, Tindall & Cox.

nickel, silicon, zinc, we have to ask ourselves whether they are in the body fortuitously or because they are essential. As some of these elements are found in enzymes and other catalysts of the body and have proved to be essential in animal nutrition in small amounts, and as some other elements in traces are found to be deleterious in nutrition (e.g. selenium and molybdenum) it is usual to study their importance in dietetics under the heading: "trace elements."<sup>1</sup>

**Aluminium.** There is no evidence that aluminium is essential nor that even large amounts, far beyond what is obtained through cooking in aluminium pots and pans, or consumption of alum containing baking powders, have any deleterious action.

**Antimony** is not found in the body but receives mention here because traces arising from the use of cheap enamelled ware have caused poisoning in the past.

**Arsenic.** Again there is no evidence that mere traces in the diet are essential while it is notorious that even a small amount is a deadly poison. The mere traces are of importance mainly in medical jurisprudence. It is interesting to note that oysters, mussels and prawns often have more arsenic in them than would be allowed by health authorities concerned with arsenic as a contaminant.

**Boron** is essential to plants (apples, broad beans, sugar beets, sugar cane, wheat) but apparently inessential to animals. Because some people are sensitive to small amounts of boric acid the use of boron containing preservatives is illegal in this country.

**Cobalt** is now known to be essential in human nutrition for it forms part of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, the antipernicious anæmia factor found in the liver. This is almost certainly Castle's extrinsic factor and needs his intrinsic factor to get it across the mucous membrane of the gut. Though shortage among sheep and cattle is widespread throughout the world, from Scotland to New Zealand and the United States, there is no evidence of cobalt shortage in man. A few microgrammes of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is all that is needed per day, and therefore much less cobalt.

**Copper** forms an intimate part of the oxygen-carrier hæmocyanin found in lobsters, crayfish and some molluscs and also of sundry oxidizing ferments. It is also essential for the formation of hæmoglobin though it is not included in the hæmoglobin molecule. Copper deficiency in the soil interferes with blossoming and setting seed in plants. It is associated with disease of cattle in Schleswig-Holstein, the "falling disease" of West Australia, with "piglet anæmia" throughout the world and with the "sway back" disease of lambs in limestone (and chalk?) districts of this country. From this evidence we should expect copper to be essential in human diet, and it has been guessed that we need

<sup>1</sup> For a discussion on trace elements in relation to health, see *Proc. Nut. Soc.* (1944), 176-225. Also FORSTNER, G. E. (1948), *Chem. and Ind.*, p. 499.

2 mg. per day.<sup>1</sup> Excess of copper is poisonous, but there is a big gap between the amount which will stave off trouble in animals and the toxic dose. No foods are wholly deficient in copper, though dairy products and highly milled cereals have very little.

**Fluorine**, once considered dispensable, has sprung into prominence because of its influence on the teeth.<sup>2</sup> For example, the excellent teeth of the inhabitants of Tristan da Cunha, which have been held in the past to support most systems of dietary, are now claimed to be due to the small, but definite, amount of fluorides in the drinking water of that island. When present in more than 1 part per million in the drinking water, fluorine leads to mottling of the enamel of the teeth (e.g. in Maldon, Essex, where there are 5 p.p.m. in the well-water). Excess of fluorine interferes with bone metabolism in cattle, producing exostoses on long bones and mandibles, a condition seen in those fed, for example, on herbage to leeward of the prevailing wind near a group of brick factories.

As the result of carefully controlled experiments in the United States, the American Dental Association in 1952 endorsed the fluoridization of drinking water in neighbourhoods where fluorine is deficient. The proposal to do the same in Great Britain has received the expected opposition.

**Manganese**. This metal occurs in the body in more than traces. It is essential in the nutrition of birds, but is of less importance with mammals. The few mg. thought to be important in human nutrition are provided by the otherwise adequate diet. Manganese in relative large amounts is toxic.

**Molybdenum** causes disease in farm animals in parts of central Somerset and elsewhere, which can be prevented by ingestion of copper. It is a coferment to liver xanthine oxidase so molybdenum may be essential in human nutrition.<sup>3</sup>

**Nickel** and **Silicon**. These are invariably present in human tissues but there is no evidence that they are essential.

**Zinc**. As already mentioned, this element is essential in the production of insulin and of carbonic anhydrase,<sup>4</sup> but zinc in small amounts is so widely distributed in food materials that it is doubtful if the human race ever goes short of it.

### Acid-Base Equilibrium

Another happy hunting ground of the faddist is the acid-base

<sup>1</sup> LAVERTON and BINKLEY. (1944), *Journ. of Nutr.*, **27**, 43.

<sup>2</sup> See *Lancet*, (1941), **1**, 23, 375, 701 and (1944), **2**, 510.

<sup>3</sup> See *Lancet*, (1953), **1**, 739.

<sup>4</sup> KEILIN. (1940), *Bioch. Journ.*, **34**, 1163. It is found also in uricase. DAVIDSON. (1942), *Bioch. Journ.*, **36**, 252.

equilibrium in diet. It is undoubted that a high protein diet<sup>1</sup> renders the urine acid to litmus, whereas a predominantly lacto-vegetarian diet makes it alkaline. As a result, some foods have been labelled "acid" foods, some neutral, and some "basic" or "alkaline" foods. This is unfortunate, for the layman naturally assumes that a food, e.g. a lemon, which is acid to the taste, is an "acid" food, whereas exactly the contrary may be true. On this misconception various food faddists have built fantastic schemes of diet. Before we go further we had better give the conventional classification.

<i>Acid-ash Foods.</i>	<i>Neutral-ash Foods.</i>	<i>Alkali-ash Foods.</i>
Meats, fish, poultry.	Butter.	All fruits even the most acid
Eggs, cheese.	Cream.	tasting except plums and
All cereals except tapioca,	Oils and fats.	cranberries.
sago and cornflour.	Tapioca, etc.	Vegetables.
Filberts, ground nuts and	Sugar.	Milk.
walnuts.		Almonds, brazils, chestnuts
		coconut.

What the term "acid" or "acid-ash" food means is that the final solid end results of metabolism of that food would, when dissolved in water, or for that matter in blood plasma, tissue fluid or urine, increase the concentration of hydrogen ions. A "basic" or "basic-ash" food would, in like manner, increase the hydroxyl ions.

Foods may be actually and chemically acid or alkaline. Chemically, the acidity or alkalinity of foods is assessed as  $pH$  (the logarithm of the hydrogen ion concentration, omitting the minus sign). The  $pH$  of a disagreeably acid fruit is 2. Broth may have a  $pH$  5.5 to 6.2, i.e. though on the acid side of neutrality ( $pH$  7) it tastes neutral. Similarly vegetables run from 5 to 7, i.e. acid to neutral. Very few foods are actually alkaline though eggs, when stored, rapidly reach a  $pH$  of 7.4. Taste, therefore, is a poor guide to acidity or alkalinity of foods as eaten, and none at all to the solid end products of metabolism.

Very few foods are as acid as gastric juice, though, as a matter of fact, orange juice can be irritating to a gastric ulcer. There is absolutely no need for a person with normal digestion and metabolism to keep off acid tasting foods, though when there is a hyperchlorhydria it is well to avoid them. (Even then it is probably not so much their acidity which matters but their power of provoking a flow of gastric juice.)

Various tables of the metabolic reaction of foods, i.e. the reaction of their ash, have been compiled, the most extensive being British.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For example, in the year-long experiment on Stefánsson and Andersen, when the diet consisted of meat, eggs and fish only, the "total acidity of the urine . . . was increased to 2 to 3 times the acidity on mixed diets." McCLENNAN and DuBois. (1930), *Journ. Biol. Chem.*, 87, 651.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1940), *Med. Res. Council. Special Report*, 235.

Their acidity or alkalinity is expressed as the volume of tenth normal alkali or acid to which the ash from 100 g. of the food is equivalent. Often there is discrepancy between the findings of different authors, for example, cucumbers are credited with high alkalinity by Berg in Germany, moderate alkalinity by Sherman in the U.S.A., and low alkalinity by McCance and Widdowson in Great Britain. For the normal person this does not matter for no one who has worked on the subject believes that to attempt to balance the acid and basic foods against one another in the diet, so that they cancel each other out, is of any importance. The kidney's function is to get rid of excess of hydrogen and hydroxyl ions in the blood, and it must have managed to secrete, without damage, an acid urine for the thousands and thousands of years when primitive man was a hunter, before animals were domesticated or agriculture developed. To-day the Eskimo and the Masai, whose diet must produce much acid, show no disease attributable to a highly "acid" diet.

In pathological conditions of the kidney the balance may be important.<sup>1</sup> If the kidney has difficulty in keeping the alkaline reserve within the normal limit of 55 to 70 volumes of  $\text{CO}_2$  (25–31.5 millimolecules) per 100 volumes of blood, the amount of "basic" foods should either be increased or some alkaline salt, e.g. sodium bicarbonate, should be given as a medicine. Similarly if the kidney fails to keep the alkali reserve down to the normal limits "acid" foods should be increased or acid given by mouth. In either case the alkaline reserve should be estimated at intervals to ensure that the treatment has been adequate.

It is also claimed that cystine stones in the pelvis of the kidney can be dissolved by giving foods with an alkaline ash,<sup>2</sup> but phosphatic stones cannot be dissolved by the use of foods with an acid ash.

While on this subject of the acidity of foods it would be well to ask whether any of the acids which occur in fruits and vegetables appear unoxidized in the urine. The answer is complicated by the fact that two of them, oxalic and citric acids, are almost certainly formed in intermediate processes of metabolism. There is a normal excretion of 200–1200 mg. per day of citric acid, 100–1500 of hippuric acid, and 10–50 of oxalic acid.<sup>3</sup> The acids of fruits are malic (apples, plums, quinces, tomatoes, etc.); citric (citrous fruits, pineapple, tomato, and most summer fruits); benzoic (cranberry and bilberry); tartaric (grape); oxalic (strawberries, unripe tomatoes, rhubarb, spinach, and sorrel). The body seems to oxidize malic and citric acid nearly completely; tartaric is hardly absorbed at all; oxalic may be absorbed and oxidized

<sup>1</sup> GRAHAM, G., and OAKLEY, W. G. (1938), *Arch. Dis. Child.*, N.S., 1, 1.

<sup>2</sup> HIGGINS. (1940), quoted in *Lancet*, 1, 82.

<sup>3</sup> SHERMAN. (1937), *Chemistry of Food and Nutrition*. Macmillan & Co.

or excreted in the urine; benzoic acid is excreted as hippuric acid. Consequently the foods which concern us as regards acid-base equilibrium are the foods which contain oxalic and benzoic acids.

It is often alleged that when rhubarb and spinach are eaten oxalates are excreted in the urine (oxaluria). It is even further stated that eating the leaves of rhubarb as "greens" during the first World War caused fatal cases of poisoning. There is certainly oxalic acid in the leaves<sup>1</sup> (0.30–1.11 per cent.) and in the stalk from 0.44 to 0.99, and it is possible that if the oxalic acid is present as calcium oxalate, boiling with soda to preserve the colour might transform some of the insoluble and safe oxalate into sodium oxalate, which is poisonous. Leafy vegetables from the spinach family (polygonaceæ) contain oxalic acid mainly as calcium oxalate. The figures for spinach vary from 0.29<sup>1</sup> to 0.93,<sup>2</sup> beet leaves 0.62–0.75, and sorrel, which belongs to the related buckwheat family, 0.27 per cent. Other figures<sup>1</sup> are: cabbage, 0.005–0.009; leeks, 0.017; lettuce, 0.002; rutabaga, 0.014; strawberries, and tomato, 0.026 per cent.<sup>3</sup>

The amounts of benzoic acid, both free and combined as a glucoside, in the cranberry and presumably in the whortleberry vary from 0.021 to 0.061 per cent. This will be excreted as hippuric acid in the urine and may outweigh the alkalinity of the ash of those fruits.

SUMMARIZING this chapter we may say:

1. The mineral elements which concern us most are calcium, iodine, iron, and phosphorus.

2. There is evidence of widespread lack of the three first in the diet of Great Britain if the usual estimates of the daily needs are accepted. Elsewhere, e.g. in India and China, the lack is still greater.

3. There is no reason, even in cases of poverty, why these needs should not be met.

4. A balance of acid-producing and alkali-producing foods is essential only when the kidney has difficulty in secreting acid or alkali.

<sup>1</sup> Most of the figures quoted are from WINTON. (1935). *Structure and Composition of Foods*, vol. 2. John Wiley & Sons.

<sup>2</sup> YEH and ADOLPH. (1938), *Chin. Journ. Physiol.* 13, 209.

<sup>3</sup> To prevent the oxaluria caused by eating spinach and rhubarb all that is necessary is to take some milk or cheese at the same meal. BARTLETT. (1944), *Lancet*, 2, 574.

## CHAPTER V

### THE FUNCTIONS OF FOOD (*continued*).

#### (IV) THE SUPPLY OF VITAMINS

In 1912 a revolution in our ideas concerning the indispensable proximal constituents of a diet occurred.<sup>1</sup> Up till then it had been assumed that if the diet were adequate as regards Calories, protein (with fats and carbohydrates) and mineral elements, it would suffice for optimal nutrition. Since then we have added, one by one, indispensable organic catalysts which must be taken in the food either preformed or in a form which can readily be transformed into the specific catalyst. These exogenous catalysts we call the *vitamins*. Intense research upon this subject has given us in the last three decades very clear knowledge concerning the chemical nature of these catalysts and to some extent of the way in which they work. Although finality has not been reached, we none the less feel that it is improbable that any similar new surprise will be sprung upon us, and that the main lines have been sketched out so that it remains to fill in the details only. At any rate, looking on the matter from the point of view of practical dietetics we have such a body of knowledge that we can improve the feeding of the individual and the nation immensely by the supply of foods containing the known vitamins.

We have spoken of a revolution in our ideas in that sundry organic catalysts, in addition to the normal gross substances—proteins, fats, carbohydrates and mineral elements—are indispensable. All revolutions have their seeds in the past and although it was not until 1912 that this particular revolution shook the theory of dietetics to its foundations, the first rumours were by then 300 years old, long before the dawn of inorganic and organic chemistry. The revolution was the result of the convergence of three lines of research.

1. Empirical observations that a food, e.g. the lemon, is a specific against a particular disease.

2. The discovery that animals can suffer from such diseases and the

<sup>1</sup> For much of the discussion we are indebted to Dr. LESLIE HARKIS. (1951), *Vitamins a Digest of Current Knowledge*, Churchill; Medical Research Council's Report. (1932), *Vitamins: a Survey of Present Knowledge*; McCOLLUM, ORIENT-KEILES, and DAY. (1939), *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition*, 5th edn.; ROSENBERG. (1942), *Chemistry and Physiology of the Vitamins*. BICKNELL and PRESCOTT. (1953), *The Vitamins in Medicine*.

foods which are specific in curing them in man are specific for those animals.

3. Experimental results of feeding animals with highly purified food-stuffs.

**Empirical Observations.** *Scurvy* is a disease which has been known from the time of the Dark Ages. It appeared during various sieges in history from that of Acre to that of Kut-el-Amara in 1917. It accompanied the sailor on his long voyages before the steam era. It dogged the footsteps of the Arctic and Antarctic explorers and may even now be seen sporadically in poor people, usually bachelors or spinsters, or in aged people whose diet is at fault. As long ago as 1601 the East India Company discovered that the disease could be kept at bay or cured by the juice of lemons and oranges. This fact was rediscovered by John Woodall in 1639, by Kramer in 1739, and by Lind in 1753. During the potato famine 1845-7 scurvy broke out in Ireland, and in post-vitamin days the same has been observed. Stefánsson cured colleagues sick with scurvy by giving them a diet of (mainly) raw meat.

In all this there is more than a hint that scurvy is due to a "deficiency" in the diet and that freshness of the food is in some way or another a specific.

*Beri-beri* is a disease of the East which was known in China in 2600 B.C. Takaki, in 1882, decreased the high incidence of beri-beri in the Japanese navy to vanishing point by altering the diet. He added fish, meat, vegetables, barley, and condensed milk to a diet consisting predominantly of rice, and the disease disappeared. Eijkmann, 1890 and 1897, discovered that the disease occurred when the diet was mainly composed of polished rice and could be cured by feeding the rice polishings. Here again was a disease caused by a food deficiency. Takaki imagined that the deficiency was animal protein, though Eijkmann's much later observations did not support that interpretation.

*Pellagra* is a disease of maize-eating countries, e.g. Spain, Italy, Rumania, Egypt, and the Southern States of the United States. Although a commission appointed in the United States came to the conclusion that defective sanitation was the cause of pellagra, one member of that commission, Goldberger, was convinced that it was dietetic. In a pellagrinous area, those who ate more meat, eggs, or milk escaped while those living on a poorer diet were attacked. Again a deficiency of the diet was inculpated, though Goldberger thought for many years that the cause was a deficiency of first-class protein rather than of a specific catalyst or vitamin.

*Rickets.* For a hundred years or more the connection of rickets with a faulty diet was suspected and a specific—cod-liver oil—known. Schuette, writing in 1824, said that "its potency may be due to an imponderable amount of substances which produces marked changes

in the body, but cannot be determined by the chemist." Cheadle in 1899 wrote that "Rickets is produced as certainly by a rachitic diet as scurvy by a scorbutic diet"; and Hopkins in 1906, adumbrating the discovery of the vitamins: "In diseases such as rickets, and particularly in scurvy, we have had for long years knowledge of a dietetic factor. . . . They [the errors in diet] are, however, certainly of the kind which comprises these minimal qualitative factors that I am considering."

Thus there arose an idea that some diseases are connected with a deficiency of specific factors, not proteins, fats, carbohydrates, or inorganic elements, but accessory thereto. What the functions of these accessory factors were was not by any means clear. Did they counteract the effects of a constituent of the diet present in excess or were they important because of some positive, and not negative, contribution which they had to make? At first Eijkmann considered that the factor in rice polishings had the function of combating the effects of an excess of carbohydrate in the diet, but later developments in his own and other researchers' work pointed conclusively to the view that these accessory factors were needed in diet, not for any neutralization of the effects of the main constituents, but because they catalysed some of the normal functions of the body.

**Evidence from Diseases in Animals.** Perhaps the most valuable discovery in dietetics is that animals may suffer from deficiency diseases which are like those of the human being. Eijkmann in 1890 showed that chickens suffered from a disease very like human beri-beri, and that it could be produced in them as in man by a diet consisting of polished rice and cured in them by rice bran and (in later work) by watery and alcoholic extracts of rice bran. Holst and Frölich in Norway, trying to extend Eijkmann's work to guinea pigs, discovered that the unbalanced diets they gave resulted in a disease that closely resembled human scurvy. In post-"vitamin" days these observations have been extended to other animals and it has been found that the rat can suffer from beri-beri, or rather a paralysis which closely imitates the paralyzes seen in human beri-beri, from an eye disease<sup>1</sup> the later stages of which are xerophthalmia and keratomalacia, and from rickets; the dog from black-tongue or the Stuttgart disease—which has something in common with pellagra—and from rickets; the pig from pellagra, and the domestic fowl from rickets as well as beri-beri.

It is not too much to say that the discovery that animals suffer from the same deficiency diseases as man made the astounding rate of advance of our knowledge concerning the vitamins possible. Without them we should still be debating the cause of the so-called deficiency diseases.

<sup>1</sup> According to a communication to one of us, Hopkins was aware of this, and of the cure by green food in 1906.

**Evidence from the Feeding of Synthetic Diets.** Although the scientific and experimental foundation of the doctrine that there are such factors in diet, present in minute amounts and essential to life, must always be associated with the name of Hopkins, whose work on the subject was begun in 1906 and published in 1912, there had been indications of the possibility of these factors in the work of Lunin, 1888; Socin, 1891; Pekelharing, 1905; and Stepp, 1909, 1911, and 1913. All of these postulated something in natural food other than the known principal ingredients—proteins, fats, carbohydrates, and mineral elements—essential to life. The work of the three earlier investigators was overlooked either because the physiological world was not yet sensitive to the implications of it or because it was, as in the case of Pekelharing, published in the Dutch language. Stepp's work on the lipoids came at a time when other workers were preparing the way and only helped to confirm the views so admirably stated and so well based on sound experimental work in the classical paper of Hopkins in 1912. He has well been proclaimed "Der geistige Vater der Vitaminlehre."

Hopkins fed young growing rats on a diet of highly purified protein (caseinogen), lard, starch, cane sugar, and inorganic salts. They failed to grow after a few days and then declined in weight till at the 18th or 20th day they weighed no more than at first. If, to the rats on this diet, there were given at a different time of day 3 ml. of fresh milk or small amounts of an extract from mangolds, or of protein-free and salt-free extracts of milk solids or of yeasts, the animals grew at a rate comparable with the normal growth on a mixed diet. Moreover, the animals looked fit and were active, whereas those on the purified diet were not.

Many possible objections to the validity of the conclusions of Lunin were ruled out by Hopkins' work. He showed that the lack of growth was not due to the monotony of the diet or to its lack of palatability or flavour. Nor was it due to lack of consumption or failure in absorption. The animals which showed the decline in weight and health were consuming more than a sufficient quantity of food to maintain health. In fact they often consumed more of the basal dietary than the animals which were growing satisfactorily on the basal diet plus the additions mentioned above.

The additions did not supply much energy. Even with milk the addition was only 4 per cent. of the total energy of the diet eaten, whereas with the extracts of milk or yeast the addition to the energy value of the diet must have been exceedingly small, for they worked in "astonishingly small amounts."

This work of Hopkins clinched the case for the "accessory factors" as he termed them: these are substances—not proteins, fats, carbohydrates, or mineral elements—essential to life. Funk christened these accessory factors "*vitamines*." He put forward the theory that

scurvy, beri-beri, pellagra, and possibly rickets are caused by the absence from the diet of "special substances which are of the nature of organic bases, which we will call the vitamins." The name caught the popular imagination and, though it has been shorn of its "e" because it wrongly suggests that all the vitamins are amines, it still holds the field. We do not propose to give any account of the floods of research in all countries on vitamins, but to jump to modern times and try to explain the state of affairs at the time of going to press.

There are at least seven important vitamins intimately concerned with human nutrition and there may be many more. Each, as its chemistry is made clear, has been or will be given a name which will, it is hoped, take the place of the provisional letters assigned to them while they were observable only through their activity and not in the isolated form. By to-day we know the chemistry of most of them, and can synthesize them. The facts thus discovered make us wish that the name vitamin had not been invented. ("Accessory factors" would have been much better.) Chemically speaking, it is wrong because some of them contain no nitrogen. And practically it is unfortunate because the lay public, and others, assume that because they have the same name they all behave alike, e.g. that they are all heat-labile, or that they all occur in the same food.<sup>1</sup> Nothing is further from the truth. One food may be excellent for one vitamin and yet be totally devoid of another. One vitamin may be unstable to heat whereas another is so resistant that it may be distilled at a high temperature. It may take years to eradicate from the minds of the public the false ideas sown by the use of the term vitamin.

Provisionally as their effects were discovered the vitamins were labelled A, B, C, etc., after the letters of the alphabet. Then B proved to be not a simple substance but a mixture of substances, and so we have been saddled with B<sub>1</sub> and B<sub>2</sub>. B<sub>2</sub> also is a complex, in fact we have reached a baker's dozen of BB! As it is, names for vitamins are in a transitional state. The old alphabetic nomenclature has not vanished nor is the new completed.

Another difficulty must be stated. The action of what we used to think of as one chemical substance may be performed by two or more substances having similar chemical structures or similar configurations in space. Keys to pick a lock need not be identical, but they must have some general likeness. Similarly two substances which may cure rickets, though they may not have identical structure, will have closely approximating structure. The most illuminating examples are the various substances produced by ultra-violet light on the sterols. One

<sup>1</sup> For example: "You can kill them vitamins if you only boils 'em long enough." "Wholemeal bread only is used for the vitamins." "We give plenty of fruit and vegetables for the vitamins" for which see any popular article on diet and many school prospectuses.

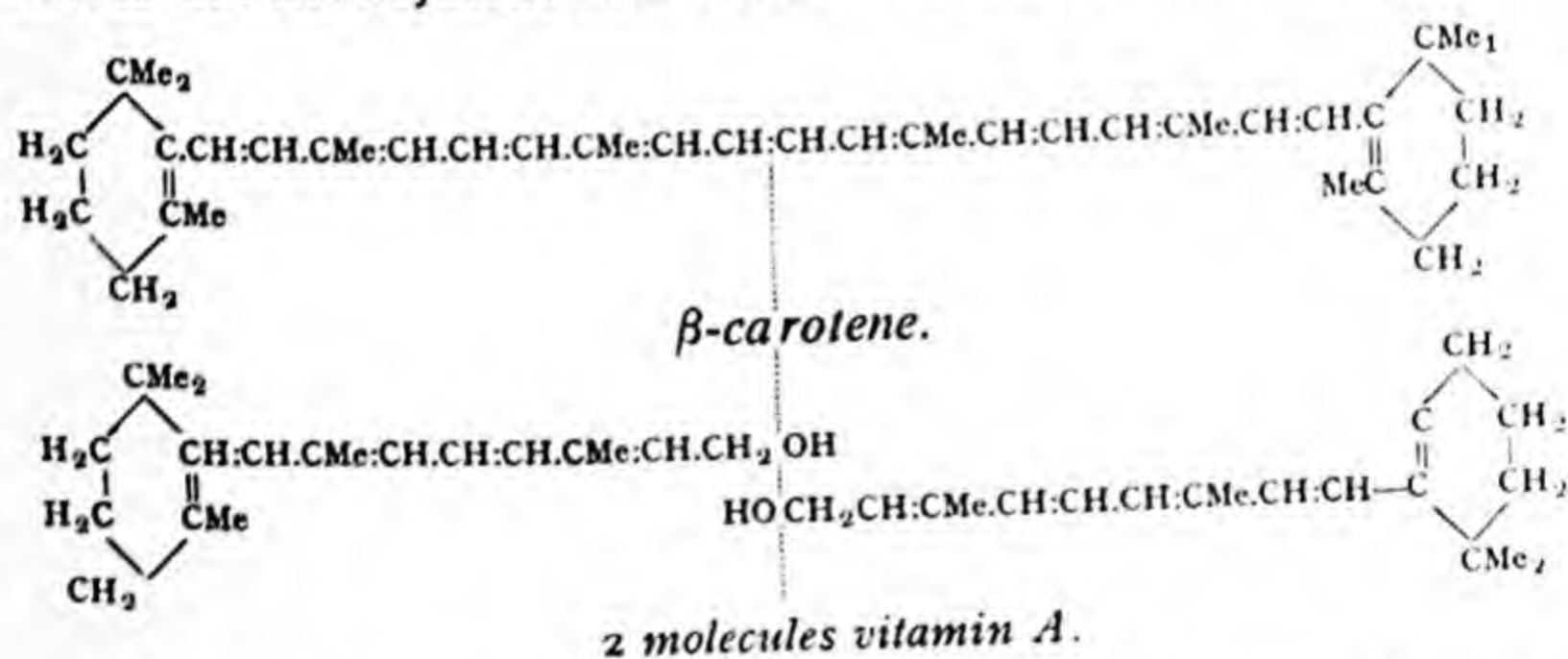
will cure rickets in rats but not in chicken, another in chicken but not in rats, whereas both are curative in man.

Finally, there are substances like choline, unsaturated fatty acids, and amino acids, which enter into the structure of the tissues but none the less have activities like the vitamins. They can scarcely be called vitamins for they enter into the structure of tissues—Rosenberg suggests calling them "vitagens"—since vitamins are catalysts, often forming part of the prosthetic end of an enzyme.<sup>1</sup>

### Vitamin A and the Active Carotenoids

Vitamin A is a colourless alcohol which is taken either in the food as such (e.g. in liver or liver oils) or as a precursor, the well-known orange-coloured terpene carotene (e.g. in palm oil, carrots or green vegetables). The carotene, or allied substances such as cryptoxanthin (from cape gooseberries, yellow maize, paprika, etc.), echinone (from sea-urchins, used as a food around the Mediterranean) are transformed into vitamin A in the intestinal walls. Other yellow pigments such as lutein (or xanthophyll, the yellow colouring matter of eggs) and zeaxanthine (one of the pigments of maize) cannot be so converted. All the active carotenoids are not equally valuable. Thus  $\beta$ -carotene is the most active, having apparently half the activity of preformed vitamin A, while  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  carotene have less.

We might expect  $\beta$ -carotene to produce two molecules of vitamin A. It is symmetrical and it conceivably could be split into two equal halves and the adjacent ends oxidized to an alcoholic group, thus:



But feeding experiments seem to show that molecule for molecule carotene has at the most only half the effect of preformed vitamin A. This discussion is not so academic as it may seem, because in the tables of vitamin values the figures are sometimes based on feeding experiments (biological assay) and sometimes on chemical estimates of the

<sup>1</sup> HARRIS, L. J. (1951), *Vitamins, A Digest of Current Knowledge*, pp. 2 and 7.

carotene content. In using these tables, if only carotene estimations are available, the figure given should be halved.<sup>1</sup> We judge foods by their vitamin A effect, not by their content of carotene, and we compare them with each other through the international standard, which is a highly purified sample of  $\beta$ -carotene.  $0.6 \mu\text{g.}$ <sup>2</sup> of this standard was the *International Unit* but it will now be replaced by  $0.34 \mu\text{g.}$  of vitamin A acetate. When 100 g. of a given food is equivalent in its vitamin A activity to say,  $6 \mu\text{g.}$  of the international standard we say that 100 g. of this food act as if it contains  $6 \div 0.6 = 10$  I.U. vitamin A.

Vitamin A is soluble in fats and fat solvents (whence its old name Fat-soluble A) and therefore in medicinal paraffin. It gives an intense blue colour in combination with antimony trichloride and also has a characteristic ultra-violet spectrum. Both vitamin A and carotene are insoluble in water and are therefore not washed out of food-stuffs by boiling or steaming. Though both are susceptible to oxidation at room temperatures there is little evidence that vitamin A is destroyed by cooking<sup>3</sup> even by such drastic processes as shallow frying, roasting, or pastry-making, where the medium in which the vitamin is carried comes into contact with very hot air. Canning does not destroy it, nor does it disappear from the milk in a milk pudding. Kon states that there is no loss when milk is dried.<sup>4</sup>

The body has some difficulty in absorbing carotene, though not so much with vitamin A. This is especially marked when fat absorption in the small intestine is deficient as in jaundice, coeliac disease and steatorrhœa. Medicinal paraffin oil cuts down the absorption of carotene and to a less extent of vitamin A. Consequently it is best to take that medicament the last thing at night, as long as is possible after the meals containing vitamin A or its precursor.

The subtlest test for deficiency of vitamin A or its precursor is a measure of ability to see in light of low luminosity. In the retina, or rather just behind it, is a layer of cells which manufacture a pigment, rhodopsin, which sensitizes the rods of the retina. The rods are used for vision in dim light. The pigment is bleached in bright light and has to be regenerated when the eye is adapted to the dark. As this pigment is a compound of vitamin A and protein, the power to adapt to darkness, i.e. the power to regenerate this pigment, must depend on the presence of vitamin A in the blood. Consequently a measure of our power to see in the dark (which fortunately can be obtained with some approach to

<sup>1</sup> Some say divided by three.

<sup>2</sup> One microgramme is one thousandth part of a gramme. It is now abbreviated as  $\mu\text{g.}$ , formerly as  $\gamma$ .

<sup>3</sup> BOAS-FIXSEN. (1938-9), *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, 8, 281.

<sup>4</sup> KON. (1941), *Nature*.

accuracy)<sup>1</sup> is a *measure of our saturation with vitamin A*. Many workers in the United States, Scotland, England, and Belgium are satisfied with the accuracy and constancy of this test, though others are sceptics.

At a greater stage of deficiency, night-blindness, or inability to see in twilight, occurs. This trouble was described in Eber's Papyrus (1500 B.C.) and in Jeremiah xiv. v. 5, 6<sup>2</sup> and is still present with us, in Newfoundland, Labrador, Ceylon, Nigeria, China, Brazil, and the Dutch East Indies. It was seen in Newcastle as late as 1931.<sup>3</sup> Later follows the appearance of Bitot's spots, then xerophthalmia and keratomalacia. The two last are due to microbic invasion of the conjunctiva of the eye and the cornea. If the keratomalacia is not arrested by a satisfactory diet the cornea perforates and total blindness ensues. In India to-day it is the chief cause of preventable blindness in children. As many as 2 per cent. of the children in Ceylon are blind as the result of obtaining too little vitamin A. That microbes can effect a lodgement in the eye is due possibly to two things, (i) a loss of the lysozyme, a substance in the tears which digests microbes, and (ii) degeneration of the epithelium covering the eyes.

Structures of epithelial nature all over the body degenerate as the result of deprivation of the body of vitamin A. Thus the linings of the respiratory tract and the urogenital tracts "keratinize" and are more susceptible to bacterial invasion. The skin itself alters its nature. Babies are more likely to suffer from mild skin eruptions (Helen Mackay). In Ceylon<sup>4</sup> and Kashmir<sup>5</sup> an inflamed and coarsened condition of the skin (toad-skin, phrynoderma) is accounted for by a deficiency of vitamin A in the diet.

Finally, there is inco-ordination of the growth of the bones of the skull and the spinal column, so that they encroach on the nervous system and damage the sensory tracts. Vitamin A, by regulating the activities of osteoblasts and osteoclasts, co-ordinates the adjustment of bone and nervous system growth.<sup>6</sup>

As a result of this degeneration in epithelial structures and in *afferent* neurones it is not astonishing that this vitamin was at one time termed the anti-infective vitamin. Afferent nerves have a trophic effect on the epithelia. Degenerate epithelia can be attacked by microbes. Diseases

<sup>1</sup> MAITRA and HARRIS. (1937), *Lancet*, 2, 1009. See also HARRIS and ABBASY. (1939), *Lancet*, 2, 1299, 1355.

<sup>2</sup> . . . their eyes did fail because there was no grass.

<sup>3</sup> SPENCE. (1931), *Arch. Dis. Child.*, 6, 19.

<sup>4</sup> NICHOLLS, L. (1951), *Tropical Nutrition and Dietetics*, 3rd edn., p. 150.

<sup>5</sup> WILSON. (1939), *Lancet*, 1, 1019.

<sup>6</sup> MELLANBY, E. (1944), *Proc. Roy. Soc. B.*, 132, 28. See also *A Story of Nutritional Research*. (1950), by Sir Edward Mellanby. IRVING, J. T. (1949), *J. Physiol.*, 108, 92, working on teeth and their sockets confirms Mellanby's view of the effect of A on bone growth.

of the epithelia and glands—abscesses, broncho-pneumonia, stone in the kidney and bladder, puerperal pyrexia—are more common in animals and human beings when the diet is deficient in vitamin A. But although this vitamin, by preserving the epithelia, protects from disease, once the disease has got a hold, exhibition of the vitamin does not necessarily shorten the attack. It will certainly clear up a xerophthalmia, but it has no effect on a widespread infection.

Like all the other vitamins, vitamin A and its provitamin, are rather erratically distributed among food-stuffs. The chief sources are fish liver oils, mammalian liver fats, fish body oils, dairy foods, and green and yellow vegetables. The outstanding foods for vitamin A are mammalian livers,<sup>1</sup> fish livers and fish liver oils, dairy foods, yellow fruits and vegetables, green vegetables (see table). Most other foods have amounts that are small to negligible. The cereals are credited with none at all, except yellow maize.

All the figures given are for vitamin A potency and are not  $\beta$  carotene figures. This provitamin is absorbed with some difficulty by the mucous membrane of the small intestine, so even if free from entanglement with plant cell debris it does not pass in completely. Even if dissolved in edible oils some 33 per cent. escapes absorption. The carotene of boiled, sliced or puréed carrots suffers 75 per cent. loss and that of cabbage and spinach 60 per cent.<sup>2</sup> Medicinal paraffin oil taken with these foods still further lowers the amount absorbed. On the other hand homogenizing the vegetables increases it.

When tables are given of the  $\beta$  carotene contents of foods it is usual to divide the figure by three to obtain the vitamin A values of the foods concerned.

**Amount of Vitamin A Required.** Though there is general agreement about the average amount of vitamin A needed per day it must be recognized that individual needs may show the widest variations. The Americans put the figure at 5000 I.U. for the adult man or woman; 6000 for a pregnant woman and the adolescent boy, 8000 for the nursing mother, 5000 for all girls over 13 years of age and for boys from 13-15. Children under 1 they estimate need 1500 I.U. and the figure rises by steps to 4500 for those between 10 and 12. These figures of the National Research Council appear high. Booher, in the United States, puts the figure at 3000 for the adult; Stickling at 4000; the League of Nations recommends 5000 for the pregnant and nursing woman. This

<sup>1</sup> MOORE, T., and SHARMAN, I. M. (1951), *Brit. Journ. Nutr.*, 5, 119. The extraordinary amounts which the human liver can store must account for the resistance shown by the subjects of S. M. Hume and H. A. Krebs' experiment on almost total deprivation of vitamins A or  $\beta$  carotene. The only measurable effect was inability to see in the dark and worsening of hearing. (1949), *Med. Res. Council Special Report*, No. 264.

<sup>2</sup> BOOHR, V. H. (1948), *Brit. Journ. Nutr.*, 1, 113.

VITAMIN A CONTENTS OF FOODS PER 100 GM. (about 3½ oz.)<sup>1</sup>

## CEREALS.

Yellow maize (as carotene)	330-900
Flour, bread, cornflour, oat-meal, pearl barley, rice, rye, sago, etc.	none

## DAIRY FOODS.

Butter	1130-4000
Cheddar cheese, winter milk	550
" " summer "	1440
Eggs	1000
Milk, winter	70
summer	140

## FISH.

Herring, fresh	150
" canned	30
Liver oil, cod	10,000-400,000
" halibut	3 to 36 million

## FRUITS.

Apricots and peaches	750 (as carotene)
Tomatoes	3,000 (as carotene)

## MEATS.

Beef, veal, mutton, lamb	50
Pork and pork products	none

## MEAT OFFALS.

Heart	200
Kidney	1,000
<sup>2</sup> Liver, pig	10,000
" cow	15,000
" rabbit	25,000
" sheep	60,000
" sperm whale	440,000
" seal	1,300,000

## VEGETABLES.

Beans, green	600-950
Cabbage	900 (as carotene)
<sup>2</sup> Carrots	9,000
Peas (green)	500 (as carotene)
Potatoes	none
Sprouts	400 (as carotene)

Figures mainly from ROSCOE and FIXSEN. (1937-8), *Nut. Ass. and Rev.*, 7, 823 and (1939-40), 9, 795 and *Nutritive Values of Wartime Foods* (1951), H.M.S.O., except where indicated.

diversity of figures suggests that we do not know the best figure, nor do we know how people vary in their requirements. It does not follow that what is enough for one person is enough for another. For example, though Booher, Callism and Hewston<sup>3</sup> recorded signs of deprivation (impaired dark adaptation) in five subjects after 16, 27, 29, 39 and 145 days on a diet from which vitamin A or its precursors were excluded, Hume and Krebs<sup>4</sup> had three volunteers out of their twenty-three who showed *none* after 20 months or more. Perhaps these last had greater reserves. (At the lowest computation of the daily need one subject must have had one million units stored.) Possibly the people who are susceptible to deprivation are those who have had difficulty in absorbing the vitamin and so can store but little. In other words, the vitamin though present in the food was not available.

This problem of availability appears in the discussion of every

<sup>1</sup> Except where stated the figures quoted are from *Nutritive Value of Wartime Foods*. (1945). H.M.S.O. 1s. 6d.

<sup>2</sup> MOORE, T., and SHARMAN, I. M. (1951), *Brit. Journ. Nutr.*, 5, 119.

<sup>3</sup> BOOTH, V. H. (1948), *Brit. Journ. Nutr.*, 1, 113.

<sup>4</sup> BOOHER, L. E., CALLISON, E. C., and HEWSTON, E. M. (1939), *Journ. Nutr.*, 17, 317.

<sup>5</sup> HUME, E. M., and KREBS, H. A. *Med. Res. Counc. Special Report Series*, 264.

"nutrient" the body takes. Are all the Calories from this or that food available? We know that they are not. If the food is indigestible a considerable fraction goes unabsorbed (e.g. high-melting-point fats); if there be much roughage present a smaller percentage of the food is absorbed than when there is little or none; if purgatives are taken more calorigenous material is unabsorbed; if there be diarrhoea or dysentery the same is true. Proteins, as they occur in the foods eaten, have different availabilities according to their digestibility and to the accompaniment with other substances, notably roughage. We have seen in the discussion on mineral elements that they too have different availabilities according to the form in which they are presented, the presence of phytates and oxalates, the motility of the gut and, probably, the secretory activity of the stomach. (A hypochlorhydria will probably make the calcium and iron less available.) So too, when we turn to the vitamins we shall find the same considerations applicable. Some alimentary tracts will be able to extract more of the vitamins from the food within them than others. To take an extreme example: some of the symptoms of sprue and the other dysenteries which beset the prisoners in Italian and Japanese prisoners of war camps may have been more due to vitamin deficiencies (particularly of the B complex), the result of defective absorption, than to the disease itself.<sup>1</sup> And it may easily be the case that absorption of vitamin A or its precursors may be upset by excessive motility of the gut, by the use of purgatives and especially by the use of medicinal paraffin oil.<sup>2</sup> Consequently no hard-and-fast rule can be laid down concerning the vitamin A needs of any individual. Prisoners eating the same prison diet in Ceylon reacted to it differently. Some showed no signs of dietary deficiency, others showed avitaminosis A (phrynodema 55 per cent., night blindness 30 per cent. and 1·7 per cent. keratomalacia) and still others showed avitaminosis B (neuritis, stomatitis and scrotal dermatitis).<sup>3</sup> Clearly no man's need is exactly the same as another's. Consequently, though we may accept the figures of 3000 to 5000 I.U. units a day as being a satisfactory intake of vitamin A, we must expect exceptions.

What classes of people attain this level? According to Crawford and Broadley<sup>4</sup> none, even in the AA class, achieve the National Research Council's level; the AA and the A class only—well-to-do people—achieve 4000 I.U. per day. In 1938 probably all classes with an estimated weekly income per head of 43 shillings attained 3000 I.U. per day. Investigations by the pupils of one of us (V.H.M.) into the dietaries of various schools of a charitable nature sometimes showed a marked deficit of vitamin A compared with even the low standard of 3000 I.U. per day. Against the American figure the deficit was always much

<sup>1</sup> BLOOM. (1944). *Lancet*, (1944), 2, 558, 630.

<sup>2</sup> *Lancet*, (1944), 2, 381.

<sup>3</sup> NICHOLLS. (1944). *ibid.*, 1, 630.

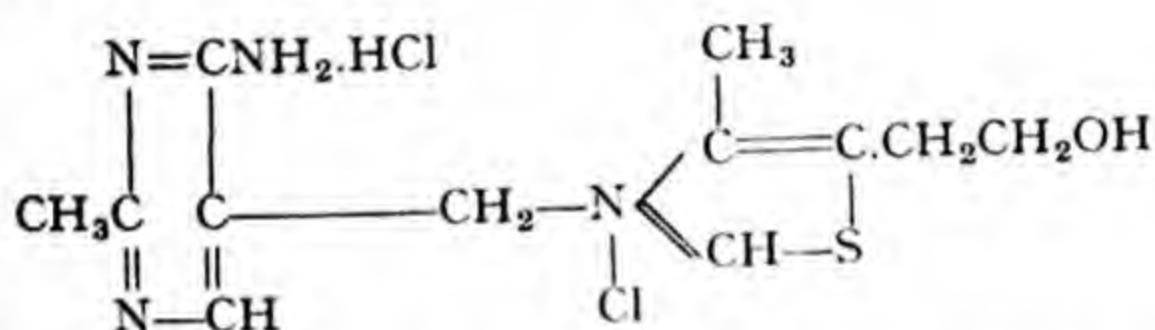
<sup>4</sup> *The People's Food*, 157.

greater, being 30 to 50 per cent. below. At one well-fed school, the quota of vitamin A was attained only because the children had cod-liver oil each day, otherwise there would have been a serious deficit.

And yet even the American estimated need is not too difficult of achievement. In summer it is easy—a diet containing milk, butter, cheese and green vegetables makes it certain. In February, March and April perhaps it is not so easy, and recourse should be had to reinforcing fish sauces with cod-liver oil where it is undetected, or to liver, liver pâtés or liver sausage. Probably it is wiser in winter to keep to the standardized margarines rather than butter which by the nature of its raw material cannot be, or has not been up to the present, standardized.

## Thiamine

After intensive work in Dutch, British, Japanese, and American laboratories, a crystalline substance was obtained from rice bran or yeast in quantities which could be submitted to chemical analysis. The result of the analysis pointed to the following structure, which was confirmed by synthesis:<sup>1</sup>



This substance consists of a pyrimidine ring (left) which is of frequent occurrence in substances interesting in biochemistry (e.g. nucleins, uric acid, caffeine) and (right) a thioazole ring which is unique in biochemistry, though not in commercial chemistry. As this vitamin contains sulphur Williams suggests the name thiamin for it. We should probably prefer to write it "thiamine." Donath had suggested "aneurin" in the days before its structure was known.

Thiamine is very soluble in water, and consequently some 50 per cent. goes into the surrounding fluid when fruits and vegetables are boiled. Potatoes boiled in their skins lose only 10 per cent. of their thiamine, whereas peeled and boiled they lose 25 per cent.<sup>2</sup>

This vitamin is somewhat sensitive to high temperature, though at the temperature of boiling water the loss by decomposition is negligible. At higher temperatures, however, the loss is much greater, consequently foods, more particularly meats and fish, which have been

<sup>1</sup> WILLIAMS and SPIES. (1938), *Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> and Its Use in Medicine*. The Macmillan Co. WILLIAMS. (1936), *Journ. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, **58**, 1063. WILLIAMS and CLINE. (1936), *ibid.*, **58**, 1504.

<sup>2</sup> BAKER and WRIGHT. (1935), *Biochem. Journ.*, 29, 1802.

canned and "processed" at a high temperature, may have suffered very considerable loss. For example, Spruyt and Donath found that puffed rice, which is exposed to 15 atmospheres' pressure at 150° to 160° C., is devoid of thiamine.<sup>1</sup> Losses up to 80 per cent. have been reported when meat is canned. Consequently, although we need not take into account the loss caused by the ordinary processes of cooking, we should not rely upon canned foods for our thiamine. Condensed milk, however, is free from this stricture. There is no loss of thiamine during the baking of bread made with yeast, but baking-powder apparently destroys the thiamine in the flour and soda destroys it in soda cakes and scones. The vitamin is stable in the presence of acid but not in that of alkali.

Thiamine is, however, sensitive to sulphite even when the medium is acid, and destruction is quite rapid at pH 6.6, the acidity of milk. Sulphite is permitted in sausages in this country to preserve them, though the fact must be declared. Pork contains a comparatively large amount of thiamine but as sulphiting results in appreciable loss of the vitamin we must not count on pork sausages as an important source of that vitamin.

When thiamine is markedly deficient in the diet, beri-beri occurs. This disease is of three types, (i) "Dry," when the main symptoms are neuritis and paralysis, (ii) "Wet," when they are mainly serous effusions and œdema, and (iii) "Fulminating" or "acute" with sudden onset of cardiovascular symptoms. Infantile beri-beri is nearly always of the last type.

Since the diet, even in the Orient, is never totally deficient in thiamine, the onset of the diseases is insidious. It starts with fatigue, sensations of heaviness and stiffness of the legs, and inability to walk long distances. Then come headache, loss of appetite, dyspepsia, dizziness, and slow heartbeat. And last, sensory and motor paralyses (starting first in the lower extremities) and thence progressing up the body. The early symptoms are sometimes seen in this country in people on a diet for peptic ulcer, and sometimes the later.

In a study by Ancel Keys and his co-workers<sup>2</sup> on human volunteers restriction to 0.185 mg. of thiamine per day for 161 days resulted in no obvious symptoms, even when the subjects of the experiment were on a synthetic diet, but when the intake was cut down to 0.03 mg. per day (or 0.008 mg. per 1000 Calories) severe symptoms rapidly appeared. The order of appearance was (i) anorexia and nausea, (ii) depression and unwillingness to continue severe work, (iii) presence of lactic and pyruvic acid in the blood, (iv) sensory and cardio-muscular disturbances, and loss of endurance to hard work, (v) loss of intellectual faculties.

The anorexia appeared as early as 10 days and the nausea and other

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by BOAS-FIXSEN. (1938-9), *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, 8, 281.

<sup>2</sup> KEYS, A. *et alii*. (1945), *Am. Journ. Physiol.*, 144, 5.

symptoms began in 14 to 21 days. Giving 1 or 2 mg. of thiamine per day rapidly cured these symptoms.<sup>1</sup> What is wrong in the earlier stages of beri-beri is an upset of carbohydrate metabolism in the central nervous system. Once the central nervous system is thrown out of gear it seems probable that all the other symptoms of avitaminosis B<sub>1</sub> occur as the result of its incapacity.

It has always been suspected that carbohydrate metabolism is somehow associated with vitamin B; and now we know that one moiety B<sub>1</sub>, is essential in the formation of a ferment which catalyses the oxidation of pyruvic acid, one of the stages in the metabolism of glucose. Thiamine is a co-carboxylase. No other known vitamin has the same effect, nor does absence of any other vitamin from the diet induce this inability to deal with carbohydrate. The metabolism of carbohydrates breaks down at the stage where pyruvic acid should be destroyed. It is significant that pyruvates appear in excess in the blood of rats and pigeons which have been deprived of thiamine in their diet and in beri-beri patients.<sup>2, 3</sup> The failure to remove the pyruvic acid in nervous tissue—it is one of a cycle of reactions—brings nerve-cell metabolism to a standstill and so destroys activity. Whether thiamine is essential to carbohydrate metabolism in other tissues of the body must remain an open question for the present. It is enough that it is essential for the normal activity of the central nervous system.

*The International Unit.* This originally was taken as the activity of 10 mg. of acid adsorbate from an extract of rice polishings. In future pure thiamine will be used as a standard. The relation between it and the old Unit is that 3γ of the pure substance has the activity of one International Unit. Further research may result in a readjustment of the standard unit, for the figure decided upon is the mean of a large number of observations, not entirely concordant, by different people.

Thiamine is *widely distributed among foods* but nearly always in very small amounts. The only foods with outstanding amounts are pork and pork products, offal, cod roe, wheatgerm<sup>4</sup> and oatmeal.

The *amount needed per day* is a matter of some discussion. Ancel Keys' subjects<sup>5</sup> remained normal on 0.185 mg. per day, whereas the Mayo Clinic volunteers showed unmistakable symptoms on 0.4 to 0.45 mg. per day.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ANDERSON, M., MICKELSEN, O., and KEYS, A. (1946), *Journ. Amer. Diet. Ass.*, **22**, 1.

<sup>2</sup> PETERS, R. A. (1939), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **32**, 807. It is not vitamin B<sub>1</sub> as such, but the pyrophosphate of the vitamin which has this action.

<sup>3</sup> PLATT and LU. (1939), *Biochem. Journ.*, **33**, 1525.

<sup>4</sup> According to HINTON. (1944), *Biochem. Journ.*, **38**, 214. 59 per cent. of thiamine is in the scutellum of the wheat. WARD. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, **11**, estimates the content of the scutellum and the epithelial cells on the endosperm side of the scutellum at the high level of 49 and 42 I.U. per g.

<sup>5</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>6</sup> WILLIAMS and MASON. (1941), *Proc. Mayo Clinic.*, **16**, 433.

## THIAMINE IN FOODS MG. PER 100 G. AS PURCHASED

## CEREAL PRODUCTS

Biscuits	0.035-0.060
Bread 80% extraction	0.150
Cakes	0.085-0.160
Macaroni	0.075
Oatmeal	0.450
Rice (highly milled)	0.080
Semolina	0.090
Wheat (processed)	2.100

## MEAT

Bacon	0.510-0.546
Beef	0.044-0.080
Heart	0.600
Kidney	0.240
Liver	0.400
Mutton	0.136-0.147
Pork	0.598-0.662
Sausages (pork)	0.170
Veal	0.058-0.062

## DAIRY PRODUCTS

Cheese	0.030
Milk	0.045
Eggs	0.132

## VEGETABLES

Peas (green)	0.168
Potatoes	0.090
Vegetables (other)	0.023-0.102

FISH, white	0.024-0.057
Herring	0.006-0.007
Cod roe	1.500

YEAST EXTRACTS	2.400-3.000
----------------	-------------

FRUITS	0.011-0.056
--------	-------------

A hard-and-fast estimate cannot be given because: (1) There is the probability of variability. Persons on exactly the same diet and in the same circumstances may need different amounts. (2) Absorption in different persons may be different. (3) There is an undoubted relation between Calorie output and the need for thiamine, and the amount needed may vary more with the amount of Calories obtained from carbohydrate than from the rest of the food. Increase of Calories in the food or of poisonous substances without concomitant increase of thiamine may precipitate an attack of neuritis. (Alcoholic neuritis and possibly the neuritis of pregnancy are connected with this.) (4) Fat, and more particularly the fatty acids with 6, 8, or 10 carbon atoms, reduce the need for thiamine—another testimony to the value of milk and butter in the diet. (5) The microbic flora of the gut and the thiamine they hand over to their host may vary from time to time and person to person.

The best thing we can do at the present time is to give the estimates of the National Research Council of the U.S.A. (1948) and the British Medical Association report (1950).

		N.R.C. mg.	B.M.A. mg.
Man,	70 kg., sedentary . . . . .	1.5	1.0
	moderately active . . . . .	1.8	1.2
	very active . . . . .	2.3	1.5

						N.R.C.	B.M.A.
						mg.	mg.
Woman, 56 kg.,	sedentary . . . . .					1.2	0.8
	moderately active . . . . .					1.5	1.0
	very active . . . . .					1.8	1.4
	pregnant . . . . .					1.8	1.1
	nursing . . . . .					2.3	1.4
Child.	Under 1 year . . . . .					0.4	0.3
	1-3 years . . . . .					0.6	0.5
	4-6 " . . . . .					0.8	0.6
	7-9 " . . . . .					1.0	0.8
	10-12 " . . . . .					1.2	1.0
Girls	13-15 " . . . . .					1.4	1.1
	16-20 " . . . . .					1.2	1.0
Boys	13-15 " . . . . .					1.6	1.3
	16-20 " . . . . .					2.0	1.4

We are aware that there is a big margin between the amount which will prevent beri-beri and the amount which is optimal. This margin exists because we have no accurate way yet of gauging the optimal figure. Are the lack of appetite, lassitude, dyspepsia, constipation and the many other symptoms of the patent medicine advertisements, an indication that we are not obtaining sufficient thiamine? Who can tell? It may be so. On the other hand the apparent disappearance of these symptoms on increasing the intake of thiamine may have the same origin as the disappearance of symptoms after taking a patent medicine.

It will be shown later that a diet which is planned on the usual British convention and at the same time is satisfactory as regards calcium, iron and phosphorus, and vitamins A, C, and D will contain about 1.8 mg. thiamine and is therefore presumably safe. For the rest we should advise increasing the intake in pregnancy and lactation by the use of marmite, Bemax and other B<sub>1</sub> preparations and, after investigating the diet, trying the effect of similar additions in any neuritis<sup>1</sup> or even in the vague malaises, fatigues and dyspepsias which are so common. The disappearance of symptoms after taking thiamine must, however, be critically and scientifically examined. Investigations by students of King's College of Household and Social Science (now Queen Elizabeth College) in 1943-4, under the supervision of Miss Margaret Grant, of the diet of schools of the public assistance type showed that the probable intake was in all cases well above the American figure—i.e. highly satisfactory. This was a tribute to the national wheatmeal bread of 85 per cent. extraction. It is indeed very difficult in this country to go without the quota of thiamine when eating 85

<sup>1</sup> THEOBALD. (1936), *Lancet*, 1, 834. YUDKIN. (1938), *Lancet*, 2, 1347. PRICE. (1938), *Lancet*, 1, 831.

per cent. extraction bread. One of the problems of the future is to get thiamine into the loaf and yet preserve that "whiteness" which is the desire of the millers, bakers and populace.

### Vitamins of the B<sub>2</sub> Complex

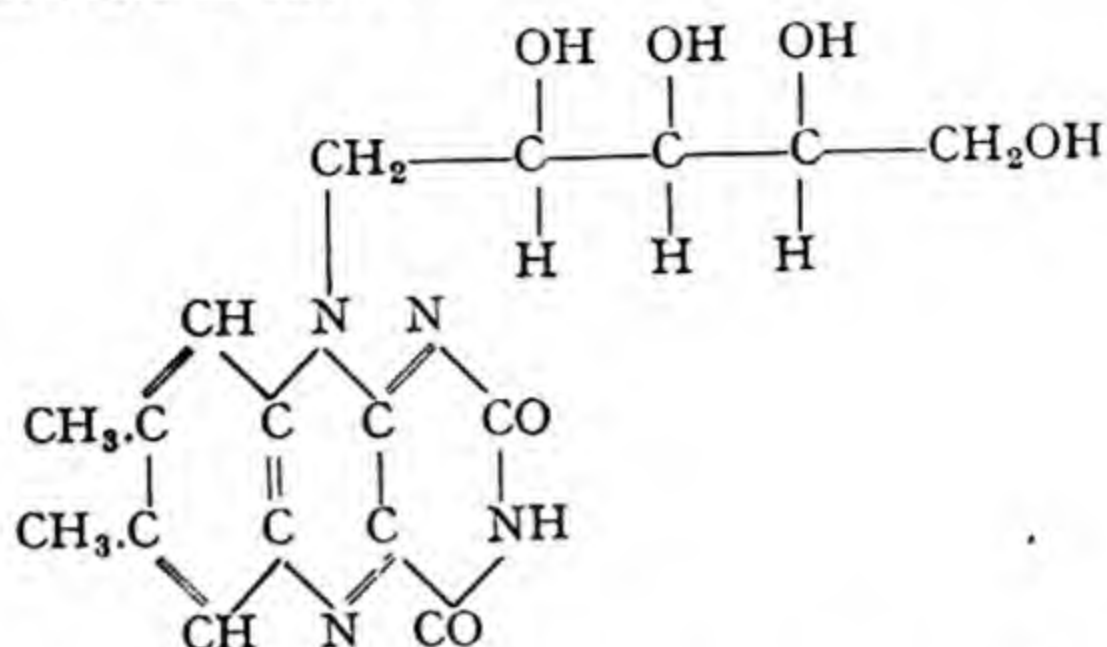
Undoubtedly the vitamin effect first studied as the result of Eijkmann and Grijn's work was that of thiamine and it was assumed that there was one single vitamin: water-soluble B in the bran, yeast, liver and other foods investigated for this action. But as work progressed it became clear that there was not one vitamin only, but many. With the progress of research the vitamins in these food stuffs have extended their ranks like the oysters in a famous poem. Often the clues to their existence were given by microbiology. Yeasts were stimulated to grow by such and such an extract but not by others. Microbes, such as *lactobacillus casei*, are very exacting and specific in their demands for vitamins. Some can synthesize one and not others. And by collating this work with experiments on vertebrates a long list of vitamins essential for vertebrates has been established. They are usually spoken of as the B<sub>2</sub> complex—an indifferent term. How far they all are important in human dietetics, as opposed to dietetics for microbes, is at present uncertain, for, though perhaps essential for human metabolism they may be of little importance in dietetics because (i) they are so widespread among foods and so little is needed per day that no one should ever lack them from the diet, and (ii) the microbes of the alimentary tract synthesize the wanted factors and hand them over to their host. This may at times happen even with thiamine.<sup>1</sup> They may have importance in medicine, as apart from dietetics, because sulphonamides given by mouth check the activity of the microbes inhabiting the gut, and may perhaps induce vitamin deficiencies.

Of the different moieties of the "vitamin B<sub>2</sub> complex" we name riboflavine, nicotinic acid (or nicotinamide), pyridoxine, biotin, paraminobenzoic acid, pantothenic acid, choline, inositol, folic acid and cyanocobalamin (B<sub>12</sub>). There are others. We are certain that riboflavine and nicotinic acid (or nicotinamide) among these are important in human dietetics. We know now that biotin is essential for human metabolism but unless huge amounts of raw eggs which render biotin unavailable are eaten it is unlikely that any deficiency of biotin in the dietary will be experienced. It is possible that the other substances mentioned may be important too, but more in medicine than dietetics, for sulphonamide therapy will stop the activity of the symbiotic microbes of the gut and cut off the source of supply of these vitamins.

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by ROBINSON. (1944), *Chem. and Ind.*, 386.

### Riboflavin

Riboflavin is a condensation product of ribose, which is a pentose sugar, and *isoalloxazine* as shown in



It was extracted from many foods, notably liver, milk, butter, and egg-yolk and was called *hepatoflavin*, *lactoflavin*, etc., according to its origin. When these substances were shown to be identical and the pentose sugar to be ribose, it received the name *riboflavin*. It is a greenish-yellow water-soluble pigment, and may appear free or in various combinations with phosphoric acid, adenine and protein in the body.

Warburg had already described a "yellow ferment" which catalysed oxidations and reductions in the cell, and this ferment is a compound of riboflavin, phosphoric acid, adenine and a protein. Riboflavin is essential for the growth of experimental animals. For if these are fed on a diet of satisfactory Calorie value which contains only the vitamins A, B<sub>1</sub>, and D, growth eventually ceases, but starts again when an adequate amount of riboflavin is given. It is not a big jump to suggest that riboflavin is a vitamin which is essential for the manufacture of Warburg's yellow enzyme, and that growth depends upon the presence of this enzyme.

Riboflavin can be detected either free in the animal body or as a compound with phosphoric acid, as a dinucleotide with adenine and as these two last in combination with a specific protein. The first three are readily absorbed by the alimentary tract but the combination with protein, found in vegetables, is not absorbed unless cooking has set the riboflavin free from the protein. It regulates not only carbohydrate metabolism but also fat and amino acid metabolism.

Normally, human beings excrete some 500–800  $\mu\text{g}$ . per day and the body has no storage capacity for this vitamin as is the case, too, with thiamine. As it is an important vitamin for rats, pigs, dogs, chicken and turkeys, it is not astonishing to find that it is important in man. Work by Sebrell and Sydenstricker in the United States has proved not only that it is important but that deficiency in the diet

shows itself in a definite set of symptoms. These are angular stomatitis (cheilosis), a cracking of the skin with ulceration at the corners of the mouth, a seborrhœic inflammation in the labionasal fold, inflammation of the tongue which loses its papillæ and turns a magenta red in colour, becoming very sore, and an invasion of the cornea of the eye with blood capillaries. The last is perhaps the best diagnostic sign and the tentative explanation given is that riboflavine assists in oxidations in parts of the body where there is no blood supply and that the invasion of the cornea is an effort on the part of the body to supply oxygen when, owing to deficiency of riboflavine, the oxygen tension in the cornea is low.

Other defects of vision tentatively associated with lack of riboflavine are lowered capacity of seeing in the dark (compare avitaminosis A) and amblyopia.<sup>1</sup> This amblyopia may be due to a central or a ring scotoma.<sup>2</sup> Riboflavine is useful in treatment of these troubles, but nicotinamide in addition may be essential.

These last abnormalities of vision were shown in Japanese prisoners-of-war camps, and are due to diets defective in more than one essential. The problem for us is whether aflavinosis is at all common in "normal" times and surroundings. The answer is: yes. Hon<sup>3</sup> reports it as widespread in China. Nicholls<sup>4</sup> describes it in prisons in Ceylon and among children admitted to a children's hospital in Ceylon. In the United States, Sebrell and Sydenstricker have described cases among the poor and in this country physicians have seen angular stomatitis clear up on giving riboflavine. Sydenstricker, who made widespread investigations in Great Britain during the Second World War, discovered that aflavinosis is very rare in this country. This absence has been somewhat carelessly attributed to our consumption of beer, which cannot be the case, for teetotallers suffer no more than beer drinkers; and it cannot be due to tea drinking because the then 2 oz. ration of tea per week can by no means cover the supposed needs of the body.<sup>5</sup>

Recommendations by the National Research Council of the U.S.A. are that adult males should have 2.2 to 3.3 mg. per day according to activity; women 1.8 to 2.7, and 2.5 and 3.0 in pregnancy and lactation respectively; girls 2.0 around puberty and thence on 1.8; boys 2.4 at puberty and 3.0 from 16-20; and children rising in equally graded steps from 0.6 to 1.8 mg. These amounts are almost certainly in excess of what people actually obtain in Great Britain, and there is evidence that less will prevent the appearance of symptoms. Thus when the diet in a camp in North Africa contained on the average 1.6 mg. of

<sup>1</sup> WILKINSON and KING. (1944), *Lancet*, 528. Some think this condition is pellagrous.

<sup>2</sup> GREAVES. (1944), *Lancet*, 2, 227.

<sup>3</sup> HON. (1940), *Annual Report of the Henry Lister Inst. of Med. Res.*, 24.

<sup>4</sup> NICHOLLS. (1944), *Lancet*, 1, 930.

<sup>5</sup> Two ounces of tea would yield 73 µg. per day.

riboflavine per day no stomatitis was seen, whereas when the riboflavine content of that diet sank to about 1.0 mg. it appeared in 16 per cent. of the subjects. The stomatitis could be cured by riboflavine but not by nicotinic acid.<sup>1</sup> Macrae and others<sup>2</sup> have shown that when the average intake in the R.A.F. messes is 1.9 mg. no signs of aflavinosis occur. Consequently we may assume that the minimal dosage is between 1.0 and 1.6 mg. per day and in view of the immunity of the British Isles to aflavinosis pay little attention to the riboflavine content of our diet. If the diet is sound as regards vitamins A and B<sub>1</sub>, it is probably sound as regards riboflavine.<sup>3</sup>

In the table (page 136) a few estimates of the riboflavine contents of foods are given to two significant figures. Later work may alter these figures as the methods of estimation improve. They are taken from many sources but the majority are from Fixsen and Roscoe.<sup>4</sup> The estimates for vegetable foods are by James.<sup>5</sup>

It is unfortunate, perhaps, that this table lends itself to propaganda for proprietary articles, which the firms concerned will not fail to exploit. Within a short time of the publication of the relevant figures, attention was called to the riboflavine content of a pint of beer in the House of Commons but no one thought to mention the all-round values of cheese and milk as compared with beer.

### - Nicotinic Acid

Quite the most startling advance in our understanding of the working of the vitamin B complex is the discovery of the importance of nicotinic acid or nicotinamide in diet. As already stated, Funk in 1912 put forward the idea that pellagra was due to the absence of a vitamin from the diet. This disease is characterized in its earlier stages by an inflammation and pigmentation of the skin on forehead, cheeks, hands and feet, and in its later stages by diarrhoea and dementia. Earlier investigation in the United States suggested that pellagra was due to infection but Goldberger maintained and finally proved that diet was concerned. Pellagra is particularly prevalent wherever maize is a staple food and apparently people on the verge of the disease may be pushed over the edge by infection with parasites or a lack of iron.<sup>6</sup> Such parasitic infection is common among the fellahin in Egypt who suffer from pellagra, though it is not the exciting cause.

<sup>1</sup> JONES, GREEN, ARMSTRONG, and CHADWICK. (1944), *Lancet*, **1**, 720.

<sup>2</sup> MACRAE, BARTON-WRIGHT, and COPPING. (1944), *Biochem. Journ.*, **38**, 132.

<sup>3</sup> BIGWOOD. (1939), League of Nations Health Organization Publication, 88. "No basic diet can be made up which is devoid of lactoflavin."

<sup>4</sup> BOAS-FIXSEN and ROSCOE. (1937-8), *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, **7**, 823.

<sup>5</sup> JAMES, D. P. (1952), *Brit. J. Nutr.*, **6**, 341.

<sup>6</sup> BIGGAM and GHALIOUNGUI. (1933), *Lancet*, **2**, 1198.

## RIBOFLAVINE CONTENT OF FOODS

CEREALS	mg. per 100 g.	VEGETABLES	mg. per 100 g.
Bread	0.03-0.07	Asparagus	1.0
		Beans, Broad	0.43
FISH		Kale	1.0
Cod	0.05-0.31	Onions	0.18
Herring	0.10-0.42	Parsnips	1.0
"    soft roe	0.53	Potatoes	0.4-0.5
Kipper	0.30	Spinach	0.06
Sardines	0.41-0.62	Tomatoes	0.52
Turbot	0.14		
		FRUITS	
MEAT		Apple	0.05-0.07
Beef, Brisket	0.19	Currants	0.26
"    Corned	0.07-0.19	Gooseberries	0.26
"    Lean	0.46		
Ham	0.20	NUTS	
Liver, Ox	1.0	Nuts	0.20-1.6
"    Pig	2.3		
Mutton	0.07-0.32	SUNDRIES	
"    chop	0.20	Bemax	1.06
Meat Extract	1.6-2.3	Beer	0.05-0.17
"    juice (conc.)	1.5	Honey	0.10
		Marmite	3.3
DAIRY PRODUCTS		Tea	0.88
Cheese, Dutch	0.39-0.41	Yeast, Bakers	2.5-3.6
"    Whole milk	0.57	"    Brewer's	1.8-3.0
Milk	0.027-0.17		
Milk Powder, Skim	1.3		
"    "    Whole	0.3-0.4		

Dogs suffer from a disease, "blacktongue," which for long has been considered to be the same disease, and pigs on a diet consisting largely of maize become very ill with pigmentation of skin and weakness of legs.

Now the heat-stable constituent of yeast, which was originally called B<sub>2</sub>, cures pellagra and blacktongue, while riboflavine does not. Therefore it was suggested that a moiety of B<sub>2</sub>, which cures dermatitis in rats, might be essential for man and would cure pellagra. This is not true. The truth was discovered in an odd way.

Funk, in his search for "vitamine" in rice bran, isolated nicotinic acid, but as this did not cure beri-beri its possible use in diet was overlooked for twenty years. Then Warburg found it, or rather the amide, in one of the co-enzymes (codehydrogenase II) which the yeast plant uses in making alcohol. Euler and his associates found that it was combined with adenine, ribose, and phosphoric acid to form the co-enzyme. It seems a big leap from yeast to man, but as there are

distinct analogies between carbohydrate metabolism in man and the yeast plant, people tried the effect of nicotinic acid on pellagra. It cured blacktongue in dogs,<sup>1</sup> the disease of maize-fed pigs<sup>2</sup> and the skin lesions of man in England, Egypt,<sup>3</sup> and the United States of America. Ten mg. per day is a sufficient dose though it is usual to employ as much as 500 mg. to obtain a quicker response. These experiments suggest that nicotinic acid and its amide must be the main<sup>4</sup> missing factor in the diet responsible for producing pellagra.

The classical picture of pellagra in man is of dermatitis, diarrhoea and dementia, usually seen in that order in the United States where the disease has been most investigated. But Sydenstricker is of the opinion that the order may be reversed and dementia appear first. It is notorious that in this country, where classical pellagra is very rare, that it is most frequently observed in our mental hospitals.<sup>5</sup> This is due to the difficulty of feeding patients with dementia of any kind. Moreover there are two other symptoms which frequently accompany pellagra: stomatitis and glossitis, and the inflamed mouth is often infected with the micro-organism of Vincent's angina. Further, infection of the body by bilharzia, or the presence of anæmia, either nutritional or as a sequel to the hookworm infection, may precipitate pellagra. Pellagrous symptoms may accompany sprue, and there may be amblyopia due to lack of nicotinamide. In fact there is a tangle of symptoms sometimes considered pellagrous, sometimes due to aflavinosiis or it may even be to lack of thiamine. For example, the dimness of vision seen in patients may be due to retrobulbar neuritis (athiaminosis), vascularization of the cornea and scotomata (aflavinosiis) or the amblyopia may be pellagrous (aniacinosis). We have seen that stomatitis and glossitis can be due to aflavinosiis as well as to aniacinosis. All this leads to two conclusions, one hypothetical and one practical. Rarely is an avitaminosis pure. A person in a state of malnutrition probably has multiple deficiencies, of iron, of calcium, of vitamins A, D or K, of C or of any or all of the B complex. Which set of symptoms appears depends on chance of constitutional make-up. It may be neuritis or pellagra or scurvy, etc. Consequently it is best, first to make the diet as good as it can be made, i.e. give a diet with the optimal amounts of Calories, protein, mineral elements and vitamins;<sup>6</sup> and

<sup>1</sup> ELVEHJEM, MADDEN, STRONG, and WOOLEY. (1937), *Journ. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 59, 1767.

<sup>2</sup> CHICK, MACRAE, MARTIN, and MARTIN. (1937), *Biochem. Journ.*, 32, 10.

<sup>3</sup> HARRIS and HASSAN. (1938), *Lancet*, 234, 944.

<sup>4</sup> STANNUS. (1940), *Lancet*, 1, 352, considers it to be due to a faulty production of a coenzyme.

<sup>5</sup> WATSON. (1924), *Ann. Rep. Lunacy Comm.*

<sup>6</sup> WILKINSON. (1944), *Lancet*, 2, 655.

second, to treat any symptoms of deficiency (e.g. nutritional anæmia, neuritis, dermatitis, scurvy, etc.) with massive doses of the appropriate medicament: iron, thiamine, riboflavine, nicotinic acid, ascorbic acid, etc.

As was said above, pellagra is rare in Great Britain,<sup>1</sup> but it does not follow that subclinical cases are not present among us. For example, one of us has seen a long-standing soreness of the tongue and bilateral redness of the skin of the cheeks clear up as the sequel to taking 1 oz. of baker's yeast per day. How much nicotinic acid do we need per day and how much does the diet contain?

Ten mg. per day will usually prevent pellagra though larger doses, up to 500 mg. per day, are necessary for a rapid cure, and 10 mg. has been adopted by Bacharach and Drummond. The National Research Council of the U.S.A. put the figure considerably higher: 15–23 for men according to activity, 12–23 for women according to activity and state, 4 to 12 for children according to age, 14 at puberty for girls and thence on 12, 16 at puberty for boys and then 20 till adult stature is reached. Kодиček<sup>2</sup> is apparently satisfied that 12 mg. per day is enough.

A table, mainly following Bacharach's compilation,<sup>3</sup> is given on p. 139 of the distribution of nicotinic acid among foods.

We note in this table that among the normal food-stuffs meat, meat offal and fish stand high on the list; that yeast, as might be expected, contains large amounts and that the proprietary foods made from meat and yeast have the largest amounts. The potato among the vegetables shows up well; nor is white flour so far behind oats. The figures for maize<sup>4</sup> are astonishing in view of the fact that the eating of a diet rich in maize and short of other foods leads to pellagra. The position of dried skimmed milk is interesting in view of the fact that so much skimmed milk has been wasted in Great Britain in the past.

It is clear from this table that no one in peace-time need go without their ration of nicotinic acid and that even when severely rationed it is possible to attain it. The fact that so few cases were reported during the war of 1939–45 in this country confirms this.

The general impression obtained from considering all the three moieties of the vitamin B complex is there is little reason to suspect a deficiency of any one of them in the diet in Great Britain, certainly so long as National wheatmeal bread is the bread eaten.

<sup>1</sup> *Lancet*, (1940), 2, 594.

<sup>2</sup> KODIČEK, (1942), *Lancet*, 1, 389.

<sup>3</sup> BACHARACH, A. L. (1940–41), *Nut. Abst. and Rev.*, 10, 459. Vegetables mainly from JAMES, D. P. (1952), *Brit. Journ. Nut.*, 6, 341.

<sup>4</sup> Maize has an inhibitor of nicotinamide, and but small amounts of tryptophane from which the body can synthesize nicotinamide.

## NICOTINIC ACID CONTENT OF FOODS, MILLIGRAMMES PER 100 G.

## CEREALS AND CEREAL PRODUCTS.

Bread, white . . .	0.5
„ Wholemeal . . .	1.2
Maize . . . . .	0.9-1.6 (!)
Oats, medium . . .	1.0-1.1
Rice, milled . . .	1.6-2.4
„ parboiled and milled . . .	3.8
Wheat, whole . . .	4.7-5.3
„ germ . . . . .	2.7-9.1
„ bran . . . . .	5.0
White flour . . . .	0.9-1.1
FISH. Herring . . .	2.9-4.0
„ White, E.P. . . .	1.7-8.4
FRUITS. Apples . .	<0.5
„ Tomatoes . . . .	<0.5
MEATS. Offal. Heart .	1.2-8.0
„ Kidney . . . . .	3.8-19.4
„ Liver . . . . .	9.3-46.0
„ Tongue . . . . .	12.8
„ Muscle . . . . .	3-18
MILK . . . . .	<0.1-0.5
„ dried . . . . .	2.5
„ „ skimmed . . . .	4.3-15.0

## PROPRIETARY ARTICLES.

Beer . . . . .	7.0
Bemax . . . . .	6.0
Marmite . . . . .	65.5
Meat extract . . .	37.5-102.5
„ juice . . . . .	34.5-61.5

## VEGETABLES AND NUTS.

Asparagus . . . .	1.0
Beans, Broad . . .	4.3
Cabbage . . . . .	0.3
Carrot . . . . .	0.5-0.8
Kale . . . . .	1.0
Pea . . . . .	1.9-2.4
Peanut . . . . .	13.0
Potato . . . . .	1.0-2.0
Soya Bean . . . . .	4.85
Spinach . . . . .	1.7
Sprouts . . . . .	0.6-0.8
Swede . . . . .	1.1

## YEAST.

(baker's moist) . .	7.4-12.0
(brewer's moist) . .	9.1-10.2
Extract . . . . .	47.7-49.7

## Other Moieties of the B complex

We have mentioned biotin, inositol, pyridoxine, paraminobenzoic acid, pantothenic acid, folic acid and cyanocobalamine among the vitamins which may be essential to man. They are essential for microbes, chicken, mice and rats and therefore probably for man.

**Biotin** has been shown to be essential to man by a somewhat drastic experiment. Four volunteers were given sufficient raw egg-white to supply 30 per cent. of the Calories of their diet. This represented the whites of 80 eggs per day. Since the avidin of raw egg-white combines with biotin and renders it unavailable, this depleted the intake of biotin by the volunteers. After 3-4 weeks the subjects showed, among other symptoms, an ashen pallor of skin and mucous membranes followed by a brownish desquamation. There were also muscular pains, lassitude and anorexia. The condition cleared up when biotin was injected—150  $\mu$ g. being sufficient to maintain relief from the symptoms.<sup>1</sup> Biotin has been used successfully in combating baldness due to seborrhoea, but so far no cases of acute spontaneous deficiency of biotin have been described.

Biotin is widely spread amongst all vegetables (beans, cauliflower and leek having the most),<sup>2</sup> grains and nuts and in foods of animal

<sup>1</sup> SYDENSTRICKER and others. (1942). *J. Amer. Med. Ass.*, 118, 1199.

<sup>2</sup> JAMES, D. P. (1952). *Brit. Journ. Nut.*, 6, 341.

origin—liver, kidney and eggs having the greatest amount and milk somewhat less. It is highly improbable that biotin deficiency will ever be observed in this country unless a freak dietary with multitudes of raw eggs be taken.

Much the same can be said of the other substances named. **Inositol** is found in fruits (especially oranges and lemons), in green leaves, in cereals (as the hexaphosphate), in skeletal and heart muscle, kidney, liver, milk and eggs. Bread (wheaten and rye) is bound to contain free inositol and porridge and oatcakes may contain a little.<sup>1</sup> No diet is likely to be deficient in inositol.

**Pyridoxine** occurs in seeds and cereals, especially in the bran and the germ. Liver and fish contain moderate amounts of milk, egg-yolks, lettuce and spinach small amounts. Rats fed on a highly purified diet containing no pyridoxine, get a dermatitis of paws, snout, ears, tail. Dogs, rats and pigs have epileptiform convulsions and develop a microcytic anæmia. Apparently there is no evidence that man suffers from a pyridoxine deficiency anæmia. Babies reared on a particular proprietary food devoid of pyridoxine developed convulsions.<sup>2</sup> A good diet chosen to contain first-class proteins, calcium, iron and vitamins A, C and D will cover the need for pyridoxine.

The same is almost certainly true for **p-aminobenzoic acid** and **pantothenic acids**. Absence of the former in the rat's diet causes greying of the black fur and it has been used in man to cure greying of the hair due to nutritional causes. It is extremely wide-spread in foods and moreover is made by the microbes inhabiting the gut, whence it can be absorbed. No one is likely—no one, that is, who is not undergoing treatment by sulphonamides—to be without a sufficiency of *p*-aminobenzoic acid, obtained either from food or the microbes of the gut.

**Pantothenic acid**—its name means that it is found everywhere—is widely dispersed in food, liver and kidney being the best sources, the rest of the offals coming next, and finally meat. Green plants manufacture it and store it in their seed coats. Black treacle is a good source. It is used in the treatment of the 'burning feet' syndrome.<sup>3</sup>

**Folic Acid**, which is found in leaves, liver, kidney and yeast, once was important clinically. It is a condensation product of a pteridine molecule with paraminobenzoic and glutamic acids. It cures the anæmia of pernicious anæmia and other hæmolytic hyperchromic anæmias. Although so potent in this, it may even enhance the neurological complications which may occur coincidentally with, or independently of, the hæmolytic anæmia. It is therefore no longer used in pernicious anæmia.

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1944), *Nature*, **153**, 650.

<sup>2</sup> Cited *Lancet*, (1954), **I**, 612.

<sup>3</sup> PALLIS, C. 1955. *Practitioner* **175**, 100.

### Cyanocobalamine or Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>.

Quite the most exciting discovery among the vitamins in the last decade was that of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>. Almost simultaneously it was announced by two independent groups of workers in the United States<sup>1</sup> and Great Britain.<sup>2</sup> It has a remarkable structure. It is a nucleotide of a central molecule containing cyanogen, cobalt and four pyrrol rings (cp. porphyrin to which are attached acetamide and propionamide.<sup>3</sup> Cyanocobalamine is the antipernicious anæmia substance found in liver and is the extrinsic factor of Castle. Probably Castle's intrinsic factor is used by the body simply to get the vitamin across the mucous membrane into the blood stream, since pure cyanocobalamine injected straight into the blood causes a remission of pernicious anæmia.

It is a stable deep red crystalline substance, moderately soluble in water and is effective in extraordinarily small amounts (10 µg.), both in combating the megaloblastic anæmia of, and the degeneration of the nervous system that often accompanies pernicious anæmia. Of foods liver and kidney are the relatively most rich (0.5 parts per million) in the substance. Other meats, egg yolk, cheese and casein contain only a few parts per 100 million. Vegetable foods contain practically none. It is exclusively manufactured by microbes—indeed commerce now makes it from *streptomyces griseus*, thus freeing liver for food. No ordinary diet is deficient in this vitamin, but persons who live exclusively on fruit and vegetables must rely upon the manufacture of this vitamin by the microbes of the colon. Patients with sprue may not be able to absorb cyanocobalamine from the gut and so develop hæmolytic anæmia.

### Vitamin C or Ascorbic Acid

The history of the prevention and cure of scurvy presents many examples of the waywardness of human thought and action. It was known as early as 1601 that oranges and lemons kept scurvy at bay, but this was a secret and maintained so in the interests of commerce.<sup>4</sup> It was rediscovered by Lind in 1753. It was also known in the eighteenth century that sprouted seeds and grain were a preventive and cure (Bachstrom, 1734), and Captain Cook showed that living on the fresh fruits of the lands he visited reduced the cases of fatal scurvy among

<sup>1</sup> RICKES *et al.* (1948), *Science*, **107**, 396.

<sup>2</sup> SMITH, E. L., and PARKER, L. F. J. (1948), *Nature*, **161**, 638.

<sup>3</sup> TODD, A., and JOHNSON, A. W. (1955) *Brit. Med. Jour.*, **2**, 610

<sup>4</sup> NIXON. (1938), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **71**, 193. See also BOURNE. (1944), *ibid.*, **37**, 512.

his sailors to zero. But all this was forgotten in the nineteenth century, despite the fact that the navy had abolished scurvy by introducing lemon juice into the diet. Its occurrence was due, it was said, to an altered acid-base equilibrium of the body, or, later, to the presence of microbes. It was not till Holst discovered that guinea-pigs, put on a diet of oats and autoclaved milk, suffered from a similar disease that an opportunity was given to find out what foods could prevent or cure scurvy. We now know that, alone of the animals, man, the primates and the guinea-pig, can suffer from scurvy, while the birds, cat, dog, rabbit and rat do not. To-day we are certain that all, or nearly all, of the symptoms of scurvy are due to the lack of a vitamin, which received the provisional name of vitamin C and now has been called by the first person to isolate it, ascorbic acid.

The first symptoms of the onset of the disease is a hyperkeratosis of the hair follicles, though this is not diagnostic. Then follow hæmorrhages in the perifollicular tissues and hæmorrhages in the interdenticular papillae of the gums. At this stage wounds will not heal. Occasionally heart symptoms are seen with abnormal electrocardiograms. People subject to acne show exacerbation of the acne.<sup>1</sup> Later the gums become swollen and painful, the teeth become loose in their sockets, petechiæ appear in the skin and pains in the joints on movement are unbearable. That wounds fail to heal has an important bearing on surgery.<sup>2</sup>

To-day the disease is rarely seen and should never be seen again. Sporadic cases appear among indigent bachelors and spinsters living by themselves and doing their own housework and catering, and it has been seen in young men living at home, having a midday meal in a city restaurant and returning in the evening to the "warmed-up" remains of a meal their parents had in the middle of the day. Elderly people, too, who on account of false teeth and flatulence and other alimentary troubles have given up fruit and vegetables may develop sore patches in their mouths and purpura which are readily cured by a daily dose of orange-juice. Probably this is incipient scurvy. Soldiers on army rations have less ascorbic acid in their tissues than recruits.<sup>3</sup>

Most patients with gastric and duodenal ulcer<sup>4</sup> coming into hospital are woefully deficient in vitamin C. This deficit is probably the result of omitting acid fruits, salads, and vegetables from the diet on account of dyspepsia, though we cannot entirely rule out the possibility

<sup>1</sup> KREBS, H. A. (1953), *Proc. Nutr. Soc.*, **12**, 237 in work on volunteers living on a diet with extremely little ascorbic acid.

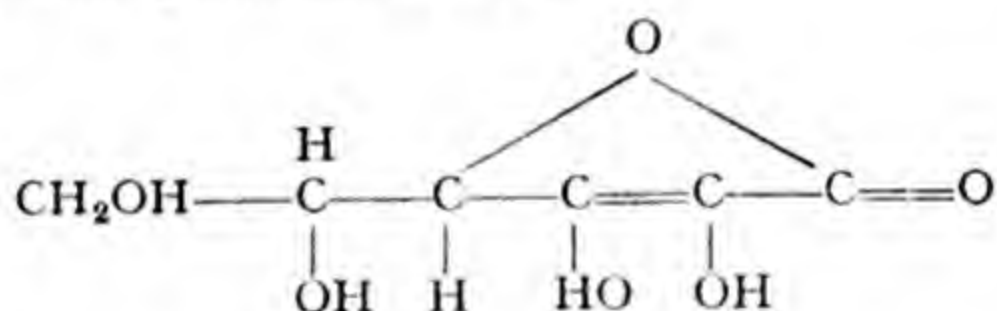
<sup>2</sup> CRANDON, J. H. *et al.* (1940), *New England Journ. Med.*, **223**, 353. HUNT (1941), *Brit. Journ. Surg.*, **38**, 436.

<sup>3</sup> ATKINS, W. R. G. (1951), *Brit. Journ. Nutr.*, **5**, 275.

<sup>4</sup> HARRIS, L. J., ABBASY, M. A., ROY, S. N., and MARRACK, J. R. (1935), *Lancet*, **2**, 1399; ARCHER, H. E., and GRAHAM, G. (1936), *ibid.*, **2**, 364; BOURNE (1938), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **1**, 560.

that ulcers may result from a deficit of vitamin C in the diet.<sup>1</sup> There is a suspicious peak of incidence of peptic ulcers in late winter and early spring, and guinea-pigs on a mildly scorbutic diet frequently have them (20–30 per cent.). No wound heals well if an animal, or a human being, is kept on a diet with but small amounts of the vitamin in it.

The elucidation of the chemistry of vitamin C is interesting in view of the international collaboration involved. Holst and Frölich, Norwegians, started the experimental work on animals. Zilva, at the Lister Institute, noted that fresh lemon-juice reduced a blue dye called indophenol blue. Tillmans and Hirsch in Germany used this fact to discover the age of lemonade "made from fresh lemon." Szent-Györgyi, a Hungarian, discovered a crystalline reducing substance in various plants and one or more animal tissues (notably the cortex of the suprarenal). The dye-reducing power of fruits or vegetables seemed to go parallel with their vitamin C activity. King in America obtained crystalline vitamin C from lemons and showed it to resemble Szent-Györgyi's reducing substance. Szent-Györgyi and Svirbely in Hungary tested the reducing substance on scorbutic guinea-pigs and cured them. Then Szent-Györgyi discovered a good source of it in paprika and sent a large sample to Haworth at the Birmingham University organic chemistry laboratory, where its structural formula was worked out and the compound synthesized.<sup>2</sup> It is



In other words, it has the skeleton of a hexose sugar but it is "unsaturated." It can take up oxygen and also be reduced. Szent-Györgyi christened it ascorbic acid. In small doses, even 10 mg. a day,<sup>3</sup> it prevents most of the symptoms of scurvy.

Ascorbic acid is a white crystalline powder, very stable in the solid state, soluble in alcohol and in water, and unstable in solution in the presence of oxygen which it rapidly takes up. The oxidation is at one stage reversible but at more advanced stages it is irreversible and the vitamin is destroyed. Heat and alkali accelerated this destruction. Ascorbic acid acts as a reducing substance and this accounts for its power of decolorizing indophenol blue. In plant tissues there is an oxidase which, when the cell is damaged, destroys the ascorbic acid.

<sup>1</sup> SMITH and McCONKEY. (1933), *Arch. of Int. Med.*, 51, 413.

<sup>2</sup> For a full account of this exciting work and the obstacles in the way of its fulfilment, see KING, C. G. (1953), *Proc. Nutr. Soc.*, 12, 219.

<sup>3</sup> See KREBS, H. A. (1953), *op. cit.*

This has bearing upon the marketing, the cooking and the preparation of fruits and vegetables for the table.

*Marketing.* Olliver<sup>1</sup> has shown that storage, even for a day or so, results in a loss of ascorbic acid from vegetables such as new potatoes, spinach, carrots and asparagus tips, but though this loss is serious, it has been exaggerated. Chappell,<sup>2</sup> investigating the amounts of ascorbic acid in the produce for sale in cheap and well-to-do markets in London, found that, though the street market fruits and vegetables on the whole had somewhat less ascorbic acid than those purchased in first-class stores, there was still enough left to supply a day's ration cheaply. None the less it is undoubted that the sooner a fruit or vegetable is eaten after it is gathered, the more ascorbic acid it will yield. Wilting and bruising and exposure of cut surfaces to air also decrease the ascorbic acid. Storage in a clamp, as potatoes are stored, lowers the ascorbic acid progressively. In September a main-crop potato may start with 30 mg. per 100 g. to sink by the following March to the low figure of 7. Olliver gives figures about half of these.<sup>3</sup>

*Preparation.* It apparently makes a difference whether a vegetable is shredded with a sharp or a blunt knife. Swedes and cabbage, when grated, lose a considerable proportion of their ascorbic acid, even in five minutes; shredded with a suet grater there is a loss but it takes longer to show up; cut with a sharp steel knife there is little loss even after three hours.<sup>4</sup> Long chewing of salads is held by some to decrease the vitamin content appreciably, but others maintain that this is due to an oxidation to dehydroascorbic acid by the nitrite in saliva. It will probably be reduced again to ascorbic acid in the reducing surroundings of the stomach and intestine. Peeling and keeping potatoes overnight, contrary to widespread belief and statements by authorities, does not deplete the vitamin C.<sup>5</sup>

*Cooking.* It has been long known that ascorbic acid is labile to heat, wherefore it has been loosely and inaccurately stated that all cooking destroys the vitamin C value of cooked fruits and vegetables. This is far from the truth. There is a loss in cooking but this is partly due (i) to the action of the plant's oxidases, and (ii) to leaching of the vitamin into the cooking fluid. The oxidase works most rapidly between the temperature of 65° and 85° C. Above 85° C. it is destroyed. The problem then is to ensure that the vegetable is cooked in water which never falls below a temperature of 85° C. Obviously if it is put into cold water and brought to the boil, however quickly, the oxidase will bring about

<sup>1</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1936), *Chem. and Ind.*, **55**, 153.

<sup>2</sup> CHAPPELL, G. (1940), *Journ. Hygiene*, **40**, 701.

<sup>3</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, **62**, 146.

<sup>4</sup> PYKE, M. (1942), *Nature*, **149**, 499.

<sup>5</sup> MARRACK, J. R., *et al.* (1944), *Lancet*, **2**, 569.

the maximum destruction. Even if it is plunged into boiling water in sufficient amounts to lower the temperature of that water below  $85^{\circ}\text{C}$ . destruction of the ascorbic acid will take place. In the R.A.F. during the late war the vegetables were added in three or four portions, one after the other, so that the temperature never fell far below boiling point.<sup>1</sup> Even so, if the proportion of water to vegetable is high, ascorbic acid is lost through solution in the water. This can be obviated by boiling the vegetables in relays, using the water from one lot to boil the second and so on, a method used in preserving the ascorbic acid in dehydrated vegetables.<sup>2</sup> The Ministry of Food recommends the following treatment to avoid losses of ascorbic acid in domestic cooking. A small amount of water is placed in the saucepan and brought to the boil. The vegetables, shredded with a sharp knife, are dropped in, the saucepan lid put tightly in position and the vegetables cooked partly in the water and partly in the steam above. Cooking is completed in about ten minutes. Constant attention is needed to prevent them from sticking to the pan and burning.

As a result of early work on the influence of alkali on ascorbic acid it has been too readily assumed that the addition of bicarbonate of soda to the water in which greens are boiled—a means of preserving the green colour—will destroy the vitamin C. Olliver<sup>3</sup> has shown that the addition of 2–4 g. of sodium carbonate or bicarbonate to the gallon of water does not destroy vitamin C appreciably, though if the greens are kept hot after they are cooked it may accelerate destruction.

The keeping hot of vegetables after they are cooked is very destructive of the ascorbic acid. Olliver<sup>4</sup> reckons the loss to be 25 per cent. after 15 minutes and 75 per cent. after 90 minutes. This is especially important where cooked vegetables are sent out from a central depot to canteens. Pupils of one of us found, for example, that whereas the vegetables as served at a canteen provided 7.2 mg. per helping, they would have provided three times as much if they had been served as soon as cooked.

Jams, if the fruits from which they are made contain vitamin C, retain a considerable amount. Thus blackcurrant jam (30 per cent. fruit content) may have as much as 50 mg. ascorbic acid per 100 g., so that a helping may give 5 mg.—a useful amount.

*Canning and Bottling.* Owing to the prolonged high temperatures used in canning and bottling of fruits and vegetables it might be thought that there would be massive destruction of vitamin C. This is, however, not necessarily true. As none but the best of fruit and

<sup>1</sup> MACRAE, T. F. (1944), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, **1**, 99.

<sup>2</sup> MAPSON, L. W. (1944), *ibid.*, **1**, 101; TRECHMAN, (1944), *ibid.*, **1**, 103.

<sup>3</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, **62**, 146.

<sup>4</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, **62**, 146.

vegetables fresh from market-gardens can be used for canning; as the produce is "blanched"—i.e. treated with boiling water for a short time before canning; as the head room of air in the cans is reduced to a minimum, the amount of vitamin C in the "pack" is often but very little less than that of the same garden produce cooked in the normal way.<sup>1</sup> There is some loss on storage, but it is so small that the vitamin C of canned fruits and vegetables, even after prolonged storage, may be more than that of fruits and vegetables bought on the open market and then cooked.

*Dehydration.* Vegetables and fruits have long been dried as a method of preserving them. Each war revives the scheme for drying vegetables for feeding soldiers on the field. But the use of such dried vegetables has in the past—notoriously in the Civil War in the U.S.A.—been followed by scurvy. During the war 1939–45, by paying due attention to the ascorbic acid oxidase and by excluding air from the "pack," it has been possible to produce a dried vegetable having 60–80 per cent. of the original ascorbic acid. When cooked, such vegetables should retain 25–35 per cent. of their raw value of ascorbic acid, a figure which compares very favourably with those in home cooking.<sup>2</sup> Dehydrated vegetables stored in nitrogen retain their qualities for at least a year.

*Physiological Function of Ascorbic Acid.* Its use in the body is undoubtedly in the oxidation-reduction systems which play such a large part in the metabolism. The ease with which it can be oxidized and reduced suggests that it acts as a hydrogen transporter. Its value in oxidation can be gauged from the fact that cats survive severe hæmorrhages<sup>3</sup> and mice exposure to low oxygen tensions if they have received large doses of ascorbic acid.<sup>4</sup> This is an indication of its importance in aeronautics.

Ascorbic acid aids the body in the detoxication of various toxins, notably tubercle toxin, and is also concerned with carbohydrate metabolism. It is said to raise the sugar level of the blood rapidly after insulin shock. In its absence the cement substance of the capillaries, and the collagen of connective tissues decreases in amount and strength. The capillaries become fragile—hence the proneness to bruising in scurvy—and wounds will not heal; and broken bones will not unite.<sup>5</sup> The later symptoms of scurvy seem all to be related to this poverty of cement and collagen formation.

*Amount Required per Day.* Estimates of the amount required per

<sup>1</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1936), *ibid.*, 55, 153.

<sup>2</sup> ALLEN, R. J. L., BARKER, J., and MAPSON, L. W. (1944), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, 1, 153

<sup>3</sup> STEWART, LEARMOUTH, and POLLOCK. (1941), *Lancet*, 1, 818.

<sup>4</sup> PETERSON. (1941), *Nat.*, 148, 84. Perhaps related to this oxidation-reduction mechanism is the story of two Irishmen who were cured of idiopathic methæmoglobinæmia by ascorbic acid.

<sup>5</sup> See BOURNE. (1944), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 37, 512.

day vary markedly with the criterion adopted. If the criterion is the absence of any symptoms of scurvy then the daily dose is small. Krebs<sup>1</sup> in his experiments on conscientious objectors found that 10 mg. of ascorbic acid added to a diet which may have contained 1 mg. per day protected volunteers for 424 days, 10 mg. cured clinical scurvy in the six cases examined. It is usually assumed that the dose of a vitamin to cure a deficiency disease is thrice that of the daily need, which brings down the daily need to about 4 mg. per day. Fox maintains that the natives working in the mines of Johannesburg, were free from overt symptoms of scurvy on an intake of 10 mg. per day.

If the saturation test is accepted then 50 mg. per day, at least, is required, for dosing such people with extra ascorbic acid at the rate of 10 mg. per kilo body weight results in a marked rise in the ascorbic acid in the urine on the same day. None the less Graham reports a person who needs 200 mg. to keep his tissues saturated. The British Medical Association Committee, accepting Krebs's work, suggest that 20 mg. per day is sufficient. The League of Nations Technical Commission on Nutrition put the figure at 30 mg. The National Research Council of the U.S.A. put the optimal intakes much higher:

	mg.		mg.		mg.
Adult male	75	Children under 1 year	30	Girls 13-15	80
„ female	70	1-3 years	35	16-20	80
Pregnant „	100	4-6	50	Boys 13-15	90
Lactating „	150	7-9	60	16-20	100
		10-12	75		

The fact is that we do not know the optimal amount. We do know that 10 mg. is above the marginal amount. Consequently we incline to the belief that 30 mg. is a safe amount for most children and adults, but there are exceptional people who need more. This is especially true of people with severe illness. Tuberculosis, osteomyelitis and rheumatoid arthritis seem to increase the need. Probably any fever and any form of enteritis do the same. In hospital work routine examination of the ascorbic acid in the urine should be made and patients due for abdominal operations should be saturated before and kept saturated after the operation.<sup>2</sup>

Whether we estimate the advisable intake as 30 mg. or even more mg. per day, it will be seen from the following tables that it is not difficult to obtain a sufficiency, using the ordinary foods. Many, *but by no means all*, raw fruits, particularly the citrous fruits and the summer fruits (with the exception of cherries), are useful sources. The autumn fruits,

<sup>1</sup> KREBS, H. A. (1953), *Proc. Nutr. Soc.*, **12**, 237.

<sup>2</sup> See ARCHER, H. E., and GRAHAM, G. (1936), *Lancet*, **1**, 710. CRANDON, LUND and DILL. (1940), *New England Med. Journ.*, **223**, 353. HUNT. (1941) *Brit. Journ. Surg.*, **38**, 436.

apples, pears, and plums, are almost useless, though Bramley Seedling and the Woolbrook Russet are marked exceptions. Many vegetables, especially those of the cabbage tribe and their near relatives the cresses, are extremely useful. Of animal foods only the liver contains much vitamin C,<sup>1</sup> about 25 mg. per 100 g.<sup>2</sup>

There are two main ways of estimating vitamin C, (1) the *biological method*, by estimating the power of a food to prevent or cure scurvy in guinea-pigs as compared with pure ascorbic acid, (2) a *chemical method*, usually by estimating the power of a protein-free extract of the food to decolourize a standard solution of the dye, dichlorophenol indophenol blue.

The former method is preferred by all biologists but it is costly and time-taking, whereas the latter needs but accurate pipettes and a microburette, and is quick. It need hardly be said which is the most commonly used.

This colorimetric method has sundry uncertainties apart from the individual factor. There may be other reducing substances present in the food which render the dye colourless. These are estimated, unless special precautions are taken, as vitamin C. They are produced as the result of heat on pectins and carbo-hydrates and appear in molasses and in fruit juices and dried foods stored for several years under normal conditions. They are also present in parsley, walnuts, especially unripe walnuts, germinated grains, malt extract, beer, cocoa and chocolate. So until older estimations are controlled for the possible presence of these substances they must be accepted with reserve.<sup>3</sup> Further, there is grave variability of the amounts of vitamin C in any one type of food. It may vary with the species. The farther north rose hips are collected in Great Britain, the more vitamin C they contain.<sup>4</sup> A variety from Russia has ten times the amount of most British hips. The Baldwin blackcurrant has more than the Westwick Choice.<sup>5</sup> Dessert apples have little, as a rule, while cooking apples may have some ascorbic acid. The size of the fruit may influence the amount. Large blackcurrants have more than small, but small peas have more than large.<sup>5</sup> The bigger the tomato the less it has in proportion up to a weight of 40 g. and there is much variation from plant to plant, and this variation is inherited. The time of year, the origin, the amount of ripening, the type of weather experienced in the growing season, all influence the percentage of vitamin C to be found in fruits and vegetables. Consequently we

<sup>1</sup> MILLS. (1932), *Biochem. Journ.*, **26**, 704.

<sup>2</sup> EEKELEN, M. VAN. (1953), *Proc. Nutr. Soc.*, **12**, 228. In Thule, Greenland, the native sources of ascorbic acid are narwhal skin and liver and kidneys of walrus and seal. GILBERG, AAGE, *Eskimo Doctor* (1943), translated Karin Elliott (1948).

<sup>3</sup> WOKES, ORGAN, DUNCAN, and JACOBY. (1943), *Bioch. Journ.*, **37**, 695.

<sup>4</sup> PYKE and MELVILLE. (1942), *Bioch. Journ.*, **36**, 336.

<sup>5</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1938), *Analyst*, **63**, 2.

cannot accept published figures unless we recognize these possibilities of variation and treat them more as indications of the vitamin level to be expected, or wished, than as a statement of fact. Nor should we accept in Great Britain figures for food commodities obtained and analysed outside these islands. Tomatoes grown under the weather conditions prevailing in Great Britain are different as sources of ascorbic acid from those grown in the U.S.A. A banana when submitted to analysis here is a very different fruit from one analysed in the States though both may have come from the same place, and similarly with a green pepper analysed here, or in Hungary or in Louisiana. Each country must prepare its own vitamin tables and give the range of values.

In the following table the amounts are given in milligrammes ascorbic acid for 100 g. which, as pointed out earlier, is an average allowance of fruits and vegetables. Heavy type indicates useful sources.

FRUITS			
Apple, Blenheim Orange	3	Lemon	14-66
" Bramley Seedling	16-22	Lime	32-58
" Cox's Orange		Loganberry	20-48
" Pippin	2-14	Melon, Cantaloupe	15-53
Banana	1-15	Orange	16-99
Cherry	3-17	" Juice	28-89
Currant (black)	136-353	Pear	1-10
" (red)	50	Pineapple	10-63
Gooseberry	28-47	Plum	0.5-5
Grape	1-4	Raspberry	30
Grape fruit	26-65	Strawberry	46-77
Greengage	0.5-7	Tangerine	10-36
Haw	49-500	Tomato	13-39
Hip	10-1870 <sup>1</sup>		

Hips and haws have been included because schoolboys are apt to eat them, and the U.S.S.R. employ them in the manufacture of anti-scorbutic for winter use in the Arctic Circle. Moreover, during the war of 1939-45 the Ministry of Food put rose-hip juice containing 150 mg. on the market for infants and children. One medium-sized orange weighs about 170 g. and yields about 70 c.c. juice and therefore from 11 to 62 mg. ascorbic acid according to origin. South African oranges have the highest titre of the oranges sold in Great Britain. We call attention to the enormous amount in black currants, and point out the value of these, even when canned, in supplying vitamin C at a time or place where it is difficult to obtain it.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The figures given are for British rose hips. Scottish and northern-grown hips have the highest value. Hips from a Turkestan species grown at Kew reached a record figure of 4800. PYKE and MELVILLE. (1942), *Biochem. Journ.*, 36, 336.

<sup>2</sup> During the war the standardization of the purées of black currants used for infants and patients with gastric disorders was in the hands of Olliver, of Chivers & Sons, who first put the purée on the market.

## VEGETABLES (RAW) USED AS SALADS

Carrot . . . . .	4	Onion, spring . . . . .	14-25
Celery . . . . .	1-6	Peppers . . . . .	12-330
Cucumber . . . . .	1-18	Radish . . . . .	12-20
Endive . . . . .	19	Tomato . . . . .	13-39
Lettuce . . . . .	0.5-22 <sup>1</sup>	Watercress . . . . .	24-76
"Nasturtium" i.e. Tropaeolum			
majus leaves . . . . .	200-465		

We point out how disappointing carrot, celery and lettuce are, and the possibility of using peppers which are sometimes sold in our big stores in autumn as a source of vitamin C. If people would learn to use raw cabbage and raw brussels sprouts and turnips as salad, the salad sources of vitamin C could be extended and cheapened, e.g.

Cabbage . . . . .	20-124	Sprouts . . . . .	72-146
Cauliflower . . . . .	19-101	Swede . . . . .	20-47
Green sprouting broccoli . . . . .	111-141 <sup>2</sup>	Turnip . . . . .	17-43
Kohl rabi . . . . .	60-117		

## COOKED FRUITS

Currant (black) . . . . .	90	} as normally consumed <sup>3</sup>
Currant (red) . . . . .	23	
Gooseberry . . . . .	20	
Grapefruit-juice . . . . .	34-50 (canned)	
Hip . . . . .	210 (cooked 12 mins., sieved, sugar added, cooked another 4 minutes)	
Loganberry . . . . .	20 as normally consumed <sup>3</sup>	
Orange-juice . . . . .	29-50 (canned)	
Strawberry . . . . .	solid 10-55, liquid 10-20	

The vitamin C content of cooked vegetables depends on the amount they started with, how they were cooked, and how long they waited before they were eaten. If plunged into boiling water, cooked rapidly and served as soon as cooked it may be assumed that 33 per cent., i.e. one third, of the vitamin is preserved.<sup>4</sup> Thus sprouts starting with 100 mg. per 100 g. when raw will finish with 33 mg. Potatoes have a value of 30 mg. per 100 g. in Autumn, but this falls to 7 or less in March.

The above tables, taken from various sources but mainly from *Nutrition Abstracts and Reviews*,<sup>5</sup> show that it is by no means difficult nor expensive to supply ascorbic acid in the diet the whole year round.

<sup>1</sup> English mean figure given as 16 by OLLIVER, M. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, 63, 146.

<sup>2</sup> American figures. WHEELER, TRESSLER and KING. (1939), *Food Research*, 4, 593.

<sup>3</sup> Figures from OLLIVER, M. *Op. cit.*

<sup>4</sup> Amount falls by a further 50 per cent. or more if kept hot in a hay box.

<sup>5</sup> FIXSEN and ROSCOE, 1937-8, 7, 823; and FIXSEN, 1938-9, 8, 281.

Chappell<sup>1</sup> has shown that 30 mg. of ascorbic acid could be purchased for one farthing in 1938. Yet we know that the patients in six London hospitals<sup>2</sup> in 1943 were receiving much less than this, and the nurses not much more than the patients. The same is doubtless true of provincial hospitals. And if hospitals can err, how much more likely are school and factory canteens to do the same? There is little doubt that the diet of the large boarding-schools throughout the winter months give too little of this vitamin, grow too little of the fruits and vegetables which contain this vitamin and present it in a way both unpalatable and devoid of ascorbic acid. Agriculture, market gardening, education and the art of cooking have a long way to go before people in this country take a diet which contains the modest amount of 30 mg. of ascorbic acid per person per day.

### Vitamin D

That the formation of sound bone and sound teeth is regulated by the supply of a vitamin was first put on a sound scientific basis by Edward Mellanby and his wife May Mellanby.<sup>3</sup> Puppies fed on a diet of skimmed milk, bread, and olive oil developed rickets and their teeth were almost devoid of enamel. This state could be prevented by giving cod-liver oil or in fact many other animal fats though very few (if any) vegetable fats instead of the olive oil. For many years some physicians, but by no means all, had used cod liver oil as a preventive or cure of rickets, but its value was conclusively proved by the commission which visited Vienna in 1919-22 and reported on its work in 1923.<sup>4</sup> Sunlight and ultra-violet light<sup>5</sup> also prevented or cured rickets. Ultra-violet light acting on a sterol in the skin converts it into an antirachitic vitamin, which passing into the blood stream can prevent the occurrence or promote the healing of rickets. Sterols in foods when exposed to ultra-violet light undergo a similar transformation and become antirachitic. Further, this vitamin was shown to differ from vitamin A, for it was more resistant to oxidation<sup>6</sup> and it was precipitated along with the sterols from the unsaponifiable parts of the fats which carried it. These sterols are complex organic substances and have become of great importance in biochemistry, for their chemical "skeleton" is

<sup>1</sup> CHAPPELL, G. (1940), *Journ. Hygiene*, **40**, 701.

<sup>2</sup> Memorandum on Hospital Diet. (1943), King Edward's Hospital Fund for London.

<sup>3</sup> See a series of papers beginning in 1918, *Lancet*, **2**, 767, and continuing in various *Medical Research Council Special Reports*. Also *A Story of Nutritional Research* (1950), by Sir Edward Mellanby. Williams & Wilkin Co.

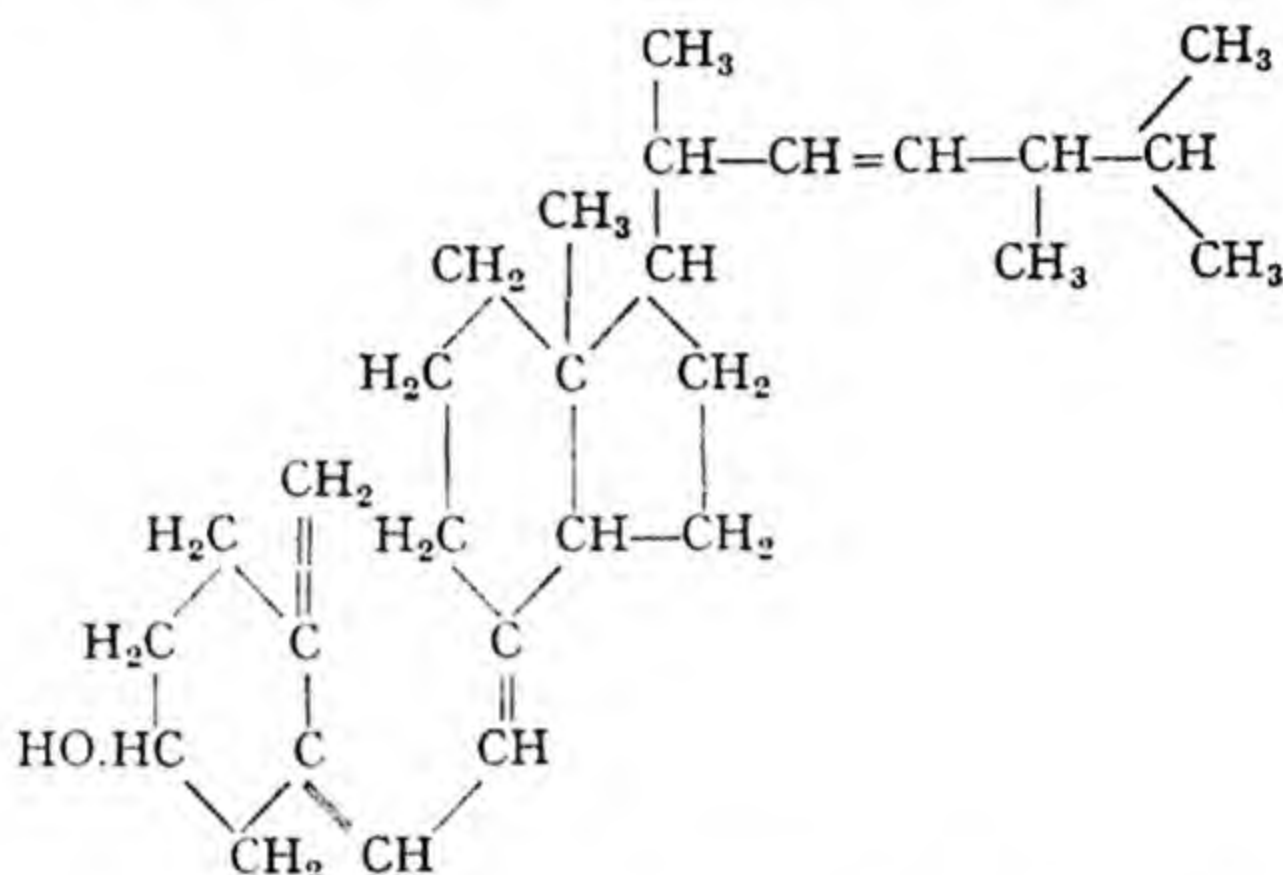
<sup>4</sup> *Med. Res. Counc. Special Report*, No. 77.

<sup>5</sup> HULDSCHINSKY. (1919), *Deut. med. Woch.*, **45**, 712.

<sup>6</sup> MCCOLLUM *et al.* (1922), *Journ. Biol. Chem.*, **53**, 293.

found in the sex hormones, the suprarenal cortex hormone, some carcinogenetic substances, the "organizer" in the developing egg, bile salts and the cardiac drugs, digitalin and strophanthin.

A sterol found in ergot and in yeast—ergosterol—has an ultra-violet absorption comparable with that of vitamin concentrates which cured or prevented rickets. Ergosterol when irradiated with ultra-violet light cures or prevents rickets.<sup>1</sup> By careful fractional distillation or fractional crystallization of the substances produced by ultra-violet light on ergosterol a substance was obtained which was molecularly pure and cured rickets in exceedingly minute amounts. It was called calciferol and was thought to be "the" vitamin D.<sup>2</sup> Its formula is



and it is 400,000 times as active in curing rickets as cod-liver oil. But it is by no means the only substance produced from sterols which cures rickets and it is not present in cod-liver oil. Thus it cures the rickets that occurs in rats but not the rickets from which chickens suffer which, however, is easily cured by cod-liver oil. There may be six or eight forms of vitamin D, some natural, some artificial. The artificial vitamin, calciferol, is often called D<sub>2</sub> and vitamin of cod-liver oil D<sub>3</sub>.

In dietetics it does not matter much what the formulæ are: what we are concerned with is what they do in the body, how much of them and how long we should take them and in what foods we can find them.

In rickets there is a faulty deposition of calcium phosphate, calcium carbonate and (?) calcium fluoride in the cartilage or in the connective tissue in which bones are formed in the foetus or the growing young.

<sup>1</sup> WINDAUS and HESS. (1927), *Nachr. d. Wissen. Göttingen*, quoted by McCollum. ROSENHEIM and WEBSTER. (1927), *Lancet*, **I**, 306.

<sup>2</sup> ASKEW, BOURDILLON, BRUCE, JENKINS, and WEBSTER. (1930), *Proc. Roy. Soc. B.*, **107**, 76. The relation of D<sub>2</sub> to D<sub>3</sub> in chemical nature and activity and to dihydrotachysterol is set out in the *Lancet*, 1955, **2**, 712. See also DENT, C. E. *et al. Lancet*, 1955, **2**, 687.

Instead of hard bone, soft osteoid tissue only is formed at the growing areas of bones, and consequently, owing to the inevitable pressure in those areas, there is distortion of the limbs. Thus the manifestations of past rickets are bow legs, knock knees, bossed foreheads and (often) ill-formed teeth. Rickets can occur at all ages. Foetal rickets, the existence of which was once denied, undoubtedly occurs in China.<sup>1</sup> A few cases have been reported in this country. It usually occurs between the ages of 4 months and 18 months, though it may be delayed till the third or fourth year (delayed rickets). Renal rickets, once denied a place in the scheme, though the bone picture is identical, has been shown to be true rickets and curable (as rickets) in the later teens.<sup>2</sup> Finally osteomalacia, a softening of the bones, is really adult rickets. The rachitic foetus has been unable to lay down those calcium compounds in its cartilages because it received too little calcium, phosphorus and vitamin D from the maternal blood. The ricketty child has had too little of them in its food or has been deprived of sunlight. The osteomalacic woman has had these compounds withdrawn from the bones, possibly to supply them in pregnancy and lactation, to the foetus and mammary glands, or possibly as a result of overactivity of the parathyroids.

Once rickets was so prevalent in this country as to be called the English disease on the continent of Europe. In the days of Elizabeth I it had doubtless received its English name; Whistler of Oxford and Glisson of Cambridge wrote treatises on it (1645 and 1650), the latter giving it its medical name, *rachitis*. And it has plagued us from that time onwards till its ætiology was discovered in the second decade of this century. To-day in the reign of the second Elizabeth it has almost disappeared. Early in the nineteen hundreds its after effects could be seen in any poverty stricken area of our towns; to-day any people so afflicted are middle-aged or elderly. This is almost entirely due to the application of Mellanby's work by the medical profession to the nurture of the young.

Rickets is the result of defective intake of calcium and phosphorus, or both, and faulty deposition of these in the bones owing to a lack of vitamin D. Anything which deprives the body of its sources of calcium, phosphorus or vitamin D will cause rickets. Thus it accompanies tetany (deprivation of calcium), coeliac disease and steatorrhœa (which deprive the body of all three). Poverty, by leading to consumption of the cereals, the cheapest way of satisfying hunger and the neglect of dairy foods (calcium) and other sources of animal fat (vitamin D), results in rickets. Cereals containing much phytates, e.g. oatmeal and wholemeal bread, increase the tendency to rickets by making calcium unavailable. In animals both high calcium low phosphorus, and high

<sup>1</sup> MAXWELL. (1930), *Lancet*, **I**, 454, and *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **33**, 639.

<sup>2</sup> GRAHAM, G., and OAKLEY, W. G. (1938), *Arch. Dis. Childh.*, N.S., **I**, 1.

phosphorus low calcium diets induce rickets. It can be largely combatted by a source of vitamin D or of sunlight or ultraviolet light.

How the vitamin D works is still a moot point. More calcium and phosphorus are absorbed from the alimentary tract when vitamin D is given, but this cannot be the whole explanation, for embryonic bones grown aseptically *in vitro* calcify properly only when vitamin D is present. The effect must be catalytic for the vitamin works in such minute amounts. As little as 0.025 microgrammes can start the bones of a rickety rat laying down true bone material in its cartilages.

To the dietitian this problem will seem academic. His task is to assure a diet which will obviate rickets, and that means a diet in which there is plenty of available calcium and phosphorus together with vitamin D.

Rarely in this country or indeed in most parts of the world is there too little phosphorus in the diet. It is otherwise with calcium. The dairy foods are expensive compared with the cereals; cheese and milk are the most important sources of calcium. (Indeed the intake of that element is closely correlated with the amount of milk and cheese consumed.<sup>1</sup>) Vitamin D is quite difficult to come by unless one eats fat fish or takes cod liver oil or halibut liver oil. It is true that summer milk and butter contain some vitamin D, and margarine has artificial vitamin D added to it. How foods compare one with the other will be clear from the table taken from *Nutritive Values of Wartime Foods*:

DAIRY FOODS	I.U. per 100 g.	FISH	I.U. per 100 g.
Butter, Empire imported	60	Herrings, fresh and cured	850
Cheese . . . .	15	„ canned . . . .	170
Dripping . . . .	30	Mackerel . . . .	700
Egg, whole, fresh . . . .	60	Salmon, canned . . . .	600
„ dried . . . .	240	Sardines, canned . . . .	1000
Margarine . . . .	200		
		FISH LIVER OILS	
		Cod . . . .	20,000

Halibut liver oils, not included in this table, run from 20,000 to 400,000.

How much vitamin D is essential for the normal child and adult is still uncertain.

As regards the cure of, or protection from, rickets, it is fairly certain that 500 I.U. per day form a satisfactory dose. (The unit is the vitamin D activity of 1 mg. of the standard solution of irradiated ergosterol and equals the activity 0.025  $\mu$ g. of crystallized calciferol.) This is the dose for a child. How much is essential for an adult is not known. A problem still unsolved is why so many children show no obvious signs of rickets though their daily intake of vitamin D must be well below the level of 500 I.U. Mild rickets occurs in many babies, but we should expect it to

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., WIDDOWSON, E. M., and VERDON-ROE. (1938), *Journ. Hyg.*, 38, 596.

be much more obvious if this figure is near the minimum. Idiosyncrasies of absorption of calcium, phosphorus and vitamin D and utilization of these essential factors may be the explanation or varying exposure to sunlight. Diarrhoea and dosage with liquid paraffin may impede absorption.

Another problem is how long this intake of vitamin D should continue. Almost certainly it should start before birth. There is evidence from China, from America, and Scandinavia that the bones of the new-born are better calcified if the mother has had adequate doses of calcium and vitamin D during pregnancy. The formation of bones and teeth starts before birth and continues till the last teeth are erupted, which may be not till 18 to 21. It is true that the usual age for rickets is 6 months to 18 months, but it will be remembered from the above that there are such diseases as renal rickets, foetal rickets<sup>1</sup> and delayed rickets, and that delayed rickets shades off into osteomalacia, which is really adult rickets. At the least—for osteomalacia is more frequent with women—extra vitamin D should be taken by women as long as child-bearing continues.

Calcium deposits can be organized up to old age and presumably in their organization vitamin D is needed; and, moreover, vitamin D<sup>2</sup> aids in averting caries and there is no age at which caries does not attack the teeth. Consequently there is every reason for including vitamin D in the diet at any age, and for want of a better figure we may take the 500 I.U. necessary for children as the dose for an adult. Doubtless it will take years for the shortage of vitamin D, to which every adult in Great Britain was subjected during the War, to show its effects. But there is no reason for saying that the adult needs none. We have the experience of Vienna after the first World War, when osteomalacia was of common occurrence, as a warning against complacency of that kind.

We are therefore in a somewhat difficult position. Few foods have vitamin D in them except fish-liver oils and many people dislike fish-liver oils so much that they refuse to take them. They can, however, be introduced into fish sauces, mayonnaises, soups, potted fish, and savouries, and this method of overcoming the difficulty has been taken up by colleges of Domestic Science and numerous recipes produced.<sup>3</sup> It is astonishing that cod-liver oil introduced into gingerbread cannot be tasted. There is no reason to believe that the vitamin D so introduced into fish sauces and other dishes loses any of its virtue in the process of cooking.<sup>4</sup> A first-rate cod-liver oil costs about the third of the price of

<sup>1</sup> MAXWELL. (1930), *Lancet*, **I**, 454; and (1930), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **23**, 639.

<sup>2</sup> MAY MELLANBY. (1944), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **I**, 837.

<sup>3</sup> LINDSAY, J., and MOTTRAM, V. H. (1939), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **I**, 14.

<sup>4</sup> FIXSEN. (1938-9), *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, **8**, 281.

salad oil and can be recommended in making a salmon mayonnaise on the grounds of economy.

Of course foods could be fortified either by the addition of concentrates, as all margarine in Britain is fortified to-day, or by irradiation with ultra-violet light, as is done in the United States. Yeast and milk lend themselves to irradiation. Otherwise we must rely upon fish-liver oils and treat them not as a medicine but as a food.

Fortunately, severe rickets is almost a thing of the past in Great Britain, though not in Ireland; and mild rickets has decreased remarkably, probably as a result of the work of child welfare centres. Dentition in this country, to judge from general observation and specific investigation,<sup>1</sup> is on the upgrade, though there we have a long way to go before we reach the standard of the American and Canadian soldiers we entertained during the war of 1939-45.<sup>2</sup>

### Vitamin E

It has long been known that there is another fat-soluble vitamin essential for reproduction in the rat. In its absence the male becomes permanently sterile while the female, though she conceives, cannot bring the foetuses to birth—they are reabsorbed by the placenta. None the less, if put upon a diet containing the vitamin, she can thereafter successfully raise a family. The vitamin is found in greatest amounts in wheat oil, though it is widely distributed in green foods and in milk. Four alcohols,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -,  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -tocopherols, have this vitamin E action.

The majority of the human race do not suffer from any particular lack of this vitamin but it is possible that some women need much greater amounts than others to carry through a successful pregnancy. There is suggestive evidence that habitual abortion responds to the exhibition of doses representing about 5 g. of wheat oil during pregnancy,<sup>3</sup> but not all obstetricians are converted to that view.<sup>4</sup> It is held

<sup>1</sup> MAY MELLANBY. (1944), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **1**, 837.

<sup>2</sup> In the above paragraphs on vitamin D we have throughout assumed that this vitamin is concerned with deposition of calcium in the dentine and enamel of teeth. It has become fashionable to decry this—see BICKNELL and PRESCOTT. (1953), *The Vitamins in Medicine*. We are aware of discrepancies between faulty deposition of calcium in the bones and in the teeth. A child may be rickety and yet have perfect teeth, or have perfect bones and decayed teeth. We are, however, so convinced that deposition of calcium compounds in the animal body is influenced by vitamin D, that we accept this as true. It is for future research to show what other factors—e.g. vitamins A and C, mineral elements, etc.—are concerned in the pathogenesis of dental caries.

<sup>3</sup> VOGT-MÖLLER. (1931), *Lancet*, **2**, 182; (1933), *Acta. Obst. et Gynæc. Scand.*, **13**, 219; (1936), *Klin. Wochenschr.*, **15**, 93; WATSON. (1936), *Can. Med. Assoc. Journ.*, **34**, 134; WATSON and TEW. (1936), *Amer. Journ. Obst. and Gynæc.*, **31**, 352; CURRIE. (1937), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **2**, 1218.

<sup>4</sup> Vide a discussion held by the Food Group of the Society of Industrial Chemists, April, 1939.

by one professor of medicine that good advice to the habitual aborter is as efficacious as a course of vitamin E concentrate. This does not, however, explain the success which Vogt-Møller claims in veterinary practice. At any rate the problem of the prevention of habitual abortion is more medical than dietetic and will be treated, if the vitamin E hypothesis holds, rather by giving a concentrate of the vitamin than by a diet rich in vitamin E. It is difficult to give a diet satisfactory for vitamins A, B, C and D without giving vitamin E at the same time.

### Other Vitamins

As research continues, it is highly probable that more vitamins will be discovered and that later these will be shown to be important for man. Many have been discovered or postulated for this or that animal and it may be that one or another will prove to be indispensable in human nutrition. One such vitamin—**Vitamin K**—known to be important in the feeding of chicks, sprang into a position of more than theoretical importance late in 1939.<sup>1</sup> It was shown by Dam that a number of infants with a syndrome of symptoms including jaundice, hæmorrhage and dropsy, had a reduced clotting-power of the blood. In chicks suffering from a lack of this vitamin the resulting diminished power of coagulation of the blood is due to a lack of prothrombin, and feeding them with vitamin K restores to the animals their power of making prothrombin.

Further, four adults were shown by Dam to be deficient in prothrombin as the result of a lack of this vitamin. Three had scurvy and one pellagra; therefore their diet was highly deficient in ascorbic and nicotinic acids. All had a low prothrombin level which became normal 24 hours after treatment with vitamin K. Low prothrombin levels have been observed in patients suffering from obstructive jaundice, sprue, biliary fistula and ulcerative colitis—diseases in which there is either a lack of bile salts in the alimentary tract or poor absorption of fat.

There are two naturally occurring substances which restore to the blood its lost power of clotting, (i) vitamin K<sub>1</sub>, or 2-methyl-3-phytyl-1:4-naphthoquinone, and (ii) vitamin K<sub>2</sub> or 2-methyl-3-difarnesyl-1:4-naphthoquinone. The first is found in green vegetables, e.g. cabbage, spinach, green peas, alfalfa or lucerne, but not in fruits or cereals; the second is manufactured by bacteria including those living in the gut.

Both these naphthoquinones are soluble in fat and fat solvents, but are insoluble in water. Consequently the body has difficulty in absorbing them when there are no bile salts in the gut or in other cases (e.g. sprue) when the absorption of fat is deficient. Medicinal paraffin oil impedes the absorption of vitamin K.

<sup>1</sup> DAM, H. (1939), *Lancet*, 2, 1157 and 1162.

Commercial 2-methyl-1:4-naphthoquinone is even more active than the natural vitamins and though mildly toxic is replacing them in therapy.

It will be clear from the above that the normal person eating a mixed diet including green vegetables is never likely to suffer from a lack of vitamin K. Even in the absence of these vegetables he can rely on the microbes in his large intestine to manufacture a sufficiency. But if his powers of absorption of fat are lowered or his intestinal flora depressed by a long course of sulphonamides he may suffer from a deficit. Babies when born have a sterile gut and it takes two or three days to establish therein a good bacterial flora. If then the mother's diet has been deficient in  $K_1$  or her absorption of  $K_2$  from her colon been poor, the baby is born with a lowered prothrombin titre of its blood. Hæmorrhagic disease of the newborn is often attributed to lack of vitamin K, and the Scandinavian school of obstetricians and pædiatricians use vitamin K as a prophylactic.<sup>1</sup> American data are not so encouraging.

In dietetics vitamin K is not important because a diet satisfactory for the earlier discovered vitamins, particularly A and C, will most probably contain K. But it is important for jaundiced patients, and extra amounts should always be given to jaundiced patients about to undergo an operation.

### Vitamin P

The work on this vitamin is in such a muddle that the American Medical Association advises us, in vulgar phraseology, to "forget it." Szent-Györgyi believed that the fragility of the capillaries seen in scurvy is due not to the absence of ascorbic acid in the diet but to a vitamin which frequently accompanies ascorbic acid in foods. He considered that hesperidin, a flavone from orange peel or pulp, is this vitamin. Later he thought it to be eriodictyol. Workers in this country have pointed to other substances with a similar action, and have prepared concentrates with sixty times the activity of crystallized hesperidin.

Although the reputed presence of Vitamin P does not run parallel with that of ascorbic acid it is undoubted that a diet which contains plenty of fruit will cover the needs for this (hypothetical?) vitamin. Most vegetables contain this vitamin too, but in smaller amounts.

However important in science and medicine the vitamins discovered in the future may prove to be, it is unlikely that such discovery will make much difference to the principles and practice of dietetics. The more recently discovered vitamins were discovered only because the

<sup>1</sup> LEHMANN. (1944). *Lancet*, 1, 493, 506, and 2, 737.

earlier vitamins had been isolated and purified; and of course, generally speaking, the more widely distributed and easily isolated vitamins were the first to be isolated and synthesized. If the physician is treating deficiency diseases with vitamins he should use a blunderbus preparation of all the known vitamins, for deficiencies are rarely single but multiple. Now a mixed dietary, containing dairy foods, fruit and vegetables, fish and whole cereals is a blunderbus diet. It contains all the known vitamins and probably all the unknown vitamins as well; whereas a blunderbus vitamin concentrate may, and probably will, exclude the undiscovered ones.

## CHAPTER VI

### PRACTICAL ASPECTS OF KNOWLEDGE OF CALORIES, PROTEINS, MINERAL ELEMENTS AND VITAMINS

*Qul*  
*Feb 1907*  
*es*

It is time to sum up the facts and evidence put forth in Chapters II to V and to show as briefly as possible how an optimal diet may be obtained. To quote Sherman: sound diet stands four-square upon Calories, proteins, "mineral" elements and vitamins. Each group is important and each member of each group is important, and in its absence the body sooner or later dies. Perhaps the importance of water should be emphasized as well. The body, as has been said above, lasts some 4 to 5 days only without water, some 50-70 days without Calories and protein, and much longer without most of the mineral elements and the vitamins.

The average man, and indeed the average dietitian, cannot carry around in the memory the mass of facts which have been adduced about the Calorie value, the percentage composition, the mineral elements and the vitamin values of the multitudinous foods which appear even in a modest diet. Nor is it at all necessary that such data should be memorized. That way a sort of madness lies and an over-weighting of some food or type of food dear to the heart of the particular dietitian. (Years ago Langdon Brown said that the likes and dislikes of a physician can be gauged by what he allows—or forbids—his dyspeptic patients to eat.) Interest in this or that vitamin or mineral element often hides an interest in this or that food. All that is necessary is to group the foods in the simple plan already laid out on p. 16.

It will be seen, from the four preceding chapters, that foods which are most important for Calories come mainly from the grocer and baker; those for protein come from the dairyman, the butcher and the fishmonger; while those which supply the mineral elements and the vitamins come from the dairyman, the greengrocer and the fishmonger. Sundry foods recur again and again on the lists. These are the foods valuable in nutrition.

For example, milk appears as a source of first-class protein, of calcium and phosphorus, of vitamin A and to a smaller extent of the vitamins riboflavine, nicotinamide, ascorbic acid and, in summer, D. It is moderately useful in supplying Calories—as good as potatoes.

Cheese and other milk products also are valuable in similar ways—cheese and butter yield many Calories too. Eggs add iron to the good qualities of milk but are a dear source of Calories. Herrings and the fat fish generally are useful for protein, calcium, phosphorus, iodine, vitamins A and D, riboflavine, and nicotinic acid. Nor are they to be despised as sources of Calories, in fact the enquiring mind is driven to assume as fact the great importance of the dairy foods and fat fish in the diet. Nor is he allowed to forget the market-garden produce—the vegetables for vitamins A and C and for iron and possibly calcium, the summer fruit for ascorbic acid, most fruits for the hypothetical vitamin P and the imported citrus fruits, also for ascorbic acid.

Perhaps the matter may best be displayed in tabular form.

1. Foods for Calories.		Dripping, frying fats, suet, butter, margarine, bacon, cheese, flour, bread, cakes, biscuits, sugar, dried fruits, jam, golden syrup, treacle, potatoes.
2. Foods for Protein.		Milk, eggs, meat, fish, cheese.
3. Foods for Mineral Elements	Calcium.	Cheese, fat fish, milk, eggs.
	Iron.	Eggs, green vegetables, liver, and cooked meat.
	Iodine.	Fish from the sea, seaweeds.
	Vitamin A.	The dairy foods, green and yellow vegetables, liver and tomatoes.
	Thiamine.	Yeast, wheatgerm, liver, kidneys, pork, bacon and ham, whole cereals, whole-meal and wheatmeal bread.
4. Foods for Vitamins	Riboflavine.	Yeast, wheatgerm, liver, skimmed milk powder, cheese, fish and milk.
	Nicotinic acid.	Yeast, fish, meat offal, wheatgerm, meat.
	Ascorbic acid.	Summer fruits, citrus fruits, green vegetables, liver, a few roots of the cabbage and tomato tribes.
	Vitamin D.	The fat fish, fish livers, summer milk and butter.

Now leaving on one side for the moment Calories and protein and turning to the mineral elements and the vitamins we can group them roughly as follows:

- (i) Dairy foods, i.e. milk, butter, cream, cheese and eggs (and fortified margarine).
- (ii) Greengroceries, i.e. "greens," carrots, swede, turnip, radish, tomatoes, summer fruit, citrus fruits.
- (iii) Sea produce, i.e. fish, particularly the fat fish, shell-fish and seaweeds.
- (iv) Whole cereals (but with these much dairy food and greens must be taken to outweigh the deleterious effect of the cereal phytates on the intake of calcium and iron).

In Great Britain the diet on the whole has been satisfactory in the past as regards Calories. Only the "submerged tenth"—far too large a proportion—have not had enough Calories. (In India, however, 30 per cent. fail to attain even sufficient Calories.) On the whole, too, the diet has been satisfactory as regards protein, though perhaps not for first-class protein. It is in the dairy foods, the greengroceries, the sea produce and, possibly, in the whole cereals that the diet has been deficient. The reason is partly cost, partly defective transport, partly lack of education and partly poverty. Poverty does not directly explain the refusal to eat whole cereals and unmilled rice, though poverty prevents people from buying milk and vegetables which are essential if whole cereals are taken to any large extent.<sup>1</sup>

These foods which we have listed, (i) to (iv) above, have received the name "*protective foods*." The term originated with McCollum who first applied it to milk and green leaves which protect rats from the deleterious effect of an exclusively cereal diet. Then in time it was extended to all foods which contain the necessary mineral elements and vitamins in any considerable amount; and the term has received the blessing of most dietitians.

It is easy to criticize it. It is unscientific and untrue. All food protects you against hunger, and death in 50 days. Water protects you against death in four days. You can carry on for months without a reasonable supply of calcium, iron, iodine, vitamins A, C and D in your diet as Marrack points out. Moreover, the term has given rise to the expression "protected" food, meaning a food which has not had its vitamins destroyed by processing or cooking. Wholemeal is sometimes absurdly described as a "protected food." It is utterly unprotected on the sides of vitamins A, C and D. Probably the best usage of the term "protective foods" is in the sense of the foods which protect the layman from making a dietetic fool of himself. The term is a good one, though unscientific, and it has a great value for propaganda purposes. It is because the diet of Great Britain, and indeed most other countries, needs improvement by the addition of just those foods that the term "protective foods" is retained. It should encourage politicians and agriculturists and the city folk to the spending of thought, time, energy and money on the correct feeding of the nation. The supplies of dairy foods, market-garden foods and fish should be at least doubled, and with the climate, soil and position of the British Isles that should easily be possible. It is a policy which would make for the health of the townsman and the economic health of the nation. The market is here at the door and the problem of getting the goods fresh to the table is one of co-operation, transport, refrigeration

<sup>1</sup> Sir Edward Mellanby has maintained that it was a wise "instinct" which kept the poor off wholemeal bread.

on the way and in the home—problems by no means insoluble.

Given a supply of fresh "protective" foods, of groceries, bread, confectionery, and meat, how should an optimal diet be constructed? There are two ways. We can start right from the beginning, making away with all the schedules of menus we have had in the past; or we can take those schedules and by criticizing them in the light of knowledge of the "protective" foods, amend and bring them up to modern dietary standards. Probably the latter will be the more popular and certainly more British way of solving the problem. Either plan followed wisely will produce much the same result. One produces a safe diet, the other makes the diet safe.

The radical plan, i.e. going to the root of things and altering thence upwards, consists in (i) getting first of all a sufficiency of the "protective" foods or, if you prefer it, the foods rich in mineral elements and vitamins, (ii) second, in supplying foods with first-class protein in them, and (iii) making up Calorie needs from the foods which are mainly used to supply Calories.

Let us take an example, easily possible if agriculture and food policy are planned to that end.

Protective foods. Dairy foods: Milk, 1 pint. Cheese, 1 oz. Butter, or margarine 1½ oz. Egg, 1 per day.  
Greengroceries: 4 oz. tomatoes and 3½ oz. green vegetables or carrots per day.  
Fish: 1 lb. of herrings per week.  
80 per cent. extraction bread: 8 oz. per day.

These work out as follows, taking average figures from the tables:

	Cal- cium. mg.	Iron. mg.	Vit. A. I.U.	Thia- mine. µg.	Ribo- flavine. µg.	Nico- tinic Acid. mg.	Ascor- bic Acid. mg.	Vit. D. I.U.
Milk: 1 pint	680	0.0	400	260	965	0.6	6	28
Cheese: 1 oz.	230	0.2	369	9	47	—	0	—
Butter: 1½ oz. <sup>1</sup>	12	0.0	1704	0	2	—	0	41
Egg: 1	30	1.5	500	75	200	—	0	22
Tomatoes:								
4 oz.	12	0.4	964	56	57	0.6	24	—
Greens: 4 oz.	46	0.7	210	50	45	0.3	15	—
Herrings:								
2½ oz.	41	0.7	64	4	65	1.9	0	192
Bread: 8 oz.	272	2.4	0	336	68	3.6	0	—
Total	1223	5.9	4211	790	1449	7.0	45	283

<sup>1</sup> It would make little difference if margarine is substituted for butter.

And, in addition to the above, the diet so far as prescribed has nearly 60 g. protein of which 38 is animal protein, 77 g. fat and 147 g. carbohydrate, and yields over 1500 Calories, i.e. on the score of protein and Calories it is sufficient for *some* women.<sup>1</sup> It is already safe for calcium, vitamin A and ascorbic acid, but is doubtful for iron, thiamine, riboflavine and nicotinic acid and possibly for vitamin D.

Very few people would be satisfied with the animal protein of such a diet and would want to add, say, 2 oz. bacon and at least 2 oz. meat a day. If these are added the diet has 73.6 g. protein, 1854 Calories, and 10 mg. iron; the thiamine has reached 1.1 mg., and riboflavine 1.8 mg. and the nicotinic acid 13 mg. So that by now, although the figures for the iron and vitamins B have not reached the levels recommended by the National Research Council of the U.S.A. the diet is deficient practically only in Calories. There is a leeway of 1200 to make up if we are aiming at 3000 and this can be done in any way which is convenient, agreeable or economic. The well-to-do will increase the fats, the not so rich, bread and potatoes. Potatoes up to 8 oz. a day might be eaten. Jams, golden syrup, honey and treacle might be used as spreads or in cakes and puddings. Sugar too would add to the Calories, though to nothing else. The middle classes would certainly take more meat and add fruits and salads. There should be no difficulty in making the diet completely satisfactory by a wise choice among the foods chosen to make up the deficit in Calories.

The other line of approach to the solution of obtaining a satisfactory diet is to take the normal diet to which the person to be fed is accustomed and to amend it by including the foods given above under the heading of protective foods.

For example, the following is a day's menus submitted to one of us for criticism from a boarding-school:

Breakfast	Porridge, bacon, half a fried tomato, bread and butter, marmalade. Tea.
Mid-morning snack	$\frac{1}{2}$ pt. milk.
Dinner	Cold roast beef, mashed potatoes, pickles, rice pudding, bread.
Tea	Brown and white bread and butter, small cake or scone. Tea.
Supper	Bread and butter, baked beans on toast, and a biscuit. Water.

We can be fairly certain that this diet will be adequate as regards Calories and first-class protein, especially if, as is fortunately common in boarding-schools, second helpings of meat are allowed and bread, butter and jam are *ad lib*. But when we scrutinize the diet for the protective foods we begin to marvel.

The dairy foods are represented by milk and butter only. The boys

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M., and McCANCE, R. A. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 294.

may be getting one pint of milk a day, but it is doubtful. It would be much sounder to supply milk to drink at breakfast and supper, or if the pupils think milk to be babyish, milk with a "dash of coffee." Cheese is completely neglected on this day, and, as a matter of fact, was neglected on nearly every other day of the week.

The market-garden foods and special fruits are also absent except for the half of a fried tomato. To amend this diet it would be well to replace the pickles of dinner with a salad of tomatoes, watercress, mustard and cress, or raw cabbage well disguised with lettuce and salad dressing, or an orange, or lemonade made with fresh lemons should be given, or some fresh or canned summer fruits.<sup>1</sup>

The remaining meals are practically devoid of protective foods except that some brown bread is provided; but there is no adequate source of vitamin D anywhere in this day's menu. Nor did much appear anywhere else in the week under consideration. Instead of the baked beans, herrings, kippers, bloaters or soft roes on toast might well appear, or a white fish dish with a sauce fortified with vitamin D in cod-liver oil (see p. 155).

Most middle-class diets which are adequate as regards Calories and first-class proteins can easily be made satisfactory in all directions by the replacement of some of the foods served by those in the four classes of protective foods listed above. All classes must be well represented. This method of obtaining a satisfactory diet involves but the simplest knowledge of dietetics and moreover avoids the one-sided fanaticism which insists on, say, potatoes boiled in their skins, the use of the water vegetables are boiled in, or the exclusive use of unmilled cereals, which, though they may improve the diet in one direction, may make it worse in others.

As a footnote to this chapter on a safe diet we should like to call attention to a large-scale experiment made upon U.S. soldiers training in arduous conditions in a cold environment. The soldiers were divided into two groups. One group, the controls, were on normal army rations plus a small supplement of ascorbic acid (24 mg. per day). The other group were heavily supplemented with thiamine 10 mg., riboflavine 10 mg., nicotinic acid 100 mg., calcium pantothenate 80 mg., pyridoxin 40 mg., folic acid 2.0 mg., ascorbic acid 300 mg. and cyanocobalamine 4  $\mu$ g. all four times a day (!). This positive wallowing in vitamins made no difference to any capacity: forced marches, Harvard step test, physical fitness test, dynamometer test. The only difference observable was that the rectal temperature fell less in the supplemented group on exposure to cold, than in the controls!

<sup>1</sup> It is amazing how infrequently fruit appears in the diet of people in Britain. Of course, fruit is dear and scarce. But it is conceivable that school gardens, at any rate, could grow bush fruits. The dietitian of an institution should have the chief say in what should be produced in the garden.

## CHAPTER VII

### THE PROCESSING AND STORAGE OF FOODS

One of the man's greatest difficulties in preserving himself alive on this planet has been the alternation of glut and famine due in early history to the flux of the seasons and the uncertainty of the weather, and now due, in addition, to the economic and political systems under which he subsists. Man's endeavour has been to use the surplus of the glut to provide food in time of famine. The storage of food is the beginning of capitalism, and the first large-scale storage of food recorded, in Egypt under the foresight of Joseph, a Jew, the beginning of state capitalism. Man wants to make food keep.

Now there are some foods which, with a little care, can be made to keep for years. These are the cereals, and it is not astonishing that civilization has grown up round the centres of cereal production, for this and for other reasons to be developed later in this book. Cereals stored in the dry and protected from the inroads of insects and rodents will keep almost indefinitely. The plant has used "dehydration" to preserve its means of propagation from one season to the next. Probably, therefore, cereals were the first things to be stored from one year to the next. Other seeds, such as the pulses, also can be kept almost indefinitely.

Protein-containing foods, especially the prized meat, poultry and fish, will not keep. They form an excellent nutrient medium for the growth of microbes, mainly the putrefying ones. A dead animal soon rots and develops unpleasant odours, and unless one is brought up to eat decomposed meat, game, eggs and fish, it becomes "unfit for consumption."<sup>1</sup> Such decomposition is aided by the blow-fly, the maggots of which render meat protein soluble. Putrefaction depends upon the presence of digestible protein and moisture. If the moisture content is reduced considerably these protein foods can be kept against a rainy day. Meat and fish have been dried in the past by native races and are still being dried to make them keep. Pemmican of the Red Indians and Charque of South America and the dried fish of the Eskimo of the Mackenzie River delta are examples. And to-day this process of dehydration (really, of course, drying) is being used on a large scale

<sup>1</sup> We eat game and cheese in a state of putrefaction; the Eskimos eat decomposed meat; the Chinese eat *pidang*, i.e. duck's eggs which have developed the odour of decay. No harm results.

to supply vegetables out of season. The one naturally occurring high protein food (pulse) keeps very well because of its low content of water.

The moisture of fruits and vegetables allows moulds to ruin their palatability. For many years this has been obviated by drying the fruit and there is an extensive trade in dried grapes (muscatels, raisins, sultanas and currants), dried apples and pears, dried figs, dried apricots and peaches and plums both in war-time and in peace. Some of these owe their keeping qualities in part to their high content of sugar. Dried vegetables have been used in every war within the last 100 years, but with ill results, because of the destruction of ascorbic acid in the methods of drying used. In the war of 1939-45 the difficulties of drying vegetables have been overcome, their ascorbic acid value has been preserved and they can be reduced in weight to one-twentieth or less and be transported to the desert or the Arctic Circle, and when rehydrated and cooked are as good as, or possibly better than, vegetables from the home market. These dried vegetables are still being manufactured, and in view of their advantages to the restaurateur, the trade in them will expand.

Dehydration of fish and meat has made such strides that it is likely that much of the fish cakes and mince we eat in restaurants in the future will be made from dehydrated foods. The problem of dehydrating joints and large pieces of meat has not been solved, if it ever will be, so that no one need suspect, as yet, that a chop or a steak, or a cut from the joint has come from a dehydrated source.

Most of us became familiar with dried milk and dried eggs during the war 1939-45, but dried milk is said to have been made by the Tartars in the thirteenth century,<sup>1</sup> and it has been used in infant feeding since 1906.<sup>2</sup> Dried eggs, though dating from the first World War, became a standby in the war of 1939-45, and though their taste and flavour are not equal to that of "shell" eggs, they were an exceedingly welcome addition to the war-time commissariat. They represent an enormous saving in carriage.

If and when China becomes a settled and peaceful and industrialized country it will be a chief source of dried eggs. During the Second World War the eggs were produced and dried in Canada and the United States. Before this war large quantities of eggs, shelled and frozen, were imported from China into this country for use in the confectionery and margarine trades. There was considerable outcry from the poultry industry but it seemed hardly justifiable.

Drying, then, is a means of making foods keep, though not indefinitely. The housewife uses this fact when she turns this cold roast joint over on its dish every twenty-four hours. If left moist side down

<sup>1</sup> APPLETON. (1942), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, **1**, 114.

<sup>2</sup> COUTTS. (1918), *Loc. Gov. Board Rep.*, **116**, 1.

the putrefactive microbes can soon render the moisture (i.e. gravy) putrid and foul smelling. But if the moist side in contact with the dish is turned uppermost, it dries and the microbes cannot thrive.

One type of drying is to produce such a concentration of sugar in the food to be preserved that microbes cannot grow. In jam-making the final sugar content is raised to over 60 per cent., in which strength of solution microbes cannot grow. The honey bee uses a similar technique, though it is said also to add a little formic acid as a preservative. In the making of glacé and crystallized fruit the cell juices are replaced by stronger and stronger solutions of sugar until a strength is reached in which no microbe can grow. Sweetened condensed milk owes its keeping power partly to the condensation, partly to the concentration of sugar and partly to the bacteriological cleanliness used in its preparation.

The *salting* and *smoking* of meat, particularly pork, has been practised for more than 500 years. The meat keeps because the outside layers have such a high concentration of salt that invasion from outside is impossible. The microbes cannot live in the strength of salt solution found in the outer layers of the meat. The inside of the meat starts sterile, is protected in the early stages of pickling by its acidity and in the later stages by the salt in the outer layers. Potassium nitrate—saltpetre—also used in curing bacon and ham—is an antiseptic. Further, smoking, when used, partly owes its effect to antiseptics in the smoke and partly to the effect of still further drying the meat. (The salt will have extracted some water already.) It should be realized that the inside of a ham can easily undergo putrefactive changes if cut and exposed to the air. There is not enough salt there to plasmolyse microbes. It normally remains sound because it is protected by layers of concentrated salt on the outside, though infection may travel along the bone or along the big blood vessels near the bone.

Micro-organisms are the main, though not the only, cause of spoiling of foods, but some strains of the acid-producing microbes can be used actually to preserve food or at least to stave off putrefaction. By souring milk, particularly if alcohol is formed at the same time, the milk can be made to last longer than normal. Sauerkraut is cabbage preserved by means of acid-producing bacteria and is popular as an edible both in Germany and in the German-settled parts of the United States. Silage is cattle fodder treated in a similar way. Green Indian corn stalks and other fodder plants can be preserved throughout the winter as fodder for cattle and retain much more of the nutritive value than if first dried.

Another way of making food "keep" is to *fractionate* it, i.e. keep one fraction and throw away the rest. Butter is the fat of milk, but the caseinogen and the lactose of the milk from which the butter originated must either be used at once, or dried. It was, until recently, thrown

away, or at the best used as pig food. The "Household milk" of the War of 1939-45 was the skimmed milk arising from the manufacture of butter on the North American continent. Cheese is really fractionated milk. The fat and the caseinogen, plus the calcium of the milk, are preserved, and the lactose and lactalbumin largely wasted. (Dried whey, the residue of the milk after the casein has been produced, is a valuable food.) Fractionating cereals also improves their keeping qualities but for a different reason. The oil of the cereal germ readily goes rancid in air, and the mixed proteins of wholemeal support insect life better than those of white flour. White flour does not readily develop an "off" flavour whereas wholemeal does. Whole wheat keeps better than wholemeal, and white flour nearly as well as whole wheat. This fact probably explains the determined opposition of the milling and baking industry to the production of war-time flour and bread.

Antiseptics, i.e. substances inimical to microbic life, have been in the past and are still being used to preserve food. Hops are added to the wort in beer making because they contain an antiseptic. The beer keeps better. The commonest artificial antiseptics are benzoic acid and benzoates, boric acid and sulphites. Benzoic acid is used in the fruit juice industry, boric acid in cream and sulphite in sausages and fresh fruit. Benzoates are permitted in pickles and non alcoholic beverages but are being supplanted by sulphur-dioxide. Before the war of 1939-45 the jam-makers of this country imported much fruit, especially black currants, from the Continent preserved with sulphite and the Camden solution used in bottling fruit is a source of sulphur dioxide. The function of the antiseptic is to poison life and there is always the possibility that it may upset human life, so the tendency is to move away from antisepsis towards asepsis in the food industry as in surgery.

If we can put up a susceptible food in a container free from microbes it will remain unchanged almost indefinitely. This is the principle behind the *canning and bottling* industry which has grown to such an immense size during this century. On the commercial scale it is quite impossible to prevent some microbes (bacteria or fungi) from coming into contact with the meat, fish, fruit or vegetables to be preserved before they go into the container—in fact this would be possible for meat, only in the most up-to-date operating theatre—but those which obtain entrance are killed by boiling or heating under pressure, and the vessel sealed before any more live microbes can make their entrance. With fruit and vegetables it is not necessary to raise the temperature much above the boiling point of water but with fish and meat the temperature surrounding the container has to be raised to  $125^{\circ}\text{C}$ . partly to allow the heat to penetrate to the centre and partly because the hydrogen ion concentration of meat and processed fish is favourable to the growth of putrefactive microbes while that of fruits and

vegetables is not. More care to destroy all microbes is necessary with meat than with fruit and vegetables.

It should be mentioned that the greatest care has to be taken of fruit, vegetables, meat and fish before they are canned. Nothing but the best and cleanest are good enough, and the time between harvesting or slaughter and inclusion in a container has to be the shortest possible. Fruits and vegetables are canned within 24 hours of picking or pulling and often preserve more of their ascorbic acid than similar goods sold "fresh" on the open market. Cleanliness is at a premium in a cannery for the fewer microbes which get into the cans before sterilizing the better. That they do get in at times is shown by the "blown" cans, and the occasional occurrence of food poisoning due to canned goods. In spite of these occurrences, which are rare, the practice of canning foods has come to stay. It is very valuable in taking advantage of a glut, in transporting foods from one part of the world where they are cheaply and easily produced to another where they are produced with difficulty, if at all, and in increasing the range of food-stuffs available.

There is still a strong prejudice against canned goods though it has but little basis in dietetics. There is small if any damage done to the nutritive values of the protein, fat and carbohydrate; thiamine, it is true, is probably destroyed and there is loss of ascorbic acid. None the less, it is true that canned fruits and vegetables often contain more ascorbic acid than similar fruits and vegetables, bought in the open market and cooked in the home. The objections to canning are mainly æsthetic and moral. Often canning changes the flavour of goods for the worse though there are people who prefer canned pineapples and grapefruit to fresh; and some, canned ox-tongue to fresh, and connoisseurs maintain that the longer sardines remain in their cans the better. Generally speaking, the flavour of canned goods does not approach that of fresh foods. Moreover, there is the indictment on moral grounds. It is thought immoral of the working classes to live on canned foods. As a matter of fact, the big hotels are the greatest users of canned goods—they are so convenient and standardized in appearance. It is much easier to warm and open a can of nicely graded and dyed green peas than to shell and cook the product of a city market. Meanwhile, it must be admitted that it is dietetically advantageous to be able in winter to open cans of black currants, loganberries, spinach and new potatoes in this country, or in the northern parts of the United States or Canada, where the snow is on the ground for 5 months of the year, and to have summer fruits and vegetables available in winter and early spring. With home-cured foods there is a risk of botulism for *clostridium botulinus* is a common soil microbe in the U.S.A., Great Britain, South Africa and Australia.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See *Journ. Sci. of Food and Agri.* (1952), 3, 86.

Fruit juices and, for that matter, meat juices, can be rendered sterile by filtration through Chamberland filters, i.e. unglazed porous pottery filters with holes so minute that they hold back the microbes. This method is used on an increasing scale in the United States, but it is not suitable for all fruit juices, for it holds up at the same time some of the flavour.

Partial heat sterilization, or *pasteurization*, is used with milk and fruit juices. Pasteurization consists in raising the temperature of the fluid to be pasteurized to a height varying for each food and keeping it there for a definite time. The length of time varies with the temperature. Thus, milk has to be held at  $145^{\circ}\text{F}$ . no less than 30 minutes—the so-called holder process—whereas if it is raised to  $161^{\circ}\text{F}$ . the time necessary falls to as little as 15 seconds. When the time is so brief the process is termed flash pasteurization. Until the War of 1939–45 the holder process was the one favoured in this country, but flash pasteurization, despite its difficulty in control, has been permitted since 1941.

The function of pasteurization is (i) to kill pathogenic germs such as those of tuberculosis, undulant fever, typhoid, etc., and (ii) to destroy most of the lactic-acid-producing microbes.<sup>1</sup> This enables the milk to keep much longer—properly pasteurized milk made under laboratory conditions will keep a month, and commercially pasteurized milk will last five or six days in summer before going sour. Such milk is not sterilized—there may be heat-resisting spores in it, which will later germinate and invariably a few lactic-acid producers escape destruction. Pasteurization kills the more abundant and non-spore-forming microbes and so delays souring.<sup>2</sup> Even T.T. milk contains microbes and should be pasteurized. Its great advantage is that it keeps good longer than dirty milk.

*Cold* delays microbic activity; milk which would keep two or three days in cold weather will last hardly a day in warm; frozen meat will keep indefinitely. There are stories of hunters in the Arctic Circle coming across frozen mammoths which must have gone into cold storage æons ago, the meat of which, when thawed out, was perfectly edible. Low temperature does not destroy microbes, it merely puts them in a state of suspended animation; and in the household refrigerator they continue to live but reproduce themselves much more slowly. For example, as quoted in the *Farmers' Bulletin* No. 1705 of the U.S. Department of Agriculture (1933), a high quality raw milk which started with 31,000 microbes per cubic centimetre had increased these by four times only after 24 hours in a cool chamber at  $50^{\circ}\text{F}$ ., whereas

<sup>1</sup> Liquid eggs can be pasteurised at  $142^{\circ}\text{F}$ . with a 98 per cent. kill of microbes. *Food Manuf.* (1950), 25, 283.

<sup>2</sup> The advantage to the producer, the distributor and the consumer of the delaying of the souring of milk in a highly urbanized civilization is obvious. This leaves out of account its advantage to health, for which see under milk.

the same milk left for  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours at  $75^{\circ}\text{F}$ . before its 24 hours in the cooler had  $10\frac{1}{2}$  times as many microbes. If the refrigerator had been working at  $32^{\circ}\text{F}$ . the increase would have been much less—probably the numbers would not have doubled in 24 hours.<sup>1</sup>

Cold storage then has been used in ever-increasing degree in the last 50 years. One of the difficulties encountered in preparing for feeding the people of Great Britain during the German air-raids was that the cold storage plants were naturally enough in our dock areas and so exposed to attack. Beef is imported from the Argentine "chilled," i.e. not actually frozen, whereas mutton can be imported from New Zealand to this country frozen. Frozen mutton when thawed retains its structure practically unchanged, but beef, if frozen, loses a large amount of "drip," i.e. muscle cell fluids or meat juice, when thawed. The length of time which chilling delays putrefactive decomposition by microbes in beef is not much more than that taken between the Argentine and our western ports, and that sets a limit to the distance from which beef was imported till gas storage was discovered.

Fish can be frozen at much lower temperatures than meat with advantage and the ideal is that factory ships, supplied with machinery for rapid and low-temperature freezing, should accompany the fishing fleets. Such frozen fish if later stored at 10 degrees below freezing may remain good and untainted for eight months, and "acceptable" after four years!

The trouble has always been, in the fish supply in this country, that much of the fish when landed was "off," and when transported inland was by no means fresh. Refrigeration both on fishing fleets and on the railway could render the supply of fresh fish in the remotest parts of Great Britain.—no part is more than 70 miles from the sea—an easy matter. The advantage of such a supply is obvious from the sections above on protein and nicotinic acid.

*Deep freezing* is also advantageous with fruit and vegetables. It is common to-day to see in our grocery stores deep freeze cabinets displaying out-of-season fruits and vegetables which have all the appearance and much of the flavour, texture and ascorbic acid content of the fresh comestible.

*Gas Storage.* Many foods, e.g. fruits and vegetables, are living entities and carry on a slow metabolism during storage. Others have substances in a state of complicated equilibrium which is dynamic and not static. That is, the equilibrium slowly moves, sometimes towards improvement of flavour (wines and cheeses are examples) and sometimes in the opposite direction (e.g. meat). Sometimes the foods contain oxidizable substances, usually fats and fatty acids, and the oxidation

<sup>1</sup> DAVIS. (1944), *Food Manufacture*, 19, 423. states that laboratory pasteurized milk will keep 32 days at  $45^{\circ}\text{F}$ . and up to 63 days at  $34^{\circ}\text{F}$ .

of these produces "off" flavours. It has been discovered that carbon dioxide in varying percentages will slow still further metabolism in fruits, i.e. will inhibit ripening processes; will check the development of unpleasant flavours and stop oxidation. Nitrogen could be used for the latter purpose but because carbon dioxide can be supplied in solid form cheaply it is the more convenient 'gas' in which to store food. Gas storage is still in its infancy, but it has already solved the problem of carrying meat, particularly beef, from the Antipodes to Europe.

Eggs present peculiar problems in cold storage. The egg within its shell is by no means completely sterile and the washing of eggs seems to remove some barrier against invasion by microbes from outside. Eggs in cold storage develop a storage flavour and sometimes serve as a medium for "musty odour" producing microbes. This ruins them as food. Moreover, the firm white of the egg becomes runny and so enables one to distinguish a stored from a new-laid egg. A fried cold-storage egg looks nowhere near as appetizing as a fried new-laid egg. Many of these troubles have been obviated by "gas" storage in combination with cold storage. The "gas" is usually carbon dioxide, though it may be nitrogen. Percentages ranging from 5 to 100 can be used according to the food to be preserved. Higher concentrations are best for eggs but lower percentages are used with meat and fruit (see below).

Gas storage has aided in the preservation in transport of foreign fruits to this country. Quite a low percentage of carbon dioxide is all that is necessary. The fruit is picked unripe and ripens on its journey to this country and in storage. The rate of ripening has to be modified according to the distance to be travelled and the time when the fruit is put upon the market. Cold delays ripening. But the fruit is a living, breathing organism and some of the products of metabolism, if not removed, speed the ripening. Carbon dioxide delays it. So in ideal conditions there should be a circulation of air around the fruit and its carbon dioxide content is best kept at 5 per cent. Gas storage of apples has proved of great value and it may in future be possible to pick bananas much more nearly ripe and so preserve some of the qualities of a banana picked ripe from the tree.

Gas storage, too, has solved the problem of preventing the development of "off" flavours in dehydrated foods, particularly those which have to pass through, or be stored in, tropical climates. Originally with dried milk coming from New Zealand, a vacuum was used to prevent the development of "off" flavours, which probably are due to the fats becoming rancid. Dehydrated meat, fish and eggs retain their qualities for much longer if put up in metal containers filled with nitrogen or carbon dioxide. Probably the same method could be used to prevent oxidation of the essential oils of roast coffee beans, tea and cocoa nibs.

**Advantages and Disadvantages of Food Processing.** Apart from the

apathy usual in the public about anything that matters, there are two attitudes of mind adopted towards modern food manufacture: out-and-out condemnation and out-and-out approval. The instinct of one brought up in the country on home-killed and cured bacon, on home-grown vegetables and fruit, on milk, butter, cheese, eggs and poultry from the home farm, and meat killed by the village butcher, is to raise his hands in horror at modern methods of food production, transport, and processing. It must be confessed that in the past—and indeed the present—the sophistication of some food, e.g. the tinting of canned peas with aniline dyes, the bleaching of flour by oxides of nitrogen, chlorine-dioxide and similar reagents, the faking of wines and beers and jams, the use of synthetic flavourings (e.g. benzaldehyde for almonds) and the dyeing of kippers, leaves a nasty flavour in the mouth, metaphorically and actually. Nor can the cynical or ignorant attitude of commercial firms in the past, and even during the War of 1939–45, be defended. Malt is expensive, glucose made by the action of sulphuric acid on potato starch is cheap. It was therefore used in the wort from which beer was made, and poisoned beer addicts within a large radius from the brewery forty years or so ago because the sulphuric acid was contaminated with arsenic. Public analysts during the Second World War were kept busy analysing catchpenny egg, milk, lemon and other fruit “substitutes,” “guaranteed to contain all the food values” of the foods for which they were supposed to be substitutes, showing their claims to be lies and reporting them to the Health Authorities. They still are kept busy.<sup>1</sup>

The other attitude is to welcome the change because of the much greater variety of foods which can be supplied to our highly urbanized civilization. But the modern methods of processing foods demand scientific control—chemical, biochemical and bacteriological control—at all stages. Until recently the scientist has been but grudgingly admitted into industry and then more often as a subordinate than as a director. In the food industry the need for competent biologists, as well as chemists, is beginning to be recognized. The Food Group of the Society of Chemical Industry has done and is doing much to demonstrate the need for biological control in food manufacture, and a journal of the name *Food Manufacture* which reached its majority in 1946 is a welcome evidence of the advance that control is making.<sup>2</sup> There are progressive firms in which the biochemist holds a dominating position.

It must be recognized that the processing of food is inevitable in an urbanized civilization. If the standard of living is to be raised the

<sup>1</sup> For example, methyl cellulose is sold for making meringues which surely should contain nothing but egg-white, sugar and flavouring. *The Times* (1953), Jan. 7.

<sup>2</sup> None the less, *Sugar in the Air*, a novel by E. C. Large, is not a wild exaggeration.

country must be industrialized, and industrialization (though it may not be so in the distant future) entails urbanization. The town folk must be catered for with food preserved in some degree or other. Consequently it is our task to see that it is conducted as well as may be, and we have to admit, if we look at the matter impartially, that it has given great advantages. For example, with milk it has not only raised the keeping quality, but it has raised the standard of milk production. The milk distributors are as much in favour of clean milk as the most fanatical medical officer of health. The same is true of the canning of meat, fruit and vegetables. The best only are good enough. And the time will come when manufacturers will cease to put up a concoction of sugar, citric or tartaric acid, a coal tar dye, and synthetic flavouring and call it a fruit juice.

The endeavour to produce a really white flour, so decried by food reformers, has not been without its benefits. Apart from the odd coins, trouser buttons and nuts from the combine harvester which have to be removed from the grain before it goes through the rollers in the flour mill, there is a not-inconsiderable quantity of other seeds, some of them even poisonous, which have to be removed, and are removed, by ingenious machinery. Presumably our Norman ancestors ate them in their bread, even in their white bread. Processing, on the whole, makes for cleanliness—even bacteriological cleanliness—and quality.

What are the drawbacks of processing? There can be little or none in the proteins, fats and carbohydrates of the foods. It is difficult to believe that the mineral elements are in any way lost.<sup>1</sup> It is only in the realm of the vitamins that damage occurs. Generally speaking, there is little loss of vitamins A and D in processing, though it has been reported that canned herrings have less of both than the fresh product. Ascorbic acid certainly is decreased in the canning of fruit and vegetables, though, as said above, there is often more ascorbic acid in these than in the same food bought on the open market and cooked at home. Probably nicotinic acid and riboflavine withstand processing, but thiamine disappears either by leaching out, destruction by sulphite or by high temperature in processes such as dehydration and canning. As, however, goods so canned or dehydrated rarely contain much thiamine, this loss is not serious. It is more serious with the cereals. Normally the production of a white flour from wheat reduces the thiamine from about 1 I.U. per gramme to  $\frac{1}{4}$ , though it should be possible in future by including the scutellum with the endosperm or by breeding special wheats to raise that amount. It is said that various processes of producing breakfast cereals destroy the thiamine—e.g. the "puffing" of wheat and rice—and it is difficult to see how some breakfast cereals can retain any of that vitamin, though so far as we

<sup>1</sup> But see the section on cereals for an advantageous loss of mineral elements.

know actual biological experiments are lacking.<sup>1</sup> Processing, then, is inevitable; it has its advantages and disadvantages; the former have raised the standard of food here and elsewhere, the latter can, with ordinary intelligence, be obviated.

<sup>1</sup> 100 grammes puffed, shredded and flaked wheat have 5, 67 and 13 I.U. thiamine.

## CHAPTER VIII

### THE COOKING OF FOODS<sup>1</sup>

*For*

Many foods in their natural state are quite unfit for human consumption, e.g. cereals, pulses, cassava, and have to be "processed" before eating. A home "process" is that of cooking and it has been practised from time immemorial. It is possible that cooking was first applied to cereals, though there is plenty of evidence that prehistoric man had learnt the value of cooking his principal food, viz. meat.

The object of cooking food is twofold: (i) *Æsthetic*—to improve its appearance and to develop in it new flavours. Even animals prefer their food cooked. (ii) *Hygienic*—to sterilize it, to render it more digestible and to evoke, during its consumption, greater flow of gastric juice.

Cooking meat, fish and milk, foods with a considerable amount of protein or fermentable carbohydrate, puts off the period when they will "go bad," by destroying the microbes which normally bring that about. (A wise cook brings the contents of her stock-pot to the boil once every twenty-four hours.) Further, cooking destroys many dangerous parasites which may lurk in ill-inspected meat.<sup>2</sup> It also destroys the toxins manufactured by *bacillus botulinus* but not, unfortunately, those made by the salmonella and staphylococci groups of microbes.

Cooking certainly increases the digestibility of vegetable foods and is said to improve that of meat, possibly by destroying the antiferments in it and by loosening the fibres. Even though the coagulation of the proteins of meat may render them less digestible *in vitro*, the increased attractiveness of well-cooked food may render it indirectly more capable of digestion by calling forth a more profuse flow of psychical gastric juice.

<sup>1</sup> See on this subject B. LOWE, *Experimental Cookery* (London, Chapman & Hall, 1932); McCANCE and SHIPP, "The Chemistry of Flesh Foods and their Losses on Cooking," *Med. Res. Council Rep.*, No. 187, 1933; and McCANCE, WIDDOWSON, and SHACKLETON, *Med. Res. Council Rep.*, No. 213, 1936.

<sup>2</sup> Animal parasites found in meat are not capable of withstanding a temperature of 70° C. (158° F.). All ordinary forms of cooking will therefore render meat free from this source of infection. An outbreak of trichiniasis in the Birmingham area of this country in 1941 was due (i) to insufficient inspection of the pork used, and (ii) to the habit of the people in this part of the world to eating some of the sausage meat *raw* and not cooking the rest properly.

The application of heat in some form or another being the essential part of all ordinary processes of cooking, it is important to have clear ideas as to the *effect of heat upon the differing chemical constituents of food*.

The effect of heat on many *proteins* is to coagulate them. A temperature of  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ . is not essential to bring about this change, for coagulable proteins, both animal and vegetable, begin to coagulate if their temperature is raised to  $60^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $140^{\circ}\text{F}$ .). Above that the protein contracts or shrinks in most animal foods, though eggs and fish roes are exceptions. Proteins in the presence of reducing sugars are "denatured" and the compound of sugar and protein is indigestible.<sup>1</sup>

Of the *carbohydrates* of the food, starch is the most affected by heat. Dry heat converts starch into a soluble form, and ultimately into dextrin. This change occurs to a limited extent in the crust of bread, and also in the making of toast and biscuits. Moist heat causes the starch grains to swell, and ultimately to rupture their envelopes, and the starch is then said to be *gelatinized*. That this change also takes place considerably below the boiling-point of water is known to the laundress or the cook. If boiling water be poured on to cold "blended" flour, starch or cereal, it gelatinizes, although the temperature of the mixture can never be as high as  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $212^{\circ}\text{F}$ .). Oat starch is said to gelatinize at  $85^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $185^{\circ}\text{F}$ .), and potato starch at so low a temperature as  $65^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $149^{\circ}\text{F}$ .).

Here again one sees that in the case of some starchy foods the change which it is the object of cooking to effect can be brought about at a comparatively low temperature.

The main effect of heat upon *cane sugar* in acid solution, as in stewed fruits and jams, is hydrolysis. The cane sugar is "inverted" to glucose and fructose. The partial conversion of sugar into caramel is one of the means by which flavour is developed in food by cooking.

The *fats* of food are not so much affected by heat as the proteins and carbohydrates. At high temperatures, however, as when one of the dry methods of cooking is employed, some at least of the fat may perhaps undergo a partial decomposition, with the liberation of free fatty acid and acrolein. The latter irritates the mucous membrane. Fat which has been heated and allowed to cool again is often found to have become more granular than it was before. This change is probably due to the driving off of water, and it tends to render the fat more brittle, and consequently more digestible. The change is well exhibited in the case of dripping, and also in fried bacon.

With these preliminary considerations we may proceed to the study of the effects of cooking upon animal and vegetable foods respectively.

<sup>1</sup> *Food Manuf.* (1954), 29, 173.

## COOKING OF MEAT

The ideal to be aimed at in cooking meat is to decompose its red colouring matter (hæmoglobin), so as to remove its raw appearance, and to do this without overcoagulating the proteins of the meat or removing from it its flavouring ingredients (extractives).

We may glance very briefly at the means by which this ideal is to be attained in the ordinary methods of cooking.

**Boiling.** It is unfortunate that the term "boiling" should be applied at all to any method of cooking meat, for it implies that the subjection of the meat to the temperature of boiling water ( $212^{\circ}$  F.) is an essential of the process. But this, for the reasons indicated above, is a mistake. The red colouring matter of the meat is decomposed and rendered brown at a temperature considerably below that of boiling water, and by raising things to the boiling-point one runs the risk of hardening the meat by overcoagulation of its proteins.

That the boiling-point is not essential for the complete coagulation of the proteins can be most easily proved in the case of an egg. If two eggs are taken, and one kept in water at a temperature of  $80^{\circ}$  C. ( $175^{\circ}$  F.) for ten or fifteen minutes, and the other for an equal length of time in boiling water, it will be found at the end of the experiment that the contents of both are solid throughout, but that in the case of the former they consist of a tender jelly, whereas in the boiled egg they are dense and almost leathery. Several so-called egg-boilers, indeed, have been introduced which work upon the principle of cooking the egg at a temperature considerably below the boiling-point of water.

Now, what is true of an egg holds good also for meat, and accordingly the first principle to be observed in the "boiling" of meat is to see that the temperature of the water does not rise much above that which is required for the coagulation of proteins. It is only by giving heed to this that one can achieve the first result desired—the abolition of the raw colour of the meat with avoidance of overhardening.

The second object to be aimed at, that of retaining all the flavouring constituents of the meat, also demands some care. The flavour of meat is due to its extractives and salts, and both of these are readily dissolved by water. If the water in which the meat has been cooked is to be consumed in the form of soup, the partial removal of some of these flavouring ingredients is not of much importance; but if the meat alone is to be eaten, precautions must be taken to prevent their being dissolved out.

One way of doing this is to use as *small a quantity* of water as possible; for the larger the proportion of water to meat, the greater will be the amount of soluble substances removed. The quantity of water, therefore, should be just sufficient to cover the meat, and no more.

A belief popular in cookery books is that the exposure of meat for a few minutes to the temperature of boiling water creates a pellicle of coagulated protein on the outside impermeable to the soluble constituents within. Such a procedure, with a later lowering of the temperature, has been advocated in order (i) to conserve these constituents, (ii) to continue the coagulation of the proteins. An investigation of the premises of this theory shows them to have no foundation in fact.<sup>1</sup>

A summary of the effects of cooking meat in water, taken from McCance and Shipp's work, is here given:

When fully cooked, beef is found to lose the same amount of weight, water and salts, whether cooking is begun in hot or cold water.

The application of heat over 60°C. (140°F.) to flesh foods causes a shrinkage of their proteins and the expression of juice. When the meat is heated in water there is in addition a minor loss of salts due to diffusion into the surrounding water.

The rate of shrinkage is accelerated by raising the temperature, but the final result is but little different whether cooking is brought about by long exposure to a lower temperature or short exposure to a higher temperature, though it is slightly increased if the higher temperature is used.

Shrinkage is less rapid and less in amount in absolutely fresh killed than in "conditioned" meat. This is probably not due to the formation of lactic acid in rigor mortis.

The more rapidly the shrinkage occurs the less important becomes the loss due to diffusion into the surrounding water. The smaller the pieces cooked the greater is the loss due to diffusion. With small portions of meat the salt losses are greater when the meat is boiled than when steamed, but with larger portions it makes little difference whether they are cooked in water or in steam.

In general if boiling is used to cook meat it makes little difference to the final losses whether the meat is boiled quickly, slowly, or if the temperature is lowered soon after the beginning of cooking, *so long as the meat is cooked to the same degree*. Cooking at a higher temperature achieves the result aimed at more quickly, but it is easier to over-shoot the mark at high temperatures than at lower but adequate temperatures.

**Roasting.** In the process of roasting, the heat is conveyed to the meat by direct radiation, instead of through the medium of water. The effect of roasting upon meat is similar to that of boiling; shrinkage occurs, causing an expression of the juices of the meat. These, however, are evaporated to dryness on the surface of the joint, and are therefore

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE and SHIPP. (1933). *Med. Res. Council Report*, No. 187. These authors point out that earlier research work has given little support to the pellicle theory since it was propounded by Liebig. None the less, it has flourished even in "scientific" articles upon cookery.

not lost as they are in boiling, so that roasting, baking and grilling are conservative methods of cooking. The greater heat at the surface of the joint brings about a change in the protein expressed and coagulated thereon with the production of more sapid substances, and it is to these and the greater concentration of the salts that the outside cuts owe their characteristic flavour. The loss of weight in roasting is nearly all due to evaporation, but a loss of salts can be increased by reducing evaporation, as, for instance, by basting.

The puffiness of a well-cooked chop or steak by grill is to be explained by the greater shrinkage of the outside and more "overdone" layers as compared with those inside.

**Baking** acts in precisely the same way as roasting, the heat in that case being applied all round the meat at once, instead of only to one side at a time. Connoisseurs prefer roast meat to baked meats.

**Stewing** is in many respects the ideal method of cooking meat. If properly performed, it coagulates without overhardening the proteins, while, owing to the fact that the juice is eaten along with the meat, none of the flavouring ingredients is lost. At the same time, the prolonged action of heat and moisture converts most of the connective tissue into gelatin, so that the fibres readily fall apart and the meat becomes very tender. Here, again, the secret of success consists in avoiding too high temperatures. It is not sufficient to place the pan near the edge of the hotplate, and allow it to "simmer" instead of "boil." The use of a thermometer will show that the temperature of "simmering" and "boiling" water is really the same, i.e.  $212^{\circ}\text{F.}$ , the only difference being that in the former case the heat is reaching the water more rapidly and more of it is wasted. In proper stewing the temperature should not be allowed to rise above  $82^{\circ}\text{C.}$  ( $180^{\circ}\text{F.}$ ).

## COOKING OF FISH

The flavouring ingredients of fish are even more easily dissolved out of water than those of meat; and as fish has less flavour to start with, any loss is the more carefully to be avoided. For this reason boiling, unless very carefully performed on the lines above laid down, is not a suitable method of cooking fish. The experiments of McCance and Shipp show that boiling may result in a loss of 40 per cent. of the salts. It might be expected that cooking by steam would be preferable, and this is certainly true of small pieces of fish.

**Frying** is a method of cooking specially applicable to some forms of fish, and demands a special word of description, especially as the process is so often misunderstood.

The essence of frying consists in the sudden exposure of the object to be cooked to a very high temperature. This leads to such rapid

evaporation from the surface that the loss of salts and nitrogenous matter is reduced to a minimum. Such method of cooking naturally adds considerably to the fat content of the final product. For example, steamed whiting has 0.9 per cent. of fat; whiting with batter and crumbs has 10.3 (McCance and Shipp).

In order to attain this very high temperature, some form of fat must be used as a medium. Olive oil or good cottonseed-oil are best. The oil should be heated in a deep pan almost to its boiling-point (the actual temperature is about  $180^{\circ}$  to  $200^{\circ}$  C.:  $356^{\circ}$  to  $392^{\circ}$  F.); and when this temperature has been reached the object to be fried should be lowered gently into the pan, and left for two or three minutes. The bubbling which ensues is due to the conversion of the moisture on the surface of the object into steam. When this has ceased the cooking will be complete, and the object should be lifted out and the excess of oil allowed to drain off.

It will be observed that this process differs entirely from the so-called "frying" usually practised in this country, in which the fat employed is regarded merely as a means of preventing the object from adhering to the surface of the shallow pan, in which a sort of roasting is really accomplished.

### COOKING OF VEGETABLE FOODS

In the cooking of vegetable foods the objects to be achieved are different from those which one seeks to accomplish with animal foods. Cell-wall substances and raw starch are almost incapable of digestion by man, and hence the softening and rupture of the cellulose framework of a vegetable food and the gelatinization of its starch grains are the chief ends which it is the purpose of cooking to bring about.

Cell-wall substances can be softened, and, indeed, partly converted into sugar, by the action of acids, aided by heat. Nature uses ferments. In its unripe state a pear or other fruit is hard and "woody" from the presence of a cell-wall framework. In process of ripening the acids in the fruit, aided by the heat of the sun and ferments, effect a softening of this framework, with partial or complete solution of the cellulose fibres, the product being the sweet and soft ripe fruit.

This method is sometimes unconsciously imitated by man. The process of preparing *ensilage* is an example of it. Here, under the influence of fermentative bacteria, acids are produced in grass which, by the aid of moisture and heat, act upon the cellulose, and effect a partial conversion of it into sugar. In Germany a very similar process is employed in the conversion of cabbages into *Sauerkraut*.

The preparation known as *sowans* is an example of the operation of a similar agency on the cellulose of oatmeal. Ordinary porridge, also,

when allowed to stand for some time, becomes a soil for the growth of acid-forming bacteria, and the products of the growth of these bring about some degree of softening of the cellulose in the particles of oatmeal. For this reason porridge is often found to be more digestible when stale than when perfectly fresh.

Another way of overcoming the cellulose obstacle, which may in a sense be regarded as a process of cooking, is by *milling* or *grinding*. This breaks up the cellulose framework, and allows the digestive juices to penetrate into the nutritive ingredients which it encloses.

More commonly, however, one finds the same object accomplished by the combined action of heat and moisture. When exposed to moist heat starch grains, as we have seen, swell up, their envelopes rupture, and they run together to form a paste or starch jelly. As this jelly expands it presses upon and ultimately ruptures the framework of cellulose in which the grains are enclosed, and in this way the two chief objects aimed at are achieved. The degree to which this occurs is very well shown in the accompanying diagrams (Figs. 7, 8, and 9), which illustrate the action of moisture and heat upon the structure of a piece of potato.

It will be evident from these considerations that cooking is of immense importance in facilitating the digestion of vegetable foods, and the larger the proportion of cellulose present, the more essential does thorough cooking become.

Heat has an effect on the *proteins* of vegetables precisely similar to that which it exerts on the same constituents of animal food; that is to say, they become coagulated. Now, the coagulation of proteins is accompanied by shrinkage rather than by swelling, and for this reason, if the cellulose framework encloses protein only, it does not become ruptured; and one can therefore readily understand that if a vegetable food contained protein alone its digestibility would be affected by cooking in a precisely similar way to that of animal food; in other words, it might be rendered less rather than more digestible by the process. The explanation of this apparent paradox is that vegetable foods containing much protein also contain much starch (e.g. the pulses) and that the starch in gelatinizing ruptures the cell membranes. Green and root vegetables contain but very little protein.

#### LOSSES IN COOKING

No matter how carefully cooking is performed, loss of the soluble constituents of the food during the process is inevitable. In the case of meat, it has been found by Johnston that—

	In Boiling.	In Baking.	In Roasting
4 lb. of beef lose in weight . . .	1 lb.	1 lb. 3 oz.	1 lb. 5 oz.
„ mutton lose in weight . . .	14 oz.	1 lb. 4 oz.	1 lb. 6 oz.

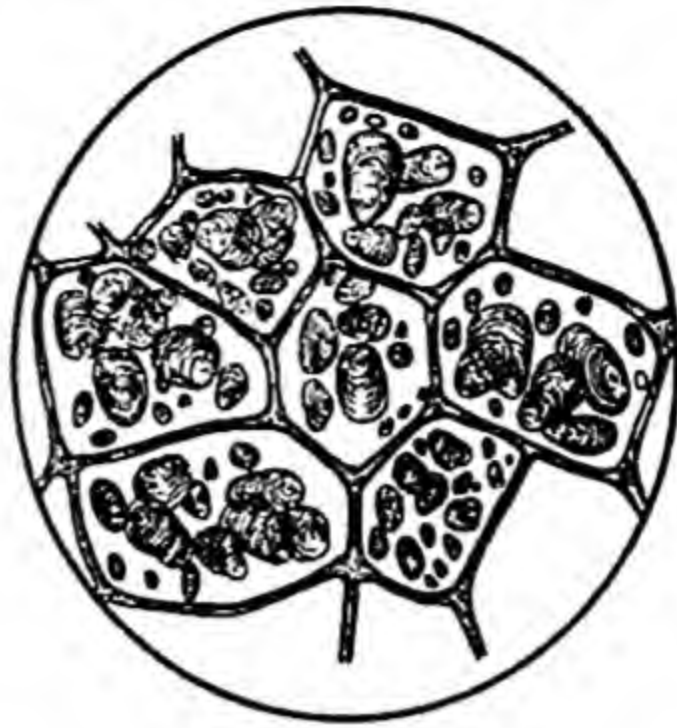


FIG. 7

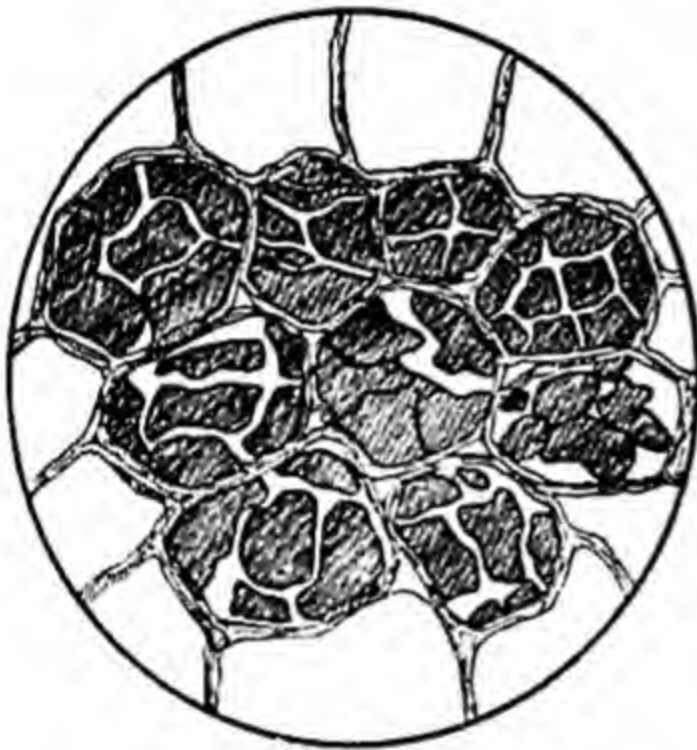


FIG. 8

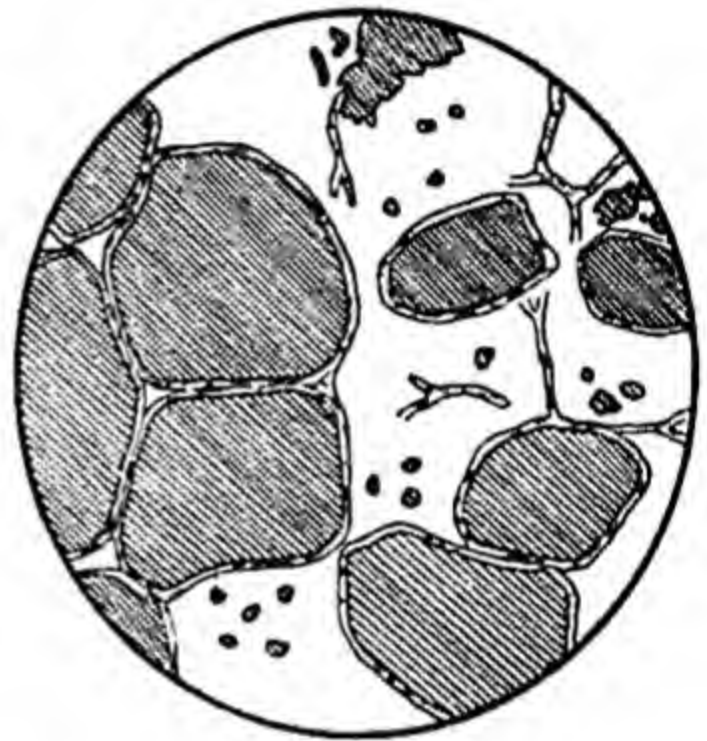


FIG. 9

FIG. 7.—CELLS OF A RAW POTATO, WITH UNRUPTURED STARCH GRAINS AND CELLULOSE FRAMEWORK.

FIG. 8.—CELLS OF A PARTIALLY COOKED POTATO, THE STARCH GRAINS RUPTURED.

FIG. 9.—CELLS OF A THOROUGHLY BOILED POTATO, CELLULOSE FRAMEWORK BROKEN DOWN.

By far the larger part of this loss, however, is due to water. König showed that the percentage of water in lean beef falls from 71 to 57 per cent. when boiled and to 55 per cent. when grilled. Veal cutlets lose water to a similar degree. Investigations for the U.S. Department of Agriculture showed that the loss other than that of water is confined almost entirely to extractives and salts. Very little protein is lost and though fat drips out this can be recovered except when grilling over an open fire.

As far as their soluble constituents are concerned, vegetable foods behave similarly, the loss of salts especially being often very considerable. The loss, however, is more marked in the potassium and

magnesium salts than in the iron and calcium, which are hardly affected.<sup>1</sup>

As regards water, the behaviour of the two classes of foods on cooking is entirely different, for vegetable foods become richer in water when boiled, instead of losing it.

WATER CONTENT (PER CENT.) OF FOODS BEFORE AND AFTER COOKING

Vegetable Foods. <sup>2</sup>			Animal Foods. <sup>2</sup>		
	Raw.	Boiled.		Raw.	Boiled.
Macaroni	10.4	72.2	Beef	70.3	46.2
Oatmeal	8.9	89.1	Ham	55.8	48.6
Potatoes	75.8	80.5	Mutton	[67.1]	45.5
Pulses	8.7	70.5	Haddock	81.3	75.1
Semolina	12.2	71.7			(steamed)
		(as pudding)	Plaice	80.8	78.0
					(steamed)

One may, therefore, lay it down as a general proposition that animal foods become less watery as the result of cooking, while vegetable foods, on the contrary, become more watery.

This is another explanation of the different effect which cooking exerts on the digestibility of the two classes of foods. The concentration which meat undergoes when cooked is unfavourable to digestion, while the dilution of the vegetable foods after cooking makes less demand on the digestive juices. This, too, is one reason why meat which has been cooked more than once is rather difficult of digestion. Not only are its proteins apt to be over-coagulated, but the relative proportion of fat is increased at the same time, and both of these facts militate against rapid and easy digestion.

On the other hand, the increase of bulk which vegetable foods undergo as the consequence of taking up water when cooking is apt to throw a strain on the *mechanical*, as opposed to the purely chemical, functions of the digestive organs. The bearings of this fact upon the practice of vegetarianism will be discussed in a later chapter.

### SLOW COOKING

Since food is a bad conductor, heat only penetrates into it very slowly. Wolffhügel and Hüppe,<sup>3</sup> for instance, found that the temperature of the interior of a piece of meat weighing 9 lb. after 4 hours'

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., WIDDOWSON, E. M., and SHACKLETON. (1936), *Med. Res. Council Rep.*, No. 213.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Chemical Composition Foods, Med. Res. Council Special Rep.*, 235.

<sup>3</sup> Quoted in U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Bull. 21.

boiling was only  $88^{\circ}\text{C.}$ , or  $12^{\circ}$  below the boiling-point of water. The interior temperature of a roast varied from  $70$  to  $95^{\circ}\text{C.}$ , according to size. Similar observations have been made by Sir Henry Thompson.<sup>1</sup> He found that the temperature close to the bone of a leg of mutton which had been boiled or roasted for some hours was never above  $85^{\circ}\text{C.}$  ( $186^{\circ}\text{F.}$ )

Hence it is that, if heat is applied to a piece of meat too rapidly, one simply wastes fuel and runs the risk of overcooking the outer layers. It is far better to allow a moderate amount of heat to act on the meat for several hours, and the longer the time allowed, the lower will be the temperature required, always assuming that it is kept above the coagulation-point of proteins, i.e. above  $70^{\circ}\text{C.}$  ( $158^{\circ}\text{F.}$ ). This is the practice in high-class restaurants. Various special forms of apparatus have been invented with the view of economizing fuel, and allowing of the prolonged action of a moderate degree of heat, some of which are certainly not as well known as they deserve to be.

The simplest of these are constructed on the principle of an ordinary water-bath, and consist of a double pan, the outer being filled with water which is kept at, or near to, the boiling-point, while the article to be cooked is placed in the inner vessel. The heat only penetrates slowly to the latter, and never reaches the boiling-point, while any risk of burning is also prevented. The French "bain-marie" is constructed on this plan.

The "Welbank Boilerette" is a modification of the "bain-marie," in which the steam from the outer pan is prevented from escaping and reaches a temperature above  $212^{\circ}\text{F.}$ , so that the food in the inner vessel can be actually boiled.

Somewhat different from these is the Fireless cooker or Haybox. There are many forms of this apparatus. The commercial type consists of one or two compartments lined with polished sheet metal and heavily lagged on the outside with asbestos, kapok or other insulating material, and enclosed in a wooden box, with a thick door also well heat-insulated. Aluminium saucepans with detachable handles fit the space within the compartments very snugly. When food is to be cooked, it is brought to the boil in one of the saucepans, boiled for 5, 10 or more minutes according to the size of the food, the lid is clamped down and the saucepans transferred at once to the fireless cooker, shut in, and allowed to cook by its own heat for any time up to 24 hours. The apparatus acts on the principle of preventing loss of heat, and just as it prevents any heat getting out, so it can with equal efficiency prevent any from getting in. It may, therefore, be used as a refrigerator, for keeping ices, etc., unmelted, quite as well as a cooker. It saves a

<sup>1</sup> *Food and Feeding*, p. 97. His results have been confirmed by others (see B. LOWE, *op. cit.*).

great deal of time, trouble, and fuel, and is very useful to travellers and campers-out, or in any circumstances in which one wants hot food constantly ready. The only objection to its use is that it destroys ascorbic acid, but so long as that fact is recognized and an assured source of ascorbic acid taken in addition no harm is done.

A home-made form can be manufactured from an old-fashioned hatbox stuffed tight with hay except for a central space for the saucepan, and a non-conducting lid improvized from a kapok or flock cushion. Such devices come into prominence with each major war we have experienced in Great Britain, at any rate in the advice given by Schools of Domestic Science to the public, but it would be interesting to know how many were constructed and continued in use. Of the commercial form one of us can speak with great satisfaction after an experience with it extending over forty years.

A little reflection will show that, in the use of an ordinary oven, a great waste of fuel is inevitable, for the metal of which the oven is constructed is an admirable conductor, and allows heat to escape almost as fast as it gets in. In order to prevent this and the waste of fuel which results from it, all that is necessary is to have the oven covered with some non-conducting material. The heat supplied by the fuel will then be unable to escape from the oven, and will all be utilized to cook the food, instead of being to a large extent dissipated into the surrounding atmosphere. All electric and most gas stoves and two anthracite stoves, the Aga and the Esse, are now constructed on this plan, but the usual English range remains much as it was when this book was first written.

### PRESSURE COOKING

There are on the market cookers made on the principle of Papin's digester. Food is cooked under pressure and therefore at a higher temperature than  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ . It cooks much more quickly, thus saving time,<sup>1</sup> and when the pressure is let down, steam forms within the body of the cooked foods and partially disrupts them. Such pressure cookers are invaluable in rendering tough meat (e.g. shin of beef) tender.

It might be thought that the ascorbic acid of fruits and vegetables would be largely destroyed by pressure cookery, but this is not the case. Large-scale experiments have shown that the short time of cooking compensates for the loss of ascorbic acid at high temperatures. Actually foods so cooked have more ascorbic acid left in them than those cooked normally.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> E.g. 9 minutes at 12.5 lb. pressure against 30 minutes in open cooking.

<sup>2</sup> Roughly 80 per cent. retained. WALKER, A. R. P., and ARVIDSSON, ULLA B. (1950), *Nutr. Unit: Council for Scient. and Ind. Res., South Africa Inst. for Med. Res. Johannesburg*.

## CHAPTER IX

### HYGIENE OF FOOD

At long last medical authorities have become aware that all is not well with the hygiene of the production of foods in canteens, bakeries, restaurants, cafés, and factories where food is processed. Since 1942 the numbers of food poisoning epidemics have risen by leaps and bounds. More and more people have been taking meals away from home and more and more foods are being processed on a large scale. Synthetic creams, cooked meats including sausages have been incriminated. In the establishments named above it has been shown that there is often a shortage of hot water, soap, towels and crockery, and the employees have been insufficiently trained in elementary hygiene. It has not been recognized that many foods are admirable culture media for pathogenic microbes which the employees may harbour.<sup>1</sup> In one investigation it was found that 50 per cent. of the employees harboured dangerous staphylococci in their noses (and therefore in their handkerchiefs) and 20 per cent. had them on their hands. Control of food hygiene must be both national and personal or domestic.

**National Control of Food Hygiene.** It is a fact in food hygiene, that plain dirt does not matter half so much as contamination with pathogenic microbes. One of the most dangerous outbreaks of typhoid fever in this country originated from a dairy farm near Bournemouth producing high-grade milk. Contamination of milk with cow-dung, unpleasant as the fact may be, is nowhere near so dangerous as contamination of that milk by typhoid microbes from the hands of a farm worker or by tubercle bacilli from the udder of the cow.

There is no doubt that the Croydon water supply was singularly free from what people call "dirt," but a chance contamination by a typhoid carrier produced a deadly epidemic. None the less the presumption is that cleanliness of water supplies, dairies, bakeries, abattoirs, markets and so on will make for bacteriological cleanliness of the food produced there as well, though Stenhouse Williams in his work on clean milk production showed that first-grade milk could be produced in a cowshed which would unhesitatingly be condemned to-day.

<sup>1</sup> According to an article in *Food Manufacture* (1954), 29, 2, the deputy medical officer of health of a midland town advocates the use of a gauze mask over nose and mouth in any meat processing factory.

In water supply, Great Britain has led the world, but none the less the two serious outbreaks of typhoid during the decades 1920-30 and 1930-40, those of Malton and Croydon, were due to contamination of the water supply. In the example of Croydon, as said above, it was by means of a carrier. There are people who, having recovered from typhoid to all clinical observation, nevertheless carry typhoid microbes around in their large intestines, possibly for the rest of their lives. They void these every day, and carelessness in personal hygiene results in the dispersal of these microbes into food. The classical example of a typhoid carrier was "typhoid Mary" of the United States, but there have been numerous examples in this country, where typhoid is, none the less, a very rare disease. The case of the Wrexham pork pies *circa* 1910 presents an interesting phenomenon. There was a typical carrier in the employ of the cookshop. The microbes from his large intestine infected the gelatine solution used for pouring into the pork pies before baking, but because the pies were then cooked, the microbes were killed and there was no outbreak of typhoid. None the less there was a severe epidemic of food poisoning, traceable to the pork pies, because the typhoid bacilli had produced toxins in the gelatine.

Typhoid carriers must never be allowed to handle food, and that means that they must not work in abattoirs, bakeries, dairies, fisheries, market gardens, watercress beds and the like. It is one of the duties of the medical authorities, working with agricultural and Home Office authorities, to see that typhoid carriers are not employed in the food industries or around water supplies. Nor should they work in towns and cities. As these people have to work on the land, so as not to be a danger to society, it is difficult to see what, apart from afforestation, corn and stock raising they can do. Doubtless carriers of other diseases exist, for example scarlet fever, and these diseases may be transmitted by food. To-day it has become almost certain that "infantile" paralysis can be transmitted by *fæces*, as is infective hepatitis.

Milk and cream may be infected with the organisms of bovine tuberculosis, undulant fever, scarlet fever and typhoid, and so carry them to human beings. There are still a considerable number of deaths from bovine tuberculosis in this country (say 2000 per year) and widespread tuberculosis of glands and joints in the young due to the same disease. These could be obviated if Government had the courage to make the pasteurization of milk compulsory. The other dairy foods, butter and cheese, do not appear to transmit diseases much, though cheese in the United States has sometimes been shown to be the cause of an outbreak of food poisoning. The duck egg may transmit an enteritis if not properly cooked and it might be worth the while of the relevant authorities to inspect duck farms for such disease.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Lancet*, (1945), I, 314.

Meat can transmit diseases in two ways: (1) it may become infected with microbes of the salmonella group. This, once thought to happen in the abattoirs through carelessness, is now considered to occur in the butcher's shop or home and is due to transmission by rats and mice. These microbes are said to produce toxins indestructible by the heat of cooking but they can grow in the human alimentary tract and produce vomiting and diarrhoea, often of a dangerous nature. As there is no *direct* evidence for these heat-stable toxins, inspection of meat in the abattoirs will only reduce the risk of food poisoning via meat, but it cannot prevent it because the chief source of infection is in the butcher's shop and the home.<sup>1</sup> (2) It may be infected with parasites, which, if the meat is not "properly cooked," can be transmitted to man. Proper inspection of the carcasses of meat in the abattoirs can eliminate this trouble, so can cooking. As previously stated an outbreak of trichiniasis in the neighbourhood of Birmingham in 1941 was due to sausage made from pork inadequately inspected and eaten either raw or lightly cooked.

Shellfish and watercress beds have been known to spread typhoid. Oyster and mussel beds form in the estuaries of our rivers and as a careless civilization wastes its sewage by the convenient method of running it into the rivers, it is not astonishing that in the past typhoid has been transmitted via the oyster and mussel. Such shellfish beds need the most careful inspection. Watercress has to-day an undeserved reputation for spreading typhoid. We are not aware of any cases in this country within the last thirty years being attributable to watercress from commercial watercress beds.

A reform long overdue in this country is the screening of abattoirs, meat and fish markets, bakeries and food manufactories and lavatories from flies. The house-fly has been incriminated in the United States for the spread of typhoid, and is strongly suspected in this country of disseminating summer diarrhoea. In the States it is considered as a possible vector of poliomyelitis and in North Africa (El Alamein) of infective hepatitis and bacillary dysentery. On any account, knowing the haunts of flies, it is time that they should go. Refuse dumps should not be tolerated.

Finally, the food manufactories, where such edibles as brawn, pork pies, potted meat, sausages, etc., are made, need close inspection. Food waste in such places encourages cockroaches, crickets, mice and rats—all potential vectors of disease. For reasons given above a known typhoid carrier should be not permitted to work in such places, and for reasons which will be obvious there should be adequate lavatory accommodation, with washhand basins and an abundance of hand towels. Operatives should be encouraged to wash after attending to

<sup>1</sup> Personal communication by Dr. C. E. Dukes.

bodily needs. The same applies to canteens and restaurants. People with sore hands, faces and throats should not be allowed to prepare food. An example is of a woman cutting sandwiches when in the early stage of scarlet fever. Some of the eaters of these sandwiches had a subsequent gastro-enteritis from the toxins produced by the scarlet-fever microbes, some later developed scarlet fever.

Of course, it is not only the trades and the health authorities who need educating, it is the public also. One of us has seen a string bag of shellfish, out of their shells, lying on the filthy platform of a London Station and while the last edition was under revision a wholesaler, under the eyes of the two authors, dumped a load of cabbages destined for a local greengrocer in the gutter in front of the shop.

**Food Hygiene in the Home.** By the time food reaches the home it may or may not have picked up pathogenic organisms or developed toxins. It might be thought that there is little that can be done in the way of food hygiene. That is not true. There is always avoidable wastage due to moulds, putrefaction of meat, soups and fish, and the depredations of cockroaches, mice and rats. In fact there is often a vicious circle set up. The failure to use crusts of bread, or to clear out the crumbs from bread bins, leads to mouldiness of the whole loaves and so on in geometrical progression. The same is true of animal life encouraged in kitchens by the lazy scattering of food. The more food scattered, the more is unwanted animal life encouraged and the more food wasted because of its being fouled by such animals. One of us has suffered from a serious invasion by crickets encouraged by the almost inevitable scattering of crumbs in a children's dining-room—an invasion, be it said, finally quelled after it had reached *titanic* dimensions by the use of a well-known insect powder.

Much spoiling of food is due to flies, more particularly, of course, to the bluebottle fly. And if the British would only learn from America to screen its houses from flies in summer, great would be the saving of food. In institutions it is the common custom to prepare food and even put it out long before it is to be consumed. We have observed this in preparatory, public and industrial schools; in university colleges and in hospitals. In fact we have begun to think that it is universal. Apart from the desiccation of the food entailed it gives the flies their chance to contaminate the food.<sup>1</sup>

Of course the biggest reform necessary in the British kitchen is the

<sup>1</sup> In one school it was the sparrows which benefited. This school had had epidemics of intestinal trouble among the alumni and had sought the source of the trouble in vain. No one questioned the invasion of the dining-hall by flocks of sparrows.

In another school the sugar was put into the tea-urns with the tea after the midday meal and the lids left off. The flies in summer took full advantage of this until boiling water was poured on them later in the afternoon in the making of the "tea."

installation of a refrigerator. This would prevent much of the souring of the milk and the putrefaction of the meat, fish and soup stock in summer, besides preventing access of flies, cockroaches, mice and rats. If milk were sold satisfactorily pasteurized—or frozen—brought to the home in refrigerated vans and put straight into a large refrigerator it would be unnecessary to have more than one delivery a week. In Canada already they have but two deliveries a week in some cities. Of course the home refrigerator working at a temperature below  $50^{\circ}\text{F}$ . merely delays microbic action and cannot be relied upon to keep food indefinitely. Moreover, the refrigerator must be kept scrupulously clean, otherwise it may spoil more food than it preserves.

Until that millennial time when there is a working, though cheap, refrigerator in every home the ordinary housewife must use her intelligence, rather than a piece of machinery, to keep food sweet.

For example, the meat when delivered is presumably infected only on its outer surfaces, the interior being kept aseptic by its raised hydrogen ion concentration. Washing it over with a little vinegar will certainly delay the development of putrefactive microbes. It can then be hung up in the larder, all surfaces being exposed to the air, till it is cooked. It is unwise to leave it on a plate. The drip from the meat will collect under the joint and makes a good medium for the growth of anaerobic microbes which produce foul-smelling compounds. If the cooking of the joint is to be postponed some time it is as well to sterilize (for the time) the outer surfaces of the joint by putting it in a hot oven for a quarter to half an hour. This will not prevent the growth of microbes if they have tracked any distance along the bone or the blood vessels, but it will delay putrefaction from microbes settled on the surface. It is possible that pouring boiling water over the joint may have the same effect, but the moisture later on will encourage bacterial activity. Drying the outside surfaces by heat will discourage it.

It is as well to bring a stew to the boil—or, working upon the adage that a stew boiled is a stew spoiled, to  $70^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $158^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) as quickly as possible. If it is warmed slowly there is a long period of time during which the microbes are encouraged to multiply rapidly. Soup made in bulk, as in an institution, and kept overnight takes a long time to cool. The non-sporing microbes have been killed, but the spores of the spore bearers survive this. As the soup cools the spores germinate, find no competition from other microbes and multiply rapidly. As the soup is warmed the next day this multiplication continues until the lethal point is reached, but by then they have made toxins which poison the eaters. A common soil microbe, *Clostridium welchii*, has often been incriminated. All foods which have to be cooled or reheated should be rushed past the temperature favourable to incubation of microbes as rapidly as possible.

Something similar may—and does—happen when joints are cooked overnight, allowed to cool, then sliced on a bacon slicer, and the slices warmed up before serving. Hospitals and restaurants use this economical but bad practice.

Other foods than meat can play unexpected pranks on being kept in the warm for a time. A sample of oatmeal—Scottish oatmeal from a good Midlothian firm—on being put to soak overnight in the boiler room, so that the phytases could split up the phytates, developed an odour of rancid butter each time the experiment was tried. Doubtless that sample was infected with butyric-acid-producing microbes, for it never happened if the oatmeal was sterilized first (and the phytases—as well as the microbes—unfortunately destroyed).

The most important part of kitchen hygiene is to have plenty of running hot water and soap. Probably only a million out of the eight million kitchens in this country possess both such necessities. Soap is a moderately efficient antiseptic, though it will not kill every microbe. It is perhaps best to rinse plates, dishes, etc., in hot water after they have been washed with soap and water, and leave them to dry spontaneously, rather than to dry them with a cloth. The “tea cloths” can easily pass on milk souring and other microbes to the containers. It is a good practice in hot weather to steam out any milk can used for unpasteurized milk. In the experience of one of us this enabled milk to remain sweet which otherwise went sour in less than 12 hours.

Finally, it is unwise to adopt an Antipodean plan of letting the household dogs lick the kitchen china clean. This has often resulted in the transmission of a parasite that produces a serious disease of the liver. And it must not be forgotten that in countries such as China where human excreta are used as manure, there is the possibility of infection with ascaris, a round worm inhabiting the gut, if raw salad vegetables are eaten. Investigation among Oriental students in American universities showed that one-third of them were so infected. If the composting of garden refuse with human excreta becomes at all widespread in this country, it is possible that the same trouble will beset us here. Very careful washing of the salads will be essential.

In the above, the possibility of the transmission of disease by food has been emphasized—some may say too much emphasized. It is certainly true that the emphasizing of the dirtiness of much milk sold in the past has prejudiced people—medical officers of health among them—against milk as a food. There is decidedly a danger in giving the public a fear of microbes, but it has to be faced. It is good that the public should understand the ubiquity, the services and the disservices of microbes, and how to take advantage of the one and obviate the other. Much of the control of the disservices is in the hands of public

authorities and this control needs backing by an educated public opinion. In the home the control of them is valuable mainly in preventing the waste of food, a crime at most times, but particularly so in the present and near future. It may reasonably be said, however, that the wonder is how little disease is traceable to contamination of food with parasites or microbes, but it has to be admitted that when such enemies get under our guard the result (witness the Croydon typhoid epidemic and the outbreak of trichiniasis in the Birmingham area) are sufficiently devastating.

*Red  
Hypno.*

## CHAPTER X

# THE DIGESTION, ABSORPTION AND METABOLISM OF FOODS IN HEALTH

Very few constituents of very few foods are in a fit chemical state for use by the body. The simple hexose sugars, the inorganic salts, and the vitamins, possibly also the fats, may pass straight into the blood or lymph stream unchanged and without ill effect. Proteins, the disaccharides, dextrans, starch cannot so pass. Moreover, as they occur in foods they are often "tied up" in cellulose (or rather plant cell wall) envelopes, and these envelopes have to be cooked and macerated and tritured to allow the escape of the contents. Complex chemical substances like proteins, starches, and dextrans have to be hydrolysed to simple soluble diffusible crystalloid compounds and these, if useless as such to the body (e.g. the disaccharides), have still further to be hydrolysed. To carry out these triturations, macerations, and hydrolyses the body has a series of organs and glands secreting a variety of ferments; these processes of trituration, maceration, and hydrolysis are termed digestion.

## DIGESTION

### In the Mouth

The mouth stage of digestion is mainly a mechanical one and its object largely protective. The food is ground by the teeth to small particles and at the same time thoroughly mixed with saliva; hard substances are broken up, softened, neutralized, diluted and covered with a wrapping of mucus so that on their passage through the alimentary tract they may easily be digested without undue difficulty and without abrading or otherwise damaging the soft walls of that tract. Thorough chewing of food is important. Without it; food may damage the alimentary tract and cannot be adequately digested. To bolt food, in the manner in which one posts letters, interferes gravely with proper disintegration of it; and many cases of dyspepsia are kept up, if not actually produced, by imperfections of the teeth or dentures.

In addition to the neutralizing, moistening, and lubricating effect of saliva there is a chemical influence as well. Cooked starch, of whatever origin, is digested by the ptyalin of the saliva via dextrans to maltose. Some starches—e.g. those of rice and maize—are more readily

acted upon by the saliva than others, such as potato starch. Raw starch is hardly affected at all.

As most animals have ptyalin in their saliva and as man presumably passed through the stage when he did not live on cooked plant foods, this ptyalin must be looked upon as a fortunate accident for him, or perhaps as "intelligent anticipation." But since it is there, one had best make use of its power of digesting cooked starches.

Porous foods, such as rusks, into which the saliva can easily penetrate, are more easily attacked than dense and compact masses, such as new bread. Moist substances, too, offer less resistance than those which are dry. In fact the amount of saliva secreted varies, among other things, with the dryness of the food. Dried powdered meat, Pavlov showed, when given to a dog evokes a thin watery and abundant saliva, but when given in its original form only a scanty but highly mucous secretion. Doubtless something similar happens in man.

The amount of saliva varies too, naturally and markedly, with the tastiness of the food and with appetite. If a person has a strong conditioned reflex for food, even if that food be distasteful to the majority of people—e.g. caviare to the general and durians to the occidental—that food will evoke a great flow of saliva. Dehydration of the body shows its first effect in decreased salivation. A person who is thirsty cannot produce saliva, a thing worth remembering when feeding a dehydrated person. Acidity of food, certainly, and a mild astringency, seemingly, increase salivation, but intense astringency such as that of an unripe persimmon "dries the mouth up." Vinegar, malt liquors, wines, and tea inhibit the digestion of cooked starch by saliva *in vitro*, but it is possible that, because these substances provoke a salivation *in vivo*, their inhibiting effect is overcome.

Another important use of saliva which must not be forgotten is that of washing the mouth clean from food particles which would otherwise remain between the teeth and undergo decomposition. (Witness the foul condition of the mouth when salivation is suppressed in fever.) So important is this hygiene of the mouth that many dental surgeons advise that a meal should end with raw crisp fruit, which stimulates a flow of saliva besides being itself a detergent.

### **In the Stomach**

Observations of the results of complete removal of the stomach in man have shown that its co-operation cannot be regarded as essential to the complete digestion and absorption of an ordinary mixed diet provided the latter is presented to the intestine in a suitable mechanical form. None the less it has several functions to perform:

1. To act as a reservoir.✓
  2. To convert the swallowed food to a semi-fluid form.
-

3. To damage or kill pathogenic microbes.
4. To regulate the temperature of food. ✓
5. To effect a small degree of digestion of proteins.
6. To produce (a) an "intrinsic" factor which helps to carry cyanocobalamine (extrinsic factor) across the intestinal mucous membrane.

1. By acting as a reservoir the stomach enables us to take our food in considerable quantities at a time; i.e. it renders meals possible. The practical convenience of this needs no demonstration, but some points connected with the question of meals may again be raised.

First it may be asked, *At what intervals should meals be taken?* Is it better to take several small meals or to consume one's daily supply of food at one or two sittings? The problem will be discussed again later from the point of view of physiological efficiency, but here we may treat it from the point of view of physical capacity. The "one-meal-a-day man" is at a twofold disadvantage: (1) he overburdens the mechanical powers of his stomach by the mere weight of food; (2) some of the food so introduced may be wasted owing to the digestive, absorptive, and assimilative powers of the alimentary tract and body-tissues being unable to keep pace with the flood of material which reaches them all at once.

(1) The capacity of the human stomach is very variable, both in different individuals and in the same individual at different periods of life. On the average it may be estimated as from 2 to 4 pints and in the case of solids at about 2 lb. If it be remembered that the total amount of solid food required daily is about 3 lb., it is evident that if the whole of this were eaten at one meal the stomach would be overtaken and a dilatation of that organ incurred. If the stomach is unhealthy it will be unable to tolerate food at the rate of three meals a day (let alone one) but might be able to carry on if meals were given "little and often."

(2) There is evidence to show that more food is wasted when it is taken all at once than when it is spread over a considerable time. The waste occurs in all the constituents of food and is partly due to defective digestion leading to defective absorption and to increased intestinal putrefaction. The results of Jacobean and Georgian orgies as related by the diarists are sufficient evidence of this, and there is experimental evidence pointing in the same direction. Moreover, as has been related elsewhere, a large amount of protein taken at one meal results in a much greater wastage of heat (the specific dynamic action of protein, *q.v.*) than if that amount of protein is spread more evenly over the day. It follows that the protein ration should not only be adequate in amount but that it should be divided between three or four meals a day in order that the best use may be made of it. The old custom at schools

and hospitals of giving only bread and butter for breakfast is evil and has been largely abandoned. The growing child and the sick patient need adequate supplies of amino acids for growth and repair, and enough should be given at the first meal of the day to make up the deficiency caused by the fast which occurs during the night.

The principle of so dividing the meals is one of great value whenever the stomach is unhealthy and will be discussed later.

The hours of meals have varied greatly even in the same country at different periods of history and in different classes of society, and must depend largely upon convenience and upon habits as regards work, etc. If possible, dinner, the principal meal of the day, should be taken after work is over, or at midday, provided that a period of rest can be observed after it. The custom in schools of playing games shortly after a midday meal is a bad one which, fortunately, in the more progressive preparatory and public schools is being superseded by a period of rest, lying down, of half an hour's duration.

2. The second function of the stomach is partially *to digest the food and bring it to a semi-fluid form*. This is done partly by the action of the ferment pepsin in the gastric juice and partly by the mechanical movements of the stomach walls.

**The Secretion of Gastric Juice.** Until the beginning of this century it was supposed that the secretion of gastric juice was brought about by mechanical stimulation of the mucous membrane of the stomach by the particles of swallowed food. Pavlov<sup>1</sup> showed this to be a mistake in a series of most ingenious experiments upon dogs and his discoveries have been confirmed for man by Richet, Carlson, and others. He showed that the chief factors concerned are (1) psychological, and (2) chemical, and that mechanical action plays quite a secondary part, if any at all.

The psychological factor is bound up with the sensations of appetite and hunger. These two sensations are so intimately related that a clear understanding of the terms is essential. The two experiences are fundamentally different. Appetite is related to previous sensations of taste and smell of food. It is, or rather accompanies, a conditioned reflex. At one time in a person's life the taste and smell of a food (e.g. an olive) may awake nothing but nausea, but at another and more sophisticated age, intense appetite. Psychological elements are therefore important components in appetite. Appetite may be divorced from hunger, as for instance at the end of a large meal when there is still an appetite for the savoury and the dessert. It is probable that many a well-to-do person leading an ordered life never feels hunger and that his needs as regards food are satisfied by the call to eat through appetite. On the other hand hunger will cause people to eat things for which they normally have no

<sup>1</sup> PAVLOV. *The Work of the Digestive Glands*. London, 1902.

appetite, and, indeed, when hunger is acute, things normally revolting.

Hunger has a painful quality while appetite is pleasurable. Hunger undoubtedly normally stimulates appetite. Foods are more pleasant to eat when one is hungry, but as said above hunger can be divorced from appetite. Its physical basis is undoubtedly the cramp-like contractions into which the stomach goes when one is hungry.<sup>1</sup> These are the result usually of deficiency of nutritional substances in the blood. The blood of a hungry animal sends the stomach of another animal into hunger contractions. Such depletion may account for hunger in man, for some diabetic patients, especially children, complain of great hunger whenever the blood sugar falls below 90 mg. per 100 ml., though others may not although the blood sugar may fall as low as 40 mg. per 100 ml. The action of insulin in lowering the blood sugar is sometimes used in an endeavour to increase hunger and so stimulate appetite.

Appetite is the psychological factor which causes a flow of gastric juice. In dogs, as well as in man, a liking for a food that is eaten evokes a greater flow of gastric juice than if a food be eaten for which there is distaste. Pleasant service and pleasant surroundings also improve appetite and therefore evoke a greater gastric response as Hawk and Rehfuess have shown in work upon American medical students.

Hence the dietitian emphasizes the importance, especially when feeding the sick, of agreeable surroundings, of clean napery and dainty china, and of good cooking in promoting good digestion, and will make a point of consulting the likes and dislikes of patients. Hence too the prevalence of the habit of the glass of sherry before dinner, or the cocktail, and the savoury items usually classed on the menu as hors d'œuvres.

The second factor concerned in producing gastric secretion is a chemical one. Pavlov was the first to discover that meat and watery extracts of meat produce a secretion of gastric juice even when the "appetite" juice is obviated by feeding the animal through a fistula when it is asleep. He also showed that partially digested foods have the same effect. Later research has shown that some part or other of these foods acting on the mucous membrane of the pyloric end of the stomach releases into the bloodstream a hormone, which travelling round the circulatory system comes back to the mucous membrane of the stomach and stimulates the glands to secretion. It is claimed that glucose, alcohol, lactic acid, sodium bicarbonate, saliva, or meat will liberate this hormone. Still more potent than meat are extract of meat, albumoses, and peptones. The hormone may be histamine.

The normal course of secretion is (i) that there is an appetite juice

<sup>1</sup> CANNON, W. B. (1929), *Bodily Changes in Pain, Hunger, Fear, and Rage*. Appleton & Co., New York.

secreted as the result of a gustatory conditioned reflex. This juice is constant in composition, containing hydrochloric acid and pepsin. (ii) There is a second prolonged secretion of the glands continuing long after the reflex flow is over as the result of the setting free from the pyloric mucous membrane of some hormone into the blood-stream. This second<sup>1</sup> flow will therefore vary with the nature and state of digestion of the food in the stomach. The combined results of all these factors will doubtless account for Pavlov's observation that each food calls forth a response specific to that food.

There are also, in addition to chemical excitants to the flow of gastric juice, chemical depressants. Fat is a notorious example as was first discovered by Pavlov. Later, cane sugar has been added to the list by the work mentioned above of Hawk, Rehfuess and colleagues. This not altogether unexpected result suggests perhaps the disadvantage of sweet things before a meal.<sup>2</sup> Iced water and *strong* alcoholic drinks are also depressants. Sodium bicarbonate given before a meal is said to stop the secretion of gastric juice, but given with or after a meal increases it. The bearing of these facts on the dietetic treatment of hyper- and hypo-acidity and of peptic ulcers is obvious.

**Acidity of the Gastric Contents.** The total amount of hydrochloric acid present in the stomach depends upon the quantity of gastric juice secreted, which may be as much as 700 ml. after a large meal. Of the total amount of acid secreted after a meal only a small part remains in the free form; the larger part is in a state of combination with protein. The first part of the hydrochloric acid secreted is neutralized by the bases present in the food (e.g. carbonates) and after these have been neutralized the rest is free to unite with the proteins. There is always some free hydrochloric acid over and above that which combines with the bases of protein of the food. The average figure for free hydrochloric acid in pure gastric juice is 0.4 to 0.5 per cent. Pure juice is difficult to obtain and it is usual to use the figure obtained after a fractional test meal, or after giving histamine or alcohol.

Bennett and Ryle examined the gastric juice of 100 healthy students at Guy's Hospital, using the gruel test meal, and found that 84 per cent. of the curves for acidity fell between what are called the normal limits of 0.040 to 0.180 g. of hydrochloric acid (11 to 50 ml. of N/10 Hydrochloric acid), with a mean of 0.118 (32 ml.), at the end of 1½ hours after the meal; 7 per cent. rose a little above 0.180 (50 ml.) at that time but began to decrease later like the 84 per cent. which were within normal limits; 5 per cent. exceeded 0.180 g. at the end of 1 hour and continued

<sup>1</sup> According to Ivy there is a still further chemical influence arising from the products of digestion in the small intestine.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. Fruit at breakfast, "Fruchtsuppe" as in Germany and iced melon in this country in hot weather.

to climb (the "climbing curves"); and 4 per cent. of the cases showed complete achlorhydria.<sup>1</sup> The causes of these individual differences are not clear and none of the students complained of gastric symptoms.

The amount of acid begins to decrease after  $1\frac{1}{4}$  or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours and this decrease is believed by Bolton to be due to the regurgitation of alkaline fluid from the duodenum as the proportion of total chloride to free hydrochloric acid increases about this time except in those patients who have a "climbing curve."

The gastric juice then is markedly acid ( $pH=1.6$  to  $1.8$ ) and we have to consider the relations of this acidity to (1) the digestion of starch in the stomach; (2) morbid gastric sensations.

**Digestion of Starch in the Stomach.** There is no doubt that ptyalin is rapidly destroyed by free acid and that its action on starch ceases at about  $pH=4$ . The rate of digestion of starch by ptyalin depends on the concentration of hydrogen ions in the medium. It is at its maximum at  $pH=6.9$  or just on the acid side of neutrality. So soon as the combination of protein with acid in the stomach fails to keep the hydrogen ion concentration at or beyond this figure the ptyalin digestion of starch falls off. When starchy foods undergoing salivary digestion are thoroughly mixed with gastric juice digestion ceases.

It follows then that starchy foods will not go on digesting for long in the stomach, at any rate if they are mixed with the earlier portions of the meal; in the later portions of the meal carbohydrate digestion can continue much longer. Observations with X-rays have shown that the food last swallowed is received into the centre of the mass already present in the stomach, and does not for some time come into contact with the gastric juice. The central portions therefore can retain an alkaline to mildly acid reaction for a considerable period during which ptyalin can go on digesting the cooked starch. This justifies the conventional arrangement of a dinner in which the starchy course (pudding) comes after the protein course (meat).

**Relation of the Acidity of the Stomach Contents to Morbid Gastric Sensations.** In health, digestion proceeds quite unconsciously and without the production of any sensation at all. In morbid conditions of the stomach, however, digestion may be accompanied by sensations of pain, and these seem to arise in at least two ways: (1) from disorder of the motor functions of the stomach; (2) from abnormal conditions of the mucous membrane.

The former of these we shall consider later. The latter seem to be of two sorts: (a) where the mucous membrane is unhealthy and is unduly sensitive to the *total acidity* of the contents; (b) where *free* acid alone produces pain. The former of these conditions seems to be present where actual lesions of the mucous membrane exist—e.g. in acute and

<sup>1</sup> *Guy's Hospital Reports*, (1921), 71, 286.

chronic gastritis, ulcer, and in carcinoma. The latter, i.e. (b) above, if it ever occurs, is apparently more often of the nature of a neurosis—a hyperæsthesia of the nerves of the mucous membrane, though it is possible that in extreme degrees of such hyperæsthesia pain may be produced even by combined acid. Where the total acidity causes pain the condition is likely to be aggravated by foods rich in protein, such as meat, for these, as we have seen, call forth an abundance of juice, and therefore of acid. If, on the other hand, free acidity alone excites the sensation, such foods are likely to be beneficial, for they delay the period at which free acid appears, and also lessen its amount. In accordance with this explanation it will usually be found that patients who are suffering from ulceration of the stomach complain of pain after meat, but can digest milk with comfort; for milk not only neutralizes much acid by means of its proteins, but in itself calls out the secretion of a weak and scanty gastric juice. On the other hand, one usually finds that patients with functional dyspepsia and hyperæsthesia of the stomach suffer less from meat than from foods which, being poor in proteins, allow of the early appearance of uncombined hydrochloric acid. These considerations are of importance in helping one to select a suitable dietary for dyspeptics.

One other function of the hydrochloric acid is to render some metallic radicles of salts more available. Thus calcium phosphate may become calcium chloride and passing down into the duodenum may be absorbed as such. Hypochlorhydria may account for a difficulty some people show in absorbing sufficient calcium and iron from normal diet.

**Movements of the Stomach.** In studying the movements of the stomach, one must distinguish quite sharply between the cardiac and the pyloric end of the organ. The two ends are distinct, both anatomically and functionally. The cardiac end secretes both pepsin and hydrochloric acid, the pyloric end pepsin and the “intrinsic” substance. The former has but feeble motor power; the movements of the latter are more powerful.

Possibly as the result of Cannon’s masterly work on gastric peristalsis in the cat, the amount of movement in the stomach of man has been exaggerated. Radiograms purporting to be normal have indicated an amount of movement that we now know to be abnormal. Barclay<sup>1</sup> shows a picture of a normal stomach emptying its contents into the duodenal cap in which there is little or no peristalsis and another where the peristaltic waves are of the mildest, and contrasts these with one where there is excessive peristalsis. The latter more closely resembles the normal appearance in the cat. Thus both active and quiet peristalsis may occur in health, and we do not know yet what determines the one or the other.

<sup>1</sup> *Amer. Journ. Roentgenology* (1938), 40, 330.

The stomach is a U-shaped cavity with one limb (the pyloric) shorter than the other. The cardiac end remains quiescent but, towards the pyloric end, peristaltic waves may mix the food up, but this mixture is not an essential mechanism, though it is brought into action if the food contains any large unmasticated lumps. The main propelling force must be the intragastric pressure due to the tonus of the muscular walls of the stomach. From time to time the pylorus opens and allows food to enter the duodenum, and according to Barclay this opening is probably controlled by a reflex mechanism actuated from the region of the ileo-colic sphincter and is not due to peristalsis of the stomach or to change in the acidity of the gastric contents.

The length of time which elapses between the swallowing of food and the first opening of the pylorus is variable, depending chiefly upon the consistence of the food and the temperature of the stomach contents. Fluids, unless they contain much solid matter in suspension, begin to escape almost immediately—water, indeed, whilst it is still being swallowed.

Any excess of fluid taken with a solid meal is probably also passed on almost at once, and so cannot seriously dilute the gastric juice. Solid food can only escape after it has been brought to a fluid or semi-fluid consistency, and this must obviously depend to a large extent upon its physical characters and density.

An opaque meal of porridge and bismuth oxynitrate can be seen escaping from the stomach within ten minutes of being eaten, and estimation of the blood sugar shows that it has risen ten minutes after glucose has been taken by mouth and twenty minutes after a porridge meal.

The larger part of a meal, however, probably does not pass out of the stomach till most of it has been rendered fluid, and half an hour after that has taken place, the stomach may be regarded as empty.

**Rate of Digestion of Different Foods.** The response of the normal human stomach to various foods was first investigated by Beaumont in his classical experiments on Alexis St. Martin, and Penzoldt made careful observations in 1893. From 1912 onward till the subject's death from cancer of the stomach Carlson produced a number of communications concerning digestion in the stomach of Vlček, a Czech, with a surgically-made gastric fistula. The method of removing small amounts of food at frequent intervals after a meal by means of the Rehfuß tube has also given much information. There were, among the subjects investigated by Hawk, Rehfuß and others, two types of stomachs—the slow and the quick. The slow did not complete its emptying under  $3\frac{1}{2}$  hours, whereas the quicker type of stomach was empty in  $2\frac{1}{2}$  hours. The time which the slow and quick acting stomachs take to empty and the highest total acidity observed are shown in the table on p. 204.

The results destroy some popular beliefs. Thus 100 g. of beef and lamb were both digested in about the same time, 3 hours and 25 minutes for the slow, and 2 hours and 35 minutes for the more quickly emptying stomachs, whereas chicken and ham take ten to twenty minutes longer. Further, roast beef was rendered semifluid in the same time whether

EVACUATION TIME AND HIGHEST TOTAL ACIDITY FOR VARIOUS ARTICLES OF DIET<sup>1</sup>

Articles of Diet (100 g. portions unless otherwise stated).	Number of Observations.	Evacuation Time (Hours and Minutes).			Highest Total Acidity (average) (ml. N/10 Alkali to Neutral- ize 100 ml. Juice).	Grammes of Hydro- chloric Acid.
		Type of Stomach.				
		Rapid Empty- ing.	Slow Empty- ing.	Aver- age.		
Beef and beef products .	25	2.35	3.25	3.00	120.0	0.438
Lamb and lamb products	14	2.30	3.20	3.00	135.0	0.492
Veal:						
(a) Market . . . .	7	—	—	2.50	140.0	0.51
(b) "Bob" . . . .	7	—	—	3.20	110.0	0.40
Pork and pork products	31	2.45	3.40	3.15	120.0	0.44
Chicken . . . . .	20	2.45	3.45	3.15	125.0	0.455
Turkey . . . . .	2	3.00	3.45	3.30	140.0	0.51
Guinea Hen . . . . .	2	—	4.00	4.00	110.0	0.40
Fish . . . . .	75	—	—	2.50	130.0	0.475
Milk:						
Cow's, 75 ml. . . .	3	—	—	1.15	45.0	0.164
400 ml. . . .	50	—	—	2.30	100.0	0.365
Mother's, 150 ml. .	5	—	—	1.40	60.0	0.210
225 ml. . . .	2	—	—	2.25	90.0	0.328
Gelatin . . . . .	5	—	—	2.00	70.0	0.255
Egg and egg combin- ations . . . . .	90	2.15	3.15	2.40	80.0	0.240
Vegetables prepared in different ways . .	124	2.00	2.30	2.50	75.0	0.275
Fruits . . . . .	68	1.35	2.20	2.00	90.0	0.328
Bread and cereals . .	75	—	—	2.40	80.0	0.240
Cakes . . . . .	29	—	—	3.00	90.0	0.328
Pies . . . . .	29	—	—	2.30	90.0	0.328
Puddings . . . . .	23	—	—	2.20	90.0	0.328
Sugars and candies . .	28	—	—	2.05	70.0	0.255
Ice-cream . . . . .	7	—	—	3.15	105.0	0.384
Ices . . . . .	4	—	—	2.35	65.0	0.238
Nuts:						
(a) 25 g. . . . .	18	—	—	3.00	100.0	0.365
(b) 500 g. . . . .	4	—	—	4.00		

<sup>1</sup> HAWK, REHFUSS, and BERGHEIM. (1926). *Am. Jour. med. Science*, 171, 359.

it was underdone (American "rare"), medium, or well done. Bacon took nearly one hour longer to digest than beef. Two eggs, cooked in various ways, were digested ten minutes quicker than 100 g. of beef. Raw eggs left the stomach a little quicker, but if they were boiled hard an extra ten minutes was taken. Vegetables as a whole left the stomach in two hours but cabbage and asparagus were got rid of in one and a half hours. Raw lettuce took only one hour, but the addition of sugar, vinegar, and oil, delayed the emptying a little.

The observations on the digestion of milk are most interesting and were carried out on one man who had the power of regurgitating small samples of milk at regular intervals. The curds from raw whole milk were like rubber and as big as a man's thumb, but those obtained when the milk had been boiled for five minutes were soft and no bigger than a pea. The curds obtained from pasteurized milk were intermediate in size between those of the raw and boiled milk. Those obtained from skimmed milk were much larger and very hard. The character of the curd was directly affected by the fat content and the addition of extra cream made the curds considerably smaller, though the stomach took longer to empty.

The addition of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  g. of sodium bicarbonate to 500 ml. of raw whole milk caused the formation of smaller soft curds, though the change was not so marked as that produced by boiling.

The observations on pies<sup>1</sup> showed that the pie crust was evacuated in 2 hours 52 minutes, while the fruit portion was got rid of in 26 minutes less time. The addition of 100 g. of sugar delayed evacuation, but small amounts (10 g.) had no effect. The figures for the secretion of acid are also surprising. The highest figure of 140 ml. is given by veal and turkey, whereas beef and pork with 120 ml. are below both chicken and fish. Eggs and bread produce relatively little, only 80 ml. The figures for milk are rather difficult to evaluate, as 400 ml. which is a large amount to drink, caused an acidity of 100 ml., while 75 ml. ( $2\frac{1}{2}$  oz.) produced 45 ml. of acid. It seems probable that some of the old observations are correct, i.e. that mashed potatoes are more rapidly disposed of than boiled potatoes, and that old potatoes are better tolerated than new potatoes. Firm bread and biscuits are found to be more digestible than new bread, but there is little difference between crust, crumb and toast and between new and stale bread, provided all are equally well chewed.

**3. Antiseptic Action of the Gastric Juice.** Another function which the stomach serves is that of partially sterilizing the food by the antiseptic action of the hydrochloric acid of the gastric juice. This action, however, is not a powerful one, and some organisms such as those which form acids, seem to escape it altogether, and there is

<sup>1</sup> The American pie is what we should term a turnover.

reason to believe that the same is true of some, at least, of the commoner pathogenic organisms, notably the tubercle bacillus.

The sterilizing power of the stomach must vary greatly according to the period of digestion and the nature of the food. It probably reaches its maximum towards the later periods of digestion, when hydrochloric acid is present in the free state, whilst it is much less, or even absent altogether, in the earlier stages, when all the hydrochloric acid is in a combined form. Food rich in protein, by fixing the hydrochloric acid, must greatly lessen the germicidal power of the gastric juice. The stomach has little control over the growth of organisms in the intestine. The small intestine remains free from putrefactive organisms even if there is achlorhydria in the stomach or, indeed, when the stomach has been completely removed.

**4. The Temperature of Foods and Drinks.** One of the minor functions of the stomach is that of regulating the temperature of the food. It stands in this matter as a protector of the intestine, which appears to be more injuriously affected by extremes of temperature than the stomach itself.

The ideal temperature for food is probably that of the body itself. Cold food is difficult to digest, for it does not excite the stomach sufficiently, nor does it possess the stimulating properties of a hot meal. It has been said that there is a special craving for alcoholic stimulants on the part of those who are unable to get hot meals, but this is not borne out by observation on Arctic explorers.

Extremes of temperature in foods should be avoided as tending to produce local injury to the stomach; from  $45^{\circ}$  to  $130^{\circ}$  F. are probably the limits of safety. Many people, however, are able to take ices and iced drinks with impunity for many years.

Drinks at a temperature of  $50^{\circ}$  C. ( $122^{\circ}$  F.) make one feel warmer and at a temperature of  $7^{\circ}$  C. ( $45^{\circ}$  F.) cooler. Wunderlich found that hot punch at  $122^{\circ}$  F. raised the axillary temperature by  $0.03^{\circ}$  to  $0.1^{\circ}$  C. for a period of thirty to sixty minutes, while half a litre of water at the same degree of heat caused an acceleration of the pulse nearly 20 beats per minute very shortly after it had been swallowed.

On the other hand, three tumblerfuls of water at a temperature of  $45^{\circ}$  F. produced a lowering of the axillary temperature from  $98.4^{\circ}$  F. to  $97.7^{\circ}$  F., while the pulse-rate fell from 70 to 61 per minute.<sup>1</sup>

The *local effects of extremes of temperature* in the stomach are very much the same whether the extreme be one of heat or of cold. In each case there is a danger of exciting gastric catarrh. Very hot foods seem to be specially dangerous in stomach-bleedings, e.g. ulcer; and there are some who say that the special liability of cooks to suffer from gastric

<sup>1</sup> Most of the effects detailed must be due to reflex vasodilatation or constriction of the skin bloodvessels.

ulcer is to be attributed to their constantly tasting very hot foods. On the other hand, very warm fluids may relieve pain in the stomach by abolishing pyloric spasm.

The temperature most suited for drinks intended to *quench thirst* is one of from 50° to 70° F. Ices are supposed to cause dyspepsia, cardialgia, and even acute dilatation of the stomach, although small quantities of ice undoubtedly tend to allay gastric irritability. Possibly the English fear of the dietetic use of ice and ices is exaggerated.

**5. The Digestion of Proteins.** The digestion of protein is initiated in the stomach. Ultimately protein has to be disintegrated into its component amino acids before it is of use to the body. The pepsin of the gastric juice does not carry digestion any great distance. Its function is to attack the huge molecules of protein and resolve them into smaller fragments which have, however, still a large molecular weight. Apparently the acid of the gastric juice first combines with the protein and then the pepsin begins its work. The first product is the metaprotein known as acid albumin or syntonin. The next product is primary albumose (or proteose) and the next, secondary albumose. These are in a descending scale of molecular magnitude. Peptones are also found in peptic digests. These form a group of still lower-sized molecules and are feebly diffusible through animal membranes. Most peptic digests consist of a mixture of all these partially digested proteins together with a small amount of free amino acids. How far such digestion proceeds in the stomach depends upon the length of time the protein food remains there and upon the amount of pepsin secreted. There is some evidence that pepsin attacks not the peptide linkages in protein but some other type of linkage, and there are a few proteins which are better digested if gastric digestion precedes pancreatic digestion.

On the whole it must be admitted that gastric digestion of protein is not indispensable and its importance can easily be over-estimated, as in the fallacious rationale underlying the Hay diet.<sup>1</sup> As said before, digestion of protein is initiated in the stomach, but it is only carried to the full extent of complete chemical disintegration into amino acids in the small intestine under the influence of trypsin and erepsin.

Milk undergoes clotting in the stomach and according to most observers this is due to a special ferment, rennin which turns the caseinogen of milk into casein and the latter combining with calcium gives a clot of the insoluble calcium caseinate. Some people regard this clot formation as the result of an early stage of digestion of the caseinogen by the pepsin. The bearing on dietetics is that milk clots in the stomach, that skimmed milk forms a very tough clot, raw whole milk a tough clot, pasteurized milk and boiled milk softer clots, and dried

<sup>1</sup> See p. 594.

milk when reconstituted a friable clot. The digestibility varies with the size and nature of the clot.

**6. The Production of the Hæmatinic Principle.** Apparently another substance (Castle's intrinsic factor) is secreted into the stomach, but from the pyloric end, which, acting on "extrinsic substance," cyanocobalamine (vitamin B<sub>12</sub>) in foods, e.g. beef, liver, etc., enables it to cross the barrier of the intestinal mucous membrane. Patients with pernicious anæmia do not make this "intrinsic factor."

**Absorptive Power of the Stomach.** The absorptive power of the stomach is surprisingly small. In this also one may see a provision for the protection of the body, for it allows of the neutralization or rejection of injurious substances before they have time to enter the blood. Alcohol, curiously enough, is of all substances, that which the stomach absorbs most readily. This partly explains the rapid action of alcohol. Peptone, sugars, and salts are also absorbed by the stomach. The stronger the alcohol, or the more concentrated the solution of these substances, the greater is the degree of absorption.

There is reason to believe that the process of absorption by the stomach is much more of the nature of a mere diffusion than is the case in the intestine, and the process is accompanied by the pouring out of a good deal of secretion. The practical bearings of absorption in the stomach will be more fully dealt with when we come to consider the dietetic treatment of gastric dilatation.

### DIGESTION IN THE SMALL INTESTINE

When the partially digested food leaves the stomach it enters the first part of the duodenum as a mass where it may remain for a time. Ultimately, either by being pushed on by newly arrived food from the stomach or by contraction of the circular muscles of the duodenum, it is passed into the second portion of the duodenum and is there very rapidly "fragmented."<sup>1</sup> Or the fragmentation may be delayed till the food has reached the jejunum. This fragmentation, due neither to the segmentation nor to the peristalsis seen so well in animals, is probably brought about by the *muscularis mucosæ*, and is obviously of great importance. By its means the food is brought intimately into contact with the digestive juices poured into the small intestine by the pancreas, by the crypts of Lieberkühn and the liver.

The pancreas is partly under the control of the vagus, which, according to J. Mellanby, causes it to secrete ferments,<sup>2</sup> and partly under the influence of the hormone, secretin,<sup>3</sup> which, dissolved by the bile salts

<sup>1</sup> BARCLAY, A. E. (1936), *The Digestive Tract*, 2nd edn., 162. O.U.P.

<sup>2</sup> MELLANBY, J. (1926), *Journ. Physiol.*, **61**, 122, 419, 489.

<sup>3</sup> MELLANBY, J. (1925), *Journ. Physiol.*, **60**, 85.

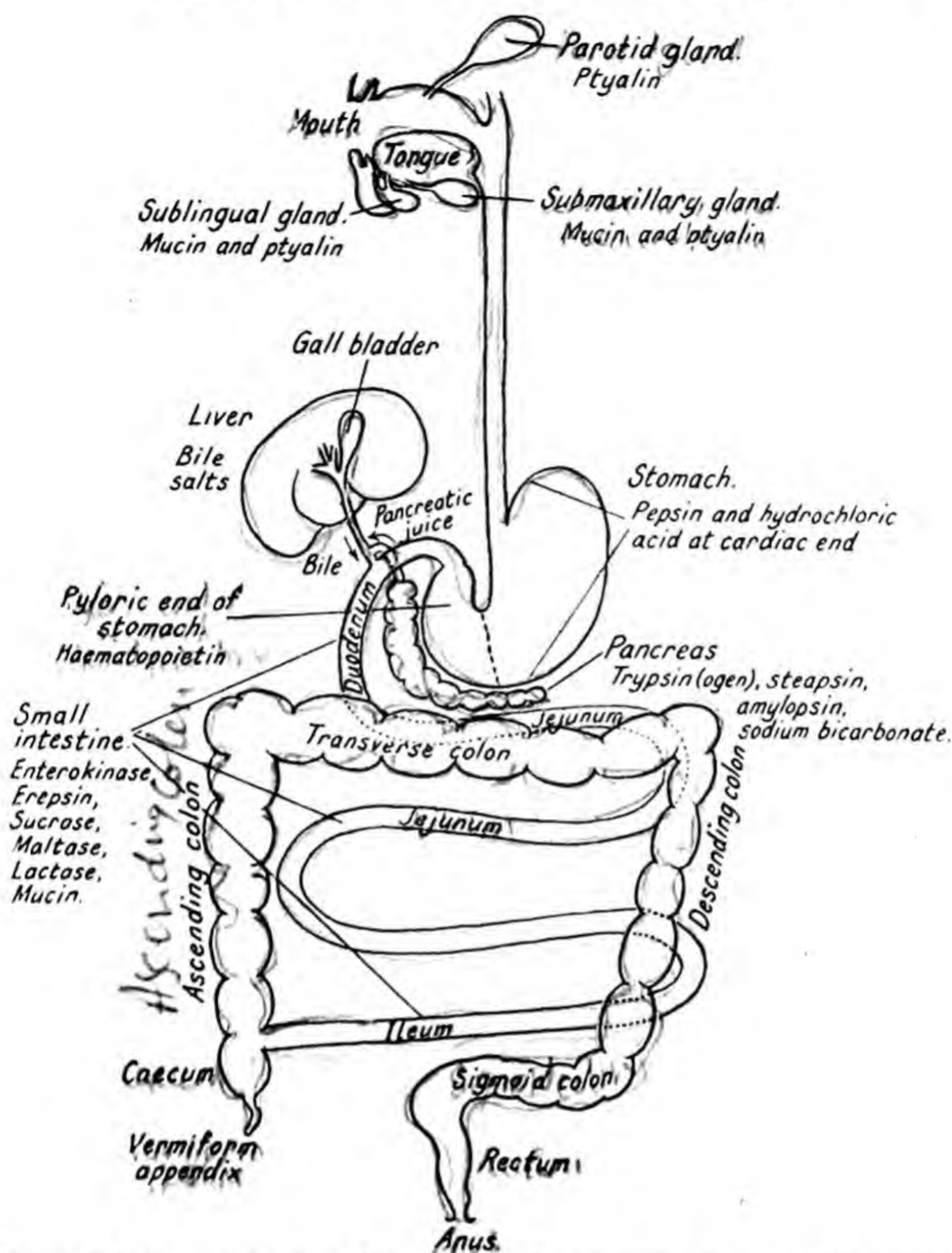


FIG. 10.—DIAGRAM OF THE ALIMENTARY CANAL WITH THE GLANDS WHICH SECRETE INTO IT.

in the bile and absorbed into the blood-stream, causes the pancreas to secrete an alkaline juice low in ferments. The crypts of Lieberkühn also seem to be controlled partly by nerves and partly by endocrine influences, and the same claim is made concerning the contraction of the gall-bladder which empties the bile into the intestine.

The pancreatic juice contains one potential ferment, and two ferments, steapsin and amylopsin. The proferment, trypsinogen, has to

meet the ferment enterokinase of the intestinal juice before it is turned into the very active ferment trypsin. The intestinal juice contains in addition to the enterokinase, erepsin, nucleases, lactase, maltase and invertase; while the bile contains bile salt.

Trypsin digests either undigested or semidigested protein, breaking into the peptide linkages, freeing a good deal of amino acids but not, however, digesting every peptide linkage. In order to bring all proteins to amino acids, erepsin is needed to follow up the action of trypsin. It is the function of these two ferments to complete the digestion of protein whether or not it has been initiated by pepsin.

Fat in the human small intestine is probably hydrolysed by the steapsin of pancreatic juice to glycerol and fatty acid, and the latter in the presence of any alkali will become a soap. But there is evidence that fat can be absorbed as such in a highly emulsified form.

Starch, dextrans, and glycogen are hydrolysed by the amylopsin of the pancreatic juice to maltose.

Nucleases attack the nucleic acid of the nucleoproteins and disintegrate them into phosphoric acid, purine bases, carbohydrate, and pyrimidine nucleosides; lactase attacks the lactose of milk and hydrolyses it to glucose and galactose; maltase hydrolyses maltose to glucose; and invertase hydrolyses sucrose to glucose and fructose.

Thus in the small intestine all the foods which need digesting are thoroughly digested into substances which are crystalloidal (and therefore diffusible), and acceptable to the cells of the body which they are intended to nourish. Nothing short of this is of any use, and if proteins or polypeptides or disaccharide sugars get into the blood-stream they either cause disturbance or are excreted unused in the urine.

**Absorption in the Small Intestine.** Practically the whole of the absorption of food-stuffs takes place in the small intestine. As stated above a small amount of sugar may be absorbed in the stomach, but the amount is almost negligible. All the protein as amino acids, all the carbohydrate as hexose sugars and all the fat, probably in man as fatty acids and glycerol, which are absorbed, are absorbed in the small intestine. So too are the inorganic salts and the vitamins.<sup>1</sup> Also at least four-fifths of the water drunk is absorbed by the villi of the small intestine. In fact that organ is remarkably efficient in the completeness and the rapidity with which it works.

As we have seen, at least 95 per cent. of digestible proteins, 97 per cent. of fats and 97 per cent. of digestible carbohydrates are absorbed. The figure may actually be higher, because in making this estimate it is assumed that the protein, fat and carbohydrate in the faeces are derived from the food. This assumption is probably untrue. The nitrogenous material of the faeces may well be derived from secretion of

<sup>1</sup> But see below, pp. 214 and 215.

digestive juices and not from the protein of the food and it is not impossible that the fat and carbohydrate of the faeces come from the same source. The "fat" resembles the blood lipoids.

No physico-chemical explanation accounts for the power of the intestinal mucous membrane to absorb materials from its lumen. It absorbs what it wants, or what the body wants, despite osmotic, filtrative, and diffusion gradients which may be working in the wrong direction. But this is not to say that these gradients do not affect absorption. Magnesium sulphate exerts a back osmotic pressure because it is not absorbed and thwarts—hence its aperient action—the attempts of the intestine to absorb water and substances dissolved in water. Meulengracht<sup>1</sup> has even related a failure to absorb calcium from the diet, with a resulting spinal caries, to the use of purgatives. Further, anything which hurries the contents of the small intestine on their way to the colon, e.g., a consumption of large amounts of roughage, may prevent the absorption of the normal percentage of the various constituents of the diet. This largely accounts for the lowered percentages absorbed from a mainly vegetarian diet. Any régime which utilizes large amounts of roughage or purgatives will entail (i) loss of nutrient material to the body; (ii) the passage of unabsorbed proteins, fats, and carbohydrates into the large intestine, with consequences detailed in later paragraphs.

Because the secretions of the pancreas and intestinal glands are alkaline it is often assumed that the contents of the small intestine are alkaline or at any rate neutral. This is probably not the case. Samples of human duodenal contents show an acid reaction ( $pH$  between 6 and 7). Also observations of patients with intestinal fistulae suggest that acidity is usual throughout the small intestine.<sup>2</sup> One of the functions ascribed to vitamin D is that it enables the small intestine to remain acid throughout its length and thus facilitates the absorption of calcium salts.<sup>3</sup> Acidity of the small intestine also increases the absorption of iron. This acidity is due not so much to the failure of the glandular excretions to neutralize the acid of the gastric juice as to the growth of acid-producing bacilli. Through their action upon carbohydrate, acetic, butyric, and lactic acids are produced. In intestinal disorders in which there is an extension of the putrefactive, alkali-producing bacteria of the large intestine, there is a case to be made out for the increasing of carbohydrate in the diet, or better still adding

<sup>1</sup> *Lancet*, 1938, 2, 774.

<sup>2</sup> This generally accepted observation invalidates the theory upon which the Hay diet is based.

<sup>3</sup> By this we do not mean that calcium cannot be absorbed from an alkaline small intestine. A positive calcium balance was observed by one of us (G. G.) in a case of renal rickets when the patient was given heavy doses of alkalis and a large dose of vitamin D.

lactose which is not easily digested and absorbed and therefore passed further down the intestine unabsorbed than the other sugars. Recourse too may be had to cultures of *Bacillus acidophilus*, one of the normal inhabitants of the intestine. It may be well also to remind the reader again of the value of milk as an intestinal antiseptic.

The contents of the small intestine remain fluid throughout its length; water and substances in solution being absorbed at the same or approximately the same rate. At the lower end of the ileum the amount of solid matter is only 5 to 10 per cent. The advantage of a fluid diet in intestinal ulceration can therefore only be due to the absence from it of things, such as roughage, which would cause mechanical irritation of the walls of the intestine.

Judging from the rate of passage of a meal opaque to X-rays, the ileo-colic sphincter is reached 2 to 3 hours after a meal and the cæcum begins to fill at the 4th hour (i.e. at the time of the next meal). At the 6th hour the last of the meal is in the ileum. Consequently the major portion of the digestion of a meal and the absorption of the whole of it is accomplished in the 3 to 4 hours during which the meal is in the small intestine.

### DIGESTION IN THE LARGE INTESTINE

The contents of the lower end of the ileum pass on into the colon at times related to the taking of the next meal. There is a growing belief that the different parts of the alimentary tract are nervously integrated. Thus the ileo-colic sphincter is thought to open when a new instalment of food passes into the stomach at a meal, and there is some evidence that the pyloric sphincter is also integrated with the ileo-colic. Be that as it may, the cæcum begins to fill 4 hours after a meal, at the 6th hour the head of the meal is at the hepatic flexure but its tail is in the ileum. At the 10th hour all has passed the ileo-colic sphincter and may be in the sigmoid colon ready to be evacuated, or the residue of the meal may accumulate in the transverse and descending colon and only reach the sigmoid colon in the 20th–24th hour. These are of course average figures only—there are great individual variations, particularly in the rate of passage through the large intestine. Often the indigestible debris of the evening meal (e.g. tomato skins) may be voided the next morning, i.e. 12 hours later, and the sigmoid colon reached decidedly earlier.

It will be noticed that there is a considerable slowing up of the rate of passage of the meal in the large intestine. Whereas the first two-thirds of the alimentary tract may be traversed in 4–6 hours, the remaining third *may* take 18–24 hours. Indeed it does by no means follow that all the debris of a meal will be voided either 24 hours, 48 hours or 72 hours afterwards.

The rate of passage through the large intestine is normally increased by vegetable foods either by the mechanical stimulus due to their coarse indigestible fibres or by chemical breakdown products of vegetable cell walls and this has led to the erroneous belief that constipation can be invariably relieved by "roughage." There are colons along which the passage of food debris, etc., is slow because they are atonic (the lazy colons) and colons which allow but slow passage because their circular muscles enter into a spasm (the spastic colons). Roughage still further delays the passage of faeces along spastic colons. X-ray examinations—which according to Barclay are the only certain means of judging (*a*) whether constipation exists, and (*b*) its nature—whether atonic or spastic—show that in from 30–50 per cent. of cases examined the constipation is due to spasticity. Hurst states that the spastic colon is five times as frequent in females as in males.

Antiperistaltic movements in the ascending colon forcing material back into the cæcum, so commonly seen in animals, are absent in the normal human being. The only movements seen are (i) a very slow, small, to and fro movement within each haustral segment, and (ii) sudden "mass movements," as first described by Hurst and by Holzknecht. These latter are important. They occur perhaps three or four times a day immediately after a meal. As a preliminary the haustrations of the colon disappear and the colon walls are relaxed. Then the circular muscles (presumably) contract, beginning proximally, and sweep the column of intestinal contents in front onwards, it may be, for a couple of feet or more. The movement dies out, and the haustrations reappear. The "mass movement" may carry the colonic contents down into the sigmoid colon and on into the rectum, thus sounding the "call to stool." It is probable that these mass movements are related to the taking of a meal and account for the "call to stool" which so frequently is felt soon after breakfast or, failing breakfast, one of the other large meals in the day.

As said above, the contents of the ileum are fluid—they contain some 90 per cent. water. Much of this water is abstracted as these contents pass into and down the colon and the faeces when formed and voided contain about 50 per cent. If the passage has been quick along the colon the faeces will be more fluid and if slow more solid. So long as the diet has been digestible the composition of the faeces is remarkably constant, though the diet may be very varied as regards content. This points to the faeces being derived rather from secretions of the alimentary tract than from unabsorbed food.

But if the diet has been indigestible, has been taken in excessive amount, or swallowed too rapidly for thorough chewing; or if the food has been hurried along the alimentary tract by drugs, irritability of the gut, roughage or food poisoning, undigested and unabsorbed products of

digestion will pass into the colon. Here they form a fine pabulum for the bacterial flora of the large gut. Proteins and amino acids may be broken down and deaminated or decarboxylated to phenols, indol, histamine, tyramine, etc. Carbohydrates may be converted to marsh gas, hydrogen, butyric and lactic acids, and fats to fatty acids and glycerol. The products of protein decomposition are poisonous if they get into the bloodstreams, and escape the detoxicating influence of the liver. There is little evidence that they ever do, but upon the imaginary evidence that they do, were based the mutilating operations on the large gut during the opening years of this century and all the food and medical fads which are centred on the view that the large intestine is a poisonous cess-pool. The undoubted secondary symptoms of constipation—raised blood pressure, headache, nervousness, evil taste in the mouth, and foul breath—are due to distension of the colon and not to toxæmia.

If there are formed elements in the fæces, apart from the large numbers of dead and living microbes, it is a sign of unsatisfactory digestion. Muscle fibres of the meat eaten should not be present. If they are, food has been bolted, or eaten in too large amounts, or peptic and pancreatic digestion is poor. If starch grains are found it means either that the starchy foods were not properly cooked or that they were hurried along the gut by roughage and purgatives or were enclosed in vegetable cell walls.

In any case incomplete digestion and absorption of foods in the small intestine makes for offensive fluid stools and intestinal distension. The bearing of this upon dietetic habits, cooking, and dietetic hygiene is fairly clear.

Until 1940, research had shown that the large intestine absorbed nothing but water and glucose from its lumen and the possession of such an organ has been somewhat of a puzzle to biologists. The bird has practically none, the carnivores a short one and the herbivores one much longer. Man is in an intermediate position. His intestine is sterile at birth but within a very few hours it is invaded by microbes. If these are dangerous, as Metchnikoff and others have thought, why has such an organ been retained? Others have maintained that the microbic flora of the large intestine serve a useful purpose, though it was shown by Nuttall early in this century that guinea-pigs can be reared under conditions in which their large intestines remain sterile. Since 1940 evidence has been accumulating that the flora of the large intestine manufacture vitamins of the B complex, that these pass into the fluids in which the microbes are being cultured and are absorbed into the blood stream. Thus man can absorb at times sufficient thiamine, riboflavine, nicotinic acid and probably the other moieties of the B complex from the incubator formed by his large intestine. At any rate

these moieties from the large intestine are a very useful supplement of those taken in the food. Confirmatory of these observations are the fact that thiamine, riboflavine and nicotinic acid can be rapidly absorbed from enemata.<sup>1</sup> Microbes of the large intestine can also manufacture vitamin K in adequate amounts for absorption.

Consequently we may consider this production and absorption of vitamins an important function of the large intestine acting as an incubator for commensal microbes, and we can also see a danger in removing it surgically, using bacteriostatic chemicals which will depress the activity of these microbes or adopting a freak diet which may alter the nature of the intestinal flora.

Until recently it was believed that the large intestine is an excretory organ for excess of calcium, phosphorus and iron in the blood but to-day this view is discredited as the result of a long series of experiments by McCance and Widdowson.<sup>2</sup> Any of these elements found in the faeces are there because either they have not been absorbed from the alimentary tract or have formed a normal part of the succus entericus.

**A summary of the digestion of a mixed meal** may serve to gather up a number of the scattered facts which have been mentioned in the preceding paragraphs:

The complex sensation called "hunger" impels one to seek food.

The sight and smell of the food awakens the sensation of "appetite," and with it there begins a flow of digestive juices, most marked in the case of the stomach. The soup, which usually forms the first course, by virtue of its warmth and of the extractives which it contains, accelerates and increases the secretion of the gastric juice. The solid part of the food is chewed to a pulp in the mouth, and unless acid substances are mixed with it, part of its starch is changed into maltose. Arrived in the stomach, it encounters the "psychic" juice already secreted, the acid of which combines with the proteins of the food. In this way the acidity of the stomach contents is kept down, and the action of the saliva upon the starch is allowed to continue. As the solids become digested by the "psychic" juice, their chemical constituents are set free, and themselves begin to excite a secretion fitted for their own digestion.

Meanwhile, the acidity of the contents induced by vagal action and the presence of the food goes on increasing, and brings to an end any further action of the saliva upon starch; it kills or paralyzes many of the organisms swallowed with the food, while at the same time the peristaltic movements of the stomach begin. Under the influence of

<sup>1</sup> NAJJAR *et al.* (1943 and 1944), *Journ. Amer. med. Ass.*, 123, 683, and 126, 357, cited *Lancet* (1944), 2, 854.

<sup>2</sup> See, for example, McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1937), *Lancet*, 2, 680.

these, the gastric juice and the food are mixed, and the temperature of the mass adjusted to that of the body. As digestion proceeds, the semi-fluid part of the contents, along with any excess of fluid which has been swallowed, finds its way into the pyloric end of the stomach, and by the systolic contractions of the latter is propelled into the duodenum. This process continues for about 4 or 5 hours, by the end of which time the stomach is again empty. During all this time absorption of alcohol and minute quantities of peptone, sugar, and salts has been taking place.

Arrived in the duodenum, the food encounters the secretion of the pancreas already called out by psychical influences via the vagus, and now increased by the action of the hormone secretin. Here digestion is completed, and as the food is carried along the small intestine its constituents are rapidly absorbed into the blood, or chyle. During this time certain bacteria, which have escaped the action of the gastric juice, are busy breaking up any carbohydrates which may be present, producing from them organic acids, which restrain the putrefaction of the protein constituents of the food that would otherwise be apt to occur. The fluid poured out by the glands of the small intestine in the attempt to neutralize these acids partly makes up for the absorption of water, and causes the contents of the ileum to remain fluid until the large intestine is reached. The absorption of the digestion products of protein, fat, carbohydrate, together with water, inorganic salts, and vitamins takes place in the small intestine. Beyond this point the production of acids ceases, and the rapid absorption of water causes the contents to assume a solid form, while putrefactive bacteria are able to grow unchecked, save by the products of their own activity. Vitamins of the B complex made by microbes in the large intestine, pass out into the substrate and are absorbed. Finally the residue is expelled in the form of faeces, usually from 8 to 24 hours or more after the food was swallowed.

The respective *influence of exercise and rest* on the processes of digestion is disputed. Beaumont, from his observations on St. Martin, came to the conclusion that *gentle* exercise aided digestion, and Hellebrandt and Miles, a hundred years later<sup>1</sup> agree, finding that moderate exercise before a meal increases the acidity of gastric juice; moderate exercise after a meal decreases it, and exhausting exercise before a meal seriously decreases it. The whole question is probably one of blood-supply. Gentle exercise, by increasing the rapidity of the circulation, may aid the secretion of digestive juices and stimulate the movements of the stomach. Severe exercise, on the other hand, by diverting much blood and nervous energy to the muscles, may be expected to have adverse effect.

<sup>1</sup> *Amer. Journ. Physiol.* (1932), 102, 258.

adverse

On the whole one can agree with King Chambers, that the best employment after a heavy meal is "frivolous conversation," which keeps the heart active without making great demands upon the brain. Rabelais, Chaucer, and even Solomon may be interpreted in the same direction.

### Metabolism of the Products of Digestion of Food

For an understanding of the principles of dietetics as applied in treatment a few paragraphs upon the metabolism of proteins, fats, and carbohydrates are essential. For reasons which later will become obvious we will start with the *Carbohydrates*.

These enter the bloodstream from the lumen of the small intestine in the form of the hexose sugars, glucose, fructose, and galactose. If lactose gets into the general circulation as the result of the activity of the mammary gland during lactation, it is excreted by the kidneys.

These sugars reach the bloodstream via the portal vein and it used to be stated that in health they were all absorbed by the liver and that the sugar in the systemic blood was not increased after a carbohydrate meal. This hypothesis was disproved as soon as it was possible to estimate the sugar in small amounts of blood, 0.1 ml. to 1 ml. instead of 10 to 20 ml. and therefore to collect the blood at frequent intervals after the meal. We now know that the fasting value of the blood sugar varies from 0.08 to 0.12 per cent. and is the same in the arterial, capillary, and venous blood. The sugar begins to increase in the blood within 10 minutes after a dose of glucose and a little later after a carbohydrate meal, and usually reaches a maximum after 30 minutes. This is about 0.18 per cent. in the capillary blood, say, of the finger, and about 0.15 per cent. in the venous blood of the arm vein. The blood sugar either returns to the fasting value within 1 hour or at the most 2 hours, and the amount in the capillary and venous bloods is once more identical. The difference between the capillary and venous blood after a dose of sugar suggests that the sugar is being stored in the muscles of the limb. This is confirmed by the experiments of Burn and Dale,<sup>1</sup> and Best, Hoet, and Marks,<sup>2</sup> on a decapitated dog which had been completely eviscerated except for the liver. They found that when insulin and sugar were added to the defibrinated blood the sugar disappeared from the blood and was laid down in the muscles as glycogen.

The mechanism by which the sugar is laid down as glycogen in the liver is not yet clear. Goldblatt showed that when sugar and insulin were given to young rabbits the glycogen was deposited in the liver,

<sup>1</sup> BURN, J. H., and DALE, H. H. (1924-25), *Journ. Physiol.*, **59**, 164.

<sup>2</sup> BEST, C. H., HOET, J. P., and MARKS, H. P. (1926), *Proc. Roy. Soc., LONDON*, Series B, **99**, 32.

but showed that this only occurred in very young rabbits. If, however, adrenalin was given to older rabbits simultaneously with the sugar and insulin, glycogen was then laid down in the liver.

The path of fructose must be different from that of glucose, for the rise in blood sugar after 50 g. is not so great as after 50 g. of glucose. If the blood sugar rises more than 25 mg. it is believed that the liver is damaged. This suggests that the fructose is taken up by the liver as it passes through the portal veins in the liver and that only the excess appears in the peripheral circulation. Similarly galactose is rapidly converted into glycogen in the liver, but there is some evidence that the glycogen made from galactose contains 18 glucose units as against the 12-unit glycogen made from glucose.<sup>1</sup>

The belief that glucose, fructose, and galactose play different parts in the body is supported by the observation that the hypoglycæmia produced by insulin cannot be relieved by fructose or galactose, though glucose at once causes the disappearance of the symptoms.

The carbohydrate eaten and absorbed is partly used for supplying the energy of the muscular contraction and any excess is in some way transformed into fat, presumably in the liver, and then laid down in the fat depots, etc.

This does not concern us here any more save to say that in the transformation, a good deal of carbon dioxide is eliminated and excreted by the lungs, thus raising the respiratory quotient. The carbohydrate used for the production of energy is transferred by the bloodstream to the tissue which needs it and there it is oxidized to carbon dioxide and water, step by step by a series of enzymes and co-enzymes, involving thiamine and possibly riboflavine and nicotinamide.

In the absence of insulin, the internal secretion of the pancreas, the sugar cannot be laid down in the muscles as glycogen and, in some way not understood, the oxidation of the sugar is unable to proceed.

In the absence of thiamine, the oxidation is only able to proceed as far as the stage of pyruvic acid and then ceases.

The end products of normal carbohydrate metabolism are carbon dioxide and water, and these can be very easily eliminated from the body. Sometimes it is true that an intermediate product escapes into the blood and is in part secreted by the kidney. For example, in violent muscular exertion some of the lactic acid, which is an intermediate product of carbohydrate metabolism, gets from the muscles into the blood and, though it should be taken up by the liver and transformed into glycogen again, some of it is excreted by the kidney and so wasted. Also the kidney is involved in the excretion of pyruvic acid in beri-beri. In diabetes the kidney is involved in a twofold way. First it must

<sup>1</sup> BELL. (1935), *Biochem. Journ.*, 29, 2031; (1936), 30, 2144. See also STEWART and THOMPSON. (1941), *Biochem. Journ.*, 35, 245.

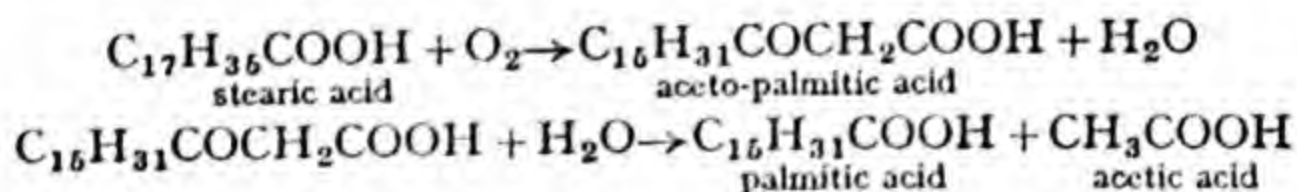
remove the excess above the threshold of glucose in the bloodstream and secondly it removes the acetone bodies which are due to an arrested metabolism of fat, because metabolizable carbohydrate is needed for the complete oxidation of fat and in diabetes the carbohydrate is not completely metabolizable.

### Fat Metabolism

Fat is needed for four purposes: (i) as fuel, (ii) because it provides the necessary fatty acids for the manufacture of the lipines, e.g. lecithin, which form so indispensable a part of nervous tissues, blood cells, and other cells, (iii) as padding and support of organs, e.g. the kidney and (iv) for the beauty of the human figure.

Sixty per cent. of the fat absorbed from the small intestine passes by way of the lymph channels (lacteoles, lacteals, and thoracic duct) into the venous blood in the left subclavian vein. It thus avoids the liver on its first circuit of the circulatory system and may in part be laid down in the fat depots for later use. When pork fat is eaten, pig fat is laid down in the fat depots; when mutton fat is eaten, fat characteristic of the sheep is laid down in those depots.<sup>1</sup> Fat manufactured from carbohydrate has more of the nature of the fat that characterizes the animal eating the carbohydrate. The most modern view is that the hydrolysed part of the fat travels via the portal vein whereas the unhydrolysed fat, the missing 40 per cent., reaches the blood stream via the thoracic duct. After a meal containing large amounts of fat, the general bloodstream becomes milky and the liver contains an excess of fat, visible under the microscope and estimable by chemical analysis.<sup>2</sup>

Almost certainly the lipines are manufactured in the liver and almost certainly fatty acids undergo many of the steps in their oxidation in the liver. Probably the fatty acids are broken down by two carbon atoms at a time to form acetic acid and the next but one lower homologues. Thus it is presumed that stearic acid is oxidized via aceto-palmitic acid to acetic acid and palmitic acid.



This continues until butyric acid  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$  is reached which is oxidized to aceto-acetic acid, as in the parallel case of stearic acid, but then the mechanism breaks down if there be no carbohydrate in

<sup>1</sup> This is not absolutely true. SCHOENHEIMER. (1942), *The Dynamic State of Body Constituents*, has shown that even in the fat depots, those apparently secluded parts of the circulation, an interchange continually takes place between circulating fats and depot fats and within the depots marked changes occur.

<sup>2</sup> See FRAZER, A. C. (1950), *Food Man.*, 25, 23.

the liver or if there is no insulin present to enable the carbohydrate to burn the aceto-acetic acid. The latter either passes as such into the bloodstream, or is reduced by the liver to  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid.<sup>1</sup> These are excreted in the urine and in the urine the aceto-acetic acid passes spontaneously to acetone. This spontaneous change also occurs in the blood.

The three substances,  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid, aceto-acetic acid, and acetone are called the *acetone bodies*. The acetone is excreted by the lungs and is noticeable in the breath as a smell of sweet apples. In mild cases of *ketosis*, the name given to the state when acetone bodies are being excreted, more aceto-acetic acid than  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid is present in the urine, but, in the more severe stages, the  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric increases and forms about 70 per cent. of the total acetone bodies in the urine.<sup>2</sup> Very small amounts of acetone are present in freshly passed urine, but they rapidly increase when the urine stands in a warm place owing to the spontaneous breakdown of the aceto-acetic acid.<sup>3</sup>

In any state when a large amount of fat is being metabolized without sufficient carbohydrate "to take care of it" a ketosis results. Such stages are:

(1) When the amount of carbohydrate in the diet is very small, or when the amount of fat in the diet is very large and only moderate amounts of carbohydrate are eaten.

(2) When the patient is vomiting a great deal, e.g. in (a) cyclical vomiting of children, (b) toxic vomiting of pregnancy, (c) post-anæsthetic vomiting, and (d) vomiting in the course of zymotic diseases in children.

(3) In severe diabetes when sugar cannot be used for the burning of the fatty acids.

Whenever, then, we want to check a ketosis we either give large amounts of cane sugar, fructose, or glucose by mouth or we make the blood sugar more available by giving insulin. If necessary glucose may be injected intravenously. In the case of diabetes mellitus we give a sufficient amount of insulin to ensure that the sugar is used.

A dietetically produced ketosis was once used to alleviate epilepsy and cystitis, but better methods are now employed. See p. 587.

### Protein Metabolism

The proteins are absorbed as amino acids and pass to the liver. If carbohydrate has not been taken at the same meal these amino acids

<sup>1</sup> HURTLEY, W. H. (1913) *Lancet*, I, 1160.

<sup>2</sup> KENNAWAY. (1914). *Biochem. Journ.*, 8, 355.

<sup>3</sup> FOLIN. (1907). *Journ. Biol. Chem.*, 3, 177. HURTLEY, W. H. *loc. cit.*

are used as fuel (exogenous protein metabolism);<sup>1</sup> if they are accompanied by carbohydrate they pass to the tissues other than the liver and are transformed into tissue protein or into nucleo-protein or into substances such as creatine and adenylic acid used in muscle metabolism (endogenous protein metabolism).

In *exogenous nitrogen metabolism* the amino acids are deaminated in the liver and transformed either into glucose or into fatty acid. An amino acid such as alanine will be transformed into glucose by a series of steps simply (probably much too simply) indicated thus:



More than half the nitrogen of the protein of exogenous nitrogen metabolism passes by this path. The remainder passes by the fatty acid path to butyric acid; thence to aceto-acetic acid and if there be carbohydrate available to carbon dioxide and water. The ammonia formed by each deamination is transformed in the liver to urea, which passing into the bloodstream is excreted by the kidney in the urine. Thus one *main product of exogenous protein metabolism is urea*. The kidney also plays a rôle, for if healthy it is capable of either making ammonia or taking it up from the blood in order to neutralize the acids which have to be excreted by the kidney. When the kidneys are damaged by a chronic interstitial condition it loses this power and the patient may develop an acidæmia.<sup>2</sup> Two pathological products of exogenous protein metabolism are *glucose* and acetone bodies, as in severe diabetes.

We have considered in a previous chapter in the section on acid-base equilibrium two other end products of exogenous protein metabolism—phosphoric and sulphuric acids.

The bearing of all these considerations will become clear when we deal with diet in nephritis with uræmia or with inability to excrete an acid urine and also when we deal with diabetes.

In *endogenous protein metabolism* the body builds from amino acids such substances as creatine and purine bodies. Oddly enough though it can manufacture these substances from amino acids it does not seem able to decompose them via the same paths by which it manufactured them. Thus some of the creatine when it has served its purpose in muscle contraction escapes into the bloodstream and is transformed into creatinine and excreted in the urine. And the purines, which can be

<sup>1</sup> It will be remembered that the distinction between endogenous and exogenous protein metabolism is not quite so clear as it once was. None the less the older and simpler account of protein metabolism is satisfactory for the purposes of practical dietetics.

<sup>2</sup> LINDER, G. C. (1926-27). *Quart. Journ. Med.*, 20, 283.

synthesized from amino acids and are used in the processes concerned in muscle contraction and in the manufacture of nucleoproteins, are transformed into uric acid when they are degraded and excreted. These purines, adenine and guanine, are oxidized by the liver through hypoxanthine and xanthine to uric acid and the kidney excretes them as urates in man, the anthropoid ape and the Dalmatian dog alone of the mammals.

Two end-products of endogenous protein metabolism are creatinine and the urates. At the same time urea, sulphates, and phosphates will be formed, so that the *whole* of exogenous metabolism is not shown by the urea produced. As meat contains creatine and free and combined purine bodies, and tea, coffee, and cocoa have methyl purines in them, some of which the body oxidizes to uric acid, not all the creatine and uric acid in the urine represent endogenous metabolism. Half of the uric acid excreted on a normal diet is exogenous in origin.

The bearing on dietetics is as follows. The body in gout has difficulty in excreting uric acid. We therefore try to protect it from having too much to deal with (i) by forbidding all foods which are especially rich in purines, e.g. all foods containing many nuclei (see pp. 537-9); (ii) by reducing the total protein intake of the diet and giving adequate amounts of fat and carbohydrate.

meat is efficient  
base

سازنده و مفید است  
در بدن و به خصوص  
در عضلات و در  
سازنده و مفید است  
در بدن و به خصوص  
در عضلات و در

## CHAPTER XI

### NORMAL DIETETICS

It is time now to sum up the preceding chapters of this book in their relation to the problem of normal dietetics. As has been emphasized earlier, there is no one scheme of diet which is perfect. In the first place we have not as yet reached finality in the subject and in the second we have to make so much allowance for individual idiosyncrasy that a hard and fast rule cannot be laid down. We realize that this gives a wonderful chance for the food faddist to find even experimental basis for his practices, but we would call attention again to the fact that what will suit one person should by no means be the rule for everyone. In suggesting dietary standards, as we propose to do, we bear in mind Atwater's dictum that a dietary standard is only an indication and not a rule.

**The Number of Meals per Day.** The practice of the human race varies in different parts of the world. The Kaffir in the mines of South Africa prefers to work without food and takes one enormous meal at the end of the day. In the majority of countries with a civilization dating back only a hundred years or so it is the custom to take three meals a day. In the longer-settled countries the number of meals is often more. Moreover the times at which meals are taken varies with the century and the country. What man does or has done is no guide to the best number and nature of his meals, and appeal must be made to research.

This has been attempted by Haggard and Greenberg<sup>1</sup> in the United States, a country with a settled habit of taking three meals a day. A convincing series of experiments upon laboratory workers, school teachers, children, and factory operatives showed that muscular efficiency, earning efficiency in piece work and freedom from a feeling of fatigue and irritability were best obtained by a schedule of five meals a day, three of them the conventional meals and two smaller meals half-way in between. This work has been followed up by research in absenteeism and relation of food habits thereto. It was found that the careless, eat-between-meals type of person showed much less absenteeism than the meticulous follower of scheduled mealtimes; that absenteeism was increased by missing meals and that in a controlled

<sup>1</sup> HAGGARD and GREENBERG. (1935). *Diet. and Physical Efficiency*. Yale University Press.

experiment when the missing of the meals was purposely schematized the absenteeism followed closely the missing of the meals. The English practice among the well-to-do conforms to this plan if we accept the growing habit of the mid-morning snack. Breakfast, "elevenses," lunch, afternoon tea, evening meal correspond to Haggard and Greenberg's schedule, but the authors make the point that the food consumed at the smaller meals should be of the "protective"<sup>1</sup> type. Otherwise if calorigenous foods only are taken at these meals, the appetite at the meals when protective foods are served will be decreased and there will be a decrease in the consumption of such foods. If Haggard and Greenberg's schedule be adopted the side meals should contain milk and fruit, or, say, the popular egg and cress and the tomato sandwich of afternoon tea in this country.

**Nature of Meals.** We have already suggested that it is wise not to make any meal predominantly protein, fat or carbohydrate in nature—particularly is it unwise to separate the carbohydrate from the protein.

In fact the advice we would give to a person in any part of the world is to follow the general plan of diet adopted among the better classes in that country, but to see that the protective foods are well represented. The daily quantities of protective foods considered advisable are given in a preceding chapter. *Make sure of the protective foods, take the usual diet of the land and the first-class protein and the Calories will look after themselves.* This plan should work for every adult and for every child in any part of the world. The only precaution that we would suggest in addition is that women should take rather more of the iron-containing foods than is customary.

The feeding of the *very young* is dealt with in a later section of this book. The plans there given are the conventional plans adopted by paediatricians to-day, but it does not follow that they are the last word. Thirty years ago it was the custom to keep infants on milk alone till they were 9 months of age. Now it is customary to introduce them to more solid foods, particularly iron-containing foods from the 4th month<sup>2</sup> or when a weight of 14 lb. has been attained. Artificially fed infants need a supplement of iron much earlier. It will be remembered that spinach has fallen from the high position it held amongst dietitians in supplying iron, but other green foods have not been so deposed.

One defence made for this early introduction to a more varied diet than milk alone is that it produces a number of conditioned reflexes at a time when negativism is not well developed, upon which reflexes a sound scheme of diet can be built up later. We particularly commend the consideration of conditioned reflexes to those who have children

<sup>1</sup> I.e. containing mineral elements, and vitamin.

<sup>2</sup> See a later section of this book and HEATON, N., and DAYNES, G. *Feeding Mother and Babies*, (1950). Faber & Faber.

to feed. By the time a child has reached the age of three it should be willing and able to eat most of the things which an adult takes. We know that there are some who advocate that breast feeding should be continued for a much longer period than is the custom in this country and we do not disagree so long as the child becomes accustomed, along with such feeding, to take many of the solid ingredients of an adult diet.

The transition from a wholly milk diet to the mixed solid diet of a child of three is a particularly difficult transition to make and we believe that many of the life-long dislikes—quite irrational dislikes—of otherwise sensible people are the result of careless handling at this age. The transition should be slow and deliberate. Force should never be used. On the other hand obvious anxiety on the part of the parent that the child should eat the "right" thing is just as dangerous. It is fatally easy to play into the hands of a child's wish to put itself into the centre of the picture of its parents' solicitude and refusal of food is the trump card often played to that end.<sup>1</sup>

Further, we may say that, although we have given advice later as to the types of food which may be used up to the age of three years, we do not mean to imply that these may not be changed as we get to know more about the feeding of the very young. A good case could be made out for dispensing with any cereals, particularly the unmilled cereals, and replacing them with vegetables, particularly potatoes. Alternative suggestions to those appearing in this book are to be found in any modern book on pædiatrics or reference could be made to suggestions, based on the general advice given by the Technical Commission of the League of Nations.<sup>2</sup> To-day we can be sure of diets which will produce a respectable result in feeding the very young but we cannot say we know the best diet.

The same may be postulated for *children over the age of three*. By that time the child may be put on the normal diet of the adult with the premise that the protective foods must be abundantly represented, that rich, highly spiced and indigestible dishes be avoided and that stimulants such as tea and coffee be not given. The objection to tea is that not only is its stimulant action useless to the young but that it is apt to decrease the amount of milk taken. To weak coffee made mainly with milk and to cocoa the objections are by no means as great. Indeed these substances used as flavouring materials will often induce the young to drink milk which they might otherwise refuse. The rule of

<sup>1</sup> LIPPMANN, quoted by BRENNEMANN. (1930), *Amer. J. Dis. Child.*, 40, 1, writes, "With all our weighing and measuring and all our rules and regulations as to when, where, what and how much to feed children, we have succeeded in doing just one thing—we have taken their appetites away." See also Chapter XX of this book.

<sup>2</sup> MOTTRAM, V. H. (1937), *Practitioner*, 139, 63.

feeding any child up to the age of puberty is to take care that the protective foods are well represented, use otherwise the normal foods of the British diet and leave the appetite to determine the energy value of the diet.

At *puberty* the appetite increases, often enormously, but so long as the diet is kept plain and simple there is little fear of the child taking more than is necessary. Usually the demands of the appetite are met by an increase all round of the foods eaten, but where economy has to be considered there is apparently little harm in allowing an increase only of the foods which produce energy. Thus so long as there are ample protective foods, a diet which supplies milk, bread, butter, sugar, and jam *ad lib.* will probably produce as good a result as one more carefully planned.<sup>1</sup>

The *adolescent girl* should be encouraged to take iron-containing foods to an amount equal to or greater than that of her brothers. There is no reason to discontinue the fish-liver oils at this or at any other age.

*Diet for the Manual Worker.* As the demand of the body of the manual worker is for more energy only there is little need to increase any part of his diet except that which produces energy. There is practically no basis for the common belief that muscular work demands an increase of protein. Meat does not make for muscular energy. In fact, as we have seen, a high protein diet is wasteful in that so much of its potential Calories are frittered away in the specific dynamic action of protein. There is, however, a case to be made out for an increase of two of the vitamins, thiamine and ascorbic acid.<sup>2</sup> Manual workers who can carry on with their normal diet when on light work, have been known to develop beri-beri or scurvy on undertaking more severe work.

Usually extra physical work automatically increases the appetite and so the food consumed is increased. If the diet is satisfactory at the low level of intake it will presumably be satisfactory at the higher level. If, however, it is a border line diet as regards its vitamins, or if the increased appetite is satisfied with an increase of such foods as bread, pastry, suet puddings and the like, it is just possible that a subavitaminosis will result. The soundest theoretical plan to meet an increase of physical work would be to increase the sources of thiamine and ascorbic acid as well as the carbohydrate and fat foods. Bacon, ham, and fortified bread as the source of thiamine and oranges, tomatoes,

<sup>1</sup> It was difficult during the war of 1939-45 for the adolescent to obtain sufficient calcium, owing to the shortage of milk and cheese. The production under the Ministry of Food of a cocoa-flavoured dried-milk food for adolescents did something to obviate this difficulty.

<sup>2</sup> Fox, F. W. (1940). *Proc. Trans. Mine Med. Off. Assoc.*, 19, March; (1943). *Lancet*, 63, 349, from observations on a very large number of Kaffirs working in the mines of Johannesburg entirely denies this as regards ascorbic acid.

watercress, etc., as the source of ascorbic acid, seem to be indicated.

*Diet for the Athlete.* There is practically no agreement among athletes and their trainers as to what constitutes the best diet while in training. And until fairly recent days the theories of the dietitian were at variance with the practice of the athlete. The dietitian believes that carbohydrate is the prime fuel for muscular energy; the rowing men used to "eat enormous meals" (mainly meat) and then exercise in order "to work it into them,"<sup>1</sup> and cut down carbohydrate in almost every form. But the modern tendency has been towards a simple and more normal average diet of digestible foods taken at regular times with nothing in between meals. Potatoes are still taboo, though for no obvious reason except that of experience and prejudice. Other carbohydrates are by no means eschewed, indeed rowing men and other athletes now swallow one or two tablespoonfuls of sugar just before a strenuous race. Experience seems to show that while this does not alter appreciably their performance in the race it does obviate the exhaustion felt after it for the rest of the day.<sup>2</sup>

Theoretically, the best plan is to train on a simple and sufficient diet so that the liver and muscles have their full complement of carbohydrate, to rest well for a day or so before the contest on a light diet with plenty of carbohydrate to avoid any depletion of glycogen as the result of nervousness, and perhaps to take sugar, as described above, shortly before the race. Theoretically, too, we should expect an increased need for thiamine and according to Abrahams<sup>3</sup> this vitamin does seem to enhance efficiency. There is no case to be made out for strict vegetarianism for athletes (it increases flatulence and therefore a tendency to "stitch"), but many long-distance cyclists claim that normal vegetarianism, which allows milk, eggs and cheese, is advantageous. Fluid should not be restricted but, according to Abrahams "enough [water or at least a very bland liquid] should be permitted to make a meal enjoyable, larger quantities may be taken when the stomach is empty; on rising, between meals, and on retiring. Alcohol is quite unnecessary for the athlete."

*Mental work* influences the amount and nature of the food required in a very different way from muscular labour. It was once believed that the metabolism was raised by some 10 per cent. by mental work. But Atwater,<sup>4</sup> in a careful experiment, came to the opposite conclusion.

<sup>1</sup> ABRAHAMS, A. (1934), *The Practitioner*, 133, 695.

<sup>2</sup> Private communication from Dr. C. M. Fletcher. The Everest climbers took the large amount of 12 oz. sugar per day, PUGH, E. G. C. (1954), *Journ. Nutr.*, 13, 60. It has the advantage over fat that it needs less oxygen to oxidize it molecule for molecule. A rise in respiratory quotient from 0.8 (which represents the oxidation of fat and protein predominantly) to 1.0 (when carbohydrate is burnt) is equivalent to a gain of 2000 feet at 20,000 feet.

<sup>3</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>4</sup> U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. Bull. 44, 1897.

A man was confined in a respiration calorimeter for a number of days, and on certain of them he engaged in the severe mental work of reading a German treatise on physics. The subject of the experiment was an intelligent person, who fully understood the nature of the experiment, and did not shirk mental application. It was found that on the working days bodily waste was no greater than during rest.

Benedict and Carpenter,<sup>1</sup> in their study of twenty-two young men during examinations, found their metabolism but very slightly higher than when they were performing an equal amount of work that required no mental effort. Grafe<sup>2</sup> concludes, in reviewing the work on this subject, that intense mental effort probably has a positive influence on metabolism, but that so far there are too few experimental data to warrant a definite conclusion.

The next point to stress is that *there is no special brain food*. Büchner gave utterance to the dictum, "Without phosphorus there is no thought." This is only true in the sense that the brain contains phosphorus, and without the brain, thought, as we know it, is unthinkable. But it has never been shown that an increased supply of phosphorus in the food is specially favourable to mental effort, nor, indeed, has that been proved for any other food. It requires, of course, no special demonstration that an ill-nourished brain is not one from which good work can be expected: for the brain, like every other organ, demands for its work an abundant supply of healthy blood, and there is, perhaps, no part of the body which is more sensitive to any impoverishment of that fluid. On the other hand, any over-supply of food must be equally unfavourable to mental work. A large amount of food implies a large amount of work on the part of the digestive organs, and that, in its turn, implies a large diversion of blood to the alimentary tract. But if more blood is required in the abdomen, there must be less left for the brain, and the activity of the latter declines, as is evidenced by the feeling of lethargy which is familiar to everyone after a large meal. It comes, then, to this, that *the digestibility of a food is of far greater concern to a brain worker than its chemical composition*. Small and rather frequent meals of easily-digested food is the ideal to aim at. The necessity for this is the more apparent when one remembers that brain work is usually also sedentary work. Compared with the diet of muscular labour, therefore, the diet for mental work should be small. The reduction should probably affect carbohydrates and fats more than protein, for it is the two former, as we have seen, which tend to be specially made use of as energy foods. The protein consumed should be derived to a large extent from animal foods, for these are its most compact and digestible source. Hence it is that it is far

<sup>1</sup> BENEDICT and CARPENTER. (1909). U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. Bull. 208.

<sup>2</sup> *Ergeb. der Physiol.* (1923), 21, Part 2, 1.

easier for a man who is performing bodily labour to be a vegetarian, than for one who is engaged in mental work. Whether an abundant supply of protein has, *per se*, an actually stimulating influence on the brain must be left undecided, though such a view is not without its supporters.

*Rest*, as is implicit in the paragraphs upon basal metabolism and its relation to total metabolism, requires much less food than work. As we have seen, the basal metabolism of an average man is 1680 Calories per day. This could probably be covered by an intake of food yielding 1900 Calories or at the most 2000. This is a fact of great value in medicine. We can cut down the work, not only of the alimentary tract, but also of heart, kidneys and lungs by 33 per cent. simply by putting the person to bed. It explains, too, why it is that it is so much more easy to fatten a patient when at rest in bed than when up and about; for in the former condition the demand both for heat and energy is greatly lessened and any surplus of supply can be diverted to laying down of fat or producing growth. It is notorious that a time in bed induces growth in children. The food given during a rest in bed should be of the same nature as that adopted for mental work: simple, digestible, and given frequently, in small amounts.

The dietetic requirements of *old age* are just the reverse of those of childhood. The assimilative power of the cells is on the wane and the bodily activities are restricted, hence less food is required. The danger of overfeeding the old is almost as great as that of underfeeding the young; an excess of nourishment chokes instead of feeding the flickering flame of life. Leanness and longevity go together, and a man will only roll all the faster down the hill of life if his figure be rotund. "Discerne," says Bacon, "of the coming on of yeares, and think not to doe the same things still, for Age will not be defied," and one cannot with impunity continue to "doe the same things" in matters of diet any more than in anything else.

The problem is to know how much to take and when old age may be considered to start. The basal metabolism of a number of men of an average age of 80 was only 10 per cent. below the normal.<sup>1</sup> This figure gives us but little guidance to the total metabolism of old men because of the lessened muscular activities of the aged. Figures quoted in earlier editions showed 2149 as the Calorie intake, or about 30 per cent. less than the average man. And this figure is being adopted in recent work concerning the Calorie intake of British families and may well form the tentative basis of any future work.

As regards when old age begins it is difficult to say. Judging from the failure of eyesight and the onset of the menopause old age begins about 45. Tissue metabolism is at its highest point in very early life, so

<sup>1</sup> Du Bois, *op. cit.*, p. 152.

perhaps we may date senescence from 18 months! The curve of basal metabolism falls slowly from its figure of 40 Calories per square metre at 21 years to 35 or 37 at 70 years. In other words, the transition from the metabolism of youth to that of old age is a gradual and insidious process and our food intake should, ideally, in its transition be as gradual. Otherwise obesity is apt to descend upon us as we give up our exercise and resign our bodies to the arm-chair and the motor-car. The fact is that if we are temperate and never continue eating when hunger is satisfied we shall insensibly adjust our intake to the needs of the body.

Luigi Cornaro is one of the most eloquent advocates of temperance in old age. "It cannot be urged too often," he writes,<sup>1</sup> "that when the Natural Heat begins to decay 'tis necessary for the preservation of health to abate the quantity of what one eats and drinks every Day; Nature requiring but very little for the Support of the Life of Man, especially that of an Old Man." He tells us that he ate only 12 oz. of solid food daily, consisting chiefly of bread, wine, broths and eggs, veal, mutton, partridges, chickens and pigeons, and some kinds of fish, such as pike, for "all of these aliments," he adds, "are proper for old men." His system was certainly justified by its results, for he is said to have lived to be a hundred years old.

*Woman* requires less food than man. Her maximal rate of output of energy is smaller than man's. Her basal metabolism is lower. We should therefore expect her total metabolism to be smaller and observation confirms this expectation. Whereas Lusk allows 2500 and the Technical Commission of the League of Nations allows 2400 Calories per day, the average figure for English women is, as we have stated above, 2200 Calories.

We have no particular recommendations to make concerning the diet of women save that there is no need to depart from the general principle of making sure of the protective foods. Woman probably needs as much of these as man. She needs rather more iron-containing foods than man, and generally speaking her food should be more digestible.

**Pregnancy and Lactation.** Probably more data on the necessary diet for these two states has been acquired in the last decade than on any other dietetic subject. This is very desirable in view of maternal mortality, which, almost undoubtedly, is influenced by diet. Some rather crude experiments in the depressed areas of Wales<sup>2</sup> seemed to show that better feeding reduced the maternal mortality by 66 per cent. and the infant mortality by 50 per cent. The work was extended and

<sup>1</sup> *Sure and Certain Methods of Attaining a Long and Healthful Life*, translated from the 4th edition; London, 1727, 91.

<sup>2</sup> LADY (RHYS) WILLIAMS. (1938), *Lancet*, I, 204.

confirmed six years later.<sup>1</sup> Further confirmation came from Toronto, Canada, in more carefully controlled work.<sup>2</sup>

There is evidence that the diet of pregnant women should be quantitatively and qualitatively different from that of the non-pregnant woman.<sup>3</sup> Quantitatively the diet is altered by a small but undoubtedly significant increase in the intake of all foods.<sup>4</sup> Thus in Great Britain where the income, less rent, per head per week was over 15s. the Calorie intake was on the average about 2500 Calories per day as against the 2100 for non-pregnant women. There was an increase in first-class protein, calcium, iron, and presumably the vitamins as the social scale is ascended. In no case, however, do the average intakes of the calcium, phosphorus and iron reach the levels which experiment suggests are essential. McCance and his colleagues estimate that the daily intakes should probably be of the following order: Calories 2500, protein 90 g., calcium 1.5 g., phosphorus 2 g., iron 20 mg. In the well-to-do classes they found that the actual intakes were: Calories 2500, protein 80, calcium 0.94, phosphorus 1.45 g., total iron 14.4 mg. (inorganic iron 10.8 mg.).

Perhaps the best way of indicating the qualitative differences which should be aimed at is to give the recommendations of the Institute of Gynæcological Research (University of Pennsylvania).<sup>5</sup>

NON-PREGNANT WOMEN	PREGNANT WOMEN
1 pint of milk per day.	2 pints of milk.
1-2 servings of leafy vegetables.	2-3 servings of leafy vegetables.
2-3 " " other "	2-3 " " other "
1-2 " " fruit.	3-4 " (1 or 2 of citrus fruits).
3 slices bread.	3 slices or more (whole grain preferred).
1 serving meat or fish.	Meat or fish as ordered by physician.
1 egg.	1 egg.
1-2 oz. butter.	1-2 oz. butter.
Vitamin concentrates as ordered by physician.	Cod-liver oil or vitamin A, thiamine, and D, as ordered by physician.

The comparison in proximal principles or nutrient "elements" works out somewhat as follows:

<sup>1</sup> BALFOUR. (1944), *Lancet*, **I**, 208.

<sup>2</sup> EBBS, J. H., *et al.* (1942), *Journ. Can. Med. Ass.*, **46**, 1 and 6.

<sup>3</sup> HAMLIN, R. H. J. (1952), *Lancet*, **I**, 64, claims that eclamptic fits and deaths have been reduced almost to zero in the Crown Street, Sydney, Hospital by (among other simple measures) the insistence on a high protein, high vitamin low carbohydrate diet.

<sup>4</sup> McCANCE, WIDDOWSON, and VERDON-ROE. (1938), *Journ. Hygiene.*, **38**.

<sup>5</sup> MURPHY and BOWES. (1939), *Amer. Journ. of Obst. and Gynæc.*, **37**, 460.

NON-PREGNANT WOMEN		PREGNANT WOMEN
Calories .	2000-2600	2000-2600 for first three months. 2400-3000 „ second „ „ Decrease to 2000 or 2200 during the last three months if the gain in weight is abnormal.
Protein .	1 g. per kilo body weight.	1 g. for the first three months, then rising to 1.5 g.
Calcium .	0.55-0.68 g.	1.0-2.0 g.
Phosphorus .	1.06-1.32	1.5-2.0 g.
Iron .	15 mg.	18-20 mg.
Vitamin A .	6000	More.
Thiamine .	300	„
Ascorbic acid .	300 (?600)	„
Vitamin D .	400	„

These recommendations are by no means impossible of achievement. Several of the women investigated by McCance, Widdowson and Verdon-Roe either achieved them or came near to them. Significantly enough nearly everyone who did this belonged to the class with over 40s. per week per head after making deduction for the rent, i.e. belonged to the wealthy or intellectual classes. Such a diet is not cheap. Because of the large amounts of vegetables consumed, it takes time in preparation. One criticism we make of the diet is that cheese is unrepresented. It might well replace some of the milk, meat or fish. Another is that the protein is too suddenly increased. Increases of all foods should be gradual.

Diet for lactation should follow the lines of diet in pregnancy, but the calcium should be increased.

The estimates of the National Research Council of the U.S.A. are as follows:

Pregnancy (during the latter half). Calories 2500; proteins 85 g.; calcium 1.5 g.; iron 15 mg.; vitamin A 6000 I.U.; thiamine 600 I.U.; riboflavine 2.5 mg.; nicotinic acid 18 mg.; ascorbic acid 100 mg.; vitamin D, 400-800 I.U.

Lactation. The Calories are raised to 3000; the protein to 100; calcium to 2 g.; vitamin A to 8000 I.U.; thiamine to 2.3 mg.; riboflavine to 3.0 mg.; nicotinic acid to 23 mg.; ascorbic acid to 150 mg., while the iron and vitamin D are left at the pregnancy value.

### Diet for Different Climates and Seasons

The influence of climate, and especially of a warm climate, on the amount of food required is commonly exaggerated. It seems natural to suppose that, if the surrounding temperature is high, the amount of heat required to be produced in the body will be less. But this is to lose sight of the fact that the temperature of the body is chiefly regulated

by physical, and not by chemical, means. To put it more plainly, we adjust the temperature of our bodies not so much by means of increasing or diminishing the amount of heat we produce, as by the simple expedient of regulating the amount of heat lost, i.e. by altering the amount of clothing and the ventilation of rooms.

Heat and life, as has been already pointed out, are inseparable. Whenever work is done, as when the heart beats, not all the energy obtained by oxidizing carbohydrate is utilized in doing that work. Some—and it is an amount equal to two or three times that of the work done—has to be wasted. Now, thanks to the fact that we wear clothes, our bodies live in an atmosphere of about  $90^{\circ}\text{F}$ .—that is to say, in what is practically a tropical climate. Despite the fact that our immediate surroundings have very nearly the temperature of the body and therefore the tendency to lose heat is low, we have to get rid of heat because heat produced by the activity of the cells in the body in just living is more than enough to keep the temperature normal. So we have to lose heat. This means that, even in a temperature of  $90^{\circ}$ , we must constantly waste heat. As the external temperature rises, the heat lost by the body, because it is at a higher temperature than its surroundings, becomes less and less. Consequently there is still greater excess of heat to be got rid of. One can adjust the balance either by doing less work, eating less food, or by increasing the loss by wearing thinner clothes and increasing ventilation. It is fairly clear that, supposing one's dietary is an average diet, it is a sounder policy to increase the loss of heat rather than to decrease its production by eating too little food. In harmony with this, one finds, as a matter of fact, that the consumption of food by well-to-do inhabitants of the tropics is not notably less than that of those who live in the temperate zone. We find, too, that basal metabolism is not much altered in tropical countries. It falls in Europeans living in India by 5–6 per cent.<sup>1</sup> A few days in the hills raises it again. Muscular effort in the tropics must therefore entail but a slight decrease in the amount of food necessary in a temperate climate.

But it should not be the *same* food as there are good reasons for a deliberate change of dietary régime to suit tropical conditions. That people crave for different food or less food in hot weather or in the tropics is notorious. Appetite fails and is stimulated by recourse to violent condiments and alcohol. And it is here that considerations of physiology and dietetics may help in suggesting a diet for the tropics.

First of all, we know that in hot weather the bloodvessels of the skin are dilated to allow of greater loss of heat, and therefore brain and alimentary tract are deprived of their normal supply. Second, there is a fall of arterial blood pressure of some 10 mm.Hg possibly as the result of this vasodilatation in the skin. Third, if the temperature of the

<sup>1</sup> MUNROW, A. F. (1950), *J. Physiol.* **110**, 356.

atmosphere rises to blood heat all the loss of heat must be due to evaporation of perspiration. Fourth, protein foods and notoriously animal protein foods provoke a production of heat of no avail for muscular energy. This heat has to be lost in surroundings hotter than the body and therefore by evaporation of perspiration. Fifth, the cooling power of the air depends on its percentage saturation with water vapour and its velocity, so that if the air is near its saturation-point and still, it is very difficult to lose heat from the body.

Putting all these facts together, we reach the conclusion that in hot climates the diet should be modified by greatly increasing the fluid intake to allow of profuse perspiration;<sup>1</sup> by cutting down the intake of animal proteins which have a high specific dynamic action and replacing them by vegetable proteins which have a lower; by spreading the proteins over the different meals of the day to decrease the specific dynamic action and by using easily digested foods and avoiding those of high satiety value.<sup>2</sup> To transfer the dietary habits of temperate regions to the tropics is to court disaster.<sup>3</sup> Much could be done by regulating the temperature of dwellings by refrigeration, ventilation, and air conditioning to render conditions of life more physiological. What is true of the tropics is true also, but in a less degree, of summer conditions in a temperate climate.

Suppose, on the other hand, that one moves from a temperate to a *colder* latitude. The body will now require more heat to keep its temperature up to the normal level and this is achieved by diminishing the heat lost, mainly by an increase of clothing. If the external temperature falls still farther, however, this method by itself becomes inadequate, and steps must be taken to increase heat production; it is only then that it becomes advisable to consume more food.

"During the whole of our march," says Sir John Franklin, in describing his journeyings in the Arctic regions, "we experienced that no quantity of clothing could keep us warm while we fasted, but on those occasions on which we were enabled to go to bed with full stomachs we passed the night in a warm and comfortable manner." Translated into physiological language, this means that the demand for heat in the body was so great that it could no longer be met by diminishing loss, but that the deficit had to be made up by an increase of heat

<sup>1</sup> Because of the loss of sodium chloride in the perspiration it is advisable that slightly salted water be drunk instead of plain water. Deprivation of sodium chloride is known to lead to cramp of the muscles. See also MORTON. (1932), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 25, 1261.

<sup>2</sup> Inquiry of dietary habits among the well-to-do in India shows that these suggestions are by no means adopted.

<sup>3</sup> Nor must the influence of water be forgotten. A dry climate, even that of a Canadian winter, is desiccating. A five per cent. loss of one's 42 litres of water causes discomfort; 10 per cent. is disabling and 25 per cent. lethal. HARVEY, G. R., and McCANCE, R. A. (1954), *Proc. Nutr. Soc.*, 13, 41.

production, i.e. by a greater consumption of food. The blood supply to the skin is cut off to conserve body heat when there is too little food and a man feels cold. Extra food enables the skin to have blood and the man feels warm.<sup>1</sup>

What form the increased consumption of food takes is, comparatively speaking, of little moment. All that is really necessary is that the number of Calories which the diet is capable of yielding should be considerably raised. As a matter of convenience, however, and in order to avoid overfilling the stomach, it is best to have recourse to fat as the principal source of the extra heat required, for fat is the compactest form of fuel we possess. Carbohydrates would serve the purpose equally well so far as the cells of the body are concerned, but one would require to consume more than twice as much of them as of fat in order to obtain the same amount of heat. Besides, in very cold latitudes carbohydrates are not so easily obtained as fat.

The influence of *season* on the amount and quality of food required is similar in kind to the influence of climate, though less in degree. In summer, clothing should be diminished rather than food; in winter, warmer clothing should be worn.

In hot weather the inclination is to eat less food, and if this instinct is followed there will probably be a loss of weight. If the normal winter diet be taken in disregard of the desire for food, the body-weight is maintained, but indigestion may result. The probability is that while the amount of food taken should yield approximately the same number of Calories, the nature of the food may as well be altered in the direction the appetite suggests. Thus, hot beef-fat is repulsive in hot weather, especially with the usual accompaniments to roast beef, baked potatoes, and Yorkshire pudding; but cold beef with its fat intact served with a salad and a French salad dressing, yielding just as many Calories, is appetizing. Amounts of fat which would appear impossible to consume as hot mutton-fat are quite palatable and digestible in the form of butter, cream, or ice cream.

Probably too there should be less animal and more vegetable protein consumed, and the protein not concentrated into one meal as is too often the custom. The specific dynamic action of protein should be remembered, and the animal protein taken at a time when that action causes least trouble. A heavy meat meal at noon will be showing its specific dynamic action in the afternoon at about 3-4 p.m., i.e. the time when the day is apt to be most oppressive. Unless the nights are hot, meat at the evening meal is not amiss. On the whole the general rule is that animal foods should be more sparingly consumed in summer, and

<sup>1</sup> It is questionable if Scott's rations on his last expedition were adequate. The rations on the Falkland Islands Dependencies, 1950, averaged Calories 4,000, protein 110, fat 250, carbohydrate 300 g. BERTRAM, C. G. L. (1954). *Proc. Nutr. Soc.*, 13, 69.

the proportion of vegetable matter in the diet relatively increased. The demand for hot foods and drinks in cold weather and cold foods and iced drinks in hot weather has more psychological than physiological or instinctive basis. A litre ( $1\frac{3}{4}$  pints) of iced water will subtract but 37 Calories from the body and an equal quantity of a hot drink, swallowed at  $45^{\circ}\text{C}$ ., will add but 8 Calories. Such amounts are a bagatelle.

**Influence of Personal Peculiarity.** There is a widespread impression that some people can "get on" with less food than others, even though they are living under identical external conditions. There are those of whom it is said that their food "does them no good," while there are others who without eating much put on weight. There is ample evidence of this from work already quoted: that on the intakes of 63 men and 63 women.<sup>1</sup> And there is still more evidence in Dr. Widdowson's observations on the food intakes of over 1000 children. At any age there are children taking twice as much or more of some proximal principle of diet than others at that age. Nor will the high or low intakes appear to be related to stature, weight or health. This observation has troubled the dietitian and is still troubling him.

That there is a norm of weight corresponding to height and age is clear from the data of insurance companies, and a marked departure from the norm (say over 10 per cent.) is viewed with suspicion by their medical officers. There is evidence from insurance statistics that it is better to be overweight than underweight in the twenties and underweight than overweight in the forties and later.

The majority of people, who do not have to trouble about their figure, have an astonishing power of regulating their body-weight. For example, as Du Bois has pointed out, a man at 40 years of age may weigh exactly to within a pound or two what he weighed at 20.<sup>2</sup> The balance of intake and output has been adjusted in his case over the twenty years to an error of less than 0.05 per cent. Supposing that he were to lay down and not combust over that period 8.9 g. of fat per day (the equivalent of a small pat of butter) he would double his weight in twenty years. Some method of regulation of body-weight must prevent such an appalling catastrophe and the wonder is that so few people are obese.

The mode of control is still obscure. It is possible that bodyweight is regulated by appetite. A well-fed person is more energetic than one underfed and possibly consumes the extra food he has taken in the

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 269; WIDDOWSON, E. M., and McCANCE, R. A., *ibid.*, 36, 294.

<sup>2</sup> MARRACK, J. R. (1942), *Food and Planning*, reports the same of himself, and one of us (V. H. M.) can confirm the statement for his own body for about forty years while the other (G. G.) eats considerably less in order to avoid gain of weight.

output of extra energy. Moreover, the specific dynamic action of food rises if there is a surplus and the excess of combustible material is got rid of in this way. On the other hand, an underfed person restricts his activities and so adjusts his output to his intake. If this underfeeding continues the food which is taken, particularly the protein, is utilized in the renovating of depleted tissues without evoking any loss due to specific dynamic action. In the normal person there would be an increased appetite which, when sufficient food became available, would repair the losses due to previous under-nutrition.

We have to remember, too, that there is an interplay of the endocrine glands. Excess of thyroid activity leads to a lowering of the body-weight; defect of activity to an increase. Defect of pituitary activity unbalanced by an increase of thyroid activity may lead to a gross deposition of fat. Islets of Langerhans in the pancreas<sup>1</sup> and the cortex and medulla of the suprarenal also control metabolism, and the internal secretions of the gonads apparently influence it as well. Some, if not all, of these endocrine tissues are under the control of the central nervous system.

As a working hypothesis we may assume that the regulation of intake and body-weight is carried out by means of a complex mechanism in which appetite, specific dynamic action of food, the endocrine organs and the nervous system are all involved.

If we accept bodily activity as an index of the irritability of the nervous system we can see why it is that some people need a greater intake of food than others. In a series of observations reproduced in the Food (War) Committee's report, the Calorie intakes of three boys, one very active, one active and one very quiet, are shown. A reference to Fig. 11 will show that the very active boy at 15 years of age is taking double the amount which the very quiet boy takes and one and a half times that taken by the active boy. The influence of the nervous make-up of the boys considered is obvious.

Pavlov considers from his study of conditioned reflexes in his animals, and in the large central group of well-balanced temperaments there are to be seen the "phlegmatic" and the "sanguine."<sup>2</sup> The one is quiet, self-contained and sedate, the other lively and active. If we translate these observations on dogs to man we can see how the lively "sanguine" temperaments will need more food to maintain body-weight than the quiet "phlegmatic" temperaments. In fact, the explanation of the observation of the opening paragraph of this section lies probably in temperament or inherited constitution of the nervous system,

<sup>1</sup> The elderly diabetic is frequently overweight at the beginning of the disease and the young diabetic on insulin usually takes considerably less than 2500 Calories per day and yet maintains his weight.

<sup>2</sup> PAVLOV. (1928), *Lectures on Conditioned Reflexes*, 376. Martin Lawrence.

coupled with the possibility that the differences in intake and output are due to differences of weight, build, shape of body and occupation. The declining activity of body when middle age is reached probably accounts for the increase in weight commonly observed at that time. The body has become accustomed to a large intake to support the demands of youth and is loath to give up its food habits although activity no longer demands such an intake. Du Bois calculates that a decrease in activity comparable to walking  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles per day might result in the deposition of nearly  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of fat per day, or 7.61 lb. in a year.

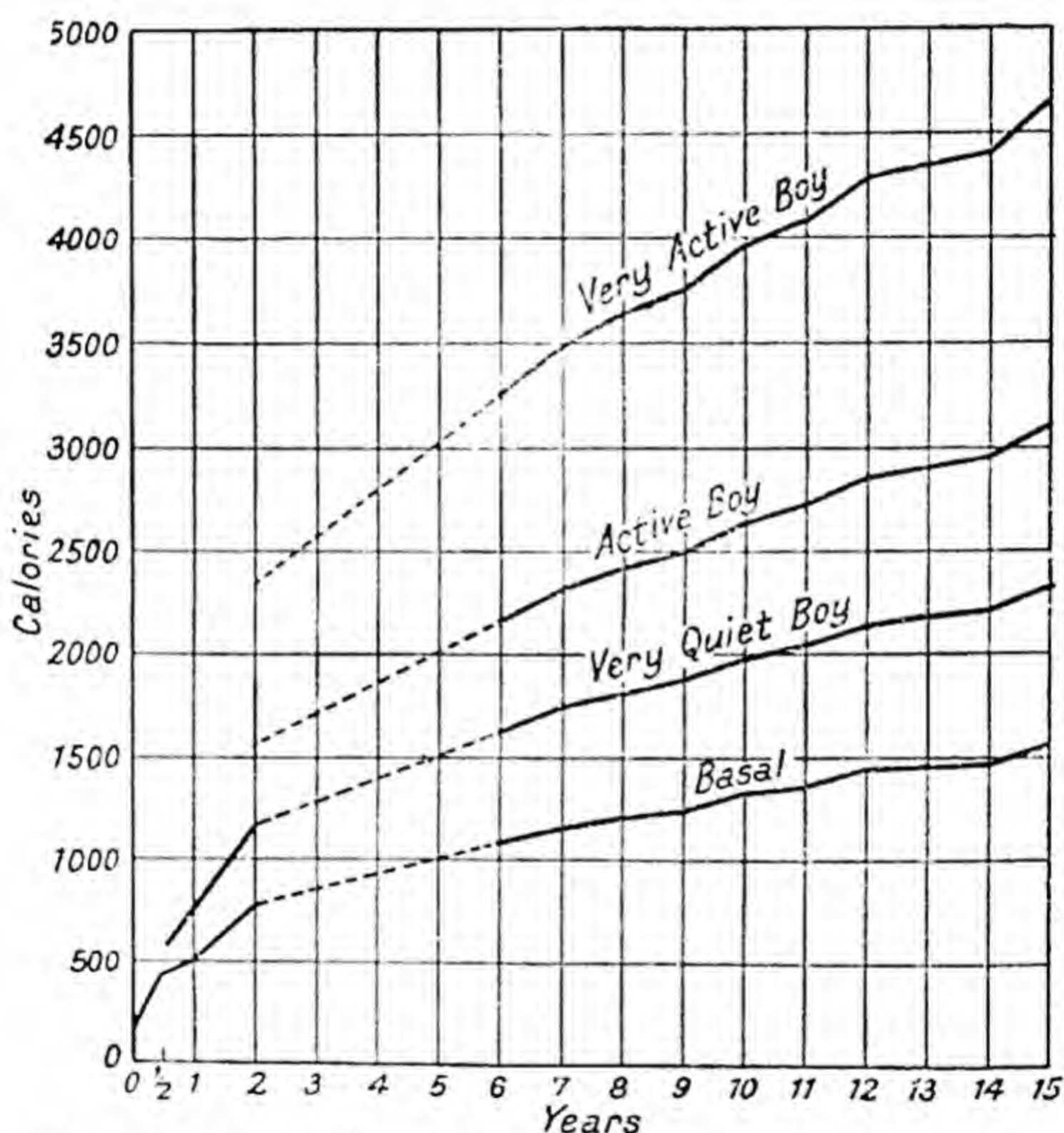


FIG. II.—CALORIE INTAKE OF BOYS OF DIFFERENT ACTIVITIES.

We may take it that individual make-up (nervous and endocrine) does explain idiosyncrasies of food intake. This warns us of the dangers of dogmatism in matters of diet. We can and may lay down rules as to the kind of amount of food required in different circumstances for the average person but we are treading on dangerous ground when we come to apply these rules to individual cases. In the matter of diet every man must, in the last resort, be a law unto himself; but he should draw

up his dietetic code intelligently, and apply it honestly, giving due heed to the warnings which Nature is sure to address to him should he at any time transgress.

**Psychology and Diet.** In the last paragraph a statement has been made which might open the way to every food fad from the days of Genesis to the present day. It comes perilously near the motto of Theleme in Rabelais: "Fay ce que voudras" or "Do what thou wilt." Although the subject has been lightly dealt with in the opening chapter, it must be discussed again. The problem is: how far is dietetics a rational subject and how far the private psychologies of individual people can upset and should be allowed to upset its principles. That the origin of food habits is largely psychological has been pleaded at length by Renner—and also that it is rightly so.<sup>1</sup> It is this view which must now be questioned.

There are two definitely opposed schools of thought on this subject. The one maintains that instinct is a guide<sup>2</sup> towards the food needed. The other school, on the contrary, believes that a man's choice of food is not governed by instinct but by his upbringing. For convenience we may call the two schools the Lloyd and the Pavlov schools after their chief exponents. The Lloyd school says that food which you like is beneficial to you. Expanding the ambit of this thesis, it holds that choice of food is governed by instinct, and as instinct is fundamental, that such a choice is natural. The Pavlov school insists that food habits are the result of conditioned reflexes. That is, we are born only with one food reflex, i.e. of sucking milk and that all the other food reflexes are acquired and built upon this one simple innate reflex. Consequently food habits are the result of upbringing, the adult who likes and eats all foods being well educated and the one with violent likes and dislikes being badly educated. Further corollaries are that such likes and dislikes are a bar to sound principles of dietetics and that the only conditioned reflexes a person should have towards food are those of eating it,<sup>3</sup> masticating it, salivating on it, swallowing it and digesting it. The Lloyd school encourages food likes and dislikes; the Pavlov school frowns on them.

Now everyone would prefer the Lloydian school to be correct. It supports one's natural (or unnatural) weakness for this, that and the other food or drink. It makes one feel a fine fellow in insisting, say, on pepper from a pepper mill rather than a caster, or on a dry wine with the fish and meat courses and a sweet wine with the dessert, or on the order of the courses of the modern international dinner.<sup>4</sup> One feels that

<sup>1</sup> RENNER. (1944). *The Origin of Food Habits*, Faber & Faber, London.

<sup>2</sup> Though surely not an infallible guide!

<sup>3</sup> Perhaps the person who maintains that all food is good, but that some is better than another, would be tolerated by the rationalist school of dietitians.

<sup>4</sup> See *Food and the Family*, Chapter 9, by V. H. Mottram.

one is following the dictates of instinct and that one is in harmony with the great purposes of Nature.

In favour of the Lloydian school there are sundry vague beliefs which rarely bear investigation plus, it must be admitted, some sound observational work. We are told that dogs eat grass to make themselves vomit when the alimentary tract is disturbed; that deer and cattle walk miles to a salt lick, and that ponies in the salt mines of Cheshire lick through the walls of their stables; that animals deprived of adequate phosphorus in South Africa gnaw the bones of their dead comrades (and die of a form of botulism!). All these are observations on animals and have little to do with the case, for in man, with the dawn of reason, it is contended that instinctive guidance declined, and though animals *may* be guided by instinct in the choice of food (but see below), man is not necessarily so guided. Besides, the salt lick story and its supposed foundation on the need for sodium in cattle on a diet too rich in potassium, has been very shrewdly and justifiably criticized by Stefánsson.<sup>1</sup> The *Lamsickte* of South African cattle can be explained by a euphoria produced by eating bones; and the fact that horses and sheep in those parts of South Africa do not gnaw bones, though lacking phosphorus, hardly supports the guidance of the cattle by instinct.

Turning to human beings, it is said that the pica, i.e. desire, sudden and inexplicable, for unusual foods shown by pregnant and lactating women, that the passion for sugar evinced by children, that the loathing for tinned foods on the sides of Everest, are an evidence that instinct is taking a hand and guiding the human race to the right choice of food. The characteristic of pica in human beings is its utter irrationality. The passion for sugar in children is a passion for strong and lasting pleasant sensation and is by no means invariable and depends largely on upbringing. Children who have not suffered under a Puritanical régime are not particularly keen on sugar—at least that is the fact with the children of one of us. The observation on mountain climbers are not germane. Modern dietetics no longer frowns upon tinned goods. Tinned foods are not “bad for you,” and avoidance of, or hatred for, tinned foods at high altitudes is not, therefore, an instinct towards dietetic sanity. Besides, one result of low bloodsugar and want of oxygen at high altitudes is an irrationality and fickleness of desire. Finally it is customary to quote that astonishing American experiment on allowing babies from 6 months onwards to 18 months to choose what they would to eat as evidence that what babies fancied, did them good.

<sup>1</sup> STEFÁNSSON, V. *Adventures in Diet*.

<sup>2</sup> As an aside, is it not fair to say that in view of xerophthalmia, beri-beri, pellagra, scurvy, rickets, osteomalacia, chlorosis and osteoporosis, instinct has made a bad miss in guiding human beings to the goal of sound diet?

It did. But the babies were allowed to choose *only* from protective foods. Their choices followed no pattern nor order, nor was there any invariable sequence followed, upon which could be based a scheme of dietetics for the toddler, let alone for older children and adults. A baby might one day choose to eat four or five eggs only for its evening meal; at another time the choice might be liver followed by a pint of orange juice. We simply *do not know* what their choices would have been if cream buns, cakes, ice cream, fried fish and pickles had been on the menu. The experiment merely tells us that if one's fancy roams among the protective foods one comes to no harm but, rather, to good.

The only sound experiments concerning man in support of the Lloydian hypothesis we have come across are those by Carlson on Vlček, the Bohemian laboratory assistant, who had a surgically made gastric fistula in consequence of a boyhood's mistake in drinking caustic soda, with a resulting occlusion of the œsophagus. Vlček had a great liking for sweets, desserts and so on, with a dislike of acid or bitter foods. In the course of experiments upon his gastric juice it would be found that when he had had a sweet course at the college cafeteria which he particularly liked, the digestive capacity of the juice secreted was high. If his lunch bored him, it was low. Similar observations were made by the Pennsylvania School of Medicine on medical students. If the food were pleasant to eat, served daintily and in pleasant surroundings, 50 per cent. of the students secreted more and stronger gastric juice than when food was indifferently cooked, served on chipped china, on a newspaper for tablecloth, in a dimly lighted cellar! (Curiously enough, the other 50 per cent. were not affected by surroundings.)

Now clearly, unless a man is a hyperchlorhydric already, what he fancies is going to be digested better than what he does not fancy. The evidence so far extends only to gastric secretion, but it is probably true of pancreatic, biliary and intestinal secretion and therefore of total digestion and absorption. Everybody must admit that foods which one fancies call out more and better digestive juices than things which one dislikes. The moral, however, is not that one should eat only what one likes, but should like what one eats.

Richter in his Harvey lectures published in 1943 sums up a series of experiments, mainly upon rats, which seem to show that they have an instinctive choice of the food which would benefit them. Animals with a diet low in phosphorus choose one with a high content when given the choice.<sup>1</sup> Richter, except in one to be mentioned later, never gives an example which can be unhesitatingly accepted and cannot be

<sup>1</sup> This has not been the experience of other workers. See McCOLLUM, ORENSTEIN, KEILES and DAY. (1939). *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition*, 161. Also Scott of Pittsburgh, quoted by A. L. BACHARACH. (1951). *Chem. and Ind.*, p. 1040.

explained on the grounds of a euphoria caused by eating the "right" thing. We have mentioned, *en passant*,<sup>1</sup> a series of illuminating experiments on the choice of foods by the laboratory rat. If you "run him out" of thiamine and then give him a choice of foods with and without thiamine, he will choose the food containing thiamine. But if you flavour the thiamine-containing food with cocoa and later transfer the cocoa to the food without thiamine, he is fool enough to transfer his affections also. He now eats a food which could do him no good. Instinct has not told him where the thiamine lies. He fancies the food which contains no thiamine.

Between foods which contain or do not contain vitamin A he shows no certainty of choice. The explanation the experimenters give is as follows. When an animal is "run out" of thiamine a chance choice of a food containing thiamine allows of recovery from symptoms within a few hours. The animal "feels" better as a consequence of eating thiamine food. He has a euphoria just as a man has after taking a glass of beer or a dose of morphia. But the effects of vitamin A cannot be perceived so suddenly; consequently an animal cannot relate cause and effect and will eat food without vitamin A in it readily enough, though his body is deficient in A. Now it is quite likely that Richter's experiments can all be explained on the lines of producing a euphoria, a well-being of the animal which he associates with a particular food.

There is one exception. Experiments with children in Baltimore on giving them a chance of taking cod-liver oil showed (unexpectedly, surely) that they availed themselves of the choice, but that later in the year they dropped taking it. The assumption by Richter is that they needed vitamins A and D, chose the food which contained those vitamins and then when their stores were adequate, dropped it again. Much more information is needed about the methods of carrying out this experiment, the previous histories of the subjects and the psychological surroundings of the experiment, before it can be accepted as proving that instinct, or need, is a guide, an accurate guide, to what foods should be taken.

Now the case for food habits being conditioned reflexes is based partly on Pavlov's observations on the alimentary conditioned reflexes of dogs and on observations of anthropologists such as Stefánsson and Margaret Mead on the habits of races with whom they have come into contact. Pavlov and his colleagues have shown that the mere lapse of time may act as a conditioning stimulus. Animals accustomed to be fed every half-hour salivate every half-hour, even if the food is withheld at that time. The human being behaves in the same way, e.g. a patient treated for gastric ulcer by feeding every half-hour with minced raw meat soon develops hunger contractions at half-hourly periods.

<sup>1</sup> HARRIS, CLAY, HARGREAVES, and WARD. (1933). *Proc. Roy. Soc. B.*, 113, 31.

People can train the large intestine to produce rush peristalses and a defæcating reflex at almost any chosen time in the day, so there is nothing sacrosanct about meal-times.

Puppies brought up by hand on milk have to be taught to obtain a conditioned reflex for meat eating. This strange observation had been made by one of us before he came across Pavlov's work. Stefánsson observed complete parallels with this in his sleigh dogs in the Arctic Circle independently of Pavlov. Dogs, brought up on fish, refused caribou or wild goose meat, but could be trained to eat them by methods similar to Pavlov's mode of building conditioned reflex upon conditioned reflex. One of us trained children to eat new foods by exactly similar means. Finally, Pavlov showed that even the vomiting reflex in a dog could be evoked by such a stimulus as preparing the skin for the subcutaneous injection of morphine or apomorphine. In man we see an exactly similar reflex. Who, having been sick after eating a certain food, has not been nauseated by that food for a season after the incident, even for the rest of a lifetime?

Scattered up and down in Stefánsson's writings are example after example of the Pavlovan conditioned reflexes in man and dogs, although he could not have known of this work at the time. We quote the following from Stefánsson's *Friendly Arctic* (1912):

"A rule with no more exceptions than ordinary rules is that people like the sort of food to which they are accustomed. An American will tell you that he can eat white bread every day, but that he gets tired of rice if he eats it more than once or twice a month, while a Chinaman may think that rice is an excellent food for every day but that wheat bread soon palls. An Englishman will tell you that beef is the best meat in the world, while in Iceland or in Tibet you will learn that beef is all right now and then, but mutton is the only meat of which you never tire. If a man is brought up on the west coast of Norway or on Prince Edward Island, he thinks that herrings and potatoes make the best of all staple diets, while an Iowa farmer likes potatoes well enough but would balk at the herring."

Margaret Mead in *The American Character* (1944, Penguin Books) makes a similar statement about Hungarian children evacuated to the United States. And we add to this the fact, mentioned before, that Bengalese, used to rice, will starve to death during a rice famine rather than eat the wheat imported by a paternal Government.<sup>1</sup> Examples of the conditioning of children to food reflexes will also be found in Renner's book already quoted.

The apparent exceptions to the generalization that it is education and not instinct which determines food habits are that appetite seems to be

<sup>1</sup> For confirmation of the views expressed above, see *M.R.C. Special Report Series 254*.

some sort of a guide to Calorie need and, as already mentioned in the first chapter, that the Akikuyu women eat more of the calcium-containing foods than the men.

It is difficult to admit that instinct plays much, if any part, in determining the food habits of man, and if this be so the need for early training to take a mixed diet with a large number of foods represented in that diet becomes paramount. To-day every country is very far from implementing the need for such education, but until it is so implemented the practice of a rational dietetics will limp along a road made difficult by inculcated or acquired prejudice.

**Economy in Diet.** No consideration of diet is complete without some reference to economy. It is easy to devise a diet which shall be satisfactory if no regard is paid to its cost, but we have too frequently to prescribe for those whose pocket is not deep. Theoretically it is easy to estimate the minimum cost of a diet which shall give at least the minimum Calories, protein, inorganic elements and vitamins by the following procedure. Take the food which will give the protein ration at minimal cost; make up the Calories by the food which produce Calories most cheaply and then add any cheap food which will make up any vitamin or inorganic deficit. Such a diet will be found in 5 oz. cheese; 2½ lb. of bread; and some green food, such as 4 oz. cabbage, to make up the deficit of ascorbic acid, and one teaspoon of liver oil to give vitamin D. The bread must be national or "fortified", otherwise the diet would be deficient in thiamine. Such a "subsistence diet" would contain 113 g. protein (35·5 first-class protein), 1·714 g. calcium, 1·617 g. phosphorus, 18 mg. iron, 4585 I.U. vitamin A, 1·8 mg. thiamine, 56 mg. vitamin C and 700 I.U. vitamin D. Its cost on the retail market in a town of over 100,000 inhabitants in 1945 was about 1s. per day or 7s. per week. To-day it would be at least 10s. 6d. per week. That is a figure which economists, social workers, and politicians must bear in mind. Any alteration of this impossibly dull and monotonous diet to make it a possible and acceptable diet will cost more. How much more is a question for discussion.

Committees of the British Medical Association have reported on this subject from time to time since 1933. In 1938 the cost for a family of man, wife, and three children of school age was 27s. 4½d. per week.<sup>1</sup>

These reports have been widely accepted by the regional surveys made in such neighbourhoods as Merseyside, Bristol, and Southampton but the rise in the cost of living since the last war have made them useless.

Students of Kings College of Household and Social Science (now Queen Elizabeth College) worked out the minimal cost of an adequate diet for February 1944 in Leicester as follows:

<sup>1</sup> (1938), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1, 1326.

Child of 4	.	.	.	.	5s. 2½d. per week
" " 8	.	.	.	.	7s. 7d. " "
Girl " 15	.	.	.	.	10s. 2d. " "
Boy " 18	.	.	.	.	10s. 9d. " "
Moderately active adult	.	.	.	.	10s. 3½d. " "
Pregnant woman	.	.	.	.	10s. 1½d. " "

Fortunately these figures overlap in time with estimates made by Meiklejohn.<sup>1</sup> His figures read:

1942-3 convalescent adult	.	11s. per week
1946-7 " "	.	11s. 6d. per week
1950 " "	.	16s. 6d. " "
1951 " "	.	19s. 6d. " "
1953 " "	.	24s. 0d. " "

These figures are in agreement with estimates published by the King Edward's Hospital fund.<sup>2</sup> The *wholesale* cost of purchase of an adequate diet is estimated at the lowest at 22s. 0d. per week and if chicken and frosted foods appear on the menus at 27s. 0d. per week.

The principles upon which we must proceed in building an economical diet are as follows:

First. It is no economy, but rather the reverse, to stint the protective foods. These are often omitted from the diet of the poor because they are supposed to be expensive. Relatively some of them are: e.g. milk and eggs. The price of milk, 6½d. a pint for most of the year, is, we feel, high and we hope that as the milk industry is stabilized and rationalized, this price will be brought down nearer to the level of other countries. A lower price would lead to an increase of consumption. But even at the present high price milk compares favourably with the meats both for Calories and body-building purposes, while as a supplier of calcium and vitamin A it far surpasses them. Skim milk is procurable and should be used.<sup>3</sup>

Cheese is a cheap food both for its calcium and vitamin A, its body-building power and Calories. It is a notable ingredient of the Oslo breakfast and is used by the Toveruds in a maternity hospital in Oslo for obvious reasons. It would be worth while imitating this practice in this country in feeding the poor.

Butter again is a cheap food, not only for its vitamin A but for its Calories. The middle classes pay as an average 1s. 6d. per 1000 Calories for their food; the subsistence figure is about 8d. per 1000. Figures quoted above give the cost per 1000 Calories in 1953 as from 1s. 3d. to

<sup>1</sup> MEIKLEJOHN, A. P. (1954). *Lancet*, 1, 1284.

<sup>2</sup> See *Lancet*. (1954), 2, 341, and special pamphlet published by the fund.

<sup>3</sup> Unicef made the point in 1947 that more children can be fed by dried skimmed milk and lard (or butter or margarine) for the same price than with dried whole milk.

1s. 6d. Butter at 3s. 10d. per lb. yields 1000 Calories for 1s. 1d. Vitaminized margarine at 2s. per lb. produces 1000 Calories at 7d. approx.

Eggs are always unfortunately rather dear, whether for calcium, phosphorus, iron, vitamins A, thiamine, the B<sub>2</sub> complex, and D, for the body-building ration or for Calories. They cost 2s. 6d. for 37 g. protein and 4s. 6d. for 1000 Calories at a price of 4s. 6d. dozen.

As the special salad vegetables and the special fruits are used because of their ascorbic acid, they must be considered mainly on the cost of that "nutrient." The cheapest way of obtaining this vitamin is from raw cabbage salad, which, however, is not popular in this country. For general purposes tomatoes, lemons, and oranges are the cheapest ways of buying ascorbic acid, and the sooner we can increase the level of importation of citrus fruits the better for the nation. As the cost of ascorbic acid varies with the seasons, the conscientious caterer must calculate from the tables and costs of foods the cost of a ration (30 mg.) of ascorbic acid.

When strawberries are two shillings a pound it may be more economical to buy ascorbic acid as that fruit rather than as tomatoes or oranges. The trouble is that few people are satisfied with the ounce or so of strawberries which give the day's ration!

The fat fish, with the exception of salmon and sardines, are among the cheapest foods we have for protective purposes (calcium, phosphorus, iodine, vitamins A and D), and for body-building material. For Calories they are medium in price, but cheaper considerably than meat. At a price of 1s. per lb. herrings are a cheap food which no one except the rich can afford to omit from his food purchases.

Speaking generally, it is fair to say that the protective foods are not the dearest foods which we buy, and the explanation usually given of their very general deficit in the diet of Great Britain—their costliness—is unfounded. The real reason is habit, tradition, and lack of an appreciation of dietetics.

Second. Economy in first-class protein is best obtained by the use of cheddar style cheese, herrings, and herring roes. At the respective prices of 2s. 2d., 1s. and 1s. 6d. per lb, these foods supply a day's ration of first-class protein at 8d., 5d., and 4½d. respectively. Milk supplies it at 1s. 1d., the meats at a price of about 1s. 5d. and the white fish at a price of from 1s. 5½d. (cod at 1s. 6d. per lb.) to 3s. (Dover sole at 3s. 8d. per lb.).

Third. Economy in Calories is the easiest thing of all to practise for two reasons: (i) the protective foods and protein foods combined do not often account for more than 30 per cent. of the Calories of the diet; (ii) the range of cost in Calories is enormous. It is one hundredfold, whereas the range of cost for first-class protein rations is only from 4½d. to 3s. 8d. or tenfold.

It is possible in any one town at any one time to give an exact estimate of these costs or of the cost of a reasonable diet. The report of the British Medical Association of 1933 established that idea for all time. But a set of calculations based on either the West End stores prices in London or the cheap street markets prices would be useless for people living elsewhere, particularly those in the country although food prices are much more standardized throughout Gt. Britain than formerly. Anyone interested in catering economically and dietetically must collect prices and calculate the cost per 1000 Calories from them and from the various Food Tables in existence. A general statement which will be true for all parts of the country is the following: "An economical dietary must be based upon cereals and cereal products, the pulses, dried fruit, potatoes, butter, margarine and suet, milk, fat fish, e.g. herrings, sprats, and mackerel, cheese and bacon. Moderate economy only can be found in the meats, while lean fish and eggs are costly and to be considered luxuries. Green vegetables and fruits from the Calorie point of view are also expensive, but as they supply some of the vitamins and the necessary mineral elements, they are essential, and small quantities, despite their Calorie cost, must be included in the diet."<sup>1</sup> For a fuller discussion of economy in diet the reader is referred to the book quoted or to *Sound Catering for Hard Times*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Emended from MOTTRAM, V. H. (1938), *Food and the Family*. 6th edn. Nisbet & Co.

<sup>2</sup> MOTTRAM, V. H., and MOTTRAM, E. C. (1932), Nisbet & Co.

## PART TWO

### THE NATURE OF FOODS

#### CHAPTER XII

#### FOODS TAKEN MAINLY FOR ENERGY PURPOSES

In this section of the book an attempt is made to give a survey of the foods eaten by people of European origin, their characteristics and their value in diet. As might be expected, the first difficulty is classification. Shall the foods be classified according to their chemical nature, their biological origin or their function in dietetics? The problem has given many an organizer of conferences on food a headache. For example, if we follow chemical principles we separate the potato and the turnip, both vegetables; if biological principles, then marrows, cucumbers and tomatoes are fruits and rhubarb is a "vegetable." Naturally the predilection of the authors is for a functional classification, which again separates the potato from the turnip and leaves meat extracts in something like no-man's-land. It is this functional classification which is adopted, taking the classification<sup>1</sup> of the special joint committee of the combined food board of the United Nations and slightly rearranging some of its items and expanding it somewhat. It is as follows:

- Group I. Oils and fats, including butter and margarine; sugars and syrups; cereals; potatoes; pulses and nuts.
- Group II. Milk and milk products, excluding butter; meat, including cured and canned meat and meat extracts, jellies, etc.; poultry; fish; eggs.
- Group III. Fruit and fruit products; vegetables, leafy; other vegetables, including many "vegetable" fruits.
- Group IV. Beverages.
- Group V. Condiments.

It will be seen that the first group consists of foods mainly taken for the production of Calories, though butter, cereals and potatoes do supply vitamins as well, and the pulses and nuts supply protein. The second group of foods is taken mainly for body-building purposes,

<sup>1</sup> *Food Consumption Levels*. (1944), H.M. Stationery Office.

though again all supply vitamins and the milk division mineral elements in addition. Group III supplies mainly vitamins and inorganic elements—their energy-producing and body-building powers being almost negligible.

## FOODS TAKEN MAINLY FOR THE PRODUCTION OF ENERGY

### 1. Oils and Fats, including Butter, Margarine and Cooking Oils

Before the war of 1939–45 it would have been natural to start this section with the cereals and starch- and sugar-containing foods, but it has been brought home to us how much we depend on the tropics and polar regions for our supplies of oil and fat. Probably no deprivation during the war was felt so much as that of fat. At a pinch we can grow half our cereals and sugar in Great Britain and increase our potato crop by 50 per cent.; but we cannot produce fat at the same time. This comes from tropical or subtropical regions—from palm fruit, palm kernel oil, cotton seed oil and peanuts—or from whale oil, mainly from the Antarctic. Even the poor and unemployed in this country tend to eat more and more fat. Once it was thought that 50 g. of fat was sufficient per day for the poor. Even in the 1931 slump the unemployed were consuming 100 g. per day.<sup>1</sup> Nor is this astonishing when it is realized that margarine can vie with sugar and bread at producing Calories cheaply. Fat per g. gives two and a half times as many Calories as a starchy or sugary food. See, however, p. 527.

Pride of place among the fat foods is taken by butter. This is more because of the esteem in which it is held by people than because of its intrinsic food value, though it must be admitted that at 3s. 10d. per lb. it is not a dear food. It costs at that price 1s. 1d. per 1000 Calories. Butter-making is, however, not an economic proposition in this country and we shall probably continue to import butter from New Zealand and Australia and sell it here at a price which causes astonishment and indignation in the Antipodes.

### BUTTER

✓  
Butter is produced from cream by churning. This causes all the fat globules in the cream to run together into a solid mass, while the fluid part, containing almost all the sugar and most of the caseinogen, remains in the form of butter-milk. The flavour and aroma of butter are due to the growth of organisms in the cream during ripening. The

<sup>1</sup> CATHCART and MURRAY. (1932), *Med. Res. Council. Spec. Rep.*, 165. A scare letter in *Lancet* (1954), 1, 1078-9 suggests that degenerative diseases of the heart run parallel with the amount of fat eaten. See also *Reader's Digest*, 1955, Dec. p. 108.

superior flavour of Devonshire and Cornish butter is due to the strains of lactic-acid-producing microbes found in the soured cream used in making butter. These microbes when isolated in pure culture can be used to control the flavour of butter produced elsewhere or even to transfer these flavours to margarine. Acetylmethylcarbinol and diacetyl are two of the substances manufactured by the microbes, for they are found in butter and have an odour reminiscent of butter, but by themselves are not entirely satisfactory in producing a butter flavour.

The trace of caseinogen which remains in the butter is of importance, for the decomposition which it undergoes on keeping is apt to make the butter turn rancid. The presence of water in the butter facilitates this change. Butter will *keep indefinitely* if it is dehydrated. This method is largely used in India for the preservation of butter (ghee), and also on the Continent. Commercial processes were worked out in New Zealand for dehydrating butter for shipment to the forces in World War II, and will probably provide a convenient "spread" in tropical regions. Canada and other countries already put up canned butter for shipment abroad.

The exact *amount of fat in butter* varies within limits, but averages about 82 per cent., or twice as much as the amount in cream. An ounce of butter, therefore, may be reckoned as the equivalent of  $\frac{4}{5}$  oz. of pure fat. In addition butter contains 12 to 15 per cent. of water and about 2 per cent. of non-fatty organic matter, chiefly caseinogen and milk-sugar. It is rich in vitamin A,<sup>1</sup> but poor in vitamin D.

The most striking chemical characteristic of butter fat is its richness in those fatty acids (butyric, caproic, caprylic, and capric) which are soluble in water. Of these it contains about 7 per cent. Butyric acid, indeed, may be said to be the hall-mark of butter, from which it derives its name.<sup>2</sup> Of the insoluble fatty acids present, oleic is the most abundant. Butter fat contains 40 per cent. of olein. This results in a low melting-point ( $31-34^{\circ}\text{C.}$ ) and that in its turn implies, for reasons we have already discussed, that it is easily digested and absorbed. As a matter of fact, butter is the most easily digested of fatty foods. The fat of the human body has also a large proportion of olein, and melts at an even lower temperature than butter ( $25^{\circ}\text{C.}$ ). The fact that butter fat approximates so closely to it in its proportion of olein may perhaps help to explain the great value of butter as a food.

The objectionable practice of adding artificial colouring matter to butter has been in vogue for many years. How careful dairies should be

<sup>1</sup> The figure given in *The Nutritive Value of Wartime Foods*, q.v., is 1136 I.U. per oz., or 4000 per 100 g., but see above, p. 125.

<sup>2</sup> These water soluble fatty acids appear only in the milks of animals with a rumen. They are probably synthesized from acetates. POPJÁK, G. (1951), *Bioch. Journ.*, 48, 612.

in the choice of such colours is seen in the fact that "Butter yellow" produces cancer of the liver in rats.<sup>1</sup>

The ease with which butter is digested renders it of great value as a source of fat in the diet of the sick; patients can take  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. of it a day without difficulty, and with great advantage to their nutrition. Cooked butter, on the other hand, is much more apt to disagree, probably owing to the liberation of fatty acids in it by the heat employed in cooking. The absorption of butter in the intestine is very complete. Even when  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. of it is taken per day, less than 0.5 per cent. is wasted. This is a more favourable result than would be obtained with any other form of fat, and should teach us that it may be well to give butter a fair trial before having recourse to medicinal fatty preparations.

### MARGARINE<sup>2</sup>

Margarine is a manufactured imitation of butter made by mixing animal or vegetable fats of the right melting-point intimately with soured skimmed milk and rapidly freezing the "mix." To the mixture before freezing some small amount of lecithin is added as a stabilizer and appropriate oil soluble colour to imitate butter. The skimmed milk is very carefully soured with lactic acid producing microbes of a strain selected to give the aroma of butter.

Margarine owes its origin to the ingenuity of the French chemist Mège-Mouriès, and was first manufactured under his direction for use in the French Navy in the year 1870 and used in the siege of Paris. It was originally made by melting down and clarifying various animal fats, that of the ox being chiefly employed; but at the present day vegetable fats derived from nuts and various seeds and hydrogenated vegetable and whale oils are mainly used in its manufacture. No less than 400,000 tons of oils and fat were used in 1943 in producing the margarine ration.

#### COMPOSITION OF MARGARINE

Water	.	.	.	.	13.7 per cent.
Protein	.	.	.	.	0.2 "
Fat	.	.	.	.	85.3 "
Calcium, iron and copper	.	.	.	.	traces
Calories per lb.	.	.	.	.	800 per 100 g. or 227 per oz.

Roughly, its crude composition is that of butter and the manufacturers try to keep it so. But it can never imitate butter accurately

<sup>1</sup> ORR and STICKLAND. (1941), *Biochem. Journ.*, **35**, 479. Artificial colour in food is in review at present (1955).

<sup>2</sup> Margarine derives its name from "margarin," a supposed fat, really a mixture of palmitin and stearin. It is also known as "oleomargarine," "butterine," and "Dutch butter," but by the Act of 1887 all butter substitutes are now described as "margarine." In the United States the term "oleomargarine" is employed.

because milk fat is the only fat with a high content of butyric acid. Coco-butter, the fat from the coconut, has a high percentage of the lower molecular weight fatty acids and is used in the better class margarines. But butter can be differentiated from margarines by its high content of volatile fatty acids.<sup>1</sup>

So much from the chemical side. From a physiological point of view margarine is deserving of recommendation. It is absorbed almost as completely as butter, the difference being only about 2 per cent. In other words, 1.02 oz. of margarine are equal in nutritive value to 1.0 oz. of butter. Whatever may once have been the case, margarine is now made only from pure fats, and the processes to which it is subjected in manufacture insure its further purification. As the flavour of the best variety is equal to that of an average specimen of butter—it is indistinguishable in the first 24 hours after manufacture—and as it has the advantage of being very much cheaper, there is every reason to wish that the prejudice against it, which is widespread, should disappear, and that it should be welcomed as an admirable and cheap substitute for a moderately expensive food. In the past it has been objected to margarine that it is deficient in the vitamins which are present in butter. For years it has been vitaminized in Britain. Since May, 1954, the figures as recommended in the Food Standard Committee are: vitamin A, 2680–3314 I.U. per 100 g. (760–940 per oz.), and vitamin D, 282–354 I.U. per 100 g. (80–100 I.U. per oz.). There are vitaminized Kosher and vegetarian margarines.

In old-fashioned nurseries children were allowed to have butter or jam with their bread and never the two together. To-day apparently most children get what they like. There was never any real reason for the old rule except that of mortifying the flesh, for butter is an inexpensive source of energy.

At the same time, it must be admitted that one pays for the pleasant flavour of butter. As far as energy value is concerned, a pound of dripping is more than the equal of a pound of butter, and costs much less.

We have here another example of the fact, so often pointed out, that in buying foods we pay usually for the likings of the palate rather than for the needs of the body. For those who can afford it, that may be quite justifiable, but for the poor the advantages of margarine and dripping as cheap sources of fat cannot be too strongly insisted upon. The dripping has, however, only small traces of vitamins A and D and on that account, should not be allowed to replace butter and vitaminized margarines in the diet of children.

In addition to butter and margarine there are fats used in cooking or other preparation of food for the table which were desperately

<sup>1</sup> Butter has 7½ per cent. of butyrin; margarine has only 0.25 per cent.

missed during the war of 1939-45. These are *lard* and *bacon fat*, *suet*, *dripping*, *frying fats* and *oil*. Lard is used in pastry-making and in shallow frying; suet in the making of suet puddings and mince meat; olive oil for deep fat frying and in salad dressings. They all contain, with the exception of suet, nearly 100 per cent. fat. Thus the analyses are: dripping, 99.0 per cent. fat; lard, 99.0 per cent.; and olive and "edible oil," 99.9 per cent. The conventional values of these would be approximately 935 Calories per 100 g. or 266 per oz. The figure for suet as given by McCance and Widdowson is also 99.0 per cent. fat, but this must have been for kidney suet, with a very low percentage of connective tissue—it had but 0.9 per cent. of protein and only a trace of water. Older figures by American authorities range from as low as 71 per cent. fat up to 94. It depends on the amount of connective tissue and the source of the suet, subcutaneous, mesenteric or from around the kidneys.<sup>1</sup>

In modern days it has become more and more the custom to buy suets already prepared. These suets contain up to 16 per cent. of rice starch to prevent the flakes of suet from running together again. This, of course, alters the Calorie value markedly. 100 g. of 100 per cent. fat should yield approximately 920 Calories (266 per oz.). 99 per cent. fat yields 915 Calories (260 per oz.), while a suet of 16 per cent. rice starch, 83 per cent. fat and 1 per cent. water would yield approximately 835 Calories (237 per oz.). In view of the small amounts of suet in a helping of suet pudding or in a mince tart, this may seem a small point, but it is a point worth making.

There are, too, commercial frying fats and oils on the market. These are hardened or semi-hardened vegetable and animal oils—quite useful commodities and having the same Calorie value as olive oil. Doubtless they will increase in consumption on account of their cheapness when compared with olive oil, but the connoisseur will always look askance at them because of their chemical laboratory odour. It is said, however, that arachis oil (peanut oil) makes a satisfactory substitute for olive oil in salad dressings. The proportion of the Calories obtainable from a salad depends almost entirely on the amount of the oil in the dressing even when potatoes are an ingredient.

We must not overlook the important contribution which fat meats and cheeses make to the Calorie intakes of people although meat and cheese are more reasonably considered among the foods which are taken for their protein content. Fat bacon may have up to 74 per cent. fat with a Calorie value of approximately 680 Calories per 100 g. (193 per

<sup>1</sup> The Atwater and Bryant figures run from 70.7-94.3 per cent.; beef suet according to Plimmer has 93.3 per cent. fat, mutton suet 96.6. The Rowett figure is 93.3. Chatfield and Adams for kidney suet give 88.0 per cent. for a thin carcase, 93.0 for a medium, and 94.0 for a fat.

oz.). Streaky bacon has 45 per cent. fat with a Calorie value of 527 per 100 g. (150 per oz.). A mutton chop has 48 per cent. fat and Calorie value of 468 per 100 g. (133 per oz.). Cheese, such as Cheddar, contains 34.5 per cent. of fat and has a Calorie value per 100 g. of 408 (116 per oz.). If nuts formed any large part of the diet they, too, would be important as sources of Calories according to their content of fat.

The amount of fat in food largely determines the amount of the sense of satisfaction we feel at the end of a meal and also of the "lasting effects" of that meal. One reason is that fats are so calorigenous, and that is why in a great war most of us hunger for them.

## 2. Sugars and Syrups

The importance of sugar as a modern food commodity cannot be over-emphasized. Originally a highly priced condiment it has become with the discovery of cheap ways of production and manufacture so important a source of Calories that dietitians are beginning to ask whether there be not great danger in eating sugar in the quantities we do. The average consumption in the United Kingdom in the years 1935-39 was about 95 lb. per person per year,<sup>1</sup> or 4.17 oz. per day, yielding 467 Calories—i.e. about 15 per cent. of the daily Calorie needs. Consumption in the United States was still higher and reached a peak of 112 lb. per person per year in 1941. Other countries may take much less, the Russians, for example, taking less than a quarter of what we take in Great Britain.

The reasons for the disfavour in which sugar is held are: (i) As usually taken, it is a source of Calories only, and therefore if the appetite be sated on it, foods containing proteins, mineral elements and vitamins are crowded out of the diet. (ii) It is held by American dentists to account for caries of the teeth—an old story neither proved nor disproved as yet. (iii) It may conceivably lead to the development of diabetes. This also has been neither proved nor disproved, but it is possible that the sudden flooding of the blood with glucose throws a strain upon the insulin-producing cells of the islet tissue of the pancreas. Diabetes has increased in the United States somewhat as the consumption of sugar has increased, but this is no proof that the two are causally connected. For the present it is absurd to interdict sugar consumption, but it is wise to be on the watch for possible dangers. The "food reformers" fancy that it is an "unnatural" food to be avoided unless eaten in a raw and unrefined state; we may dismiss this as illogical, unscientific and absurd.

We have spoken as if "sugar," i.e. sucrose or saccharose, the disaccharide occurring in the sugar-cane and the sugar-beet, were the

<sup>1</sup> *Food Consumption Levels*. (1944), H.M. Stationery Office.

only sugar in the diet. So for practical purposes it is, but different varieties of sugar enter into the composition of articles of diet, and they may be divided into two groups: (1) the disaccharides ( $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ ), the chief examples of which are cane, beet, or maple-sugar (sucrose or saccharose), malt-sugar (maltose), and milk-sugar (lactose);<sup>1</sup> (2) the monosaccharides ( $C_6H_{12}O_6$ ) exemplified by grape-sugar (glucose or dextrose), fruit-sugar (fructose or lævulose), and invert sugar, which is a mixture of these two, and is best known in the form of honey.

We may now consider each of these varieties in some detail.

**1. Disaccharides.** Cane-sugar or sucrose, is the most familiar of all kinds of sugar. It is commonly derived from certain special grasses such as the sugar-cane or sorghum, but occurs also in smaller amount in a great many plants and fruits. When derived from other sources than the sugar-cane, special names, such as beet-sugar or maple-sugar, are usually given to it; but it must be distinctly understood that these are chemically indistinguishable from the form of sugar derived from the sugar-cane.

Cane-sugar has been in use in the world as a food for many ages, but it is only within comparatively recent times that it has been manufactured cheaply enough to take an important place in ordinary diets.

The following brief history of its introduction into Europe is taken from a pamphlet on *Sugar as Food*, issued by the United States Department of Agriculture:<sup>2</sup>

"Sugar from the sugar-cane was probably known in China 2000 years before it was used in Europe. When merchants began to trade in the Indies it was brought westward with spices and perfumes and other rare and costly merchandise, and it was used for a long time exclusively in the preparation of medicines. An old saying to express the loss of something very essential was, 'Like an apothecary without sugar.' Greek physicians, several centuries before the Christian era, speak of sugar under the name of 'Indian salt.' It was called 'honey made from reeds,' and said to be 'like gum, white and brittle.' But not until the Middle Ages did Europeans have any clear idea of its origin. It was confounded with manna, or was thought to exude from the stem of a plant, where it dried into a kind of gum. When in the fourteenth or fifteenth century the sugar-cane from India was cultivated in Northern Africa, the use of sugar greatly increased, and as its culture was extended to the newly-discovered Canary Islands, and later to the West Indies and Brazil, it became a common article of food among the well-to-do. In 1598 Hentzer, a German traveller, ascribed Queen Elizabeth's blackness of teeth to her great use of sugar. By many the new food was still regarded with suspicion. It was said to be very heating, to be bad for the lungs, and even to cause apoplexy. Honey was thought to be more wholesome, because more natural than the 'products of forced invention.' "

<sup>1</sup>There are other sugars occurring in foods (e.g. trehalose, a disaccharide in edible fungi; raffinose, a trisaccharide from beet molasses; and pentose, a five-carbon sugar in many ripe fruits), but these are of no dietetic importance.

<sup>2</sup> Farmers' Bull. (1913), No. 535.

One of the earliest records of the use of sugar in this country<sup>1</sup> is to be found in the accounts of the Chamberlain of Scotland in the year 1319. Its price at that time was 1s. 9½d. per lb. = £7 14s. 6d. at the value of money in 1955. Fortunately, it is much cheaper to-day!

The *composition of the sugar-cane* and its juice is about as follows:<sup>2</sup>

#### COMPOSITION OF SUGAR-CANE AND JUICE.

	Stalks.	Juice.
Water . . . . .	74.96	85.00
Protein . . . . .	0.58	0.10
Fat and wax . . . . .	0.38	nil
Sugars . . . . .	13.40	13.70
Cellulose . . . . .	10.04	0.65
Lignin . . . . .		
Pentosans . . . . .		
Ash . . . . .	0.64	0.45

In order to separate the sugar, the canes are crushed, and the juice expressed by means of heavy rollers. This juice is then clarified by the addition of lime and heating to 94° C. Other clarifiers are basic aluminium carbonate, silicic acid with calcium silicate and sodium aluminate. The clear fluid is readily separated from scum and mud and is then concentrated by boiling *in vacuo* to a water content of 45 per cent. The crystals which form are centrifuged from the mother liquor. This crude sugar is known as *muscovado* and is shipped to the refineries. It contains from 94 to 98 per cent. of sucrose. At the refineries it is still further clarified and finally decolorized by filtration through bone charcoal. The final product of crystallization is white and is 99.50 per cent. pure sucrose. If loaf-sugar is wanted it is run into moulds. Moulded cube-sugar is made in the form of sticks, and afterwards cut into cubes by machinery. Granulated sugars are made in the centrifuge. Other varieties depend on the mode of crystallization and grinding.

**Beet-sugar.** Fully two-thirds of the "cane"-sugar commonly used is really derived from the sugar beet. The following account of the growth of the industry is from the pamphlet already mentioned:<sup>3</sup>

"Marggraf, a chemist of Berlin, first discovered in 1747 that beets, with other fleshy roots, contained crystallizable sugar identical with that of the sugar-cane. In 1796 Marggraf's pupil, Achard, erected the first manufactory for beet-sugar, and in 1799 he brought the subject before the French Academy. He manufactured beet-sugar on his farm in Silesia, and presented loaves of refined beet-sugar to Frederick William III of Prussia in 1797; but the 2 to 3 per cent. of sugar that could be extracted by the methods then in use was too small for commercial success. A new stimulus

<sup>1</sup> See BANNISTER'S Cantor Lectures, 1890.

<sup>2</sup> WINTON and WINTON. (1939). *Structure and Composition of Foods*, 4, 15.

<sup>3</sup> U.S. Dept. of Agr. (1913). *Farmers' Bull.* No. 535.

was given by the sugar bounties of Napoleon in 1806, and methods were rapidly improved, especially in France. Two great difficulties were still to be met: the percentage of sugar present in the beet was small (6 per cent.), and it was separated with great difficulty from the many non-sugar constituents, some of them acrid and of very unpleasant taste. Science now came to the rescue, and a beet was gradually developed having a larger percentage of sugar and a smaller percentage of the undesirable impurities. Barber says that in 1836 18 tons of beetroot were necessary to produce 1 ton of sugar; in 1850 this quantity was reduced to 13·8, in 1860 to 12·7 tons; and in 1889 to 9·25 tons. From 6 per cent. of sugar, as found by Marggraf, the sugar beet of good quality now contains 15 per cent. and more, 12 per cent. being considered necessary for profitable manufacture."

The sugar is extracted from the beets by rasping them to a pulp, extracting and evaporating *in vacuo*, with subsequent decoloration by means of animal charcoal.

To the ordinary consumer beet-sugar is not distinguishable from that derived from the sugar-cane, and it has already been stated that to the chemist the two are really identical. There is no evidence for the statement sometimes made, that beet-sugar is more injurious to health than genuine cane-sugar.

**Maple-sugar** is derived from the sugar maple of North America by tapping the bark in early spring and allowing the sap to escape as it flows upward. The sap is evaporated and the sugar allowed to crystallize out while the residue is used as maple-syrup. One maple-tree yields about 4 lb. of sugar in a season.

There is no chemical difference between the sucrose of maple-sugar and that derived from the cane or beet, but it is mixed with ethereal substances and organic acids which give it a peculiar flavour. It is probably on the presence of these that the slightly laxative qualities of maple-sugar depend. As a commercial source of sugar the maple cannot compare with either the cane or the beet, and maple-sugar is now chiefly used as a luxury and for the sake of its agreeable taste.

The average composition of these sugars in their raw state is as follows:

Source.	COMPOSITION OF SUGARS			
	Water.	Cane-sugar	Invert Sugars.	Ash.
Sugar-cane . . .	0·91	96·68	1·01	0·59
Sugar-beet . . .	2·42	89·50	5·47	—
Maple . . .	3·70	86·48	8·76	1·06

After being subjected to the process of refining, sugar is practically a pure chemical substance. There is some demand for the cruder "Barbados" sugar, both for confectionery and for the food faddist. Some types (e.g. "pieces") have a pleasant flavour, but ferment easily and sometimes include livestock. Raw sugar contains appreciable

amounts (0.159 per cent.) of cane fibre, dirt, scale and lime salts.<sup>1</sup>

The study of lactose and maltose are best postponed till we deal with milk and malt.

Certain substances derived from cane-sugar deserve brief mention. When strongly heated, sugar melts into a yellowish liquid, and undergoes some physical alteration, so that on cooling it does not crystallize, but forms a transparent, brittle mass, familiar to everyone as *barley sugar*. If heated to a still higher temperature its colour darkens, and it acquires a bitter taste, the product being *caramel*, which is so largely used in cooking operations.

*Treacle*, *molasses*, and *golden syrup* are produced as by-products in the manufacture of crystallized sugar. Their syrupy consistence is in part due to the fact that the other substances which they contain prevent the cane-sugar from crystallizing, and partly also to their being fairly rich in fruit-sugar. The following represents their composition:

	Louisianan <sup>2</sup> Molasses.	Treacle. <sup>3</sup>	Golden <sup>3</sup> Syrup.
Cane-sugar . . . . .	47.85	60.5	71.1
Glucose and fructose . . . . .	23.08	—	—
Extractive and colouring matter . . . . .	—	—	—
Inorganic substances . . . . .	7.58	0.5	0.3
Water . . . . .	18.20	29.0	20.0

One pound of Lyle's Golden Syrup yields 1508 Calories (94 per oz.) and contains 13 oz. of mixed sugars equivalent on digestion to more than 13 oz. of glucose. Treacle is an excellent source of iron and calcium in the diet.

2. **Monosaccharides.** The other great group of sugars is the monosaccharides. The best example of these is *glucose* which occurs so abundantly in the grape. When grapes are dried to form raisins, the glucose separates out, and may be recognized in the raisins in the form of little yellowish-white granular masses. Commercial glucose is usually got by boiling starch with acids. It occurs in a syrupy form. When heated it turns brown, and is used in cookery as "sugar colouring." Mixed with egg-albumin, it is largely employed in the preparation of "icing" and "fondants" in confectionery and in the manufacture of bonbons.

Fruit-sugar, or fructose, is found, as its name implies, in most fruits. It is with difficulty crystallizable and is hardly ever met with in an isolated form in dietetics.

*Invert sugar* is a mixture of glucose and fructose. It can be prepared from cane-sugar by the action of ferments or by simple boiling, but

<sup>1</sup> WINTON and WINTON, *op. cit.*

<sup>2</sup> WINTON and WINTON, *op. cit.*

<sup>3</sup> *Nutritive Values of Wartime Foods.*

more readily by boiling with acids. This "inversion" of cane-sugar, as it is called, goes on rapidly when cane-sugar is boiled with fruit-juice, the active agent being the acid of the fruit. Thus, a considerable proportion of the cane-sugar used in making jam is converted into invert sugar in the process. It is important to remember that invert sugar does not readily crystallize.

*Honey* is the most familiar form of invert sugar. It contains about equal parts of glucose and fructose, its flavour being due to the presence of small amounts of volatile substances derived from the flowers. The mean composition of pure honey was found by Browne<sup>1</sup> to be as follows:

## COMPOSITION OF HONEY

Moisture	.	.	.	.	.	17.70 per cent.
Invert sugar	.	.	.	.	.	74.98 "
Sucrose	.	.	.	.	.	1.90 "
Dextrin	.	.	.	.	.	1.51 "
Ash	.	.	.	.	.	0.18 "

McCance and Widdowson give the composition of English honey as: Protein, 0.4 per cent.; fat, a trace; available carbohydrate, 76.4; no starch or dextrin; producing 288 Calories per 100 g. or 82 per oz. Honey in the comb has 4.6 per cent. of wax and its Calorie value is 281 Calories per 100 g.

The comb consists of waxy substances, which are probably incapable of digestion.

The basis of *sweetmeats* is either cane-sugar or glucose. Sugar-candy is one of the purest. It consists of cane-sugar which has been allowed to crystallize round threads and consists of almost pure sucrose.

*Toffee* consists of melted sugar and butter in various proportions.

The home-made toffee of McCance and Widdowson contains 1 oz. butter to 8 oz. sugar and 5 oz. golden syrup. Its composition is 0.2 per cent. protein, 6.2 fat, 90.8 available carbohydrate and yields practically 400 Calories per 100 g. or 113 per oz.

*Chocolate* contains about 45 per cent. of cane-sugar, but no glucose or fructose. The rest of it is composed of cocoa-powder. (For analyses, see pp. 417-19.)

A mixture of glucose or invert sugar and cane-sugar is used in the preparation of uncrystallized sweets, such as the creamy matter in the interior of chocolates.

The colouring of sweets is derived either from burnt sugar or from one of the aniline dyes, most commonly eosin. Cochineal is also a favourite colourer. It is interesting to note that aniline dyes may be excreted in the urine almost unchanged, and cases are on record where

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by WINTON and WINTON, *op. cit.*

patients have been supposed to be passing blood, when they had merely been sucking red sweets. Indiscriminate use of these colours may be dangerous to health.<sup>1</sup>

*Jams* consist essentially of fruit preserved in a strong solution of sugar. We have already seen that the acids of the fruit, aided by the high temperature employed in the course of preparation, bring about the conversion of a considerable proportion of the cane-sugar into the invert form. Home-made jam is usually boiled for a longer time than the commercial article, and consequently contains more invert and less cane-sugar than the latter. The amount converted varies directly with the acidity of the fruit and the length of boiling.

*Commercial glucose* does not crystallize and so is often used to make jam from inferior fruit or from the remains of fruit, the juice of which has been used to make fruit syrups and jellies. Such jam may have a good appearance, but is deficient in fruit flavour. It is, however, quite wholesome and nutritious.

The "setting" of jellies is due to the presence of pectin in the fruit (p. 19). If boiled too long, the power of gelatinizing is lost, and a syrup results instead of a jelly. In commercial jams and jellies pectin is sometimes added to prevent this. There is a preparation on the market of pectin which is used in making home-made jams set.

More than half the weight of any given quantity of jam is made up of sugar in some form or another. The nutritive value of jam resides almost entirely in its sugar content, its Calorie value being 250 per 100 g. (71 per oz.).

### Digestion of Sugars

The sugars can only be utilized by the body in the monosaccharide form. They must be digested and this takes place in the small intestine under the action of appropriate ferments in the succus entericus.

It might be thought that since honey, golden syrup and treacle consist largely of monosaccharides that they have an advantage over cane sugar. They might be termed predigested. But so rapidly does the invertase of the small intestine work that it makes little difference whether one takes cane-sugar or glucose for therapeutic purposes.<sup>2</sup>

Cane sugar in strong solution is an irritant. People who frequently handle sugar often get a dermatitis. It irritates the mucous membrane of the stomach, causes the production of much mucus and a highly acid gastric juice.

As used in ordinary diet cane-sugar depresses the acidity of the gastric juice and delays evacuation of the stomach.<sup>3</sup> A hyper-chlorhydric

<sup>1</sup> See *Lancet* (1955), I, 146.

<sup>2</sup> See *Lancet* (1935), I, 444.

<sup>3</sup> MILLER, BERGEIM, REHFUSS, and HAWK. (1920), *Amer. Journ. Physiol.*, 53, 65. Also HUNT, J. N., MACDONALD, I., and SPURRELL, W. R. (1951), *Journ. Physiol.*, 115, 185.

person can take sweets between meals with impunity but a hypochlorhydric cannot. It would be interesting to discover whether the sugar added to the fruit or the cereal course at breakfast delays evacuation of the stomach or not.

Lactose and cane-sugar, if they get into the bloodstream, are excreted quantitatively by the kidneys unchanged. Nor can the body deal with pentoses if they enter the system. They too are excreted unchanged and a pentosuria results from the free consumption of fruits.

The last point connected with the influence of sugar on the digestive organs is its supposed *injurious effects on the teeth*. It is difficult to understand why this should be so, but arguing *post hoc propter hoc*, there is a case to be made out. Sugar was in "short supply" during the war of 1939-45 and children's teeth improved. With the end of rationing it became available again and the children's teeth are on the downgrade. This has been reported both in Great Britain and Norway.

### Assimilation of Sugars

The fate of sugar after entering the blood is to be converted into glycogen and stored by the liver and muscles as glycogen. Now, it has been found by the physiological experiment of injection into the bloodstream that not all sugars are capable of being directly converted into glycogen.

It is considered that fructose is directly converted in the liver but that glucose passes to the muscles first and is converted there. As the kidney threshold value is lower for fructose than glucose, the sugar tolerance for fructose is less than that of glucose. Most people secrete fructose in the urine if they take more than 50 g. on an empty stomach. The tolerance for glucose is much higher, and 100 or, in exceptional circumstances, 200 g. can be taken on an empty stomach without causing glycosuria.

It must further be borne in mind that the assimilation limit is not the same for all individuals. Some people are better able to convert sugar into glycogen or have a higher threshold than others, and most people can take 50-100 or 200 g. of glucose without passing sugar in the urine. If glycosuria occurs it is either due to the blood sugar being raised above the normal limits (i.e. the patient has diabetes mellitus, which may be mild or severe) or the threshold of the kidney is lowered and glycosuria occurs although the blood sugar is within normal limits.

Notwithstanding all this, it must be noted that, if sugar is taken along with other food, and distributed uniformly over the day, very large quantities can be consumed without the danger of exceeding the assimilation limit. Vaughan Harley was able to take a pound of cane-sugar daily—with injurious results as regards his digestion, it is true,

but without producing glycosuria. As a general rule, one may assume that 4 oz. can be taken daily without any bad results, but the exact amount must of necessity depend to a large extent on the muscular activity of the subject.

### Nutritive Value and Economy of Sugar

We have seen that refined sugar is to be regarded as a practically pure carbohydrate. That being so, its food value must be high, for every gramme of it will yield 3.95 Calories of energy. An ordinary lump of loaf-sugar weighs about 5 g., and yields therefore nearly 20 Calories. Five such lumps contain as much carbohydrate as a 5-oz. potato. It is evident from these considerations that even the amount of sugar ordinarily added to a cup of tea may contribute in no small degree to the supply of energy required by the body daily. A pound of butter will yield about twice as much energy as a similar weight of sugar, but at nearly four times the cost, for sugar is one of the cheapest fuel foods. Even at 8d. per lb. it produces Calories at 4d.-5d. per 1000, or rather less than bread.

It is *as a muscle food*, however, that sugar is of special importance. We have already learnt that the carbohydrates are the chief source of muscular energy,<sup>1</sup> and the sugars, on account of the ease and rapidity of their absorption, are better calculated to fulfil this function than any other member of the carbohydrate group. For mention of its use in training, see p. 227 and, for early evidence of its value, previous editions of this work. It is extremely useful also in rapidly raising the level of "sugar" in the blood when for any reason, e.g. fasting, severe fatigue or an overdose of insulin, it has fallen to a low point.

## 13. Cereals

Man, like every other animal, has always had to "live off the land," using the term in Stefánsson's sense to include water and air. That is, he has to convert their products to his own purposes in providing food. In this he has gone through three stages.

First, he has hunted and lived on the products of his bow, spear and fishing line—a most precarious way of living, still practised by races in a land where settled agriculture is impossible. It produces a diet consisting mainly of protein and fat with very little carbohydrate. The Eskimos are perhaps the best example to-day of such early methods of "living off the land." No land, so exploited, can sustain a dense population. The method is uneconomical and unplanned.

<sup>1</sup> It has been calculated that a single caramel or a pennyworth of "candy" yields sufficient Calories to provide the extra energy required in walking a mile (see C. G. and F. G. BENEDICT, "The Energy Content of Extra Foods," (1919), *Boston Med. and Surg. Journ.*, October 2, 415).

The second stage is the nomadic, in which man has domesticated some animals and looked to an ordered control of their fertility for a supply of meat and milk. This method obtained in early biblical times and to-day the Masai are a good example of survival of this mode of "living off the land." It too produced a diet consisting mainly of protein and fat but with rather more carbohydrate.

The third stage is a stable agriculture, based upon the cultivation of cereals, wind-pollinated grasses, mainly, which grow in close association one with another and can be easily brought under control. This type of agriculture produces a diet which is mainly carbohydrate with much less fat and protein. It ties, too, the agriculturist to the soil. Nomadic life becomes impossible. Such agriculture, beginning in the alluvial soil along the river valleys of Mesopotamia and Egypt, many thousands of years ago, has now spread to every tropical, subtropical and temperate land, and cereals can now actually be raised within the Arctic Circle. The type of cereal is naturally not everywhere the same. It is wheat in the drier subtropical and temperate lands of Europe, North America, the Argentine, Australia, and India. In more humid and hotter parts of the world it is rice; and where, as in northern Germany, northern Russia and Scandinavia, wheat does not ripen well, rye takes its place. The same is true of Scotland, but there oats take the place of rye, though at one time rye was very commonly grown in Great Britain. A new cereal, maize, invaded the Old World from the New, and has thoroughly established itself round the Mediterranean, in Roumania and Egypt and in Africa. Barley is a crop which can be grown on poor soils and as it ripens early, it once was a staple cereal in human diet in the northern parts of England. It is to-day used more for fodder and the manufacture of malt. Millet and buckwheat, though not strictly cereals, have a similar mode of cultivation and millet forms the staple diet in parts of Africa and China.

The success of cereal agriculture is due to the fact that land can produce about five times as much "food" as when given over to dairy produce. More bulk of food is available and a greater density of population assured. Moreover the population, though dense, is tied to the soil. Civilization, as we understand it, depends upon density of population and tradition. Without cereals, density of population is impossible. The handing down of tradition is easier in a static population than in a nomadic. There can be no real civilization apart from cereal agriculture.<sup>1</sup>

Now cereals by themselves are poor foods, especially for human beings with alimentary tracts which cannot cope with bran and with phytates. Their proteins are not so valuable in human nutrition as those of milk, eggs, cheese, fish and meat. They have less lysine, methionine and tryptophane in their constitution and much more

<sup>1</sup> The ancient civilization of Peru seems to have been based on the potato.

glutamic acid; moreover, often the percentage of protein is low in cereals especially when cooked, as cooked they must be. Their content of calcium is low, their ratio of calcium to phosphorus very low, what calcium there is is unavailable, their iron, though high, is also unavailable to man. It is true that their content of thiamine is high, and they have moderate quantities of nicotinic acid and riboflavine, but, with the exception of vitamin E, they have but negligible quantities of the other vitamins.

They are therefore poor foods and wherever they form a high percentage of the diet—say, over 60 per cent.—the growth of their eaters is stunted and the physique poor. They make for faulty bones and teeth, for anæmia and avitaminoses A, C and D. This fact cannot be over-emphasized: the value of cereals in diet is that they are a *cheap source of Calories*. It is almost their only value.

Wheat is the aristocrat among the cereals both for dietetic and technical reasons and where *other* cereals form the staple food of the diet it would be well to displace them by wheat. On the other hand, the reduction of the consumption of wheat in this country by about 13 per cent. in the years 1900 to 1939 and its replacement by foods such as milk, cheese and so forth is to be welcomed by the dietitian. Naturally, during the war of 1939–45, there has been a great increase in Great Britain's consumption of wheat and other cereal products—about 20 per cent. at the maximum—and it is to be hoped that in the years to come this will be diminished.

### WHEAT

If a grain of wheat is cut into thin sections and examined under a microscope, it will be found to consist of the following parts (Fig. 12):

1. The *germ*, or embryo. This is simply the young plant. It represents about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of the whole grain.

2. The kernel, or *endosperm*. This consists of two large masses of nutritive material for the use of the embryo. It makes up 85 per cent. of the grain.

3. The *bran*—an outer envelope mainly composed of “cellulose” impregnated with mineral matter, and designed as a protective covering to the grain, of which it makes up about  $13\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.

4. The *scutellum*—a membranous tissue between the germ and the endosperm, interesting in that it contains a large amount of thiamine.

The **chemical composition** of the whole grain and of its three components is shown in the table on page 266, constructed from *The Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*. It will be noticed that the germ is characterized by its richness in protein and fat, the endosperm by an

abundance of starch, and the bran by a preponderance of mineral elements and cellulose. It should be added that the germ is further peculiar in that both its protein and its carbohydrates are chiefly present in a soluble form, and it has a high amount of thiamine.

If the section of wheat is more highly magnified, the structure of its various components can be made out in greater detail. One can then see (Fig. 13) that the *endosperm* consists of a delicate honeycomb of cellulose, the cavities of which are full of starch grains, the interstices being filled up by smaller particles consisting of a protein or mixture of proteins called gluten. The gluten granules are most abundant in the outer zones of the endosperm.

The relative proportions of starch and gluten differ in different kinds of wheat. Generally speaking, it may be said that those grains which

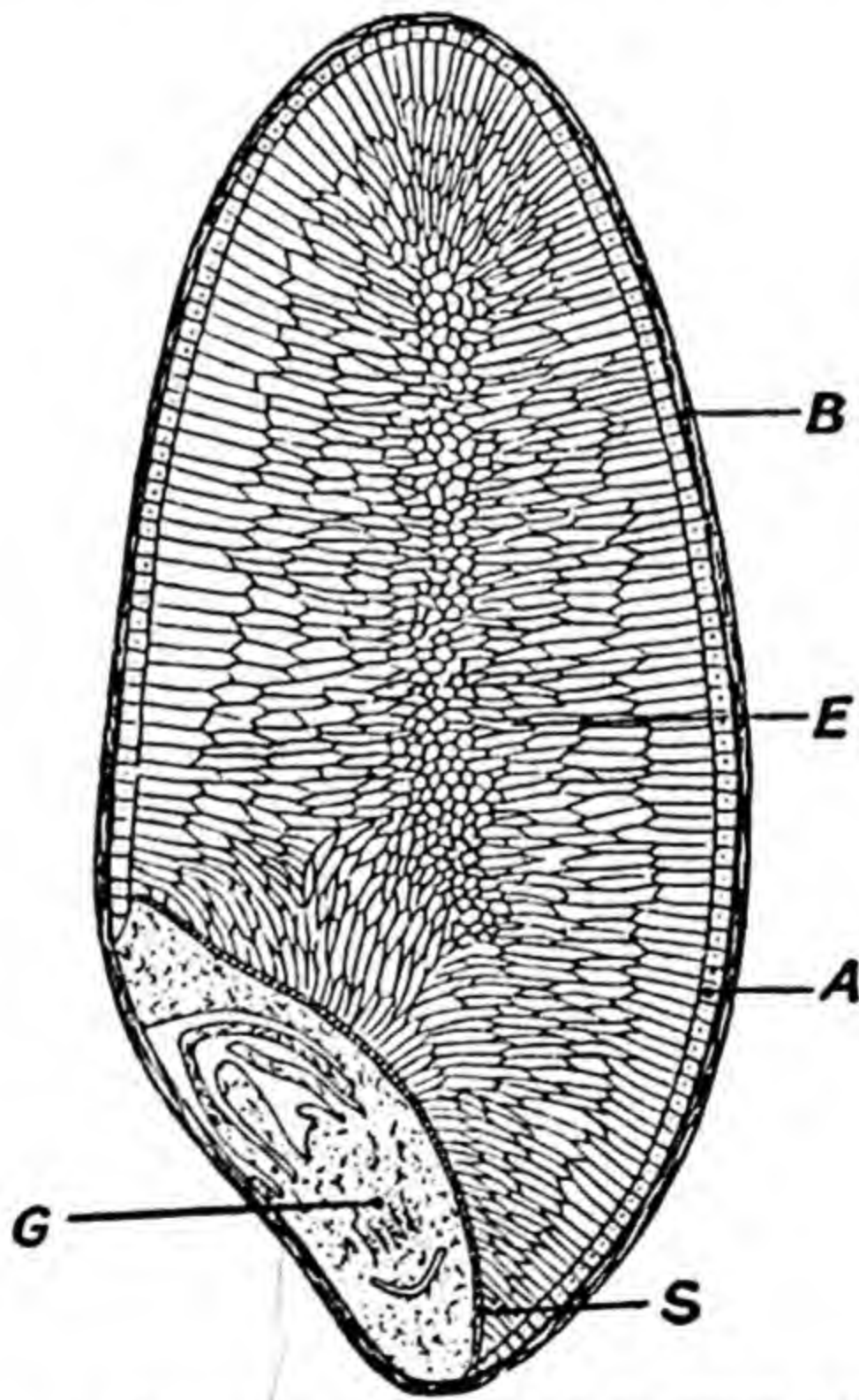


FIG. 12.—DIAGRAM OF LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH A GRAIN OF WHEAT.

- A. Aleurone layer of cells forming outermost layer of the endosperm.
- B. Pericarp, forming the branny envelope.
- E. Parenchymatous cells of the endosperm.
- G. Embryo or germ.
- S. Scutellum.

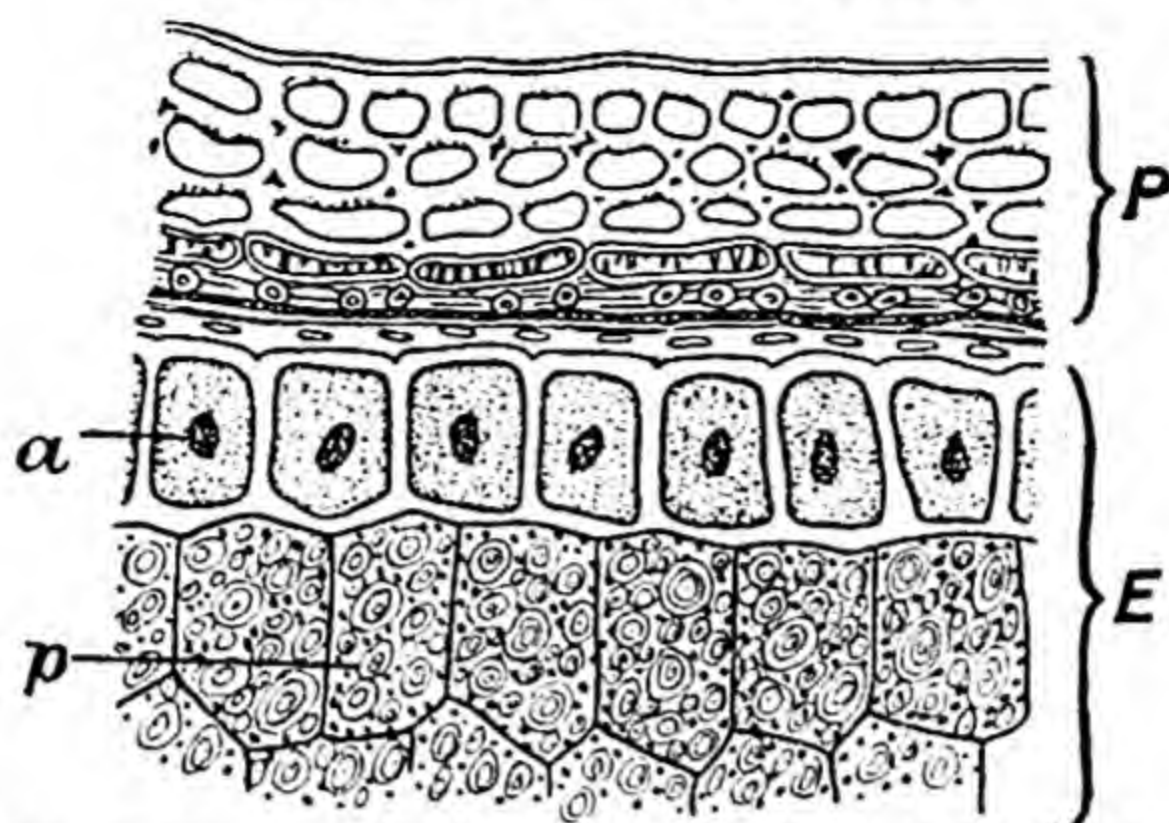


FIG. 13.—CROSS-SECTION THROUGH THE BRANNY ENVELOPE AND THE OUTER PORTION OF THE ENDOSPERM.

P. Pericarp or bran.

E. Endosperm consisting of *a*, layer of aleurone cells, *p*, parenchymatous cells.

look hard, translucent, and horny on section, are rich in gluten and poor in starch; while for the grains which are soft, opaque, and floury on section, the reverse holds good.

COMPOSITION OF THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF A WHEAT GRAIN  
(100 g. contain)

	Bran.	Endo- sperm.	Germ.	Whole Grain.	
				English.	Manitoba.
Water (g.) . . . . .	8	13	8	13	13
Protein (g.) . . . . .	10.9	13.1	32.0	9.1	13.9
Fat (g.) . . . . .	4.2	1.2	7.7	2.3	2.6
Carbohydrate (g.) . . . . .	54.5	71.6	37.8	68.1	64.3
Calcium (mg.) . . . . .	98	13	58	36	28
Iron (mg.) . . . . .	12.9	1.8	9.7	3.1	3.9
Vitamin A (I.U.) . . . . .	0	0	—	0	0
Thiamine (μg.) . . . . .	—	69	2100	294	363
Ascorbic acid (mg.) . . . . .	0	0	0	0	0
The figures for cellulose, taken from an earlier edition of this book, are					
	18.0	0.7	1.8	5.7	1.7

The *bran* (pericarp) is found to consist of two distinct layers:

1. An outer layer consisting entirely of fibres of cellulose impregnated with mineral matter. This is the layer which is removed in the decortication of wheat.

2. An inner layer consisting chiefly of small cells full of pigment, which give to the bran its brown colour. This layer is much poorer in cellulose than the first.

The outermost layer (the *Aleurone Layer*) of the endosperm consists

of a single row of large cells containing a fine network of protein matter enclosing small globules. It contains least cellulose of all, and is removed with the bran. This layer has always intrigued dietitians and claims are made for its importance because it contains proteins of high biological value usually lost with the bran. The scutellum had been overlooked until 1944 when Hinton<sup>1</sup> showed that it contained on the average 59 per cent. of the total thiamine of the whole wheat.

The *germ* consists of a mass of small cells rich in protein and fat, but its more minute structure does not concern us.

The wheat grain may be used as a food in its entirety. Soaked in water till it swelled up and burst, and then boiled in milk, with the addition of sugar and other ingredients, it formed the old and very nourishing dish called *frumenty*, which is now, however, but seldom seen on the table and is very difficult to masticate.

Far more commonly it is reduced before eating to a state of meal or flour by the process of *grinding or milling*. Now, it is an exceedingly difficult matter, owing to its toughness, to reduce the bran of wheat to a powder by grinding. It can be done, but the trouble and expense entailed are great. Graham<sup>2</sup> bread is made from whole wheat flour in which the bran has been finely triturated. As the bran in normal whole wheat is coarse, unpleasant to eat and irritating to many alimentary tracts, attempts have been made from earliest times to separate the bran from the rest of the flour.

From Norman times until the forties of last century the usual mode of grinding corn was between mill-stones made from mill-stone grit. The lower horizontal stone was stationary, the upper revolved. The cleaned wheat was fed through the axle of the upper stone and passed between the two stones out towards the circumference, being cracked, broken and ground to powder in the process. This cracking, breaking and grinding was facilitated by grooves cut in the stones and this grooving had to be renewed frequently. The dust thus worn off the stones mingled with the flour. The resulting flour was "100 per cent. whole meal" and is still the aim of those who maintain that man should eat whole food as presented to him by Nature. It contains coarse bran, finer bran, endosperm, stone dust and germ mixed together.

Such wholemeal flour produces a bread which is unpalatable to many and upsetting to many alimentary tracts. From Norman times it has been the custom to sieve off the bran by means of bolting cloth, originally made from wool or linen, but to-day made from silk. By consent, flour from which the coarsest bran particles are removed, consisting of

<sup>1</sup> HINTON. (1944), *Biochem. Journ.*, 38, 214. WARD. (1943), *Chem. and Industry*, 62, 11.

<sup>2</sup> Sylvester Graham was an American vegetarian. *Flourit* 1840. His name is still honoured in Germany; DRUMMOND and WILBRAHAM. (1939), *The Englishman's Food*.

about 92 per cent. of the original wheat, is called "wholemeal" though, of course, it is nothing of the sort. Further bolting removes the finer bran, and in the end a flour passably white is obtained. It represents about 75-80 per cent. of the grain. What is removed is the fine and coarse bran; what remains is the endosperm and some, if not all, of the germ. Such a flour is known as standard stoneground flour and is obtainable by those who prefer this sort of flour.

The Norman baron and his wife preferred white flour, and the bread made from it, to the coarser bread made either from unbolted flour or the mixture of rye and wheaten flour which was the lot of the serfs. The city merchants naturally imitated the aristocracy to the intense indignation of the latter, and preferred white bread to "black" or "brown." As naturally, to eat white bread became the mark of aristocracy and plutocracy, and brown bread the badge of poverty. Some remnant of this survives to this day. At any rate whiteness of flour became desirable and milling evolved in the direction of producing a whiter and whiter flour.

In the eighteen-forties a new method of milling was begun—crushing between rollers rather than between stones. This was named the roller process. It won its way first in Austria-Hungary, milling the hard Hungarian wheat, and it gave Vienna its well-known supremacy in bread- and pastry-making. It did not make its way into Great Britain till about 1880, for there was difficulty with the rollers and with the type of wheat. Roller milling succeeds best with the hard wheat such as we now obtain from Manitoba and not with the soft English wheats. Roller milling has now practically replaced stone grinding, and, for reasons that appear by no means scientific, has received the execration of most people who get excited about food.

*The Roller Process.* The wheat, after having been separated from "foreign bodies" such as nails, nuts, coin, wire, paper, shrivelled grain, maize, oats, corn cockle seed and other seeds, is washed, dried and sucked to the top of the mill. Thence it is fed by gravity between parallel horizontal hard steel rollers about 6 ft. long. The distance apart of these rollers can be adjusted to one-thousandth of an inch. Both rollers have spiral grooves cut in them, but the pitch of the upper spiral differs from that of the lower. The grain passes between the rollers and in doing so is caught by the spiral grooves and cracked or broken. This is called the "first break." Some bran is cracked away from the endosperm and germ, some of the endosperm is cracked and broken as well. The resulting mixture then passes between two parallel smooth rollers which continues the process, some flour—i.e. ground endosperm—being produced at this stage. The bran is blown off, the flour sieved off, and the remainder consisting of broken grain, semolina and germ passes to the top of the mill again. The flour produced at this first break is a

darkish flour—in milling parlance it has no colour, for colour means “white.”

The unground part of the mixture is ready for the second break. It passes between grooved rollers again, but the rollers are closer together, the grooves shallower and the pitch of the spirals not so great. Again the grain is further cracked, bran sheared off and flour produced, and after the break the resultant mixture passes between smooth rollers set closer together than the first pair. The flour sieved off at this stage—second break flour—is, with the third break flour, the whitest there is.

It is usual in the best mills in Great Britain to have four breaks only, but American and Canadian mills have pushed the breaks still further to get off the last remnant of endosperm from the bran.

The germ sticks to the third pair of smooth rollers and, being scraped off them, is collected as a separate fraction. In fact roller milling is an elaborate, semi-automatic, cheap and efficient way of fractionating wheat into its constituent parts and represents an advance on the cumbrous method of stone grinding. If an attack is to be made, it is not on the process itself, but on the use the millers and public have made of the process. If we want the germ, for making germ bread or Bemax, we have it. If we want pastry whites then we take the second and third break flour representing about 40 per cent. of the wheat seed. If “straight run” flour, we add the four breaks together. So called “whole meal” can be synthesized by adding to straight run flour the fine bran and the germ. The roller process has given us much more control over what we get from wheat and what we make from it—we have to see that we make the right things.<sup>1</sup>

There are further practical advantages in this “fractionation.” The white flour keeps better than the stoneground white flour. Some of the germ possibly and the oil and diastatic ferments of the germ are present in the stoneground flour. The oil oxidizes and goes rancid and the flavour of the flour depreciates. The germ produced by the roller mills can have its ferments destroyed by cooking with superheated steam and then be ground to a fine meal for the manufacture of germ breads (Smith’s patent). “Hovis” flour, originally contained three parts white flour (70 per cent. extraction) to one part germ, but now is made from 80 per cent. extraction flour, four parts to one part germ. It contains more protein, more fat, more thiamine and more nicotinic acid than either the national flour or the fortified flour now on the market.

Then, too, the bran separated from the flour forms food for domestic animals which possess alimentary tracts competent to deal with it,

<sup>1</sup> Any chemist would prefer straight phenol and the rest to crude tar, and a technician octane, petrol, medicinal paraffin, lubricating oil and paraffin wax, to crude oil.

e.g. the horse, cow, pig and hen, and it is a debatable (and debated)<sup>1</sup> problem whether it pays us better to feed the offals to the cow and the hen and get a return in first-class protein or to eat the bran ourselves at first hand. In time of war it has always appeared reasonable to increase the amount of bran in the flour for making pastry and bread. If we ourselves eat a greater percentage of the wheat kernel we do not need to transport so much wheat. In the Napoleonic wars it was so and in the two world wars. Some countries—Eire and South Africa—went as far as 100 per cent. extraction. We compromised at 85 per cent. extraction with a small dilution with home-grown barley meal, oatmeal and rye at the time of greatest urgency. But as soon as possible we got rid of the additions and in 1944 began to reduce the percentage extraction towards the 72 per cent. level again. By 1945 it reached the 80 per cent. level and the Minister of Food proclaimed it as “nutritious” as the 85 per cent. extraction flour,<sup>2</sup> while many people interested in nutrition consider this a grave error of judgment.

This is clearly the place to attempt an objective account of the hundred-year-old controversy of white versus wholemeal, with the warning that so many factors of prejudice are involved—conservatism, gastronomy, bowel consciousness, vested interests and politics—that scientific principles, even among the scientists themselves, disappear into a fog of unproved assertions.

The main uses of flour are in the production of bread, pastry and other confectionery and biscuits. For the last, English wheat flour is preferred with its low protein content, while for bread and confectionery, a flour with more rising power is desired. The proteins of wheat, gliadin and glutelin, when mixed with water, form an elastic paste which can be stretched considerably without breaking. Flour containing much gluten can be blown up into a sponge by forming carbon dioxide within it. This can be brought about either by the use of yeast, by baking powder or by actual “aeration” with carbon dioxide under pressure. A sponge so blown up, on baking “sets,” i.e. the gluten is coagulated and the form of the blown out sponge retained. The bread, cake or pastry so made is “light” in comparison with similar products made from the other cereal flours. Rice flour and oatmeal will not make bread. Rye flour by itself makes a badly risen soggy bread and is usually mixed with wheaten flour in making the bread eaten on the continent of Europe and by immigrants from mid-Europe into this country and doubtless into the United States. Barley meal also has to be mixed with wheat flour to produce a bread or pastry. Wheats differ from one

<sup>1</sup> See WRIGHT. (1941), *Chem. and Ind.*, 60, 623. BACHARACH. (1941), *Chem. and Ind.*, 60, 791.

<sup>2</sup> In the sense in which dietitians use the word nutritious this is not true, for if we wish to retain the maximal amount of the nutrients 85 per cent. extraction should be maintained.

another in their capacity to form a sponge. The "soft" wheats of Great Britain have a lower gluten content than the "hard" Hungarian or the Manitoba wheats. The bread made from them does not rise as well as that from the harder wheats and Vienna owes its pre-eminence in confectionery to them. The name "Vienna" has passed into currency for the lightest bread made in this country, though it is not made with Hungarian wheat flour. But it is not only the amount of gluten which determines the power to form a good "sponge." Other factors, such as the presence of other proteins than gliadin and glutelin, of bran and of different amounts of mineral elements also affect that power.

There is everywhere a movement towards standardization of manufactured food products. The purchaser prefers a bread, a beer or a butter which always looks the same, tastes the same and has the same texture. Consequently millers and bakers prefer a white flour, not only because it has better keeping qualities under prevailing conditions, but because it bakes bread and other commodities of a more standardized quality. The public, rightly or wrongly, likes white bread because of its whiteness,<sup>1</sup> which they confuse with purity, because of its texture in eating and possibly because of a traditional belief that to eat brown bread is a mark of social inferiority. As Renner points out, the gastronome dislikes the variation in texture produced by bran in the bread and by the crust, so that he removed the crust from toast and sandwiches.<sup>2</sup> The millers and bakers are out to give the public what it wants without consideration of dietetic values and so take the utmost trouble to standardize the flours they produce. They dislike English wheat flour with its low rising power, its high water content and its variability and before the Second World War resented the compulsion to use 20 per cent. of home-grown wheat. They preferred Canadian, Argentinian and Australian wheat because they could blend them to produce a standardized flour which gave (i) more loaves to the sack, and (ii) more standardized bread, etc. Flours with germ proteins in them, varying quantities of mineral elements, diastatic ferments and so on, need varying amounts of yeast in the making of bread, and baking powder and eggs in the manufacture of confectionery.

The change-over from the stoneground flours mainly of English origin to roller-ground flours mainly of foreign origin has been an inevitable process. Nor was that change-over in the nature of the flour quite so rapid as has been claimed by the opponents of the roller process. Great Britain did not suddenly change to a "devitalized" flour

<sup>1</sup> By taste alone the public cannot distinguish between breads made from 72 and 80 per cent. extraction flours. COPPOCK, J. B. M., HULSE, J. H., TODD, J. P., and URIE, A. (1952), *Journ. Sci. Food and Agric.*, 3, 433.

<sup>2</sup> RENNER, (1944), *The Origin of Food Habits*, 41. The odd thing is that toast crusts by themselves are a pleasant form of food, but attached to the toast they are an offence, a thing which any gastronome may prove for himself.

with the introduction of the roller process. Thus in 1786-91, Wyatt of the Albion Mill, claims that the 55 per cent. extraction flour was used in the white bread in general consumption in London.<sup>1</sup> The descent from high extraction to low extraction flour was well under way a hundred years before the introduction of the roller process into Great Britain.

But though the change-over was almost inevitable, it does not follow that dietetically it was sound. The arguments for and against the use of a white flour are set out below, but the reader must bear in mind—a thing too readily forgotten—that both white flour and wholemeal flour *by themselves*, or made into bread, are bad foods.

Wholemeal, whether 100 per cent. or the usual 92 per cent. extraction contains more protein and protein of a higher biological value, more thiamine, riboflavine, nicotinic acid, calcium, phosphorus, iron and roughage than white flour. Therefore, say the upholders of wholemeal flour, it is better for us. All the statements in the first sentence of this paragraph are true, and it appears at first sight that the case against white flour is complete.

The figures given by the Medical Research Council<sup>2</sup> are as follows:

	Protein.	Calcium.	Iron.	Thiamine	
	g.	mg.	mg.	μg.	
100 per cent. extraction English flour	9.1	36	3.1	294	} per 100 g.
70 per cent. extraction English flour	8.1	19	1.4	87	
100 per cent. extraction Manitoba flour	13.9	28	3.9	363	
70 per cent. extraction Manitoba flour	13.1	13	1.8	69	

For riboflavine and nicotinic acid the differences though great are not so pronounced but the fibre (roughage) may be as low as 0.2 per cent. in white flour and as high as 2.6 in 100 per cent. whole meal.

But except for vitamins of the B class the case is by no means so complete as the above figures seem to show. Percentage composition by no means spells availability. Because wholemeal contains more protein, more calcium and more iron it does not follow that the body absorbs more of them. In fact, from the early work to the present day, experiments comparing the absorbability of the constituents of foods with much roughage with that of foods with little, have shown that though the rough foods may have more of the proximal nutrient materials, the effect of the peristalsis the roughage produces in the

<sup>1</sup> Rich. (1941), *Chem. and Ind.*, 60, 611. Rich denies that much of the germ passes into the 75 per cent. extraction flour produced by stone grinding.

<sup>2</sup> *Nutritive Values of War-Time Foods* (1945).

human gut is that the body often picks up less. This has been investigated for bread, for rye bread and for rice, among other foods, and the results all point in the same direction.

For example: Macrae<sup>1</sup> and colleagues investigated the energy, protein and fibre "digestibility" of white bread from 73 per cent. extraction flour, and of wholemeal bread from 100 per cent. extraction flour, of two degrees of fineness of milling. They found that 96.1 per cent. of the energy value, 91 per cent. of the nitrogenous substances and 65.8 per cent. of the fibre of white bread were wholly absorbable, whereas the figures for fine wholemeal bread were 86.9, 85.3 and 14 per cent. and of the coarser wholemeal bread 87.1, 85.7 and 9.7 per cent. respectively. As regards energy value—and we consider that the chief reason for eating cereal products is their energy value—the lower extraction flour wins. Taking the energy values of white and wholemeal bread as approximately equal, the body obtains 5 per cent. more Calories from a pound of white bread than from a pound of wholemeal. Of course this means but 50 Calories all told, which, is, it is true, very little to boast about, and it may be purchased at too great a cost. Turning to the protein intake by the mouth, we find that though the wholemeal bread furnishes 2.91 g. of nitrogen, say 18 g. of protein, per 100 g. the white bread furnishes but 2.7 (say 16.7 protein). This, however, is offset by the larger amount of nitrogen lost in the faeces when on wholemeal bread. The net absorption is almost the same, viz. 14.8 and 15.2, the difference being of the same order as the error of the experiment.<sup>2</sup>

So far the results lead us to prefer neither white nor wholemeal flour to the other, but there is the question of the biological value of the proteins. Unfortunately this has never to our knowledge been measured for man but only for the laboratory rat. Chick and Work<sup>3</sup> showed that though the availability to the rat of 75 per cent. extraction flour, national wheatmeal flour and wholemeal flour was 89, 86 and 84 per cent. respectively, the young rat grew faster by some 30 per cent. on the wholemeal than on the white flour, when it formed the only source of protein in their diet; national wheatmeal giving an intermediate value. Such observations have great value. But it may be pointed out that to apply rat-feeding experiments directly to man is not wise. Even in the lowest stratum of human society in this country man does not live on bread alone. Indeed the governmental policy during the

<sup>1</sup> MACRAE, BACON, HUTCHINSON, and McDUGALL. (1941). *Chem. and Ind.*, 60, 723.

<sup>2</sup> It must be admitted that the analyses of bread vary within somewhat wide ranges. If we applied Macrae's results to bread showing the analyses given by McCance and Widdowson, we should find the argument in favour of wholemeal (92 per cent. extraction). Such an application would, however, not be reasonable.

<sup>3</sup> CHICK, H., and WORK. (1941). *Chem. and Ind.*, 60, 723.

Second-World War has been to supply the rapidly growing young with a cheapened source of protein of high biological value in milk, the effects of which swamp the small beneficial effects of the higher biological value of wholemeal. It is wiser to continue our efforts to supply everybody with sufficient milk than to insist on a greater degree of extraction of wheat. Until we have experiments on young growing children, comparable to those on the laboratory rat, the experiments quoted must remain as a possible pointer only. The rapidly growing rat might well show the effect of the higher biological value of wholemeal less ambiguously than the child. The rat certainly has the power of extracting other things from cereals which the human being does not possess. (See below.)

Then comes the problem of the mineral elements of cereals. The important ones are phosphorus, calcium and iron, of which wholemeal certainly possesses more than 72 per cent. extraction flour.

*Phosphorus.* White flour has 102 mg. per 100 g., national wheatmeal 206, and wholemeal (92 per cent. extraction) 287.<sup>1</sup> This appears to be at first sight all in favour of high extraction. But is phosphorus in these amounts essential? Throughout their extensive investigations into diets in this country, McCance and Widdowson have never met diets deficient in phosphorus. Whatever else may be lacking—calcium, iron, protein and vitamins—phosphorus is always there. Moreover, the phosphorus in cereals antagonizes the absorption of calcium, whether it be there as phytates or as phosphates.<sup>2</sup> Free phosphates impede the absorption of calcium, whereas the phytates in 92 per cent. wholemeal, not only prevent the body from obtaining the calcium in wholemeal but actually prevent it from obtaining some of the calcium from other sources, such as milk, cheese and fish. It has been calculated by McCance and Widdowson that 1 lb. of wholemeal bread would blanket the calcium in  $\frac{9}{10}$  of a pint of milk. In the long run, with the consumption of milk in this country so low as it is, it would be wrong to insist on higher extraction of wheat until the production and consumption of milk is increased by at least 50 per cent. This will take many years.

On the score, then, of phosphorus content, wholemeal is a dangerous food.

*Calcium.* In calcium content, wholemeal flour beats white flour. The figures given by McCance and Widdowson<sup>3</sup> are 34.8 mg. and 18.4 mg. per 100 g. respectively. Assuming the calcium to be equally available from each—which we have seen they are not—wholemeal provides double the amount of calcium that white flour yields. Put in

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *The Chemical Composition of Foods*.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Journ. Physiol.*, **101**, 44, 304.

<sup>3</sup> *Op. cit.*

that way, as it often is by those who "believe" in wholemeal, it sounds convincing. But put in the common-sense way of saying how much wholemeal flour one would have to eat per day to obtain 680 mg., the argument becomes ludicrous. To obtain all the calcium needed by an average man per day, he would have to eat  $\frac{100 \times 680}{34.8}$  or approxi-

mately 1950 g. (i.e. over 4½ lb.). This as bread would be some 6¼ lb.—an impossible amount. To eat 1 lb. per day is an achievement, except when taking strenuous exercise. Besides which—to continue flogging a dead horse—the calcium of wholemeal is unavailable. All cereals are poor sources of calcium and what they have is often unavailable and almost certainly unavailable in whole cereals and whole cereal products.

**Iron.** Again we find that wholemeal (92 per cent. extraction) has more iron than white flour. Figures from McCance and Widdowson's tables are 3.55 mg. per 100 g. wholemeal, 2.36 mg. for National wheatmeal, and only 0.92 for 70–72 per cent. extraction flour. Moreover, it has been shown that the laboratory rat, made anæmic by a diet of white bread and milk, can be restored to a normal state of the blood by whole cereals. The rat obtains insufficient iron from white flour, but can gain sufficient from whole cereals. Consequently, the assumption was made that the anæmia, so often found in the poorer classes of this and other countries devoted to highly milled cereals, is due to the deficiency of those cereals in iron. And here, among others, we must pillory ourselves, for in the 9th Edition of this book we recommended wholemeal bread for its pleasant flavour and its iron.<sup>1</sup> This illustrates the rashness of applying facts discovered in the rat directly to human dietetics without criticism. It had been known that of the metallic phytates, iron phytate is particularly insoluble. Consequently it might have been guessed that the phytates of whole cereals would impede iron absorption from the human gut. This is true. In prolonged experiments by McCance and Widdowson the percentage absorption of the iron present in the diets of four men and four women sank measurably when the white bread in their diets was replaced by wholemeal bread of 92 per cent. extraction.<sup>2</sup> Though there was 50 per cent. more iron in the wholemeal bread diet, they absorbed less of it. Two of the women actually went into negative balance on the wholemeal bread diet. The authors of this work cautiously suggest in their summary of the experiments that "in spite of the large amounts of iron in whole wheat, bread made from it may not be as good a source of iron as is generally supposed."

Why then do rats recover from a nutritional anæmia produced by white bread and milk when given whole wheat? Simply because they possess a phytase in their alimentary tract which splits the inositol

<sup>1</sup> *Food and the Principles of Dietetics* (1940), 133.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Lancet*, I, 588.

hexaphosphates into inositol and phosphates, while man does not. So little a difference does it take to render experiments on rats nugatory when applied to human beings!

It is true that cereals do contain phytases, but in the case of wheat not enough to split the whole of the phytates in bread-making.<sup>1</sup> In rye bread baked according to German technique, 45 per cent. of the phytates were destroyed by the active phytase of rye, but much less disappears in wheaten bread.

So on the score of iron, as well as of calcium, a 70 per cent. extraction flour is more beneficial than a long extraction. Generally speaking, the high mineral element content of wholemeal flour gives it no advantage in diet over white flour, but rather the opposite.

*Vitamins.* Both white flour and wholemeal flour are deficient in vitamins A, C and D. It was once thought that wholemeal contained some vitamin A but to-day this opinion has been relinquished. The Medical Research Council's tables<sup>2</sup> put its content of A as zero. So there is nothing to choose between the two flours when considering vitamins A, C and D. They have none. Wholemeal flour will have vitamin E, which is of problematic value in human nutrition. But, as we have said, the B vitamins are much better represented in wholemeal flour than in white. Both the germ and the bran contain more thiamine, riboflavine and nicotinic acid than the endosperm. Of the total thiamine in wheat, the germ has 15–20 per cent., the bran 60 per cent., and the endosperm only 25 per cent.<sup>3</sup> This estimate has to be modified somewhat, for it has been found that the scutellum contains 59 per cent. of the total thiamine of the wheat.<sup>4</sup> This probably in ordinary milling is included with the germ, but if it could be retained by "dry milling" in the endosperm, much higher amounts of thiamine would be present in white flour, enough to lay the bogy of avitaminosis B<sub>1</sub> which so terrifies the B enthusiasts. It would be possible to obtain a 76 per cent. extraction flour with no germ or bran in it yet having the thiamine content of national wheatmeal flour.<sup>5</sup> It must be mentioned that all wheats have not the same thiamine value. It is usually assumed that their value is about 1.6 I.U. per g.<sup>6</sup> It may be higher. Figures have been given as high as 5.

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1944), *Nature*, **153**, 650.

<sup>2</sup> *The Nutritive Values of War-Time Food*. (1945.) Some workers claim that what there is, is equally distributed between endosperm and the rest of the wheat berry.

<sup>3</sup> RICH. (1941), *Chem. and Ind.*, **60**, 611.

<sup>4</sup> HINTON. (1944), *Biochem. Journ.*, **38**, 214; WARD. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, **62**, 11.

<sup>5</sup> WARD. (1943), *op. cit.*

<sup>6</sup> RICH. (1941), *Chem. and Ind.*, **61**, 611; COPPING (1945) in a conference of the Nutrition Society, Feb. 24th, gave figures: 2.8–8.5  $\mu\text{g/g.}$  = 0.28–0.85 mg./100 g. = 0.93 I.U. to 2.83 I.U. per g. or 93–283 I.U. per 100 g.

With nicotinic acid the story is much the same: it is to be found concentrated in the bran, the coarsest bran having most. Thus whereas English wheat may have 48  $\mu\text{g}$ . per g. and Manitoba 55–66, commercial germ has 55–77, and the bran 267–325. A 45 per cent. extraction white flour from English wheat has only 5.0, a 70 per cent. 7.5, and 85 per cent. 10.5, and 100 per cent. 48. Similar but rather higher figures are given for Manitoba wheat, the 1943 wheats having a particularly high titre.<sup>1</sup> National Wheatmeal flour, 85 per cent. extraction, gave figures ranging from 12–18.7  $\mu\text{g}$ . per g. One pound of 85 per cent. flour would give about 5½ mg. of nicotinic acid, a very considerable amount, whereas a 70 per cent. extraction white flour would give but 3½–3¾ mg. The change to 85 per cent. extraction flour coincided with the disappearance of pellagra among the mental patients in an institution to which one of us (G. G.) had access. Previously, 4 or 5 patients who were "difficult" over their food had mild pellagra each year.

With riboflavine the distribution between bran, germ and endosperm is more even than with thiamine, and nicotinic acid, but still the endosperm has least.<sup>2</sup> Therefore as regards the B complex of vitamins, nutrition experts must favour high extraction, though it must not be forgotten that the microbes of the large intestine contribute to the body significant amounts of these vitamins, and it is possible that cereal residues give a less satisfactory pabulum for these microbes than, say, milk residues.

There remains only roughage to consider. It, or its decomposition products in the large intestine, stimulate that organ to peristalsis. It is generally asserted that some roughage is of assistance to the regular emptying of the large intestine. There is no doubt that whole cereals provoke in the majority of people a much more frequent evacuation, up to thrice a day, of the large intestine. Some alimentary tracts are much more irritable than others. Many cannot tolerate a 100 per cent. extraction material. Indeed there were frequent grumbles at 85 per cent. extraction National Wheatmeal bread on that account, though only the fine bran was included in National Wheatmeal flour. It is impossible to say how much this fear of the large intestine, inculcated in people by nurses, relatives and the patent food and medicine advertisements, renders them "bowel-conscious" and so queers their capacity for sound observation. It has been said that it is somewhat hard on those who have no trouble with their colons to be condemned to frequent and bulky stools in order that the constipated should have regular motions.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> BARTON WRIGHT. (1944), *Biochem. Journ.*, **38**, 314.

<sup>2</sup> Cereals in whatever form are a poor source of riboflavine.

<sup>3</sup> ROBERTSON. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, **62**, 222.

To sum up the whole problem as it stands at the present day:

- (i) There is no advantage in higher extraction flours as regards protein absorption.
- (ii) There may be slight advantage in them as regards the biological value of their protein.
- (iii) High extraction flours are much worse than low extraction flours where calcium and iron absorptions are concerned, and this is mainly due to their high content of organic and inorganic phosphorus compounds.
- (iv) Both high extraction and low extraction flours are valueless as sources of vitamins A, C and D.
- (v) High extraction flour is much better than low extraction flours for the B complex of vitamins.
- (vi) High extraction flour sometimes provokes frequent and bulky evacuations of the large intestine which may or may not be advantageous.

It is clear that some compromise between high and low extraction is advisable, and we think that the introduction of National Wheatmeal flour of 85 per cent. extraction,<sup>1</sup> containing the fine bran, the aleurone layer, the scutellum and as much of the germ as possible, and having a thiamine content of nearly 3  $\mu$ g. per g. was a wise move from a wholly dietetic standpoint and that the fortification of this flour with calcium to offset the phytate effect was an admirable step. Further, we consider that this standard should have been maintained until the agriculture of this country has been so reformed that there is plenty of milk, cheese, eggs, fruit, vegetables and bacon for everyone and the economic conditions so changed that everyone can purchase them. As regards wheat the task of the growers is to produce wheat with higher amounts of the B complex of vitamins and the task of the millers is to see that these vitamins find their way into the lower extraction flours demanded by public taste. We regret even the drop to 80 per cent. extraction for the amounts of the useful nutrients in wheat flour—particularly thiamine—show a sudden drop if the extraction be below 85 per cent. From 85 to 80 per cent. extraction entails a loss of over 30 per cent. of the thiamine.

We cannot close this section without a reference to the experiments made by Dr. Elsie Widdowson and Prof. R. A. McCance on malnourished children in Wuppertal in 1947–9. These children were placed on basal diets satisfactory as regards calcium, iron, and vitamins A, C and D and were allowed to satisfy their naturally ravenous appetites on bread of five types, either wholemeal, 85 per cent. extraction, 70

<sup>1</sup> (1954). *Med. Res. Council Special Report Series*, No. 287, H.M.S.O.

per cent. extraction, 70 per cent. fortified to equal wholemeal, or 70 per cent. extraction to equal 85 per cent. extraction in thiamine, riboflavine, nicotinic acid and iron.

It made not a ha'porth of difference. The logical deduction from that is *not* that 70 per cent. extraction bread is as good as wholemeal, etc., *at any time or place*, but probably that if one's diet is satisfactory in calcium, iron and vitamins A, C and D it does not matter what bread one eats.<sup>1</sup>

### COOKERY OF FLOUR—BREAD

In order to make flour available as food, it must be cooked in some way or another. The simplest method is to mix the flour with water and bake it. It is in this way that *ship's biscuit* is manufactured. The product, however, is of an almost flinty hardness, and not easy of mastication. Hence the problem early arose, how to cook the flour in such a way that it would be light and easy of digestion. It was solved by causing gas to develop in the mixture of flour and water, so converting the latter into a kind of sponge, which was subsequently baked, and into which the digestive juices can easily penetrate. In other words, man learnt to make *bread*. Now, the making of bread from flour is only possible because the latter contains gluten. Gluten is a mixture of proteins, which has the peculiar property of becoming viscid when mixed with water. If the viscid mass is then blown up with gas, it has sufficient cohesion to remain in the form of a sponge or honeycomb, instead of collapsing again, as it otherwise would do, and allowing the gas to escape. As we have said above, most other cereals, such as barley, rice, and oatmeal, do not contain gluten, but other forms of protein. These do not become viscid when moistened, and consequently out of these bread cannot be made.

The next question is, How is the gas, which is to be used to blow up the dough, produced? The reply is that the earliest method of producing the gas, and that which is still by far the most widely used, was by *fermentation*. There are in the air "wild" yeasts which falling on a wet dough produce from the sugar in the dough alcohol and carbon dioxide.<sup>2</sup> This must have been the method by which the Egyptians and the Jews "leavened" their bread. Some dough reserved from the last baking was added to a fresh dough, the yeast it contained grew with great rapidity

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE and WIDDOWSON's considered views on the brown v. white controversy can be found in the *Lancet*, 1955, 2, 205.

<sup>2</sup> AMOS. (1942), *Chem. and Ind.*, 61, 117, has given convincing evidence that the flour itself contains a yeast which must be responsible for the gasification of the barm in the Scottish method of making bread, and possibly in the leaven of Biblical times. This paper and the relevant chapters of *Modern Cereal Chemistry* by Kent-Jones should be consulted by anyone interested in the reasons for the different flavours and textures of bread in various parts of the British Isles.

through this dough till all was *leavened* and filled with bubbles of gas.<sup>1</sup>

In more modern times strains of yeasts have been produced commercially and standardized, and these are what are used to-day for the manufacture of bread.

It is not the object of this book to deal with processes of cooking except in so far as they bear upon dietetics, so no elaborate account of the baking of bread is given here. That is left to trade journals and cookery books, but we cannot refrain from saying that the latter make the process of breadmaking terrifyingly elaborate, whereas it is so easy that almost anyone can make a success of it.

In using yeast to make bread, the first thing the baker has to do is to get his yeast to increase and multiply. This has two advantages: it enables an originally small quantity of yeast to suffice for a whole sack of flour, and it produces a more active yeast, for the young cells are more energetic than those which are older. This stage of bread-making is called the preparation of the *ferment*. The yeast is mixed with sugar and warm water and put in a warm place till it froths up. This takes but a short time. The invertase of the yeast splits the cane sugar to glucose and fructose and the zymase within the yeast cells begins the fermentation of the glucose to carbon dioxide and alcohol. There are other and more elaborate ways of producing a "ferment," e.g. by the use of potato gruel, flour and yeast, but the object is to obtain an actively growing yeast.<sup>2</sup>

This ferment is then mixed with warmed flour and warm water and the whole kneaded into a dough. The yeast continues its production of carbon dioxide within the dough, partly at the expense of the sugar added and partly by working on the maltose produced by the diastatic ferments of the flour acting on its starch. The dough is thus blown up into a sponge-like texture. It rises. How long it is left to rise varies greatly and depends largely on the amount of ferment used, and the temperature of the surroundings. It can be as little as 20 minutes. In the usual household practice it is an hour. In commercial bakeries it is about 4 hours, but it may be, in more economical parts of these islands, much longer still. This has some bearing on the destruction of the phytates present. The longer the dough is "proved" the more work the phytases of the flour can accomplish with advantage in reducing the rachitic effect of cereals.

When the dough has risen to about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  times its original volume it is usual to knead it thoroughly again, leave it again to rise in a warm place and when it has sufficiently risen to weigh out portions and bake it at a temperature of  $400^{\circ}$ – $450^{\circ}$  F. This second kneading, invariably carried

<sup>1</sup> This method was still actually in use in remote farmhouses in the early childhood of the authors.

<sup>2</sup> See AMOS, *op. cit.*

The baking causes the gas in the dough to expand and blow the latter up so that it becomes full of little cavities. The heat also hardens and coagulates the proteins in the flour. Some of the starch on the outside is converted to soluble starch and dextrin and forms the crust. It is to the dextrin that the crust owes its glazed appearance. Altogether about 8 per cent.<sup>3</sup> of the starch in the loaf is thus converted. Some caramel also is formed, and helps to give the crust its flavour and dark colour. When these changes have taken place the dough has passed into the form of bread.

The consideration of this inevitable waste led to attempts to convert dough into a porous form by the use of water, in making the dough, which had been saturated with carbon dioxide under 7 to 10 atm. The product was known as *aerated bread*. The process has, however, fallen into desuetude. The bread so produced had a raw and insipid flavour.

<sup>1</sup> GRANT. (1944), *Your Daily Bread*.

<sup>2</sup> Personal communication from two housewives.

<sup>a</sup> U.S. Dept. of Agriculture Bull. 67.

\* AMOS, *op. cit.*

and alum powders not more than seven to eleven. In all of these powders the soda is slightly in excess, so that the end reaction of the chemical process is alkaline. There is thus no possibility of their rendering the bread sour. "Self-raising" flour is flour with which baking-powder has already been mixed. Although the use of baking powders obviates the protein and carbohydrate loss from the dough, there is considerable destruction of thiamine, which does not occur when yeast is used. In yeast-made bread the loss is about 10 per cent. In baking-powder-made bread the loss may be as much as 100 per cent., depending upon the final pH reached. Hence baking powders should not be used if there is any fear of lack of thiamine.

No matter by what process a loaf is made, it possesses, when finished, certain characters by which bakers judge of its quality. It should be well "risen," and possessed of a thin flinty crust, which is neither very light nor very dark in colour, and cracks on breaking. The crumb should be elastic in consistence, of uniform texture without large holes, and of a smooth and silky "pile." It should have a sweet, nutty flavour and odour, and in colour should be of a creamy whiteness. Curiously enough, when bakers speak of a loaf having "no colour," they mean that it is rather dark, whereas "high colour" signifies with them great whiteness. It must be admitted, however, that the above characters, however important æsthetically, are not of much value from a nutritive point of view. A very white loaf means a loaf in which the B vitamins are not well represented, unless it is made from fortified flour. For setting up a false standard of whiteness the baker is not to blame. It is the ignorance of the public, which mistrusts a dark loaf.

**The Chemical Composition of Bread.** Two-thirds of the volume of a good loaf is made up of gas, and of the solid part about 40 per cent. by weight consists of water, so that bread is one of the least watery of vegetable foods, and is relatively much less so than raw meat.<sup>1</sup> The composition of the dry residue will obviously depend upon that of the flour from which the bread has been made. Especially has one to consider whether the bran and the germ have been left in the flour or not. In white bread these have been excluded. As regards "brown" breads one cannot speak so definitely, for the term *brown bread* is a vague expression.<sup>2</sup> It may simply mean that a certain proportion of bran or of germ or of both have been added to the flour, or it may be

<sup>1</sup> The great variability in the amount of water met with in bread renders it desirable that some standard of moisture should be fixed, the exceeding of which should be regarded as an adulteration. In other words, when a consumer pays for a given weight of bread he has a right to expect that his purchase shall contain a definite amount of solid food. The figure given for the water in National Wheat-meal bread in *The Nutritive Values of War-time Foods* is 37 per cent.

<sup>2</sup> "Graham flour," invented by the American physician, Dr. Sylvester Graham, alone contains the entire grain. In making "wholemeal" the outer and more flinty layers of the bran are removed.

applied to bread made from whole wheat meal. In each case the resulting loaf will be "brown." Now, bran contains, as we have seen, a good deal of inorganic matter, protein, and vitamins of the B complex. One would naturally expect, therefore, that bread containing bran should be richer in these ingredients than white bread. As regards inorganic matter this is certainly true, but it is by no means invariably true of protein. The following table shows in round numbers the mean percentage composition of different breads. Unfortunately the reader must be prepared to meet analyses which do not agree with those quoted, which are from McCance and Widdowson.<sup>1</sup> For example, those given by the Medical Research Council<sup>2</sup> for 80 per cent. extraction bread are: Protein 8.6, Fat 1.0, Carbohydrate 51.4, Calcium 59 mg., Iron 1.8, Calories per 100 g. 248. Such variations are inevitable and depend upon the source of the bread and not on the analyst.

COMPOSITION PER 100 G. OF WHOLEMEAL AND WHITE BREAD COMPARED

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Calories
	g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	
White bread (70-72 per cent. extraction)	7.9	0.7	53.7	23.1	1.00	259
National Wheatmeal bread (80 per cent. extraction)	8.6	1.0	51.4	59	1.2	248
Wholemeal bread (92 per cent. extraction)	8.5	1.3	50.4	18	2.1	247

There are also various *patent and fancy breads* in the market. Of the former the different varieties of *Vienna bread* are a good example. These are made from very fine flour ("patents") fermented with compressed yeast, milk being often added to the dough. The crust is glazed by being subjected to the action of superheated steam before leaving the oven. Of the patent breads, the majority are of the "brown" variety. They are made from flours prepared by various patent processes. Some of them are *wholemeal* breads, in which the bran has been reduced to varying degrees of fineness; others contain the germ in various proportions, of which "Hovis" is the best-known example. Others, again, are *malted*. Detailed analyses of patent breads made by Hutchison will be found in an earlier edition of this book. Any advantage these breads, with the exception of the germ breads, have over

<sup>1</sup> *Chemical Composition of Foods*. (1942), Med. Res. Council Special Rep. No. 235.

<sup>2</sup> *The Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*.

normal bread lies more in their palatability and flavour than in their nutritive value.

**Changes which Bread undergoes on Keeping.** When bread is kept its crust loses its gloss and elasticity and becomes soft, leathery, and dull. At the same time the crumb becomes "dry" and hard. The crust takes up water from the air and from the crumb. The change in the crumb is not only, as might have been guessed, due to loss of water but due to a change in the aggregation of the molecules of starch. Starch, according to Kratz, who examined its X-ray spectrograph, has three forms: A, that of unchanged wheaten starch; B, that of "native" starch; and C, that of fresh baked crumb of bread. On staling, the starch of type C reverts to that of type B. This change is reversible and depends on temperature and humidity. A stale loaf may be "rejuvenated" several times by a short time in a sharp oven. Type B starch is again changed to type C.

The *cooking of bread* is practically confined to the application of dry heat. This has the effect of driving off water, and of rupturing some of the starch grains, and converting them partly into soluble starch and dextrin. A little caramel also is produced. The result is toast. Toasted bread has the composition: Protein 9.4, Fat 0.8, Carbohydrate 83.8, and Calorie value per lb. 1300 (per oz. 81). "Pulled bread" is made by pulling out the interior of a new loaf and thoroughly baking it. The same changes occur in it as in toast, only to a greater degree. "Fairy toast" or toast Melba is made from new bread, cut thin, and baked in a slow oven till it is a delicate golden brown, or from thick toast which is split down the middle and the fresh side toasted.

**Biscuits** are made from English wheat flour either alone or with the addition of sugar, butter, milk, flavouring agents, etc. Baking-powder is sometimes added to make them rise a little. They contain very little water (about 5 per cent.), and 3 lb. of them may be taken as equal in Calories to 4 or 5 lb. of bread, according to the make of biscuit.

Analysis of a number of biscuits made by English firms are given on p. 285; attention is called to the high percentage of fat in many kinds, particularly the cream cracker.

**Rusks** may be regarded as a kind of toast. They are made in much the same way as bread, but sometimes with the addition of butter, sugar and milk, and are twice passed through the oven, after which they are thoroughly dried.

*The Digestibility of Bread.* The term digestibility in dietetics is a loosely used term to denote a number of properties. To the physiologist it means ease and rapidity of digestion and absorption into the blood stream; to the physician it means these plus lack of discomfort in the process. If the eating of a food is followed earlier or later by pain or discomfort, that food is apt to be labelled "indigestible." It

## COMPOSITION OF BISCUITS PER 100 G.

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Calories	Calories per oz.
Army (round)	13.1	1.2	75.2	373	106
" (square)	11.9	0.3	76.3	362	103
Bisc-o'-Rye	11.90	1.10	76.00	369	105
Breakfast	10.40	9.20	74.86	432	123
Chocolate	4.69	6.15	70.20	362	103
Cornish Wafer	7.25	29.28	58.87	542	154
Cracknel	11.58	8.38	73.91	425	121
Cream Cracker	8.08	18.43	70.62	492	140
Dinner Roll	10.49	6.34	74.39	404	115
Fancy Lunch	9.86	7.17	78.88	429	122
" "	11.60	8.63	72.70	429	122
Fine Water	11.95	7.33	75.03	422	120
Fruit Wafer	5.40	10.64	72.18	418	119
Ginger Nut.	6.10	8.50	79.80	418	119
Horlick's Malted Milk Rusks	9.30	4.30	80.00	404	115
Marie	7.43	10.80	79.47	453	129
Milk	9.23	10.72	76.85	440	125
Nursery	9.33	3.67	78.80	394	112
Osborne	7.40	11.10	79.59	457	130
Oval Thin Captain	9.25	6.38	79.46	422	120
Oval Water	9.96	6.88	78.00	422	120
P.F. Shortcake	8.02	26.40	62.40	541	151
Princess	8.20	24.00	63.10	527	147
Thin Captain	11.28	1.68	80.31	422	120
Ryvita	7.4	2.1	86.8	313	106
Water	8.73	4.07	81.75	408	116

may produce flatulence in the stomach or bowel; it may evoke a large flow of gastric juice and promote excessive peristalsis of stomach or intestine; the peristalsis of the stomach and small intestine may hurry the food in a semi-digested state into the colon and microbes there may produce flatus, offensive or otherwise; the peristalsis may be so great as to cause diarrhœa. Any food which does any of these things is "indigestible." At one time great attention was paid to the length of time food remained in the stomach, but this, we consider, is no sound measure of its digestibility.

Voit, in his lectures, used to protest against the idea that awareness of the workings of the alimentary tract indicated that the food eaten was indigestible. He maintained that all it showed was that the alimentary tract was at work. This we hold to be unfounded, for we consider that digestion is best when effortless and unconscious. Bread is digestible and absorbable. The digestion starts in the mouth by the conversion of its cooked starch and its dextrans into dextrans and maltose under the influence of the diastatic ferment of the saliva known as ptyalin.

The more thoroughly the bread is chewed and ground into small particles, the more complete will the transformation be. It is on account of the greater ease with which they can be pulverized by the teeth that toast and biscuits are more easily digested than ordinary bread, and stale bread than a newly-baked loaf. The dryness of toast and biscuits, too, enables them to become easily saturated with the saliva, and that also greatly facilitates digestion. Further, it must be remembered that a considerable proportion of the starch in biscuits and toast has been already converted into soluble forms in the course of their preparation, so that the labours of the digestive juices in their case are considerably lightened. For these reasons also the crust of bread is more digestible than the crumb, for it is drier, and contains a higher proportion of dextrins, owing to the more intense action upon it of the heat of the oven.

The notorious indigestibility of new bread, on the other hand, is due to its moistness, which makes it difficult to chew, and at the same time prevents it from soaking up the saliva. Alvarez reports that new bread can pass the whole of the small intestine without becoming digested. (Observations upon a patient with ileal fistula.)

As regards the *duration of its stay in the stomach*, bread leaves the stomach with good speed. A test meal of 2 oz. toast and  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint of fluid leaves the stomach in 40 minutes. Hawk and Bergheim report that 100 g. of bread ( $3\frac{1}{2}$  oz.) leave the stomach completely in  $2\frac{1}{2}$  hours. This period cannot really be regarded as long when one bears in mind the comparatively large amount of solid matter which bread contains. White bread is disposed of by the stomach rather more quickly than black (e.g. rye), but there is no appreciable difference in this respect between the behaviour of wholemeal bread and that made from fine flour. Biscuits must be regarded as considerably more digestible than ordinary bread in view of the large amount of solid nutriment which they contain.

In the intestine the digestion of the starch and protein of bread is completed, and *absorption* takes place. On the whole, white bread is very thoroughly absorbed. Even when large quantities are consumed, the loss of nutritive constituents is only about as follows:<sup>1</sup>

	Percentage Unabsorbed.
Total solids . . . . .	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
Protein . . . . .	20 <sup>2</sup>
Inorganic elements . . . . .	25
Carbohydrates . . . . .	3

<sup>1</sup> From the average of a considerable number of experiments by Rubner, Atwater, Zuntz and Magnus-Levy, Goodfellow and others. The quantities consumed were very considerable, amounting to from 600 to 1000 g. per day.

<sup>2</sup> The latest figures quoted above, p. 273, give the loss of protein as much lower, viz. 9 per cent. for white bread and 15 per cent. for 100 per cent. extraction wholemeal bread.

It will be noted that a great share of loss falls to the proteins. This contrasts very strikingly with the case of meat, in which the protein is absorbed almost in its entirety.

The *carbohydrate* of bread corresponds to the protein of meat in passing almost completely into the blood. On the other hand, it is rather surprising to find that, of the comparatively small amount of *inorganic elements* met with in bread, one-fourth is excreted unabsorbed.

We have already (pp. 270-8) discussed the still hotly debated question of the relative nutritional values of white and wholemeal bread. For the middle classes in peace-time this seems as important as the question as to which end you should open an egg. The future seems to lie with a fortified bread.

On the evidence, then, bread, unless it be new, is a highly digestible and absorbable food. It is unlikely to provoke any of the symptoms which will cause it to be labelled indigestible. Even the eating of hot newly baked bread, so usual for breakfast in the United States, does not seem to be followed by the symptoms which would be expected in this country. Four years' residence in North America by one of us did not reveal more indigestion in that part of the world than in Great Britain. It was common once to speak slightly of the American stomach, but perhaps that term of abuse may be allowed to pass into desuetude.

**The Economic Value of Bread.** Bread is among the cheapest of foods. That is why it forms so large a proportion of the diet of the poorer paid classes. A labourer, doing heavy manual work, can easily consume 1 lb. of bread per day. He needs cheap and easily available energy and that is supplied by bread. With so much more of our manual work being done by machinery and with an absolute rise in wages of the working classes we may expect the consumption of bread and other cereal products to decrease. This tendency was obvious in this country between the opening years of the century and the outbreak of war in 1939. As war circumstances caused a fall in the fat ration, the other main source of Calories, the consumption of bread rose again and in diets investigated by McCance and Widdowson before and after the commencement of the war the Calories obtained for carbohydrate almost exactly equalled those lost in fat. Bread, then, has its prime importance in supplying Calories.

It is difficult in a time of fluctuating prices to give figures which will be accurate for more than a year or so. But it is easy to work out the cost per thousand Calories given tables and current prices, as shown in the table on p. 288.

Clearly bread and margarine helped down with a smear of jam is the cheapest way of getting Calories.

Margarine at 2s.	per lb. produces	Calories at 146 per penny
Butter „ 3s. 10d.	„ „	„ 76 „ „
Bread „ 4½d.	„ „	„ 222 „ „
Cheese „ 2s. 2d.	„ „	„ 76 „ „
Milk „ 1s. 1d. per qt.	„ „	„ 42 „ „
Potatoes „ 2d. per lb.	„ „	„ 128 „ „
Jam „ 2s. 0d.	„ „	„ 47 „ „

In other countries other cereals may take the place of wheat products, but the reason is the same: cereals are cheap for Calories. That is why the Government in the Second World War kept the price of bread artificially low.

Bread, too, is by no means a negligible source of protein. In fact a high bread diet entails a high total protein diet; 1 lb. of bread contains over 38 g. of protein, no mean proportion of the 70–80 g. held to be essential in the daily diet of an adult. In this no other cereal can equal wheat. And the cost of wheat protein is low compared with that of other foods. The serious defects of bread are its low calcium content and its total lack of vitamins A, C and D;<sup>1</sup> only in the vitamins of the B complex is bread of use, wholemeal being better than white bread. There is no escape from the fact that bread must continue to be the largest single element of diet, mainly, because of its cheapness as a source of energy.

Of the patent and fancy breads as a whole it may be said that they are somewhat dearer than white or wholemeal breads. One pays for flavour and the patent rights. Even ordinary wholemeal bread has ceased to be cheaper than white bread and cannot be recommended on that ground. Here are some analyses of different breads from McCance and Widdowson's tables:<sup>2</sup>

COMPOSITION OF BREAD PER 100 G.

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium	Iron	Calories	Calories per oz.
	g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.		
Bread:							
Currant . . .	7.0	3.4	45.8	37.6	2.35	232	66
Hovis . . .	11.4	3.7	40.6	27.5	2.95	232	66
Malt . . .	9.1	3.3	49.4	53.0	3.21	253	72
National Wheatmeal							
85 per cent. . .	10.0	1.6	45.3	22.3	2.32	229	65
National <sup>2</sup> Wheat- meal, fortified with calcium . . .	8.5	1.2	51.4	57.0	1.80	260	74

<sup>1</sup> But see experiments quoted p. 278–9 for the value of bread for malnourished children when made satisfactory by the addition of calcium, iron, and vitamins A, C, and D.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Chemical Composition of Foods*, Med. Res. Council Special Report 235.

The most important preparations of wheat flour, especially in Italy, are macaroni, spaghetti, vermicelli and the Italian pastes. These are made from flours rich in gluten derived from a different species of wheat, *triticum durum*, whereas ordinary wheat flour arises from varieties produced by thousands of years of selection and, nowadays, controlled breeding and selection of strains of *triticum vulgare*. *Triticum durum* is a hard, yellow, flinty wheat having a high protein and sugar content.<sup>1</sup> It needs a hot climate and is resistant to drought. The flour from the endosperm of the wheat is made into a paste with water and the viscosity of the gluten then allows it to be moulded in various ways.

The composition per 100 g. of products made from *triticum durum* flour are given below.

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Thiamine	Calories
	g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	µg.	
Macaroni (raw) <sup>2</sup>	10.7	2.0	69.3	26	1.4	75	336
" " <sup>3</sup>	11.7	2.0	77.0	26	1.43	—	355
Vermicelli " <sup>4</sup>	12.5	0.8	75.5	—	—	—	357

The preparations when boiled take up a large amount of water. Analyses by McCance and Widdowson<sup>5</sup> give: Protein, 3.6; Fat, 0.6; Carbohydrate, 23.7; Calcium, 8.1; Iron, 0.45; Calories per oz., 31; so that cooked products have approximately three times as much water as the raw. They are very well digested and absorbed according to Rubner.

There are very many other preparations of wheat on the market, whether from whole wheat, wheat with some of the bran removed or from the endosperm. One of the commonest is **Semolina**, prepared from the endosperm of hard wheats. It is used in making puddings, porridge and for the thickening of soups. It contains about 11 per cent. of protein. On p. 290 are given the composition per 100 g. of this and other preparations of wheat.

**Shredded wheat** is a preparation of whole wheat in the form of shreds or flakes, which have been cooked to the consistence of a biscuit, and represents the whole grain in a very digestible form.

**Force** consists of malted whole wheat in the form of flakes, cooked

<sup>1</sup> KENT-JONES. (1939), *Modern Cereal Chemistry*, Third Edition, 46-8.

<sup>2</sup> *Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*. (1945), Medical Research Council.

<sup>3</sup> *Chemical Composition of Foods*. (1942), McCANCE and WIDDOWSON. *Med. Res. Council Spec. Report* 235.

<sup>4</sup> Quoted from the *Analyst*. (1898), 178.

<sup>5</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *op. cit.*

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Thiamine	Calories
				mg.	mg.	μg.	
Processed Bran <sup>1</sup>	10.9	4.2	54.5	98	12.9	—	298
" Germ <sup>1</sup>	32.0	7.7	37.8	58	9.7	2100	348
Flaked Wheat <sup>1</sup>	13.9	2.3	66.0	34	4.9	40	339
Puffed " <sup>1</sup>	13.7	2.3	66.1	34	4.7	15	339
Semolina <sup>1</sup>	10.7	1.8	69.8	18	1.0	90	338
Vita-weat <sup>1</sup>	9.4	10.3 <sup>2</sup>	68.1	44	3.4	—	390

with steam. It is easily digested, but not really of higher nutritive value than fine wheaten biscuits.

*Grape-Nuts* is another malted preparation of the entire wheat berry, which requires no cooking. It contains a high proportion of soluble carbohydrates, as well as a considerable amount of protein.

Besides these there are many other patent preparations too numerous to mention. It is not unfair to say that these patent foods are a means of selling cheap wheat products at an enhanced price to the public, who pay willingly for convenience, palatability and, possibly, imaginary medical values, what they would not pay for the straightforward virtues of the normal product.

#### ANALYSES<sup>3</sup>

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Calories 100 g.
				mg.	mg.	
Force	10.2	1.9	75.8	66.3	3.98	344
Grape nuts	12.8	3.0	71.0	47.8	5.64	345
Shredded wheat	10.6	2.8	79.0	34.8	4.48	366

#### OATS

Oats at first sight appear to be the most nutritious of all cereals. They are rich in nitrogenous matter and inorganic substances, and are peculiarly rich in fat, the only other cereal which can at all compare with them in that respect being maize. Carbohydrates are present to the extent of about 73 per cent. Further, of the total nitrogenous matter, 94 per cent. is in the form of proteins, two, avenalin and gliadin, being soluble, and avenin, insoluble in water or dilute alcohol. These proteins do not make a gluten with water. The distribution of the

<sup>1</sup> *Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*. (1945), Medical Research Council.

<sup>2</sup> Evidently fat is added in the manufacture.

<sup>3</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *op. cit.*

amino acids in the combined proteins shows them to be complete proteins and therefore available for tissue-building. Unfortunately, the husk of oats is closely adherent, and cannot be entirely separated from the kernel, so that by the ordinary methods of grinding a good deal of cellulose is left in the meal in the form of small sharp particles. These act as stimulants to the intestine, and make oatmeal a valuable food where the intestinal movements are sluggish, but, on the other hand, are apt to prove rather irritating to some persons.

Oatmeal disagrees with some individuals, and dermatitis may develop. Horses liberally supplied with oats become excitable. Oats contain calcium magnesium inositol hexaphosphate, the rachitogenic material of cereals in great amount. Oatmeal is one of the few vegetable foods which contain some uric-acid formers (purine bodies).

There are various ways of preparing oats for human food. They may be simply cleaned and ground, the result being *oatmeal* of various degrees of fineness, or the branny particles may be separated, and the "oat flour" alone used. *Groats* consists of oats from which the husk has been entirely removed; when crushed, Embden groats result.

*Rolling* is now often employed as a method of preparing oats, instead of grinding. The great pressure to which the grains are subjected between the rollers ruptures the cell walls, breaks down the cellulose, and flattens the grains out so that they are more easily softened by cooking. By the application of heat during the rolling process, the grains are at the same time partially cooked. This not only has the advantage of rendering subsequent preparation for the table considerably less laborious, but also alters the fat, which is so abundantly present in oats, in such a way that it is less liable to become rancid, so preserving the natural flavour of the grain.

"Quaker Oats" is one of the best known of these preparations. "Waverley Oats" and "Provost Oats" are Scottish examples. The composition of some special preparations of oats is shown in the following table:

PREPARATIONS OF OATS

	Scottish Oat- meal.	Irish Oat- meal.	"Quaker Oats."	Scott's Oat Flour.	Robin- son's Groats.
Water . . . . .	5.0	5.0	7.8	5.8	10.4
Protein . . . . .	14.6	13.4	14.7	10.0	11.3
Fat . . . . .	10.1	8.8	6.2	5.0	6.5
Carbohydrates . . . . .	65.1	68.4	69.8	77.9	70.4
Cellulose . . . . .	3.1	1.7			
Inorganic matter . . . . .	2.1	2.0	1.5	1.3	1.7

More modern analysis of ordinary oatmeal give the following figures:

PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF OATS<sup>1</sup>

Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Phos- phorus.	Thiamine	Calories per 100 g.
g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	mg.	μg.	
12.1	8.7	65.5	55	4.1	—	450	388
13.3	8.7	72.8	55	4.1	380 <sup>2</sup>	—	408

Oatmeal contains large amounts of potassium (368 mg.), magnesium (113 mg.) and sulphur (155 mg.) per 100 g.

The composition of some oatmeals, when prepared ready for eating, is as follows:

PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF ROLLED OATS WHEN COOKED<sup>3</sup>

	Water.	Protein.	Fat.	Starch.	Cellulose.	Mineral Water.
Quaker Oats . . .	92.48	1.65	0.32	6.24	0.09	0.24
Provost Oats . . .	88.44	2.00	0.36	9.00	0.16	0.24
Mother's Oats . . .	89.72	1.92	0.45	8.70	0.15	0.18
Oatmeal Porridge . .	89.1	1.5	0.9	8.2	—	—

The enormous amount of water porridge contains will be observed. A 7-oz. serving of porridge will contain but  $\frac{3}{4}$  oz. of oatmeal and supply but 90 Calories. The value of porridge at breakfast lies in the additions of cream or milk to it, not in its intrinsic properties. In fact, because of the difficulty in cooking oatmeal and its low Calorie value for its bulk, porridge is not to be recommended to the working classes.

Owing to the absence of gluten, oatmeal can be eaten by coeliacs. For the same reason—lack of gluten—oatmeal cannot be made into bread, but by mixing fine oatmeal with an equal quantity of wheat flour, however, a fairly good loaf can be obtained. A given weight of oatcake (made without butter) contains rather more than twice as much building material as an equal quantity of bread, and has almost twice as great a fuel value.

Oatmeal requires to be very thoroughly boiled in order to soften the cellulose which it contains. "Brose," which is made by merely stirring oatmeal into boiling water, is not a food for delicate stomachs. As

<sup>1</sup> *Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*. (1945), Med. Res. Council.

<sup>2</sup> 70 per cent., i.e. 266 mg. is phytate phosphorus. McCANCE, R. A., and WID-  
DOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Chemical Composition of Foods*, Med. Res. Council Special  
Rep. 235.

<sup>3</sup> WILLIAMS. (1907), *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 29.

regards the *absorbability* of oats, experiments show<sup>1</sup> that porridge made from rolled oats, even if taken in considerable quantities, is very well absorbed. Roughly speaking, 95 per cent. of its protein, 93 per cent. of its fat, and 96 per cent. of its carbohydrates enter the blood, whilst 92 per cent. of the energy which it yields is "available" in the body. This compares very favourably with the results yielded by bread. On purely chemical grounds, oats compare to advantage with wheat as a source of nutriment.

### MAIZE (INDIAN CORN)<sup>2</sup>

Maize is not so largely used as human food in Great Britain as it might be, but throughout America it forms a staple article of diet, while in Mexico and South Africa maize is literally the "staff of life." It was introduced into Ireland at the time of the potato famine in 1848, and has since established a place for itself in the dietary of the people in that country.<sup>3</sup>

Chemical analysis shows that maize is quite as nutritious as wheat in all except its inorganic ingredients. It is richer in fat than any cereal except oats, containing twice as much of this important constituent as wheat or barley, and three times as much as rye. Its proteins do not produce gluten; therefore it cannot be made into bread, and it can be eaten by coeliacs. In nitrogenous matter it is slightly inferior to most other cereals, but fully 87 per cent. of this is in a protein form. As regards its digestible carbohydrates, it is equal to wheat, but somewhat inferior to barley or rye. The average percentage composition of maize products is:

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrate.	Ash. <sup>4</sup>
Whole grain . . .	9.3-12.8	4.2-5.4	80.1-85.1	1.4-1.7
" " average . . .	10.3	4.8	73.5	1.44
Whole maize meal . . .	9.2	3.9	73.7	1.2
Bolted " " . . .	9.0	3.4	74.5	1.1
Whole wheat flour . . .	13.3	2.0	71.0	1.7
White " " . . .	10.5	1.0	76.1	0.43

Biologically, the mixed proteins of maize stand high in the list of values, though zein, one of them, is deficient in tryptophane, lysine, and cystine. Maize contains much calcium magnesium inositol hexaphosphate.

The disease pellagra has been in the past associated with the consumption of maize, though it may occur when no maize is taken in the

<sup>1</sup> U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Bull. 101, 1901, p. 47 (Off. of Experiment Stations).

<sup>2</sup> For much practical information on the use of maize as a food, see *Maize and Maize Diets*, F.A.O. Nutritional Studies, No. 9, 1953.

<sup>3</sup> For details of the milling of maize, see KENT-JONES. (1939), *Modern Cereal Chemistry*, 3rd edn., 463.

<sup>4</sup> 363 mg. per 100 g. are phosphorus, of which 58 per cent. is phytate phosphorus.

diet. Maize has an anti-nicotinamide present in it; its tally of nicotinamide is low; it has but small amounts of tryptophane in its protein as a source of nicotinamide. There is no reason to believe that the consumption of maize induces pellagra so long as the diet is satisfactory as regards its vitamin content.

Maize is prepared for food in many different ways. In Ireland it is made into a sort of porridge, called *stirabout*, or, in the more expressive phraseology of America, *mush*. In Northern Italy and the South Tyrol it is prepared in a similar way, but with the addition of cheese and other ingredients. Maizemeal is prepared by grinding after removal of the germ and husk. A yellow and a white meal are thus prepared, but there is no difference between them as far as nutritive value is concerned, except that there is a precursor of vitamin A present in the yellow meal.<sup>1</sup> Fine maizemeal is more gritty than wheat flour, but when mixed with the latter its presence can hardly be detected. Wheat flour to which maize has been added yields fewer loaves than an equal quantity of pure wheat flour, and the bread produced is moister than wheaten bread, and has a tendency to be sodden. An addition of 10 per cent. of maize flour is calculated to mean a reduction of five loaves on the sack. Owing to the absence of gluten, maizemeal cannot be used to make ordinary bread, but it is often baked into cakes of various sorts.

An example is the *tortilla* of Mexico, Central and South America. In Mexico the maize is treated with lime water and heated to about 80° C. for a short time. After standing overnight, the maize is washed, dried and ground. It is formed into round flat cakes.

Various cooked maize preparations are eaten in the United States but have found little favour in Great Britain. Examples are "Indian pudding," a porridge made of maize meal; "Hoe cake," a bread made with maize meal or flour and hominy, the endosperm of the maize ground after removal of the bran and the germ.

*Cornflour* is prepared from maize by washing away the protein and fat by means of dilute alkaline solutions, so that little but starch is left. Modern analysis shows but 0.6 per cent. protein (McCance and Widdowson).

Such preparations must therefore be regarded simply as agreeable forms of starch, well adapted for food, provided they are taken along with some protein and fat carrier, such as eggs or milk, but by no means to be recommended on economic grounds.

A special small variety of maize is called in America *pop-corn*. When roasted it swells up and ultimately bursts. In this form it is known as "popped pop-corn," and is the basis of various sweets.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> STEENBOCK, BOUTWELL, and KENT. (1919), *Journ. Biol. Chem.* 41, xii.-xiii.

<sup>2</sup> Analysis by Atwater and Wood.

# COMPOSITION OF POP-CORN

	Raw.	Popped.
Water . . .	10.8 per cent.	4.3 per cent.
Protein . . .	11.2 "	10.7 "
Fat . . .	5.2 "	5.0 "
Carbohydrates . . .	71.4 "	78.7 "
Mineral matter . . .	1.4 "	1.3 "

It is thus a valuable food.

*Corn Flakes*<sup>1</sup> consist of cooked maize which has been treated with malt-honey, dried, rolled and baked. It is a nutritious and digestible breakfast food.

*Corn on the Cob* is a special variety of maize, containing much sugar. It is cooked while still green, and forms a sweet and succulent "vegetable" much esteemed in America. It has made its way into Great Britain.

Maize is not only a highly nutritive cereal from the chemist's point of view, but has the further advantage of being very well utilized in the human body. Experiments show that its carbohydrates are almost completely absorbed, whilst the proteins are only slightly less thoroughly utilized than those of wheat.<sup>2</sup>

**Nutritive Value of Maize.** This is undoubtedly high when used in conjunction with other foods. It is only when it forms a large percentage of the diet that pellagra becomes a threat.

**Economic Value of Maize.** It has great economic value, since it is a versatile plant, growing from sea level to 12,000 feet in the Andes and from 58° North in Canada to 40° South in the Southern Hemisphere. It can stand 200 inches of rain per annum in Hindustan, and put up with 10 inches in semi-arid regions. It can even grow and ripen in Great Britain. It produces more Calories per acre than any other cereal.

## BARLEY

Barley is a grain grown more for the manufacture of malt and for animal fodder than for direct human nutrition. The whole grain when ground constitutes barleymeal. Scotch barley is the grain stripped of its husk and roughly ground. It is chiefly used as human food, however, in the form of either "pearl" or "patent" barley. The former consists of the whole grain polished after removal of the husk; the latter is simply pearl barley ground into flour. The following is an analysis of pearl barley by McCance and Widdowson:

<sup>1</sup> Battle Creek Sanitarium Company, Ltd.

<sup>2</sup> RUBNER. (1879), *Zeit. f. Biolog.*, 15, 115. Also see U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Farmers' Bull. (1907), 298.

Moisture	.	.	.	.	10.6 per cent.
Protein	.	.	.	.	8.4 "
Fat	.	.	.	.	1.7 "
Carbohydrates	.	.	.	.	81.3 "
Calcium	.	.	.	.	9.7 mg. per cent.
Iron	.	.	.	.	0.67 " "
Phosphorus	.	.	.	.	206.0 " "

It has 120  $\mu$ g. thiamine B<sub>1</sub> (=approx. 40 I.U.) per 100 g.

Barley contains but little gluten,<sup>1</sup> in consequence of which its dough is too "heavy" to make good bread. When mixed with half its weight of good wheat flour, however, barleymeal can be converted into good enough loaves.

Barley once on a time was largely used in place of wheat in the North of England, but to-day has practically been displaced.

As an article of diet in the sick-room, barley finds its chief use as the main ingredient of *barley-water*, a preparation which contains, however, but very little nutriment, as the following analysis by Wynter Blyth shows.<sup>2</sup>

#### COMPOSITION OF BARLEY WATER

Water	.	.	.	.	99.27 per cent.
Fat	.	.	.	.	0.02 "
Protein	.	.	.	.	0.03 "
Starch	.	.	.	.	0.39 "
Sugar	.	.	.	.	0.05 "
Inorganic substances	.	.	.	.	0.03 "

It is chiefly of value on account of its demulcent properties and makes a pleasant drink with orange or lemon juice.

#### RYE

Next to wheat, rye is the great bread-making grain of the world. Its content of gluten is low (though enough to upset a coeliac) and as a result of this the bread derived from rye is moist and dense. An extreme example is the black bread of North Germany.

The composition of the different flours derived from rye varies very considerably with the fineness of milling; but fine rye flour is much poorer in protein than flour of a similar grade produced from wheat.<sup>3</sup>

Fine rye bread is therefore inferior as building material to wheaten

<sup>1</sup> Not enough to upset a coeliac.

<sup>2</sup> A series of analyses by CORLETTE (*Australasian Med. Gazette*, 1905, 24, 1) of barley-water prepared from two heaped teaspoonfuls of pearl barley to a pint of water showed that the average amount of starch in the product was 2.03 per cent.

<sup>3</sup> KENT-JONES. (1939), *Modern Cereal Chemistry*, 3rd edn., 84 and 85.

bread, but it is somewhat superior in this respect to bread made from maize.

The *digestibility* of fine rye bread is about equal to that of good wheaten bread; but the coarser varieties, especially black bread, are very wasteful foods, 32 per cent. of the protein even in moderately fine rye bread being lost, as compared with 20 per cent. in white bread. In the case of black bread the loss rises to 42 per cent.

Swedish crispbread (*Ryvita*) is prepared from crushed whole rye. An analysis of it by McCance and Widdowson gave the following composition:

Water	.	.	.	.	5.9 per cent
Protein	.	.	.	.	7.4 "
Fat	.	.	.	.	2.1 "
Carbohydrates	.	.	.	.	86.8 "
Calcium	.	.	.	.	40.5 mg. per cent.
Iron	.	.	.	.	3.73 " "
Phosphorus	.	.	.	.	295.0 " "

It has a Calorie value of 373 per 100 g. or 106 per oz.

## RICE

Rice is the poorest of all cereals in protein, fat and mineral matter. On the other hand, it has fully 76 per cent. of starch. The starch has the further advantage of being present in small and easily-digested grains. When boiled, rice swells up and absorbs a large amount of water, while some of its inorganic constituents are lost by solution. It is preferable, therefore, to cook it by steaming.

### COMPOSITION OF BOILED RICE<sup>1</sup>

Water	.	.	.	.	69.9 per cent.
Protein	.	.	.	.	2.3 "
Fat	.	.	.	.	0.3 "
Carbohydrates	.	.	.	.	29.6 "
Calcium	.	.	.	.	1.3 mg. per cent.
Iron	.	.	.	.	0.16 " "
Phosphorus	.	.	.	.	34.0 " "

Rice leaves the stomach somewhat slowly, 2½ oz. cooked by boiling (i.e. about two-thirds of a full soup-plate) requiring 3½ hours for its disposal.

On the other hand, rice is *absorbed* with very great completeness in the intestine; indeed, its solid constituents enter the blood almost as completely as those of meat. This is to be attributed to the comparative absence of cellulose. Practically none of the starch is lost, but the waste

<sup>1</sup> Analysis by McCANCE and WIDDOWSON. (1942), *op. cit.*

of protein amounts to 19 per cent.<sup>1</sup> It follows from this that rice is one of the foods which leave the smallest residue in the intestine, and this gives it a considerable value in some cases of disease. As it has no gluten it can be eaten by coeliacs with impunity.

Extensive investigations into the use of rice of different degrees of milling have shown that the digestibility and utilization of rice are always better when the grades of milling are raised. For example, 97 per cent. of the energy theoretically available was utilized when the rice was fully polished; when unpolished only 90 per cent.<sup>2</sup> Rice contains about as much phytates as wheat.

The *nutritive value* of rice is much impaired by its poverty in protein and fat. Hence it is not adapted to be an exclusive diet, but should be eaten along with other substances rich in these two elements, such as eggs, cheese, or milk. It is interesting to note that in some countries in which rice is largely used as a daily food this is actually done, as in the Italian *Risotto*, the Turkish *Pilaff*, and the Spanish "*Pollo con Riz*." Even as regards carbohydrate it would require about 1 lb. 3 oz. of rice to furnish the daily need of an active man. This would entail the consumption of about 5 lb. of cooked rice daily. It is worth observing, too, that in Eastern countries in which rice takes the place of bread it is eaten in a much drier, and therefore more concentrated, form than it is in Europe, and with the addition of various sauces and condiments to give it flavour and promote its digestion.

The association of disease with the consumption of large amounts of a highly milled cereal has its classical illustration in highly milled rice. Where polished rice (i.e. rice with the bran, the embryo and the "silverskin" removed) is the staple food, there beri-beri appears. In the very poorest classes in the Far East who cannot afford the highly milled rice, beri-beri is rare; while beri-beri can be prevented or cured by extracts of rice-bran. There is an intermediate method of processing rice in which it is first parboiled and then the bran removed. In this process some of the antineuritic principle migrates into the endosperm—sufficient to prevent the appearance of beri-beri when this product is the main food eaten.

In the poorly nourished parts of the world where rice is the staple food this is of immense importance and as an interim measure the retention of the antineuritic principle in the rice eaten should, if possible, be made compulsory. The long-term policy, however, should be to promote a higher standard of living. In countries where rice forms but a small part of the diet, as it does in temperate climates, the amount of milling appears to be of little importance.

<sup>1</sup> KUMAGAWA. (1889), *Virchow's Archiv.*, 116, 370.

<sup>2</sup> TADASU SAIKI. (1926), *Progress of the Science of Nutrition in Japan*. Publications of the League of Nations III. Health, 3, 25.

MILLET AND BUCKWHEAT

These cereals<sup>1</sup> are not used as human food in this country, although they are by no means of low nutritive value, but stand midway in that respect between wheat on the one hand and rice on the other. Millet is freely consumed in Africa, being the staple diet of the negroes of the Upper Nile, and in some Southern European countries, while in China it is used to make bread though it contains no gluten. The dhoora (sorgho-grass), or Indian *millet*, is of very similar composition. The following is an analysis of it given by Church:

COMPOSITION OF MILLET				
Water	.	.	.	12.2 per cent.
Protein	.	.	.	8.2 "
Fat	.	.	.	4.2 "
Carbohydrates	.	.	.	70.6 "
Cellulose	.	.	.	3.1 "
Inorganic substances	.	.	.	1.7 "

*Buckwheat* is about equal in nutritive value to millet, but contains much more cellulose (10 per cent.). It is usually eaten in the form of a porridge or fritters. Its proteins do not form gluten. In this country, though pleasant, it is hardly ever used as human food, but it is freely consumed in Brittany and Holland, and in some parts of the United States,

The published analyses of buckwheat are somewhat discordant. Four are here given:

COMPOSITION OF BUCKWHEAT				
	Church <sup>2</sup> (grain husked).	Leyden <sup>3</sup> (flour).	Atwater and Bryant <sup>4</sup> (flour).	Plimmer <sup>5</sup> (grain).
Water	13.4	14.2	13.6	12.6
Protein	15.2	9.2	6.4	12.1
Fat	3.4	1.8	1.2	1.9
Carbohydrate	63.6	73.3	77.6	62.3
Fibre	2.1	0.8	0.4	8.9
Inorganic substances	2.3	1.2	0.9	2.2

The Pulses

(In this group are included peas, beans, and lentils, and their allies. The edible parts of these resemble the grain of cereals in that they are

<sup>1</sup> Buckwheat is not strictly a cereal, but belongs to the Polygonaceæ. It is considered here for convenience.

<sup>2</sup> *Food* (1898), Chapman and Hall, London, 93.

<sup>3</sup> Leyden's *Handbuch der Ernährungs Therapie*. (1903), 2nd edn., I, 99.

<sup>4</sup> ATWATER and BRYANT, (1906), U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Bull. 28.

<sup>5</sup> PLIMMER, (1921), *Analyses and Energy values of Foods*.

to be regarded as storehouses of food materials for the young plant.) Though regarded as "vegetables," i.e. things to serve with the joint, they are really more valuable as sources of (i) energy and (ii) protein) so that physiologically they belong to this and the next section of this book. (They do also supply vitamins of the B complex, iron and some calcium and phosphorus. Their defects are (i) that they contain no fat (with the exception of the soya bean) and (ii) on cooking they take up so much water that they are bulky foods. The proteins in the pulses vary in nature slightly according to their origin. They are mainly globulins, being insoluble in water, but water soluble albumins are present. The globulins of pulses are distinguished by having more glutamic acid in their molecules than animal globulins but distinctly less than the main proteins of the cereals. Their content of the sulphur-containing amino acids is low, while arginine is often high in amount. The proteins of the pulses are very satisfactory sources of phenylalanine, arginine, histidine, and lysine, moderate as regards cystine and tyrosine, while tryptophane is present.<sup>1</sup> Their biological value, which is increased by cooking, ranks below that of the cereals.<sup>2</sup>

The pulses are well supplied with carbohydrates, but because of their lack of fat go well with fatty foods (e.g. bacon and beans, pork and pease pudding), and are improved by being served with sauces containing butter, or cooked with oil. They also possess a bitter principle which renders them unpalatable to many persons. Dried peas and beans require prolonged soaking in order to soften their skins. Even haricots in which the skin is comparatively thin, require about eight hours to soften. The water in which they are soaked should contain a small amount of soda, but not so much as to destroy their thiamine. A negligible amount of protein and sugar is lost by this soaking which, however, has the advantage of removing most of the bitter principle in the seeds. The amount of water taken up is very great) The proportion of water in dried haricot beans, for example, rises as the result of soaking and boiling from 14 per cent. up to 73 per cent., and in the case of peas the increase is from 9.7 up to 86.9 per cent.<sup>3</sup> This increase in water entails a corresponding increase in the weight and bulk of the food, and must always be taken into account when comparing the relative nutritive values of the pulses and meat.

The pulses are *not readily digested* by the stomach. As Galen said: "They are harder to digest than other foods and give bad dreams." This is no doubt partly owing to their bulkiness when cooked. Thus

<sup>1</sup> OSBORNE. (1924), *The Vegetable Proteins*. Longmans, Green & Co.

<sup>2</sup> BOAS-FIXSEN. (1934-5), *Nut. Abstr.*, 4, 447.

<sup>3</sup> Analyses by WILLIAMS. (1892), *Journ. of Chem. Soc.*, 61, 226. 1 oz. of peas takes up approximately 2 oz. of water. McCANCE and WIDDOWSON. (1942), *Med. Res. Council Report*, No. 235.

after  $5\frac{1}{2}$  oz. (150 g.) of lentils in the form of a mash, or about a soup-plateful, had been eaten the stomach was not completely empty in 4 hours, and 200 g. of peas in a similar form took  $4\frac{1}{4}$  hours. An equal weight of French beans (*haricots verts*) remained rather longer even than that.

If properly prepared, the pulses are digested and *absorbed* in the intestine very thoroughly. Thus the protein of pea or lentil flour is all taken up except about 8 or 9 per cent.<sup>1</sup> when 200 g. (7 oz.) are given daily. Even when the amount given was as much as 600 g. ( $21\frac{1}{2}$  oz.) the loss was only as follows:<sup>2</sup>

Dry substance	.	.	.	9.1 per cent.
Protein	.	.	.	17.5 "
Carbohydrate	.	.	.	3.6 "
Inorganic material	.	.	.	32.5 "

This shows that the protein of the pulses, if given in a state of fine division, is capable of very good absorption. On the other hand, the loss is very much greater if the food given is coarse. It was found, for example, that if the lentils were simply boiled soft and taken along with broth, the loss of protein rose to 40 per cent. It will be noted that there was a small loss of carbohydrate even on pea flour. The amount of it, however, is less than from potatoes or carrots, but more than that from white bread.

Extensive investigations on the absorption of different forms of legumes have been made in America.<sup>3</sup> They showed an average absorption of 80 per cent. of the protein and 97 per cent. of the carbohydrates. These results are very favourable when it is remembered that the legumes constituted the major part of the diet in the subjects studied.

The nutritive value of the pulses is undoubtedly high. They yield about 331 Calories per 100 g. (94 per oz.), and they have considerable value as sources of protein, although the comparative deficiency of the protein in sulphur containing amino acids probably lessens its value as a source of building material. It would require about 400 g. (14 oz.) of pea flour to supply the amount of protein required daily for an active man. Suppose this were to be given in the form of pea soup. A good thick soup would contain 16 g.—a level tablespoonful—in each plate. The protein value of this would be equal to less than an ounce of meat. Twenty-five platefuls of such a soup, then, would require to be taken in the day. By making the soup with milk instead of water—an excellent plan—the amount of protein in it would be trebled, and eight platefuls would suffice.

<sup>1</sup> STRÜMPPELL. (1876). *Deut. Archiv. f. Klin. Med.*, 17, 108.

<sup>2</sup> RUBNER. (1880). *Zeit. f. Biolog.*, 16, 119.

<sup>3</sup> *Studies on the Digestibility and Nutritive Value of Legumes*. (1907). U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Bull. 187.

(The 400 g. of pea flour would hardly, however, contain as much carbohydrate as is required, and would be very deficient in fat. These deficiencies would have to be made good by the addition of some other articles to the diet, or by increasing the amount of pea flour consumed. As a matter of fact, it has been found that when the quantity of peas eaten amounts to 960 g. (34½ oz.) in the 24 hours, all the demands of nutrition as regards Calories and protein are satisfied;<sup>1</sup> but it is very doubtful whether anyone could go on consuming this quantity for any length of time. Hence while the pulses are most valuable sources of Calories and protein, they are not adapted to be the exclusive diet of health. As a cheap and efficient method of supplementing the deficiency of nitrogen in a purely vegetable diet, however, their use is strongly to be recommended, and it is a pity that they are not more largely taken advantage of by those to whom economy is of importance, for unquestionably the pulses are amongst the cheapest foods) and a given sum will yield more protein, if invested in them, than in any other way. It remains to add a few words about the individual members of the pulse group. Their chemical composition is shown in the table on page 303.

(The *garden pea* (*Pisum sativum*) is eaten either fresh (green peas) or dried. Green peas cooked in the usual way contain about 8 per cent. of carbohydrate, of which a considerable proportion is sugar) Of *beans* there are several edible varieties. The French or kidney bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) is eaten either in the young state along with the pod (*haricots verts*), or the seeds are consumed alone either fresh or after drying (*haricots blancs*). The amount of cellulose in the pod causes it to be digested and absorbed with difficulty, and on that account it is a wasteful form of food. Allied to the French bean is the scarlet runner (*Phaseolus multiflorus*), the dried seed of which when stewed constitutes "Turkish beans." The *broad* or *Windsor bean* (*Faba vulgaris*) is eaten either in the fresh or dry state. It is a frequent cause of allergy when eaten in large amounts.<sup>2</sup> A coarser variety of the same plant is the horse or field bean. It is not usually consumed as human food.

The *Lentil* (*Lens esculenta*) is richer in protein than either the pea or the bean, and, as a rule, the smaller varieties of it are richer in that constituent than the larger. Egyptian lentils are amongst the best. Lentils contain little sulphur, and are more digestible and less apt to cause flatulence than either peas or beans. The ash of the Egyptian lentil is particularly rich in iron)

The *Soya Bean* (*Glycine hispida*) is one of the pulses which sprang into remarkable prominence in this country and elsewhere during the second World War, though it has been used for many centuries—as early as 3000 B.C.—in China. According to Sir John Russell it cannot be satisfactorily grown in the uncertain climate of Great Britain, even

<sup>1</sup> RUBNER, *loc. cit.*

<sup>2</sup> *Lancet*, (1941), 2, 164.

**WFD**

**WFD**

**WFD**

if the rapidly ripening varieties developed for cultivation in Manitoba be utilized. It needs a hot dry summer. Its original source is Manchuria, but it is now successfully grown in central Europe, the U.S.A. and Canada and in the Dutch East Indies.

(It is remarkable among the pulses in its high content of protein (29 to 50 per cent.), its fat (13.5 to 24 per cent.) and the replacement of starch by dextrans (4.65 to 8.97 per cent.) and by sugars (5.65–9.46 per cent.). On account of the absence of starch it has been mistakenly used as a substitute for bread in diabetes.)

In China and Japan it is extensively eaten in the form of soya cheese and as various sauces and pastes, all of which are rich in protein and therefore fitted to supplement the deficiencies of rice. It has also been used for centuries by millions of people in the Far East in place of cow's milk, and it can, in part, replace milk in diet of infants.<sup>1</sup> Aykroyd<sup>2</sup> in experiments on the growth of mission-school children in India has found that soya bean is disappointing. Addition of it to the standard diet caused no increase of growth rate, whereas skimmed milk powders produced a marked improvement. None the less a mixture of soya and wheat flour receives the blessing of Dr. Harriette Chick<sup>3</sup> and also of Dr. R. F. A. Dean, who has used it for feeding undernourished babies.

There is a preparation of soya bean on the market from which the unpleasant beany flavour has been removed. This is "Soyolk." It is intended for mixture with ordinary flour in the making of scones, buns, pastry and bread, for which purpose it is excellent, giving a brown glazed appearance which is much prized. It has 44 per cent. of protein, 20.6 per cent. of fat and 25 per cent. of carbohydrates. Its percentage of calcium (0.3) is more than double that of milk. Dried soya bean milk forms the basis of a food beverage called Vitone.

(The *Peanut* (*Arachis hypogaea*), although botanically one of the pulses, really resembles more closely the true nuts. Like these, it is rich in proteins and fat, containing about 25 per cent. protein and 48 to 54 per cent. fat. Its carbohydrates are only 11 per cent. From the distribution of the amino acids in the two main proteins, arachin and conarachin, they should have a good biological value,<sup>4</sup> though they possess but little methionine.<sup>5</sup> The fat expressed from the nut is used in the manufacture of margarine.)

Peanuts are not an important item of diet in this country, though they are eaten largely in the United States and Canada, either roasted

<sup>1</sup> RITTINGER. (1935), *Journ. of Ped.*, 6, 517; MACKAY. (1940), *Arch. Dis. Childh.*, 15.

<sup>2</sup> AYKROYD and KRISHNAN. (1937), *Ind. J. med. Res.*, 24, 1093.

<sup>3</sup> CHICK, H. (1951), *Brit. Journ. Nutr.*, 5, 261; and DEAN, R. F. A. (1951), *ibid.*, 5, 264.

<sup>4</sup> TRAILL. (1945), *Chem. and Ind.*, 58.

<sup>5</sup> TETLOW, W. E. (1950), *Journ. Sci. of Food and Agric.*, 1, 193.

# COMPOSITION OF NUTS (EDIBLE PORTION)<sup>1</sup>

	g. per 100 g.			mg. per 100 g.										Vitamins. I.U. per 100 g.			Calories per 100 g.
	Pro- tein.	Fat.	Available carbo- hydrate	Na.	K.	Ca.	Mg.	Fe.	P.	Cu.	P. Avail- able	Cl.	A.	B <sub>1</sub> .	C.		
Almonds	20.5	53.5	3.9	5.8	856	247	257	4.23	0.14	442	78	1.7	—	80	—	0-386	530
Barcelona	12.9	64.0	4.7	2.5	935	170	202	2.97	0.96	299	49	33.5	—	—	—	—	564
Brazil	13.8	61.5	3.7	1.5	760	176	411	2.82	1.10	592	82	61.0	—	—	—	—	623
Chestnut	2.3	2.7	32.9	10.9	497	46	33	0.89	0.23	74	65	15.0	—	90	646	—	165
Cob nut	9.0	36.0	6.1	1.4	345	44	56	1.06	0.21	229	59	5.9	—	200	300	—	384
Coco-nut	3.8	36.0	3.3	16.5	436	13	52	2.08	0.32	94	19	114.0	—	trace	16	—	352
Peanut	28.1	49.0	7.7	5.6	680	61	181	2.04	0.27	365	145	6.8	63	100	—	—	585
Walnut	12.5	51.5	4.5	2.7	687	61	131	2.35	0.31	510	298	23.0	—	150	600	—	530

<sup>1</sup> Chemical Analyses by McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Med. Res. Council Report*, No. 235. Vitamin figures from FINSSEN and ROSCOE. (1937-8) *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, 7, 823.

or in the form of peanut butter, a comestible which has made its way into Great Britain during recent years. Agriculturally the pea-nut crop is becoming one of the most important crops of the world.

### Nuts

From their analyses given on p. 305 it appears that nuts are a valuable form of diet. With the exception of the chestnut they have a high Calorie value, approaching or exceeding that of cheese and bacon; a high protein value, with the exception of chestnut, cob nuts and coconuts; the calcium values of almonds, barcelonas and brazils are high but partly offset by their phytate phosphorus and they have been credited with ascorbic acid though this may be an error.

But in dietetics, at any rate in the British Isles, their contribution to the diet is almost negligible. This may be due to lack of fashion-demand except among vegetarians, to the large amount of waste as purchased (except in the chestnut) and to their reputed indigestibility.

This indigestibility is due in part to their richness in fat and to their compact framework of cellulose. By thorough mastication this difficulty can be overcome to some extent, but is still more efficiently dealt with by artificial grinding and cooking. Various preparations are on the market and can be found in shops which supply vegetarians. The fibrous nature of nuts irritates the pharynx and consumptives and others with respiratory diseases should avoid them.

A few experiments have been made on the *absorbability* of nuts. In one which was carried out in America,<sup>1</sup> and in which the subject of experiment lived solely on a diet of fruit and nuts, it was found that 82.5 per cent. of the protein,<sup>2</sup> 86.9 per cent. of the fat, and 96 per cent. of the non-nitrogenous matters were absorbed. This result compares favourably with the absorption of an ordinary mixed diet except that it reveals a rather greater waste of protein, and shows that it is quite possible, for long periods even, to supply the requisite protein and energy from a diet made up of selected fruits and nuts. Fine division greatly aids their digestibility.

Of all the members of this class of foods, the *chestnut* is probably of the greatest general value as an article of diet. It is peculiar amongst nuts in containing a high proportion of carbohydrates along with a fair amount of protein and fat, as is shown on p. 305. Roasted chestnuts have 40 per cent. water. Those cooked by boiling have 72 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> *Nutrition Investigations among Frutarians and Chinese*, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. (1901), Bull. No. 107. For later experiments, which, however, yielded substantially the same results, see *Nuts and their Uses as Foods*. (1908), Farmers' Bull. No. 332, also CAJORI. (1918), *Journ. Home Econ.*, 10, 304.

<sup>2</sup> So far as it has been investigated, the biological value of nut proteins is low, even below that of legumes. BOAS-FIXSEN. (1934-5), *Nut. Abs.*, 4, 447.

An economic point in favour of chestnuts also is the fact that a given area of ground produces perhaps the maximum amount of human food when planted with chestnut-trees.

The great value of the chestnut has been fully recognized by the poorer peasantry of Central France. During the autumn and winter they often make two meals a day from it alone. The nuts are prepared by removing the outside shell, blanching, and then steaming; salt and milk are added when they are eaten. Sometimes they are ground after blanching, and the meal made into flat cakes.

The *almond* is another very valuable form of nut, being specially noteworthy for the large amount of nitrogenous matter which it contains. It has the further advantage of being compact and portable. "No man," it has been said, "need starve on a journey who can fill his waistcoat pocket with almonds."

It will be seen from the tables that fatty matter predominates very largely in the composition of nuts, with the exception of the chestnut. No other vegetable substance is so rich in fats. Advantage has been taken of this to prepare from nuts various fatty preparations which are used as efficient *substitutes for ordinary butter* in the kitchen. Advertisements of these will be found in the vegetarian magazines. There is every reason to believe that these are equal in fuel value to ordinary butter. The fat of the coco-nut is used in the manufacture of margarine.

### The Potato

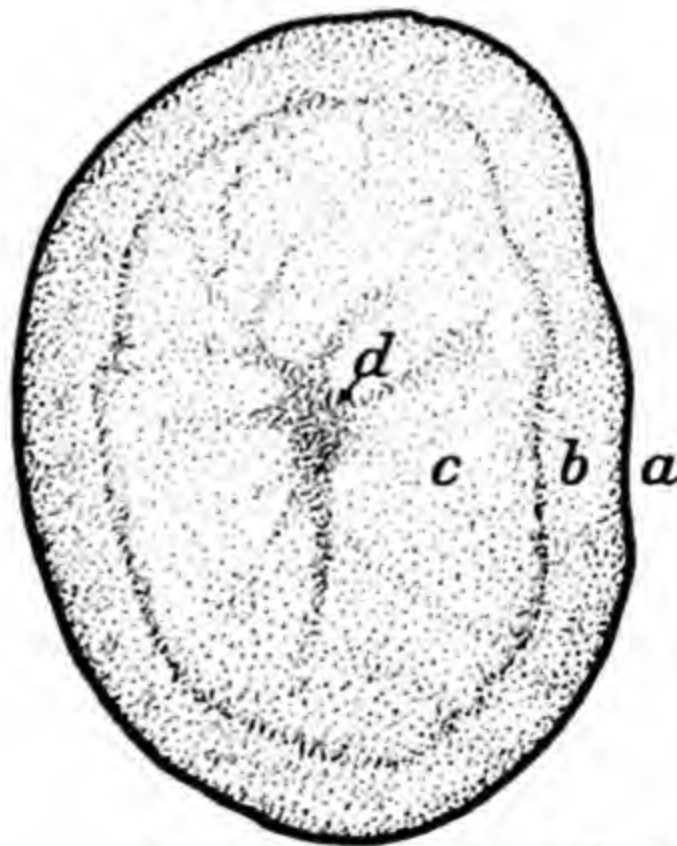


FIG. 14.—CROSS SECTION OF A POTATO.

*a*, Skin; *b*, Fibro-vascular layer; *c*, Outer zone of flesh; *d*, Central core.

Next to maize the potato is the most valuable food contributed by the Western Hemisphere to the Old World. In fact to Europe it is the

most important contribution made, and the varieties evolved from the original source are legion. The potato is the swollen underground stem of the potato plant in which it stores its nutriment for use of the young plant.

The potato originated probably in the Andean uplands and was first cultivated, mainly as a curiosity, in Europe near Seville in 1572. Its introduction into England in 1586 is attributed to Sir Walter Raleigh. To-day scientific agriculturists<sup>1</sup> have returned to Peru to obtain material for breeding experiments and so evolve potatoes resistant to disease and frost. Although introduced so long ago, it took two centuries for its use to become at all common. Ireland was the country where it first became popular, and such an exclusive hold had it in the dietary of the Irish that potato disease, rampant in the years 1845 to 1847, caused famine in that country and led to the repeal of the Corn Laws in Great Britain.

If a raw potato be cut across with a sharp knife, three distinct *layers* can easily be made out (Fig. 14). These are (1) the thin outer skin. (2) A broader layer inside the skin called the "fibro-vascular layer." It contains a small amount of pigment, and turns green when exposed to the light. This was supposed, on inadequate evidence, to make the potato poisonous. (3) The flesh of the potato, which makes up the rest of its bulk. On more careful inspection this is seen to be divided into a central core and an outer zone which surrounds it.

These different layers have slightly different compositions but too much has been made of this fact. Rats fed on potato peelings grow no better than those fed on the flesh.

If the flesh of the potato is squeezed it can be separated into a solid part and a juice. The former consists mainly of starch; it has only 15 per cent. of the nitrogenous matter. The juice consists of water holding in solution nitrogenous matter and salts. It contains fully 85 per cent. of the total amount of nitrogenous matter present in the potato.

It must be clearly realized that by no means all of this nitrogenous matter is present in the form of protein. Of the total amount of nitrogen in a potato, only 28 to 51 per cent. is contained in proteins, the remainder being simple nitrogenous bodies such as asparagine, glutamine, arginine and choline.<sup>2</sup> Potato proteins have a high biological value which is enhanced by these nitrogenous extractives.

The *richness of the potato in starch* is its most striking chemical characteristic, and causes it to be one of the chief commercial sources of that substance. Dextrin and "British arrowroot" and many other things are prepared from it. The starch grain of the potato is of specially

<sup>1</sup> See SALAMAN, R. S. (1953), *Chem. and Ind.*, 907.

<sup>2</sup> NEUBERGER and SANGER. (1942), *Biochem. Journ.*, 36, 665. See also CHICK, H., and SLACK, E. B. (1949), *ibid.*, 45, 211.

large size, but unless cooked it is not easily digested and absorbed by the body, and it causes much flatulence.<sup>1</sup> Owing to their readiness to undergo fermentation potatoes should be avoided in conditions such as dilatation of the stomach.

Potatoes are one of the chief sources from which we obtain potassium salts. Part of it is united with citric acid. Potatoes, like all tubers, may have their composition modified by the *mode in which they are cooked*.

Plain boiling removes some nitrogenous and inorganic materials but leaves the starch practically unaltered, as the following figures show:<sup>2</sup>

	g. per 100 g.		mg. per 100 g.							
	Protein.	Available Carbo-hydrate	Na	K	Ca	Mg	Fe	Cu	P	Cl
Potatoes, old, raw	2.1	20.8	6.5	568	7.7	24.2	0.75	0.15	40.3	78.5
" old, peeled and boiled 30 mins.	1.4	19.7	3.4	325	4.3	15.0	0.48	0.11	29.0	40.7

As we eat potatoes mainly for their carbohydrate and not for their nitrogen, potassium and chlorides, the loss in these materials, which can be largely obviated by boiling in their jackets, does not matter. There is a loss of one-quarter to one-third of ascorbic acid on boiling<sup>3</sup> and of one-quarter of the thiamine.<sup>4</sup> However,  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to  $5\frac{3}{4}$  oz. of boiled new potatoes give 30 mg. of ascorbic acid—a day's ration—so that the loss is not very important. Boiled old potatoes yield  $0.9\ \mu\text{g}$ . of thiamine per g. More would be conserved were they boiled in their jackets.

Mention of ascorbic acid recalls the fact that shortage of potatoes due to disease or other causes is followed invariably by outbreaks of scurvy, so that it is probable that the potato is the main source of ascorbic acid in the British diet. As the majority of potatoes contain anything from 10 to 53 mg. of ascorbic acid per 100 g. ( $3\frac{1}{2}$  oz), and the average person consumes up to 8 oz. per day it will be seen that, even with the loss that occurs on boiling, a large quantity of ascorbic acid will be taken every day. From March onwards the old potato contains only 7 mg. per 100 g.<sup>5</sup> Steaming, keeping them warm for a long time, reheating them, cooking them in a haybox, i.e. "fireless cooker," result in much greater destruction, so that no one living much in hotels or public institutions or feeding in restaurants should trust the cooked potato as an adequate source of vitamin C.

<sup>1</sup> LANGWORTHY and MERRILL. (1924), U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Bull. 1213.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Med. Res. Council Rep.* No. 235.

<sup>3</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1936), *Chem. and Ind.*, 55, 153T.

<sup>4</sup> BAKER and WRIGHT. (1935), *Biochem. Journ.*, 29, 1802.

<sup>5</sup> *The Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*. (1945).

The composition of fried and roast potatoes is as follows:<sup>1</sup>

	g. per 100 g.			mg. per 100 g.							
	Pro- tein.	Fat.	Avail- able Carbo- hydrate.	Na	K	Ca	Mg	Fe	Cu	P	Cl
Fried	3.8	9.0	37.3	mg. 11.7	1020	13.8	43.3	1.35	0.27	72.2	140.0
Roast	2.8	1.0	27.3	8.6	745	10.1	32.0	0.99	0.20	53.0	103.0

The *digestibility of potatoes* in the mouth and stomach depends largely on the form in which they are eaten. They are less digestible when eaten as lumps than in a purée; and "mealy" potatoes are more digestible than "waxy," or new potatoes.

Two medium-sized potatoes (weighing together  $5\frac{1}{2}$  oz.) when boiled and eaten in the usual way remain for about 2 to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  hours in the stomach—that is, a shorter time than a similar weight of bread.

In the intestine potatoes are, on the whole, very well *absorbed*. This is owing to the fact that they contain much starch and little cellulose. Even when the quantity consumed daily amounts to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  lb.,  $92\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of the starch and 70 per cent. of the total nitrogen enters the blood.

Potatoes are, however, by no means suited to constitute the sole, or even the staple, diet of man. They are much too bulky, and contain too little protein in proportion to their starch. As a matter of fact, however, Rubner has found that  $6\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of potatoes are enough to furnish 3003 Calories of energy and to prevent any loss of bodily protein. This is probably to be explained by the relatively enormous quantity of carbohydrates (i.e. protein-sparers) which such a diet contains.<sup>2</sup> Hindhede obtained even better results, and is a strong advocate of the potato as an efficient and economical source even of protein.<sup>3</sup>

Even granting that 6 lb. of potatoes per day is sufficient to supply fully all the needs of the body, it must be evident that this quantity is still unduly bulky, weighing as it does about twice as much as an ordinary mixed diet. The result of its continued use would be an undue burdening of the stomach and bowels, culminating in dilatation, if not disease, of these organs. The so-called "potato belly" of the Irish peasant is an example of such a result.

As regards *economic value*, potatoes must be regarded as a cheap,

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Med. Res. Council Rep.* No. 235.

<sup>2</sup> There is some evidence that the nitrogenous constituents of potatoes are nearly twice as valuable for the repair of tissues as those of bread.

<sup>3</sup> (1926), *The Practitioner*, 116, 249.

but by no means the cheapest, kind of food. Thus, when potatoes are selling at 2d. and bread at 4½d. per lb. the former are twice as dear as the latter. From the point of view of national economy, however, potatoes are undoubtedly a cheap food. Thus, Boussingault found that a given piece of land produces:

	Wheat.	Rye.	Peas.	Potatoes.
Protein . . .	510	440	560	950
Starch . . .	1590	1196	780	6840
Ash . . .	90	62	60	323

Whenever there is an emergency need for more home-grown Calories, correspondents write to *The Times* urging the pre-eminence of the *Jerusalem artichoke*, over the potato, pointing out that this tuber produces, weight for weight, more return per acre than the potato. This is true. But when investigated nutritionally the case for the artichoke breaks down. The carbohydrate storage product of the tuber is inulin mainly, and as such indigestible. Even assuming that half the carbohydrate is available the artichoke contains but 3.2 per cent. against the potato's 20 per cent. One pound of boiled artichokes yield 86 Calories to the body, whereas potatoes yield at least 360. The suggestion of replacing potatoes by artichokes is nutritionally ludicrous. Besides that they are intensely disliked in the kitchen and often on the table. It must be again emphasized that, despite their other valuable characteristics, potatoes are taken mainly for their Calories, and indeed are often associated with the cereals as the main sources of Calories.<sup>1</sup>

Allied to the potato, though not much eaten in this country, are the sweet potato and the yam.

The *Sweet Potato* (*Ipomœa batatas*) is cultivated in hot countries, and is largely eaten in the United States and Africa. It used to be eaten in England before the present potato was introduced, and it is to it that Shakespeare refers when he makes Falstaff say, "Let the sky rain potatoes!" It contains carotene, the precursor of vitamin A, and also 19 mg. ascorbic acid per 100 g.

The *Yam* is the tuber of a tropical plant, *Dioscorea*, and is much larger than the potato, but resembles it in taste.

The percentage composition of the sweet potato and yam is as follows:

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrate.	Ash.
Sweet Potato . . .	1.6	0.5	22.5	0.7
Yam . . .	2.2	0.5	15.3	1.5

They are fully equal to the ordinary potato in nutritive value.

<sup>1</sup> LE GROS CLARK. (1943). *Discovery*, July.

## ARROWROOT, SAGO, AND TAPIOCA

These substances, which consist of little more than starch and dextrins, and are used in this country only as a basis for puddings, etc., must be considered under the heading of foods taken for Calories, because in some parts of the world they bulk largely in the diet and are used where we should use cereals.

Modern analyses give the following percentage compositions:

	Pro- tein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.	Vitamins A, B <sub>1</sub> , C.
				mg.	mg.			
Arrowroot	0.4	0.1	90.6	7.0	1.95	341	97	0
Sago	0.3	0.2	94.0	9.8	1.18	355	101	0
Tapioca	0.4	0.1	95.0	8.2	0.32	359	102	0

It will be seen from this table that these foods are almost useless except for Calories. Of these they give as much as cereals and, indeed, are usually classified with the cereals, though this is unwise. It is not to be expected that nations who live largely on any one of these foods could attain the physique of those living on rice or other cereals.

**Arrowroot** is obtained from the rhizome of a West Indian plant (*Maranta arundinacea*). The roots are mashed up, mixed with water, and the starch allowed to settle. When dried, it constitutes ordinary arrowroot. The superiority of *Bermuda arrowroot* to the other varieties is due to greater care in manufacture. The starch, having been washed away from the mashed roots and strained through muslin, is allowed to settle, and is subsequently dried in flat copper pans covered with gauze. When dry, it is packed by means of German-silver shovels into new barrels lined with paper stuck in with arrowroot paste. All these precautions are necessary to prevent the arrowroot from becoming contaminated, as it is so apt to be, by foreign flavours. For a similar reason it is exported on deck under covers, lest it may be affected by effluvia from the cargo in the hold.

Arrowroot contains 11 per cent. of water, and 90 per cent. of starch, dextrins and sugar estimated as glucose, along with only about 0.4 per cent. of protein and 0.7 per cent. of ash.

The *digestibility of arrowroot* and its allies in the stomach is probably high, and their absorption in the intestine is exceedingly complete. This gives them a special value in the treatment of diarrhoea.

**Sago** is derived from the pith of the sago palm. The trees are felled, split, and the starch washed out. It is then dried, and converted into

pearl sago by granulating. One tree should yield about 500 pounds of sago. Commercial sago contains 94 per cent. of starch.

**Tapioca** is derived from the roots of South American cassavas, plants belonging to the Spurge order (Euphorbiaceæ). Curiously enough, one of these—the bitter cassava (*Manihot utilisima*)—contains a milky juice mixed with the starch in which there is a good deal of that dangerous poison hydrocyanic (prussic) acid.<sup>1</sup> In preparing tapioca the juice is washed away from the grated root and the starch allowed to settle. It is then collected and dried on hot metal plates. The process of drying has the effect of rupturing most of the starch grains. Tapioca as found in the market contains about 11 per cent. of water and 85.5 per cent. of carbohydrate, and has a fuel value of 1578 Calories per pound. Pure starch contains only 2 per cent. of water and a pound of it furnishes 1825 Calories so that weight for weight pure starch gives considerably more Calories than tapioca.

Tapioca remains longer than might be expected in the stomach. Forty grammes of it in the form of a thick gruel (about a soup-plateful) had not entirely left the stomach until after the lapse of two hours and forty minutes (Penzoldt). There is reason to believe that it is absorbed very completely in the intestine.

As regards the *nutritive value* of all these preparations, it must be remembered that they are simply agreeable forms of starch; in other words, they consist almost entirely of carbohydrate, and should therefore not be eaten alone, but along with substances rich in protein, fat and vitamins. Eggs and milk are typical examples of such substances, and accordingly one finds that people have made puddings of arrowroot, sago, or tapioca along with milk and eggs, before anything was known of the chemical constituents of the diet. Tapioca pudding has something like the following composition:<sup>2</sup>

Water	.	.	.	.	71.7 per cent.
Protein	.	.	.	.	3.2 "
Fat	.	.	.	.	3.8 "
Carbohydrates	.	.	.	.	21.4
Calcium	.	.	.	.	0.116 "
Iron	.	.	.	.	0.0098 "
Phosphorus	.	.	.	.	0.095 "

and has a fuel value of about 128 Calories per serving (3½ oz. or 100 g.). It must be regarded as a highly nutritious food.

A cupful of *water-arrowroot* contains only about 2 g. of starch. It

<sup>1</sup> This gives an amusing counter to food cranks who say that we should eat the foods nature supplies us in their natural condition.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *Med. Res. Counc. Spec. Rep.* No. 235. The protein, fat, and calcium are added by the milk.

would furnish to the body about 9 Calories of fuel value, while even an invalid requires about 2000 Calories daily.

When one considers the *economy* of these different preparations, one may say that sago and tapioca are worth the price paid for them, while the better qualities of arrowroot certainly are not. Starch at 2s. 6d. a pound is dearer than tapioca at 1s. 9d. or sago at 1s. 1d., although it contains 10 per cent. more nutriment. Apart altogether from that, also, one cannot eat pure starch, whereas the same chemical substance in the form of tapioca or sago is quite agreeable.

## CHAPTER XIII

### FOODS TAKEN CHIEFLY FOR PROTEIN

As has already been said, dietitians are accustomed to divide proteins into two classes. The first class are those whose distribution of amino acids is similar to that in human proteins, while the second class are those which are deficient in such amino acids as lysine, methionine, phenylalanine and tryptophane.<sup>1</sup> The two classes approximately coincide with animal and vegetable proteins, though gelatin is an exception among animal proteins and potato and rice proteins are exceptions among vegetable proteins. So that to the dietitian cheese, eggs, fish, meat and milk are the foods of greatest value in body building, whereas cereal and pulse proteins are of secondary value for that purpose. Moreover, the concentration of proteins is high in foods of animal origin, with the exception of milk, running from 10 to 35 per cent. of the raw food, whereas cereal and pulse proteins are usually under 10 per cent. if we take the values of cooked foods. Cooking concentrates the proteins in animal foods but decreases concentration in vegetable foods. Consequently animal foods are a concentrated source of body-building material, whereas vegetable foods have their second-rate proteins considerably diluted with water, starch, cellulose, etc. We have already discussed the proteins of cereals and pulses in the section devoted to foods taken mainly for energy purposes, and it is now necessary to discuss the values of the animal foods.

Pre-eminent among foods containing proteins of high biological value—"first-class proteins"—are eggs, milk and milk products, and these will be discussed first. All estimates of their biological value put egg and milk proteins high.<sup>2</sup> They were developed for body-building purposes by mammal, and by birds and though the biological value of their proteins may be best for cows (for example) and ducks and hens, they also have a very high value for human beings.

Since a chick can be developed from an egg without the aid of any external agency save heat and correct gaseous environment in composition and pressure, it follows that the egg contains admirable body building material—at any rate for chicken.

<sup>1</sup> For the importance of methionine in reconstituting animal proteins, see PETERS, R. A. (1945), *Lancet*, **1**, 266.

<sup>2</sup> BOAS-FIXSEN. (1935), *Nut. Abst. and Rev.*, **4**, 447.

It must contain much protein, much inorganic material, especially calcium, phosphorus and iron, for these are essential for making tissue, bone and blood. Fat is needed too for its high Calorie value. These are practically all the constituents of an egg, except water. There is a tiny amount of free carbohydrate (40 to 230 mg. per egg) possibly to supply material for muscular activity, e.g. of heart muscle.

Passing on to details, it may be said that a hen's egg of average size weighs about 2 oz. (56 g.), the weight being distributed as follows:

Shell	.	.	.	.	12 per cent., or	6 g.
White	.	.	.	.	58    "    "	29 g.
Yolk	.	.	.	.	30    "    "	15 g.

The *shell* consists almost entirely of carbonate of lime. As the process of hatching goes on it loses some 9 per cent. of its weight by absorption for the formation of the bones.

The protein of *white of egg* is called "egg albumin." It is an error, however, to regard it as a single substance. It consists of a mixture of different proteins, some of which are of a compound nature, and contain a carbohydrate group in their molecule.<sup>1</sup> The white contains 0.4 to 0.5 mg. riboflavine per 100 g. and also avidin, a substance which renders biotin, a member of the B complex of vitamins, unavailable.<sup>2</sup>

The *yolk* is the chief storehouse of nutriment for the young chick, and consequently has a very different composition from the white. It contains much less water and more solid matters, amongst the latter being a large proportion of fat. The general composition of the white and yolk is contrasted in the following table (König).<sup>3</sup>

COMPOSITION OF EGG					
	Water.	Protein.	Fat.	Other Non-nitrogenous Matter.	Mineral Elements.
White . . .	85.7	12.6	0.25	—	0.59
Yolk . . .	50.9	16.2	31.75	0.13	1.09

One can see at a glance that the yolk of the egg is relatively its most nourishing part. The complexity of the composition of the yolk is shown by the following detailed analysis of its constituents:<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> There are apparently four different proteins in egg-white—ovalbumin, conalbumin, ovomucin, and ovomucoid. The ovalbumin makes up the greater part of the white. Ovomucin and ovomucoid are glycoproteins, and are only present in small amounts. See EICHHOLZ. (1898), *Journ. Physiol.*, 23, 163; Farmers' Bull., No. 128, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 139.

<sup>3</sup> For further analyses, which, however, do not differ essentially from the above, see LEBBIN. (1901), *Therap. Monatshefte*, 15, 552; PLIMMER. (1921), *loc. cit.*; NEEDHAM. 1931; McCANCE and WIDDOWSON (1940) give rather lower figures.

<sup>4</sup> Compiled from figures given by NEEDHAM. (1931), *Chemical Embryology*, 1, 283-4.

## COMPOSITION OF YOLK OF EGG

Water	.	.	.	.	47	to 54 per cent.
Proteins	.	.	.	.	15	„ 17.5 „
Fat	.	.	.	.	21	„ 33 „
Mineral elements	.	.	.	.	0.5	„ 2.0 „
Extractives	.	.	.	.	0.1	„ 2.1 „

The proteins of the yolk are vitellin and livetin, of which the former is a true phosphoprotein and the latter a pseudoglobulin. Vitellin contains some 1.3 per cent. of phosphorus and has relatively high proportions of the important amino acids, cystine, tryptophane and tryosine, a fact of some importance in embryonic—and other—nutrition. Livetin contains but little phosphorus. The proportions of vitellin to livetin are about 3.6 to 1.

The "fat" in the table is really "etheral extract" and consists of true fats plus lipines. The fats are, of course, compounds of fatty acid and glycerine, and the fatty acids of egg fat are palmitic, stearic, oleic and possible linoleic—the oleic and the other two being in the proportion of 2 : 1 : 1. The lipines are mainly represented by lecithin, but there are other members of the group present such as kephalin and sphingomyelin. These substances are of interest in nutrition because they too contain phosphoric acid, and can be used as a source of phosphorus for the bones of the developing chick. The relation of true fats to the remainder of the fat-like materials is about 2.5 to 1.

As much as 200 mg. of cholesterol, mainly as free cholesterol, which probably acts as a carrier of vitamin D, are to be found in each egg-yolk.

All these unusual substances were for a long time believed to be in chemical combination with the protein, but more recently the general opinion is that the combination is only physical.

As regards the inorganic constituents, potassium, calcium and iron,<sup>1</sup> in addition to the phosphorus, are found in considerable amounts in the yolk. According to McCance and Widdowson 100 g. of white and yolk have the following amounts in mg. of the "mineral elements."

	White.	Yolk.
Calcium	5.2	131.5
Chlorine	170.0	142.0
Copper	0.03	0.02
Iron	0.1	6.13
Magnesium	10.7	14.9
Phosphorus	33.0	495.0
Potassium	148.0	123.0
Sodium	192.0	50.0
Sulphur	183.0	165.0

Each egg yolk has from 500 to 700 µg. zinc.

<sup>1</sup> SocIN. (1891), *Zeit. f. Physiolog. Chem.*, 15, 93.

We have, then, in the yolk of egg a remarkable food, for it contains a protein with a large amount of phosphorus and of high biological value, highly emulsified fats, which owing to their emulsification are very digestible, lecithin and its allies, also highly phosphorized, and very notable proportions of calcium and iron. The phosphorus is needed by the young chick partly to form bones and partly to form nucleoprotein, the calcium and the phosphorus are essential for bone formation, the iron<sup>1</sup> for the hæmoglobin of the blood. The fats contain vitamin A (88 I.U. per g. yolk) and the sterols vitamin D (up to 5 I.U. per g. yolk). Thiamine (1 I.U. per g.) and riboflavine (0.5 to 0.6 mg. per 100 g.) are also present in the egg-yolk.

Consequently the great richness of the yolk in all (or most) of the materials needed by the young growing animal makes it a peculiarly valuable food for infants, especially those who are suffering from rickets.

Eggs contain almost no free purine or purine-yielding substance, and may therefore form part of the purine-free diet which is sometimes recommended in gout.

The *composition of the whole egg* may be summed up as follows:<sup>2</sup>

Shell	.	.	.	.	11.2 per cent.
Water	.	.	.	.	65.5 "
Nitrogenous matter	.	.	.	.	13.1 "
Fatty matters	.	.	.	.	9.3 "
Mineral elements	.	.	.	.	0.9 "

There is no difference in composition between eggs with dark shells and eggs with white shells, and no justification for the popular belief that the former are "richer" than the latter.<sup>3</sup>

The composition of the *edible part* (white and yolk together) per 100 g. may be *compared with* that of *meat* thus:<sup>4</sup>

	Egg.	Moderately Lean Meat.
Water	73.7	73.0
Protein	14.8	21.0
Fat	10.5	5.5
Mineral elements	1.0	1.0
Calorie value	158.0	137.0

<sup>1</sup> The iron is present not, as formerly supposed, in organic combination, but as an inorganic compound. R. HILL. (1930), *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 107, 205. THOMPSETT. (1934), *Biochem. Journ.*, 28, 1536.

<sup>2</sup> ATWATER. *Composition of American Food Materials*. Bull. No. 28, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture (revised edition). The percentage of shell is somewhat lower than that given on p. 316. McCANCE and SHIPP (*loc. cit.*) found that the whole egg (excluding shell) contained 12.6 per cent. protein and 7.9 per cent. fat.

<sup>3</sup> See C. F. LANGWORTHY. (1901), *Eggs and their Uses as Food*, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. Farmers' Bull., No. 128.

<sup>4</sup> ATWATER. *op. cit.* (average of sixty analyses).

It is seen at a glance that eggs contain almost the same total of nutritive matter as lean meat, but are relatively richer in fat and poorer in protein.

Eggs are thus admirably adapted chemically to supplement a food rich in carbohydrate, moderately rich in protein, but poor in fat. Such a food is found in rice and many cereals, and the addition of eggs to these in the form of puddings makes a complete food.

*Composition of other Eggs.* The composition of a goose's or duck's egg is very similar to that of the hen, but, of course, they are larger. An average duck's egg weighs about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  oz., a goose's egg from  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to  $6\frac{1}{2}$  oz.

Eggs when *kept* gradually lose water by evaporation and become lighter. A fresh egg should sink at once in a 10 per cent. salt solution (about 2 oz. to a pint), but the longer it has been kept, the nearer the surface it will float. There is no reason to suppose that preserved eggs are in any way less nutritious than fresh.

THE COMPOSITION OF EGGS<sup>1</sup>

	Refuse. Per Cent.	Water. Per Cent.	Protein. Per Cent.	Fat. Per Cent.	Mineral Elements. Per Cent.
Duck:					
Whole egg, as purchased .	13.7	60.8	12.1	12.5	0.8
Whole egg, edible portion .	—	70.5	13.3	14.5	1.0
White . . . . .	—	87.0	11.1	0.03	0.8
Yolk . . . . .	—	45.8	16.8	36.2	1.2
Guinea fowl:					
Whole egg, as purchased .	16.9	60.5	11.9	9.9	0.8
Whole egg, edible portion .	—	72.8	13.5	12.0	0.9
White . . . . .	—	86.6	11.6	0.03	0.8
Yolk . . . . .	—	49.7	16.7	31.8	1.2
Hen:					
Whole egg, as purchased .	11.2	65.5	11.9	9.3	0.9
Whole egg, edible portion .	—	73.7	13.4	10.5	1.0
White . . . . .	—	86.2	12.3	0.2	0.6
Yolk . . . . .	—	49.5	15.7	33.3	1.1
Plover:					
Whole egg, as purchased .	9.6	67.3	9.7	10.6	0.9
Whole egg, edible portion .	—	74.4	10.7	11.7	1.0
Turkey:					
Whole egg, as purchased .	13.8	63.5	12.2	9.7	0.8
Whole egg, edible portion .	—	73.7	13.4	11.2	0.9
White . . . . .	—	86.7	11.5	0.03	0.8
Yolk . . . . .	—	48.3	17.4	32.9	1.2

<sup>1</sup> U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Farmers' Bull., No. 234. Other analyses quoted by NEEDHAM. (1931), *Chemical Embryology*, 1, 240-1, are substantially the same.

When an egg becomes *rotten*, alkaline sulphides are produced, apparently from the white, and these give to a rotten egg its very disagreeable smell. If an egg is boiled for a long time the same effect is produced in a minor degree, and it is well known that an egg so treated is apt to have a slight odour.<sup>1</sup>

The digestibility of eggs in the stomach depends largely upon the form in which they are taken. Some experiments made on a healthy man throw light on this subject.<sup>2</sup> Two eggs were given, cooked in different ways, and portions of the stomach contents were withdrawn at intervals, the time being noted at which any portion of egg ceased to be recovered. The results were as follows:

2 eggs lightly boiled have left the stomach in	1½ hours
„ raw have left the stomach in	2½ „
„ poached + 5 g. of butter have left the stomach in	2½ „
„ hard boiled have left the stomach in	3 „
„ as an omelette have left the stomach in	3 „

The figures speak for themselves. Eggs cooked in almost any way are digestible. Raw eggs, despite their reputation, may prove to be indigestible. Investigations in Mendel's laboratory suggest that they are by no means as useful in nutrition as lightly boiled eggs. Their avidin renders the biotin of the diet unavailable. These facts should be considered by the physicians who use them for the treatment of gastric ulcers.

The difference in digestibility between hard- and soft-boiled eggs depends to some extent, also, on the degree to which the former are subdivided. If finely chopped up, they could probably be disposed of as easily as the soft-boiled eggs.<sup>3</sup>

As would be expected, raw yolk remains considerably longer in the stomach than raw white. It is noteworthy that all egg dishes call forth a much smaller secretion of hydrochloric acid than meat and fish.<sup>3</sup>

It must also be pointed out that *idiosyncrasy* plays a large part in the digestion of eggs. Some persons are unable to swallow even a small particle of egg without becoming violently ill, the symptoms ranging from slight urticaria to vomiting, syncope, and coma.

The *absorption* of eggs in the intestine seems to be very complete.

<sup>1</sup> The green colour of the surface of the yolk of a hard-boiled egg is due to the sulphide set free from the white combining with the iron of the yolk. This may be prevented by boiling the egg no more than enough to set it and then rapidly cooling it in cold water. TINKLER and SOAR. (1920), *Biochem. Journ.*, 14, 114.

<sup>2</sup> PENZOLDT. (1893), *Deut. Arch. f. Klin. Med.*, 51, 535. See also HAWK, REHFUSS, *et al.* (1919), *Amer. Journ. Physiol.*, 49, 254.

<sup>3</sup> HAWK and REHFUSS. (1926) found that hard-boiled egg remains in the stomach only ten minutes longer than soft-boiled. *Amer. Journ. Med. Sci.*, 171, 359.

It has been found that even when 21 hard-boiled eggs are taken daily they are absorbed as completely as meat, only 5 per cent. of the dried substance being lost.<sup>1</sup>

Eggs, therefore, leave a very small residue in the intestine. This may perhaps explain their constipating effect on some persons.

**Nutritive Value of Eggs.** Chemical considerations have shown us that the nutritive value of eggs is due almost entirely to protein and fat. One egg contains enough of these to yield 70 to 90 Calories. Half a tumblerful of good milk or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of fat meat would yield about as much.

Roughly speaking, 15 to 20 eggs may be taken as the nutritive equivalent of 2 lb. of medium fat meat.

Their low carbohydrate content prevents eggs from being in any sense a complete food, and it would take 12-15 of them a day to supply even the amount of nitrogen required by a healthy man. They cannot be regarded as a *cheap* source of protein, though the convenient form in which their nutritive constituents are presented, and the readiness with which they lend themselves to the art of the cook, must always render them a most useful form of food. In addition to these considerations, the peculiar chemical composition of the yolk causes that part of the egg to be a valuable source of calcium, iron, and phosphorus, as well as vitamins A, thiamine, riboflavine, and D, of which advantage may well be taken in the dietetic treatment of disease, more especially in early life. They lack vitamin C.

**Duck Eggs.** A word of warning is necessary about duck eggs. As long ago as 1926 the Ministry of Health drew attention to the possibility that undercooked duck eggs could cause gastro-enteritis. The ducks often are carriers of *bact. aettrycke*, pass them on to the eggs and, if the latter are imperfectly cooked, spread "food poisoning." Hens and turkeys suffer from microbes of the salmonella type, but so far these birds' eggs have not been incriminated as a source of food poisoning. German law compels duck eggs to be indelibly stamped as such, and advise that they should be boiled for eight minutes.<sup>2</sup>

**Dried Eggs.** The war of 1939-45 introduced us to a new product—spray-dried eggs. Their composition was as is shown in the table on p. 322.

These spray dried eggs "saved the situation" for the cook during the war years. The spraying results in a very fine powder which easily "reconstitutes" with water. Some change in the physical nature of the proteins results, for dried eggs are not so useful as shell eggs in cake making. More baking powder seems to be necessary. It is claimed,

<sup>1</sup> RUBNER. (1879), *Zeit. f. Biologie.*, 15, 115. For an account of later experiments, which, however, yielded results almost identical with Rubner's, see *Farmers' Bull.* No. 128, 17, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture; and AUFRECHT and SIMON. (1908), *Deut. Med. Woch.*, 34, 2309.

<sup>2</sup> *Lancet*, (1945), I, 314.

Protein . . . . .	45.8 g. per 100 g.	
Fat . . . . .	42.0 g.	"
Carbohydrate . . . . .	3.2 g.	"
Calcium . . . . .	219 mg.	"
Iron . . . . .	11.0 mg.	"
Vitamin A . . . . .	3,000 I.U.	"
Thiamine . . . . .	400 µg.	"
Ascorbic acid . . . . .	0	"
Calorie value . . . . .	591	" /

however, that reconstituted dried eggs beaten at a temperature of 100° F. to 125° F. can be used as a basis for sponge cakes, and are as useful for that purpose as shell eggs. Cane sugar added to the egg before drying prevents the denaturation of the proteins and gives a better beat. Other sugars have an opposite effect.<sup>1</sup> There can be little doubt of their nutritive value.

It is unfortunate that there are many so-called "substitutes" for eggs on the markets. Biologically, nutritionally and gastronomically, there is no substitute for the egg. Among these substitutes are *custard-powders*.

PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF CUSTARD-POWDERS

	Birds <sup>2</sup> Custard- powder.	Goodall's Custard- powder.	Goodall's Egg- powder.	Bor- wick's Egg- powder.	Yeat- man's Egg- powder.
Starch . . . . .	86.25	84.45	51.03	26.38	52.32
Protein . . . . .	0.59	0.58	6.01	2.96	6.00
Soluble colouring matter	0.88	0.90	—	—	—
Baking soda . . . . .	—	—	15.33	50.70	22.11
Tartaric acid . . . . .	—	—	13.69	10.33	11.37
Phosphates . . . . .	—	—	0.24	—	—
Carbonates of calcium and magnesium . . . . .	—	—	2.70	—	—
Chlorides and sulphates	—	—	—	—	—
Water . . . . .	11.83	13.69	11.0	9.63	8.20
Mineral elements . . . . .	0.45	0.38	—	—	—
	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00

The majority of them consist chiefly of starch, to which a yellow colour is imparted by mixture with some vegetable dye—e.g. turmeric.

It is obvious that they have nothing in common with eggs except a yellow colour, and that their nutritive value can be in no way equal to that of a genuine custard. They are extremely popular in all parts of the country served with stewed fruits, with fruit pies and with suet puddings, but are useful in dietetics only as a vehicle for milk.

<sup>1</sup> HAWTHORNE and GROVER. (1944), *Chem. and Ind.*, 422.

<sup>2</sup> Bird's custard powder has added vitamins A and D.

## CHAPTER XIV

### FOODS TAKEN CHIEFLY FOR PROTEIN (*continued*)

#### MILK

There is probably only one subject upon which all dietitians agree, viz. the value of milk—generally speaking, cow's milk—in human nutrition. Milk is a food developed in nature for the feeding of the immature mammal. The only doubts which can arise about its use by man are, (i) is it wise to divert the food intended for the young of other mammals to man, and (ii) should adults take a food intended for the immature? The answer to these two questions, from the dawn of history to the modern experimental era is undoubtedly "yes."

In the present chapter cow's milk alone will be dealt with. We shall reserve till later the study of human milk and the milk of some other animals.

**Chemical Composition.**—As regards its chemical composition, milk occupies an almost unique position among animal foods, for it contains in itself representatives of all three nutritive constituents, proteins, carbohydrates, and fat. The avocado pear, nuts and the soya bean are practically the only other foods which have significant amounts of all three nutrients, to judge from McCance and Widdowson's analyses. The Medical Research Council includes the shell fish.

The *proteins of milk* constitute about 3 to 3½ per cent. of its total weight.<sup>1</sup> The principal protein is the substance called *caseinogen*,<sup>2</sup> which is not very soluble in pure water but is kept in solution in milk by the various inorganic salts present. The solution is not clear, but opalescent. It is least soluble at a pH 4.6.

The other main protein of milk is an albumin (*lactalbumin*), which is present in very much smaller quantity than caseinogen, making up only about one-fifth of the total protein of cow's milk. In human milk it is *relatively* much more abundant. The biological value of the mixed proteins is the highest known and because of their large content of methionine they are particularly useful for tissue building and regeneration.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Average of all data in DAVIES' (1939) *The Chemistry of Milk*, Chapman & Hall, are protein 3.42, fat 3.67, lactose 4.78, mineral elements 0.73.

<sup>2</sup> "Casein" in American and Continental terminology.

<sup>3</sup> HIMSWORTH and GLYNN. (1945), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 38, 101; CROFT and PETERS. (1945), *Lancet*, 1, 266.

The *carbohydrate* constituent of milk is *milk-sugar*, or *lactose*, which is present to the extent of from 4 to 5 per cent. It differs very much from cane-sugar, and in nothing more than in its comparative freedom from sweetness. In a substance, which serves as a food rather than as a condiment, this property is a valuable one. Were it not so, milk would pall upon the taste much more readily than it does. Another peculiarity of lactose is that it is hardly capable of being fermented by yeasts. As a consequence, it is better borne than other kinds of sugar in cases of advanced dilatation of the stomach accompanied by fermentation. On the other hand, it is readily converted into lactic acid by the lactic acid bacteria, a process which occurs in the souring of milk, and sometimes also in the intestine.

The *fat of milk* stands intermediate in amount between the protein and sugar in cow's milk, constituting about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 per cent. of the total weight. In the milk of other mammals the relative proportions vary remarkably, so that generalizations are impossible as the following table will show.<sup>1</sup>

COMPOSITION OF THE MILKS OF VARIOUS MAMMALS<sup>2</sup>

	Protein.		Fat.	Lactose.	"Mineral elements."
	Caseinogen.	Lactalbumin.			
Ass . . . . .	0.7	1.6	1.6	6.0	0.5
Buffalo . . . . .	5.8	0.3	7.5	4.1	0.9
Cat . . . . .	3.1	6.0	3.3	4.9	0.6
Cow . . . . .	3.0	0.5	3.7	4.9	0.7
Dog . . . . .	6.1	5.1	9.6	3.1	0.7
Echnidna aculeata . . . . .	8.4	2.9	19.6	2.8	—
Elephant . . . . .	3.1		19.6	8.8	0.6
Ewe . . . . .	5.0	1.5	6.9	4.9	0.9
Goat . . . . .	3.2	1.1	4.8	4.4	0.8
Human . . . . .	1.0	1.3	3.8	6.2	0.3
Llama . . . . .	3.0	0.9	3.2	5.6	0.8
Mare . . . . .	1.2	0.1	1.2	5.7	0.3
Porpoise . . . . .	11.2		48.5	1.3	0.6
Reindeer . . . . .	8.38	1.51	17.09	2.82	—
Sheep . . . . .	5.23	1.45	8.63	4.28	0.97
Sow . . . . .	3.3	1.5	7.0	3.1	1.1
Whale . . . . .	—	—	43.7	—	—

Fat exists in milk in the form of an emulsion of extraordinary perfection. The average diameter of a globule of milk fat is about  $2.3$  to  $4.0\mu$ , though there may be some with a diameter greater than  $12$ . It will be evident that fat so finely divided as this must be particularly easy of digestion.

<sup>1</sup> See also DAVIES. (1939), *op. cit.*, 7.

<sup>2</sup> Figures mainly from DAVIES. (1939), *op. cit.*

When milk is allowed to stand, the fat globules run together, and float to the surface as cream. If this is removed, *skim milk* is left; but when so prepared it still contains some 0.5 per cent. of fat, perhaps as much as 1 per cent. If the cream is removed by means of a centrifugal separator, its abstraction is much more complete; for separated milk usually contains less than  $\frac{1}{3}$  per cent. of fat. Milk so prepared should be described as *separated milk*.

Some fuller chemical details about milk fat have already been given under butter (p. 250).

"*Mineral Elements*" are fairly abundant in milk, forming about 0.7 per cent. Seeing that milk is the sole food of young animals, one is not surprised to learn that its different mineral ingredients are present in the same proportions as in the body of the particular animal which the milk is designed to feed.<sup>1</sup> Now, the chief tissues which a young animal has to build up are muscle and bone. For the former potassium phosphate, and for the latter calcium phosphate are required, and milk contains an abundance of both of these substances. To the rule that the mineral ingredients of milk correspond proportionately to those in the body of a young animal there is one apparent exception. Iron is an essential element in the body and especially in the blood; but iron is very scantily represented in milk.<sup>2</sup> Five pints of milk would be required to supply the amount of iron necessary for a full-grown man every day. To the young animal this scarcity of iron in milk is a matter of little moment. It enters the world with a full supply of iron already stored in its body, which it has obtained from the blood of its mother. Artificially fed babies require extra iron, for cow's milk has less iron than human milk.<sup>3</sup> The lack of iron in milk may result in anæmia in patients kept for a long time on a milk diet.

There remains one other substance which, for the sake of convenience, may be considered under the mineral ingredients of milk: *citric acid*. It is rather astonishing to find this substance in milk at all, and yet about 0.13–0.23 per cent. is present, and it has been calculated that a good cow yields as much citric acid in the day as would be contained in two or three lemons.<sup>4</sup>

As found in milk, citric acid is chiefly combined with calcium and magnesium. The solid particles sometimes met with in autoclaved milk consist chiefly of it.

In addition, milk is a good source of vitamin A and riboflavine. One

<sup>1</sup> Man is an exception.

<sup>2</sup> REIS and CHAKMAKJIAN. (1932), *Journ. Biol. Chem.*, 98, 237, give the percentage of iron in cow's milk when milked into glass containers as 0.00014–0.00018, and when into normal containers as 0.00028.

<sup>3</sup> MACKAY, H. *Med. Res. Council Spec. Rep.* No. 157.

<sup>4</sup> HENKEL. (1888), *Munch. Med. Woch.*, 35, 328.

pint of milk may yield from 776 to 1520 I.U. of vitamin A.<sup>1</sup> Thiamine is present to about 70  $\mu$ g. per 100 ml., though American figures are lower; riboflavine to 0.2 mg. and nicotinic acid to 0.057 mg.<sup>2</sup> The other members of the B complex are present. Ascorbic acid is at about the low level of 2 mg. per 100 ml. Figures for vitamin D are 7 to 10 I.U. for English milk between November and March, rising to 55 I.U. in July and possibly higher in August.<sup>3</sup>

Last, but not least, amongst the constituents of milk is *water*. It forms by far the largest proportion of the milk (87 to 88 per cent.), and holds the other ingredients in suspension or solution. The hydrogen ion concentration of fresh cow's milk is pH 6.5.

One may now sum up what has been stated about the chemical composition of milk in the following table:

COMPOSITION OF COW'S MILK			
Water	87 to 88 per cent.	Fat	3½ to 4½ per cent.
Protein	3 " 3½ "	Mineral	
Sugar	4 " 5 "	elements <sup>4</sup>	0.7 "

The average figures of thousands of analyses are: Water 87.1, total solids 12.69, caseinogen 2.86, albumin plus globulin (coagulable proteins) 0.56, fat 3.67, lactose, 4.78, mineral elements 0.73 per cent.

These figures merely represent the average composition of a sample of good milk. They are not to be understood to apply to every specimen of milk encountered, for milk varies greatly in composition.

To some extent these variations in composition are unavoidable, depending as they do on the breed and age of cow from which the milk is obtained, on the way in which the cows are fed, and on the period which has elapsed since calving.

In the mixed milk obtained from a large number of cows these variations must to a considerable extent neutralize one another. Hence it is that the total milk from one dairy varies less in composition than that from any one cow in it, and the popular prejudice in favour of feeding an infant on milk "from one cow" thus rests on a false basis. The "solids not fat" are closely grouped round an average of 8.74, but even so they may vary from 6.24 to 10.24 per cent. The fat of the milk of a Friesian herd may be 3.55 per cent. and from a Guernsey, 5.19 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> The MEDICAL RESEARCH COUNCIL figures are about half these, and figures from a private communication by COWARD and BRUCE, nearly double.

<sup>2</sup> Much higher figures are quoted as the result of biological assays. It must not be forgotten that milk may promote the growth of nicotinic-acid-producing microbes in the large intestine.

<sup>3</sup> KON. (1943). *J. Dairy Res.*, 13, 216.

<sup>4</sup> Calcium forms 0.120 per cent., potassium 0.160 per cent. (an unexpectedly high figure) and phosphorus 0.095 per cent.

What composition should be expected? On this point, unfortunately, some difference of opinion exists. Analysis has clearly shown that an average sample of good milk contains about 3.8 per cent. of fat. There is no legal definition of milk, but it is assumed, in this country, that if milk has less than 3 per cent. fat, and 8.5 per cent. "total solids not fat," it is adulterated. A quality standard based on total solids and on the number of microbes per ml. is advocated by Davis<sup>1</sup> of the National Institute for Research in Dairying, which certainly would be better than the present haphazard scheme.

From what has been said of the chemical composition of milk, it might naturally be regarded as a fluid form of food, and indeed it is often one of the chief elements in a so-called "fluid" diet. Strictly speaking, however, milk is not a fluid food. It is only a fluid outside the body. So soon as milk enters the stomach it undergoes a change by which it very quickly becomes solid. It is then said to be coagulated or clotted. This *coagulation* is due to a change brought about in the caseinogen by the ferment called "rennin." The exact nature of the change which the caseinogen undergoes is still obscure, but it seems to be split up by the rennin into two proteins, casein and whey albumose. The union of casein and calcium produces the clot.<sup>2</sup>

The coagulation of milk is what occurs in the making of *junket*. In that process, rennet is added to the milk raised to body temperature, which is then set aside in a warm place until it is solid. At first the milk forms a jelly, but by and by the curd shrinks and a yellowish fluid is squeezed out of it, which is the "whey." The rennet which is used in this operation is derived from the lining membrane of the stomach of the calf, but exactly the same ferment is present in the human stomach, and it is important to remember that all raw milk is converted in the stomach into junket very shortly after it has been swallowed. We shall return in greater detail to this subject when we come to the digestion of milk.

At present it may be pointed out that the curd of milk consists primarily of the calcium caseinate. In process of setting, however, the casein entangles the fat of the milk in its meshes, so that curd consists of the casein along with the fat.

<sup>1</sup> DAVIS. (1944). *Food Manufacture*, 19, 423.

<sup>2</sup> English physiologists, as stated above, apply the name "caseinogen" to the chief protein of milk, and restrict the term "casein" to caseinogen which has been altered by coagulation. This nomenclature has the advantage of emphasizing the difference between the products of curdling and clotting above described. Adopting it, one would say that when milk is curdled caseinogen is thrown down in a flocculent form; when milk clots, the caseinogen is converted into casein. Americans and others call the chief protein of milk "casein" and the solid result of rennin action "paracasein."

Investigation suggests that the calcium is in close relation with the caseinogen in milk forming calcium caseinogenate. Curdling with acid removes the calcium and forms acid caseinogen. The clot of milk is calcium caseinate.

It usually also contains some of the sugar of the milk, for the whey is never entirely squeezed out.

The "*curdling*" of milk must be distinguished clearly from the process of "*clotting*" just described. When milk "*curdles*," its caseinogen is simply thrown down in the form of a precipitate without undergoing further change. When milk "*clots*," the caseinogen undergoes partial digestion and one of the digestion products unites with calcium to form a clot.

Curdling is due to the production of lactic acid in the milk, which turns the caseinogen out of its partnership with calcium salts, and the caseinogen, being in itself not soluble, falls down as a flocculent precipitate when the *pH* of the fluid reaches the isoelectric point.

The production of the lactic acid is due to a splitting up of milk-sugar by the agency of the lactic acid bacteria. The true lactic acid bacteria change 90–98 per cent. of the milk's lactose to lactic acid, and there is also a production of succinic, acetic, and propionic acids and of carbon dioxide. Coliform organisms also manufacture lactic acid among a wider range of products.

**Effects of Heating upon the Composition of Milk.** When milk is warmed in an open pan a tough "skin" forms on the top. This skin is due to a Ramsden phenomenon. The caseinogen and lactalbumin are concentrated at the air-liquid interface and irreversibly precipitated. Fat and deposits of tricalcium phosphate are also entangled in the skin.

If the skin is removed, another straightway appears, and by continuing the process the milk undoubtedly loses some of its nutritive value. The loss is never great, however, for 100 c.c. of milk, if boiled for a quarter of an hour, lose at most only 0.273 g. of protein. After prolonged boiling, and to a less degree after pasteurization, the soluble calcium of the milk is somewhat diminished and to this extent the nutritive value of the milk may be slightly impaired.<sup>1</sup>

Other changes observed in milk heated for a long time are that it becomes of a somewhat brownish colour, and altered taste. The change in colour seems to be due in part to a caramelization of the sugar in the milk, but in part also to more obscure alterations.<sup>2</sup> The change in taste sets in quite suddenly when a temperature of 70° C. is reached. It can be obviated to a large extent by allowing the milk to stand for some time, after being boiled, and then straining it.

The caseinogen also seems to undergo some alteration on boiling, for boiled milk coagulates more slowly than raw milk. To this point we shall return later.

<sup>1</sup> H. E. MAGEE and DOUGLAS HARVEY. "Studies of the Effect of Heat on Milk." (1926), *Biochem. Journ.*, 20, 873.

<sup>2</sup> WRIGHT. (1924), *Biochem. Journ.*, 18, 245.

That milk is a valuable food, if not *the* most valuable food, is agreed by all dietitians, and national governments have accepted the verdicts of scientists. Colossal efforts have been made by them to increase the production and consumption of milk. By subsidizing milk, by decreasing its price to pregnant and nursing mothers, to infants under five and to school-children, the consumption of liquid milk in this country increased during the Second World War by 25 per cent.,<sup>1</sup> i.e. from 767 million gallons per year to 1048 million gallons. Much of this was, however, diverted from manufacture, so that the total increased production was much less spectacular. In 1951 the consumption was 1580 million gallons, but it was showing signs of regression. The increased consumption must be further developed if Great Britain is to reach the aim of dietitians, viz. 1 pint per head per day, or 2,054 million gallons per year.

That milk arrives in the towns of this country in a satisfactory state can hardly be claimed by even the most fanatical upholder of the consumption of raw milk. Milk as drawn from a healthy and perfectly clean cow is a practically sterile fluid. Such ideal conditions, however, are difficult, and almost impossible to attain at present and the production and consumption of milk presents us with a dilemma: either we must insist that all milk sold should be absolutely clean milk or it must be treated before consumption to make it safe.

The sources of danger as (i) disease in the cow, and (ii) contamination with pathogenic microbes in the course of production, transit to the central depots and delivery to the customer. The cow may be suffering from tuberculosis or from undulant fever<sup>2</sup> and pass the microbes causing these diseases into the milk secreted. The milker may be a carrier of diphtheria, dysentery, paratyphoid, fever, scarlet fever or typhoid germs, and so infect the milk. The containers—buckets, churns, etc., may be washed with water infected by pathogenic germs, or such germs may be transmitted by flies. Then there is the danger of contamination by dust. The germs of undulant fever may live for many months in dung and it is unfortunately the fact that much of our milk is contaminated with dung. The bulking of milk at distributing centres, or earlier, hands on the milk infection of one farm to the whole of the milk bulked, e.g. in Bournemouth in 1936, a turnover of 1600 gallons of milk per day, collected from 37 suppliers, was contaminated by one supply of 15–20 gallons per day infected at the farm. There were 718 cases of typhoid with 51 deaths.<sup>3</sup> Unfortunately there is evidence of transmission of the diseases mentioned in plenty. Transmission of diphtheria by the wife of

<sup>1</sup> *Food Manufacture*. (1945), 20, 78.

<sup>2</sup> WILSON. (1944), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, 2, 158.

<sup>3</sup> ENOCH. (1943), *This Milk Business*, 75-7.

a farmer when straining the milk was demonstrated in 1943.<sup>1</sup> Even milk from tuberculin-tested herds is at times contaminated with bovine tuberculosis.<sup>2</sup> "Press-in" discs for closing the mouths of milk bottles have been held responsible for paratyphoid and typhoid in America.<sup>3</sup> An outbreak of typhoid in Melbourne was traced to the milk of one farm, where there was a typhoid carrier and with the removal of that carrier the outbreak died out.<sup>4</sup> Five per cent. of all milk samples, in this country bacteriologically tested, contain tubercle bacilli.<sup>5</sup> The deaths from bovine tuberculosis, almost certainly transmitted by milk, are estimated at 2000 per year in this country.<sup>6</sup> Such a death-rate indicates great suffering in intestines, joints and glands among children who survive. These are but a small sample culled mainly from one medical journal during six months. It is no wonder that the many medical men look upon milk as a highly dangerous food.

There is a great distinction between safe milk—which we cannot afford to wait for—and clean milk, which we may hope to get in time.<sup>7</sup> The question is: how are we to make milk safe, until we can be sure of clean milk? The answer is emphatically *pasteurization*. This answer will be hotly contested, but frankly we cannot understand the case against it. Pasteurization consists in raising the temperature of the milk to a definite degree and maintaining it at that temperature till the pathogenic microbes are destroyed and then at once cooling it and delivering it into sterilized containers. The length of time the milk is exposed to the raised temperature depends on that temperature. At 145° F. the time is 30 minutes (the holder process), but at a higher temperature, the time necessary for the destruction of pathogenic microbes is much shorter. At 162° F. it may be as low as 15 to 16 seconds. (High temperature-short time process or the flash process.) Both methods are in use in this country and the United States. The holder process is being superseded by the flash process, which is now permissive in this country. Both methods need technical skill in the operator and this is particularly true of the flash process and, owing to shortage of skilled labour during the war of 1939–45, some milk was imperfectly pasteurized.<sup>8</sup> It should not be impossible, however, to make the apparatus fool-proof.

The advantage of pasteurizing milk lies not only in the destruction of pathogenic microbes. The keeping quality is much enhanced. If ordinary milk is pasteurized in the laboratory by the holder process and held at 34° F. it will keep without significant change for one

<sup>1</sup> GOLDIE and MADDOCK. (1943). *Lancet*. I, 285.

<sup>2</sup> SUTHERLAND. (1943). *Lancet*. I, 316.

<sup>4</sup> MERRILEES. (1943). *Lancet*. I, 803.

<sup>6</sup> GARROD. (1943). *Lancet*. I, 276; WILSON. (1944). *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, 2, 158.

<sup>7</sup> MONCRIEFF, A. A. (1943). *op. cit.*

<sup>3</sup> *Lancet*. (1943). I, 687.

<sup>5</sup> *Lancet*. (1945). I, 187.

<sup>8</sup> SUTHERLAND. (1943). *Lancet*. I, 316.

month.<sup>1</sup> It is safe to say that no milk could be used in our great cities without pasteurization. It would all have gone sour. The position is this: a large majority of the nation would have to do without this admirable food if a ban were placed upon pasteurization.

There is no evidence that pasteurization appreciably alters the food value of milk. Laboratory experiments have shown that the only nutritive losses suffered by the known constituents of milk are a destruction of some 20 per cent. of ascorbic acid and of about 10 per cent. of thiamine.<sup>2</sup> No one advocates milk as a source of these vitamins, for its contribution in a mixed diet under the best conditions is small. There is no loss of vitamin A, riboflavine or vitamin D. Experiments on calves by the Hannah Research Institute leave no doubt of its value as a food. The growth response of these calves was as great as—actually slightly greater than—the growth of the controls on the milk from the same source, but unpasteurized, and whereas none of those on pasteurized milk contracted tuberculosis, several of those on raw milk did. If no difference between the two milks as regards nutritive value can be shown on calves it is unlikely that there is any difference for human beings. For experiments on the value of pasteurized milk in the feeding of children, see p. 338.

If pasteurized milk is not available the milk should be boiled in a double saucepan. It suffers very little change in taste especially if it is rapidly cooled after removal from the fire and subsequently strained, as already described.

There is every reason to advocate the habitual application of one or other of these methods to milk before it is consumed as food; and we look forward to the day when the drinking of raw milk will be considered as barbarous a custom as the eating of raw meat is at present.

**Preservation of Milk.** The commonest methods of preserving milk are by evaporation or desiccation.

*Evaporated milk* (usually spoken of in this country as unsweetened condensed milk) is made on a large scale in America. By evaporation *in vacuo* the water content of the milk is reduced by 60 to 65 per cent., the fat is homogenized to break up the globules and the product is finally sterilized. Such a milk is germ-free and the evaporation being conducted in the absence of oxygen there is no appreciable loss of vitamins A and D, but there is a loss of 50 per cent. of the thiamine, 10 per cent. of riboflavine and 60 per cent. of ascorbic acid.<sup>3</sup>

By the method of *desiccation*, milk is passed in a thin layer between two heated rollers, or sprayed into a current of hot air, in such a way that most of the water is immediately evaporated, and a fine powder

<sup>1</sup> MATTICK. (1944), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, 2, 141.

<sup>2</sup> KON. (1944), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, 2, 153.

<sup>3</sup> KON. (1944), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, 2, 149.

results, which contains all the original solids of the milk in a perfectly soluble form. There are now many brands of dried milk on the market, of which the table below may be regarded as giving the approximate composition.

The nutritive value of dried milk is fully equal to that of ordinary milk and it may be regarded as practically sterile, and it is more digestible.

#### COMPOSITION OF DRIED MILK

	Whole.	Skimmed.
Moisture . . .	4.0 per cent.	5.0 per cent.
Proteins . . .	25.6 "	35.8 "
Fat . . .	26.7 "	0.7 "
Milk sugar . . .	35.6 "	47.9 "
Calcium . . .	0.895 "	1.225 "
Iron . . .	0.8	1.0 mg. per 100 g.
Vitamin A . . .	1070	30 I.U. " "
Thiamine . . .	100	330 " " "
Ascorbic acid . . .	0	0 " " "

#### DIGESTIBILITY OF MILK

It might be supposed that milk, being a fluid, would only remain a short time in the stomach, and rapidly pass on into the intestine. We have seen, however, that milk is only a fluid outside the body.

**Clotting of Milk in the Stomach.** When it enters the stomach it sets into a solid clot, owing to the action upon it of rennin. Now, the gastric juice is an acid fluid, and it is at first sight surprising that *curdling* does not take place rather than clotting. That this does not happen is no doubt to be attributed to the fact that the proteins of the milk unite with the acid first secreted by the stomach, and give the rennin time to act before the mixture has attained an acid reaction.

Whether this is the correct explanation or not, there can be no doubt of the fact that shortly after milk has been swallowed it is converted into a solid mass.

What the use of rennin is in the stomach is very difficult to see. Certainly clotting is not a necessary preliminary to the digestion of milk, for the latter process can be carried on artificially outside the body to its most advanced stages, with the milk remaining fluid all the time. There is also ample provision for the digestion of milk in the intestine, and if it is so prepared that clotting in the stomach cannot take place, its ultimate digestion is in no way interfered with, nor is it found that patients from whom the stomach has been entirely removed for disease have any difficulty in digesting milk. Rennin, in fact, would almost appear to be a superfluous ingredient in the gastric juice, and

its presence there is rendered all the more inexplicable by the fact that it occurs also in such situations as the gizzards of fowls, where milk is never found at all.

After the clot of casein has formed in the stomach, it shrinks into a tough and leathery mass, which offers great resistance to the digestive efforts of the organ. Were the milk merely curdled, the case would be quite different; for the particles of precipitated caseinogen are dissolved with comparative ease. This is one of the reasons why butter-milk and koumiss are often found to be more "digestible" than ordinary milk.

The investigations of VAN SLYKE and HART have thrown a light on the digestion of casein. Calcium caseinate, which is the clot formed by rennin, forms a flocculent curd, which is not digested by pepsin unless acid is present, but passes almost straight into the intestine. This happens in young infants, whose stomachs secrete little or no hydrochloric acid. If acid is present, casein is set free, and forms a much denser clot, and is digested by pepsin. If hydrochloric acid is in excess, casein hydrochloride is formed, which sets into a still tougher curd, and takes still longer to digest.

If, then, we wish to lighten the labours of the stomach in the digestion of milk, we must endeavour so to arrange matters that the milk shall not form a tough and dense clot after it has been swallowed.

Now, the density of the clot which milk forms in the stomach depends, on the one hand, upon the amount of caseinogen and calcium salts which it contains, and on the other hand, upon the degree of acidity of the gastric juice. The richer in caseinogen and soluble salts of calcium the milk is, and the more acid the gastric juice, the tougher is the clot. On the other hand, by reducing the proportion of these different factors, the clotting of the milk can either be prevented altogether or made to take place in such a way that the clot is not of great toughness and density.

Obviously mere *dilution of the milk with water* lessens the proportion of lime salts and caseinogen, and will increase its digestibility. *Dilution with lime-water* is probably not more efficacious than dilution with ordinary water,<sup>1</sup> unless it be in virtue of its slight alkalinity. It has been found, however, that the addition of even large quantities of such an alkali as bicarbonate of soda to milk does not prevent clotting in the stomach.

*Barley-water* is sometimes recommended as a diluent instead of ordinary water. Whilst it has no greater power of preventing clotting than ordinary water, it seems to some extent, by its colloidal properties, to prevent the clot from shrinking into a tough mass. This is due to the starch which it contains.

<sup>1</sup> See F. W. WHITE. (1901), "Observations on Milk Coagulation and Digestion" (Abstract in *Boston Med. and Surg. Journ.*, 145, 13).

Wright<sup>1</sup> showed that the coagulation of milk can be prevented by the addition of one-fiftieth of its volume of a 25-per cent. solution of citrate of soda, which acts by converting some of the soluble lime salts into insoluble calcium citrate. Such *citrated milk* is employed with success in the feeding of infants. The presence of the citrate can hardly be detected by the palate, and milk contains such a large excess of calcium salts that the removal of part of them is no disadvantage.

*Aeration* of the milk (such as can be effected by the use of the "Sparklets" process) is another important means of combating density of clotting. Milk so prepared clots rapidly, but the clot is very friable. It is the combination of aeration and dilution that renders "milk-and-soda" so much more digestible than plain milk.

The presence of much acid, as has been mentioned, favours the retraction of the clot into a leathery form. Now, the degree of acidity of the gastric juice varies in different individuals within fairly wide limits, and that may explain why some people find milk so much more easy to digest than others. For this reason, too, milk may sometimes disagree in those cases of dyspepsia which are caused by over-acidity of the gastric juice.

Another method of preventing the formation of a dense clot is by mixing the milk with some substance which will get in between the particles of casein, as it were, and keep them apart, so that they do not run into a solid, tough mass, but form a more or less spongy clot. Mucilaginous fluids, such as barley-water, act, as we have seen, in this fashion. Thickening the milk with a little cornflour or gruel acts similarly, so does mixture with other foods. Milk is thus more easily digested if eaten along with some solid food—e.g. a biscuit—than when drunk straight off by itself.

Boiled milk is found to clot more slowly both *in vitro* and *in vivo*, and to give a less dense clot, than raw milk.<sup>2</sup>

The exact *time that milk remains in the stomach* under ordinary circumstances has been determined by causing a healthy man to drink a definite quantity of milk, and then washing out the stomach at short intervals or by taking advantage of people who can regurgitate at will.

In a series of experiments on the gastric response to foods, Rehfuess, Hawk, and their colleagues<sup>3</sup> made the following observations on such a man:

(1) Milk (500 c.c.) drunk rapidly, leaves the stomach rapidly and produces smaller curds than milk drunk slowly or sipped. Sipping

<sup>1</sup> "On the Possible Advantages of Employing Decalcified Milk in the Feeding of Infants and Invalids." *Lancet*, (1893), 2, 194; GONCE and TEMPLETON. (1930), *Amer. Journ. Dis. Child.*, 39, 265.

<sup>2</sup> BRENNEMANN. (1913), *Journ. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, 1, 575.

<sup>3</sup> *Amer. Journ. Physiol.* (1919), 48, 411.

produces large tough curds which remain a long time in the stomach.

(2) Raw milk produced rubber-like curd; milk, boiled 5 minutes, smaller and more digestible curds which leave the stomach earlier.

(3) Skimmed milk produces tough, hard curds; full milk softer curds and cream very soft curds. The last, however, leave the stomach but slowly.

(4) The addition of bicarbonate of soda produces smaller curds, not so small as those of boiled milk, and they stay longer in the stomach than those from untreated milk.

(5) Pasteurized milk is intermediate between raw and boiled milk.

(6) There is no observable difference between warm and cold milk as regards the size of curds formed and the rate of passage through the stomach.

One or two other points bearing on the digestibility of milk still remain to be mentioned. They specially affect its use in diseases of the stomach.

In the first place, it must be pointed out that, thanks to its protein phosphates and citrates, milk can act as a powerful buffering agent.<sup>1</sup> In some diseases of the stomach, such as ulceration, in which it is desirable to buffer the acidity of the gastric juice, this property of milk makes it a valuable article of diet. It has also been pointed out by Pavlov that, in proportion to the amount of nitrogen it contains, milk requires for its digestion a weaker gastric juice than any other food. Hence, the secretory work required of the stomach for its digestion is small, and this is another point in its favour in many diseased conditions of the stomach. The fat which milk contains also exerts a restraining influence on the amount of gastric juice secreted. Lastly, milk, like soup, and a few other articles of diet, seems to produce a secretion of gastric juice independently of reflex nervous influences. It is therefore as sure to be digested if poured into the stomach through a tube as if it had been swallowed in the ordinary way. This is by no means true of most foods.

#### ABSORPTION OF MILK

Leaving the stomach, the milk reaches the intestine, where its digestion is completed by the pancreatic juice. This juice acts very powerfully on milk—more so than the gastric juice. By reason of this provision there is no need to fear that milk will escape digestion, even if it be so prepared that it does not remain in the stomach, but rapidly passes through into the intestine.

The question next arises, Is the digested milk completely absorbed,

<sup>1</sup> Ten ml. of cow's milk can neutralize 4 ml. of decinormal sulphuric acid.

or does it leave behind any considerable amount of waste residue? This question may be approached by investigating the degree to which the different constituents of milk are absorbed when isolated and given alone. Proceeding in this way, it has been found that the casein of milk is the best absorbed of proteins.

It is absorbed as well as, or even rather better than, the protein of meat, whilst the fat of milk enters the blood quite as readily as the fat of beef. And one may note in passing the interesting fact that the fat of aerated milk is absorbed rather better than that of milk which has not been so treated. We are not aware of any experiments in which milk-sugar was given by itself, but it is usual to assume that it is completely absorbed.

Considering these facts, one would naturally expect to find that when milk was given as a whole it would be well absorbed. If the different components of it are so completely received into the blood, surely the whole of them given together will enter the blood with equal ease and completeness? But yet it is not so. Milk, *when given by itself as the exclusive diet of an adult*, is not very well absorbed—worse, indeed than any other animal food. Even under favourable conditions, only about 90 per cent. of the energy theoretically obtainable from milk is so obtained. The rest is lost as unabsorbed waste. Thus, if 2 litres of milk are taken daily, the loss of dry substance amounts to 5·7 to 7·8 per cent. On 3 litres the waste rises to 10·2 to 11·16 per cent. (Rubner). Prausnitz found a loss of 9 per cent. when 3 litres were consumed daily. One g. of dried milk ought to yield 5·733 Calories. Owing to defective absorption, it only yields in the body 5·067 Calories. The loss affects the proteins and fat about equally, and, in a notable degree, the inorganic constituents and carbohydrates as well.

These results apply only to the case of adults, and when milk is the sole food. When the milk forms part of a mixed diet it is much better absorbed. Thus, in an average of ten experiments given by Wait, in which milk was the exclusive food, only 92·1 per cent. of the protein and 86·3 per cent. of the carbohydrate were digested; but in five experiments in which the diet consisted of bread and milk the proportion digested rose to 97·1 per cent. of the protein and 98·7 per cent. of the carbohydrates. The large amount of water which milk contains seems to interfere with absorption when it forms the sole diet.<sup>1</sup>

It is an interesting and remarkable fact that milk is much better absorbed by young children than by grown-up persons.<sup>2</sup> Thus, even up to the age of 12 the loss of nitrogen, when milk is given alone, is only

<sup>1</sup> *Nutrition Investigations at the University of Tennessee*. U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. Bull. No. 53, p. 43.

<sup>2</sup> See RUBNER and HEUBER. (1898), *Zeit. f. Biologie*, 36, 1; UFFELMANN (quoted by Marcuse). (1896), *Pflüger's Archiv.*, 64, 223; CAMERER. (1880), *Zeit. f. Biologie*, 16, 493.

4.4 per cent., as compared with more than 11 per cent. in the adult.<sup>1</sup> In the case of babies absorption is even more complete, the difference being to a large extent due to a more perfect absorption of the inorganic constituents, the reason for which is the greater demand for calcium salts in the infant. This reacts favourably on the absorption of the fat of the milk, for unabsorbed calcium salts are apt to form insoluble soaps with the fat, and so hinder its absorption.

The *comparative absorption of boiled and unboiled milk* has been the subject of a good deal of experimental investigation. Taking the whole of the evidence, the conclusion seems to be justified, that just as boiling does not appreciably diminish the digestibility of milk in the stomach, so it does not to any important extent interfere with its absorption in the intestine. One need have no fear, therefore, that the great advantages of boiling are purchased at the cost of any noteworthy diminution of digestibility or absorption.<sup>2</sup>

Two other points relating to the behaviour of milk in the intestine call for mention. The first is that milk seems to be absorbed with less expenditure of energy—that is to say, with less wear and tear upon the part of the intestine, than any other food (Pavlov). This no doubt explains in part the great value of milk diet in many intestinal diseases.

The other point is that milk seems to exercise a restraining influence upon putrefactive processes in the intestine. The explanation of this, whether it is to be attributed to the casein or to the influence of acids produced from the milk-sugar, is still disputed, but of the fact there appears to be no doubt.

#### NUTRITIVE VALUE OF MILK

(It is frequently said that milk is a perfect food.) Now, this is an exaggeration. There is no such thing, except theoretically, as a perfect food. But milk does come very high on the list of all sound foods. A perfect food must supply first-class protein, highly assimilable fats and carbohydrates, all the "mineral" elements in their right proportions, and all the vitamins. All this it should do at a moderate cost and in reasonable bulk.

(Milk supplies first-class proteins) and the minimal day's ration is found in 1 quart—not an unreasonable quantity and costing 1s. 1d. Even at this high price per quart milk compares very favourably with meat.

(Its fats are highly assimilable and decrease the need for thiamine. Its carbohydrate, while not very assimilable, is none the less very useful in metabolism.)

<sup>1</sup> PRAUSNITZ. (1889), *Zeit. f. Biologie.*, 25, 533.

<sup>2</sup> Experiments on young rats (*Journ. Hygiene*, 1909, 9, 233) showed no diminution in the nutritive value of milk when boiled, or even when evaporated and dried.

Milk contains excellent supplies of calcium and phosphorus, but is deficient in iron. Of the vitamins, vitamin A, riboflavine and vitamin K are present in considerable amount; it is not devoid of thiamine, though its content of ascorbic acid and D are not worth considering.<sup>1</sup> No other food than eggs can be said to be so valuable as milk.

As sole food milk is too bulky, contains too little iron, and is not completely assimilable.)

We conclude, then, that milk is not a perfect food, but it is admirably fitted to supplement the deficiencies of other articles of diet. It is one of the cheaper sources of animal protein. One shillings'-worth of whole milk yields as much protein as one and sixpence worth of beef-steak. But milk has the advantage over beef of containing a considerable amount of carbohydrate in addition to its protein and fat, and a quart of good milk is equal in Calorie value to a pound of lean beef-steak. Skim milk is an even better source from which to supplement any lack of protein in the diet, for it supplies that constituent in a cheaper form than any other animal food except salt fish. Its great value in the dietary of persons to whom economy is of importance cannot be over-estimated. It is in carbohydrate that milk is specially deficient. Hence it should be used chiefly in conjunction with other foods rich in that ingredient. Such a food is bread. Bread and milk sufficient to give 1000 Calories costs approximately one-eighth of what a lunch to supply the same would cost at a cheap restaurant.

The claims of skim milk to be regarded as a valuable source of food are fully justified, and should be carefully considered by all who are responsible for drawing up an ample and economical dietary for large numbers of persons—such, for example, as the inmates of public institutions.

Unfortunately, the prevailing tendency is to regard milk as a beverage rather than as a food. This is a great mistake, in proof of which we cannot do better than quote Dr. Corry Mann's classical work on "Diets for Boys during the School Age."<sup>2</sup> This was an experiment, lasting in all three years, on the influence on growth in height and weight of a carefully selected and scientifically controlled group of English boys, between the ages of 7 and 11 years, of the addition, each day to their diet, of one pint of pasteurized and homogenized milk. A group of 41 boys in the first 12 months gained an average of 6.98 lb. per boy, and grew an average of 2.63 in. in contrast with the control figures of 3.85

<sup>1</sup> The cholesterol content of cow's milk—10 to 17 mg. per 100 ml.—gives it its antirachitic power on irradiation, which may be as much as 68 I.U. per pint. BICKNELL and PRESCOTT. (1953), *The Vitamins in Medicine*, 542.

<sup>2</sup> CORRY MANN. (1926), *Med. Res. Council Report*, No. 105; CHANEY. (1923), *Amer. Journ. Dis. Child.*, 26, 337; MORGAN, HATFIELD and TANNER. (1926), *ibid.*, 32, 837; MCCOLLUM, ORIENT-KEILES, and DAY. (1939). *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition* Fifth Edition.

lb. and 1.84 in. respectively. This increased rate of growth was no "flash in the pan" but was maintained even into the third year of the experiment. No other food added in control experiments produced anything like so great an increase, though it may be noted that the addition of New Zealand butter was distinctly advantageous.

Apart from the marked gain in weight and height there was a general improvement in their physical condition—a loss of tendency to chilblains, to roughness of skin, and to lordosis. "After eighteen months," the report states, "a casual visitor entering the dining-hall, where the boys of nineteen houses sit at table, would never fail to recognize the table of that house which was alone receiving the extra ration of milk, the boys of that house being obviously more fit than those of any other house. In addition they became far more high spirited and irrepressible, being often in trouble on that account. . . ."

"Furthermore, during the winter of 1923-4 there was complete absence of illness among the boys with the milk ration, although in other houses . . . the sickness rate had been somewhat higher than usual owing to naso-respiratory catarrh (influenza) and to a limited outbreak of measles and scarlatina."

Confirmatory experiments have been made time and again.<sup>1</sup> Separated milk (machine skimmed) was found to be quite as effective as whole milk, which confirms the high opinion of its value already expressed. In Widdowson and McCance's experiments on the different kinds of bread in feeding malnourished German children,<sup>2</sup> addition of milk made no difference to their rate of growth. This was unexpected and seems to show that the active factor in milk is calcium and not as we imagined the first-class protein. It will be remembered that the diets of these children were well fortified with calcium and vitamins A, ascorbic acid and D.

Milk as an article of diet in disease occupies a unique position. No single food, it may safely be said, is of so much value. The drawbacks to its exclusive use in health, which we pointed out above, are now of no account or are even converted into advantages. The use of milk in the dietary of different diseases will be considered in detail in a subsequent chapter, but some of its general properties may be mentioned here.

Being a fluid, it is easily swallowed. This is a great gain to exhausted patients. For the same reason the quantity given can be simply regulated and measured. Its fluid form also enables it to be used in place of other beverages and a glass of milk with each meal is one of the simplest prescriptions for increasing the amount of food a patient is

<sup>1</sup> For example, ORR. (1928), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, I, 140; (1929), *ibid.*, I, 161.

<sup>2</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M., and McCANCE, R. A. (1954), *Med. Res. Council Special Report Series*, No. 287.

taking. It is often recommended to people who require to be fattened.

The amount of water it contains makes milk a means of quenching thirst as well as of supplying food. It is therefore grateful to feverish patients.

Its bulk is no serious drawback in most illnesses. A patient at rest and warm in bed requires much less food than an active man and may even gain weight on 3 or 4 pints of milk per day, although more than twice that quantity may be requisite when up and about. In addition to this, concentrated foods are not so well borne in severe disease and a moderate degree of dilution is an advantage. Milk calls for less secretory effort and is more easily absorbed than any other food and this marks milk as a food of special value in gastro-intestinal disorders. To these advantages are added the facts that milk contains none of the "stimulating" substances found in meat and no purine bodies. From the earliest times (Hippocrates, Galen, and Celsus) milk has been regarded as a sovereign remedy. Amongst mediæval writers, Van Swieten and Hoffman recognized its great virtues, whilst its most strenuous advocate in more modern times was Karell,<sup>1</sup> who used it in the treatment of dropsy, asthma, neuralgias of intestinal origin, and cases of malnutrition. Donkin also did much to make its virtues known, while in later years it attained prominence as an important part of the Weir-Mitchell treatment.

It is alleged that a milk diet causes constipation, but this may be due to the patient's being in bed. It is almost certainly a diuretic, a thing to be remembered in feeding young children.

It must always be remembered that some people are unable to take milk since they are milk sensitive, and suffer from vomiting and diarrhœa if they drink it. Milk should never be forced on such patients. Others, however, dislike it, although it does not make them ill. It is possible to persuade these patients to drink it if the taste is disguised with tea, coffee, chocolate or cocoa, or if it is given in the form of a junket or with rice, etc., as a milk pudding. The milk can also be flavoured with pepper and salt as in bread sauce, and a pinch of salt added to a glass of milk is sometimes of value, but it is usually difficult to persuade these patients to take much milk by these methods.

### FOODS DERIVED FROM MILK

**Whey.** We have already learnt that *whey* is the fluid which exudes from clotted milk. It is best prepared by adding to 30 oz. of milk heated to 104° F. two teaspoonfuls of rennet, and setting aside in a warm place till clotting has occurred. The clot must then be broken up very thoroughly by stirring, and the whole strained through muslin.

<sup>1</sup> KARELL. (1866), *Edin. med. Journ.*, 12, 97.

About 22 oz. of whey should be obtained with (approximately) the following composition:

COMPOSITION OF WHEY				
Water	.	.	.	93.64 per cent.
Protein	.	.	.	0.82 "
Fat	.	.	.	0.24 "
Lactose	.	.	.	4.65 "
Mineral elements	.	.	.	0.65 "

A desiccated whey is made under the name of Secwa.<sup>1</sup> It contains all the constituents of whey in a sterile and soluble form, and is a very convenient and useful preparation.

Whey, as its composition indicates, is a fluid of but small nutritive value. It hardly ever enters into an ordinary diet, but is often an aid in the feeding of infants. It has slight laxative properties, and should be avoided when there is any tendency to diarrhoea.

The so-called *whey cure* is a means of treatment sometimes resorted to in cases of dyspepsia, especially when occurring in gross feeders ("abdominal plethora"). Its range of usefulness is much the same as that of the grape cure, and, as in it, large allowance must be made for the favourable influence of the open air and exercise which form a part of the régime. The quantity of whey consumed is at first limited to a tumblerful night and morning, but the amount is gradually increased until a maximum is reached of ten tumblerfuls per day. The only other foods allowed are vegetables and fruits.

It once was used in the treatment of typhoid fever and as its Calorie value is very small, this was responsible for the great loss of weight which occurred. Whey is little if ever used nowadays in the treatment of disease.

**Cream** consists essentially of the fat of milk. It would be a mistake, however, to suppose that it consists of that alone. It contains in addition protein and sugar in half the percentage in milk itself.<sup>2</sup> The main difference, indeed, between milk and cream is that in the latter some of the water of the milk has been replaced by fat.

The exact amount of fat in cream varies very much, the differences depending to a large extent on the method by which the cream has been separated. In 1951 the Minister of Food made an order prescribing minimum standards for cream. They are:

Cream, single cream, fruit cream and coffee cream	.	.	.	18 per cent.
Double or thick cream and clotted cream	.	.	.	48 "
Sterilized cream	.	.	.	23 "

<sup>1</sup> Casein, Ltd., Battersea, S.W.11.

<sup>2</sup> Cream contains about 1.8 per cent. of protein, 4.2 per cent. of fat, 2.4 per cent. of lactose, and 0.059 per cent. of calcium.

The well-known *Devonshire, Cornish or clotted cream* is a special variety prepared by heating the milk in deep pans, which causes a rapid and very complete separation of the fat. The proportion of fat in such cream is not far short of 60 per cent.

In a nutritional sense, cream is chiefly to be regarded as a fuel food. 1 oz. of double cream yields about 130 Calories, 457 per 100 ml. In sick-room feeding it is an important aid in increasing the calorie value of a diet, for it is very easily digested. Good cream (48 per cent.) contains as much fat as a similar quantity of most cod-liver oil emulsions, and is usually much preferred.

Cream, however, is by no means an economical source of fat. One and a half pints of it, do not contain more fat than 1 lb. of butter, and cost considerably more.<sup>1</sup> Cream, therefore, is to be regarded as a luxury.

*Ice-cream.* This substance, universally used in the United States in dietetics, is now making its way in this country. There was a strong prejudice against it in medical circles because of its questionable bacteriology, examples being quoted of ice-creams containing 2,000,000 coliform bacilli per ml.<sup>2</sup> Fortunately regulations have been made controlling the manufacture of ice-cream which should improve its quality.

With well-controlled manufacture there is no reason at all why a sound and nutritious ice-cream should not be on the market. What dietitians need is a standardized substance of known composition, but at present, if they want it, they must make it themselves.<sup>3</sup>

The Food Standards Committee suggested an interim standard<sup>4</sup> of 5 per cent. fat, 10 per cent. sugar and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. milk solids. The Calorie value of this is under 35 per oz., 123 per 100 g., a sorry figure compared with American productions: 63 Calories per oz., 222 per 100 g. British makers<sup>5</sup> aim at an 8 per cent. fat content and such an ice cream yields about 5 g. C., 1.25 g. P., 2.4 g. F., and 47 Calories per oz., 165 per 100 g. Dietitians should consider using ice-cream in this country. It has practically no satiety value, is a source of Calories and first-class protein, and is very useful in fevers and after operations on tonsils and alimentary tract.

Butter and margarine which certainly can be regarded as milk products are dealt with earlier under foods used for their energy value. Their content of protein, though first class, is negligible.

**Butter-milk.** This is the fluid left after the fat has been removed

<sup>1</sup> There are on the market cheap emulsifiers by means of which cream can be reconstituted in the home from salt free butter and milk. The product is much cheaper than "real" cream, and can hardly be distinguished from it.

<sup>2</sup> BARDSLEY. (1938), *Journ. Hygiene.*, 38, 527.

<sup>3</sup> One big dairy company puts up an ice-cream mix from which anyone with a refrigerator can make ice-cream of definite composition with very little trouble.

<sup>4</sup> *Lancet.* (1950), 2, 111.

<sup>5</sup> *Food Manufacture.* (1945), 20, 48.

from soured cream by churning. Its sourness is due to the presence of lactic acid, of which, however, it does not usually contain more than  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{3}$  per cent. Its general composition is shown in the following analyses:

COMPOSITION OF BUTTER-MILK		
Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrate.
1. 3.0	0.5	4.8 Atwater
2. 2.37	0.4	3.79 Dunlop
3. 3.7	0.7	3.7 Schall

The chief point in which it differs from milk is its poverty in fat, in which respect it resembles skimmed milk. The loss of milk sugar by the formation of lactic acid is too small to be of any significance.

Butter-milk is very easily digested, owing to the absence of fat and to the fact that its casein is present in a finely flocculent form.

Its nutritive value is considerable, an ordinary glassful yielding about as many Calories as 2 oz. of bread. It is as a cheap source of protein, however, that butter-milk is chiefly deserving of notice. In respect of this constituent, it is not one whit inferior to ordinary milk, and yet butter-milk is usually thrown out to the pigs. There can be no question that there is here a great waste of a very valuable food. When used in large quantities, butter-milk has diuretic properties which may be a slight disadvantage in health, but would rather enhance its value than otherwise in many cases of disease.

#### SOURD MILKS: KEPHIR, KOUMISS, ETC.

The preparation of these milks is dealt with elsewhere and a more detailed account will be found in an earlier edition. Apparently little interest has been taken in these commodities for years in the analytical world. We append analyses as quoted in earlier editions and in Schall.

	Protein.	Fat.	Lactose.	Alcohol	Mineral Elements.	Lactic Acid.
Koumiss (Rubner)	2.2	2.1	1.5	1.7	0.9	0.9
Kephir (Rubner)	3.1	2.0	1.6	2.1	0.8	0.8
Butter-milk (Rubner)	3.8	1.2	3.3	nil	0.6	0.3
Yoghurt (Schall)	3.3	2.8	3.1	nil	not given	0.8

These substances are reputed to be more digestible than the respective milks from which they arise. The caseinogen is in a fine flocculent form. The carbon dioxide in the fermented drinks (Koumiss and Kephir) is supposed to break up the curd in the stomach. The alcohol is not

enough to cause more than a mild hilarity, with no subsequent headache. And the taste is pleasant to those with a conditioned reflex for it.

There can be no harm in taking it and though we know of no recent instance in which its use has proved of advantage it has been recommended as of value in "all conditions of impaired nutrition, in continued fevers and in convalescence. It may also be used . . . in chronic catarrh of the stomach or bowels, in cases of hepatic cirrhosis, and in renal disease. It is often better borne in vomiting than any other form of food and has been recommended in delirium tremens."<sup>1</sup>

### CASEIN PREPARATIONS

In practical dietetics, the want of a tasteless, compact, easily digested and moderately cheap preparation of pure protein is often felt. Caseinogen is admirably adapted to meet these requirements, and has now been separated from milk and introduced as a dietetic preparation on its own account. Casilan, a calcium caseinogenate with 90 per cent. protein, is such a preparation. It is soluble and useful in planning a sodium low diet. It is digested with ease and absorbed almost in its entirety, and is capable, if necessary, of replacing all other forms of protein in the diet. Added to this, caseinogen presents some special advantages not possessed by other varieties of protein. For one thing, it is readily capable of "fixing" acids, and so neutralizing them. The power of caseinogen in this respect is three times greater than that of an equal weight of beef. This property gives it special advantages in those cases of dyspepsia in which too much acid is being poured into the stomach.

Caseinogen is a phosphoprotein, which contains all the essential amino acids though its content of cystine is low. It is easily digested and absorbed and it forms no clot in the stomach. Its main defect is that it contains but little calcium, though much phosphorus, for it is usually prepared by acid precipitation and not by rennin.

It is as a means of enriching the diet in protein, rather than as sources of energy, that these preparations are specially valuable. Roughly speaking, one may say that one part of them is equal as a source of protein to four parts of meat. Their tastelessness and solubility enable them to be added to other foods, such as soups, milk puddings, cocoa and jellies, raising greatly their nutritive value, and without the patient's being aware that any such addition has been made. In many cases of illness, and especially, perhaps, in fevers, they increase very considerably our dietetic resources, and have taken an important place in treatment. They are superior to meat preparations as condensed forms of protein.

<sup>1</sup> *Food and the Principles of Dietetics*. Eighth Edition.

There are various preparations of caseinogen combined with glycerophosphate of sodium on the market (Sanatogen, Kemposan, Nervogen). In virtue of their caseinogen these have the same nutritive value as the other preparations considered above. The organic phosphorus in them appears to be fully assimilated. It may be doubted, however, that they have a "specific tonic effect on the nervous system."

## CHEESE

There are at least 400 varieties of cheeses. They have this in common: they contain the casein, some or all of the fat, the vitamin A, the calcium and phosphorus and some of the thiamine and riboflavine of the milk from which they are made. The majority are made from cows' milk, but some are from goats' and ewes' milk. Cheese is a mode of preserving much of the food value of milk in a condensed form for long after the milk from which they are made would be unfit for consumption. For example, Cheshire cheese is at its best about a year after it is made. Because of the strong flavours developed in cheeses under the influence of bacteria and moulds, cheese is often regarded more as a condiment than as a staple food, but this is to be deprecated. Cheese is one of the most valuable foods there is and is a most convenient way of spreading the excess of milk in early summer in a concentrated form over the whole year.

It is prepared mainly in two ways. Milk, with or without pasteurization, is directly treated with rennet to produce a clot, or the milk may first be soured by means of a culture of bacteria after pasteurization and then clotted with rennet. The first way produces a sweet curd and the second an acid curd. Cheeses from an acid curd have much better keeping qualities. Stilton is an example of sweet curd cheese, and Cheddar and Roquefort of acid curd cheeses.

Instead of using a culture, the milk may be allowed spontaneously to sour or acids added to bring down the caseinogen. In all cases the casein clot or caseinogen curd entangles the fat. The milk may be enriched by the addition of cream (Stilton) or it may first be skimmed, in which case the fat content of the cheese will be low and the protein percentage increased (Dutch and German cheeses). So even at the first stage of cheese-making individual variations of the finished product are instituted. Where cultures are used it is important to control the nature of the bacteria they contain—usually *streptococci lactis* or *cremoris*—for they are susceptible to invasion by bacteriophage, which slows the production of acid and this effects a loss of keeping quality and flavour.

After the clot has fully formed it is cut with special knives. This liberates the whey from the curd, and the mass may be both stirred

and warmed, allowed to settle and the whey run off. The curd is eventually ground in a mill, salted and put into moulds. The remainder of the whey may be squeezed out under pressure. This produces a *hard cheese*, e.g. Caerphilly, Cheddar, Cheshire, Gloucester, Parmesan. But where the whey drains out under the natural weight of the curd, a soft cheese results, e.g. Camembert, Gorgonzola and Stilton. The soft cheeses do not keep well and are intended for early consumption, the hard cheeses are at their best in the course of a year. The soft cheeses are of an open texture and moulds from the air make their way into the interior (Stilton, Blue Vinny, Roquefort and Gorgonzola). This is often aided, even with Stilton, by pricking the cheese, e.g. Roquefort. The amount of salt, the time at which it is added and the date of pricking also determine the rate and mode of ripening and the differences between Roquefort and Danish Blue on the one hand and Stilton and Gorgonzola on the other. From the lactic acid present in the curds and from the fat, volatile fatty acids are formed (acetic, propionic, butyric and caproic), and also from the fat higher non-volatile fatty acids. These help to determine the flavour. Sharpness is due to acetic and propionic compounds, cheesiness to butyric and valeric compounds and pungency to caprioc, caprylic and capric bodies. Moreover, there is degradation of the protein, with ammonia production, which adds to the flavour of the cheese. In view of the varied nature of the processes by which cheese is made and the complexity of the biological and chemical reactions within the cheese as it ripens, we can understand the reason why there is such an infinite variety of cheeses and why even cheeses of one type vary so much one from another.<sup>1</sup>

The value of cheese in nutrition is judged by its content of protein, fat, calcium, phosphorus and vitamin A. The following analyses are taken from McCance and Widdowson:<sup>2</sup>

PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF CHEESES

	Protein	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Phos- phorus.	Calories per oz.	Calories per 100 g.
	g.	g.		mg.	mg.	mg.		
Cheddar . . . . .	24.9	34.5	trace	810	0.57	545	120	422
Cream (home-made) . . . . .	3.2	86.0	"	29.6	0.14	44	232	816
Dutch . . . . .	28.1	16.8	"	900	0.78	478	77	271
Gorgonzola . . . . .	24.8	31.1	"	540	0.50	375	112	391
Gruyère . . . . .	36.8	33.4	"	1080	0.26	698	131	461
"Packet" . . . . .	22.5	30.1	"	724	0.57	480	106	372
Parmesan . . . . .	34.4	29.7	"	1220	0.37	772	118	415
St. Ivel . . . . .	23.1	30.5	"	483	0.72	375	108	380
Stilton . . . . .	25.1	40.0	"	862	0.46	304	135	475

<sup>1</sup> For the technology, bacteriology and flavour of cheeses a number of papers given to the Food Group of the Society of Chemical Industry should be consulted. KAY. (1941), *Chem. and Ind.*, 60, 411; HISCOX. (1941), *ibid.*, 60, 563; MEANWELL. (1943), *ibid.*, 62, 73; WAYGOOD. (1943), *ibid.*, 62, 59.

<sup>2</sup> *Chemical Composition of Foods*. (1942), Med. Res. Council Special Report, No. 235. Third Edition.

The vitamin A potency of "cheese" (i.e. Cheddar type) is given by the Medical Research Council as 1300 I.U. per 100 g., the thiamine as 30  $\mu$ g. (or 10 I.U.) and riboflavine as 500  $\mu$ g. These are average figures and vary with the source of the milk and the time of the year. Kay,<sup>1</sup> comparing Cheshire cheese made from winter milk with that from summer milk, showed that the former gave only about 700 I.U. vitamin A activity per 100 g. while the summer milk cheese yielded approximately 1500 I.U. The relatively high amounts of riboflavine which he found in winter and summer milk cheese (280  $\mu$ g. and 350  $\mu$ g. respectively) must be due to a combination of protein with the riboflavine. The low figures for calcium and phosphorus in Stilton cheese are due to the removal of those substances by the lactic acid of the whey which is allowed to bathe the curd for a long time. A large proportion of the calcium and phosphorus of Stilton migrates to the crust, is deposited there, and when the cheese is eaten is thrown away with the crust.

**Digestibility.** The infiltration of cheese with fat must always render it an article of diet not easily dealt with by the stomach, for the fat forms a waterproof coating, which prevents the access of the digestive juices to the casein.

The larger the lumps of cheese which reach the stomach, the slower will this access be. Hence the importance of chewing the cheese thoroughly before it is swallowed. Now, it is more easy to pulverize a hard morsel than a soft one, for the latter always tends to elude the teeth. For this reason, a piece of hard, dry cheese is more easily digested than a soft and moist piece. A better plan, however, is to break up the cheese before it is eaten. This may be done by grating, and so successful is this that it can be given in this form to infants of nine months of age.

A possible reason for its reputed indigestibility is that it is taken at the end of a meal and its strong odour flavours any subsequent eructations. Any other highly flavoured food would do the same.

It is only in the stomach that the difficulty of digesting cheese occurs; once in the intestine, it is absorbed very thoroughly, over 90 per cent. of the protein being retained in the body, and nearly 90 per cent. of the energy it contains being "available".<sup>2</sup>

**Nutritive Value.** Of the high nutritive value of cheese there can be no doubt. It is just what would be expected when one remembers that a pound of, say, Cheddar cheese represents the total casein and vitamin A, most of the fat and calcium, and a quarter of the riboflavine in a gallon of milk, or 2 oz. cheese results from 1 pint of milk.

The average amount of moisture which cheese contains is 33 per cent., the remainder being made up of protein and fat in varying, but on the whole fairly equal, proportions. The amount of water in

<sup>1</sup> KAY, (1941), *Chem. and Ind.*, 60, 411.

<sup>2</sup> U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. *Farmers' Bull.*, No. 487.

moderately lean beef is about 73 per cent., the remainder being also made up of protein and fat, the former usually predominating.

Beef, then, contains less than half as much nutriment as the same weight of cheese. It has been calculated that a cheese of 20 lb. contains as much nutriment as a sheep's carcass of 60 lb. Moreover, cheese is almost the best source of calcium and phosphorus. A vegetarian who took all his animal protein as milk and cheese had the large amount of 2 g. of calcium per day in his diet.<sup>1</sup>

An appeal to the standard of the Calorie gives the same verdict. A pound of cheese yields nearly 2000 Calories of energy, which is more than three times the amount yielded by a pound of moderately lean beef. Furthermore, a pound of cheese can be obtained at about one quarter of the cost of 3 lb. of beef, which is its nutritive equivalent, and therefore it is at once evident that cheese is a substitute for meat which should be of the greatest value in poor households.

But if cheese is thus to become a cheap substitute for meat, it is of the greatest importance what variety of cheese is bought. For it is true of cheese in an even greater degree than of most other foods, that in buying it we pay for flavour, not for food value. In the 9th edition this point was driven home by the calculation of the cost per unit of nutriment obtained from different cheese. In 1939 the cost ranged from 1s. 4½d. for "American" Cheddar to 4s. 2d. for St. Ivel. The range to-day is even greater. This high price for flavour and convenience is particularly marked in the cheese labelled "packet" cheese in the table given above. These cheeses are usually manufactured from matured cheeses of the Cheddar type which have been milled, melted and mixed with milk and the whole pasteurized. They have an individual flavour, constant texture and remarkable keeping quality.

Finally, the biological value of the protein in cheese is high, though not as high as that of the mixed proteins of milk. Henry and Kon<sup>2</sup> obtained by the method of Mitchell a biological value of 75·6 for the proteins of Cheddar cheese and demonstrated a marked supplementary relationship between them and those of white bread. But to show that supplementary action they must be taken together—as indeed is the usual custom!—and not separated by 24 hours. Moreover, the proteins of cheese contain valuable amounts of the important amino acid, methionine.

Cheese, then, is a food the consumption of which is to be encouraged, not as a condiment or savoury at the end of a meal, but as a *pièce de résistance*. It is portable, compact and highly nutritious. 4 oz. cheese, 8 oz. of bread and 2 oz. watercress form an almost nutritionally complete meal. Only vitamin D is missing, though its precursor, cholesterol,

<sup>1</sup> WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1936), *Journ. Hygiene*, 36, 269.

<sup>2</sup> HENRY and KON. (1942), *Chem. and Ind.*, 61, 97.

is present. Such a meal yields 1000 Calories. During the war of 1939-45 the agricultural labourer was allowed a ration twice or more as large as the normal individual—a welcome recognition by the Ministry of Food of its value in diet. Oddly enough, taste varies markedly in different parts of the country and in different strata of society. The Welsh miner, for example, readily consumes cheese, but the Durham miner will not touch it. There is room for propaganda in favour of cheese.

### FISH<sup>1</sup>

**Chemical Composition.**—Protein and fat are the chief nutritive constituents found in fish. According to the relative proportions of these ingredients present, fish may be conveniently divided into two groups of "fat" and "lean."

The fat fish have considerable amounts of fat in their flesh, say from 10 per cent. upwards. They are bloaters, eel, herring, kippers, salmon, sardines, sprats and whitebait. The lean fish have almost negligible amounts of fat, say about 1 per cent. or under. They are cod, flounder, haddock, John Dory, lemon sole, ling, megrim, monkfish, plaice, pollack, saithe, sole, stockfish, turbot and witch. It is true that there are some with intermediate amounts, such as bass, bream, brill, catfish, gurnet, hake, halibut, mackerel, mullet, pollan, sturgeon and trout, but the amount of fat is rarely as high as that of lean meat.

Analyses of some of the commoner varieties are here given:

PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF FISH (RAW) (Plimmer)

	Protein.	Fat.	Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
Cod	14.6	0.1	60	17
Eel	8.7	15.1	176	50
Haddock	12.0	0.2	58	14
Herring	14.6	8.8	141	40
Mackerel	11.0	6.2	102	29
Plaice	7.7	0.7	39	11
Salmon	14.7	12.5	176	50
Smelt	11.3	1.6	60	17
Sole	13.0	1.3	67	19
Turbot	8.8	1.3	43	12
Whiting	11.3	0.1	43	12

<sup>1</sup> In preparing this section the writers have derived much help from the following publications: ATWATER, W. ●. (1891), *The Chemical Composition and Nutritive Values of Food Fishes and Aquatic Vertebrates*, Washington (abstract from Report of U.S. Commissioner of Fish and Fisheries, 1888); LANGWORTHY, C. F. (1898), *Fish as Food*, U.S. Dept of Agriculture, Farmers' Bull. 85; McCANCE, R. A., and SHIPP, H. L. (1933), *The Chemistry of Flesh Foods and their losses on Cooking*, Med. Res. Council Special Reports, No. 187; McCANCE and WIDDOWSON. (1942), *The Chemical Composition of Foods*, Med. Res. Council Special Reports, No. 235, 3rd edn.

When steamed or boiled there is a considerable concentration of nutrient material, for the protein shrinks in volume and squeezes out water. This is evident from the following table based on McCance and Shipp,<sup>1</sup> though the figures are not quite comparable, being obtained by different methods and from materials from a different part of Great Britain.

#### ✓ ANALYSIS OF FLESH OF COOKED FISH

	Pro- tein.	Fat.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Phos- phorus	Calories per 100 g.	Cal- ories per oz.
	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	mg.		
Cod, steamed . . .	18.0	0.9	14.6	0.5	242	81	23
Eel, stewed . . .	11.0	18.1	41.7	1.2	137	211	60
Haddock, steamed . . .	22.0	0.8	54.6	0.7	234	95	28
Halibut . . .	22.7	4.0	13.0	0.6	255	130	37
Herring, baked . . .	16.9	12.9	58.2	1.6	326	190	54
Plaice, steamed . . .	18.1	1.9	37.7	0.6	246	92	26
Salmon, „ . . .	19.1	13.0	28.9	0.8	302	202	57
Sole, „ . . .	17.6	1.3	113.0	0.7	270	84	24
Turbot, „ . . .	20.7	1.6	13.5	0.5	188	95	28
Whiting, „ . . .	19.9	0.9	42.0	1.0	189	92	26

#### PRESERVED FISH, AS PURCHASED

	g. per 100 g.		mg. per 100 g.		Cal- ories per 100 g.	Cal- ories per oz.
	Pro- tein.	Fat.	Cal- cium.	Iron.		
Bloater . . .	12.6	10.5	84	1.4	144	41
Cod, hard, dried . . .	27.3	1.0	43	1.6	120	34
Haddock, smoked . . .	9.9	0.3	47	0.6	42	12
Kipper . . .	11.4	16.0	72	1.2	130	37

#### PRESERVED FISH, AS SERVED

	Protein.	Fat.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Phos- phorus.	Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
Bloater, grilled . . .	22.6	17.4	123.0	2.2	355	257	73
Cod, dried, soaked 24 hours and boiled . . .	32.0	0.9	22.4	1.8	163	141	40
Haddock, smoked, steamed . . .	22.3	0.9	57.5	1.0	248	95	28
Kipper . . .	23.2	11.4	64.8	1.4	426	200	57
Salmon, tinned . . .	19.7	6.0	66.4	1.3	285	137	39
Sardines „ . . .	20.4	22.6	409.0	4.3	683	296	84

<sup>1</sup> *op. cit.*

The points in the composition of fish deserving of comment are these:

1. There is a large amount of waste, in the form of bones, skin, etc. As sold, the waste may be as much as 70 per cent., while even in fish as served at table it may be 35 per cent. This increases its cost in transport when compared with meat.
2. Fish, especially the leaner varieties, have a high water content—considerably more than lean meat.
3. Fish contains more gelatin than meat, and this is largely lost when fish is boiled—a reason why this method of cooking is by no means advantageous.
4. Fish is poor in extractives and lacks flavour compared with meat, and so a fish diet is apt to prove monotonous.
5. The Calorie value of fish is low, except in the fat fish.
6. Fish is a good source of protein, though not so good as meat or cheese.
7. With the exception of sole and of those fish in which it is impossible not to eat some of the bones (bloaters, herring, kippers, sardines, sprats and whitebait), fish is a poor source of calcium, though an excellent source of phosphorus.
8. Their content of purine bodies run as high as, or higher than, those of meat.

In spite of these drawbacks, when compared with meat, it forms a valuable addition to our diet, and it is absurd that, with the methods of refrigeration at our disposal and the excellent fishing grounds near the coasts of the British Isles, such a source of good protein should be so difficult to obtain in most inland parts of this country. Moreover, fish is one of the best sources known of nicotinic acid, and the fat fish are a good source of vitamins A and D. Herrings and herring roes are the cheapest source of animal protein, and it should be the task of dietitians to stimulate a demand for fish and of enterprising firms to put fish on the market in a fresh condition. Fortunately the conditions for preserving the good qualities of fish have been worked out by the Torrey Research Association. Fish after six days' storage in an ordinary ship are stale and after twelve days when stored in ice. If fish are frozen in iced brine at  $-4^{\circ}\text{F.}$  and kept at that temperature they are still good after six months. White fish frozen at  $-22^{\circ}\text{F.}$ , while still in *rigor mortis*, are more satisfactory at the end of eight months than most of the fish now sold on the open market. Herrings, if brought to freezing plants *on shore* while still fresh, can be stored there many months and then kippered or packed, obviating the difficulty of gluts. Finally, fish can be dehydrated and, when packed in containers filled with nitrogen, remain good for a year. The presentation of satisfactory

fish and fish products to the public is a question of organization and capital.<sup>1</sup>

**Digestibility of Fish.** The white or lean fish are reputed to be digestible, whereas the fat fish are not. There is no doubt that they are easy to chew, have but very short bundles or muscle fibres and when cooked fall easily to pieces. They are consequently used in the diet of the very young, the very old, the dyspeptic, and the convalescent.

None the less, experiment is not so very much in favour of their extreme digestibility. Hawk, Rehfuß, and Bergeim in 75 observations on the normal human stomach find that while fish evoke a slightly greater flow of acid they leave the stomach but slightly faster than beef and beef products.<sup>2</sup> For the present we must rely more on clinical observation than upon scientific experiment. It is strongly in favour of the digestibility of the white fish. Cod seems to be an exception, having a coarse fibre, and its comparative indigestibility, as found by Chittenden and Cummins, is by no means in contradiction with actual experience (Pavy). The slow solution of salt fish is fully explained by the hardening of the fibres which salting produces.

The *absorption of fresh and smoked fish in the intestine* takes place quite as well as that of meat, about 95 per cent. of the total solids, 97 per cent. of the protein, and 90 per cent. of the fat entering the blood (Langworthy). Salted and dried fish are not quite so well absorbed.<sup>3</sup>

**Nutritive Value of Fish.** The value of fish as a source of energy depends entirely on the amount of fat which it contains. The fat fish, such as salmon, are fully equal to moderately fat meat in this respect, while the lean fish, owing both to the absence of fat and the presence of more water, are of considerably lower nutritive value. It may be reckoned that 2 lb. of cod or other white fish are only equal in nutritive value to 1 lb. of lean beef.

Fish can, however, be made to take up a considerable amount of fat in the process of cooking and so have its nutritive value greatly increased. This is shown in the following table:

AVERAGE PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF EDIBLE PORTIONS OF 15 ASSORTED WHITE FISH (1) STEAMED AND (2) FRIED IN BATTER and BREADCRUMBS (McCANCE AND SHIPP)

	Water.	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Calorie Value per 100 g.	per oz.
(1) Steamed	75.4	22.4	1.38	0.0	115	32.6
(2) Fried	61.5	19.3	11.9	6.4	216	61.4

<sup>1</sup> See *The Problem of Supply of Sea Fish in an Industrialized Country*. (1944), *Food Manufacture*, 19, 347; and SHEWAN. (1945), *Chem. and Ind.*, 98. REAY, G. A. (1949), *Chem. and Ind.*, 35; *Food Man.* (1950), 25, 266.

<sup>2</sup> *Amer. Journ. med Sci.* (1926), 171, 359.

<sup>3</sup> SLOWTZOFF. (1910), *Zeit. f. Physik. und diät. Therapie*, 15, 22.

As a source of building material, fish is somewhat inferior to lean meat, owing to the smaller amount of protein which it contains. This statement applies more strongly to lean fish than to the fatter varieties. Owing to this smaller proportion of protein, and in part also, in all probability, to its lesser richness in extractives, fish seems to be a less stimulating food than meat. For the same reasons, white fish may sometimes be used with advantage instead of meat by sedentary persons, and in hot weather.

Two special qualities are erroneously attributed to a fish diet by popular fancy. We refer to the beliefs (1) that fish is specially valuable as a "brain food," (2) that it possesses aphrodisiac qualities. The false bases for these beliefs are dealt with in earlier editions of this work.

**Economic Value of Fish.** The market-price of fish is no indication of true economic value. Although such fishes as haddock and sole are of practically the same nutritive value, yet the price of the latter may be three times that of the former. On the other hand, it by no means follows that none of the dearer varieties of fish is worth the money. Salmon, for example, yields three times as many Calories as an equal weight of cod, and thus a pound of the former at 7s. may not really be any dearer than a pound of cod at 2s. 2d. The amount of waste in fish is also of great importance from the economic point of view. We have seen that the inedible parts of fish as purchased may amount in some cases to as much as 70 per cent. of the whole, and allowance must be made for this in calculating the real cost. For this reason it may be worth while to pay a rather high price for canned fish, for in these preparations almost the whole of the material paid for is in an edible form. It is a matter for exact calculation.

As a general rule, it may be said that the cheaper varieties of the fat fishes offer most nutriment for any given sum. Salted white fish probably rank next to these. An average herring contains about 15 g. of edible protein ( $\frac{1}{2}$  oz.) and from 5 to 10 g. of fat, and it has been remarked that the despised bloater "offers the largest amount of nutriment for a given sum of any animal food,"<sup>1</sup> and three salt herrings contain as much animal protein as need enter the daily dietary of an ordinary working man.

The justice of these remarks is borne out by the calculations which appear in the table on p. 354.

The relative cheapness of cod, haddock, and herrings for protein and of herrings for Calories will be manifest; otherwise fish are moderate to expensive for protein and extravagant for Calories.

Of the offal of fish we eat only the roe (usually called "hard roe")

<sup>1</sup> This is not quite true. Fresh herring and herring roes run a neck and neck race with Australian and New Zealand cheese in peacetime for cheap animal protein.

COMPARATIVE COSTS OF PROTEIN AND ENERGY AS FURNISHED BY  
DIFFERENT KINDS OF FISH

	Cost per lb. <sup>1</sup>	Cost per Ration of First-class Protein. <sup>1</sup>	Cost per 1,000 Calories. <sup>2</sup>
	s. d.	s. d.	£ s. d.
Cod (section	2 2	1 2½	7 10½
Haddock (fresh)	2 8	1 9½	11 5½
Halibut	6 0	3 8	1 5 8
Herrings	1 2	8½	1 9½
Salmon	7 0	3 11	8 9
Soles	4 0	3 3½	13 3½
Turbot	5 0	5 4½	1 2 11

and the milt ("soft roe"). The hard roe of the sturgeon when salted is known as caviare. The percentage composition of hard roe is as follows:

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrates.	Calcium.	Iron.	Calories.
	g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	
Caviare	30.1	19.7	0	0	0	337
Cod roe	20.0	2.0	0	15	1.0	98
Herring roe	24.0	3.0	0	15	1.0	123

Naturally there is much purine in hard roes, and consequently they are contra-indicated in gout.

The *milt* or soft roe, of which herring roe is the one on the market, has a similar composition though considerably more protein (31 per cent.). Purine again is high.

The lobster, crab, and other crustaceans, the molluscs, such as the oyster and mussel, and the turtle and frog amongst reptiles and amphibians, may conveniently be considered at this point.

The *lobster and crab* both consist of two distinct parts: the flesh, which is contained in the claws and tail; and the body, which is mainly made up of liver. The flesh is, apart from water, mainly protein. The body has even more water (84 per cent.). Analysis of the whole lobster shows 20 per cent. protein, 4.0 fat, 2.0 carbohydrate (glycogen), Calcium 45 mg. per 100 g., iron 1 mg. Calories 124. These figures are for the edible portion, but as the wastage is 55 per cent. all these figures must be reduced by multiplying by 0.55.

The composition of the crab and the prawn is practically the same.

The flesh of the lobster and crab is rather indigestible, mainly on account of the density and coarseness of the fibres and the thickness of their walls. The body of these animals is also prone to disagree, because

<sup>1</sup> These are 1955 prices at a high-class store. The figures will have to be recalculated with each change in price. It is unlikely, however, that the relative positions will change greatly, though the actual figures undoubtedly will.

<sup>2</sup> Calculated on Plimmer's Analyses.

a number of unfortunate people are "sensitive" to their proteins and develop allergic diseases after eating them.

The *oyster* is the most typical and popular of the molluscs. Chemically it contains protein, fat and carbohydrate, but very little of the two latter. They also contain iodine, iron and copper. The carbohydrate is there as glycogen, as, indeed in all the shell-fish.

Oysters are easily digested but it must be confessed that one obtains very little food for one's money. A dozen oysters contain only about 5 g. protein, so the stories of enormous quantities being eaten at a sitting are probably true. No longer do oysters and poverty go together as in Dickens' days. They are now an extravagant food, for a day's ration of first class protein in the form of oysters is a millionaire's luxury.

Oysters can easily become contaminated with typhoid microbes and spread the disease. Their natural habitat in Europe is the estuaries, and so they come in contact with sewage. Modern English oyster beds are very carefully inspected and kept free from contamination.

Percentage analyses of the molluscs used for food are as follows:

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrate.	Calcium.	Iron.	Calories
	g.	g.	g.	mg.	g.	per 100 g.
Cockles	11.0	0.5	6.0	125	26.0	73
Mussels	12.6	2.0	2.0	90	6.0	74
Oysters	10.0	2.0	6.0	185	6.0	82
Scallops	18.0	2.0	0	115	3.0	81
Whelks	18.0	2.0	2.0	55	6.0	98
Winkles	15.0	1.0	5.0	135	15.0	89

The remarkable thing about these analyses is the large amounts of calcium and iron, but because the wastage (shells) of these sea foods is over 60 per cent. one would have to eat more than a pound of winkles to get 15 mg. of iron! Shell fish cannot be considered important articles of diet, moreover many people are allergic to them and develop urticaria, vomiting and diarrhoea after eating them.

The *green turtle* is almost the only reptile used for food in this country, and that chiefly in the form of soup. It is called green because its "fat" has a greenish colour, which, according to Sir Hans Sloane, imparts a yellow tint to the sweat of those who partake largely of it. In preparing the soup, the dorsal and ventral shields are removed, scalded to remove the scales, and then boiled till the bones separate. The liquor forms the stock. The softer parts of the shield are then cut into oblong pieces, which constitute the so-called lumps of green "fat"—really a species of cartilage. Sun-dried turtle forms a soup of equal nutritive value, and at a considerably lower cost, while the basis of mock-turtle is the gelatinous substance in the scalp of the calf. From a strictly nutritive point of view, turtle soup is certainly not worth a tenth of the price paid for it.

*Frogs' legs* are but rarely seen in this country, though common articles of diet on the Continent and in the United States. They are derived from the large edible frog (*Rana esculenta*), and, though easily digested and of a delicate flavour, are not of high nutritive value.

The average percentage chemical composition of turtle and frogs' legs is, according to Langworthy:

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrate.	Mineral elements.	Waste.
Turtle	4.2	0.7	—	0.2	77.5
Frogs' legs	10.2	0.1	—	0.7	32.0

## MEAT

Most of what we call meat is muscle—the muscles of the animal killed, which enabled it to “move and have its being.” Even tripe is mainly muscle, and so is the edible portion of heart, though brain, liver and kidneys, of course, are not. This is no ground for believing that meat is especially good for the manufacture of human muscle though the distribution and relative amounts of amino acids in its proteins are very like those of human muscle.

**Physical Structure.** We may look first at the physical structure or architecture of meat (Figs. 15a. and b.). If one examines a piece of boiled meat, it will be found that it can easily be torn into a number of long, stringy fibres. On microscopic examination, these are found to be made up in their turn of bundles of microscopic tubes, known to the histologist as muscle fibres. The bundles of fibres vary in length in different kinds of meat. Sometimes they are short, as in the breast of a chicken; at other times they are much longer, as in the leg of a crab; and the shorter they are, the more tender and easily digested the meat is. Meat should be cut or carved at right angles to the long axis of the fibres. It is then more easily chewed, and, the contents of the tubes being exposed, the flavour is increased, while the action of the digestive juices is facilitated.

The walls of the tubes consist of a protein substance (elastin), while the connective tissue which holds together the fibres is chiefly composed of a material called “collagen,” which yields gelatin on boiling. The older an animal is, and the more work its muscles have had to perform, the denser is the connective tissue and the thicker the walls of the tubes. The latter fact was long ago pointed out by Dr. Kitchiner in his *Cook's Oracle*. “That exercise produces strength and firmness of fibre,” he says, “is excellently well exemplified in the woodcock and partridge. The former flies most, the latter walks; the wing of the woodcock is always very tough, of the partridge very tender; hence the old doggerel distich:

If the Partridge had but the Woodcock's thigh,  
He'd be the best bird that e'er doth fly.”

Embedded in the connective tissue between the fibres is a variable amount of fat. Sometimes it is almost entirely absent—e.g. in most forms of game and in the breast of the chicken; at other times the amount of fat so placed is quite abundant. This is the case in pork, in highly-fattened beef or mutton, and in swimming birds, such as the duck and goose, which require a large store of fat, both to lighten the body and as a source of heat. A large amount of fat tends to diminish the digestibility of meat, apparently by forming a sort of waterproof coating around the fibres and hindering their solution by the gastric juice, and it is notorious that pork, duck, and goose are rather indigestible forms of flesh.

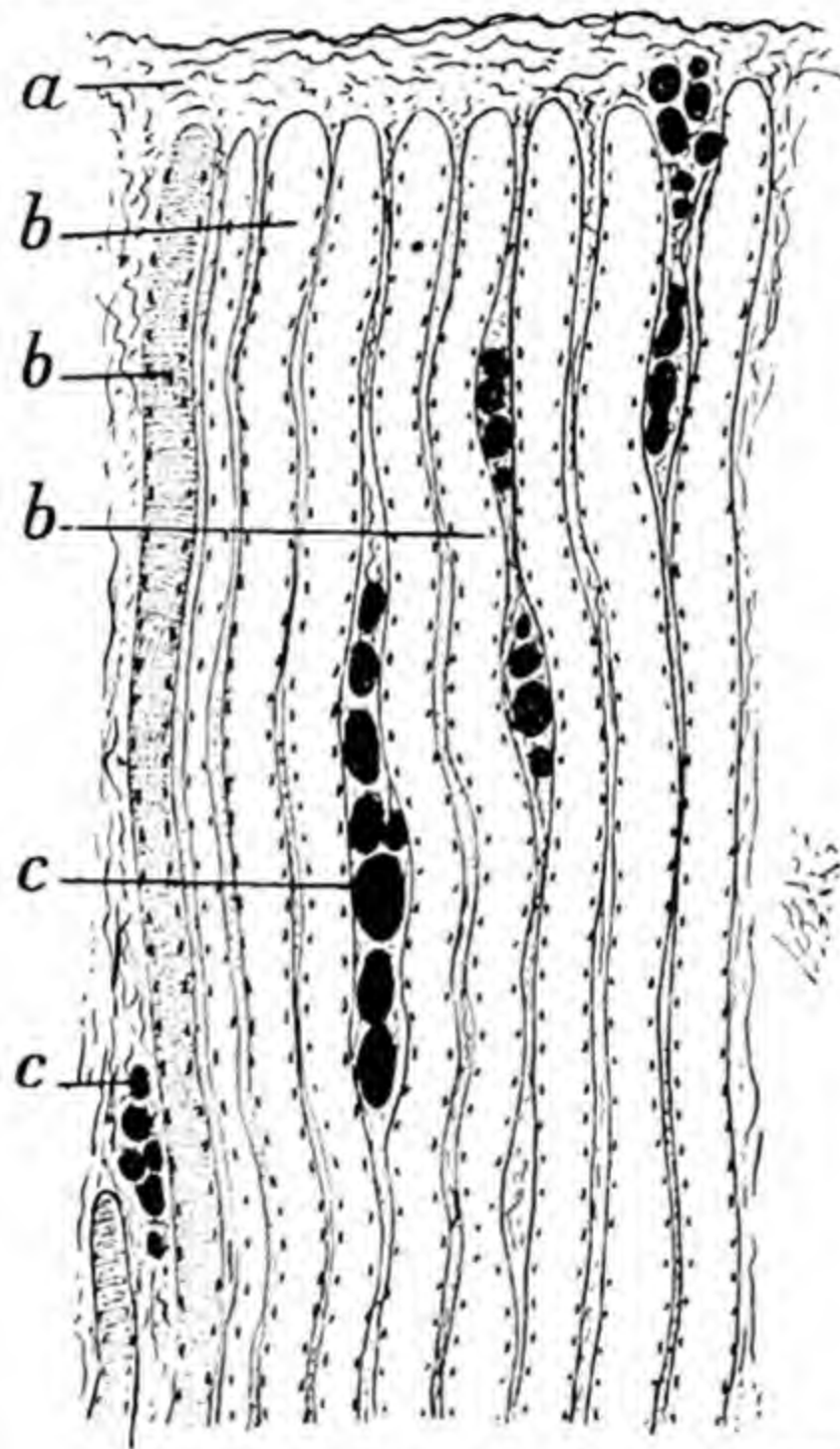


FIG. 15a.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF A PRIMARY MUSCLE BUNDLE.  
a. Connective tissue; b. muscle fibres; c. fat cells.

The contents of the microscopic tubes or muscle fibres consist of water holding in solution proteins, salts, and the substances known as "extractives," the whole constituting muscle-juice. The younger the animal, the more water does its flesh contain, and the lower is its nutritive value. This may be the explanation of the German saying, "Calf-meat is half-meat."

The chief *proteins* which the juice contains are myosin, myogen, globulin and hæmoglobin, the first being the most important.<sup>1</sup> Myosin has the property of clotting or gelation after death, the hardening of the muscle which results, being known, it will be remembered, as *rigor mortis*, or death-stiffening. Meat in that condition is tough, and accordingly, if tenderness is desired, the meat should be eaten either immediately after the animal is killed, and before *rigor mortis* has had time to

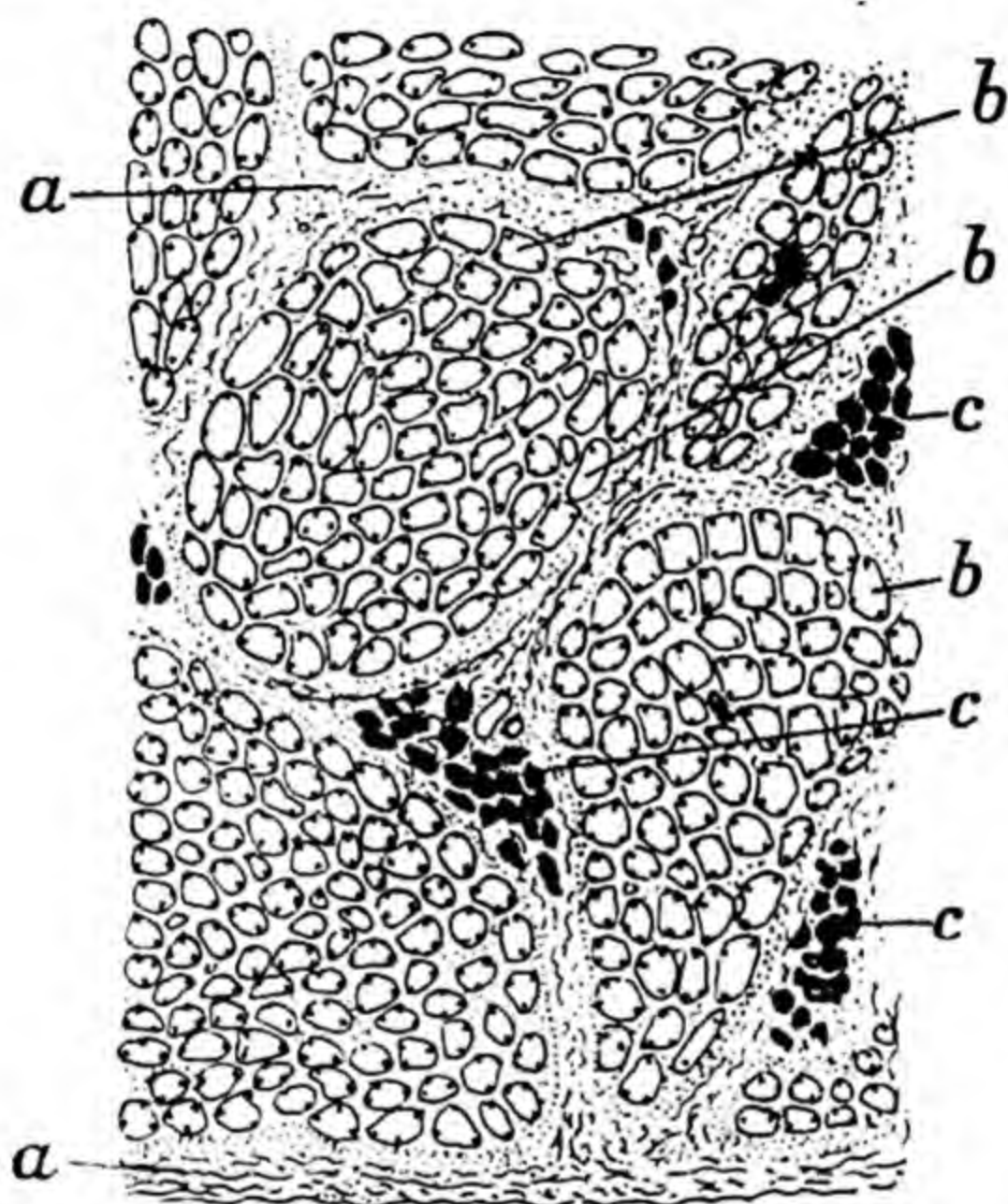


FIG. 15b.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF A NUMBER OF MUSCLE BUNDLES.  
a. Connective tissue; b. muscle fibres arranged in bundles (fasciculi); c. fat.

set in, or else it should be allowed to hang till the rigor has passed off. The disappearance of rigor is due to a resolution of the gel by flocculation and breaking up of its structure.

The *acids*<sup>2</sup> which develop in meat on hanging aid the gelatinization of the connective tissue which occurs on cooking, and also improve its flavour by removing the rather insipid flatness of taste which characterizes very fresh meat. In the flesh of animals which have undergone great muscular exertion immediately before being killed there is a considerable quantity of acid present, even at the time of death. Hence

<sup>1</sup> Myosin, which appears to be a pure protein, represents 67·5 per cent. of the total intracellular protein; the myogen group, which is complex, about 10 per cent.; and the globulin X group, 22·5 per cent. BATE-SMITH. (1942), *Chem. and Ind.*, 373.

<sup>2</sup> Sarcoplactic acid and acid phosphates. "Conditioning" of meat is mainly due to the effect of lactic acid on the collagen of connective tissue.

the flesh of hunted animals is of a superior flavour, and in less humane ages and countries attempts have been made to develop this flavour in domestic animals artificially by urging them to frantic exertions before slaughter. Another way of producing these effects by artificial means is by soaking the meat in vinegar and water for a short time. This is found to improve the flavour of fresh meat, as well as its tenderness.

The amount of *hæmoglobin*, or red colouring matter, in the juice varies greatly in different kinds of meat, and is usually less in amount in that obtained from young animals.<sup>1</sup> Hæmoglobin is also found in the small blood vessels which form a network around the fibres of meat. In animals which have been bled to death it is much diminished in amount or altogether removed; hence the pallor of veal.

The chief *inorganic substances* found in the juice of meat are phosphates and potassium. There is very little calcium in meat.

Last, but not least, of the substances contained in solution in the juice of meat are the *extractives*. These are so called because they can be "extracted" from meat by means of boiling water, and are familiar to everyone as the dark brown, sticky material which constitutes the chief part of Liebig's Extract. The exact chemical nature of the more tasty extractives is to a large extent unknown. They have no direct nutritive value, but are of importance as being the chief cause of the characteristic taste of meat, and, therefore, when they are removed, as they are, for example, on prolonged boiling, the meat becomes flavourless and insipid. Further, it would appear that the *characteristic flavours of the different kinds of meat* are due to minute differences in the amount and kind of the extractives present. The age of the animal and the way in which it is fed are of great importance in this connection. The flesh of full-grown animals is richer in extractives and has a fuller flavour than the flesh of those which are immature, which explains why we eat mint sauce with lamb and add spices to veal. The influence of feeding, on the other hand, is well illustrated by all forms of game. The flesh of wild rabbits, which eat aromatic herbs, especially thyme, has a much finer flavour than that of rabbits which are fed by hand, and a slice of wild duck is generally admitted to be a more tasty morsel than a piece of the bird reared in a farmyard. Everyone knows, too, how "fishy" sea-birds taste, how superior hill mutton is to its turnip-fed substitute, and how in grouse or capercailzie one can detect the aroma of the heather or pine-woods amongst which these birds live.

**The chemical composition of meat** varies considerably, depending as it does on the particular "cut" examined, on the breed of the animal, and on the degree to which it has been fattened. It must be noted, also, that by no means the whole of ordinary butcher's meat

<sup>1</sup> According to REGISTER *et al.* (1948), *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol.*, 70, 167, the iron of this hæmoglobin is available when the meat is cooked.

consists of edible matter, a large part being made up of bone, gristle, tendon, and other inedible portions. In an average piece of meat these *waste matters* may be reckoned at 17 per cent. of the whole,<sup>1</sup> and the *proportions of the constituents* in the lean edible part are about as follows:<sup>2</sup>

Water	. . . . .	75	per cent.
Intra-cellular protein	. . . . .	16.1	" "
Extra-cellular (collagen, etc.)	. . . . .	2.4	" "
Fat	. . . . .	3.0	" "
Mineral elements	. . . . .	0.7	" "
Extractives	. . . . .	0.8	" "

Other analyses represent the proportions of the chemical substances present thus:

100 PARTS OF LEAN BEEF WITHOUT VISIBLE FAT (BISCHOFF AND VOIT)

Water	. . . . .	75.90
Protein (intra-cellular)	. . . . .	18.36
Gelatin (extra-cellular)	. . . . .	1.64
Fat	. . . . .	0.90
Mineral elements	. . . . .	1.30
Extractives	. . . . .	1.90

The *effects of fattening* are shown in the following table, in which the composition of lean, medium, and very fat beef is stated in round numbers:

	Water.	Nitrogenous Matter. <sup>3</sup>	Fat.	Mineral Elements.
Lean	. 76.5	21	1.5	1
Medium	. 73	20.5	5.5	1
Very fat	. 53	17	29	1

The chief points to note in this table are: (1) The large amount of water which meat contains. About three-quarters of its total weight is made up of water, or, stated otherwise, 1 lb. of meat contains  $\frac{3}{4}$  lb. water and  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. of nutriment. It has been already pointed out that the flesh of young animals is relatively richest in water. (2) The relation between water and fat. The more there is of the latter present, the less there is of the former; in other words, when fat is deposited in a muscle, it replaces water, and not protein, and so the gain in nutritive value is

<sup>1</sup> *The Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*. Medical Research Council (1945).

<sup>2</sup> BATE-SMITH. (1942), *op. cit.*

<sup>3</sup> "Nitrogenous matter" is the figure obtained by multiplying the amount of nitrogen in 100 parts by 6.25; i.e. it is assumed that it is all protein. In reality only 85 per cent. of the total nitrogen arises from protein and the remaining 15 per cent. comes from extractives. The factor for converting extractive nitrogen to extractives is 3.12.

an absolute one, and is not attained at the expense of a loss of nitrogenous constituents. The above analyses refer especially to beef; the composition of the sorts of meat are given in the table.

PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF RAW MEATS. EDIBLE PORTION

	Protein. g.	Fat. g.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium. mg.	Iron.	Vita- min A. I.U.	Thia- mine. μg.	Ascorbic Acid.	Calories.	Waste
<b>BEEF</b>										
Whole carcase	15.0	28.0	0	10	4.0	50	80	0	312	17
Sirloin	16.0	23.0	0	10	4.0	50	80	0	271	17
Steak	14.0	29.0	0	10	4.0	50	80	0	317	0
Stewing steak	17.0	16.0	0	10	4.0	50	80	0	212	0
Brisket	13.0	38.0	0	10	4.0	50	80	0	294	0
VEAL	17.0	17.0	0	10	2.0	50	80	0	221	22
<b>MUTTON</b>										
Carcase	13.0	31.0	0	10	2.0	50	160	0	331	17
Leg	16.0	19.0	0	10	2.0	50	160	0	235	15
Shoulder	13.0	30.0	0	10	2.0	50	160	0	322	15
Scrag end	15.0	18.0	0	10	2.0	50	160	0	222	15
<b>PORK</b>										
Carcase	12.0	40.0	0	10	1.0	0	720	0	408	15
Leg	15.0	25.0	0	10	1.0	0	720	0	285	16
Loin	12.0	43.0	0	10	1.0	0	720	0	435	9
<b>BACON</b>										
Side	11.0	45.0	0	10	1.0	0	600	0	449	12
Gammon	16.0	30.0	0	10	1.0	0	600	0	334	15
Back rashers	13.0	40.0	0	10	1.0	0	600	0	412	12
Streaky	9.0	55.0	0	10	1.0	0	600	0	531	14

It must be clearly realized that these results are merely approximate, and may vary considerably in different cases. Thus, in very young calves the amount of water in the flesh may be 80 instead of only 65 per cent. The relative proportions of gelatin and other protein also fluctuate considerably. The flesh of young animals has more gelatin in proportion to protein than that of older animals hence the value of veal in making soups. Red and white meats differ but little in their content of extractives, including purines.<sup>1</sup>

**Changes Effected by Cooking.** We have already stated that the general effect of cooking on the structure of meat is (1) to loosen the fibres by converting the connective tissue which holds them together into gelatin, and (2) to remove some of the fat. The exact proportion lost depends on its melting-point, the fierceness of the heat, the time of exposure to heat, etc.

The chief effect of cooking on the chemical composition of meat is to diminish the amount of water which it contains. It occurs even when the meat is boiled. This is important, for it entails a very considerable increase in the nutritive value of cooked, as compared with raw, meat, a result which is the very reverse of that which follows the cooking of vegetables. In consequence of this *loss of water*, an ordinary plateful of cooked meat, weighing 4 oz., may be regarded as equivalent to 5 oz. of raw meat. Another effect of cooking on the chemical composition of meat is the removal of part of the

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE and SHIPP. (1933), "The Chemistry of Flesh Foods and their losses on Cooking." *Med. Res. Council Special Report Series*, No. 187.

extractives. This is most marked when boiling is the method employed, but it also occurs to a considerable extent even in roasting. Some of the salts are also dissolved out by boiling, and reference has already been made to the fact that cooking removes some fat as well.

The following table is compiled from analyses by McCANCE and SHIPP.<sup>1</sup>

PERCENTAGES OF PROTEIN AND FAT IN COOKED MEAT					Protein.	Fat.
Meat.						
Bacon, fried streaky rashers	.	.	.	.	24.0	46.0
Beef, corned	.	.	.	.	22.3	15.0
„ roast	.	.	.	.	26.8	12.3
Beefsteak, grilled	.	.	.	.	25.2	21.6
Chicken, boiled	.	.	.	.	26.2	10.3
„ roast	.	.	.	.	29.6	7.3
Duck, roast	.	.	.	.	22.8	23.6
Goose, roast	.	.	.	.	28.0	22.4
Grouse, roast	.	.	.	.	30.1	5.3
Guinea-fowl, roast	.	.	.	.	32.5	8.2
Ham, lean, boiled	.	.	.	.	23.1	13.4
Hare, roast	.	.	.	.	31.2	7.0
Mutton, roast leg	.	.	.	.	25.0	20.4
Partridge, roast	.	.	.	.	35.2	7.2
Pheasant, roast	.	.	.	.	30.8	9.3
Pigeon, roast	.	.	.	.	26.8	13.2
Pork, roast leg.	.	.	.	.	24.6	23.2
Rabbit, stewed	.	.	.	.	26.6	7.7
Turkey, roast	.	.	.	.	30.2	7.7
Veal, roast fillet	.	.	.	.	30.5	11.5
Venison, roast haunch	.	.	.	.	35.5	6.4

#### DIGESTIBILITY AND ABSORPTION OF MEAT

All solid foods are "digested" in the stomach in a *physical* sense; that is to say, they are pulped, in which condition alone they are able to pass on into the intestine. But meat is a food which is chemically digested in the stomach; much of its protein is changed to metaprotein and albumose. Now, it may be laid down as a rule that the greater the extent to which the chemical digestion of a food goes on in the stomach, the easier does its mechanical digestion prove. Hence, although meat makes considerable demands on the gastric juice, it does not throw any great strain on the mechanical resources of the stomach, and for that reason it must be regarded as among the more easily digested of the solid foods.

The first change which takes place during the *digestion of meat* is that the fibres swell up and become softened; their colour then changes to a greyish-yellow; they fall apart, and the mass becomes pulpy. Last of all, the individual fibres split up either into longitudinal threads or

<sup>1</sup> *op. cit.* See also HANNA. (1933-4). *Journ. Amer. Diet. Ass.*, 9, 188.

transversely into discs. It will be evident that the ease with which these changes can occur must depend on many conditions. The harder and denser the connective tissue which holds together the fibres, the less readily will they separate, and the greater the amount of fat between the fibres the less readily can the gastric juice act upon the latter, hence the indigestibility of tough and fat meats. The longer and thicker the individual fibres, the more slowly are they split up; hence the improvement in the digestibility of tough meat which results from breaking up the fibres by pounding the meat across its cut ends. The *influence of cooking* also is of great importance.

In general it has been held that raw meat digests more easily than lightly cooked meat and that overcooked meat is difficult of digestion. By "lightly cooked" is meant a condition in which the meat is firm and not flaccid. When its internal temperature reaches about 60–63° C. (140–145° F.) the meat becomes firm, but is still red. Well-done meat has reached an internal temperature of 70°–80° C. (158°–176° F.).<sup>1</sup> On the other hand Uffelmann,<sup>2</sup> in experiments on a boy with gastric fistula, and Clifford,<sup>3</sup> *in vitro*, maintain that raw meat is the most indigestible form. In view of the difficulty of chewing raw meat and of its antiferments and the probability of the psychological inhibition of gastric juice when raw meat is eaten, we should expect it to be less well digested than cooked meat. Individual idiosyncrasies may account for the conflict of views in feeding patients. Such idiosyncrasies should be respected when feeding the sick.

**The Relative Digestibility of the different kinds of Meat.** Few exact data are available with regard to this. There is a general impression that *mutton* is more easily digested than beef, which some have attributed to the finer fibres and looser connective tissue of the former. *Veal* is believed to be somewhat difficult of digestion, though this is denied on the Continent of Europe. The difficulty of digesting veal is somewhat surprising, for the connective tissue, though abundant, is very easily changed into gelatin. It is believed by some that the explanation is to be found in the ease with which the fibres of veal elude the teeth on mastication; the rather insipid taste of veal may also be a contributive cause, for such foods do not tend to excite a free flow of gastric juice. *Pork*, too, is accounted indigestible though the rate of passage of pork from the stomach does not bear out that suggestion! On the other hand, *bacon* can often be eaten with impunity by persons to whom pork is intolerable. If we accept the rate of passage of foods through the stomach as a measure of their digestibility we find that

<sup>1</sup> BAKER. (1942), *Chem. and In.*, 458.

<sup>2</sup> *Deut. Arch. f. Klin. Med.*, (1877), 20, 535.

<sup>3</sup> *Bioch. Journ.* (1930), 24, 1728.

lamb among the meats is a little more digestible than beef, and that pork is less digestible than beef. Pork chops, fried ham and bacon remain still longer in the stomach. The secretion of acid by the stomach is inversely proportional to the time of passage of the food through the stomach—at any rate with meats.<sup>1</sup>

The breast of *chicken and game* is amongst the most digestible forms of meat, but the leg muscles are often very tough. Very fat poultry, e.g. duck and goose, should be avoided by the dyspeptic, as the fat of such birds renders the flesh indigestible.

The *absorption of meat* is high. It has been shown that only about 5 per cent. of the organic matter in meat fails to enter the blood, and that, as the result of this, meat is a food which leaves a very small residue in the intestine. This gives it a special value in some cases of intestinal disease.

### NUTRITIVE VALUE AND ECONOMY OF MEAT

The principal nutritive constituent of meat is protein and it is as a compact and easily-digested source of this that meat is chiefly of value. *Meat protein* is characterized by the rapidity with which it can be digested and absorbed into the body; its absorption coefficient is remarkably high; and it has a high biological value. It is, moreover, a "quick fuel" with a high specific dynamic action. This gives it an advantage in cold weather, but because of these "heating" qualities its use should be restricted in summer. <sup>^</sup>

It has been held that meat proteins (or possibly the extractives of meat) produced a stimulating effect on the cells and on the body generally, and the feeling of well-being which follows a meat meal has been put down to this cause. Meat is also supposed to arouse animal passion and to excite savages not accustomed to it to a nervous condition amounting almost to intoxication. |

All this must surely be exaggerated, for it is not borne out by observations on the diet of native races. Whereas the Masai<sup>2</sup> may be warlike on their diet consisting mainly of milk, meat and blood, the Eskimos on a diet of meat, fish, game and eggs are one of the most peaceful of peoples and from all accounts not libidinous.

Meat is one of the few articles of diet on which life can be supported alone for an almost indefinite time, even by inhabitants of temperate climates. It is stated that Stefánsson, the Arctic explorer, during one of his expeditions lived solely on meat for nine months, and that during that time he reached his maximum weight, was in excellent health and never suffered from constipation.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> HAWK, REHFUSS, and BERGEIM. (1926), *Amer. Journ. Med. Sci.*, **171**, 359.

<sup>2</sup> (1931), *Med. Res. Council Special Report*, No. 155.

<sup>3</sup> CLARENCE LIEB. (1926), *Journ. Amer. med. Assoc.*, **88**, 25.

These observations have been followed up by a series of laboratory experiments in the Russell Sage Institute upon Stefánsson and one of his assistants in Arctic exploration. Both lived on a diet of animal protein, mainly meat, for a year and there was nothing to differentiate them during that year either from other normal people or from their state before and after the experiment except a mild ketonuria<sup>1</sup> which, however, was accompanied by none of the usual subjective symptoms. There was much less flatulence as judged by X-ray photographs than when on a mixed diet and the stools were not offensive.

A meat diet entails an extremely high intake of protein, less of fat and still less of carbohydrate. Stefánsson found, both in his Arctic voyages and in his experimental period of meat diet, that fat was essential and lean meat alone not tolerated.

There is evidence that most of the ills attributed to a high meat diet—nephritis, high blood pressure, deposition of urates in the joints, lowered alkali reserve, increased putrefaction in the colon and constipation—are non-existent. Man has survived possibly a million years of such diet. Moreover, there are to-day hardy races, both in polar and equatorial regions, whose diet is mainly meat. There is no evidence that the Eskimos suffer more from nephritis, hyperpiesia and arthritis than Europeans or Americans. It is true that the Masai<sup>2</sup> suffer from arthritis, but a medical officer from Kenya, in a private communication, gave it as his opinion that it is probably gonococcal in origin and not dietetic. We conclude that these supposed ills are unsubstantial bogies.

None the less, meat as a sole source of food is impossible mainly on account of its cost. Besides, it would take anything from 3 to 5 lb. of meat daily to supply the requisite number of Calories, and meat, as a food, is rather bulky.

The relative nutritive value of different sorts of meat depends chiefly on the amount of fat they contain. Fat, as we have seen, replaces part of the water, and not the protein, of the leaner meats, and thus the fat meats are better sources of fuel than the latter, while not inferior to them in building material. Kean's employment of different meats according to the part he had to play that night—pork for tyrants, beef for murderers, and mutton for lovers—has, as yet, no strictly scientific backing.

**The Economic Aspect of Meat as a Food.** From an economic point of view *meat is a dear food*, both for energy and body-building material.

The costliness of it, however, can be considerably diminished by selecting the cheaper "cuts," which are equal in nutritive value to the dearer kinds, though inferior in tenderness and flavour. The question

<sup>1</sup> McCLELLAN and DU BOIS. (1930), *Journ. biol. Chem.*, 87, 651.

<sup>2</sup> ORR and GILKS. (1931), *Med. Res. Council Special Report*, No. 155.

of waste from bone, etc., must also be considered. Thus, in the case of mutton and pork, the leg contains relatively less bone than the shoulder, and in beef there is a much larger proportion of bone in the shin than in the round, and of these the least bony parts will be the most economical from a nutritive point of view. Much, too, can be done to diminish the cost by the use of the cheap imported *chilled meats*. These are equal in nutritive value to fresh meat, and are only slightly inferior to the latter in keeping qualities. They are not much drier than ordinary meats, as is often stated, for chemical analysis shows that the proportion of water is only 10 per cent. less than that of fresh meat, while their digestibility is precisely the same. From an economic point of view, also, it must be regretted that there exists a prejudice against the use of *horse-flesh* as a substitute for ordinary meat. It is well flavoured—indeed, a Chateaubriand steak is said by connoisseurs to be best when made of horseflesh—and any toughness can be overcome by suitable cooking.

It should be remembered that all small animals, such as rabbits, are necessarily expensive forms of meat both on account of their active metabolism, which implies that the greater part of the food they eat is lost in the form of heat, and also because of the relatively large bulk of their viscera. It is therefore impossible to hope that they can ever be a cheap form of animal food for the poorer classes.

**Offal.** There remain to be dealt with parts of animals, other than the flesh, which are sometimes used as food, and which are usually classed together under the unsavoury title of *offal*. These comprise such articles as the kidneys, liver, sweetbreads, blood, heart, lungs, and other internal organs, and together they make up about one-third of the total weight of the carcass. The importance of some of these in diet cannot be overrated.

The general composition of these articles is shown in the following tables:

It will be observed that, from the chemical point of view, they are substances of considerable nutritive value, and as their price is also for the most part low, as compared with that of ordinary meat, they must be regarded as important sources of protein in the diet. Moreover, they have remarkable properties in supplying protective factors in the diet, such as vitamins, iron, etc. Liver has massive quantities of vitamin A and the B complex and available iron; the rest are very useful for thiamine.

The *liver and kidneys* resemble one another in being compact, solid organs, containing but little connective tissue. This physical property renders them somewhat difficult of digestion, unless they have either been minced before cooking (as the liver is, for instance, in making a haggis or a faggot), or are rather carefully chewed. Chemically, both

## PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF OFFAL (RAW)

	Water.	Nitro- genous Matter. <sup>1</sup>	Fat.	Carbo- hydrates.	Mineral Ele- ments.
Blood . . . . .	80.8	18.1	0.2	—	0.85
Brain . . . . .	80.6	8.8	9.3	—	1.1
Heart (ox) . . . . .	62.6	16.0	20.4	—	1.0
„ (sheep) . . . . .	69.5	17.0	12.6	—	0.9
Kidney (ox) . . . . .	76.7	16.9	4.8	0.4	1.2
„ (sheep) . . . . .	78.7	16.8	3.2	—	1.3
Liver (ox) . . . . .	71.2	20.7	4.5	1.5	1.6
„ (sheep) . . . . .	61.2	23.1	9.0	5.0	1.7
Lung (ox) . . . . .	79.7	16.1	3.2	—	1.0
„ (sheep) . . . . .	75.9	20.2	2.8	—	1.2
Sweetbreads . . . . .	70.9	16.8	12.1	—	1.6
Tongue (ox) fresh . . . . .	63.8	17.1	18.1	—	1.0
„ smoked and salted . . . . .	35.7	24.3	31.6	—	8.5
Tripe . . . . .	74.6	16.4	8.5	—	0.5

## COMPOSITION OF OFFAL (COOKED) (AFTER McCANCE AND SHIPP)

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrates.	Calcium.	Iron.	Calories. per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
	g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.		
Brain, calf, boiled . . . . .	12.0	5.8	0	16.0	2.0	102	29
Heart, sheep, roast . . . . .	25.0	14.7	0	9.5	8.1	239	68
Kidney, ox, stewed . . . . .	25.7	5.8	0	20.8	7.1	158	45
Liver, calf, fried after rolling in flour . . . . .	29.0	14.5	2.4	8.8	21.7	260	74
Sweetbread, sheep, stewed . . . . .	22.7	9.1	—	14.3	1.6	176	51
Tongue, sheep, fresh, stewed . . . . .	18.0	24.0	—	11.1	3.4	297	84
Tripe, dressed, stewed . . . . .	18.0	3.0	—	127.0	1.6	107	29

consist chiefly of protein along with a small amount of fat.<sup>2</sup> Much nucleoprotein is present in the proteins of liver, kidneys and sweetbreads and as on digestion and metabolism these break down to uric acid, these foods should be avoided by gouty folk.

The *heart* resembles ordinary meat very closely as far as chemical composition is concerned, but differs from it in being of a denser structure, and therefore less digestible. For healthy persons, however, it is an excellent and economical food, and might with advantage be made larger use of than it is at present.

*Blood*, used in making "black puddings," is by no means a good food. The fluid which carries food to the tissues has hardly more food value than a cart taking potatoes to market. It is very watery (79 per cent.), it contains very little fat and carbohydrate, and its hæmoglobin is not

<sup>1</sup> N  $\times$  6.25.

<sup>2</sup> A normal liver has about 3 per cent. fat, but it may contain up to 25 per cent. and then is much pleasanter to eat. (*pâté de foie gras*).

very digestible. Moreover most people feel repugnance at eating blood and there is no reason to advocate its consumption.

The *lungs*, from the fact that the air which they contain enables them to float in water, are popularly spoken of as the "lights." They are rarely eaten by themselves but, minced, form one of the ingredients of faggots and haggis. The lungs contain large amounts of elastic material which, though protein in nature, is only imperfectly capable of digestion.

Under the term *sweetbread* two distinct organs are included. The "throat sweetbread" is known to anatomists as the thymus gland; the "stomach sweetbread" as the pancreas. The thymus of the calf is the one most frequently met with in the market. Both glands are cellular organs, held together by a loose and delicate connective tissue. They leave the stomach rapidly and rank among the most digestible of foods. Since they contain much nucleo-protein, sweetbreads may prove harmful in gout.

*Tripe* is the name applied to the stomach and intestines of the ox after being cleaned and boiled. It contains a large amount of connective tissue, readily changed into gelatin on boiling, which renders the fibres easily digested. It contains fat in small amount, but not diffused through the muscular part. Its rate of passage through the stomach is slower than that of beef,<sup>1</sup> but in the intestine it has been found to be as completely absorbed.<sup>2</sup> Unfortunately, the absence of extractives causes tripe to be rather deficient in flavour, but otherwise it must be regarded as a valuable and easily-digested food.

The *brain* of animals is only occasionally eaten as food. Brain contains a small amount of protein and some fatty material including cholesterol and lipines, the last having phosphoric acid in the molecule. In the stomach, owing to its soft consistency, brain is more rapidly disintegrated than any other animal food, but, unfortunately, it is very imperfectly absorbed, 43 per cent. of it reappearing in the fæces (*vide infra*). In spite, therefore, of its easy disintegration, it cannot be regarded as a valuable food for invalids, nor is it in any sense specially apt to "make brains." "Some fancy," says an ancient writer,<sup>3</sup> "that Rabbits' Brains weaken the Memory, because this animal cannot for a moment after retain in mind the Foils laid for her and that she had just escaped; but this conjecture, being grounded upon a weak Foundation, I shall not stop here and go about to confute it." The idea that brain can in any way contribute to the nourishment of brain is grounded on an equally "weak foundation."

The comparative absorption of some of the articles of which we have been speaking, as found by experiment, is given below.

<sup>1</sup> HAWK *et al.* (1919), *Amer. Journ. Physiol.*, **49**, 174.

<sup>2</sup> SOLOMIN. (1896), *Arch. f. Hygiene*, **27**, 176.

<sup>3</sup> LEMERY. (1745).

Voit<sup>1</sup> states that:

100 parts of dry liver	yield 5 parts of dry faeces.
" " lung	" 8 " "
" " thymus	" 7 " "
" " brain	" 43 " "

Emil Bergeat<sup>2</sup> found the loss of nitrogen in the dog to be:

In meat	. . . . .	2.1 per cent.
In thymus	. . . . .	3.2 "
In liver	. . . . .	3.3 "
In lung	. . . . .	4.2 "
In brain	. . . . .	13.9 "

**Potted Meats.** These are of such varying composition that it is not worth while giving analyses except for König's of *pâté de foie gras*<sup>3</sup> and the comestible called "meat paste."

	Water.	Nitro- genous Matter.	N-free Extract- ives.	Fat.	Mineral Ele- ments.	Salt.
<i>Foie gras</i>	46.04	14.59	2.67	33.59	3.11	0.22
Meat paste	69	12.0	—	8.0	—	—

**Sausages** are mentioned in the Odyssey and again in Aristophanes and have been a common food, and a source of humour from those early days till now.<sup>4</sup> Sausages which are sold to be eaten cold have been cooked; these which are meant to be cooked, are made of uncooked meat. Both have other ingredients mainly cereal, seasoning and herbs. Their composition varies very much with the make and with the economic state of the country. In the war of 1939-45 the meat content fell to 37½ per cent. and addition of soya bean grits was compulsory. Since the war the minimum has risen to 50 per cent., and 80 per cent. of the meat in a "pork" sausage must be pork.<sup>5</sup> Local authorities asked in 1954 that the percentage of meat should be at least 65.<sup>6</sup>

Here are some analyses.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Zeit. f. Biologie*, (1889), 25, 232.

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, (1888), 24, 120.

<sup>3</sup> A paste made from the livers of artificially fattened geese.

<sup>4</sup> e.g. "They are like life, for you never know what is in them till you have been through them" and "God alone should eat sausages, for He alone knows what is in them."

<sup>5</sup> JONES, O. (1949), *Chem. and Ind.*, 74.

<sup>6</sup> *Food Manuf.*, (1954), 29, 213.

<sup>7</sup> Collected by MAGNUS PYKE. (1949), *Chem. and Ind.*, 738.

COMPOSITION OF SAUSAGES PER 100 G.

	Protein g.	Fat g.	Carbo- hydrate g.	Iron mg.	Thiamine mg.	Ribo- flavine mg.	Nico- tinic acid mg.	Calories.
Beef	10.5-13.8	13.0-18.4	13.0-14.7	2-4	0.09-0.15	0.06	2	215-292
Pork	8.8-10.6	16.1-28.8	9.8-14.8	1-2	0.17-0.18	0.07	2	247-341
Liver	10.7-16.7	17.4-22.0	3.0-21.4	5-8	0.17-0.25	0.14-0.39	3	246-282

It will be seen from this table that the usual serving of beef or pork sausages (i.e. two sausages or about 150 g.) adds appreciably to one's intake of first-class protein, calories, thiamine and nicotinic acid. Liver sausage in addition is good for vitamin A.

**Preserved Meat.** As was said earlier in this book, one of the problems presented to man by Nature is to make food keep from a time of glut to a time of scarcity. The industrialization of large numbers of the human race has made that problem still more urgent, and methods have been sought to preserve food produced in plenty in agricultural areas till it reaches man in the town. Particularly is this true of meat, which very rapidly becomes unfit for consumption when exposed to bacterial and other infection. Consequently many different methods have been evolved for making meat keep. Of these the important are salting or pickling, with or without smoking, canning, drying and dehydration.

**Pickling.** This has been practised for many hundreds of years, and is applied chiefly to products of the pig. The flesh and blood of animals is practically sterile and an animal can be eviscerated without the flesh becoming contaminated. The sources of infection are the knife with which the pig is stuck, and with the ox, the hide. Consequently the knife must be sterile and the skin or hide cleansed before slaughter or sterilized (as in the case of the pig) after killing. The muscle itself has such a hydrogen ion concentration ( $pH=5.5$ ) that putrefying organisms cannot grow. So if the exterior can be salted to prevent growth of bacteria, the whole can remain sterile for long periods of time.

Salt, mixed with potassium or sodium nitrite, is rubbed into the exterior surfaces of the jointed carcase, and penetrating to some distance renders the outside surfaces incapable of supporting bacterial life, though moulds do, with careless storage, manage to grow. In commerce, the salt mixture in solution is often pumped into the deeper strata. The nitrate, being reduced to nitrite, fixes the colour of the hæmoglobin by converting the hæmoglobin to nitrosohæmoglobin. After pickling, the sides are wiped with sterile cloths, and then baled and shipped immediately. Home curing proceeds by salting the joints—ham, gammon and sides—without pumping the pickling mixture into the deeper parts.

Subsequent smoking still further inhibits invasion by microbes and the development of rancidity. Pickled and smoked bacon and ham will keep under ordinary household conditions for at least a year.

Apart from economic considerations—for the pig is a good converter of agricultural products into first-class protein and fat—there are dietetic reasons for encouraging the bacon industry. Ham and bacon are more digestible than pork, and retain, in their cured condition, most of the thiamine which is the hallmark of the flesh of the pig. Whereas ordinary meat contains only some 0.150 mg. of thiamine per 100 g. pork and cured pork may contain four to six times as much.

Salting is applied to coarser joints of beef (brisket and silverside) but rather to render them more appetizing than to preserve them. The attempts to cure mutton by salting and smoking, practised in the early days of the war of 1939–45, proved a failure.

Analyses per 100 g. of bacon and ham are here given:<sup>1</sup>

		Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
Bacon, raw, Danish		g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	mg.	
"Wiltshire"		14.0	37.4	0	13.5	1.3	405	115
Bacon, raw, English								
"Wiltshire"		12.5	49.3	0	13.5	0.9	506	144
Bacon, back, fried		24.6	53.4	0	11.5	2.8	595	169
"streaky,"		24.0	46.0	0	52.3	3.2	525	149
Ham, raw		15.0	49.0	0	14.2	1.2	514	146
"boiled (lean and fat)		16.3	39.6	0	12.7	2.5	433	123

Canning is a method of preserving meats from decomposition which has reached enormous dimensions in this century. Not only does it make meat available long after the animals were slaughtered (up to 100 years!) but it enables armies, polar expeditions and construction camps of all sorts to be fed with meat protein and fats, far from a base of supply of fresh meat, and preserves foodstuffs, used in the manufacture of meat extracts, which would otherwise be wasted (corned beef.) There is a prejudice against canned meats due to conservatism and gastronomy and there have been, in the past, accidents of food poisoning traceable to careless processing, but with advance of technique these have been largely obviated. There are to-day more cases of food poisoning from "fresh" meat than from canned meat. It should be emphasized that the canners have discovered by experience that none but the best quality meat, canned under conditions of great cleanliness, have long "life" or marketable qualities. Processing consists in submitting meat enclosed in tinned and lacquered containers to a temperature of 125° C. long enough for the heat to penetrate thoroughly to the centre of the container and sterilize any adventitious microbic life. Though such sterilization destroys the small amounts of thiamine

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *op. cit.*

and ascorbic acid contained in the meat, the proteins and fats are but little affected except that they are cooked. Canned meats are then a good and convenient source of protein and energy as the analyses show. Drying has been used from time immemorial by North and South

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Calories per 100 g.	Vitamin A.	Thia- mine.	Calories per oz.
				mg.	mg.		I.U.	I.U.	
Corned beef	22.3	15.0	0	12.8	9.8	232	—	—	66 <sup>1</sup>
“ “	25.0	16.0	0	10.0	11.0	244	0	0	69 <sup>2</sup>
“ “ pork	20.0	23.0	0	10.0	2.0	285	0	450	81 <sup>2</sup>
Luncheon meat	15.0	21.0	0	—	—	250	—	—	71 <sup>2</sup>
Pork sausage meat	9.0	43.0	1.0	—	—	431	—	—	121 <sup>2</sup>
Tongue	19.0	20.0	0	10.0	3.0	256	0	280	73 <sup>2</sup>

American Indians for preserving meat (pemmican and charque) but it to-day finds little use, except in polar expeditions. If all the water is removed from lean beef the composition of the product would be about as follows:

Protein	86.8 per cent.
Extractives	7.8 “ “
Mineral elements	5.4 “ “

Beef powders made from dried meat form the basis of the diet of polar explorers. Its value is enhanced by the addition of 40 to 50 per cent. of fat—the amount varying with the inclinations of the head of the party—and when mixed with boiling water it forms the “Hoosh” familiar to readers of the accounts of exploration. Bulk for bulk dried powdered beef mixed with fat is about the most concentrated food known.

**Dehydration.** During the war of 1939–45 considerable advance has been made in the drying of meat which has been previously partly cooked and minced. The meat, with the cooking liquors distributed over it, is dried either at 60°C. in air or at 70°–80°C. under slight vacuum. The flavour and nutritive value, so far as protein and fat are concerned, are fully preserved and the loss of thiamine is comparable with that of normal home-cooked meat. Meat so dried when packed in airtight containers with the air replaced by an inert gas can be expected to keep in good condition for years.<sup>3</sup> This method was used during the war to save transport, but what its commercial future will be in years to come is somewhat speculative.

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE and WIDDOWSON. (1942), *op. cit.*

<sup>2</sup> Medical Research Council (1945).

<sup>3</sup> BATE-SMITH, SHARP, and CRUICKSHANK. (1944), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, **I**, 118.

**Soups, Beef Extracts, Beef Juices and Beef Tea.** In previous editions of this book considerable space was devoted to these substances but it has been considered unnecessary to repeat what has been said in the past. There is but little to be added to or subtracted from the summary given in the 9th Edition:

1. The extractives of meat are incapable either of building up tissues or of supplying the body with energy, and are therefore not foods, but they have a high potassium content and are useful after an operation.

2. They do not act as cardiac stimulants.

3. They may possibly help to remove fatigue, either by acting on the nervous system or on the muscles directly, but this action cannot yet be regarded as proved.

4. On the other hand, there is no doubt that they aid digestion powerfully by calling out a flow of gastric juice, whilst their pleasant flavour enables them to rouse the appetite. They are therefore useful additions to other foods, especially where the appetite and digestion are feeble, and may also be taken with advantage at the beginning of a meal, as in the form of soups.

5. If taken in large amount they excite diarrhœa.

6. Ordinary beef-extracts (e.g. Liebig's) possess no properties other than those of the extractive of meat. The amount of protein which they contain is negligible.

7. Preparations, such as Bovril and Oxo, to which meat powder has been added, may theoretically be regarded as foods, but contain far too little protein to admit of their ever being able to contribute appreciably to nutrition.

8. Beef-juices differ from beef-extracts in containing the proteins of meat in a coagulable form. None of them, however, can be taken in sufficiently large quantity to supply much protein to the body.

9. Natural (home-made) raw-beef juice contains about 5 per cent. of coagulable protein, which is as much as many of the patent preparations, whilst its comparative poverty in extractives and salts enables it to be consumed in fairly large amounts. We consider that it should never be used because of the possibility of including parasites.

10. Ordinary beef-tea, even when carefully prepared, does not contain more than 2 per cent. of nutritive matters. It may aid appetite and digestion, but is of very little value as a food. Its nutritive qualities, however, can be enhanced by adding to it the finely-powdered fibre of the meat ("whole beef-tea"). It is doubtful if the salts of beef-tea are of any real use.

We add that the defence of the use of soups must be along the lines that they are a pleasant opening to a large meal, especially in cold weather, they are gastric secretagogues, they may contain the "extrinsic

factor" for hæmatopoiesis, and form a good vehicle for vegetables, milk and cheese. Whatever growth-promoting factor beef-tea contains is due to gelatin (q.v.).<sup>1</sup> The hold which these preparations have on the public is due to a cleverly conducted and intensive advertising campaign.

ANALYSIS OF SOUPS PER 100 G.<sup>2</sup>

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Calcium.	Iron.	Cal- ories per 100 g.	Cal- ories per oz.
	g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.		
Bone and vegetable broth, home-made .	3.7	4.6	1.1	16.9	0.28	63	18
Ditto, commercial .	4.4	—	0.3	10.2	0.28	—	—
Hospital soups (mean of samples) .	2.0	1.3	4.3	33.8	1.39	35	10

## COMPOSITION OF THICK SOUPS (KÖNIG) PER 100 G.

	Nitrogenous Matter.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cellulose.	Calories per 100 g.	Calories per Fluid oz.
Pea soup .	3.38	0.93	5.60	0.70	53	15
Potato „ .	1.37	1.53	4.87	0.26	39	11

COMPOSITION OF EXTRACTS OF MEAT PER 100 G.<sup>3</sup>

	Meat Fibrin.	Albumoses and Peptones.	Gelatin.	Non- nitrogenous Material.	Creatine and Creatinine.	Mineral Elements.
	g.	g.	g.	g.	g.	g.
No. 1	1.3	0.5	0.2	trace	8.5	21.0
No. 2	1.9	1.0	0.3	„	8.1	23.6
No. 3	nil	0.7	trace	„	4.7	20.0
No. 4	„	0.9	„	„	4.6	20.7
No. 5	5.3	0.4	0.5	„	5.5	20.3
No. 6	6.0	22.4	0.5	„	6.1	18.2
No. 7	8.6	13.3	0.4	10.0	6.3	28.5
No. 8	0.6	17.5	8.7	7.0	1.4	15.9

Since a level teaspoon holds about 3.5 ml. it can be seen how little nutriment is obtained in a cup of meat extract made as the manufacturers direct.

<sup>1</sup> CHICK, HARRIETTE. (1948), *Lancet*, 2, 69, obtained good growth in rats on beef tea and white flour. The gelatin supplements the proteins of the flour.

<sup>2</sup> McCANCE and WIDDOWSON. *op. cit.*

<sup>3</sup> COX. (1936), *Chem. and Ind.*, 55, 69.

## PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF COMMERCIAL BEEF JUICES

	Coagulable Protein.	Non-coagulable Protein.	Non-nitrogenous Material.	Extractives.	Mineral Elements.	Alcohol.
A . . .	0.53	9.12	—	11.16	10.84	—
B . . .	5.28	10.17	—	16.55	8.85	—
C . . .	3.71	9.29	—	8.10	14.20	—
D . . .	8.3	—	—	9.54	7.51	—
E . . .	11.25	—	4.25	—	—	11.35
F . . .	33.38	—	6.75	13.44	13.27	—
G . . .	21.0	—	—	6.0	6.5	—
H . . .	4.40-7.37	—	59.56	0.55	1.24	—

As meat is a good source of nicotinic acid and a moderate source of riboflavine, it is to be expected that meat extracts should contain great amounts of these vitamins. This is so. Meat-extracts per 100 g. contain 37.5 to 102.5 mg. nicotinic acid and 2.34 mg. riboflavine.<sup>1</sup> Doubtless they will be well advertised on that score. (They were and are.)

**Yeast extracts** have for many years been used as substitutes for ordinary meat-extracts, and are largely used for flavouring the canned stews put up by the canning firms. A good example of these is the preparation known as *Marmite*.<sup>2</sup>

## COMPOSITION OF MARMITE

Water . . . . .	26.84 per cent.
Nitrogenous extractives . . . . .	34.67 "
Peptides and amino acids . . . . .	10.50 "
Mineral matter . . . . .	26.95 "

Such preparations resemble beef-extracts so closely in their general characters that they are used to dilute genuine meat-extracts.<sup>3</sup> The chief chemical difference between beef-extract and an extract of yeast appears to consist in the presence of creatine and creatinine in the former, and their absence in the latter; yeast extract also contains relatively more of the base adenine.<sup>4</sup> Whether these slight chemical differences involve a different action in the body is still undetermined, but there is no reason to believe that yeast-extract is in any way unwholesome, although it may, perhaps, not have quite the same stimulating effect on gastric secretion that genuine meat-extracts have. It is a good source of the vitamin B complex and of the extrinsic factor necessary for hæmatopoiesis.

<sup>1</sup> BOOTH and BARTON-WRIGHT. (1944), *Lancet*, 565.

<sup>2</sup> Analysis supplied by the makers.

<sup>3</sup> For the method of distinguishing yeast-extract from genuine meat-extract, see papers by A. SEARL. (1903), *Pharmaceutical Journal*, 4th series, 17, 516, 704.

<sup>4</sup> GAMGEE. (1908), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 2, 449.

**Gelatin.** The chemical basis of jellies is gelatin. Gelatin is derived from collagen, which is the chief constituent of connective tissues, and is converted into gelatin by boiling. Most forms of connective tissue can be made to yield gelatin by suitable treatment. Glue is a crude form of the substance obtained from hide-clippings, and ordinary commercial gelatin is simply a purified form derived from the same source. The connective tissues of young animals are especially rich in gelatin-yielding material. Veal, for example, contains 4 to 5 per cent. of connective tissue, and is therefore a favourite basis for the making of strong soups. Calves' feet (free from bone) yield 25 per cent. of gelatin on boiling and 11.3 per cent. of fat, and have long been known as abundant yielders of a pure jelly. The purest form of all, however, is *isinglass*, a substance obtained from the swim-bladder of fish, especially of the sturgeon. Chemically it is less rich than ordinary gelatin, as is shown by the following comparative analyses:

	Ordinary Gelatin.	Isinglass.
Water . . . . .	13.6	19.0
Gelatin . . . . .	84.2	77.4
Fat . . . . .	0.1	1.6
Carbohydrate . . . . .	—	—
Ash . . . . .	2.1	2.0

The chief physical peculiarity of gelatin is its capability of dissolving in boiling water, and setting into a jelly on cooling. It is remarkable how weak a solution is capable of doing this. Even when as little as 1 per cent. is present the solution sets. The ordinary strength of which jellies are made is 1 oz. of gelatin to the pint, which is equivalent to a 5 per cent. solution, and from this one can realize how little gelatin there really is in ordinary jellies. Hutchison found that 6 oz. (a large helping) of ordinary calf's-foot jelly contains  $1\frac{2}{3}$  oz. of solid matter, of which less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. is gelatin, the remainder being chiefly sugar.

The *digestion of gelatin in vitro* or *in vivo* is a very easy process; indeed, in this respect it is hardly surpassed by any other food. Gelatin has the advantage of fixing a good deal of acid in the process of digestion, and is thus of service in cases of hypersecretion of acid in the stomach. It seems also to belong to the "peptogogic" substances—i.e. those bodies which favour an abundant flow of gastric juice.

**Nutritive Value of Gelatin.** Highly purified gelatin is devoid of cystine and tryptophane, and nearly devoid of phenylalamine and tyrosine and has little methionine. It is therefore incapable by itself of building human tissue.<sup>1</sup> But it contains arginine and lysine which are amino acids of importance. Therefore mixed with other protein, e.g. even the proteins of bread, it is very valuable. None the less, it

<sup>1</sup> See MURLIN. (1907), *Amer. Journ. of Physiol.*, 19, 285; ROBISON, (1923), *Biochem. Journ.*, 16, 111.

must be remembered that not more than about 1 oz. of gelatin can be conveniently taken in the day—the amount in 1 pint of jelly. One can realize from this that the usefulness of gelatin in dietetics is of limited range. As a pleasant addition to the diet of convalescence, however, jellies are of service, but their nutritive value depends mainly on the sugar which they contain. Their value in acid dyspepsia had already been mentioned.

The *cost of gelatin* depends entirely on the source from which it is derived, and for ordinary purposes commercial gelatin is the most economical. It has been calculated that it costs sixteen times as much to prepare jelly from calves' feet as to use commercial gelatin for the purpose (Thudichum). Isinglass is also a costly source. The same is true of soups, for it is cheaper to add 7 or 10 g. ( $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{3}$  oz.) of gelatin to ordinary stock if a strong soup is wanted than to get the gelatin from boiling veal. Bones are a cheap source of it only in so far as they cannot be used for any other purpose. The composition of bones is as follows:

Water . . . . .	5 to 50 per cent.
Gelatin-producing material	15 to 50 " "
Fat . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 20 " "
Mineral elements . . . .	20 to 70 " "

When boiled in the usual way they yield from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 7 per cent. of their weight, mainly as fat. When broken up and treated in a pressure cooker the yield is much greater. None the less it is cheaper to use commercial gelatin than to buy bones specially to produce it. McCance, Sheldon and Widdowson<sup>1</sup> make a point of the worthlessness of bone and vegetable broth for the purpose for which the bones are included, i.e. to supply calcium for growing children. Whereas commercial broth supplies 10 mg. calcium per 100 g. and laboratory made broth 16.9 mg., cow's milk supplies 119, and their protein is mainly gelatin against the first-class protein of cow's milk.

Gelatin is a cheap addition to poor diets in so far as it can be obtained from many materials which would otherwise be wasted, but ordinary jellies must be regarded as dear foods, for a half pint of the "calf's-foot jelly" of the shops yields at most 120 Calories and no first-class building material at all.

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, SHELDON, and WIDDOWSON. (1934), *Arch. Dis. Childh.*, 9, 251.

## CHAPTER XV

### FOODS TAKEN FOR MINERAL ELEMENTS AND FOR VITAMINS A AND C (ASCORBIC ACID)

In this chapter it is proposed to deal with fruit and fruit products, leafy and other vegetables and fruits used as vegetables. With the usual carelessness of popular dietetics the custom is to lump fruits and vegetables together as the main source of "minerals" and vitamins. It is necessary thus early to protest against this and say that calcium and phosphorus are far better obtained from cheese, fish and milk than from fruits and vegetables, iron from eggs and liver, while butter, eggs, fat, liver and milk contain much vitamin A, and liver is valuable for ascorbic acid. We have already called attention to these points and noted that potatoes, dealt with under energy foods, are still, unfortunately, the main source of ascorbic acid in the British diet, for so many people refuse to eat cabbage. The contribution of vitamins of the B class which fruit and vegetables make to the diet is distinctly small. They make but little addition to our sources of energy and protein,<sup>1</sup> but are often extraordinarily useful for vitamin A and ascorbic acid. They are therefore grouped together in this chapter. Fruits often are, but by no means always, a good source of vitamin C, and yellow fruits of vitamin A as well; green leafy vegetables produce vitamin A and ascorbic acid and yellow vegetables vitamin A. The green vegetables, with the exception of the spinach family, have a useful amount of available iron and some of the cabbage family make a small contribution to our intake of calcium.

#### FRUITS

The fruit is not of direct benefit to the plant. It is intended as a bait to attract animals, and so insure the liberation or transportation of the seed. Hence æsthetic qualities predominate in fruit rather than the strictly nutritive, and we eat them more for the sake of their sweetness and flavour than for the actual nourishment which they afford.

<sup>1</sup> The proteins of leafy vegetables are first-class proteins, but there is so little obtainable from a consumable amount. Methods of concentration of this protein are still in their infancy and may be neglected. SLADE, BRANSCOMBE, and MCGOWAN. (1945), *Chem. and Ind.*, 117; LUGG and WELLER. (1944), *Biochem. Journ.*, 38, 408, have found methionine, tyrosine and tryptophane well represented in grass and lucerne proteins.

✓ The general composition of fresh fruit is approximately:

## COMPOSITION OF FRESH FRUIT

Water	.	.	.	.	85 to 90 per cent.
Protein	.	.	.	.	0.5 "
Fat	.	.	.	.	0.5 "
Carbohydrates	.	.	.	.	5½ to 10½ "
Cellulose	.	.	.	.	2½ "
Mineral elements	.	.	.	.	0.5 "

The composition of individual members of the group is shown in the table on page 381. It will be observed that the only nutritive constituents of any importance in fruit are the *carbohydrates*. These consist almost entirely of sugars, only very few ripe fruits containing any starch. The chief sugars are fructose and glucose and in most fruits these are present in nearly equal proportions. Apples and pears, however, contain much more fructose than glucose, whilst in some stone fruits, on the other hand, glucose predominates. A few fruits (e.g. cherries, grapes and figs) contain no sucrose, whilst in a few others, such as apricots and peaches, it makes up the greater part of the total sugar present.

The remainder of the carbohydrates is made up of non-metabolizable substances such as cellulose, hemicellulose, pectin, etc. In the course of ripening, some of them are converted into the corresponding sugar—*pentose*, the nutritive value of which must be regarded as very doubtful.<sup>1</sup> When subjected to boiling, the gums of many fruits yield a jelly, the production of which is familiar in the process of making preserves.

The amount of *cellulose* varies greatly in different fruits. It is always lessened by the process of cultivation—witness the difference between a crab apple and a Newton pippin—and it diminishes also, by a sort of natural digestion, during the ripening of the fruit.

The *mineral constituents* of fruits are of little importance. They consist mainly of potassium united with various vegetable acids, such as tartaric, citric, and malic. These have an agreeable acid flavour and reaction, but when burnt by the body are converted into the corresponding carbonate, and so render the blood more alkaline and the urine less acid. A grapefruit weighing ¾ lb. contains about 20 g. of sugar and from 0.13–0.4 g. of acid citrates.<sup>2</sup> The ability of the human body to oxidize citric acid is so great that at least 48 g. can be dealt with in a day. Hence the drinking of quantities of orange-juice tends to make the urine alkaline.<sup>3</sup> As the fruit ripens, these vegetable acids diminish, and it is to this fact, coupled with an increase in the amount of sugar

<sup>1</sup> See McCANCE, R. A. (1939), *Med. Res. Council Rep.* 125, Part 2.

<sup>2</sup> *La Presse Médicale*. (1926), 34, 1613.

<sup>3</sup> BLATHERWICK and LONG. (1932), *Journ. Biol. Chem.*, 53, 103

present and a decrease of solubility of tannic acid, that the sweetness of ripe as compared with unripe fruit is due.

Fresh fruits, with the exception of cherries, grapes, plums and some apples, are also important vehicles of ascorbic acid. (See pp. 148 and 381.)

The *odour and flavour of fruits* are due to the presence of very small quantities of ethereal bodies which sometimes elude chemical investigation. In many cases, however, we have been able to obtain (from coal-tar, too, of all sources) artificial products which have to the uncritical palate the same flavour as many fruits. These products, alas, form the basis of the different fruit flavourings and essences sold in the shops. Although of no nutritive value, the flavouring substances contained in fruits are by no means to be despised as stimulants to the appetite and aids to digestion.

*Cooking* renders most fruits more digestible by softening their cellulose, and it also, as we have seen, converts the gums into a gelatinous form. But these changes are not brought about without a good deal of loss. The loss affects all the ingredients of the fruit. The following instances show figures for the carbohydrates:<sup>1</sup>

Apples, raw . . .	11.7 per cent.	Peaches, raw . . .	9.5 per cent.
„ once boiled . . .	7.3 „	„ once boiled . . .	1.8 „
„ twice „ . . .	6.1 „	Pears, once boiled . . .	6.6 „
Pears, raw . . .	10.1 „	„ twice „ . . .	5.9 „

Where, as is usually the case, the fruit is cooked by stewing and the juice eaten along with it, this effect of cooking is of no moment.

The *digestibility of fruit* in the stomach and intestine is dependent largely on the nature of the fruit and its degree of ripeness. Five and a third ounces of raw ripe apple (one large or two small apples) require about 3 hours and 10 minutes to pass through the stomach. On the other hand, if the fruit is unripe and the amount of cellulose consequently greater, digestion may be much more prolonged. The excess of acids present in unripe fruit causes it to be irritating to the intestine, and a frequent originator of diarrhœa and colic. If, however, the cellulose and acids are contained in more moderate quantity, as in ripe fruit, the gentle stimulation which they exert on the intestinal wall may be very useful. Hence it is that stewed fruit is so serviceable an addition to the diet for the atonic colon.

There have been few experiments made to test the degree to which fruit is absorbed by the human intestine, but one may expect that at least 95 per cent. of the available carbohydrate, if not more, will be absorbed, and that is practically all that matters.

<sup>1</sup> From analyses by KRAUS. (1898), *Zeit. f. Diät. und Physik. Therap.*, 1, 69.

## COMPOSITION OF FRESH FRUITS

	Grammes per 100 g.				mg. per 100 g.							Acid-base, Balance per 100 g.	Vitamins. per 100 g.				
	Pro-tein.	Avail-able Carbo-hydrate.	Unavail-able Carbo-hydrate.	Calories per 100 g.	Na	K	Ca	Mg	Fe	Cu	P		Cl	A. I.U.	B <sub>1</sub> . ug.	C. mg.	Remarks.
Apples, Empire, eating	0.3	12.2	1.7	51	2.7	116	3.6	5.0	0.29	0.14	6.8	1.0	—	—	—	} 1.4-40 16 0.8 7.2-15 3.0 150-220	Poor for C. (Bramley's seedlings.) Moderate for C.
" eating, English	0.3	11.7	2.2	49	2.0	120	3.5	4.3	0.29	0.07	8.5	2.0	—	40	—		
" cooking, English	0.3	9.6	2.4	41	2.1	123	3.6	2.9	0.29	0.09	16.2	4.6	—	—	—		
Apricots	0.6	6.7	2.1	30	1.0	320	17.2	12.3	0.37	0.12	21.3	1.0	3000	30	—		
Bananas	1.1	19.2	3.4	83	1.2	348	6.8	41.9	0.41	0.16	28.1	78.5	250-340	10	—	The highest source of C. with the excep-tion of hips, haws, and paprika. Very good for C.	
Blackberries	1.3	6.4	7.3	32	3.7	208	63.3	29.5	0.85	0.12	23.8	22.1	—	—	—		
Cherries, eating	0.6	11.9	1.5	51	2.8	275	15.9	9.6	0.38	0.07	16.8	1.0	—	—	—		
Currants, black	0.9	6.6	8.7	31	2.7	372	60.3	17.1	1.27	0.14	43.2	14.8	300	10	150-220		
Currents, red	1.1	4.4	8.2	23	2.3	275	35.8	12.8	1.22	0.12	29.5	14.0	—	—	50	Good for C.	
Damsons	0.5	9.6	4.1	41	2.0	261	21.2	9.9	0.37	0.07	14.8	1.0	—	—	—		
Gooseberries, green	1.1	3.4	3.2	18	1.9	210	28.3	7.1	0.32	0.13	33.9	6.5	—	—	27		
" ripe	0.6	9.2	3.5	40	1.2	170	18.5	8.6	0.58	0.15	19.0	10.7	—	—	—		
Grapes (white)	0.6	16.1	0.4	68	1.6	250	19.1	6.6	0.34	0.10	21.9	1.0	25	—	—	Poor for C.	
Grapefruit	0.6	5.3	0.6	24	1.4	234	17.1	10.4	0.26	0.06	15.6	1.3	—	40	26	Good for C.	
Greenages	0.8	11.8	2.6	52	1.4	305	16.8	7.7	0.37	0.08	22.6	1.0	—	—	0.5-6.4	Poor for C.	
Lemon juice	0.3	1.6	0.0	8	1.5	142	8.4	6.6	0.14	0.13	10.3	2.6	—	—	26	44 per cent. of a lemon is juice.	
Loganberries	1.1	3.4	6.2	18	2.5	257	35.1	25.0	1.37	0.14	24.3	15.8	—	—	20	Good for C.	
Melons (Cant.)	1.0	5.3	1.0	26	15.5	319	19.1	20.1	0.81	0.04	30.4	43.5	—	10	15	Moderate for C.	
Orange juice	0.6	9.4	0.0	41	1.7	179	11.5	11.5	0.30	0.05	21.7	1.2	300	—	22 & up.	57 per cent. of a 9 oz. orange is juice.	
Peaches	0.6	9.1	1.4	40	2.7	259	4.8	7.9	0.38	0.05	18.5	1.0	760	—	1-11.0	Poor for C.	
Pears, eating	0.3	10.8	2.1	43	2.3	129	8.0	9.3	0.19	0.20	9.9	1.0	80	30	10	Moderate for C.	
Pineapple	0.5	11.6	1.2	50	1.6	247	12.2	16.9	0.42	0.08	7.8	28.5	166	2.5	10	Poor for C.	
Plums, dessert	0.6	9.6	2.1	42	1.7	188	11.0	7.2	0.36	0.10	16.3	1.0	115	0	1	Good for C.	
Raspberries	0.9	5.6	7.4	27	2.5	224	40.7	21.6	1.21	0.21	28.7	22.3	—	25	30	Ca probably unavail-able.	
Rhubarb	0.6	1.0	2.6	6	2.2	425	102.8	13.6	0.40	0.13	21.0	87.0	—	—	—	Very good for C.	
Strawberries	0.6	6.2	2.2	28	1.5	161	22.0	11.7	0.71	0.13	23.0	17.5	—	—	46	Moderately good for C.	
Tangerines	0.9	8.0	1.9	56	2.2	155	41.5	11.2	0.27	0.09	16.7	2.4	690	40	10	Frequently higher than this.	
Tomatoes	0.9	2.8	1.5	15	2.8	288	13.3	11.0	0.43	0.10	21.3	51.0	14,160	40	13		

From a nutritive point of view fruits may be artificially divided into the two groups of *flavour-fruits* and *food-fruits*. In the first group are included all fruits which contain less than 20 per cent. of solid material; in the second, all fruits or fruit preparations which have more than 20 per cent.

The only claim of the members of the first group to be regarded as foods is that they contain a small amount of sugar in a pleasant but rather bulky form, and some of them contain ascorbic acid. A rough generalization is that citrus and summer fruits only, with the exception of cherries, are significant sources of ascorbic acid, whereas the autumn fruits, are often almost devoid of it. They are chiefly eaten for the sake of their agreeable flavour. Their richness in water makes them more adapted to the requirements of the inhabitants of warm countries than for use in northerly latitudes, and it is found if they are freely represented in the diet less water need be consumed. Hips and haws are the only autumn fruits with much ascorbic acid.

Grapes stand intermediate between the two groups, for their juice contains an amount of sugar which varies from 10 per cent. in the poorer up to 30 per cent. in the richer varieties. In the so-called *grape-cure*, from 1 to 8 lb. of grapes are taken daily in divided quantities, and between meals. If the rest of the diet is sufficient, the patient may gain weight on this regimen, while the grape-juice, owing mainly to the organic acids which it contains, acts as a mild laxative and diuretic, and at the same time diminishes slightly the acidity of the urine. The vitamin value of grapes is very low except for the hypothetical vitamin P.

There are many unfermented grape-juices preserved by pasteurization on the market. They contain about 25 per cent. of grape-sugar, and are a useful food-beverage, especially in fevers. To-day, in this country, there is an "orange cure," which consists of combining rest or graduated exercise, fasting from all foods except orange juice, with some psychotherapeutic treatment. Some of the successes claimed for this treatment, we suspect, are due to making good a deficiency of ascorbic acid.

The *food fruits*, on the other hand, are by no means to be despised as a source of calories. Of this group the *banana* is a good example. It is the fruit of a tropical plant (*Musa sapientum*) which for some reason or other has forgotten to make seeds but continues to make the pulp in which they should be embedded. Bananas are largely grown for export to this country in the West Indies, the mainland of Central America, the Canary Islands, and the Cameroons.

A large banana weighs on the average 143 g. or 5 oz., and its pulp 90 g. or 3½ oz. The relation of the edible portion to the fruit as purchased is 62.5 per cent. Small fruits may weigh as little as 2 oz., their

pulp not much over 1 oz., and the percentage of edible material is 58.5 per cent. The size depends on the position the fruit holds in the bunch and on the time at which it is cut. Fruit on the American market, because of its proximity to the West Indies, is cut later than the fruit destined for the English market. It has therefore time to grow larger.

As will be seen from the tables, the chief value of this fruit in dietetics is its high content of carbohydrate and its moderate amount of ascorbic acid. Figures for the ascorbic acid of bananas as sold in England are as high as 15 mg. ascorbic acid per 100 g.<sup>1</sup> Their contents of thiamine, and of vitamin A (250–340 I.U.) are not negligible. Weight for weight, the banana gives at least as many Calories as potatoes, but whereas the carbohydrate of potato is starch that of the fully ripe bananas is sucrose and invert sugars. When the banana is green its carbohydrates are mainly starch and if eaten green it should be cooked. As the fruit ripens and starch is converted to sucrose, fructose, and glucose, and when fully ripe, i.e. when the yellow skin is covered with brown flecks, there is almost no starch present. This is the condition in which the connoisseur eats the banana.

Apart from its convenience and cheapness, which makes it the fruit of choice for the packet lunch, the meal at mid-morning break, picnic, etc., the banana has achieved a considerable reputation in pediatrics and medical dietetics. Enterprising American and Canadian pediatricians give it as the first solid food a baby gets and as early as 3 months. British pediatricians give it at 6 months. The babies take readily to it and thrive on it. It is used in the United States to help a child put on weight. In this country, in Germany and the United States and Canada, the banana was used with success in feeding babies suffering from coeliac disease until the cause of that disease (gluten) was discovered.<sup>2</sup> It must be very ripe when used for this purpose. During the war of 1939–45 the Ministry of Food allowed the importation of amounts of dried bananas to be used in treating infants with diarrhoea.<sup>3</sup> It is also an excellent food in the diet for sprue and for a spastic colon in the adult.

An advantage of the banana is the cheapness with which it can be produced. A given area devoted to its cultivation will yield a larger food return than if planted with potatoes. The bread-fruit, the sugar cane and the chestnut are said, however, to exceed the banana in their yield per acre.

**Dried Fruits.** Surpassing even the banana in nutritive value are

<sup>1</sup> CHAPPELL'S figures are 11.5–11.9. 1940 (*Journ. Hygiene*, 40, 699); L. J. HARRIS'S for ripe Jamaica bananas, 11.9–15.2; and OLLIVER'S, 6–8 (private communications).

<sup>2</sup> PARSONS. (1932), *Am. J. Dis. Child.*, 43, 1293.

<sup>3</sup> A high banana diet results in butyric acid in the colon, which is toxic for *bacillus coli communis*.

the dried fruits, e.g. the currant, date, fig, raisin and sultana. The date is as much a staple article of diet to the Arab as rice is to the Hindu, but the carbohydrate of the date is almost solely sugar whereas that of rice is starch. Dried fruits have received much advertisement in the United States for their content of iron, though the tables hardly bear this out, but we call attention to the large amounts of calcium and iron in dried figs though they may be rendered unavailable by the phytates. Dried fruits, unlike fresh fruits, have a high Calorie value ranging from 50 per oz. or 176 per 100 g. (dried apricots) to 68 and 239 respectively (dates). Advantage of this is taken by school caterers, rock climbers and "hikers." They must not be relied upon for ascorbic acid and so cannot take the place of fresh fruits in the dietary.

*Canned fruits*, once considered useful only for sugar and flavour, have been shown by a long series of experiments in this country by Olliver<sup>1</sup> to retain much of their original ascorbic acid. In fact they may contain more than fruit bought on the open market and stewed in the home. Such fruits as black currants, when canned, supply as much as 90 mg. of ascorbic acid per 100 g. (3½ oz.) and form a very valuable source of that vitamin when, because of the season or the difficulty of importation, citrus fruits are unavailable. During the war of 1939-45 the Ministry of Food used the black currant purée (first manufactured on the initiative of Olliver) to provide infants and invalids with ascorbic acid. (Average content: 65 mg. per 100 g. or 18 per oz.). The content may be even higher than this, for allowance is made for deterioration between the time of packing and the time of consumption. Canned gooseberries (18 mg. per 100 g.), loganberries (12), raspberries (12), and strawberries (25) are useful, though by no means as good as black currants, for ascorbic acid.

### VEGETABLES

There is no logical classification of vegetables possible either from the botanical or the culinary standpoint. Man has shown enormous ingenuity in seizing upon, and diverting to his own use, the leaves, shoots, seeds and storage parts of plants, and what are classed as vegetables in normal speech may be fruits or seeds, with or without their pods, e.g. aubergines, cucumbers, marrows, tomatoes, French and runner beans and peas, and what is classed as a fruit, is really a stem, or rather a petiole (e.g. rhubarb). The following classification is offered, with apologies, for convenience merely.

**Green and leafy vegetables:** The cabbage family including broccoli, cauliflower, mustard and cress, seakale and watercress, and the spinach family.

<sup>1</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1936), *Chem. and Ind.*, 55, 153; (1938), *Analyst*, 63, 2; (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, 62, 146.

# COMPOSITION OF DRIED FRUITS<sup>1</sup>

	g. per 100 g.		Cal- ories per 100 g.	mg. per 100 g.								Vitamins. per 100 g.		
	Protein.	Avail- able Carbo- hydrate.		Na.	K.	Ca.	Mg.	Fe.	Cu.	P.	Cl.	A. I.U.	Thi- amine μg	Ascorbic acid.
Currants .	1.7	63.1	296	19.5	708	95.2	36.2	1.82	0.48	40.4	15.7	—	—	Probably nil
Dates .	2.0	63.9	301	4.8	754	67.9	58.5	1.61	0.21	63.8	290.0	600	90	"
Figs .	3.6	52.9	258	86.7	1015	284.0	92.3	4.17	0.24	91.5	166.0	—	27	"
Prunes .	2.4	40.3	191	12.2	864	37.7	26.7	2.90	0.16	83.0	2.5	—	198	"
Raisins .	1.1	64.4	299	52.2	860	60.6	41.7	1.55	0.24	32.8	8.5	—	150	"
Sultanas .	1.7	64.7	302	52.7	856	52.2	35.3	1.82	0.35	94.5	15.5	—	180	"

<sup>1</sup> Analyses from McCANCE, WIDDOWSON, and SHACKLETON. (1936), *Med. Res. Council Rep.* No. 213, and vitamins from ROSCOE and FIXSEN. (1937-8). *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, 7, 823.

Leguminous green vegetables.

Salad vegetables { Endive and lettuce (usually eaten green).  
Celery, chicory, dandelion (eaten blanched).

Asparagus and globe artichokes.

Bulbs, roots and tubers: Artichokes (Jerusalem), beetroot, carrots, onions, parsnips, potatoes and salsify.

Seeds: cereals and pulses.

Fruits: aubergines, cucumbers, marrows, pumpkins, squash and tomatoes.

With the pulses and cereals we have dealt already, for their main function in diet is to provide Calories and protein. As a general dietetic rule pulses (and cereals) should not be used as a second vegetable, though dried peas and beans are so used in this country, and "noodles" in Germany.

**Green and Leafy Vegetables.** *The Cabbage Family.* This is an enormous tribe most of which—e.g. broccoli, sprouting broccoli, white and purple, brussels sprouts, cabbage, calabrese, cauliflower, kale of various types, kohlrabi and seakale, savoy, spring and winter cabbage, have been developed by gardeners, mainly Dutch, from the wild, and natural, *brassica maritima*. Mustard and radishes and watercress also belong to the same family, the *cruciferae*. The swede and the turnip also were developed from *brassica maritima*, but are dealt with later.

The plant spreads its leaves out to absorb the energy from the sun's rays by means of its chlorophyll, which is invariably accompanied by carotene, the precursor of vitamin A. Iron is always found in the neighbourhood of the chloroplasts which contain the chlorophyll. Also to catalyse the active chemical changes in the leaf, when it combines carbon dioxide from the air with water, aided by the energy absorbed from the sun's rays, to form sugars and starches, it needs ascorbic acid among other catalysts. So we expect to find in green leaves, vitamin A, ascorbic acid and iron. The greener the leaf usually the more vitamin A and iron. The outer green leaves of cabbage have more vitamin A, iron and, incidentally, calcium, than the pale inner ones, but these are by no means devoid of ascorbic acid. In fact where a vegetable is the nature of a growing shoot (sprouts, sprouting broccoli, and calabrese) ascorbic acid may be expected in large amounts.

Of course, like other vegetables, the cabbage tribe have large amounts of potassium and magnesium which are, however, usually found in any diet in excess of man's needs.

The analyses on page 387 are taken from the Medical Research Council's tables: *The Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*.

It will be seen at once how negligible these vegetables are for Calories, but what a useful source for vitamin A and ascorbic acid, how they

contain significant amounts of iron, and, in the case of kale and watercress, of calcium. Little of the vitamin A, the iron or the calcium is lost in cooking<sup>1</sup> but there is a big diminution of ascorbic acid. Olliver<sup>2</sup>

Food.	100 g. contain							Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
	Protein.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Vitamin A as Carotene.	Ascorbic Acid.			
	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	I.U.	mg.			
Brussels sprouts	4.4	4.0	27	1.2	400	100	24	7	
Cabbage	1.5	5.0	65	1.0	900	70	17	5	
Cauliflower	2.4	3.0	23 <sup>3</sup>	0.9	0	70	14	4	
Kale	3.9	4.5	200	2.5	4,000	130	24	7	
Turnip tops	2.5	3.5	[98]	[3.0]	10,000	100	17	5	
Watercress	2.9	0.6	222	1.6	5000	60	10	3	

considers that 100 g. cooked cabbage contain but 16 mg. vitamin C whereas when raw, the figure was 70. Sprouts show a decrease from 100 mg. (raw) to 30 mg. cooked, and these are probably optimal figures.

*The Spinach Family.* These (summer spinach, winter spinach, seakale beet) are like the cabbage tribe in being sources of vitamin A and ascorbic acid, but are probably useless for calcium and iron because of the oxalates they contain. Again there is loss of ascorbic acid on cooking (65 mg. falls to 25 per 100 g.), but probably none of vitamin A precursors. As with the cabbages their Calorie value is negligible (4 per oz.).

*Leguminous Green Vegetables.* These are broad, French and runner beans and green peas. Sometimes these are eaten pods and all (French and runner beans, sugar peas and young broad beans), and sometimes the seeds are shelled and eaten alone (flageolets, peas). Not only are such vegetables quite useful for vitamin A and ascorbic acid, but they afford more protein when eaten shelled than ordinary green vegetables. The following analyses illustrate these points.

Food.	100 g. contain							Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
	Protein.	Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Vitamin A as Carotene.	Ascorbic Acid.			
	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	—	mg.			
Beans, Broad	7.2	9.5	30	1.1	—	30	95	27	
" French	1.1	2.6	33	0.7	600	10	14	4	
" Runner	1.1	2.9	33	0.7	600	20	18	5	
Peas, green	5.8	9.5	15	1.9	500	30	63	18	

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, WIDDOWSON, and SHACKLETON. (1936), *Med. Res. Council Special Rep.* 213.

<sup>2</sup> OLLIVER, M. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, 62, 146.

<sup>3</sup> Cauliflower, boiled. (McCANCE and WIDDOWSON, *op. cit.*)

*Leafy Salad Vegetables.* Endive and lettuce are useful practically only for vitamin A; they contain disappointing amounts of ascorbic acid though, judging by American figures, there are varieties of lettuce with high ascorbic acid values.

Food.	100 g. contain							Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
	Protein.	Carbo- hydrate.	Ca.	Fe.	Vitamin A as Carotene.	Ascorbic Acid.			
			mg.	mg.		mg.			
Endive	. 1.8	0.9	44	2.8	—	20	7	2	
Lettuce	. 1.1	1.6	26	0.7	4000	15 <sup>1</sup>	11	3	

Celery, chicory, and dandelion, though green leafy vegetables, are eaten blanched. They are probably useless for vitamin A, and the ascorbic acid of celery is low (5 mg. per 100 g.), and their value is mainly gastronomic.

*Asparagus and Globe Artichokes.* These luxury articles are not of much importance in dietetics, except that asparagus contains much ascorbic acid, 60 mg. per 100 g. (cooked 30 mg.). They both are vehicles for melted butter.

Food.	100 g. contain							Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
	Protein.	Carbo- hydrate.	Ca.	Fe.	Vitamin A as Carotene.	Ascorbic Acid.			
	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	I.U.	mg.			
Artichokes (Jerusalem)	1.6	3.2	30	0.4	?	?	17	5	
Asparagus	2.0	2.4	28	0.9	700	60	17	5	
Beetroot	1.8	8.1	32	0.9	0	10	24	7 <sup>2</sup>	
„ cooked	1.8	9.9	30	0.7	0	5	46	13 <sup>2</sup>	
Carrots	0.7	4.9	48	0.6	4900 to 93,000	10	21	6	
Leeks	2.5	3.9	51	1.3	700	20	14	4	
Onions	0.9	4.7	31	0.3	0	10	21	6	
„ spring	0.9	7.7	135	6.2	700	20	28	8	
Parsnips	1.7	10.2	55	0.6	200	10	32	9	
Radishes	1.0	2.5	44	1.9	0	30	7	2	
Salsify (boiled)	1.9	2.8	60	1.23	?	?	17	5	
Swede	0.7	2.4	40	0.3	0	20	14	4	
Turnip	0.5	1.8	55	0.3	0	15	7	2	

*Bulbs, Roots and Tubers.* Plants often store sugars and starches in roots and underground stems, though sometimes, as in the onion family, in swollen modified leaves. This gives them an early start in spring—e.g. the potato. Man naturally raids these stores. As the

<sup>1</sup> Other values are 16 (OLLIVER, *op. cit.*) and 1-17 (CHAPPELL, *op. cit.*).

<sup>2</sup> Difference due to sampling.

storage organs are often underground, devoid of chlorophyll, and have low metabolic rates, we expect but little ascorbic acid in them, though, as a matter of fact, new potatoes, radishes, swedes and turnips are not to be despised for that vitamin.

Little comment is necessary on these tables except to call attention to the spring onion and the leek as sources of ascorbic acid and the carrot as a source of carotene. It must be remembered, however, that carotene is absorbed into the blood with difficulty, and it is recommended that one third of the values given above be taken for vitamin activity. Eaten raw, the carrot probably would yield even less—say one sixth of the figures.<sup>1</sup> Onions eaten in large quantities are said to have caused anæmia.<sup>2</sup>

*Fruits used as Vegetables.* These came from the classes solanaceæ (aubergines and tomatoes) and the cucurbitaceæ (cucumbers, marrows, pumpkins etc.). It cannot be said that any, except the tomato, is of great dietetic value, though pleasant in cuisine.

Food.	100 g. contain							Calories per 100 g.	Calories per oz.
	Protein.	Carbo- hydrate.	Ca.	Fe.	Vitamin A as Carotene.	Ascorbic Acid.			
	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	I.U.	mg.			
Cucumber	0.6	1.6	23	0.3	0	10	9	2.5	
Marrow	0.5	3.0	[14]	[0.2]	30	5	14	4.1	
Pumpkin	0.6	3.4	39	0.4	?	?	17	4.7	
Tomato	0.9	2.5	13	0.4	3000	25	14	3.9	

In the above tables most of the figures given are for raw vegetables, and a large number of these are usually eaten cooked. The difference this makes to the calcium, iron and vitamin A contents of the vegetables is slight. In fact, vegetables cooked in hard water may have more calcium, and those prepared with steel knives and cooked in iron containers may have more iron, than the raw samples. The chief loss is in ascorbic acid. Consequently the consumption of raw vegetable salads, made from the cabbage family and decorated with the highly coloured beet, carrot and tomato has been advocated, with some considerable success, in canteens and institutions where the cooking and service methods for vegetables unfortunately destroy much of the ascorbic acid.

Two substances which may be of value in supplying mineral elements are mentioned here. They are Irish or Carrageen moss and Iceland moss. The former is a dried seaweed sometimes used in the sickroom. It has

<sup>1</sup> Hypercarotenæmia, easily mistaken for jaundice, sometimes results from eating large amounts of carrots. *Lancet*, (1944), 2, 478.

<sup>2</sup> *Food Man.* (1951), 26, 170.

much calcium (0.845 per cent.), iron (88 mg. per 100 g.), manganese (7 mg. per 100 g.) and phosphorus (205 mg. per 100 g.).

Iceland moss is a lichen and not a moss or a seaweed. Its nutritive value is probably nil, unless perhaps, it supplies some mineral elements.

✓ **Canned Vegetables.**<sup>1</sup> There has been an enormous increase in the production and consumption of these commodities. Convenience in preparation and ease of transport mainly determine this. In the best restaurants, for example, canned green peas are usually served, even in the height of the season. It will be seen from the tables that there is no dietetic reason against their use.

ANALYSIS OF CANNED VEGETABLES

Food.	100 g. contain							Calories per oz.
	Protein.	Carbo- hydrate.	Ca.	Fe.	Vitamin A as Carotene.	Ascorbic Acid.	Calories per 100 g.	
	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	I.U.	mg.		
Asparagus	1.5	1.3	28	0.6	700	30	11	3
Beans, broad	5.2	7.5	40	0.8	420	15	55	15
„ runner	0.8	1.8	35	0.5	600	5	11	3
Beetroot	1.4	5.7	35	0.6	0	5	28	8
Brussels sprouts	3.4	1.3	30	0.7	400	35	21	6
Carrot	0.5	1.6	30	0.2	20,000	5	7	2
Celery	0.5	0.6	60	0.3	0	2	4	1
Parsnips	0.9	5.5	70	0.3	200	5	28	8
Peas (fresh)	4.6	5.8	25	1.0	500	15	42	12
„ (processed)	7.2	16.2	45	1.7	170	0	92	26
Spinach	2.1	1.0	0	0	7000	25	14	4
Swedes	0.7	2.4	40	0.3	0	20	14	4
Turnips	0.5	1.8	55	0.3	0	15	7	2

*Vegetarianism.* As we have now considered the nature, composition and functions of the various foods in the normal diet, it would be well to take up at this point the vexed problem of vegetarianism versus a mixed diet. There have been throughout the last hundred years flourishing societies of vegetarians in this country, western Europe and the United States. Almost undoubtedly their main motive power has been a revulsion from the taking of animal life, with which the average person must feel some sympathy, though schools of psycho-analysis may suspect repressed motives.<sup>2</sup> Almost naturally this cult is found among the more "progressive" parts of our communities.

The normal vegetarian eats fruits, vegetables, cereal products, pulses, milk, cheese, butter and eggs, but eschews fish, meat, poultry and game. Some allow themselves to eat fish. There are some who cut out milk, cheese and eggs because of the necessary slaughter of bullocks

<sup>1</sup> See OLLIVER, *op. cit.*

<sup>2</sup> e.g. repressed desire for cannibalism. (Personal communication to one of us by a Freudian psycho-analyst.)

and cockerels. These, according to Wokes, himself a vegetarian, should be called vegans. They usually argue that man on such diets is healthier than on a "carnian" diet, forgetting that man in pre-history was for perhaps a million years a flesh eater, and that the Masai on the equator and the Eskimo in the Arctic circle still are almost entirely given to a flesh diet. And these surviving flesh eaters are thoroughly healthy and hardy. On the other hand adolescent, adult men and women and pregnant lact-ovo-vegetarians show no significant difference in health, physique, blood pressure, hæmatology and serum albumin and globulins from meat eaters.<sup>1</sup> The vegans may develop anæmia and spinal trouble after years of this diet.

To us the problem must be wholly dietetic, and we can sum up the advantages and disadvantages of a consistent vegetarian diet, as follows:

Cereals are weak in protein; and those which contain it in reasonable amounts have only second-class proteins. They have usually very little fat and calcium and are devoid of ascorbic acid.

Fruits are very weak in protein and fat. Their calcium is low and their only advantage is that many of them have ascorbic acid and a few of them vitamin A.

Nuts are the only vegetarian foods with much protein (2nd class), and fat.

Pulses, when cooked, as they must be for human consumption, are bulky foods for protein and are devoid of fat and ascorbic acid.

Vegetables are very poor in protein and fat (though leafy, potato and rice proteins are of good quality), but, as stated immediately above, are often useful for vitamin A and ascorbic acid.

It will be seen that a diet composed solely of the above is likely to be weak in protein, fat and calcium, though, of course, extensive use of olives, peanuts and other nuts will make up the deficit in fat. The great objections to such a diet, apart from these lacunæ, are its bulk and the low absorption of its constituents in the alimentary tract. If the bulk is small and the percentage of cellulose scanty, digestion and absorption may, however, be very complete. Voit,<sup>2</sup> in early work on the absorption of some animal and vegetable foods, showed that, whereas only some 4-4½ per cent. of white bread, macaroni, polished rice, meat and eggs escaped digestion and absorption, the waste with black bread, cabbage, potatoes and turnips was much higher (11 to 20 per cent.). Bulkiness is common to the majority of vegetable foods, except bread and nuts. This is due to the great amount of water they contain. Most vegetables contain 80-90 per cent. of water, many of them more water than milk, the most dilute of animal foods. Even pulses when cooked contain 70

<sup>1</sup> HARDING, M. G., and STARE, F. J. (1954), *J. clin. Nut.*, 2, 73 and 83.

<sup>2</sup> VOIT. (1889), *Zeit. f. Biolog.*, 25, 232.

per cent. of water, or as much as the leanest of raw meat.<sup>1</sup> The only way to keep the bulk of a vegetarian diet low is to make extensive use of bread, biscuits and nuts. (Porridge has 89 per cent. of water.) Even then, a vegetable diet has a much larger volume than a purely animal or a mixed diet. According to Voit (*op. cit.*), a purely vegetable diet has three times the bulk of an animal one.

The bulkiness of vegetable food interferes with its digestion in two ways. First it is difficult for the digestive juices to penetrate such a mass and convert it into absorbable constituents; secondly, the bulk stimulates the walls of the alimentary tract to peristalsis, the food materials are hurried along and there is less time allowed for absorption.

Further, the great obstacle to complete digestion and absorption of vegetable foods is the presence of cellulose which is very imperfectly attacked by the digestive apparatus of man and carnivorous animals. Herbivorous animals have special portions of their alimentary tracts developed to deal with cellulose—the rumen in animals which chew the cud and the enormous cæcum in the horse and rabbit. Part of this cellulose is converted by the action of bacteria in the large intestine into hydrogen, formic, acetic, propionic, butyric acids<sup>2</sup> and marsh gas. Wherefore a vegetarian diet is a very “windy” diet. The fæces on such a diet are three times the bulk of those on a mixed diet.<sup>3</sup> One further objection to a highly vegetarian diet is that the production of urine is much increased, so that its consumer may be forced to get up at night to pass water.<sup>3</sup>

The result of such a diet is distension of the gut by bulk and gas, frequency of defæcation and micturition and low absorption of protein, fats and carbohydrates.

Much of this may be avoided by the addition of eggs, milk and cheese to the diet. In fact there is no objection to be found in lact-ovo-vegetarianism, the vegetarianism practised by most vegetarians. Such a diet, indeed, seems advantageous to the gouty person who does better on it than on one into which meat enters to any large extent. The objections, clinical and otherwise, to a meat diet for the normal person are largely imaginary. We may add that a person embarking on a lact-ovo-vegetarian diet needs a good knowledge of modern dietetics to keep his diet “balanced,” and should not be one too prone to flatulence. Vegetarianism, though often wrong-headed, dogmatic and unscientific, has been of great service in emphasizing the importance of fruits and vegetables in the diet.

<sup>1</sup> Cooked lean meat contains much *less* water.

<sup>2</sup> MARSTON, H. R. (1948), *Bioch. Journ.*, **42**, 564.

<sup>3</sup> Private communication by McCANCE and WIDDOWSON concerning experiments made in 1939–40, published April 1946, *Med. Res. Council Special Report, Series 254*, on diets containing large amounts of wholemeal bread and vegetables. See also diet of the Channel Islands during the German occupation. *Lancet*, (1945), **2**, 569.

## CHAPTER XVI

### FOODS TAKEN MAINLY FOR FLAVOUR. CONDIMENTS

A discussion on flavour is, unfortunately, inescapable in a book on the nature of foods, though we know so little about it. For flavour determines appetite and good digestion waits upon appetite, as was shown in an earlier chapter. Much, if not all, of our "tastes" in food depend upon conditioned reflexes—the Eskimo, according to Stefánsson, has no appetite for salt with meat—but the dietitian has no time to train his victims to new conditioned reflexes and has to work within their ambit. Flavour then becomes of great importance.

True taste arises from stimulation of the end organs in the tongue by sapid substances, whereas true flavour comes from the stimulation of the olfactory epithelium high in the nasal cavity. Flavours then are really odours. Very naturally tastes and flavours are confused, for it is difficult to appreciate the fact that a viand rolled on the tongue is really being smelt, that volatile substances escape from it when it is eaten and, passing up into the nasal cavity, affect the olfactory epithelium. Most persons, however, are aware that they lose their sense of smell when suffering from a heavy cold and that food loses most of what is termed flavour. An onion becomes indistinguishable from an apple.

There are but four tastes: sweet, acid, salt and bitter. The front of the tongue appreciates sweet and acid things. People who suck sweets keep them in the front of the mouth. Lemonade and wines are sipped. The back of the tongue is responsible for reaction to bitter tastes, wherefore beer is drunk, not sipped. Salt sensations arise from stimulus of all parts of the tongue. All other "tastes," fruity, spicy, flowery, aromatic, alliaceous, nauseating and burnt, are really flavours. It is they, mainly, which make food appetizing or the reverse, though true tastes add something.

It should be said at the outset that we cannot reconstruct the natural flavours of foods and essential oils synthetically, for the substances which produce flavours are multitudinous and work in extraordinarily small amounts.<sup>1</sup> It is true that ethyl butyrate reminds one of pine-apples, amylacetate of pears and benzaldehyde of almonds, and are used to imitate those foods in sweets and marzipan to the degradation

<sup>1</sup> See WAYGOOD. (1943), *Chem. and Ind.*, 62, 59.

of the palate of the public. The flavour of the pineapple is more than ethyl butyrate. The idea that the flavour of fruits and other foods can be matched absolutely synthetically is a dream of the organic chemists, and a bad dream at that. The importance of flavours in foodstuffs is receiving recognition among manufacturers of foods, and it is the custom, e.g. in the manufacture of dried eggs, to submit this product to a panel of tasters. Wine, tea and coffee tasters have been a commonplace in those trades for years. The sphere of the professional taster must be expanded as our food passes more and more through the hands of the manufacturers.

The characteristic flavour of olive oil depends on saturated and unsaturated hydrocarbons. They occur in amounts of about 70 parts per million. Arachis oil, which may oust olive oil as a salad dressing, has similar substances but only in the amount of 1.8 parts per million. Butter, in part, owes its flavour to diacetyl and acetyl methyl carbinol, developed by the microbes responsible for the aroma of butter. One part in forty million of diacetyl can be detected, but while a mixture of the two substances can give a buttery flavour to foods, it is lacking in the true flavour. Cheese, as stated in the section on that food, owes its characteristic flavour to a great number of different aliphatic acids among other things.

Apple oils contain acetaldehyde, amyl formate, acetate, caproate with a trace of geraniol, but a synthetic apple "oil" is not at all a satisfactory substitute for the real flavour. Similarly esters have been extracted from peaches, but proved highly unstable in the presence of air. The characteristic flavours of fruits such as raspberries, black currants and strawberries remain chemical mysteries.

The bouquet of wines and spirits is another mystery. There are various esters of aliphatic and aromatic acids and their alcohols are also both aliphatic and aromatic; moreover there are diacetyl, acetyl-methyl and phenylmethyl carbinols present, but none of the compounds, nor a mixture of them, resembles to any degree the characteristic bouquet. With tea and coffee the problem is still more complicated. Fifteen odorous constituents have been isolated from black tea, and over twenty from coffee. It is interesting that mercaptans are important ingredients in coffee aroma.

Enough has been said to show that it is extremely unlikely that flavours can be synthesized in the chemical laboratory which approach closely the flavour of fresh foods. Further, as many of the odorous substances in foods are chemically unstable, it is obvious that cooking, processing, long contact with air, moisture, etc., are going to influence flavours, often for the worse. A corollary is that it is almost impossible to free a substance from objectionable flavour once it has developed it.

It has been suggested that the passionate interest shown from the Middle Ages to the seventeenth or eighteenth century in spices and other condiments was largely due to the desire to mask the flavour of tainted meat.<sup>1</sup> To-day condiments are used to enhance or make attractive the flavours of food.

*Allspice*, or pimento, is the fruit of a West Indian and Central American evergreen myrtle which contains 4–7 per cent. fixed and 3–5 per cent. volatile oil. Pimento oil should contain considerable quantities (65–90 per cent.) of eugenol to which it owes its flavour.

*Caraway*. This is the seed of an umbelliferous plant, native in parts of Europe and Western Asia and cultivated in Holland, Russia and Scandinavia. It can be grown in Great Britain but is usually imported from India. It is used as a flavouring to cakes and its volatile oil is the characteristic flavouring material in Kümmel. The chief odorous substance is carvone, a liquid ketone derived from limonene.

✓ *Cassia* is the bark of an Oriental member of the Lauraceæ, *cinnamomum Cassia*, and contains 1.5 to 4.3 per cent. of a volatile oil, the chief constituent of which is cinnamaldehyde. The chief sources of supply are Ceylon and China.

*Cayenne* pepper is the ground fruit of *Capsicum frutescens*, of the nightshade, potato and tomato family, and paprika of *Capsicum annum*. The former comes from East and West Africa and Japan, while paprika is mainly of Hungarian cultivation. There may be as much as 12 per cent. fixed and 1 per cent. volatile oil. These peppers owe their violent action to capsaicin (0.22 per cent. of the product).

✓ *Cinnamon* is the bark of the young wood of *Cinnamomum zeylanicum*, or Ceylon cinnamon. The feature which distinguishes it from cassia is that its oil contains less cinnamaldehyde and more eugenol. It imparts "a peculiar, illusive flavour appealing to the epicure."<sup>2</sup>

✓ *Cloves* are the dried flower buds of an evergreen tree belonging to the myrtaceæ, a native of the Moluccas, but now cultivated in Zanzibar, Madagascar, India and the West Indies. In cloves there is no less than 6 per cent. fixed oil and 19 per cent. volatile oil and the chief ingredient of the latter is eugenol (cp. Allspice or pimento), which is the main flavouring agent.

✓ *Ginger* is the rhizome of a reed-like plant, needing moisture and a tropical climate, grown in India, Siam and China and also in East Africa and Jamaica. In China the green rhizome is preserved in syrup or candied and exported to all parts of the world. It is also dried, bleached and exported as root ginger. It contains about 4 per cent. fixed oil and 2 per cent. volatile oil. The fixed oils contain pungent principles, mainly zingerone, to which ginger owes its sharp taste. The

<sup>1</sup> DRUMMOND and WILBRAHAM. (1939), *The Englishman's Food*, 34, 35.

<sup>2</sup> WINTON and WINTON. (1939), *Structure and Composition of Foods*, 4, 271.

volatile oils to which ginger owes its fragrance are mainly terpenes.

✓ *Mustard* is a flour made from the seeds of black mustard (*Brassica nigra*) mixed with that from white mustard (*Brassica alba*). Each of the flours contains a glucoside—sinigrin in black mustard, sinalbin in white. Moistening either produces a hydrolysis by a ferment myrosin. Sinigrin gives rise to the volatile oil of mustard, allyl isothiocyanate; of sinalbin to a non volatile pungent substance *p*-phenylisothiocyanate. The pungency of table mustard is a sum of the pungencies of both. English black mustard has 1.4 to 1.6 per cent. of the allyl compound and white mustard 3.2 per cent. of this principle.<sup>1</sup>

✓ *Nutmeg* is the kernel of the small pear-like fruit of *Myristica fragrans* from the East Indies (Penang, Singapore, etc.) but it is also cultivated in the West Indies. It has about 25 per cent. of fixed oils and 2.5 to 5 per cent. of volatile oils. These latter contain mainly terpenes (pinene and camphene) and are the main odorous substances.

*Pepper* is the berry of a woody vine growing wild on the Malabar coast in India. It is also cultivated in Java, Sumatra, the Philippines and the West Indies. The chief centre of export is Penang. Black pepper is the berry picked before ripening and dried in the sun or over fires. White pepper is the fruit picked ripe from which the outer coat has been rubbed off. Black pepper is more pungent than white, and whereas white is the more popular in Europe, black is the pepper of choice in North America. The connoisseur prefers freshly ground black pepper to commercial preparations. Pepper owes its pungency to an alkaloid piperine, which, oddly enough when pure, is at first tasteless. Only on reaction with colloid substances on the tongue or elsewhere does it develop its characteristic pungency.

*Saffron* is the dried stigma of a crocus (*Crocus sativus*) from the Middle East. As a spice or a colouring matter it is little used in this country except in Cornwall. It probably owes what flavour it has to a terpene and a tertiary alcohol.

*Salt and sugar* have already been considered in other places. Both are very important condiments in common use, in fact the most important condiments. It is almost accidental that they have important functions in metabolism. The condiment value of sugar is demonstrated by the way in which diabetics, as well as the general populace during the war of 1939–45, had recourse to saccharin (benzoic sulphamide) and dulcin (para-ethoxyphenylurea). These are non-metabolizable substances very much sweeter than sugar.

*Vinegar* is, or should be, the result of the oxidizing action of a group of microbes—*Acetobacter aceti*, *A. Pasteurianum*, *A. Kützingianum* and others<sup>2</sup>—on wine or malt liquor. On the Continent wines are used

<sup>1</sup> TERRY, R. C., and CORRAN, J. W. (1939), *Analyst*, 64, 164.

<sup>2</sup> GALLOWAY and BURGESS. (1941), *Applied Mycology and Bacteriology*.

for the manufacture of vinegar but in this country malt liquor is usually the source. Sometimes the vinegar is distilled and the distillate contains acetic acid mainly along with traces of alcohols and esters. This vinegar is practically colourless.

[The substance which gives vinegar its "bite" is acetic acid, while it is the substances present in the alcoholic liquor which gives it its aroma.]

In addition to these "natural" vinegars, there are on the market "artificial" and "spirit" vinegars. The former is made by diluting acetic acid, obtained from the destructive distillation of wood or otherwise, and adding colouring matter to match the colour of brewed vinegar. Spirit vinegar<sup>1</sup> is made from cane molasses which is diluted and fermented. The resulting alcohol is distilled off, mixed with ordinary vinegar and water and a "bacterial nutriment" and passed to "acetifiers." Here a secondary fermentation takes place and as the fluid comes from the acetifiers it contains as much as 12 to 13 per cent. of acetic acid. It is sold under the name of spirit vinegar. As it contains more than twice as much acetic acid as vinegar it is more pungent and pleasing to the debauched palate.

Vinegar is a condiment much used by urban populations. It is said to soften the fibres of hard meat and salads, but it can have little use in diet other than stimulating appetite. In small amounts it cannot be considered harmful to the normal person, but its use is contra-indicated in the hyperchlorhydric and the patient with a peptic ulcer.

There are various other flavourings and condiments which might be considered here—basil, bay leaves, marjoram, mint, parsley and thyme—but they are indifferently used in Great Britain, excepting mint, parsley and thyme. The use of mint and parsley might with advantage be greatly extended because of their content of ascorbic acid and mineral elements.

During wars the possible value of the **edible fungi** receives attention but they have practically no food value except as condiments. Anyone who wishes to follow this by-way in dietetics should read the charmingly written and illustrated King Penguin book.<sup>2</sup> Practically the only fungus eaten generally in the British Isles is the mushroom, and in the north, the blewit as well. It is a matter of common knowledge that mushrooms are not easily digested and as a result of balanced

		100 g. contain									
	Protein.	Fat.	Available Carbo- hydrate.	Na	K	Ca	Mg	Fe	Cu	P	Cl
	g.		g.	mg.	mg.	mg.	mg.	mg.	mg.	mg.	mg.
Raw	1.8	trace	0	9.1	407	2.9	13.2	1.03	0.64	136.0	84.0
Fried	2.2	22.3	0	11.0	665	3.5	16.0	1.25	0.78	166.0	103.0

<sup>1</sup> *Analyst*. (1938), **63**, 410.

<sup>2</sup> RAMSBOTTOM. (1943), *Edible Fungi*. Also (1953), *Proc. Nut. Soc.*, **12**, 39.

experiments that they are not well absorbed—in fact they have little but an exquisite flavour to recommend them. The same may be said of truffles.

Analyses of raw and fried mushrooms show that they are of negligible food value, but serve as a vehicle for fat (see table page 397).<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *op. cit.*

## CHAPTER XVII

### BEVERAGES

#### WATER

About two-thirds of the total weight of the body is made up of water. The importance of water as a tissue-builder and its right to rank as a true "food" are at once apparent from this statement.

The water in the body is "free," i.e. it is not chemically or physically so closely associated with the tissues that it cannot be removed by ultra-filtration. Ordinary solutes dissolve freely in it. The fluid in the intercellular spaces of the tissues, the body cavities, the lymph, and blood vessels contains predominantly sodium compounds. That within the tissues contains predominantly potassium. There can be free interchange of water between the tissues and the fluids which bathe the tissues (i.e. tissue fluid, lymph, and blood), but not normally of sodium and potassium. Anything which promotes free "circulation" of water from blood to tissue fluid and thence to the cells of tissues and out again is probably advantageous to cell metabolism, hence the value of drinking plentifully of water, of exercise, of perspiration, of massage and, perhaps, of Turkish baths.

The body is continually striking a balance between water intake and production in metabolism and water loss. Water is gained by the body (i) by drinking, (ii) by eating moist foods, and (iii) by metabolizing proteins, fats, and carbohydrates. A mixed diet may contain per day as much as 1000 ml. of moisture; 400 ml. may be produced by oxidizing proteins, fats, and carbohydrates. The average loss to the body is about 450 ml. through the skin, 300 ml. in the expired air, 1500 ml. in the urine, and 150 ml. in the faeces, or a total of 2400 ml. This leaves 1000 ml. as a minimum which must be made up by drinking.

All these figures are, of course, averages only, depending upon the temperature of the surroundings, the amount of exercise taken and the nature of the diet. If external temperature is high or exercise is great, much more water is excreted via the skin and the lungs, and if the water drunk is not increased, either the volume excreted in the urine will be decreased or the tissues dehydrated, or both. The importance of increasing fluid intake in such circumstances is obvious and fortunately it is usually automatically regulated by thirst. The loss in the faeces depends on the nature of the diet. If vegetarian, much more

is lost by that path than if the diet is predominantly animal in origin.

Dehydration of the body occurs if not enough water is drunk, if there is persistent vomiting or diarrhoea or if there is a loss of electrolytes from the body as in vomiting due to pyloric stenosis (loss of chlorides) or as in Addison's disease (loss of sodium ions). The effects of dehydration are as follows: (i) thirst, (ii) loss of weight, (iii) disturbance of the acid-base equilibrium, (iv) rise in the non-protein nitrogen of the blood, (v) wrinkling of the skin, recession of the eyeball, etc., and (vi) rise of temperature.

On the other hand, excess of water *in the tissues* will produce a fall of temperature, vomiting, convulsions, coma, and death. This state of water intoxication is not likely to be seen in man, except possibly in the treatment of diabetes insipidus with pituitrin, when water consumption has not been decreased and with tap water enemata.

The above facts have been cited to show that, while there is a distinct danger in drinking too little water, there is little or none in drinking much. We have stated above that the minimum daily intake with a normal diet, temperature surroundings, and a sedentary existence is 1000 ml. or  $1\frac{3}{4}$  pints. Much more can be taken without the slightest danger. So exact is the regulatory mechanism of the body, that two or three litres of water, taken on an empty stomach, will be excreted by the kidneys in the course of the next two or three hours without the concentration of the blood being significantly altered. The kidneys in such a case excrete practically distilled water.

Such water must pass from the bloodstream into the tissues to be stored there till excretion takes place. It is interesting to note that, according to Adolph, water taken on an empty stomach and passing as it does to the tissues, provokes a diuresis of greater volume than the fluid drunk. This may explain the observation, made by people taking strenuous exercise, that drinking water on an empty stomach leads to still greater thirst. Water taken with a meal is by no means rapidly excreted, a fact which should be utilized by cyclists, hikers, and enuretics. Diuretic drinks such as tea, coffee, alcohol, and to a less extent cocoa, may also increase thirst instead of assuaging it, if taken on an empty stomach.

We may sum up the practical results of the above considerations as follows:

- (i) The minimum intake of water should be about  $1\frac{3}{4}$  pints per day.
- (ii) This can be exceeded with advantage in evoking interchange between intracellular and extracellular fluid, without danger either to the normal person or the sick.
- (iii) Water taken on an empty stomach may even increase thirst.

- (iv) Except when taken in these circumstances, water is naturally the best thirst quencher, but if the stomach is empty milk is certainly better.

As we have indicated earlier, excessive perspiration in hot surroundings, or as the result of exercise, may deplete the body of sodium and then the fluid taken to replace the water lost should contain salt.

**Influence of Water on Digestion.** The first point which it is necessary to emphasize in this connection is that *water is not absorbed by the mucous membrane of the stomach*. This is certainly a surprising fact, but it has been incontestably established both by physiological experiment and by observations on patients suffering from obstruction at the outlet of the stomach.

When water enters the stomach, it begins to flow out into the intestine almost at once. Roughly speaking, one may assume that a pint of water will have entirely passed from the stomach in the space of about three-quarters of an hour. The precise rate of leaving, however, is very markedly influenced by temperature. Hot water escapes from the stomach much more rapidly than cold. The heat increases powerfully the movements of the stomach walls, and at the same time seems to cause the pylorus to open, so favouring the escape of the contents. The stimulating effects which hot water exerts on gastric peristalsis render it a powerful aid to sluggish digestion, while the "unlocking" of the pylorus which it brings about is probably the explanation of the almost instantaneous relief which it affords in many cases of stomach pain.

The fact that water is absorbed only in the intestine has important bearing on the treatment of patients suffering from dilated stomach. In the extreme form of that disease, when the stomach contents are quite unable to escape through the pylorus, the entrance of water into the blood is arrested, and the patient is the victim of a "tissue thirst," to which much of the emaciation and discomfort from which he suffers must be attributed. Not only is this so. The deficiency in the supply of water to the blood may go so far that the proper excretion of waste products is interfered with, and toxic symptoms, such as coma or convulsions, may then supervene. In such cases there is an imperious necessity for getting water into the blood *per rectum* or intravenously.

The rapidity with which water passes through the stomach causes it to be a very dangerous vehicle of infection, for the hydrochloric acid of the gastric juice has no time to act upon any germs which it may contain. For this reason contaminated water is a more obnoxious carrier of disease than impure milk.

It is commonly said that the free consumption of water at meals is apt to delay digestion by diluting the gastric juice. This statement is

not well grounded. Water is itself a slight, though unimportant excitant of gastric secretion, and experiment has shown<sup>1</sup> that even in quantities of  $\frac{1}{2}$  litre (about a pint) it does not in any way affect the rapidity of digestion. Even 1 litre produces only slight slowing, while it requires  $1\frac{1}{2}$  litres (about 3 pints) to produce any marked affect.

On the other hand, it must be remembered that water may actually hasten the digestion of some foods by softening them and favouring their reduction to a state of pulp, while hot water is, as we have seen, a powerful stimulant of the stomach movements.

While foods may readily enter the blood when taken without water, none the less drinking at meals facilitates the process of absorption. (Adolph.)

**Influence of Water on Metabolism.** The influence of water on the chemical processes of the body would seem to be very slight. It was formerly believed that an increased consumption of water was accompanied by an increased waste of the nitrogenous tissues. This is now regarded as an error. Any increased excretion of nitrogen which a free consumption of water entails is ascribed, not to an increased breaking-down of the body substance, but to a washing-out of the tissues and the elimination of waste matters loitering in them.<sup>2</sup> This eliminative function of water is one of the first importance. It indicates the necessity for a free supply of that fluid in such diseases as gout and fevers, and in diabetes when the blood sugar is high.

**Varieties of Water.** A good drinking water should have little or no colour, no odour, a pleasant, fresh taste, and should contain only a moderate amount of solid matter, 122 mg. per litre being a good average. A tumblerful of ordinary London water contains only about 65 mg. of solids. A wholesome water should contain very little organic matter, and that should be of vegetable origin, and if it has anything like a large proportion of chlorides it should be viewed with suspicion.

The amount of calcium salts which drinking water contains is a matter of some importance, and the relative merits of hard and soft water for drinking purposes have been much discussed. It has been maintained on the one hand that hard waters are apt to be productive, in those who habitually consume them, of such diseases as goitre and stone, while on the other hand it has been said that soft waters may favour the development of rickets. Neither of these contentions is very well founded, but it may be granted that it is well that the water one drinks should not contain more than 224 mg. of calcium salts in every litre, and that the sulphate of calcium is more likely to be harmful

<sup>1</sup> MILLER, BERGHEIM, REHFUSS, and HAWK. (1920), *Amer. Journ. of Physiol.*, 52, 28.

<sup>2</sup> See NEUMANN. (1899), *Archiv. f. Hygiene*, 36, 248; BERGHEIM and HAWK. (1931), *Physiological Chemistry*, 601.

than the carbonate, for in some susceptible persons its presence may excite dyspepsia and diarrhoea.<sup>1</sup>

The fear that the use of soft water may lead to the development of rickets is quite groundless. When one remembers that even a hard water only contains about 0.002 g. of calcium in every 100 ml. and that an infant requires about 0.32 g. daily, it will be evident that, as a source of calcium for the bones, water may be practically disregarded. On the other hand, there is no doubt that soft waters are more liable to become contaminated with lead than those which are richer in lime salts, and in that respect at least soft water may be a source of danger to health.

### MINERAL WATERS

From time immemorial the sight of water gushing from the rock has appeared miraculous and numinous<sup>2</sup> and should the water be hot, as at Bath, impregnated with carbon dioxide as at Matlock, or have a strong odour or taste, as at Bath and Tunbridge Wells, medicinal powers are attributed to them. At one time and another it has been, and possibly again will be, fashionable to "drink the waters" at various "spas," up and down the country. There was once one in Bermondsey, London, S.E., and at Sadlers Wells, W.C.1. For those who could not go to "drink the waters" they have been bottled and distributed through Europe, and thus has grown up a considerable trade in "mineral waters." To-day, though we may discount their health-giving powers, they are a useful mild stimulant to the flow of gastric juice or may be used to neutralize "acidity," or as a substitute for local drinking water which may be under suspicion or unpleasant to drink because too highly chlorinated.

**Natural Mineral Waters.** The following are obtainable in Great Britain:

#### NATURAL MINERAL WATERS

**Apollinaris.** An alkaline, highly aerated and slightly chlorinated water, containing sodium chloride and carbonates of sodium, calcium and magnesium, from a spring in the valley of the Ahr (Rhenish Prussia).

**Contrexéville.** A slightly gaseous water containing 2.3 g. of earthy carbonates per litre.

**Evian.** Nongaseous, slightly mineralized. Diuretic.

**Perrier.** A mildly alkaline, well-aerated natural water containing bicarbonate of soda mainly from Les Bouillens, Vergèze, in France.

**Rosbach.** A mildly alkaline, well-aerated water containing bicarbonates of calcium and sodium and a small amount of sodium chloride from a spring near Homburg.

<sup>1</sup> This is confirmed by the experience of three members of the family of one of us living during the war of 1939-45, in a part of Leicestershire where the content of calcium sulphate in the water is the highest we have met.

<sup>2</sup> The Roman name for Bath was Aquæ Sulis.

Vichy. A water of high alkalinity with 8 g. solid matter per litre, including 5 g. bicarbonate.

Vittel. Slightly mineralized with laxative and diuretic effect.

The acid neutralizing power of one litre of three of these waters expressed as decinormal sodium hydroxide is as follows: Apollinaris 367.2 ml.; Perrier, 60.0 ml.; 117.2 ml.; Vichy, 558 ml.

The dietetic advantages of the use of natural mineral waters may be presumed to be as follows. They have a pleasant, sharp taste due to the carbon dioxide with which they are impregnated, and there is evidence that that gas stimulates an early and abundant flow of gastric juice.<sup>1</sup> It also is said to stimulate gastric movement, while the bubbling of the gas through the stomach contents facilitates their disintegration. On the other hand, when the stomach is dilated, when there is a tendency to flatulence or when the heart is functioning abnormally, they should be avoided.

The slight alkalinity of some of them renders them useful additions to the more acid wines, and also in cases of hyperchlorhydria.

Unfortunately it cannot always be claimed for the mineral waters that they are always sterile, though their makers are extremely careful in preparing them, treating the bottles into which they are put with greater antiseptic care than is necessary, say, for beer. Generally speaking recognized brands may be trusted to contain no pathogenic organisms.

**Artificial Mineral Waters.** The method of impregnating ordinary water with carbon-dioxide was discovered by Priestly in the latter half of the eighteenth century. Mineral waters can be made by charging water with the gas, which to-day is an article of commerce, either liquid or solid, under high pressure. Ordinary bottles of aerated water contain 3 or 4 volumes of gas to one of water; syphons contain more. When the pressure is released the carbon dioxide comes out of solution, but not all at once. In doing so it withdraws heat from the water, so that aerated waters are always cooler to the tongue than ordinary water kept under the same conditions.

The varieties of artificial aerated waters which call for mention are as follows:

1. *Ordinary Water impregnated with Carbonic Acid Gas.* The best makers obtain the water from springs or artesian wells, so that it is of great purity. Ordinary water so impregnated is often, but erroneously, described as "soda-water." As soda is sometimes entirely absent, it is better to describe it simply as "aerated water."

2. *Aerated Distilled Water.* In this case the water is distilled prior to being charged with gas. It is therefore entirely free from mineral matter and from all impurities. An example of such water is "Salutaris".

<sup>1</sup> PENZOLDT. (1902), *Deut. Arch. f. Klin. Med.*, 73, 200.

### 3. *Water to which Various Chemical Salts have been added, e.g.:*

Soda water, containing 0.2–0.3 g. of sodium bicarbonate to the bottle.  
 Medicinal soda water, containing 1 g. of sodium bicarbonate ditto.  
 Potash water, containing 1 g. of potassium bicarbonate ditto.  
 Magnesia water, containing 0.8 g. of magnesium carbonate ditto.  
 Carrara water, containing 0.3 g. of calcium carbonate ditto.  
 Lithia water, containing 0.2–0.3 g. of lithium carbonate ditto.

4. *Imitations of Various Natural Mineral Waters.* One of the best examples of these is seltzer-water, which is intended to be a substitute for the natural water obtained from the Selters spring. Its ingredients are common salt, sodium bicarbonate, magnesium carbonate, and hydrochloric acid. By the interaction of these constituents an aerated water is produced which "gives a good imitation of the peculiar mellowness of genuine seltzer." An analysis of Schweppe's seltzer shows it to contain 1.6 g. of inorganic salts per imperial pint, or 0.8 g. per bottle. A tumblerful (5 oz.) has an acid-neutralizing power equal to that of 25 ml. of decinormal soda or 100 per litre.

The question of *natural versus artificial mineral waters* must be decided entirely in favour of the former. For one thing, the natural waters do not contain any excess of gas, and a larger proportion of what they do contain is present in a combined form than is the case with the artificial waters. Hence their gas is given off more slowly, and they remain longer brisk, and are less apt to lead to sudden distension of the stomach. The following experiment bears this out:

	Natural Water.	Artificial Water.	} Bottle opened and exposed for half an hour.
Gas evolved	480 ml.	760 ml.	
Gas remaining	1010 ml.	723 ml.	
Total	<u>1490 ml.</u>	<u>1483 ml.</u>	

There is also reason to believe that the effects of the salts in natural mineral waters are such as cannot be obtained from any artificial imitation of them. Zwaardemaker attributes important physiological actions to the radioactive elements, and these are sometimes found in the natural waters.

**Soft Drinks.** There is a large and popular group of beverages which includes lemonade, ginger-beer, *et hoc genus omne*. Mostly they consist of water sweetened with cane-sugar, rendered tart by the addition of an acid, flavoured in any way desired and finally charged with carbon dioxide. They are sometimes synthetic, but the trend in the best firms is to use flavourings extracted from root ginger and fresh fruits and

a proportion of fruit juice in specific fruit drinks. We give a recipe for making the basis of one of the more aristocratic of these drinks.

#### GINGER-ALE

Syrup (10 lb. sugar to 100 oz. of water)	.	1 gallon	(4.536 litres)
Compound tincture of ginger (or tincture of capsicum, 1 oz.)	.	4 oz.	(128 g.)
Citric or tartaric acid	.	4 oz.	(128 g.)
Colouring	.	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.	(14 g.)
1 to 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ oz. of this mixture are added to a bottle which is then filled with water and aerated.			

Genuine fermented ginger-beer ("stone-ginger") is a very different product. A wort made from water, sugar, bruised ginger, tartaric acid and oil of lemon is fermented by yeast, as in the case of beer. It often contains 2 per cent. of alcohol and sometimes more.

Most of these drinks, synthetic or otherwise, are probably harmless, except to the palate. The same observations as made above concerning mineral waters apply to them when treating dyspepsia and heart troubles. Moreover it must not be forgotten that they contain about 30 g. sugar to the bottle, and this must be taken into reckoning with diabetics.

✓ **Fruit Juices.** In the United States the production of fresh fruit juices has risen to enormous dimensions within the past decade. The juices are expressed from the fruits by special machinery adapted to each fruit, clarified or not according to whether the flavour is carried mainly in the pulp particles, bottled and pasteurized. This preserves the fruit flavour and a large proportion of the ascorbic acid in the original fruit, and, of course, the sugar. These juices are extremely pleasant to drink and have great value in the sick-room. Commercially they are of value in making use of gluts of fruit and preserving the value of the fruit till another time.

A small beginning<sup>1</sup> has been made in Britain in the supply of apple juice and blackcurrant syrup, though the price of the apple juice is higher than that of the same quantity of bottled cider. From the dietitian's point of view this is unfortunate.

It will be seen from the table that fruit juices are quite useful for Calories and excellent for vitamin C. Apple juice will, of course, have much less vitamin C, and its main use is that of giving pleasure, along with a small amount of Calories, though claims have been made that it is useful in treating intractable diarrhoea. Its sugar content (expressed as invert sugar) is 12.0 per cent. and its acidity (expressed as malic acid) is 0.5 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> None the less 200 million gallons were absorbed in 1951. Charley, V. L. S. (1952).

100 ml. contain

	Pro- tein.	Fat.	Carbo hyd- rate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Vita- min C.	Cal- ories 100 ml.	Cal- ories per oz
	g.	g.	g.	mg.	mg.	mg.		
Apple juice	trace	0	12.0	—	—	nil	47	13
Blackcurrant syrup	0	0	46.0	20	2.0	55	162	52
Orange juice	0	0	50.0	—	—	160	178	57
Rose-hip syrup	0.6	0	50.0	—	—	150	181	58

**Tea, Coffee, and Cocoa.** In four widely separated parts of the world man has discovered plants whose leaves or seeds, on extraction with water, yield stimulating drinks containing drugs of the methyl purine group. These drinks are tea, coffee, cocoa, and maté. Except for the last mentioned, these drinks have attained a world-wide popularity.

### TEA<sup>1</sup>

**History.** The earliest credible mention of tea was made in A.D. 350 and the first handbook on the subject in A.D. 780, both of course in Chinese. Tea was introduced into Europe by the Dutch East India Company in the year 1610. As its price was at first ten guineas a pound, it can be readily imagined that it grew but slowly in popularity, and even in 1660 we find Pepys writing in his *Diary*: "I sent for a cup of tee, a China drink, of which I had never drank before."

Up to the year 1862 nearly all our tea was obtained from China, the imports from that country reaching their maximum in 1879. Since that time the consumption of China teas has rapidly declined, their place being taken by Indian tea, and, since 1880, by teas grown in Ceylon.

**Mode of Manufacture.** The tea plant grows wild in Assam and attains a height of thirty feet, but it has been cultivated for centuries in China. The cultivated plant was called *Thea sinensis* by Linnaeus, who afterwards altered its name to camellia. Modern botanists, however, refer to both the wild and the cultivated plant as *Thea sinensis* and the camellia as *Thea Japonica*.

The plant "flushes" or sends out young shoots throughout the year in South India, Ceylon, Java, and Sumatra, but in North India, China, Japan, and Formosa the "flushes" occur roughly from spring to

<sup>1</sup> The standard work on tea is *All about Tea* by W. H. Ukers. The Tea and Coffee Trade Journal Co. (1935).

autumn only. A tropical climate is not essential for the cultivation of the tea plant.<sup>1</sup>

The young shoot has two small leaves at its tip which contain least fibre and most juice and therefore produce the finest sort of tea, but coarser pluckings, including three or even four leaves, are not rare (see Fig. 16). The terms Flowery Orange Pekoe, Orange Pekoe, and Pekoe now refer to the various grades of siftings. Flowery Orange Pekoe has many tips in evidence; the next finest is Orange Pekoe and after that Pekoe. The terms Pekoe Souchong and Souchong are used for teas containing coarser leaves.

The treatment of the leaves after they are picked varies according as black or green tea is to be produced.

For the production of *black tea*, the leaves are "withered," then rolled till they become soft and "mashy" (the object of this being to break up the fibre and cells of the leaf, and liberate the juices and enzymes), and then allowed to oxidize. During the process of oxidation, some of the polyphenols in the leaves appears to be oxidized and converted into red, brown, and insoluble quinones,<sup>2</sup> while an essential oil seems to be produced, and a slight bitterness developed. After oxidation is complete the leaves are "fired" in a drying-machine.

For the production of *green tea*, the fresh leaves are withered in hot pans at a temperature of 160° F. (Chinese method), or steamed (Japanese method). This destroys the oxidizing enzymes. Then they are rolled to break them up and liberate their juices; then "fired." Oolong teas are partially withered at ordinary temperatures before the enzymes are destroyed by heat.

It will be observed that the chief difference between black and green tea is that the oxidizing ferments are allowed to work in the former, and destroyed early in the latter and one of the main results of oxidation is to oxidize some of the polyphenols, so that, as we shall shortly see, an infusion of green tea contains more of them<sup>3</sup> than an infusion of black.

We have seen that the quality of teas varies with the age of the leaf from which they are prepared, the younger leaves yielding the finest tea. Apart from this cause of variation, teas show marked differences according to the country and district in which they are produced.

*Chinese teas* have the most delicate flavour of any, but are rather lacking in "body"; they are also devoid of any marked astringency, i.e. they have less "tannin."

*Indian teas*, and especially those produced in Assam, have the greatest degree of "body" and astringency. This makes them powerful

<sup>1</sup> DANIEL HALL. *Our Daily Bread*.

<sup>2</sup> ROBERTS, E. A. H. (1952). *J. Sci. Food and Agric.*, 3, 193.

<sup>3</sup> They are usually referred to as "tannin," though they will not tan leather.

teas, suited rather for blending with milder varieties than for drinking alone.

*Ceylon teas* have plenty of body, and a rich and peculiar flavour, but have not so much strength or pungency as the Indian varieties. The best pluckings are made in February, March, August, and September.

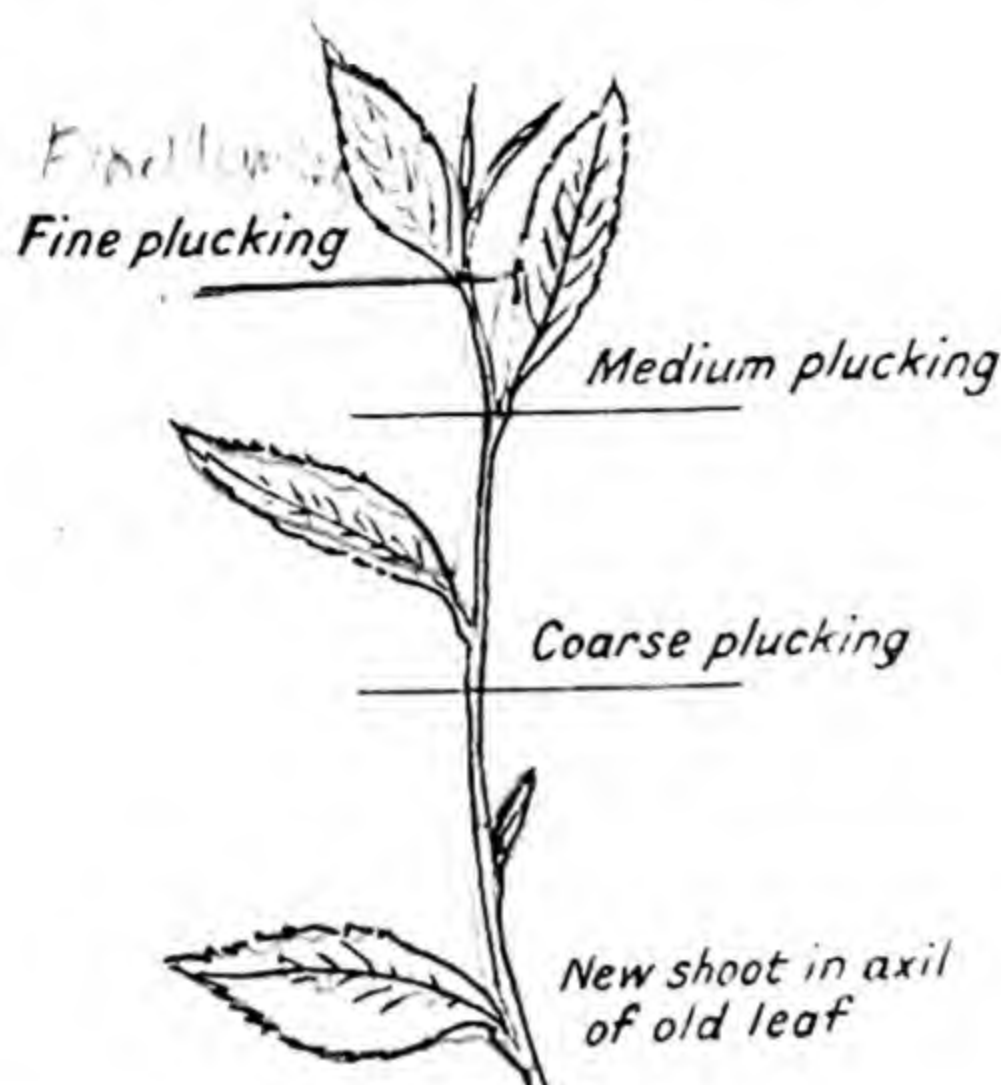


Fig 16

According to the district in which they are produced, *Chinese black teas* may be divided into:

1. Monings, from North China, with a small and delicate leaf and a peculiar malty flavour. They are called in the trade Black leaf congous.

2. Kaisows, from South China, the so-called red-leaf teas, because the original teas grown in this district had a reddish leaf. These are the Red leaf congous of commerce.

3. Oolongs, from Formosa and China, are semi-fermented teas, pungent and slightly bitter, yielding a pale infusion, and chiefly used for purposes of blending.

4. Scented Orange Pekoe and scented Caper come from the Canton district. They are scented by adding white jasmine, gardenia, and magnolia flowers after the last firing and are allowed to stay in contact with these flowers for 24 hours. They yield a pale, strong infusion with an aromatic flavour, for which reason they are used to give bouquet to blends. Caper is an unfermented tea, highly fired, and standing intermediate between the black and green varieties.

Of *Indian black teas*, those from the Darjeeling district are best,

being less rough and astringent than those from Assam, and well adapted for drinking alone. The best pluckings are made in June and October. It should be remembered that most black teas in the market are really blends of Indian, Ceylon, and China in different proportions.

Most *green teas* come from North China and Japan, the latter yielding the best. Very little is produced in India.

Other countries producing teas are Indo-China, Burma, Siam, Java, Sumatra, and Kenya. The U.S.S.R. are developing the cultivation of tea in the Caucasus.

In *judging a tea*, professional tea-tasters are guided by the nature of the liquor and the characters of the infused leaves or "out-turn."

The infusion should be of a reddish-golden colour, pungent in flavour, but not too bitter or astringent, and not "thin" or "hard."

The infused leaves should be of a bright coppery tint, and evenly extracted, so that some do not look darker than others; they should be uniform in size, and after five minutes' infusion should not be completely unrolled. There should not be too much stalk mixed with the leaves.

✓ **Chemical Composition of Tea.** The following analyses of teas are given by Ukers:<sup>1</sup>

COMPOSITION OF TEA						Per cent.
Water	.	.	.	.	.	5.00- 8.0
Caffeine	.	.	.	.	.	2.50- 5.0
Nitrogen	.	.	.	.	.	4.75- 5.5
Soluble matter	.	.	.	.	.	38.00-45.0
"Tannin"	.	.	.	.	.	7.00-14.0
Mineral elements <sup>2</sup>	.	.	.	.	.	5.00- 5.75

Of these ingredients, the most important are the alkaloid *caffeine* and *tannin*; for these, along with a small proportion of volatile oil ( $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.), are the ingredients to which the chief effects of tea on the body are due. The importance of the caffeine and tannin is so great that it may be well to bring forward some modern estimations of these ingredients in different teas which were made by Hosai. (Quoted by Ukers.)

COMPOSITION OF LEAVES OF TEA PLANT AND TEAS			
	Dried Leaf.	Green Tea.	Black Tea.
Crude Protein	37.33	37.43	38.90
" Fibre	10.44	10.06	10.07
Mineral matter	4.97	4.92	4.93
Caffeine	3.30	3.20	3.30
"Tannin"	12.91	10.64	4.89
Hot-water extract.	50.97	53.74	47.23
Ether extract	6.49	5.52	5.82
Total Nitrogen	5.97	5.99	6.22

<sup>1</sup> UKERS. *op. cit.*, I, 511.

<sup>2</sup> Oddly enough, there is fluorine among these.

Indian and Ceylon teas are richer in all the chief ingredients (caffeine, "tannin," and volatile oil) than China teas. Green tea is richer in "tannin" than black, but the amount of caffeine in the two is almost the same. A high-grade tea contains both more "tannin" and more caffeine than a low-grade tea.

The *composition of the infusion* is of much greater practical importance than that of the leaves from which it is made.

If tea is infused for five minutes in the usual way, about 25 per cent. of the weight of the leaf goes into solution. In making a large teacupful of tea (about 150 ml., or  $\frac{1}{4}$  pint), 5 g. (about  $\frac{1}{8}$  oz.) of dried leaf are usually employed, and a cupful of such tea contains in solution about 1 g. of solid matter. The bulk of this is made up of gummy matters, extractives, etc., but the most important ingredients are the caffeine, and "tannin."

Of these two ingredients the caffeine comes out much more readily than the "tannin," and the result of this is that second cups made from a further extraction of the leaves, as is the usual practice, contain much less of the stimulant and more of the astringent than the first cup. An illustration of this is seen in the comparison of the effect of 5 minutes' infusion compared with one hour's boiling.

	5 mins. Infusion.	1 hour's Boiling.
↑ "Tannin" . . . . .	7.3	12.4
Caffeine . . . . .	3.6	4.8
Soluble extract . . . . .	23.2	44.5 /

The practical inference is that, if we wish to avoid having much "tannin" in tea and yet a high proportion of caffeine, we should infuse it but for 5 or 6 minutes and then pour off the infusion into another teapot. If less "tannin" is desired, 3 minutes' infusion is better.

Hutchison made a number of experiments with the view of determining the amount of caffeine and tannic acid present in an ordinary teacupful of tea infused in the usual way. The results are contained in the tables on p. 412.

As a rule, one may say that a teacupful of tea of ordinary strength infused for five minutes contains about 1 gr. of caffeine, and from one and a half to three-times as much "tannin."

It may be well to give some practical *rules for the proper method of making tea* based on the facts as to its chemistry which we have just been considering. This is all the more important as it is comparatively rare to get a really good cup of tea, in spite of the popularity of the beverage. It must be admitted, too, that the fault lies oftener with the method of infusion than with the quality of the original leaf employed.

And, first, the tea should really be *infused*, i.e. boiling water should

CAFFEINE IN TEAS<sup>1</sup>

Tea.	Caffeine in g. per 150 ml.	
Ceylon Pekoe . . . . .	0.0787	equals 1.21 gr.
Fine Darjeeling . . . . .	0.0751	" 1.15 "
Common Congou . . . . .	0.0745	" 1.14 "
Moyune Gunpowder (green) . . . . .	0.0645	" 0.99 "
Imperial Gunpowder . . . . .	0.0590	" 0.90 "
Household blend . . . . .	0.0580	" 0.89 "
Young Hyson . . . . .	0.0547	" 0.84 "
Fine Moning . . . . .	0.0510	" 0.78 "
Fine Assam . . . . .	0.0475	" 0.73 "

## TANNIN IN TEAS

Tea.	Tannin as Gallo- tannic Acid per 150 ml. of Infusion.	
Moyune Gunpowder . . . . .	0.273	equals 4.20 gr.
Young Hyson . . . . .	0.242	" 3.72 "
Imperial Gunpowder . . . . .	0.227	" 3.49 "
Ordinary black blend . . . . .	0.173	" 2.66 "
Fine Darjeeling . . . . .	0.168	" 2.58 "
Good black blend . . . . .	0.168	" 2.58 "
Ceylon Pekoe . . . . .	0.142	" 2.18 "
Lapsang Souchong . . . . .	0.087	" 1.33 "
Fine Assam . . . . .	0.080	" 1.23 "
Fine Moning . . . . .	0.058	" 0.89 "

be poured on the leaves and allowed to stand thus for five minutes. The character of the water is of the first importance. The Chinese rule is "Take the water from a running stream; that from hill springs is best, river water is the next, and well water is the worst." The experience of one of us is, that in this country rain water is the worst, soft moorland water the next worst, and water of the hardness of London water the best for tea making, though tea dealers do not necessarily agree. The water should have just come to the boil. "The fire must be lively and clear, but the water must not be boiled too hastily. At first it begins to sparkle like crabs' eyes, then somewhat like fishes' eyes, and lastly it boils up like pearls innumerable, springing and waving about" is the quaint advice of the Chinese.

The quantity of leaf infused demands some attention. The domestic rule of "a teaspoonful for each person and one for the pot" is an uncertain one, for the weight of a spoonful of tea is a very variable quantity depending on the size of the leaves and the tightness with which they are rolled.

<sup>1</sup> Eight grammes of dry leaf were infused with 300 ml. boiling water for five minutes. The caffeine was estimated by Allen's method, and the tannin estimated by Procter's modification of Löwenthal's process.

Tea-tasters use the weight of a new sixpence ( $43\frac{1}{2}$  gr. or 2.9 g.) to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of water, and this, which is a somewhat smaller proportion of tea than that given by the domestic rule, yields a more satisfactory though weaker infusion. It must be remembered, however, that the popular taste is for a strong beverage with a good deal of "body."<sup>1</sup>

The use of a "cosy" during infusion does no harm, but as soon as the process is completed the liquor should be poured off into another hot teapot, which may then be kept covered if desired.

The addition of milk or cream, though an outrage in the eyes of connoisseurs, is to be commended on hygienic grounds, for the protein of the milk, combining with the tannin, forms an insoluble compound.

All second brews should be avoided, for a single infusion is sufficient to remove from the leaves all the useful constituents of the beverage.

### COFFEE

The tercentenary of the introduction of coffee into England by David Edwards was celebrated on March 25th, 1952, by the Lord Mayor of London's unveiling a plaque in St. Michael's Alley, Cornhill.<sup>2</sup> Coffee as a beverage has never attained the popularity it enjoys on the Continent and in the U.S.A. It is very expensive and, in Great Britain, we seldom make it correctly.

(Coffee is derived from the "*Coffæa arabica*," originally produced, as the name implies (in Arabia,) but now cultivated<sup>3</sup> in many tropical countries. The plant produces three harvests annually, the fruit resembling a cherry, in which the "coffee-bean" corresponds to the stone. The bean consists of two halves placed face to face and enclosed in a husk. The pulp is softened by fermentation and removed, and the beans, still enclosed in their husk, are dried in the air. The husk is separated by rolling, and the beans are then separated from the delicate parchment-like skin which covers them, and assorted according to size.)

**Varieties of bean** are found on the market, the chief being as follows:

1. *Mocha*. The genuine beans of this are derived from Arabia, the best from the Beni-Mattar country. The beans are small, hard, round, and irregular in form and size, olive-green to pale yellow in colour. The roast is poor and irregular. In the cup Mocha has a heavy body and smooth and delicious flavour. (Ukers.)

2. *Mysore*. A general name for Indian beans. The bean is small to large, blue-green in colour. It yields a strong flavour and deep colour.

<sup>1</sup> For the economical preparation of good tea the thorough crushing of the leaf is of great importance, so that its ingredients may readily be extracted. The powdered tea of Japan is ideal in this respect.

<sup>2</sup> According to UKERS. (1935), *All About Coffee*, The Tea and Coffee Trade Journal Co., Oxford anticipated London by two years.

<sup>3</sup> Cultivated coffee plants suffer from a fungus disease, *hemileia vastatrix*, while the wild plant in Ethiopia is free from it. F.A.O., 1952.

3. *Kenya*. Beans small and roundish with blunt ends, and of a greenish colour. The liquor is "mild," with full body, and of a flavour between that of Mysore and Costa Rica.

4. *Costa Rica*. A blue-greenish berry yielding a fine, mild-flavoured liquor, rich in body.

5. *Java*. A very fine coffee, with blue to pale yellow beans, yielding a smooth, light-coloured liquid.

6. *Sumatra*. The finest coffee the world produces. Large uniform green beans. Smooth heavy body, almost syrupy.

7. *Brazil*. 60 to 70 per cent. of the world's coffees come from Brazil, and 45 to 50 per cent. from the São Paulo district. Small bean resembling Mocha. Smooth, acid, and pungent in the cup.)

(In order to prepare the beverage, the berries must first be roasted. The **composition** of raw and roasted coffee) is contrasted by Triggs, quoted by Ukers.

#### COMPOSITION OF COFFEE

	MOCHA.	
	Green.	Roasted.
Caffeine . . . . .	1.3	1.28
Water extract . . . . .	31.27	30.44
Fat and oil . . . . .	14.04	14.18
Protein . . . . .	8.56	9.57
Crude Fibre . . . . .	22.46	15.41
Mineral elements . . . . .	4.20	4.43
Moisture . . . . .	9.06	3.36 )

The chief physical change which results from roasting is that the berries are rendered brittle and can now be ground. Chemically, one finds that they lose considerable weight, the loss consisting in nearly equal parts of moisture and organic matter. The lost organic matter includes some of the caffeine.<sup>1</sup> If the coffee is "over-roasted," the loss of caffeine may be considerably greater.

The aromatic substances which give its attraction to coffee are many, probably mainly heterocyclic mercaptans.

**Composition of the Infusion.** From 25 to 35 per cent. of the coffee used in making the infusion goes into solution. This percentage of solubility is about the same as that of tea, but seeing that a much larger quantity of coffee is taken than of tea, the amount of solids per cup is considerably higher in the former than in the latter beverage. If 2 oz. are used to make a pint,<sup>2</sup> a teacupful of the beverage will contain in solution 4.2 g. of solids, of which 0.65 is mineral matter.

<sup>1</sup> The fat is not much affected according to BENGIS and ANDERSON. (1934) *Journ. Biol. Chem.*, **105**, 139 (quoted by Ukers). The Polenske and Reichert-Meissl figures rise.

<sup>2</sup> One ounce of coffee to the pint is usually, however, regarded as enough to make a satisfactory beverage.

This is supposing the coffee to be filtered. As ordinarily drunk, some suspended matter must also be included.

An analysis made by Hutchison of coffee of the above strength, showed the presence of 1.7 gr. of caffeine per teacupful, and 3.24 gr. of "tannin."<sup>1</sup> According to this result, a cup of black coffee contains very much the same amount of caffeine and tannic acid as an equal quantity of tea. A breakfast-cupful of *café au lait* is composed of about 1 part of black coffee to 3 of milk, and will not, therefore, contain more of the alkaloid than a teacupful of tea.

[ *French coffee* demands a special word of mention. It usually contains more or less chicory, and sometimes also some burnt sugar. Chicory is the root of the wild endive, kiln-dried and broken into fragments. The process of drying converts its sugar, of which it may have 10 to 18 per cent., into caramel. There is no reason to believe that chicory is in any way injurious to health, but its cheapness is a great temptation to use it as an adulterant, a process which has done much to discourage the consumption of coffee. As a rule, French coffee contains about one-third of its weight of chicory, but sometimes the proportion may be as high as 80 per cent., or even more. )

The secret of having good coffee is to make it *strong* and to make it *hot*. We mostly fail in this country by not using enough. One ounce to the pint is the smallest proportion which will give a good result. It is important that the coffee should be freshly roasted, or if bought roasted it should be bought in small vacuum sealed tins. If the beans are roasted and ground at home, they should be of one size or they will be unequally fired. Blending or mixing should be done after roasting. Its fragrance is quickly dissipated on keeping. Care also must be taken that the grinder is quite clean, for if *any stale coffee is left in it the whole may be spoilt*. The best way of making coffee is to extract the freshly roast and ground coffee overnight with *cold* water, strain it and rapidly bring the extract to a temperature at which it is worth drinking. Boiling an infusion ruins the flavour. The usual way is to pour boiling water over the freshly ground coffee. The water should be just boiling, and infusion be carried out in a jug. For breakfast coffee a mixture of coffees—e.g. half and half Mocha and Plantation—may be used, and the addition of a little ground chicory is liked by some, but for black coffee the latter should always be omitted. Three parts of milk to one of coffee is about the proper proportion for *café au lait*.

Nescafé is a vacuum dried extract of pure coffee and is very convenient in these hurried days and useful in flavouring junkets and ices.

## COCOA

Cocoa was first brought to Europe from Mexico by the Spaniards

<sup>1</sup> Reckoned as gallo-tannin.

early in the sixteenth century.<sup>1</sup> It was known as "cacao," but the name got changed with the lapse of time. Although introduced considerably earlier than either tea or coffee, it is only of late years that it has attained any wide popularity, and that chiefly through the energy and enterprise of some of its manufacturers.

(The cocoa-plant is the "*Theobroma cacao*," the fruit of which resembles a vegetable marrow or cucumber. Embedded in the pulp of the fruit are many seeds, each about the size of a haricot bean, and it is from these that cocoa is prepared. The seeds are separated from the pulp, and placed in heaps for several days to ferment, or "sweat."<sup>2</sup> This causes any adherent pulp to become loose, and at the same time modifies the bitterness<sup>3</sup> of the seeds and produces in them a dark colour. They are then roasted, which renders them brittle and loosens the husk, so that the two halves of the seed come out separately on pressure in a machine as *cocoa-nibs*.)

The nibs are either sold as such or are ground between hot rollers, which, by melting the fat that they contain, renders them fluid. Much of the fat is removed by pressure, and the remainder of the cocoa is then run into moulds, from which it is removed as slabs. For conversion into "soluble cocoa" or "cocoa essence" the slabs are ground to an impalpable powder.)

Various names are applied to different preparations of cocoa. The method of preparing *soluble cocoa* has just been described; but it should be noted that the term is really a misnomer, for, strictly speaking, there is no such thing as a soluble form of cocoa. All that the term implies is that the powder is so finely divided that it easily remains in a state of suspension when mixed with water. In order to aid the suspension, various methods of treating the cocoa are sometimes adopted. The addition of potassium or sodium carbonate is a favourite device, especially with Dutch manufacturers. It aids suspension by saponifying and emulsifying the fat, and at the same time softens the fibre of the cocoa, so that it can form a sort of pulp with water. It also has the effect of deepening the colour of the beverage, and so of making it look stronger. The addition of alkali is objected to by some as being injurious to health, but it is very doubtful if that can be fairly alleged against it. There are also methods of increasing the solubility of cocoa by the aid of heat, and to these no objection can be urged.

✓ **Chemical Composition of Cocoa.**<sup>4</sup> The general composition of the cocoa-bean is shown in the following table.

<sup>1</sup> For a history of Cocoa see *The Food of the Gods*, by Brandon Head (George Routledge and Sons. Ltd.).

<sup>2</sup> If this is done in tropical sunlight the yeasts which cause the fermentation become endowed with vitamin D, which may ultimately appear in the cocoa.

<sup>3</sup> Probably by oxidizing the polyphenols. Too little oxidation results in bitterness; too much in insipidity.

<sup>4</sup> See also ALLEN'S *Commercial Organic Analysis*, 3, Part 2.

## COMPOSITION OF COCOA

	Analysis of Raw Trinidad Nibs. <sup>1</sup> Per Cent.	Analysis of Shelled Fresh Cocoa-beans. <sup>2</sup> Per Cent.
Water . . . . .	5.23	7.6
Fat . . . . .	50.44	49.9
Starch . . . . .	4.20	2.4
Protein, soluble. . . . .	6.3	10.9
"    insoluble. . . . .	6.3	
"Tannin" . . . . .	6.71	0.2
Gum . . . . .	2.17	2.4
Cellulose . . . . .	6.40	10.6
Alkaloid . . . . .	0.84	3.3
Cocoa-red . . . . .	2.20	?
Undetermined . . . . .	5.80	5.3
Mineral elements . . . . .	2.75	4.0

The chief ingredient is fat, of which the cocoa-bean contains about half its weight. In the commercial powder, however, there is only about 30 per cent. present, the remainder having been removed by pressure.

Cocoa contains a considerable proportion of nitrogen, but it must be carefully noted that not all this represents protein. Part also is contained in theobromine.

The chief alkaloid found in cocoa is theobromine.<sup>3</sup> *Theobromine* is known chemically as dimethyl-xanthine, and it is closely related to caffeine, which is trimethyl-xanthine. Cocoa contains from 1 to 2 or more per cent. of it, or about as much as there is of caffeine in coffee.

Cocoa contains also some tannin, though probably not of exactly the same form as that found in coffee and tea. It seems to be combined with a pigment to which the name of cocoa-red is given, but the exact relationship of the two substances has not been fully determined.

Starch is present to the extent of 8 per cent. (Winton, Silverman, and Bailey).<sup>4</sup>

The proportion of mineral elements is high, amounting in raw cocoa to from  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. Copper and manganese are present and iron  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  mg. per 100 g. After the fat has been partly removed, the

<sup>1</sup> Inland Revenue Laboratory.

<sup>2</sup> Boussingault.

<sup>3</sup> Analyses in 1935 from the laboratories of Fry & Sons show the presence of caffeine:

		Beans.	Cocoa.	Plain Chocolate.	Milk Chocolate.
Theobromine	1.04	(0.82-1.32)	1.5	0.3	0.15 per cent.
Caffeine	0.4	(0.14-0.73)	0.6	0.1	0.05 " "

<sup>4</sup> Quoted by WINTON and WINTON. (1939), *The Structure and Composition of Foods*. Chapman & Hall, Ltd., 4, 121.

proportion of ash rises to 4 or 5 per cent.; or, if alkali has been artificially added, it may amount to 8 per cent. The ash is strongly alkaline, and in the artificial preparations consists chiefly of potash and phosphoric acid.

**Chocolate** consists of ground cocoa-nibs to which cocoa butter is added, together with cane-sugar and vanilla flavouring. The inferior varieties are made from unfermented beans, and therefore have a bitter taste. Good chocolate should melt easily in the mouth, and should not sweat out any sugar in the form of a bloom. The taste also should be free from any roughness or astringency. The white part of chocolate creams consists of a mixture of cane-sugar and glucose.

The table on the opposite page shows some analyses of cocoas, drinking and eating chocolate.

### USES OF TEA, COFFEE, AND COCOA

Tea contains caffeine (1,3,7,trimethyl-xanthine) and theophylline (1,3,dimethyl-xanthine);<sup>1</sup> coffee, caffeine; and cocoa, theobromine (3,7,dimethyl-xanthine). Of these, much the most active and important is caffeine.

Caffeine is a stimulant which affects the nervous system and the kidneys. In the nervous system it influences the higher "psychic" centres more than the medullary centres and these more than the spinal cord. Pavlov states that it is impossible to inhibit conditioned reflexes when the animal is under the influence of caffeine, and the alkaloid has therefore an effect on the cortex of the brain. It undoubtedly "clears the mind," abolishes a sense of fatigue and often induces sleeplessness. Tea and coffee certainly are great aids to mental work.

Respiratory and cardiac centres are also stimulated by caffeine and there is a direct effect on the coronary arteries, which are dilated. The basal metabolism of a group of coffee drinkers was found to be 6 per cent. higher than that of a control group of abstainers from coffee.<sup>2</sup> It is also said to raise the blood-sugar level. As a result of the quickening of respiration, the alveolar carbon dioxide is lowered. Apart from its action in improving the circulation of blood it causes diuresis by direct action on the kidney. It decreases the reaction time and the latent period of reflexes and stimulates the capacity for muscular work.<sup>3</sup> It is not cumulative nor habit forming, and it has no after effects. The other purine derivatives have rather less effect than caffeine, but the action is similar.

<sup>1</sup> Also tetramethyluric acid (tetramethyloxanthine).

<sup>2</sup> HACKETT. (1931), *Journ. Home. Econ.*, **13**, 769.

<sup>3</sup> RIVERS and WEBBER. (1907), *Journ. Physiol.*, **36**, 33.

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Ash.	Theo- bromine and Caffeine.	Calories per oz.	Notes.
Bournville cocoa	. . .	26.5	36.0*	7.7	2.3	134	A typical modern cocoa powder.
Cup chocolate	. . .	19.4	71.1†	1.4	about 0.4	140	A drinking chocolate in flake form.
Red Label chocolate	. . .	6.9	82.5†	1.6	" "	121	A drinking chocolate in powder form.
Bournvita	. . .	8.1§	72.3†	3.0	—	120	Combination of malt, milk, egg, and chocolate powder.
Cocoa and milk powder	. . .	5.7§	76.2†	3.3	about 0.4	118	A sweetened blend of cocoa and milk solids.
Bournville chocolate	. . .	32.5	59.9†	1.2	0.4	160	Eating chocolate.
" milk chocolate	. . .	35.0§	53.0†	2.0	0.2	161	Eating chocolate.
Rowntree's Elect cocoa	. . .	24.0	41.1¶	7.7	2.3	100	An alkalized cocoa essence.
" drinking chocolate	. . .	6.6	73.4	2.5	0.8	106	
" milk chocolate	. . .	32.8	52.6	1.8	0.18	155	Cocoa-nibs, sugar, full cream dried milk, and added cocoa butter.
Fry's plain chocolate	. . .	31.7	62.2†	0.9	0.5	160	3 per cent. of the fat is butter fat. 1 I.U. vitamin D per g. chocolate.
" milk chocolate	. . .	32.3	56.8†	1.6	0.1	160	Vitamin A = $\frac{1}{4}$ that of early summer butter. Vitamin D 9 I.U. per oz. chocolate.
" cocoa	. . .	23.0	40.8	7.4	2.6	128	
Cadbury's Diabetic chocolate	. . .	39.0	38.6	2.0	about 0.4	158	5.9 per cent. cocoa starch
							0.1 " " reducing sugar
							32.6 " " Sorbitol.

\* Starch, dextrins, etc.

† Cane-sugar added.

‡ Inclusive of lactose and cane-sugar.

§ Inclusive of lecithin and milk fat.

¶ Inclusive of milk protein.

¶¶ Cocoa-starch, pentosans, etc.

Clearly these alkaloids are extremely useful and their effects account for the very extended use of the beverages containing them by people in all ages and countries. On the other hand their pharmacological properties are too mild seriously to interest pharmacologists and clinicians to-day, for much more potent drugs have been discovered.<sup>1</sup>

The common practice in this country among the well-to-do is to take tea at afternoon tea only, and coffee at breakfast, after lunch, and after dinner. Nearly everyone lower in the social scale takes tea at breakfast and in the afternoon and possibly before breakfast, at mid-morning, after the midday meal, with the evening meal and perhaps just before bed. In Canada, and in Australia, it is drunk with each of the three meals.

There is a strong medical prejudice against taking tea with any meat meal in Great Britain, and the belief is entertained that the tannin in the tea "tans" the protein of the meat and makes it indigestible. But no objection is raised to the tanning of the protein of fish and eggs at breakfast, which must be almost as serious, nor to the effects of tannin in coffee or wine. Attempts have been made to justify objections in the taking of tea and coffee at meals by experiments *in vitro* and *in vivo*.

Thus *in vitro* the presence of tea inhibits the digestion of boiled starch to maltose by the ptyalin of the saliva. This inhibition seems to be due to the tannin, for it is less with a good China tea than with an Indian tea, with its higher content of tannin, and the effect disappears entirely if milk be added, which combines with the tannin and puts it out of action.

*In vivo* it has been claimed by a succession of workers that tea and coffee delay peptic digestion, although Miller and his colleagues<sup>2</sup> found that the emptying of the stomach is not appreciably delayed by 1 litre of tea or coffee, and that a delay apparently caused by an equal quantity of cocoa is due to the sugar normally taken with it.

As regards the practical inferences to be drawn from these and similar experiments, it may be said that in health the disturbance of digestion by these infused beverages is negligible. Only when the digestion is enfeebled or when the patient is sensitive to tea or coffee is caution necessary. It is usual to restrict the consumption of tea and coffee in gastritis, gastric and duodenal ulcer. It may be wise to forbid coffee entirely and recommend that weak China tea, freshly infused and poured off the leaves, be taken at the end of the meal in its place not more than twice a day. These beverages should not be taken on an empty stomach.

<sup>1</sup> The late A. J. CLARK. Private communication.

<sup>2</sup> MILLER *et al.* (1920), *Amer. Journ. Physiol.*, 52, 28.

When we turn to the question to what extent these beverages can be indulged in without injury to health, we find it very difficult to give a definite reply. The part played by personal peculiarity and habit in the matter is very great. It has been pointed out, for example, that the usual result of drinking tea and coffee is to produce wakefulness, but yet there are persons who find their use in the evening conducive to sleep. Some people, again, can drink tea quite freely, but are made ill by coffee, or *vice versâ*. Facts like these must be recognized although one is unable to explain them, and they make it impossible to lay down definite rules regarding the dietetic use of tea and coffee.

The evil effects of drinking tea and coffee have been grossly exaggerated. To talk of "tea drunkenness" is absurd. It is true that a tea taster, if he swallows the fluid, may become "jumpy," and in the highly nervous person indulgence in these drinks may produce loss of sleep, tremulousness, palpitation, and depression. We can infer that they should be used sparingly by "nervous" people and by dyspeptics.<sup>1</sup> Since the alkaloids present in these drinks are related to uric acid it used to be the practice to forbid them to gouty patients, but this is rarely necessary.

The place of *cocoa* in the diet is not really very different from that of tea and coffee. An examination of the chemical composition of cocoa might lead one to suppose that it was of considerable nutritive value.<sup>2</sup> But that would be a mistake. Theoretically, cocoa is a valuable food, but practically it is not, the reason being that so little of it can be taken at a time. In this respect it is exactly comparable to many of the beef-extracts already considered.

It takes about 10 g. ( $\frac{1}{3}$  oz.) of cocoa to make a breakfastcupful of the beverage, and, assuming the average composition given already, this would yield about 40 Calories. It would, therefore, require fully seventy-five such cupfuls to yield the total amount of potential energy demanded of the body daily—obviously an impossible quantity. Of course, if the beverage is prepared entirely with milk and plenty of sugar it becomes an important food, but that is due to the milk and sugar, and not to the cocoa. Chocolate is of more value. Half a pint of milk and 2 oz. of chocolate yield together fully 400 Calories, and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  pints would suffice to supply all the energy and a large part of the building material required in a day.

The action of cocoa on the nervous system is very much less than that of tea or coffee, owing to the small amount of alkaloid which it contains; indeed, it may be practically ignored.

<sup>1</sup> See also the chapter "Caffeine Beverages," by the late W. E. DIXON. (1930). in *What We Drink*, Heinemann.

<sup>2</sup> For the unimportance of cocoa and chocolate as sources of protein, see MITCHELL, BEADLES, and KEITH. (1926), *Journ. biol. Chem.*, 71, 15.

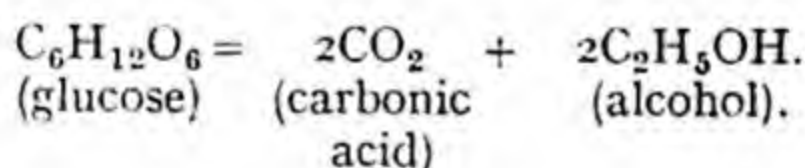
## PARAGUAY TEA

Paraguay tea or maté is the dried leaves of *Ilex paraguayensis* which belongs to the holly family. It contains 1-2 per cent. of caffeine along with tannin, volatile ether extract, resin, and sucrose. It yields a pale infusion of somewhat bitter and harsh flavour. It is stated to be even more stimulating and sustaining than tea or coffee, and less apt to cause indigestion and sleeplessness.

Owing to the injurious effects of tea and coffee on the digestion and nervous system in some persons, various substitutes for them in the diet have been proposed. Among these are *Ovaltine*, which is composed of malt extract, milk, eggs, and cocoa, and contains a considerable percentage of lecithin. It has 8.01 per cent. fat, 67.9 per cent. of carbohydrates, 14.2 per cent. protein, and 1.18 per cent. mineral elements. Cadbury's *Bournvita* preparation of a similar type.<sup>1</sup> *Colact*, made by Glaxo Laboratories, contains 19 per cent. protein, 19 per cent. fat, 55.7 per cent. carbohydrate and 65 I.U. vitamin D per oz. Various *Cereal Coffees*, made from parched grains of barley, wheat, etc., are also prepared, especially in America. *Instant-Postum* is an example. One or other of these substitutes is sometimes found of use in replacing tea or coffee when these are forbidden on medical grounds.

ALCOHOL AND ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES

The only form of alcohol with which we are seriously concerned in dietetics is ethyl alcohol ( $C_2H_5OH$ ). It is produced, in most of the beverages in which it is found, from the fermentation of glucose by yeast, according to the well-known equation:



We shall subsequently discover that the special characters of different alcoholic beverages depend to some extent on the particular substrate and yeast concerned in the fermentation. It must also be borne in mind that the process of fermentation as carried on in the manufacture of alcoholic drinks is never such a simple affair as the above equation might induce one to believe. By-products are invariably produced as well as alcohol, and the nature and amount of these profoundly influence the character of the resulting beverage. Of all alcoholic drinks, however, it remains true that the principal constituent by which they affect the body is ethyl alcohol.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Also they are pleasant to eat, dry, with cream.

<sup>2</sup> For a detailed account, see *Alcohol: its Action on the Human Organism*, Third edition (1938). H.M. Stationery Office.

**Local Effects of Alcohol.** The local effects of alcohol are those of a chemical irritant. If some strong spirit, such as whisky or brandy, is taken into the mouth, a sensation of burning is produced, owing to the irritation of the nerve endings, and by and by the mucous membrane becomes somewhat corrugated and whitened by reason of the removal of water from its surface cells and the coagulation of their protoplasm. Repeated local irritation of this sort is the exciting cause of the pharyngitis and gastric catarrh often observed in those who are in the habit of drinking neat spirits, especially on an empty stomach, where the alcohol can come into direct contact with the mucous membrane. The stimulation of the nerves of the mouth brings about reflexly a profuse flow of saliva, and in this way alcohol may promote salivary digestion, for its retarding influence in the chemical transformation of starch into sugar is so slight that it may be neglected.

**Effects of Alcohol on Digestion.**

1. It increases the flow of gastric juice with much hydrochloric acid and little pepsin. Stronger and large doses evoke less gastric juice and more mucus.

2. It has a carminative effect on the stomach, i.e. quietens its muscular activity. Carlson found that 2-4 oz. of 10 per cent. alcohol abolished hunger contractions for two hours.

3. The activity of pepsin is markedly decreased only when the concentration of alcohol present is over 10 per cent., which is very rarely the case in the stomach.

Pancreatic ferments are checked in action by 2-3 per cent. of alcohol *in vitro*, but it is probable that drinks are so diluted when they reach the small intestine that digestion there is not impeded.

We can safely say that moderate quantities of alcohol when mixed with other foods have no serious effect upon digestion.

One defence of the use of alcohol is that, by its depressant action on the central nervous system, it may banish the worries that would otherwise reflexly depress secretion and mobility of the stomach, but experiment upon this point is difficult. People who are used to taking alcohol with a meal do not enjoy the meal so much when it is absent and possibly may not secrete so much gastric juice. The teetotaler does not miss it.

Alcohol, unlike any other fluid or food, is very rapidly absorbed through the walls of the stomach, and while there is no evidence that it carries with it the products of digestion, it can carry substances like chloral and strychnine more rapidly into the blood-stream.

**Metabolism and Alcohol.** That alcohol can act as a *food* is undoubted, but it acts as a Calorie food only. It cannot take the place of proteins, inorganic elements, or vitamins. In the form in which it is usually taken, beer, wines, or spirits, it contains little or no vitamins,

though there is evidence that thiamine,<sup>1</sup> riboflavine and nicotinic acid in small amounts are found in beers. There is so little thiamine in alcoholic beverages that they induce neuritis by decreasing the intake of foods containing that vitamin.

Consequently, the consumption of alcoholic beverages can be defended only on the grounds that alcohol can be burnt by the tissues of the body with the production of Calories. It is completely absorbed, partly in the stomach but mainly in the small intestine; and it is absorbed more rapidly than almost any other food. It reaches its maximum concentration in the blood in from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 hours.<sup>2</sup> The concentration in the blood depends upon the concentration in the fluid drunk.

The rapidity with which it enters the bloodstream is greatly decreased by taking it with food, especially with foods containing fat.

One-fiftieth to one-tenth of the alcohol drunk may be excreted in the breath and in the urine. The remainder is metabolized, i.e. burnt to carbon dioxide and water. The rate of combustion is somewhat slow, being about 7 ml. of absolute alcohol per hour, i.e. the amount found in 100 ml. of a mild claret. But it can be used to supply energy and to "spare" protein just as carbohydrate can "spare" protein. As it enters the blood so rapidly and as it needs no preparation for combustion, it can conceivably be used in emergencies when it is necessary to give a person, who has exhausted his store of carbohydrates, rapidly available fuel material.

**Pharmacology of Alcohol.** Alcohol is usually referred to as a *stimulant*. This is a misnomer. Throughout the body, particularly in the nervous system, it acts as a depressant. It produces its euphoria by blunting self-criticism. It weakens self-control, dulls sense-perception, and impairs the accuracy of skilled movements. "Under the influence of alcohol, accuracy, avoidance of accident, tactful handling of colleagues and subordinates, observance of discipline, punctuality, reticence in matters of confidence, are all jeopardized. . . ."<sup>3</sup> It is, in fact, a narcotic.

There is little or no satisfactory evidence that it has any effect on the respiratory system of practical value. In small doses it does not alter the rate of beat of the isolated heart and in large doses it decreases that rate. Its influence on the actual blood pressure is small. It does, however, dilate the superficial bloodvessels and so may as a secondary effect increase the pulse rate.

When alcohol appears to promote recovery from fainting it is

<sup>1</sup> BOAS-FIXSEN and ROSCOE, (1937), *Nut. Abs. and Rev.*, 7, 823. Riboflavine and nicotinic acid are found in beers.

<sup>2</sup> E. MELLANBY, (1919), *Med. Res. Comm. Spec. Rep.* No. 31.

<sup>3</sup> *Alcohol: its Action on the Human Organism*, 3rd edn. (1938), 45.

probably because strong spirit has been given, resulting in a painful stimulus to the mucous membrane. Painful stimuli, wherever applied—e.g. smelling salts to the nasal mucous membrane—have a similar beneficial effect.

Whenever alcohol has an apparently restorative effect in disease, this is due to localized stimulation or a generalized narcotic and sedative action. To-day there are other more powerful and valuable drugs in the pharmacopæa.

As is well known, its effect in apparently raising the temperature is illusory. It certainly makes a person feel warmer, but that is because of the dilatation of the blood-vessels of the skin. The feeling of added warmth is deceptive. What is really happening is that the alcohol increases the loss of heat from the body. People frozen to death have often met that fate through having been drunk when the cold overtook them.

**Alcohol in Dietetics.** There is little then to be said in favour of alcohol and alcoholic drinks either from the dietetic or medical standpoint. Medical opinion is reflected in the very marked decrease in the use of alcoholic drinks in hospital practice, as is reported elsewhere in this book (pp. 502–7). Dietetics rarely pays them much attention. The utmost that can be said for them is that (1) they have acquired the value of a social gesture of hospitality, (2) they are pleasant drinks to those accustomed to them, and (3) they promote a pleasant euphoria, which, however, is not without its dangers to people with an “escapist” tendency.<sup>1</sup> According to McDougall, alcohol enables the introvert to become extravert.<sup>2</sup> People who are used to alcohol may often be allowed it in their diet when they are on special diets, because they are miserable without it and the misery produces a more deleterious effect than the alcohol.

### ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES

In this country the standard employed is usually what is known as *proof spirit*, and an alcoholic liquor is said to be so much above or so much under “proof.” Proof spirit is a mixture of alcohol and water, which contains 49·28 per cent. of the former by weight (i.e. 100 g. contains 49·28 g. alcohol),<sup>3</sup> and 57·10 per cent. by volume (i.e. 100 ml. contains 57·10 ml. alcohol). “The name proof spirit owes its origin to the practice in vogue during last century, of testing the strength of

<sup>1</sup> The deaths from alcoholism is only one-eighth of what it was in 1901. The cirrhosis figure was 2000 in 1901; it fell to 774 in 1944 and has risen to 1124 in 1952.

<sup>2</sup> McDougall. (1944). *An Outline of Abnormal Psychology*, 4th edn.

<sup>3</sup> 100 g. of proof spirit has a volume of about 110 ml. for shrinkage occurs when water and alcohol are mixed.

samples of alcohol by pouring them on to gunpowder and applying a light. If the sample contained much water the alcohol burned away, and the water made the powder so damp that it did not ignite; but if the spirit were strong enough the powder took fire. A sample which just succeeded in igniting the powder was called proof spirit" (Perkin and Kipping). Spirits are described as being *over proof* when they are stronger than proof spirit, and *under proof* when they are weaker. Thus, 20 over proof means that 100 volumes of the spirit contain as much alcohol as 120 of proof spirit, and 20 under proof means that 100 volumes only contain as much alcohol as 80 of proof spirit.

Instead of using proof spirit as the standard, it is more convenient to speak of the amount of alcohol as being so much *per cent.* The percentage may further be stated either in weight or in volume. Five per cent. of alcohol by weight means, strictly speaking, that 100 g. of the liquid in question contain 5 g. of alcohol; but more usually the expression is used for weight in volume—i.e. 5 g. of alcohol in 100 ml. Five per cent. by volume means 5 ml. in every hundred, and is equivalent to about 4 per cent. by weight.<sup>1</sup> The average percentage of alcohol by volume in some of the commoner alcoholic beverages is roughly as follows:<sup>2</sup>

SPIRITS:		Per cent. by volume
Gin, Whisky, Brandy, Rum.	25 under proof	43
	35 " "	37
Wines:		
Port	.	20
Sherry	.	20
Madeira	.	20
Burgundy	.	14
Champagne	.	10
Claret	.	10
Hock	.	10
Vermouth	.	14-20
Empire wines	.	15-22
British wines	.	16
CIDER (Bottle)	.	4.3
BEER (English):		
Ale	.	3.1-6.6
Stout	.	3.9-5.3
Porter	.	4.0

In France and most other countries the amount of alcohol in wines is estimated by volume and is expressed in "degrees." Thus a wine of 10 degrees strength contains a tenth of its volume of alcohol.

<sup>1</sup> ml. alcohol in 100 vols.  $\times 0.8 =$  g. in 100 vols.

Grammes alcohol in 100 vols.  $\times 1.25 =$  ml. in 100 vols.

" " in 1 litre  $\times 7 =$  gr. per gallon (6 bottles).

<sup>2</sup> Quoted from *Alcohol: Its Action on the Human Organism*. (1938), H.M.S.O.

**Spirits.** Spirits are obtained by the fermentation of various sugars, the alcohol and other volatile bodies produced being separated by distillation. It is this fact of their being the products of distillation which gives to spirits their high alcoholic strength, and distinguishes them from all other alcohol-containing beverages. Almost any substance capable of yielding a fermentable sugar may form the basis. Amongst the substances most commonly used in this country are malted and unmalted barley, maize, rice, sugar, and molasses. In some parts of Europe, and especially in Russia, potato starch is largely employed for the purpose. All of these substances yield alcohol on fermentation, but in addition various by-products make their appearance during the process, and it is to the presence of these that the characteristic flavour of the different spirits is due.

Thus, the by-products of the fermentation of malted barley give rise to the flavour of whisky, those of molasses to the flavour of rum, and those of the grape to that of brandy. By means of patent stills the by-products can be almost entirely separated from the alcohol with which they are mixed, and the result is an almost pure form of spirit, the origin of which can scarcely be told, for which reason it is called *silent spirit*. By suitable flavouring the clever manufacturer can make this the basis of almost any spirituous drink.

Among the by-products of fermentation there are usually found small amounts of alcohols of a higher molecular weight than ethyl alcohol. These are isoamyl,  $\delta$ -amyl, propyl and isobutyl alcohols, among others, and to a mixture of these the term *fusel-oil* is often applied. This fusel-oil is the result of the action of the yeast upon the amino acids of the substrate upon which it works. If there is much isoleucine in the substances fermented (as, for example, in molasses used in the production of rum),  $\delta$ -amyl alcohol will be found in the spirit produced; if more leucine than isoleucine, as in a mash of corn and potato, then isoamyl alcohol will predominate in the fusel-oil formed when that mash is fermented.<sup>1</sup> We shall see immediately that fusel-oil and the other by-products met with in spirits have effects on the body in health and disease only second to that of the ethyl alcohol itself.

**Whisky** has been defined as "a spirit made from malt or malt and grain, and distilled in pot-stills."<sup>2</sup>

It is important to distinguish clearly between genuine "malt whisky," which is made in "pot-stills," and "grain whisky," which is prepared in "patent stills." The bulk of ordinary whisky as it reaches the consumer

<sup>1</sup> HARDEN. (1932), *Alcoholic Fermentation*, pp. 176 *et seq.*

<sup>2</sup> The Royal Commission on Whisky and Other Potable Spirits, which reported in 1909, however, concluded that the term "whisky" may legitimately be applied to the product of a patent still also.

is probably a blend of these two, grain whisky usually predominating.

(a) *Malt whisky* is prepared from malted barley which is first carefully dried. In many Highland distilleries peat is used as the fuel for drying, and some of the characteristic flavour of such whisky is believed to be derived from the peat smoke. After being dried, the malt is made into a mash, and here, just as we shall see is true of beer, the nature of the water used seems to have some influence on the character of the final product, soft water giving the best result. The mash is then fermented much as in the making of beer, only the process is allowed to go on longer. When fermentation is complete, the fermented mash or "wash" is distilled in the old-fashioned pot-still. This is the form of still which is by far the most commonly used in Scotch and Irish distilleries. It is made of copper, and the volatile products are condensed in a simple "worm," no attempt being made to separate the spirit from the by-products. The still is heated over an open flame. This is a point of some importance, for it causes some of the sugary substances in the wash to become slightly charred, and there is produced in this way, amongst other things, the substance furfural, the presence of which is one of the chief distinguishing characteristics of pot-still whisky.

The first product of the distillation is called *low wines*. These are redistilled, and yield (1) "fore-shots," (2) "clean spirit," or whisky, (3) "feints"; the residue in the still being the "spent lees."

The fore-shots and feints both contain much of the by-products of fermentation, and are redistilled, the distillate being added to the clean spirit, or whisky.

It must be noted that fusel-oil is not obtained separately by this method of distillation, and the product consists of alcohol plus some of the by-products of fermentation. The whisky thus produced has an alcoholic strength of from 13 degrees to 50 degrees over proof, but before bonding it is usually diluted in Scotland to 11 degrees and in Ireland to 25 degrees over proof.

The by-products—chiefly aldehydes—which it contains give it, when young, a raw, harsh, disagreeable taste, but after keeping for some years in wood it mellows greatly, and the harsher the taste when young, the more full flavoured the whisky when matured.

What the exact nature of the changes is, by which the improvement which whisky undergoes in wood is brought about, we do not yet fully know. This we do know, however, that the percentage of alcohol diminishes; 6 to 8 per cent. of proof spirit being lost by five years' storage. On the other hand, the fusel-oil does *not* undergo diminution, in spite of frequent statements to the contrary.

Irish pot-still whisky differs from Scotch in being prepared usually from a mixture of malted barley with unmalted grain (barley or maize),

and the malt is not dried over peat. Otherwise the manufacture of the two is very similar.

(b) *Grain Whisky*. This is the form of whisky most commonly distilled in England. It is made from a mixture of grains (barley, rye, and maize), with just a sufficiency of malt to convert their starch into sugar. More important than this distinction, however, is the fact that it is distilled by steam and in a patent (Coffey's) still in such a way that the by-products of fermentation (fusel-oil, etc.) are, to a large extent, separated from the ethyl alcohol. The result is that the raw product has much less flavour than young malt whisky, and is sooner ready to go into consumption. When run off the still it is almost colourless and has an alcoholic strength of 60 degrees over proof, but is usually diluted to 11 to 12 degrees over proof before bonding. It acquires a yellowish colour from being stored in old sherry-casks.

As regards the main differences between the two varieties of whisky, it should be stated—

1. That patent-still whisky contains much less of the by-products of fermentation (including fusel-oil) than pot-still whisky, and is therefore much purer.

2. That as a consequence of this, patent-still whisky does not improve nearly so much on keeping as the other variety.

It follows from this that a young patent-still whisky is much better to drink than *young* malt whisky, but that the latter, when fully matured, has a fuller and pleasanter flavour than the former. It is absurd to object to grain whisky on the ground that it contains more fusel-oil than malt whisky, for just the reverse is the truth. After removal from bond, whisky is diluted—or “broken down,” as it is termed in the trade—by the addition of water. The legal limit of dilution is 35 degrees under proof (about 37 per cent. alcohol by volume), and most whisky is sold at a strength of about 30 under proof. In other words, we shall not go far wrong if we regard a glass of whisky as containing something between a third and a half of a glass of absolute alcohol. This was not true of war-time whisky, for the statutory dilution was increased.

As already mentioned, most commercial whiskies are blends, and not the product of one distillery. Grain whisky is often used as the basis of the blend, a certain proportion of malt whisky being added to give flavour. Even when the blend contains as much as 90 per cent. of grain whisky, it is often sold as “genuine malt.” The public taste now is certainly in favour of a mild-flavoured whisky, hence the large use of grain spirit in blends.

*Potheen* is the product of illicit stills, and, being usually made from molasses, has the characteristics of rum rather than those of true whisky.

**Brandy.** If whisky is regarded as distilled beer, brandy may be spoken of as distilled wine.

The best brandy was originally produced in one of the richest wine districts of France (Département de la Charente or Cognac district). The quality varies with the character of the grapes, the best grapes yielding the variety known as Fine or Grande Champagne. This is the only genuine liqueur brandy. The varieties known as Petite Champagne and Première Bois rank next to it. If sold pure, these constitute old Cognac, but a large amount of them is used for blending with inferior varieties.

In a good year six or seven bottles of wine should yield one bottle of brandy. When first distilled the spirit is devoid of colour and is of a fiery character. When kept in cask it takes up colour from the wood and gradually becomes mellow. Improvement goes on for a long time, so that the older the brandy the better. After twenty or forty years it contains a considerable proportion of volatile esters and aldehydes, to which it owes its aroma and flavour. French brandies have a 0.02 per cent. of a clear yellow oil with a powerful odour of cognac. It is a natural ingredient and absent from all other types of brandies.<sup>1</sup>

While the above is the origin of genuine brandy, it must be admitted that very little of the brandy sold in this country is so derived. The greater part of it is really concocted in the Cognac district and elsewhere from "silent spirit" coloured with burnt sugar and flavoured with œnanthine or various essences. Such a product is entirely different from genuine brandy, for it contains but little of those volatile esters derived from wine which are so conspicuous in genuine Cognac, and to which it owes most of its attraction.

The production of genuine brandy by the distillation of Spanish wines is now carried on at Jerez and elsewhere. It is also exported by Algiers, Australia, Egypt, and Greece, and some "British Brandy" is manufactured in this country from grain spirit, mixed with argol, French plums, and French wine vinegar, the mixture being subsequently redistilled.

In the United States brandy may be made from cherries, apples, pears, and peaches as well as from grapes.

**Rum.** Rum is usually produced by the distillation of fermented molasses obtained in the manufacture of raw sugar; the best varieties, however, are obtained by direct fermentation of the juice of the sugar-cane. Pineapples and guavas are sometimes added to the fermented mash to improve the flavour of the distilled spirit. This spirit contains by-products of fermentation, which impart to rum its characteristic flavour. The chief of these is ethyl butyrate, and a considerable

<sup>1</sup> VALAER. (1939), *Ind. Eng. Chem.*, 31, 339; and *Journ. Inst. Brew.*, 45, 266; quoted in *The Analyst*, 64, (1939).

proportion of the rum sold in this country is made from silent spirit flavoured with that substance.

Rum owes its dark colour to burnt sugar. When kept for some time, it improves greatly in flavour by the development of esters in which it is peculiarly rich. It usually goes into consumption at about the same alcoholic strength as whisky, or perhaps a little stronger.

**Gin** (also known as Geneva—from *genièvre*, a juniper—Schiedam and Hollands) is obtained by fermenting a mash of rye and malt, and distilling and redistilling the product. Juniper-berries and a little salt, and sometimes also coriander, cardamoms, and angelica root are added in the final distillation, and the product is run off into underground cisterns lined with white tiles, where the spirit can be kept without colouring. Some is matured in old sherry-casks and becomes as a result straw-coloured.

The chief seat of the manufacture of genuine gin is at Schiedam in Holland. Much so-called gin, however, is fabricated elsewhere out of silent spirit flavoured with salt, juniper-berries, and turpentine.

Gin is allowed to be sold with as low a proportion of alcohol as 35 under proof (37 per cent. alcohol by volume), but is usually imported at 14 to 15 under proof. Sweetened and diluted gin is sold under the name of *Old Tom*.

Whilst varying somewhat in alcoholic strength, all the spirits we have been considering agree in containing very little solid matter—

Constituents.	Grain Spirit.	Beet Spirit.	Jamaica Rum.	Scotch Whisky.	Gin.	Typical 3-Star Brandy.
Alcohol per litre by weight in g. . .	932.60	912.90	619.20	436.20	401.50	410.50
Alcohol per litre by volume in ml. .	956.00	942.00	695.00	512.00	475.00	485.00
Equal to proof spirit per cent. . . .	167.55	165.09	121.79	89.77	83.26	84.96
Extract per litre .	Nil	Nil	6.36	1.16	0.52	6.70
Acidity (calculated as acetic acid) . . .	2.40	4.80	122.40	3.60	19.20	37.50
Aldehydes (as ethylic aldehyde) . . . .	1.15	10.92	15.41	14.38	4.72	6.10
Furfural . . . . .	Nil	Nil	2.08	1.94	0.13	0.82
Alcohol in esters (not in total) . . . .	1.84	9.20	161.00	20.24	4.60	27.88
Esters (expressed as ethyl acetate) . .	3.52	17.60	308.00	38.72	8.80	53.35
Higher alcohols . .	2.80	6.95	62.58	122.76	13.25	58.48

less, indeed, than 1 per cent., gin being the poorest in this respect. They have also a very low degree of acidity, rum standing highest, then brandy, with 256 mg, per 100 ml., while whisky and gin have only about 51 mg. per 100 ml. They are all practically free from sugar.

The table above, taken from the Report of the *Lancet* Special Analytical Commission on Brandy, represents the comparative composition of the different spirits in a convenient form.

### LIQUEURS AND BITTERS

This group of liquors may be regarded as consisting essentially of spirit sweetened with cane-sugar and flavoured with aromatic or other herbs or essences. It has been well said that they are chiefly the product of the alchemist and the monastery. The proportion of alcohol in them is high, varying from 33 to 50 per cent. or more by volume. The proportion of the other ingredients is shown in the following analyses of some of the most prominent members of the group, taken from König:

PERCENTAGE OF COMPOSITION OF LIQUEURS

	Alcohol.		Extract.	Cane-sugar.	Various extrac-tives.	Mineral matter.
	By vol.	By weight.				
Absinthe . . .	58.93	—	0.18	—	0.32	—
Angostura . . .	49.70	—	5.85	4.16	1.69	0.068
Anisette . . .	42.00	30.7	34.82	34.44	0.38	0.068
Benedictine . . .	52.00	38.5	36.00	32.57	3.43	0.406
Chartreuse . . .	43.18	—	36.11	34.37	1.76	—
Crème de Menthe . . .	48.00	36.5	28.28	27.63	0.65	0.043
Curaçoa . . .	55.00	42.5	28.60	28.50	0.10	0.040
Kümmel . . .	33.90	24.8	32.02	31.18	0.84	0.058

The following is a brief description of the origin and constituents of some of the better-known liqueurs and bitters:

*Absinthe.* Made by macerating Alpine plants of the wormwood species with the root of anise and sweet-flag and marjoram leaves in 40 per cent. spirit. A glassful (30 ml.) contains the following amounts of absolute alcohol:

Ordinary absinthe . . . . .	14.3 ml.
Demi-fine . . . . .	15.0 „
Fine . . . . .	20.4 „
Suisse . . . . .	24.2 „

The toxic substance is thujone, a ketone isomeric with citral.

*Curaçoa.* Made in Amsterdam from the rind of bitter oranges grown in the island of Curaçoa.

*Kirsch.* Made from morello cherries in the Black Forest and containing a small amount of hydrocyanic acid.

*Noyau*. Made from the *stones* of cherries, containing oil of bitter almonds, and therefore poisonous.

*Maraschino*. Made by fermenting a small sour cherry (*marasca*) grown in Italy and Dalmatia. Both the cherries and the stones are crushed and 10 per cent. of honey added, and the whole fermented. The spirit is diluted, and kept for some months to mature.

*Kümmel*. Consists of brandy flavoured with cumin and carraway seeds.

*Chartreuse*. Originally made at the chief Carthusian monastery, near Grenoble, in France, and also at Florence. It contains a large proportion of sugar, the flavour being derived from various oils contained in angelica, hyssop, nutmeg, peppermint, and other herbs.

*Benedictine* is a very similar product, made at Fécamp in Normandy.

*Angostura* is now chiefly made in Trinidad, but formerly at Angostura, the chief flavouring ingredient being the bark of that name, though other species are also added.

*Ratafia* is a name now applied in France to various liqueurs made from spirit, sugar, and aromatic herbs. It derived its name from the fact that it used to be drunk at the ratification of compacts and bargains.

In practical dietetics the importance of liqueurs is small. Diabetics must take into account their content of sugar. Their use after a meal may be defended on the grounds of their carminative effect.

In studying the *general action of spirits on the body*, one must distinguish carefully between the action of the alcohol itself and that of the by-products of fermentation which occur along with it. It would be a great mistake to regard spirits as simply mixtures of alcohol and water in nearly equal proportion.

Spirituous liquors are too highly alcoholic for ordinary dietetic use unless taken in great moderation and freely diluted. Two or three glasses of whisky or brandy contain as much alcohol as most people can safely consume in one day. If this limit is observed, however, and the spirit freely diluted, they may do little physical harm.

Why a crude spirit has more deleterious effects than a matured one is still unknown. It was supposed once to be due to the "fusel" oil, the mixture of propyl, amyl, butyl and isobutyl alcohols, in the spirit. They, however, though much more toxic than ethyl alcohol, are not present in sufficient amounts to take effect. Possibly the deleterious substance is furfuraldehyde or pyridine.

### MALT LIQUORS

This group includes beer or ale, and porter or stout. There is some confusion in the use of these names, and they have not quite the same

meaning in all parts of the country. In some places the term "ale" is applied to the brown beverages, while the black drinks are spoken of as "beers." It is better to regard the terms "ale" and "beer" as synonymous as they were in Anglo-Saxon days, and to apply them to the paler liquors, and to speak of the blacker drinks as "stouts or porters." With the introduction of hops into English brewing, the term "beer" began to mean "hopped malt liquor."

**Beer** may be defined as the product of the fermentation of malt and hops. We shall see later that much of the "beer" in common use has not, strictly speaking, quite this origin.

*Malt* is obtained by moistening barley and allowing it to germinate first in heaps and later spread out evenly on a floor of cement or tiles at a moderate and regular temperature. During germination important changes take place: the ferment diastase of the grain acts upon some of the starch, converting it into dextrin and malt-sugar, while part of the proteins, by the action of another ferment, is also converted into soluble forms. The "green malt" so produced is next dried, and, upon the exact temperature at which this is carried out, the character of the beer largely depends, for the lower (within limits) the temperature employed, the more powerful is the action of the ferments contained in the grain, and the larger the amount of soluble substances produced. Low-dried malts produce pale beer; those dried at a higher temperature yield a darker product.

When drying is complete, the malt is ground and made into a mash with water. The soft water of Dublin in part accounts for the fame of Dublin stout, but the water of Burton-upon-Trent, which contains much calcium sulphate, or permanent hardness, is clearly one of the main causes of the pre-eminence of the pale, strong, and export ales of that town. In some breweries the water is artificially made up to the standard of that locality.

After mashing, the wort is strained off from the malt and boiled for an hour or two with *hops*. Boiling stops any further action of the diastase, and extracts from the hops their soluble ingredients. Chief amongst these are hard and soft resins, tannin, and essential oils. The resins are antiseptic and are necessary in beer for preventing the growth of various moulds, wild yeasts and other micro-organisms. The resins and tannin give hops a bitter flavour. The antiseptic properties of the hops are due to terpenes such as humulene and  $\beta$  caryophyllene not found in any other plants. The boiled wort is next pumped out and rapidly passed over coolers, and is then ready for the addition of the yeast. Great care is now taken to employ pure yeast, for many of the diseases of beer, such as the development in it of acetic acid, are due to contamination with "wild" yeasts and bacteria. Scientific brewing has made great progress in this direction in recent years. The yeast is

added to the wort in vats and fermentation is then allowed to proceed. Here, again, much depends upon the temperature employed. In this country fermentation is usually conducted at rather high temperatures, with the result that most of the sugar is broken up and the resulting beer is rich in alcohol. In Germany low temperatures and "bottom" yeasts are employed, and more sugar and dextrin are left in the beer, but less alcohol is produced. Low-fermentation beers also contain more carbonic acid than most English beers, and are therefore better aerated. It is thus that lager-beer is produced.

When fermentation is complete, the yeast, which has been carried to the surface, is skimmed off. The beer is then run off into casks. Here a secondary fermentation occurs under the action of the small quantity of yeast still contained in the beer, but it is restrained to some extent by the addition to the cask of an extra quantity of hops. The longer this lasts, the greater is the amount of alcohol produced, and if strong beer is desired it must be left in the cask for some months. At the same time some volatile bodies seem to be developed which impart to such beer its full flavour, while the production of more carbonic acid under pressure leads to partial solution of that gas, and gives to the liquor a pleasant sharp taste. Just before bottling, the beer is "fined" by adding either egg white (poor), casein (poor), gelatin or isinglass and tannin (the usual substance) or Bentonite, a clay from Wyoming. These colloids carry down any remaining yeast cells and other impurities.

After bottling, the beer becomes brisker than it was in the cask, probably because no gas can now escape from it. Strong beer will keep well in bottle for eighteen months.

The names applied to different beers vary in different breweries, and many of the commercial brands are made by the judicious blending of beers produced in different ways. One can distinguish broadly between *mild* and *bitter ales*, the former containing relatively more malt and less hops than the latter, while in mild the malt is also dried at a higher temperature.

*Indian Pale Ale* is so called because it was first produced for the Indian market. It is very thoroughly fermented, and contains, therefore, but little sugar, and being highly hopped it has good keeping properties, for the hops act as an antiseptic.

In an ordinary public-house the varieties usually distinguished are "mild ale," which is the poorest; "mild ale and bitter," which is a mixture of these two beers and comes next; and after that "bitter" and "Burton," the last being the strongest of all.

The description of brewing given above applies only to "pure" beers—that is to say, to beverages brewed only from malt and hops. A very large proportion, however, of the beer in ordinary consumption has not this origin, some cheaper source of sugar than malt being employed.

Amongst the substitutes so used are invert sugar, potato glucose, flaked maize and rice; and the liquor produced from them is sometimes termed *substitute beer*.

A large amount of evidence concerning the production of these beers and their effects upon health was given before a Parliamentary Commission, but it must be admitted that the results were not very definite or satisfactory. It would appear that it takes an expert to tell the origin of a beer from its flavour, and it was certainly not clearly shown that the "substitute" beers are really injurious to health, while they can undoubtedly be produced more cheaply than the genuine article.

*Porter and stout* are made in the same way as beer, but the malt is first roasted in cylinders, much as coffee is. This has the effect of producing some caramel, to which the dark colour of these beverages is mainly due, and it must also, by destroying the diastase, prevent the further production of dextrin and sugar in mashing. The proportion of solid matter in the liquor is often enhanced by the artificial addition of caramel or of invert sugar.

*German beers*, as has been mentioned, are fermented at a lower temperature than those of this country, and contain more dextrins. Secondary fermentation takes place in them to a large extent, and produces much carbonic acid gas. They are decidedly less alcoholic than English beers.

### Composition of Malt Liquors

The most important constituents of these beverages are alcohol; dextrins, sugar, and a small amount of soluble nitrogenous matter (together these make up the "extract"); and organic acids.

The table below<sup>1</sup> gives the approximate composition of some of these beverages.

As might be expected beers contain significant amounts of riboflavine and nicotinic acid<sup>2</sup> and attention has been called to this

COMPOSITION OF MALT LIQUORS (PER PINT)

	Alcohol.	Protein.	Fat.	Available Carbo- hydrate.	Cal- cium.	Iron.	Calories per 100 ml.	Calories per pint.
	ml.	g.		g.	mg.	mg.		
Pale ale, draught	33.7	1.7	Trace	17.9	61	0.28	55	310
Pale ale, bottled	34.5	1.1	"	16.8	76	0.39	54	308
Mild ale, draught	25.2	2.8	"	17.1	60	0.28	44	252
Mild ale, bottled	26.8	1.7	"	20.7	71	0.45	48	273
Strong ale	45.0	2.8	"	27.4	95	0.56	75	428
Stout	26.7	2.2	"	23.0	58	0.78	49	282
Beers during war-time were distinctly more dilute. <sup>3</sup>								
Mild	17.3	1.2	0	9.7	57	0.58	29	165
Bitter	24.4	1.2	0	9.7	57	0.58	38	216
Stouts	23.2	2.8	0	19.7	29	0.58	46	256
Strong ales	32.9	2.8	0	19.7	29	0.58	57	324

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1942), *op. cit.*

<sup>2</sup> BARTON-WRIGHT. (1944), *Biochem. Journ.*, 38, 34.

<sup>3</sup> *The Nutritive Values of War-time Foods*. (1945), Medical Research Council.

fact in the House of Commons.<sup>1</sup> Doubtless the brewing industry will focus attention on it in the future. While the riboflavine content is comparable with that of milk the nicotinic acid content is much greater. Even war-time beers gave figures running from 7·8 to 17·0 µg. per g. or about 4·42 to 9·65 µg. per pint. Pre-war beers contained more. Thus Worthington Strong Ale, brewed 1798, contained 9·36, Anglo-Bavarian Beer, brewed 1872, 5·84, Reid's Stout, brewed 1899, 9·8, and Combes Export Brown Stout, brewed 1900, 8·68 µg. per pint. It is interesting to note that "Chancellor" ale brewed for All Souls College, Oxford, 1938, possessed 25·9 µg. per pint, i.e. more than a day's ration.

### ACTION AND USES OF MALT LIQUORS

**Action on Digestion.** Malt liquors have but little retarding influence on salivary digestion, and what action they do possess is entirely due to their acidity. Stout is twice as acid as beer, and hence has a greater retarding action on the digestion of starch by the saliva.<sup>2</sup> Sound beer, indeed, in some experiments,<sup>3</sup> seemed actually to increase rather than restrain the action of ptyalin *in vitro*, but sour beer has a decidedly retarding effect.<sup>4</sup> On the other hand, in the living body the bitterness of beer may bring about a more profuse flow of saliva, and so end by improving rather than impairing salivary digestion.

If taken alone beer does not remain in the stomach any longer than water, for 200 ml. are found to have completely left it in about one and a half hours. If taken with other food, it delays the chemical processes of digestion more than the mere amount of alcohol which it contains will explain. Some<sup>5</sup> have blamed the "extract" for this, others the salts;<sup>6</sup> but the action is, in any case, not an important one, for even half a litre of beer (about a pint), when taken with a mixed meal, was found to produce but very little delay in the stomach.<sup>7</sup> It is probable, indeed, that a tumblerful of good, brisk beer may actually aid digestion by increasing appetite and calling out a more abundant secretion of gastric juice and more active movements of the stomach. Both stout and beer are frequently prescribed as soporifics.

**Influence as Foods.** Since malt liquors contain digestible carbohydrates they must be rated as foods. A pint of good ale contains as much carbohydrate as 1½ oz. of bread. It will be seen from the tables that a pint of even war-time beer gave 165 Calories, or about one-twentieth of the total energy required per day.

<sup>1</sup> *Lancet*, (1944), 2, 226.

<sup>2</sup> CHITTENDEN and MENDEL.

<sup>3</sup> AITCHISON ROBERTSON. (1898), *Journ. Anat. and Physiol.*, 32, 615.

<sup>4</sup> ROBERTS. *Digestion and Diet*, p. 119.

<sup>5</sup> SIMANOWSKY. (1886), *Arch. f. Hygiene.*, 4, 1.

<sup>6</sup> BUCHNER. (1881), *Deut. Archiv. f. Klin. Med.*, 29, 537. <sup>7</sup> BUCHNER, *op. cit.*

A glass of milk yields about 184 Calories, a similar glass of good bottled beer about 168. It does not follow from this, however, that beer is almost as good a source of energy as milk, for, as we have seen, alcohol is to be regarded as a food of only limited value. Still less is it as good a food for it lacks any first-class protein and is deficient in calcium, iron, and phosphorus and in most of the vitamins. What energy it provides is purchased at more than twice the cost of that from milk. Whatever may be the grounds for advocating the consumption of beer they can hardly be said to be dietetic or economic.

Malt liquors must be strictly forbidden in many forms of disease. The combined effects of their alcohol and carbohydrates render them specially prone to produce obesity, and they have been regarded as frequent predisposers to gout. In all cases of inflammation of the mucous membrane of the genito-urinary tract, also, they seem, for some reason, to have a peculiarly bad effect, and the recurrence of a gleet, for instance, can often be traced to their use. When taken by diabetics, consideration must be given to the carbohydrate content. Thus a pint of pre-war beer contained 16 to 20 g. carbohydrate and was equivalent to 1 or  $1\frac{1}{3}$  oz. of bread. War beer contained much less carbohydrate and a pint was equivalent to about  $\frac{2}{3}$  oz. of bread.

### WINES

Wine has been defined as a beverage produced from the juice of the grape by fermentation, and some may prefer to add the saving clause "or with such additions as are believed to improve its keeping qualities." From time immemorial wine has been extolled by poets, æsthetes, gastronomes and others, and it has acquired a mythology, still surviving in these more materialistic days. The term has been extended to fermentation products of more humble fruits of the earth than grapes: e.g. apples, pears, cowslip and dandelion blossoms and even the malignant parsnip. The characteristics of all these beverages are a beautiful colour, clarity, high concentration of alcohol when compared with beer, and a pleasant, though acquired, taste.

It must be confessed, however, that the favourite drinks of the northern peoples of Europe are the fiery distillates from fermented grain products and the much less potent ales and beers. Wine is intermediate between spirits and beer in the amount of alcohol it contains. Wine is the normal alcoholic beverage of the countries where viticulture is possible, but in Great Britain the drinking of wine is restricted to the upper classes with the exception, perhaps, of port, which is, or used to be, taken medicinally by the working classes, often under the impression that it is non-alcoholic. Wine achieves a *succès d'estime* in this country but is not the drink of the generality. The

attitude of the richer classes may be gauged by the importation of Algerian wine after the Germans were cleared out of North Africa. The dietitian would have preferred, if it had been possible, the importation of olive oil.

Twice within this century the wine-producing countries of Europe, with the exception of Spain and Portugal, have been ravaged by war, and it may be doubted whether in this generation the wine trade can fully recover in France, the valleys of the Moselle and Rhine, Sicily, Italy and Greece.

We cut down the space devoted in the ninth edition to wine and have restricted ourselves to a general statement of the sources, methods of production and analyses of wine.

The quality of wine depends very much upon the variety of the grape, the soil upon which it is grown, the mode in which it is cultivated and the climatic conditions of particular years. The juice is obtained by crushing the grapes, treading being the method often employed in order to avoid squeezing the stalks and stones too much, and so extracting undesirable ingredients such as tannin.

The chief *chemical constituents of the juice* are sugar, nitrogenous matters, tannin, and acids, such as acetic, lactic, malic, and tartaric acids. The sugar is a mixture of grape-sugar, or glucose, and fruit-sugar, or fructose, in the proportion of about three parts of the former to one of the latter.

The relative amount of nitrogenous matter and sugar in the juice has much influence on the character of the wine produced. The yeast lives upon the nitrogenous matter, and splits up the sugar, with the formation of alcohol and other products. If there is but little sugar and much nitrogenous matter present, the yeast can go on growing until all the sugar is split up. The wine will then be "dry" and of an acid taste. Such a wine is hock. If, on the other hand, the sugar is out of all proportion to the nitrogenous substances in the juice, a limit is set to the growth of the yeast and some sugar will be left in the wine, which will then taste sweet. Should, however, the sugar and nitrogenous matter be present in more equal amount, the wine will retain some of both, and, though not sweet, will not have a distinctly acid flavour either, and will be of full "body." It must be remembered, moreover, that no matter how much nitrogenous substance and sugar the juice may contain, the production of alcohol cannot go on indefinitely, for the accumulated alcohol ultimately ends by paralysing the yeast. This takes place when the proportion of alcohol in the fermenting liquid has reached about 16 per cent. by volume. Hence it is that a "natural" wine can never contain more alcohol than this; indeed, there is rarely so much sugar present in the juice as to allow of its containing so much. If a wine contains more than 16 per cent. of alcohol by volume, we may be

sure that spirit has been added to it artificially; that is to say, it has been "fortified." Sherry and port as sold in this country are always "fortified" wines; claret and hock, on the other hand, are "natural" wines.

The *colour* of red wines is due to a pigment contained in the skins of the grapes, which is turned red by the acids of the juice. As the skins are left in the vat in making such wines, the alcohol which is produced gradually dissolves out this pigment, and so the wine acquires its red or purple tint. The colour of the white or brown wines is mainly due to the oxidation of tannic acid in the cask.

The *yeast* which adheres to the skin of the grape, and which is responsible for the fermentation of wine, is different from the yeast which produces the fermentation of malt liquors or spirits. Further, we now know that the characteristic qualities of different wines are due, in some measure at least, to the fact that they are produced by different species of yeasts. Thus, the yeast concerned in producing hock is different from that which produces claret, and by growing a hock yeast on a claret "must," a wine is made which is, as it were, a cross between claret and hock, and has some of the distinctive characters of both. The *rancio* flavour of sherry which is characteristic of it is due to the development of acetaldehyde and derivatives of acetaldehyde by the aerobic film-producing yeasts used in the manufacture of sherry.

The exact details of the process of fermenting grape-juice, in order to produce wine from it, vary considerably in different countries and localities, and little would be gained by attempting to describe them fully. As a rule, the first fermentation lasts for from two to six weeks, depending largely upon temperature, and the wine is left upon the lees till the spring, when it is siphoned off for storage. Prior to being placed in the cask, it is "racked" by the addition of isinglass or white of egg, much as beer is by "finings," in order to remove nitrogenous matters (which prevent the wine from keeping) and suspended impurities. When clear, it is again "racked" off from the deposit, and stored in casks in the cellar.

*In the cask* many very important changes take place to the occurrence of which the ultimate character of the wine is largely due. For one thing, the alcoholic strength of the wine rises. This is due to the fact that the water of the wine soaks into the wood more than the alcohol does, and is lost by evaporation, so that the wine becomes more concentrated. As the water so lost is replaced by the addition of more wine, the increase in the proportion of alcohol is rendered all the greater. In the cask, too, a partial oxidation of the tannic acid takes place. This causes the white wines to become darker in colour, but has just the reverse effect upon the red wines; for the oxidized tannin unites with, and carries down, some of their pigment.

The small quantity of yeast which always finds its way into the

cask produces a slow secondary fermentation of the wine, which often lasts for years. As a result of this, some of the remaining sugar is converted into alcohol, and in this way also the alcoholic strength of the wine is increased. As the proportion of alcohol rises, some of the ingredients of the wine, such as tannin and bitartrate of potash, become less soluble, and fall down in the form of a deposit. During this time also some of the alcohol is oxidized into acetic acid, and the formation of esters takes place. The maximum quantity of these, however, is usually reached in about five years, for the presence of water prevents the formation of esters continuing till all available acids are used up.

*After bottling*, the formation of esters still goes on, possibly with the aid of micro-organisms, but the alcoholic strength of the wine does not increase. It is quite a mistake to suppose that wine which has been kept long in bottle is necessarily stronger than a younger wine. The reverse is the truth; for the alcohol seems actually to diminish after the wine has been bottled some years. It is also an error to suppose that wine goes on improving indefinitely. Like all other organic things, it is liable to decay by the slow processes of oxidation, and few wines really improve after thirty years; many, indeed, such as clarets, are at their best long before this, and it is only a few of the stronger wines, such as sherry and madeira, which will stand keeping for fifty, or possibly even a hundred years.

**Constituents of Wine.** The following is a list of the principal constituents found in grape juice, or "must," and in the wine produced from it.

"MUST" CONTAINS:

Water.  
Glucose } 10 to 30%  
Fructose }  
Malic and tartaric acids.  
Nitrogenous substances.  
Extractives and essential oils.  
Inorganic material.  
Tannins, colouring matters and fatty substances from the skins and kernels.

WINE CONTAINS:

Water.  
Glucose.  
Fructose.  
Alcohols (mainly ethyl alcohol, but including small amounts of propyl, butyl, amyl, and other higher alcohols). 5 to 22 per cent.  
Acids (mainly tartaric, but also including formic, acetic, propionic, lactic, butyric, malic, and succinic). 0.3 to 0.8 per cent.  
Esters of the foregoing alcohols and acids.  
Aldehydes, such as acetaldehyde and furfuraldehyde.  
Glycerol.  
Nitrogenous substances.  
Extractives and essential oils.  
Inorganic materials. 0.15 to 0.6 per cent.  
Tannins and colouring matter.

It will be realized from this how complex wine is.

It would serve no good purpose, however, to give an analysis of wines in detail, for, after all, the information which chemistry can give us about wines is of limited value. It can tell us, it is true, something about those ingredients which have most influence upon health, but it cannot tell much about those volatile compounds to which the most highly-prized qualities of wine, such as flavour and bouquet, are due, and for which one chiefly pays in buying wine when, indeed, one is not merely paying for the label on the bottle.

We propose, therefore, to describe briefly the most important of the constituents which influence health, and afterwards to consider the chief characters of some of the commoner wines in detail.

**Alcohols.** Wine contains several alcohols, ethyl alcohol, however, being by far the most abundant. Isoamyl,  $\delta$ -amyl, with still smaller amounts of propyl and isobutyl alcohols, are present in traces, being produced by the action of the yeast on the amino acids arising from the proteins in the must.<sup>1</sup> A hundred ml. of a natural wine may contain from 6 to 12 g. of ethyl alcohol. If there is less than this, the wine tastes flat; if there is more, one may be almost certain that alcohol has been added artificially—i.e. that the wine has been "fortified." The advantage of fortifying wine is that it enables it to keep better, subsequent fermentation being restrained, and the production of acetic acid prevented. It is often necessary in the case of wines produced in very warm countries, where fermentation cannot safely be allowed to go on to its full limits, owing to the danger of the growth of "wild" yeasts and the production of acids. Fortified wines not unfrequently have as much as one-third of their volume of spirit added to them, and require to be kept for a long time in bottle, in order to re-acquire a true vinous character. Partial sterilization of the wine by the process of "pasteurization" is now often used to effect the same object as "fortification."

**Acids.** The natural acids found in wine are tartaric, malic, and lactic. Acetic, formic, succinic, and other acids are produced by fermentation along with carbonic acid.

*Tartaric acid* is the most important. It occurs, combined with potassium, in the form of bitartrate of potash or argol. As the proportion of alcohol in the wine rises, the bitartrate becomes less soluble, and ultimately much of it falls out in the form of a crust of "tartar." Hence it is that wines become less acid on keeping.

*Acetic acid* may be produced in wine by the growth in the "must" of special organisms (the "*Mycoderma aceti*"), which, if unchecked, would ultimately convert all the wine into vinegar. It flourishes especially in very warm countries, and the necessity for preventing its

<sup>1</sup> FELIX EHRLICH quoted by Harden. *Alcoholic Fermentation*. (1932), pp. 167 *et seq.*

growth is one of the reasons why the wines of such countries are so often fortified.

Acetic acid can also be produced by direct oxidation of the alcohol of wine in the presence of nitrogenous matter, and this occurs to some extent in the cask, and also in bottle, if any air finds its way into the wine through the pores of the cork. In order to prevent this, the bottle should always be laid on its side, so that the cork is kept soaked in wine.

In a sound wine the *total acidity* is not more than 0·3 to 0·7 per cent.; above this limit the wine will taste sour. It must be noted, however, that mere taste is no true indication of the acidity of a wine, for the sourness is much concealed by the presence of sugar. As a matter of fact, many sweet wines are nearly as acid as the so-called sour wines.

Dupré found the following amount of acid (reckoned as tartaric) in one bottle of wine:

Claret	.	.	.	.	4·22	to	5·00	g.
Hock	.	.	.	.	3·70	„	4·55	„
Sherry	.	.	.	.	3·50	„	3·96	„
Port	.	.	.	.	3·18	„	4·00	„
Marsala	.	.	.	.	2·53	„	2·98	„

A sample of '47 port analysed by Luff<sup>1</sup> had an acidity of 0·6 per cent., equivalent to 0·39 g. of tartaric acid in every wineglassful.

The *volatile acids* in wine (acetic, etc.) should not be present in a higher ratio than 1 to 3 of fixed acids (tartaric). If the proportion is higher than this, the wine is slightly "turned"—i.e. is on its way to become vinegar. Red wines usually contain rather more volatile acid than white.

**Sugar.** The chief sugar found in wine is fruit-sugar, or fructose. A "natural" or fully-fermented wine should contain about  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of sugar; if there is less than this the flavour is not pleasant. As a rule, therefore, natural wines are "dry." Sauterne is one of the few natural wines which is rather rich in sugar. "Fortified" wines in which fermentation has been checked by the addition of spirit contain 2 per cent. of sugar or more, while the sweet wines may have as much as 20 per cent.

Dupré found the following amount of sugar in different samples of wine:

Clarets	.	.	.	0·71	to	1·71	g. per bottle.
Hocks	.	.	.	0·091	„	0·56	„
Sherries	.	.	.	14·1	„	27·3	„
Ports	.	.	.	18·6	„	33·7	„
Old marsala	.	.	.	25·2	„	29·2	„
Sauterne	.	.	.	8·1			„
Champagne	.	.	.	32·5	{ down to		
					{ almost none		

<sup>1</sup> *Gout: Its Pathology and Treatment*. Cassell and Co. (1898), p. 14.

It will be evident from this that sugar can hardly ever be present in wine to a sufficient extent to be of influence as a *food*. Even a sweet wine with 4 per cent. of sugar will contain only about an ounce in a bottle, or pretty much the same quantity as a bottle of ordinary lemonade. As Anstie points out, it is hardly possible to take in more than  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of sugar daily in the form of wine without at the same time consuming so much alcohol as would produce intoxication.

**Esters.** These are produced by the interaction of the alcohols and acids contained in the wine. They are very numerous as regards variety, as can readily be imagined when it is pointed out that a wine containing five different kinds of alcohol and five acids may contain twenty-five esters. Their actual amount, however, is always very small. The highest proportion Dupré found was in a fifty-year-old madeira, and even then there was only 1 part of ester in every 300 of wine.

The esters of wine may be divided into two classes: (1) volatile, (2) fixed. The former are produced by volatile acids, such as acetic; the latter by the fixed acids, such as tartaric. The volatile esters predominate in natural wines, while most fortified wines contain the fixed esters in greater abundance. To this rule, however, sherry and madeira seem to be exceptions, for they are often rich in the volatile class.

Acetic ester is usually the most abundant volatile ester met with in wine, but old wines may contain traces of propyl, butyl, amyl, caproyl and caprylyl acetic esters as well.

The esters—and especially the volatile ones—are of importance as imparting to wine much of its “bouquet,” and a rough estimate of their richness in any particular wine can be made by noting the distance at which the bouquet can be smelt.

**Extractives** usually make up the bulk of the solid matter in all wines, except such as are rich in sugar. They consist chiefly of pectins and gums. They contribute to the taste and “body” of the wine.

**Glycerol** is produced along with alcohol in the process of fermentation, and is always present in wine and in sufficient amount to affect the taste. It is usually said that it amounts to one-fourteenth of the volume of the alcohol; but that is not quite accurate, for different yeasts seem to produce it in varying amount, so that no definite ratio between glycerine and alcohol can be laid down.

**Tannin.** The tannin in wine is derived chiefly from the skins and stalks of the grapes used and is therefore abundant in red wines. Its nature is specific to wine and the tannin is referred to as œnotannin to distinguish it from the tannins of tea and of oak bark, etc. Tannin in wine decreases by oxidation on keeping and the more mature the wine the less tannin it contains and the less its astringency. A glass of claret has about the same amount of tannin as there is in a cup of tea.

*Iron and other Inorganic Substances.* As wine has a reputation for blood manufacture it is perhaps reasonable to call attention to its content of iron and copper. There may be as much iron as 2.5 mg. per 100 ml. in both musts and wines, and the normal figure for copper is from 0.025 to 0.2 mg. per 100 ml. Some musts have as much as 23 mg. per litre, but they are from grapes which have been sprayed with copper sulphate. When washed these grapes give a must with from 0.08 to 0.18 mg. copper per 100 ml.

**Varieties of Wine.** Perhaps the most important division of wines is into (1) natural and (2) fortified. The *natural wines*, as already explained, are those in which fermentation has been allowed to go to its full limit—that is to say, until the process is arrested spontaneously either by exhaustion of all the sugar and nitrogenous matter in the grape-juice, or until sufficient alcohol has been produced to prevent the further growth of the yeast. The latter consummation is reached when the fermenting juice contains 16 per cent. of absolute alcohol *by volume*. *Fortified wines*, on the other hand, are those in which the process of fermentation has been artificially arrested by the addition of alcohol<sup>1</sup> either as “silent” spirit, brandy, or some other concentrated form. Fermentation being thus arrested before all the sugar has been broken up, such wines are apt to be sweet, and are, of course, of comparatively high alcoholic strength. Natural wines, on the contrary, have usually low amounts of alcohol and sugar. The natural wines also, containing as they do a little acetic acid produced by prolonged fermentation, are rich in volatile esters even in their youth, while the fortified wines, though they may ultimately contain much ester, only arrive at such richness in their old age, and the fixed esters, except in the case of sherry and madeira, preponderate over the volatile.

The principal natural wines are Bordeaux (clarets) Burgundy, Côtes du Rhône, Hock, Alsatian, and the Hungarian, Italian, Australian, and South African wines. The chief members of the “fortified” group are port, sherry, madeira, and marsala. Greek wines are also usually fortified and resinated.

**Claret<sup>2</sup>** is produced in the district of Médoc, the seaport of which is Bordeaux. It is a pure natural wine containing 8 to 13 per cent. of alcohol by volume, very little sugar (about  $\frac{1}{4}$  per cent.), and a moderate amount of acids, acetic acid being always present. It contains also a high proportion of volatile esters. The best growths, or “crus,” are Château Margaux, Lafitte, and Latour.

Haut Brion is a red wine produced in the neighbouring district of the Gironde, and resembles a burgundy rather than a médoc. Sauternes

<sup>1</sup> In the case of some fortified wines, however, e.g., sherry, the alcohol is added after fermentation is complete.

<sup>2</sup> Everywhere, except in England, claret is known as Bordeaux wine.

are white wines made in the same district, and usually contain a good deal of sugar, from the grapes being allowed to hang for a long time on the vines before they are picked. The famous Château Yquem is the finest of all the white wines so produced.

**Burgundy** resembles claret, but is richer in extractive matter, and has therefore more "body." It is also of higher alcoholic strength and contains more natural glycerol and less tannin than any other fine red wine. It is produced in the district of that name, the best part being that which stretches between Dijon and Chalon. Beaujolais and Mâcon, though not really produced in Burgundy, are usually classed with those wines. Ordinary burgundy is made from black grapes, but Chablis is a white burgundy produced from white grapes grown in the same district.

**Hocks** derive their name from Hochheim, on the right bank of the Maine. With the exception of that produced at Assmannshausen, they are all pale wines. They have about the same alcoholic strength as claret, and contain hardly any sugar, for which reason they are apt to seem rather acid. Their acidity, however, is not much higher than that of claret, and they contain almost no acetic acid. They have the advantage of possessing a fine bouquet and very good keeping qualities.

#### COMPOSITION OF ITALIAN WINES

	Capri (White)	Falerno (White)	Chianti (Red)	Barolo (Red)	Egidio Vitali (Spark- ling White).	Valtel- lina (Red).
Alcohol by weight	11.62	8.64	9.36	10.85	10.08	9.36
" " volume	14.37	10.73	11.61	13.43	12.49	11.61
Tartaric acid .	0.52	0.66	0.60	0.45	0.79	0.41
Acetic " .	0.31	0.13	0.18	0.25	0.26	0.29
Sugar .	0.76	0.11	0.17	0.18	3.67	0.13

**Italian wines**, both white and red, all belong to the "natural" class. As a rule, they are of low alcoholic strength, but rather more acid and astringent than a light Bordeaux wine. Their acidity is rather high.<sup>1</sup>

**Australian wines** are full-bodied natural wines, containing rather more alcohol than most clarets. They are chemically pure, and in recent years have improved very much in the finer characteristics of good wine, as the result of greater care in the cultivation of the grape.

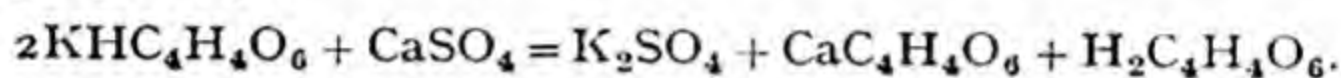
The term **sherry** is applied to all the white wines of Spain, being derived from the town of Jerez, which may be regarded as the capital of the sherry-producing district. As drunk in this country, they are

<sup>1</sup> *Lancet*. (1899), I, 241.

all fortified wines, containing from 16 to 22 per cent. of alcohol by volume. A "natural" sherry is quite a possible product, but is never imported into this country on account of its being deficient in "keeping" qualities. Sherries are also all "plastered" wines; that is to say, calcium sulphate is sprinkled on the grapes after they are first trodden, in the proportion usually of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  lb. to every ton.

The practice of *plastering* is one of great antiquity, and was mentioned long ago by Pliny. It was first adopted, no doubt, empirically, and the advantages of it are still far from being fully understood, although all experienced sherry-growers are of opinion that without its aid the production of a wine having the special characteristics of sherry is impossible. It may be that it acts as a preservative against the "viscosity fungus," which is so much commoner in Southern than Northern wines (*Thudichum*).

The chief chemical effect of plastering is to decompose the bitartrate of potash in the "must" with the production of insoluble calcium tartrate, potassium sulphate, and tartaric acid, according to the following equation:



The phosphates are also thrown down.

As the tartrate of calcium falls out, it clarifies the wine, carrying down with it nitrogenous matters and suspended impurities. The tartaric acid produced renders the wine redder, and increases its free acidity, so facilitating the production of esters later on.

There is introduced into the wine as the result of plastering 0.3 g. of calcium sulphate per litre, and 1.2 g. of potassium sulphate, much of it, probably, in the acid form. The potassium sulphate may cause sherry to be slightly laxative to some persons if freely drunk, and renders it also somewhat bitter, but it cannot be said to have any other bad effects. It cannot be the cause of cirrhosis<sup>1</sup>, as has been mooted, for the employés in the Spanish bodegas drink large quantities of light sherry daily without obvious ill effects.

The amount of sugar in sherry varies from practically nil in the driest sorts up to 4 per cent. in a very raisiny wine. The acidity is lower than that of the natural wines already considered.

Sherry develops in its old age a very large proportion of volatile esters—more, probably, than any other alcoholic liquor, except a genuine cognac.

Broadly speaking, there are two classes of sherries:

1. "Fino," a light, pale, delicate wine of Amontillado<sup>2</sup> or Manzanilla<sup>3</sup> type.

<sup>1</sup> See later, under cirrhosis.

<sup>2</sup> Amontillado = à la Mantilla (a town near Cordova).

<sup>3</sup> From Manzanilla, a town near Jerez.

2. "Oloroso," a sweeter, full-bodied, brown wine. Intermediate between these is the class known as "Palo Cortado."

The following is an analysis of examples of these:<sup>1</sup>

#### COMPOSITION OF SHERRY

	Amontillado	Oloroso.	Medium.
	Per cent.	Per cent.	Per cent.
Solids . . .	2.20	5.45	2.87
Sugar . . .	0.215	1.03	0.65
Potassium bitartrate . . .	0.08	0.26	0.13
Tartaric acid . . .	0.34	0.52	0.41
Acetic . . .	0.12	0.20	0.10
Ash . . .	0.55	0.86	0.70
Potassium sulphate . . .	0.52	0.76	0.65
Alcohol by weight . . .	14.82	18.85	15.67
" " volume . . .	18.25	23.10	19.28
Total esters . . .	0.06	0.21	0.075

Pure sherry may be regarded as a genuine grape product, for the substances added to it in manufacture are also derived from grapes. Thus, "grape liquor" is used for sweetening, and the same, slightly caramelized, for colouring. The spirit added in fortification is also obtained by distilling fermented grape-juice. Sherry has the advantage over most wines that it can be drunk all through a meal and also that it does not deteriorate after decanting.

**Port** is the wine produced in the district of the Upper Douro, and takes its name from the town of Oporto. The whole of the wine that reaches this country is fortified, containing from 16 to 22 per cent. of alcohol by volume. One of the chief peculiarities of port is the large amount of "extract" it contains, which gives it a full body. Its acidity is not great, less, indeed, than that of hock, but it contains relatively more acetic than tartaric acid, for the latter is insoluble in the large amount of alcohol which port holds. It possesses a good deal of tannin, the stalks not being removed before fermentation, but this diminishes with age, though when young it is very rough and astringent. It is sweeter than sherry, containing from 2 to 6 per cent. of sugar, for it is fortified before fermentation is complete, not after it, as sherry is. Old port contains a large proportion of esters, but, unlike sherry, contains more fixed esters than volatile. When mellowed it has an excellent flavour and bouquet, and retains only a moderate amount of fruitiness.

**Madeira** is derived from the island of that name. For a long time the ravages of the phylloxera stopped the production of the wine, but the industry revived. The wine resembles sherry in its general characteristics and in the high proportion of volatile esters which it

<sup>1</sup> *Lancet*. (1898), 2, 1135 (Report of Commission on Sherry, from which many of the statements in the above paragraphs are taken).

contains. It is a fortified wine, containing from 16 to 22 per cent. of alcohol by volume.

**Marsala** is a Sicilian wine also resembling sherry, but sweeter and containing a much lower proportion of volatile esters. It is only slightly acid.

**Greek wines** may be either natural or fortified, but usually contain only 10 to 16 per cent. of alcohol by volume. They are rich in volatile acids, and are peculiar, also, in containing some aldehyde. They are often plastered. Their chief defects are due to imperfections in the methods of manufacture. Many are resinated.

**Champagne**<sup>1</sup> is the wine produced in the Champagne district of France, the best varieties being obtained from the prefectures of Rheims and Epernay. It is produced, curiously enough, mainly from black grapes. These are squeezed in a very powerful press, and the first pressings used to produce the finest wines. The character of the vintage in different years has also a very marked effect on the quality. The expressed juice, or "must," is allowed to stand for 12 hours in order to let all suspended matters fall out, and is then drawn off into casks to undergo the first fermentation. At this stage the different growths, or "crus," are blended to form the special "cuvées," the finest of which are only produced from the best grapes. The young wine is then bottled and left for two years, to undergo the secondary fermentation. The maintenance of a constant temperature is very important at this stage, and is attained at Châlons, Epernay, and Rheims, by storing the bottles in huge cellars excavated from chalk cliffs. During this fermentation a large amount of carbonic acid gas is produced, and as the percentage of alcohol rises a considerable deposit falls down into the neck of the inclined bottle. This is fixed to the cork by freezing, and removed with the latter in the process of "dégorgement." The wine is still of a sour, harsh, or "brut" character, and is made drinkable by "dosage" with liqueur. This consists in adding to it a solution of cane-sugar<sup>2</sup> dissolved in old champagne and good cognac. Upon the amount of dosage the sweetness or dryness of the wine depends. In this country we like champagne dry, and therefore only 2 to 4 per cent. of liqueur is added to the wine exported to England, but in some countries a wine containing as much even as 16 per cent. is preferred.<sup>3</sup> There can be no doubt that the taste for a dry champagne is rewarded by getting a purer wine, for heavy liqueuring covers many defects. Hence the dry wines are really the finest. It must be remembered, however, that unless 8 per

<sup>1</sup> The process of making champagne was invented by Dom Pierre Perignon, who died in 1715.

<sup>2</sup> The cane-sugar is gradually changed into invert sugar after its addition to the wine.

<sup>3</sup> In France the taste for champagne has swung from sweet to dry. André Simon (1953), *Times Supp.*, May 23rd.

cent. of liqueur has been added the quality of the wine will not be found to improve after longer than twenty years.

Champagne should, strictly speaking, be a natural wine, containing from 10 to 13 per cent. of alcohol by volume. The amount of sugar varies from nil up to 14 per cent., depending on the dosage. The acidity is about 0.5 to 0.6 per cent.—i.e. that of an average claret. A *dry* champagne contains about 2 per cent. of solid matter. A bottle of good champagne will contain about five volumes of carbonic acid gas. Four-fifths of this, however, is given off as soon as the cork is drawn.

The table of analyses and Calorie values, given below, is obtained from Dupré's analyses of wines from a previous edition, by assuming that (i) the alcohol can be completely metabolized, (ii) the sugar is invert sugar and (iii) the contributions of the fixed and volatile acids are negligible.

Similar figures are obtained from making the same calculations of THE HOSPITAL'S *Commission on Light Wines*, 1907, 42, 285.

*British Wines.* From early times "wines" have been made in this country from various fruits such as apple, pear, cherry, blackberry, and elderberry. Dandelions, cowslips, parsnips, and rhubarb have also figured as the raw material. In recent years, under the fostering influence of the Women's Institutes, there has been a revival in the manufacture on a small scale of these wines. Wine from grapes or grape "must" is also still made in this country.

With the introduction of Christianity into Saxon England, production of wine became a necessity owing to its use in the Eucharist, and the cultivation of the grape and the production of wine centred

Wine.	Alcohol. Per Cent.	Sugar. Per Cent.	Calories per 100 ml.	Calories per oz.
Claret . . .	9.68	0.24	69	20
Greek wine . . .	12.35	0.23	87	25
Hock . . .	9.73	0.06	68	19
Hungarian . . .	10.16	0.08	71	20
Madeira . . .	17.82	1.85	132	37
Marsala . . .	16.80	3.50	130	37
Port . . .	18.11	2.54	136	39
Sherry . . .	17.80	3.02	136	39
Champagnes (dry) .	10.95	1.77	83	24
"    (sweet) .	8.49	5.50	80	23
Clarets . . .	9.04	0.11	67	19
Graves . . .	9.80	0.40	70	20
Haut Graves . . .	9.60	0.27	68	19
Moselles . . .	8.54	0.14	60	17
Sauternes . . .	10.22	0.30	73	21
"    (sweet) .	9.34	1.40	71	20

round the monasteries. With the destruction of the monasteries the cultivation of the grape on a wine-making scale died out. An attempt made by the Marquis of Bute, starting in 1877 and ending in 1921, to grow grapes in Great Britain and to make wine from them proved to be uncommercial. Only in the sunniest summers was the wine produced worth drinking.

But wine is still made in this country either from imported Greek grape "must" or from grapes. Sugar is added to the must which is then inverted by boiling and the resulting fluid fermented by imported wine yeast, brewer's yeast or "wild" yeast. When fermentation is over, finings are added, the wine coloured by vegetable dye, and stored in casks. Ultimately it is bottled.

Other British fermented wines consist of a more or less characterless basis wine made by fermenting raisins, dried currants, or rhubarb or imported grape "must." This is flavoured with ginger, orange peel, lemon peel, concentrated fruit essences, or with imported wine, or "silent spirit."

The alcohol in a basis red wine may run from 6.7 to 11.5 per cent. by weight and the reducing sugars inversely with these figures from 20.6 to 7.9. The same or even greater ranges are met with in the "finished" product. There is little to be said in their favour.

**Cider and Perry**, derived from the apple and pear respectively, may be conveniently considered here, for they are really to be regarded as wines; cider, indeed, when first made in England in the thirteenth century, was always called "wine."

The finest *English cider* is made in Devon, Hereford, Norfolk and Somerset. The mid-season fruit, which ripens in October, is best for the purpose. It is gathered and allowed to mellow under cover for a fortnight, and is then ground to a pulp, the kernels being sometimes left out. The pulp is left in vats for 30 hours, and is then pressed, and 100 gallons of the liquor run into a clean vat and left for some days till it clears. It is then racked, clarified with charcoal and strained through bags, and the clear, bright liquid run into 100-gallon casks and bunged down. Perry is made in a very similar way. If a "sparkling" beverage is desired, fermentation is allowed to go on in bottle. The composition of these beverages seems to vary within rather wide limits. They are only mildly alcoholic, having 3 to 8 per cent. by volume, or much the same proportion as beer. The amount of sugar varies greatly. In a dry cider it may be 1 or 1.5 per cent. or less, but in a sweet cider it may rise to 6 per cent. or more. They are moderately acid (0.1 to 0.6 per cent.), the chief acid present being malic; lactic is also present but, unless sophisticated, cider contains no tartaric acid. The more acid varieties (0.6 per cent.) will have an acidity equal to that of about 1.43 g. of tartaric acid per tumblerful.

A sample of genuine Devonshire home-made cider which Hutchison examined had the following composition:

Alcohol (by weight)	.	.	.	4.8	per cent.
Solids	.	.	.	1.5	"
Total acidity	.	.	.	0.66	"
Volatile acidity	.	.	.	0.089	"

The following analyses are by Chapman:<sup>1</sup>

	Total Solids.	Alcohol (by Weight).	Calorie Value per Pint.
Bottled cider	5.12	3.92	275
Draught cider	4.31	3.20	228

The "colic" once associated with cider drinking, now a thing of the past, was due to storage at an early stage of production in leaden receptacles. The colic was a lead colic not a cider colic.

**Medicated wines** are compounds, the basis of which is port or sherry, to which has been added extract of beef, extract of malt, peptone, pepsin, coca leaves, cocaine, cinchona, iron, or some other dietetic or medicinal substance. A "beef and malt wine" may usually be regarded as containing about 1½ oz. of extract of meat and 2 oz. of malt extract in a pint of "detannated" port or sherry.<sup>2</sup> For the medicinal wines there is no definite formula. Of the "coca" wines, some are made from coca leaves, others from liquid extract of coca, and some from hydrochlorate of cocaine.

The following table<sup>3</sup> shows the composition of one of these wines compared with port:

Wine	Alcohol by Volume.	Sugar by Weight.	Meat Extract by Weight, corresponding to Nitrogen Found.	Pure Alcohol in a Wine-glassful.
	Per Cent.	Per Cent.	Per Cent.	Fluid Drachms.
Port	20	2 to 6	—	3½
Wincarnis	19.6	18.2	1.2	3

Such wines are of doubtful value. It is better for an invalid to get beef or malt extract separately and take along with them, if need be, a definite quantity of sound wine of known antecedents.

Medicated wines should in any case only be taken under medical supervision.

<sup>1</sup> *Journ. Inst. Brew.* (1932), February, 38, 2.

<sup>2</sup> The quantity of bouillon represented by a wineglassful of such a wine varies from about 4 tablespoonfuls to 1½ teaspoonfuls. (1909), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1, 795.

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*

**Apéritifs** are wines containing some bitter ingredient designed to promote appetite and are specially popular in France. The basis of them is either a red wine, as in Dubonnet, Byrrh and Rossi, or a white wine as in French and Italian Vermouth and Cinzano. The bitter constituent in Vermouth is derived partly from wormwood, but other aromatics are present as well, and the alcohol content is about 17 per cent. by volume. Italian Vermouth has some added sugar.

Apéritifs are comparable to medicated wines; they sometimes fulfil a useful purpose as appetizers.

**Cocktails** are concoctions of American origin. The basis is usually dry gin (of which they may contain one third of their volume) or sometimes brandy or whisky (e.g. Manhattan Cocktail). To the spirit is added French or (and) Italian Vermouth and, in some cocktails, various bitters (Orange, Angostura, Curaçoa, etc.); in others, flavouring agents such as orange juice (Bronx Cocktail) or lemon. A few drops of Absinthe are sometimes included in the compound. They are usually iced.

Cocktails are intended to serve the same purpose as apéritifs, but being stronger in alcohol (of which they may contain up to 30 per cent.) they have more "kick" in them, and the volatile oils which they contain, especially absinthe, tend to excite the brain. Used in strict moderation they are perhaps harmless enough, but as they are generally taken on an empty stomach they are apt to excite gastritis and being very rapidly absorbed they may easily induce mild intoxication and tend to favour the development of the alcohol habit. They promote appetite by abolishing the psychical inhibitions which interfere with it.

**Non-Alcoholic Grape Wines** are now made which consist of pure grape juice preserved by pasteurization. Suitably diluted, they form pleasant and refreshing drinks, useful for quenching thirst in fever and possessed of slight laxative and diuretic properties.

#### ACTIONS AND USES OF WINE

*General Action.* "The conventional value of wine is determined less by its principal ingredients than by the prominence of the specific character termed bouquet and the absence of certain faults." This aphorism of Thudichum, though more than half a century old, sums up the attitude of the modern dietitian to these beverages. Wines have a conventional value and little else. They betoken sociability, hospitality, and generosity. Those accustomed to their use miss them severely when cut off them, even to the upsetting of their digestions, probably via psychological paths. Those unaccustomed to them may or may not obtain a special reaction after taking them. For example, there is an observation vouched for by a Cambridge Blue who is now a physician.

In his year there was a teetotaller in the boat who "went stale." His coach ordered him a half-bottle of champagne for dinner which he reluctantly took. The next day he was fit again and never rowed better in his life. It does not follow from this observation that it was alcohol or champagne which caused the change, nor that champagne is good to train on, for it may have been chance, coincidence, or the resolution of a psychological crisis which accounted for the change.

If each constituent be considered in turn it is difficult to see that wines are markedly beneficial or the reverse.

Consider first the *acids*. These certainly retard the digestion of cooked starch by ptyalin *in vitro*, because they bring  $pH$  of the medium below the optimal figure of 6.8. Consequently some have deduced that we should not take acid wines with the sweet courses of a meal, and it is indeed true that we take our hocks, clarets, and burgundies with the earlier and more protein courses, and keep the sweeter wines till the desserts. This neglects the facts (i) that acid-tasting wines often have no more acid than the sweet wines, and (ii) acid wines provoke such a flow of saliva that the end result is probably that the  $pH$  is raised to the optimum figure.

It has been suggested that when wine is drunk the acids may be deleterious in that they neutralize the alkalis of the blood. It must be pointed out that the acids in a litre of wine would hardly neutralize the alkalis of the blood and that when the acid salts of wine are metabolized the organic portion is "blown off" as carbondioxide in the breath, leaving an alkaline residue. Liebig long ago pointed out that the free use of hock prevents the precipitation of uric acid in the urine. The same is true of cider and perry. The fact that the consumption of wines and cider renders the urine alkaline would make these substances useful in the treatment of gravel, though, of course, fruits and natural fruit juices would do as well, or better. It is difficult to see how the presence of acid salts in the alcoholic drinks under consideration could be anything but beneficial.

*Sugar.* It can hardly be that the small amount of sugar taken in wines can have either a beneficial action or the reverse on the normal person. Nor should it affect the dyspeptic. None but the diabetic need take account of the sugar in wine. There is a suspicion that the sweet wines are harmful to the gouty, but that this is more than a suspicion can hardly be maintained.

*Tannin.* The astringency of wines is due to the tannin which they contain. A rough or astringent wine and an acid wine are by no means the same thing, though often mistaken one for the other. Red wines are richer in tannin than white, young wines than old. Port, especially when young, is the richest of all, and Burgundy, among red wines, is the poorest.

As was said above, the amount of tannin in red wines rarely exceeds that in an equal amount of a well-made cup of tea, so that we cannot imagine that it is either very deleterious to the normal person, useful to the diarrhœic, or harmful to the constipated. Incidentally we may call attention to the tabu against taking tea along with meat and the absence of tabu against the combination of red wine and meat. Lay dietetics is full of such inconsistencies.

*Alcohol.* We have already discussed the pharmacological effects of alcohol, pointed out that it is a depressant and not a stimulant and that there has been a very marked decrease of the use of alcoholic drinks as medicines in hospital practice. Its value, if used at all, is as a sedative. The effect of any wine in this direction must depend upon its content of alcohol, and as the "natural" wines have only half the alcohol present in fortified wines they presumably are less sedative.

But wines cannot be regarded as mere mixtures of alcohol and water in different proportions. For one thing dilution is of importance. The more dilute the alcohol is, the more slowly it is absorbed and the less chance of an active amount reaching the central nervous system at one moment. Moreover there is a possibility that the esters present in wines influence its pharmacological action. There is a belief widely held that the reason why old wines, and old spirits for that matter, are less harmful than younger and more fiery liquors, is because they contain more of the volatile and fixed esters. The whole subject is obscure and made further obscure by prejudice on the part both of the supporters of and the detractors of the consumption of alcohol.

We think that the following may sum up moderate opinion on the use of wine in health.

1. It is doubtful if the taking of wine can be defended on the grounds that it makes for health. On the other hand there is little evidence that a moderate consumption of wine is deleterious to health.

2. If wines are taken, the light red and white natural wines are the wines for daily use by healthy adults.

3. Half a bottle a day of a natural wine for the sedentary and a bottle a day for the vigorous and actively-employed adult are reasonable allowances.

4. These should be taken at and not apart from meal-times.

5. Fortified wines are best kept for special occasions.

6. There is little evidence that wines are useful in disease.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN INFANCY

#### GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

Human young take an unconscionably long time to learn to eat without the help and supervision of their elders. Compared with, say, a calf or a lamb, a baby seems very slow in learning to feed himself and he takes many more months than other animals before he can be left to his own devices in selecting his food. The fact is that a baby, with his potentially large and complicated brain, has to be born in a relatively immature state in order to get born at all. He has in consequence to be protected carefully while his nervous system is reaching the degree of maturity normal to most other mammals at birth. After that he has to be led to take a share in adult food by slow stages. These two periods together occupy the first two years of his life. Thereafter, for a further decade, or more, he is still dependent on others to provide and to prepare his food. This last phase does not concern us here, for, with certain modifications of quantity to allow for growth in addition to maintenance, the diet of the older child does not differ from that of the grown man or woman.

Though the time over which the special problems of infant nutrition apply, lasts for upwards of two years, the principles involved are few and simple. Unfortunately they tend to get overlaid by masses of detail. Some examples are necessary, but it is our purpose here to outline principles; minute instructions of the changes in feeding to be made month by month must be sought elsewhere if, indeed, it is felt that they cannot be filled in by the application of common sense to a few general rules.

Infant feeding may be considered to fall into four stages, though the first cannot claim strictly to come within this title.

- I. During intra-uterine life.
- II. 0-4 months breast (or bottle) feeding.
- III. 5-12 months mixed feeding and weaning.
- IV. 1-2 years transition to adult food.

#### During Intra-uterine Life

Diet during pregnancy has already been discussed (see pages 230 *et seq.*). Little need be added to what has already been said despite

the fact that we are now considering the nutrition of the foetus rather than that of the mother. Their two interests are complementary. If the foetus does not find what he requires for his own growth available from his mother's food, he is uncommonly well adapted to abstracting it from her tissues. When, for instance, a pregnant woman's diet does not contain sufficient calcium and phosphorus to form the bones of her unborn baby, these elements are taken from the mother's own skeleton, to her detriment. Other substances, whether simple, such as iron, or complex, such as protein and fat, are similarly filched from the mother's stores if her food does not supply the necessary surplus for her parasitic offspring. To preserve herself from these depredations the pregnant woman must increase her intake of fat, protein, carbohydrate and mineral elements in the way which has already been set out. Ebbs<sup>1</sup> and his associates in Canada have emphasized and lent precision to this point. In these observations supplements were made to the diets of some of the poorer women in Toronto during the later months of their pregnancies. The remainder were observed as controls. The additional food consisted of one and a half pints of milk, an egg, an ounce of cheese, an orange and some tinned tomatoes daily, together with 2000 units of vitamin D and some wheat-germ oil. There was a significant difference in the health of those who received the extra food. They were delivered of their babies with less risk and they suffered fewer puerperal complications. Moreover, they produced healthier babies. It seems, therefore, that the foetus is not a completely successful parasite. Within limits he is nourished at the expense of his mother, but if she can eat and absorb the food needed by both, the resulting baby is better than otherwise would have been the case. Clearly, too, the foetus cannot take from the mother substances which she does not possess. An anæmic woman is unlikely to provide her baby with an adequate store of iron with which to start life. A healthy woman often cannot, without special food, provide enough for twins. Iron and other blood-forming elements, e.g. ascorbic acid, must be readily available. Similarly, the baby will be born without his proper store of fat-soluble vitamins if these have not been plentiful in the mother's diet. This applies specially to the last few weeks of the pregnancy during the time in which the foetus is laying down a fairly considerable store of fat under his skin. It seems probable that he combines his reserves of fat with his reserves of vitamins A and D. A premature baby, lacking his subcutaneous fat at birth, is liable to rickets at a much earlier age than a full-term infant. The evidence that vitamin A is stored during the same period is not so complete. There is no doubt, however, of the disadvantages to the

<sup>1</sup> EBBS, J. H., SCOTT, W. A., TISDALL, F. F., MOYLE, W., and BELL, M. (1942), *Canad. Med. Ass. Journ.*, 46, 1; EBBS, J. H., BROWN, G., TISDALL, F. F., MOYLE, W., and BELL, M. (1942), *Canad. Med. Ass. Journ.*, 46, 6.

baby such as defective teeth, which arise when the mother's food has lacked adequate quantities of vitamin A and D during her pregnancy. Other neo-natal defects can be traced to shortages in the maternal diet. Shortage of vitamin K leads to a low prothrombin level in the newly born infant and this, in its turn, accounts for much of the hæmorrhagic disease of the new-born. It seems fairly well established that the babies born of women who have had a diet adequate in vitamin K during their pregnancy in the form of green vegetables have a higher prothrombin level at birth than those whose mothers' diets were restricted;<sup>1</sup> further that the transfer of Vitamin K takes place more readily in the last part of a pregnancy; finally, that an adequate dose of vitamin K given to the mother shortly before she goes into labour will very nearly treble the prothrombin level in the baby at birth.<sup>2</sup>

It would appear wise to make doubly sure by supplying the foetus with all it needs by a sufficient natural intake of green vegetables throughout the pregnancy and to give an artificial boost to the prothrombin level at the baby's most vulnerable time when he first encounters the perils of extra-uterine life.

### Breast Feeding

In an ideal world the advice to be given about food during lactation would be essentially the same as that for pregnancy. Unfortunately not all sucklings are nursed at the breast and the subject becomes more complex. Not only is it necessary to consider the food to be eaten and avoided by the nursing mother but the nourishment she gives the baby has also to be analysed in order that it may be imitated in the too frequent cases in which breast feeding is not practised.

There are, then, to be considered here three matters:

- (A) The diet of the nursing mother.
- (B) The composition of human milk.
- (C) Substitutes for human milk.

**Diet of the Nursing Mother.** If the diet is not sufficient to nourish both a woman and her breast-fed baby, the latter gets all that is available at the expense of the mother. It is surprising how some women, even on the verge of starvation, are able to continue nursing their babies. It is unlikely that the milk they provide at the expense of their own tissues is anywhere near the optimum. Indeed, in conditions far short of starvation Ebbs<sup>3</sup> has shown clearly how much more likely are women, whose diet is adequate, to carry through breast-feeding than

<sup>1</sup> MACPHERSON, A. J. S., MCCALLUM, E., and HAULTAIN, W. F. T. (1940). *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **1**, 839.

<sup>2</sup> HELLMAN, L. M., SHETTLES, L. B., EASTMAN, N. J. (1940), *Amer. Journ. Obstet. Gynaec.*, **40**, 844.

<sup>3</sup> EBBS, J. H., and KELLY, H. (1942), *Arch. Dis. Child.*, **17**, 212.

those whose food is insufficient. His observations were made under conditions similar to those quoted on page 457, but on this occasion they were applied to the period after the children were born. The additional food was given to the supplemented group during the first six weeks only of the infant's life, and at the end of that time 86 per cent. of those having the extra food were nursing their babies against 69 per cent. of those who were on an unsupplemented diet. Even at the end of six months, although the additional food had stopped at the sixth week, the proportions were 39 per cent. as opposed to 24 per cent. At six months of age, the babies in the supplemented group were healthier and somewhat heavier than those in the poor diet group.

It should, in theory, be possible to be more precise about the additional needs of a lactating woman than is the case with the diet during pregnancy. The actual amount of milk secreted by her can be measured, its composition is known and in consequence the sum of the daily output as Calories, fat, protein, etc., can be worked out. There is not in fact any great advantage to be gained by a precise mathematical approach. The nursing mother can utilize a wide range of foodstuffs for the secretion of milk; carbohydrates can be used to build up fats in the milk, and the carbohydrates in the milk have, in any case, to be specially elaborated. A woman is much more likely to breast-feed her baby successfully if she is enjoying and digesting food she likes than if she is made to adhere rigidly to some hypothetically correct regimen.

An increased fluid intake is one of the nursing mother's most urgent requirements. It stands to reason that if she is producing up to two pints of milk a day she will need to drink that much more fluid. If she does not do so, she may use some of the water normally excreted by her intestines and become constipated through the decreased bulk of their contents or she may lower her output of milk. Either result is unfortunate, for in the first case she will resort to purgatives which likewise may diminish milk output.

Much of the additional fluid intake may be taken in the form of water. Some, however, should be in the form of milk and of fruit juices. Cow's milk supplies amino-acids, fat and carbohydrate which need little reconstitution before being resecreted as human milk and it is an excellent source of the calcium, magnesium, sodium, potassium, etc., which have similarly to be found. To what limits the milk may be disguised as tea or coffee, or the water disguised as beer, will be the subject of a later paragraph. Juice from oranges, grapefruit or tomatoes will augment her intake of salts and will supply a large part of her requirements of ascorbic acid.

After water, perhaps the most urgent addition to the diet is first-class protein. The daily output of protein in the milk reaches a maximum of over 20 g. or just under an ounce. The extra intake to provide

this must be greater in quantity as there is some wastage in the process of reconstituting the protein to the forms in which it appears in human milk. Cow's milk can supply some of the surplus and the rest should be provided by additional eggs, meat or fish. If cheese is acceptable and readily digested, it can take the place of the extra meat or fish and so give some variety.

No special steps are needed to add carbohydrate or fat as long as the nursing mother can satisfy her hunger with bread and potatoes. The extra milk and the normal amount of butter in her food will supply much of the milk fat and the rest can be elaborated by her own tissues from carbohydrate. It is unnecessary to make any special addition of iron beyond that contained in the extra meat and eggs, unless the mother's own blood condition demands it. The content of iron in human milk is of the order of 0.1 mg. in per 100 ml., so that the total daily output in the milk is unlikely to exceed 1 mg. This quantity is not increased however much is added to the mother's intake. Any iron deficiency in the baby is remedied by giving a daily dose of a soluble and digestible iron salt after seeking professional advice.

The basic additions to the average adequate diet to be made each day during the period of lactation may therefore be summarized as follows:

One pint of water.

One pint of cow's milk.

Five ounces of freshly pressed fruit juice.

Three ounces of meat or poultry or fish, or  $2\frac{1}{4}$  oz. of cheese.

One egg.

While it is right to allow a lactating woman to select her diet for herself so long as the foregoing additions are incorporated, care must be taken to ensure that her vitamin intake is adequate. It has been shown<sup>1</sup> that an insufficient amount of vitamin D in the mother's diet, even in a sunny climate, may result in the development of rickets in her breast-fed baby. What is true of one fat-soluble vitamin can certainly be applied to another. The vitamin content of foods tends to vary with many factors. When, as is here the case, it is desirable to make sure of a more than normal intake of vitamins A and D, it is wiser not to rely on foods as a source but to give the vitamins as a supplement. In whatever form they are given, vitamins A and D should exceed each day 4000 I.U. and 1200 I.U. respectively. The position in regard to water-soluble vitamins is not so clear. Milk is a poor source of ascorbic acid in any case and it is wiser to give the supplement directly to the baby, rather than to hope that a high maternal intake will ensure a

<sup>1</sup> SABRI, I. A., and FIKKRI, M. M. (1935), *Arch. Dis. Childh.*, **10**, 377.

sufficient amount in the milk. The mother should be having 50 mg. ascorbic acid a day on her own account. If the baby is given his ascorbic acid direct, there is no need materially to increase this amount. The vitamins present in human milk are referred to in the table on page 478. The quantities indicated there suggest that what has been said of vitamins A, C and D applies also to the vitamin B complex. Human milk does not seem to be a potent source of these substances though it must be admitted that it is difficult to find any evidence of lack of them in breast-fed babies in Britain.

The inclusion or exclusion of alcohol in the diet of a nursing mother has from time to time been the subject of hot debate often supported by a variety of not very relevant arguments. The fact is that alcohol does not help lactation any more than, in moderation, it hinders it. Many alcoholic beverages do, however, provide a pleasant way of drinking the extra water needed for successful lactation. Physiologically, alcohol may be regarded as the nutritive equivalent of a certain amount of fat, and as fat in the diet is without favourable influence on the composition of the milk, so, too, is alcohol.

The bad effects on the child, which have been attributed to the taking of alcohol by the mother, are equally imaginary; the fear that alcohol will be excreted by the milk being groundless, unless, indeed, the mother indulge in it to the extent of producing intoxication, in which case she is liable to harm her infant in many more serious ways than by the appearance of an extremely small amount of alcohol in her milk.

Alcoholic liquors, then, cannot directly affect the quality of the milk. If, however, a little bitter beer or a glass of wine at meals increases the mother's appetite and her power of digesting ordinary food, then such an addition to her diet will improve her own nutrition, and with it the amount of her milk; nor need the mother be faced with the choice between abandoning her cocktail parties and suckling her baby.

It has been found,<sup>1</sup> on the other hand, that when coffee is taken by a nursing woman nearly 1 per cent. of the caffeine in the beverage is excreted in the milk and presumably the same would be true of tea. Whether this can have any injurious effect on the infant may, however, be doubted. Besides caffeine, other substances taken by the mother may be excreted in her milk, not always without harm to the baby. This applies particularly to drugs, with which we are not concerned here, though it may be noted in passing that many purgative mixtures contain materials which later give the baby diarrhoea. There are also food stuffs, such as stewed fresh plums, rhubarb, and boiled new potatoes, which tend to have the same effect on some, but not all, babies. Such articles of diet need not be avoided by a nursing mother

<sup>1</sup> E. SCHILF and R. WOHINZ. *Arch. f. Gynäk.* (1938), 134, 201.

unless it is apparent that in the case of her own baby they give rise to undesirable results.

### The Composition of Human Milk

A normal, healthy woman provides her baby with milk of the quality and in the quantity he needs for the first seven to nine months of his life. Upon this assumption are based all the deductions which indicate the physiological requirements of a baby during this period. If for any reason it is impossible for the baby to be nursed at the breast, his best chance of survival depends on his being given food which imitates as nearly as possible, both in amount and kind, that with which he would otherwise have been provided. To this end it is necessary to measure the amount of milk taken by healthy babies and to study the composition of the milk. The following paragraphs are concerned with these matters, but first a word of warning is desirable. There are very great variations in individual cases. The figures given are averages. No two babies of the same weight take exactly the same amount of breast milk in a given period, nor does one baby take identical amounts from day to day. There is also a wide range in the composition of human milk; some of the factors concerned in its variability will be referred to later. No amount of averaging will make the quantities set out precisely right for any particular baby and for the same reason there is no purpose in worrying about the last decimal places in analyses of human milk. Much of the work has been repeated in recent years, but unless the newer studies reveal significant differences in the average results, the figures of earlier authorities are just as serviceable and they are in consequence quoted here.

**Amount of Milk required by the Infant daily.** One can arrive only indirectly at the amount of breast-milk which a child should get at each meal and in the course of the day. Arguments from the size of the stomach in infancy are not of much value, for individual variations in the size of the stomach are very wide, and its size after death is no certain criterion of its capacity during life. Nor is the amount of milk in the breast a certain guide, for the child need not exhaust the breast at each meal. A method which has been widely adopted is that of carefully weighing the child before and after each feed. If carried out on a sufficiently large number of infants, this method affords a fairly trustworthy basis from which to arrive at the average quantities required at each age, and it is by such a method that the table on page 464 has been constructed.

The table includes two sets of observations which were made some time ago and a third series of observations on the early neo-natal period by Mackay<sup>1</sup> which is more recent. This is of interest in that it

<sup>1</sup> MACKAY, H. M. M. (1941), *Arch. Dis. Childh.*, 16, 166

demonstrates a very close similarity to the earlier figures put forward by Camerer. Mackay in her paper gives her findings as Calories taken each day but supplies the factor for converting these figures into ounces and ml. in which form, for simplicity, they appear in the table. She also starts her reckoning from midnight of the day of the infant's birth—that is to say, from an average age of twelve hours. In consequence her totals must be placed half-way between the corresponding figures for the early days of life put forward by Camerer. With these adjustments, the two sets of observations, made at some considerable interval apart, are very consistent and tend to confirm the reliability of the other figures of these earlier workers. Macey<sup>1</sup> has set out at some length a record of the work published on this subject during the intervening years together with further original observations.

Two deductions can be made from this table. First the amount of fluid taken by a healthy infant increases proportionately with his weight during the early months of his life. The average weight of a baby at birth (and for the first week) is about 7 lb.: this is doubled at the age of four months and trebled at a year. He takes, when left to his own devices, between 2 and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of breast milk for each pound of body weight at the age of a week, and a similar amount per pound body weight when he weighs twice as much at the age of four months. Thereafter as his gain in weight slows down, his rate of increased consumption decreases *pari passu*. If the fluid requirements of a baby in the early months of life have to be calculated, it is wise to take the upper limit of normality and give him, daily,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  oz. for each pound of body weight. Secondly, the observations set out in the table indicate the Calorie requirements of a healthy body. Breast milk has a somewhat variable food value with a mean of about 19 Calories to the ounce. For simplicity in reckoning, both human and cow's milk are commonly computed to be rather richer than this at 20 Calories to the ounce. Using the simplified factor it will be seen that the healthy infant takes between 40 and 50 Calories for each pound of body weight daily during these early months. When his food has to be prepared artificially it is wiser to accept the higher figure and to offer him 50 Calories a pound a day during the first four months of rapid growth; the requirements then diminish to 45 and then 40 Calories during the latter part of the suckling period.

Obviously these data must not be applied too rigidly to any given child, for healthy infants of a few weeks may take as much milk as feebler ones whose age is counted by months. On the other hand, wasted infants tend to have a higher rate of metabolism than normal babies of the same age; they are, as it were, extravagant machines and so may require relatively more food per unit of body-weight than the

<sup>1</sup> MACEY, J. M., *et al.* (1931), *Am. Journ. Dis. Childh.*, 42, 569.

# AMOUNT OF MILK REQUIRED DAILY

Period.	Author.					
	Camerer.		Mackay.		Feer.	
	Quantity in 24 hours.					
	g.	oz.	ml.	oz.	g.	oz.
Day: 1st	30	1·1	76	2·7		
2nd	130	4·2	200	7·0		
3rd	240	8·6	313	10·5		
4th	290	10·4	374	13·1		
5th	330	11·8	416	14·6		
6th	365	13·0	439	15·4		
7th	400	14·3	451	15·8	291	10·4
Week. Mid-2nd	450	16·1	466	16·3		
2nd	500	17·8			549	14·6
3rd	497	17·8			590	21·1
4th	582	20·8			652	23·3
5th	653	23·3			687	24·5
6th	734	26·2				
7th	780	27·9			804	28·7
8th	803	28·7			804	28·7
9th	817	29·2			815	29·1
10th	850	30·3				
11th	764	27·3				
12th	767	27·4			828	29·6
13th	819	29·2			852	30·4
14th	829	29·6				
15th	838	29·9				
16th	843	30·1			893	31·9
17th	851	30·4			902	32·2
18th	875	31·3				
19th	872	31·2				
20th	820	29·3			947	33·8
21st	862	30·8			956	34·1
22nd	848	30·2				
23rd						
24th					980	35·0

normal. Hence the rule of feeding an underweight infant, according to the expected weight for its age, rather than according to its actual weight.

Analysis of human milk shows that it contains water, protein, non-protein nitrogenous substances, fat, carbohydrate, and a variety of mineral elements which are in part linked with the organic constituents and in part in solution. The amount of each of these substances present in different samples of breast milk varies within rather wide limits. Some of the factors contributing to this variation will be mentioned later. It is impossible therefore to give a table of constituents which will be true of every sample of human milk. The average figures, themselves subdivided for the different stages of lactation, set out by Holt, Courtenay and Fales<sup>1</sup> provide as good an account of the composition of human milk as any others. They are as follows:

PERCENTAGE CONSTITUENTS OF HUMAN MILK  
(from Holt, Courtenay and Fales)

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Mineral Elements.
Colostrum . . .	2.25	2.83	7.59	0.3077
Transitional . .	1.56	4.37	7.74	0.2407
Mature . . . .	1.15	3.26	7.50	0.2062
Late . . . . .	1.07	3.16	7.47	0.1978

It has been suggested that the figures for carbohydrate in this table are higher than are commonly found in this country and, for comparison, another series given by Davies<sup>2</sup> is added:

PERCENTAGE CONSTITUENTS OF HUMAN MILK  
(from W. L. Davies)

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbo- hydrate.	Mineral Elements.
Early . . . . .	2.14	3.76	6.29	0.31
Mature . . . . .	2.01	3.74	6.37	—
Late . . . . .	1.30	3.30	6.80	0.2

The similarity in these two sets of observations is much more striking than their divergence and the two together can reasonably be taken as representative of the present state of knowledge in this matter.

The *proteins* which constitute between them from 1 to 2 per cent. of human milk are lactalbumin, caseinogen and lact-globulin. The last is present in very small amounts except at the very onset of lactation. It has the same qualities as the globulin present in the blood serum and represents such a small fraction of the protein in true milk, as

<sup>1</sup> HOLT, L. E., COURTENAY, A. M., and FALES, H. L. (1915), *Am. Journ. Dis. Child.*, **10**, 229.

<sup>2</sup> DAVIES, W. L. (1939), *The Chemistry of Milk*, 2nd edn. London.

opposed to colostrum, that it can be dismissed from further consideration here.

A knowledge of the relative quantities of the other two proteins, lactalbumin and caseinogen is of some importance, especially when it becomes necessary to adapt cow's milk for the use of young babies. In human milk the lactalbumin accounts for about two-thirds of the protein present as the following table shows:

DISTRIBUTION OF LACTALBUMIN AND CASEINOGEN IN HUMAN MILK

	Total Protein. Per Cent.	Lactalbumin. Per Cent.	Caseinogen.
Holt, Courtenay and Fales <sup>1</sup>	1.15	0.72	0.43
" " " "	1.07	0.75	0.32
Plimmer and Lowndes <sup>2</sup>	1.00	0.68	0.32

The ratio of lactalbumin to caseinogen of approximately 2 : 1 seems well established and must be regarded as representing the requirements of young babies despite the fact that some analyses of human milk report quantities much nearer equality.

So much for the distribution of proteins in breast milk. In addition, attention should be directed towards the amino acids from which these proteins are built up. Such knowledge is required for two reasons. First, the amino acids found to be present are *prima facie* those essential for a baby's proper growth. No prolonged period of feeding with a substitute for human milk can be expected to be successful unless the baby is given, during that time, the amino acids to which his protein metabolism is adapted. This point has to be borne in mind especially when considering some of the products put on the market for the consumption of ailing infants. Secondly, there is increasing evidence that certain amino acids are essential for the protection of tissues as well as for their growth. The work on methionine<sup>3</sup> as an agent in minimizing liver damage illustrates this point (p. 66). A table of the principal amino acids in human milk compared with those in cow's milk will be found on page 476. It shows that on this particular score cow's milk is a reasonable substitute. The two columns together provide a yardstick against which other reputed infant foods can be measured.

There are other substances in woman's milk besides the proteins which contain nitrogen. This non-protein fraction of the nitrogen is large and represents between a fifth and a quarter of the total nitrogen present in the milk (24.5 per cent. Plimmer and Lowndes,<sup>4</sup> 15-20 per

<sup>1</sup> HOLT, L. E., COURTENAY, A., and FALES, H. L., *loc. cit.*

<sup>2</sup> PLIMMER, R. H. A., and LOWNDES, J. (1937), *Biochem. Journ.*, **31**, 1751.

<sup>3</sup> HIMSWORTH, H. P., and GLYNN, L. E. (1944), *J. Clin. Invest.*, **5**, 133.

<sup>4</sup> PLIMMER, R. H. A., and LOWNDES, J., *loc. cit.*

cent. Rietschel.<sup>1</sup>) For the most part, however, it does not contribute to the nutritive value of the milk. The bulk of the non-protein nitrogen is present as urea. Some, about one-tenth part according to Courtenay and Brown,<sup>2</sup> appears as free amino acids. Whatever their significance, these substances containing the non-protein fraction of the nitrogen play no great part in the nourishment of the baby, nor is it necessary to take them into account when a substitute for breast milk has to be found.

The *fat* in breast milk is suspended in a fine emulsion. It differs but little, either in quantity or quality, from that found in cow's milk. Fat accounts for almost half the food value of the milk and, in the various analyses of milk, shows smaller variations than most of the other constituents. The milk in the earlier stages of lactation is slightly richer in fat than that which comes later. Even when the baby is growing most rapidly in the first two months of his life, the proportion of fat in breast milk does not often exceed 4 per cent., a figure which falls later to just under  $3\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. when the rate of growth declines. These figures are important and indicate an upper limit of fat requirements. If this is exceeded digestive upsets are likely to follow which may take the form of diarrhoea and vomiting or, through the formation of hard calcium soaps from the unused fatty acids, of constipation. The whitish "curds" sometimes seen in babies' stools are usually in fact composed of such soaps. They are evidence of incomplete fat absorption, not, as is sometimes thought, of faulty protein digestion. On the other hand a baby cannot thrive if his food contains materially less fat over a long period.

The full needs of the body for heat will fall upon the combustion of fat and carbohydrate, and as fat is a more compact fuel than carbohydrate and the capacity of the alimentary tract of the young is small, it is to be expected that the percentage of Calories to be obtained from the fat will be high. The metabolic rate is considerably higher in babies and young children than in adults because the former have a much larger surface area in proportion to their weight. Furthermore, their tissues are occupied in growth rather than maintaining a state of equilibrium. This excess production of heat must come from the combustion of fat and carbohydrate. In addition to maintaining the body temperature, fat is used during the period of rapid growth actually as a tissue-producer. The infant lays down fat and substances derived from fat in its fat depots, in the marrow of its bones and in its nervous tissues. Lastly, fat is a natural vehicle of vitamin A, which ensures the health of epithelial tissues and nerves, and of vitamin D, which prevents rickets.

*Carbohydrate* is present in breast milk as lactose. In addition, there

<sup>1</sup> RIETSCHER, H. (1906), *Jahrb. F. Kinderh.*, 64, 125.

<sup>2</sup> COURTENAY, A. M., and BROWN, A. (1930), *Arch. Dis. Childh.*, 5, 36.

is a variable minute amount of dextrose. The quantity of carbohydrate, 6.5–7.5 per cent., is high compared with the milk of many other mammals. The discordance of the analysis as recorded in this country and in North America has already been referred to on p. 465. As further evidence of the discrepancy Myers<sup>1</sup> found an average of 6.0 per cent. sugar in the milk of 86 women on this side of the Atlantic while Denis and Talbot<sup>2</sup> record 7.1 per cent. as the mean lactose content in 60 samples on the other. The difference is not important. It seems reasonable to assume that British babies will do well with milk containing 6 per cent. of carbohydrate, but that this amount can safely be increased to 7 per cent. Beyond this there is danger. On the whole, carbohydrates are the ingredient of the diet which is least likely to be represented in too small amount. On the contrary, there is a much greater danger of supplying them in excess, or of making them a substitute for fat. An infant who is the victim of such an error may be plump enough, but his muscles are flabby, and his skin puffy and pale. Under some conditions it is possible to show that each unit of absorbed carbohydrate takes with it into the tissues twice its weight of water. It can be readily understood that even under less extreme conditions the weight gain from too high a carbohydrate intake leaves much to be desired. It is the false appearance of good nutrition which such infants often possess that is apt to deceive the uninitiated, and such children have been known to receive prizes at baby-shows. It must be remembered, too, that carbohydrates, especially when given in excess and in unsuitable forms, are prone to undergo fermentation in the stomach and intestine of the infant, whereby acids and flatulence are produced, causing griping and diarrhoea.

The *inorganic ingredients* of breast milk are as important as any of the others. During the early months of life the skeleton is growing at a rate never approached at any later time; large quantities of calcium and phosphorus are required for this alone. In addition, muscles, blood and nervous tissue, to mention only a few, need salts as well as organic matter for their proper growth. Human milk provides these elements for a baby in the proportions in which they are needed just as cow's milk does for a calf or mare's milk for a foal. The mineral requirements are peculiar to each kind depending on the rate of growth and other factors. Consequently it is important to know what is naturally supplied to a baby so that the same proportions may be imitated as nearly as possible when an artificial substitute has to be provided. The total amount of minerals and mineral salts as represented by the "mineral elements" of breast milk falls between 0.2 and 0.3 g. per cent. Illustrations of typical findings appear in the following table.

<sup>1</sup> MYERS, B. (1927), *Brit. Journ. Child. Dis.*, 24, 249.

<sup>2</sup> DENIS, W., and TALBOT, F. B. (1919), *Am. Journ. Dis. Child.*, 18, 93.

## MINERAL CONTENT OF HUMAN MILK

Source.	Mineral Elements. g. per 100 ml.
Heubner (1) . . . . .	0.20
Camerer and Söldner(2) . . . . .	0.27
Holt <i>et al.</i> (3) . . . . .	0.31
" " " . . . . .	0.24
" " " . . . . .	0.21
" " " . . . . .	0.20
Davies(4) . . . . .	0.31
" . . . . .	0.20

Holt, Courtenay and Fales further demonstrate the proportions of calcium, magnesium, etc., which go to make up this inorganic residue.

DISTRIBUTION OF ELEMENTS IN ASH OF HUMAN MILK  
(per 100 g.)

Stage of Lactation.	CaO	MgO	P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub>	Na <sub>2</sub> O	K <sub>2</sub> O	Cl
Colostrum	0.0446	0.0101	0.0410	0.0453	0.0938	0.0568
Transitional	0.0409	0.0057	0.0404	0.0255	0.0709	0.0588
Mature .	0.0458	0.0074	0.0345	0.0132	0.0609	0.0358
Late .	0.0390	0.0070	0.0304	0.0195	0.0575	0.0575

This table gives a clear indication of the amounts of calcium, phosphorus, potassium and so forth normally afforded to a baby in the first few months of his life. There is more to it, however, than the bare figures suggest. These elements must be offered in a form in which they are available for use. One of the obvious merits of breast milk is that in this they are provided in the right quantities and in a readily assimilable form. When human milk is not given to a young infant it is better to sacrifice an imitation of the precise quantities than to give the right amounts in a form in which they are useless. Fortunately the milk of other mammals, although it may contain these inorganic matters in vastly different proportions, does provide them in a form in which they are of use.

The importance of *water* to the infant will be evident when one recollects that more than three-fourths of the whole body consists of it, and that it constitutes about four-fifths of milk, which is the natural

<sup>1</sup> HEUBNER. (1899), *Zeit. f. Diat. u. Physik. Therapic.*, 3, 1.

<sup>2</sup> CAMERER and SÖLDNER. (1896), *Zeit. f. Biolog.*, 33, 535.

<sup>3</sup> HOLT, E., COURTENAY, A. M., and FALES, H. L., *op. cit.*

<sup>4</sup> DAVIES, W. L., *op. cit.*

diet of infancy. Water has also local uses in the stomach and bowels, promoting as it does the processes of absorption and secretion. One is too apt to forget that an infant may suffer from thirst as well as from hunger, and that water will allay the former better than milk.

The vitamin content of human milk is referred to on pages 460 and 478.

**Variations** in the quantity and quality of the milk given by different women are considerable as indeed are they in the milk of the same woman at different times. The figures which have been quoted here are the mean result of many observations and they do not give any idea of the range of findings from which they are derived. It would not be misleading to suggest that this range is 50 per cent. each way on the average recorded. On the whole it is not a serious matter that an average figure is preferred to a range of figures. The most important point that might be made by quoting a wider series of observations would be the adaptability of a baby to different quantities of the constituents of his food. On the other hand mean figures give a much clearer indication of what must be arrived at when substitutes for human milk have to be found and for the most part they have been made use of here.

Many factors share in producing the variations and brief mention must be made of some. The table on p. 464 demonstrates the increase in quantity of the milk and the tables on p. 465 the decrease in its quality with the age of the baby. The increase in the quantity corresponds roughly with the baby's increase in weight. As he gets a greater bulk of fluid, the food value of the milk itself per ml. slowly decreases. The diminution is effected for the most part by a decrease in the fat content; the carbohydrate and the protein are also involved though to a much smaller degree.

Colostrum (table, p. 469) is the fluid which is secreted by the breasts before they start to elaborate true milk. It is produced for only a very short period from about the second to the fourth day after the birth of the child and its importance in the present context is therefore not great. The composition of colostrum, as will have been observed in the table, differs materially from that of milk. It contains much less fat, but more protein and more inorganic matter. The protein is different in quality from that of milk, for it consists of a higher proportion of globulin. Some authorities attribute considerable importance to the high globulin fraction of colostrum, believing that it conveys from the mother to the baby in the earliest days of his life, bodies which give him immunity to certain infections. In humans this function of colostrum is not so great as it is in the case of mammals with a different type of placentation whose young acquire little immunity *in utero*. For the present purposes the short period of secretion of colostrum may be regarded as a preparatory phase both for the baby and for the

mother. It is an important stage in itself but, relatively, plays a very small part in the baby's nutrition.

Apart from colostrum, the changes in milk with the progress of lactation present a pattern such as one would expect. When the baby is small he receives a little milk of a high food value; as he grows he gets more milk whose concentration slowly diminishes.

The influence of diet on the composition of milk has already been discussed (p. 458 *et seq.*). Little need be added here to the earlier conclusion that while women will continue to lactate even when starving, they can produce milk of the optimum quality only so long as they are properly fed. Variations dependent on individual differences in the mother or her child are of comparatively little importance. It has been found that the milk of any given woman will show greater variations from day to day than the milk of different women on any one day. Weak women, also, seem to furnish as good a milk as those who are robust and strong, and the milk of women who have borne many children is but little poorer than that of those who are nursing their first infant. Age, also, has little influence, for the milk of women approaching the climacteric has not been found inferior to that of mothers hardly out of their teens.

## CHAPTER XIX

### PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN INFANCY (*continued*)

#### SUBSTITUTES FOR HUMAN MILK

If every woman fed her baby at the breast this chapter would not be required, nor in fact would a large part of the chapter preceding it which deals with observations on the breast-fed baby in order to provide the data required for finding alternative methods. Unfortunately, however, the mother is often unable or unwilling to suckle her infant. Failure in this is sometimes inevitable. Often it comes from reasons that are mistaken and sometimes, again, from reasons that are downright bad. In the latter class the bottom must almost have been reached by the woman who claimed that she could not suckle her baby because her "cigarette ash gets in the baby's eyes."

Fashion and economic circumstances dictate to some extent the variations from period to period in the incidence and duration of breast feeding. In this country urbanization after the industrial revolution led to alarming epidemics of summer diarrhoea in bottle-fed babies. An increasing knowledge of bacteriology and cause and effect suggested as an urgent solution, feeding babies at the breast for the first six to nine months of their lives whenever this was in any way practicable. In the earlier decades of this century there was a notable increase in the extent of successful suckling. The crest of the wave has now passed. The cause of the decline in breast feeding is partly economic in that so many women have occupations which contribute to the family finances, partly a lessening of the fear of gastro-enteritis (the motor car replaced the horse and with this change the flies have largely gone from town life), and partly a fashion for early mixed feeding which while it does little harm does not bring in its train many compensating benefits.

Another contributing cause for the waning enthusiasm for breast feeding is the ready availability of substitutes for breast milk, which are safe for even very young babies and on which many infants can be seen to thrive. Wickes<sup>1</sup> in his recent survey of the history of infant feeding has emphasized the point that artificial feeding of young infants is no new thing. There has, however, never been a time in which the natural method could be abandoned with greater safety and simplicity. In spite of this it may be reaffirmed dogmatically that human

<sup>1</sup> WICKES, I. G. (1953), *Arch. Dis. Childh.*, 28, 151.

milk is the best and safest and most efficient food for the human young during the first few months of their lives. The period of breast feeding should not be less than the first four months and it should not exceed nine.<sup>1</sup> In the latter case it may with advantage be combined towards the end with mixed feeding in a simple form.

However faithful one is to a belief that their mothers' milk is the best food for small babies one often enough has to find some substitute for the natural supply. A wet-nurse is, of course, from the infant's point of view, the best alternative, but one need hardly say that this mode of feeding is open to considerable practical disadvantages. The use of preserved human milk is similarly attended with difficulties. When any surplus supply is available, breast milk can be kept for many months either by a process of pasteurization followed by refrigeration or by freezing it speedily on carbon dioxide snow and storing it at a temperature below its freezing point. But the amounts available are meagre and the process so specialized that such preserved human milk can be used only in the direst emergencies. It cannot be looked upon as a practicable alternative means of infant nutrition. The milk of other animals must therefore be considered. The following table exhibits the approximate composition of the milk of some of the commoner domestic animals compared with that of human milk:

COMPOSITION OF THE MILK OF DIFFERENT ANIMALS<sup>2</sup>

	Protein.	Fat.	Lactose.	Ash.
Human . . .	1.3 - 2.13	3.30-3.76	6.80-6.29	0.20-0.31
Cow . . .	3.40	3.75	4.75	0.75
Goat . . .	3.67-4.22	4.33-7.57	3.61-4.96	0.84
Mare . . .	1.84-2.05	1.14-1.17	5.77-6.89	0.30-0.36
Ass . . .	1.85-2.04	1.37-1.50	6.09-6.19	0.40

It will be observed that none of these is identical with human milk.

This is not surprising, for the composition of a milk, especially as regards its proteins and mineral constituents, seems to depend upon the rate of growth of the animal for which it is intended. The faster a young animal grows, the richer is the mother's milk in these two ingredients. This fact is brought out very strikingly in the following table:<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This is true when applied to women in Great Britain; but circumstances alter cases. There are races of mankind whose women-folk can lactate for much longer periods without danger to their health or well being. Similarly it is not everywhere that the milk of any other mammal is available for the infants after the age of nine months. Rather than that they should have none at all, in such cases they should be allowed to supplement their mixed feeding with whatever milk their mothers can give for many more months.

<sup>2</sup> DAVIES. (1939), *The Chemistry of Milk*. Chapman & Hall.

<sup>3</sup> HEUBNER. (1899), *Zeit. f. Diät. und Physik. Therapie*, 3, 1.

	Time by which Weight is Doubled.	100 Parts Milk contain			
		Protein.	Mineral elements.	Calcium.	Phosphoric Acid.
Human	180 days	1.0	0.2	0.032	0.049
Horse	60 "	2.0	0.4	0.124	0.131
Ox	47 "	3.5	0.7	0.160	0.197
Goat	19 "	4.3	0.8	0.210	0.322
Pig	18 "	5.9	—	—	—
Sheep	10 "	6.5	0.9	0.272	0.412
Cat	9½ "	7.0	1.0	—	—
Dog	8 "	7.3	1.3	0.453	0.493
Rabbit	7 "	10.4	2.4	0.891	0.996

From time immemorial mankind has tried diverse experiments in the use of milk of other animals as food for their own young. If report be true, Romulus and Remus were by no means alone among the ancients in sucking the dugs of most unlikely foster-mothers. To this day the milk of mares, asses or ewes is a staple part of the food of many races, and it is therefore the first resort for their young as a substitute for breast milk. In this country, however, cow's milk and, to a much smaller extent, goat's milk are normally the only possible alternatives to a baby's proper food. Goat's milk has the same disadvantages as cow's milk only more so, since it is more concentrated than cow's milk, and lacks the merit of being everywhere available. If for any reason it is desirable to use goat's milk rather than cow's milk as a substitute for breast feeding, the same rules for modification apply except that the dilution must be greater in proportion to its higher protein, fat and mineral content. The rest of this chapter is devoted to the adaptation of cow's milk to the use of the very young baby. The fact that this occupies a number of pages should not be regarded as an indication that cow's milk can ever adequately take the place of human milk. There are occasions when its use is inevitable. Death or insanity of the mother are among the few compelling reasons for the cessation of breast feeding. No claim is made that any alternative is so good that its use is warranted as a matter of personal convenience.

#### CHEMICAL DIFFERENCES BETWEEN HUMAN AND COW'S MILK

(a) **Quantitative Differences.** Taking the average results of a great number of observations on the general chemical composition of the two milks, one may compare them thus:

	Human Milk.	Cow's Milk.
Water . . .	87 to 88 per cent.	87 to 88 per cent.
Protein . . .	1 .. 2 ..	3 .. 4 ..
Fat . . .	3 .. 4 ..	3½ .. 4½ ..
Sugar . . .	6 .. 7 ..	4 .. 5 ..
Mineral salts . . .	0.1 .. 0.2 ..	0.7 ..
Reaction . . .	Alkaline.	Acid.

One sees that while the total amount of solids in the two kinds of milk is about the same, yet the relative proportions of the different constituents in the two cases are very different. Cow's milk is the richer in protein, mineral matter, and (to a less degree) in fat; human milk excels in sugar. The superiority of cow's milk in the building materials is no doubt due to the more rapid rate of growth of the calf than of the infant, but the excess of carbohydrate in human milk is rather surprising when one compares the relative muscular activities of the calf and the baby. It is difficult to explain this difference save on the grounds of the comparatively greater need of the infant for galactose in building up the central nervous system.

(b) **Qualitative Differences.** On more closely examining cow's milk, one finds that the differences in kind between its principal ingredients and those of human milk are even greater than the differences in the relative amounts. Sugar, indeed, is the only ingredient which is identical in kind in the two milks; the nitrogenous matters, the fat and the mineral salts must be compared separately in each.

**Nitrogenous Matters.** We have already seen (p. 465) that human milk includes a considerable proportion of non-protein nitrogen. Cow's milk contains considerably less of these.

The proteins of milk are of three kinds, caseinogen, albumin and globulin. The quantity of globulin in the mature milk both of women and cows is so small that it may be neglected. The proportions of caseinogen and lactalbumin differ with the samples of milk selected but it is constantly found that cow's milk contains relatively much more caseinogen, and human milk more albumin. Davies<sup>1</sup> gives average figures of 2.7 per cent. caseinogen and 0.5 per cent. albumin in cow's milk, that is to say, rather more than five times as much casein as albumin. In human milk (p. 466) we have seen that there is nearly twice as much lactalbumin as caseinogen (0.72 to 0.43 g.). To put the matter another way, one may say that the caseinogen content of cow's milk is eight times as great, and the lactalbumin content only two-thirds as great as that found in breast milk. It is believed that the food value of caseinogen as a protein is less than that of lactalbumin. If this is true, then cow's milk cannot be considered to have an advantage over breast milk strictly in proportion to its higher protein content.

<sup>1</sup> DAVIES, W. L., *op. cit.*

The difference between the two in respect of the biological value of their proteins is, however, insignificant in comparison to the disadvantages presented by the physical properties of caseinogen in excess as a baby's food. Caseinogen behaves in a way entirely different from lactalbumin in the infant's stomach. In the presence of the gastric secretions, the proteins of cow's milk form a much tougher clot than those of human milk. Some part of them is wasted because the clot is never broken up completely and part of the protein is excreted unabsorbed in the stools. In addition, the tough clot may, by mechanical irritation, give rise to most undesirable digestive disturbances.

Other properties of the proteins of the two milks are beginning to assume increasing significance, namely the relative proportions of the amino acids from which they are built up. Reference has already been made (pp. 66 and 466) to methionine as a liver-protecting substance. Other amino acids have also been suggested either as remedies for disorders or as essentials in certain minimum quantities for proper growth and development. Knowledge in these matters is not yet complete. It is desirable, nevertheless, to have in mind the relative proportions of the amino acids in cow's milk and human milk. The figures given by Plimmer and Lowndes<sup>1</sup> on this subject are set out in the following table:

AMINO-ACID CONTENT OF MILK (g. per 100 ml.)  
(Plimmer and Lowndes)

	Cow's Milk.			Human Milk.		
	Caseino- gen 2.28	Lactal- bumin 0.71	Total 2.99	Caseino- gen 0.32	Lactal- bumin 0.68	Total 1.00
Arginine	. 0.085	0.028	0.113	0.012	0.034	0.046
Histidine	. 0.038	0.013	0.051	0.005	0.011	0.016
Lysine	. 0.140	0.044	0.184	0.017	0.045	0.062
Tryptophane	. 0.031	0.013	0.044	0.003	0.017	0.020
Tyrosine	. 0.132	0.026	0.158	0.017	0.030	0.047
Cystine	. 0.008	0.024	0.032	0.002	0.030	0.032
Methionine	. 0.066	0.016	0.082	0.009	0.009	0.018

There are variations not only in the total amounts of the amino acids in the two milks but also in the proportions found in the two caseinogens and lactalbumins. All the amino acids are represented in both milks and they are, without exception, present in greater quantities in cow's milk. In fact, if milk were diluted with an equal quantity of water, they would still all be present in the resulting mixture in

<sup>1</sup> PLIMMER, R. H. A., and LOWNDES, J. (1937), *Biochem. Journ.*, 31, 1757.

larger amounts than in undiluted breast milk save for cystine alone. It does appear, therefore, that there is a very wide margin of safety in the use of cow's milk, even if diluted, as a source of supply of all the essential amino acids. Any harm to very young babies is to be expected from their abundance in cow's milk rather than their deficiency.

*Fat.* In both human and cow's milk about 20% of the fat is derived from oleic and palmitic acids with the oleic acid predominating by a little. Three more fatty acids account for another 20% in each milk and the distribution of fatty acids making up the remainder differs little in the two milks except that in cow's milk the lower fatty acids are rather better represented. The degree of emulsification of the fat, quite apart from its composition, has an influence on its digestibility, a fact which has to be remembered in considering some artificial foods.<sup>1</sup>

Lenstrup<sup>2</sup> has tabulated his observations on the phosphorus in the two milks in the following form:

MG OF PHOSPHORUS PER 100 ML. MILK					
	Total P.	Acid Insoluble P.	Total.	Acid Soluble P.	
				Inorganic.	Organic.
Human	14.2	2.6	11.6	5.1	6.5
Cow's	95.4	7.1	78.3	67.1	11.2

It may be noted first that the quantities of phosphorus in all these forms is greater in cow's milk, secondly that in human milk a much greater proportion of the acid soluble phosphorus is in organic combination. Presumably the human infant with his rapidly growing brain and nervous system requires a higher ratio of organic phosphorus than the calf which is largely occupied with skeletal growth. There would appear to be nevertheless a sufficient amount of organic phosphorus in cow's milk for the infant's needs.

The vitamin content of cow's milk differs only in degree from that in human milk and in most cases the differences are not significant.

<sup>1</sup> The inorganic materials in the two forms of milk also show important differences. The following table (quoted by Holt & MacIntosh from *National Res. Council Bull.* 119, 1950), gives a reasonable idea of the degree of these differences.

COMPOSITION OF ASH		
	g. per 100 ml. milk	
	Human	Cow
Sodium	0.015	0.058
Potassium	0.055	0.138
Calcium	0.034	0.126
Magnesium	0.004	0.013
Iron	0.0002	0.00015
Chlorine	0.043	0.100
Phosphorus	0.016	0.099
Sulphur	0.014	0.030

<sup>2</sup> LENSTRUP, E. (1926), *Journ. biol. Chem.*, 70, 193.

The following table<sup>1</sup> suggests that, in so far as milk can be considered

VITAMINS IN HUMAN AND COW'S MILK

	Human Milk.	Cow's Milk.
Vitamin A $\mu$ g. per 100 ml. . . . .	65	33
Carotene " " . . . . .	25	30
Vitamin D U.S. units . . . . .	0.4-10.0	0.5-4.0
Ascorbic acid mg. per 100 ml. . . . .	5	2
Thiamine $\mu$ g. per 100 ml. . . . .	14	38
Riboflavin " " . . . . .	37	200
Nicotinic acid " " . . . . .	183	83
Pantothenic acid " " . . . . .	246	350
Pyridoxin " " . . . . .	4	67
Biotin " " . . . . .	0.8	3

an adequate source of any vitamin, fresh cow's milk is for the greater part as good as breast milk and in some instances rather better. It may be that in the procedures required for preserving cow's milk there is a partial or total destruction of one vitamin or another. The common practice of most manufacturers of preserved milks intended for baby feeding is to replace at any rate the major vitamins to a degree which exceeds by many times their original value. It is important to find out if this is the case and the information is readily supplied.

There is no clear evidence that a baby fed on fresh cow's milk is at any greater risk of deprivation of the majority of the vitamins than one fed on human milk. In the case of some of the fortified cow's milk preparations the risk is obviously less. This is only true so long as the manufacturers of "fortified" milks keep within reasonable limits. The cases of "hypercalcaemia", of which more than 100 are known to have arisen in the last two years, may be attributed to too great "fortification".

In the light of these facts, regarding the profound qualitative differences in chemical composition between human and cow's milk, one must conclude that it is not practicable so to modify the latter that it shall be identical with the former, and the word "humanized" applied to cow's milk must be regarded in a relative rather than an absolute sense.

*Comparative Digestibility of Cow's and Human Milk.* It is a familiar fact that for the first four or five months of their lives babies have much greater difficulty in digesting an unmodified cow's milk than that of their own mother. Part of the difficulty arises from the difference in the quality of the milks which has been referred to. Indeed, it may be considered that the milk of one kind of mammal can never be wholly suitable for the young of another kind. Yet a minor part of the trouble is of a physical nature in that cow's milk forms a much denser clot in the stomach than human milk.

<sup>1</sup> LAWRENCE, J. M., *et al.* (1947), *Am. Journ. Dis. Child.*, 70, 193.

The greater density of the clot is due—(1) to the absolutely larger proportion of caseinogen in cow's milk, and probably also to those chemical differences between cow's and human caseinogen already mentioned; (2) to the smaller proportion of fat and soluble albumin relative to the caseinogen which characterizes cow's milk—the soluble albumin and fat of human milk seem to act mechanically in producing a loose clot; (3) to the fact that cow's milk contains more calcium and acid than human milk, and the density of the clot depends very much on the proportions of these two constituents.

For all these reasons cow's milk tends to form a dense, retracted clot in the stomach, while the clot of human milk is loose, friable, and easily broken up.

In the intestine there is much less difference in behaviour between the two milks. The stools of infants fed on cow's milk are richer in mineral matters than those of breast-fed children, but, then, cow's milk is richer in minerals than human. A higher proportion of the fat of cow's milk also escapes digestion than is the case with human milk, and probably also a somewhat greater proportion of protein; certainly the fæces of bottle-fed babies contain more nitrogen than those of infants reared at the breast.

### INFANT FEEDING WITH COW'S MILK

It will be agreed, that if a substitute for human milk has to be provided for a young baby, cow's milk or a food derived from cow's milk is the commonest practicable alternative. In the preceding section the differences between human and cow's milk have been considered. Any modification made to the latter to render it suitable for babies must be made with these differences in mind.

Before discussing the means of adapting cow's milk, it is necessary to set down certain general rules that must be fulfilled whatever form of substitute feeding is adopted.

1. The food must be of *sufficient Calorie value*. During the first four months of life a baby needs about 50 Calories for each pound of body-weight a day. From five to nine months its requirements are less and after the age of nine months these fall below 40 Calories a pound body-weight a day. It is necessary, therefore, to know the caloric value of whatever is given. Each ounce of cow's milk gives 20 Calories and an ounce of sugar 116 Calories. From these figures the food value of most modifications of cow's milk can be worked out, though when the dried milks are used it is simpler to ascertain their Calorie value from the manufacturers. This should be stated on the labels on the tins.

2. Along with its food, a baby must be given *enough fluid*. Observation of breast-fed babies shows that they take about 2½ oz. of fluid for

each pound of body-weight in the day, and this figure should be aimed at when they are "artificially" fed.

3. The *quantity* given *at each feed* must be such that it will satisfy the infant without over-filling his stomach. The table on p. 464 gives an indication of the daily quantities required at different ages or the number of feeds to be given in the day depends in its turn on the interval between them. Small babies weighing less than five pounds and those who are enfeebled for any reason need frequent rather small feeds and for them the interval should not exceed three hours. On purely theoretical grounds three-hourly feeding may be desirable for all babies during the first three or four months, but it is so time-consuming that it is usually wise to plan a longer interval. An abrupt change from three-hourly to four-hourly feeding was observed carefully in the practice of a hospital maternity department. The gain in weight of the babies during the first fortnight of life was slightly greater on the four-hourly basis and those in charge had the satisfaction of knowing that a regimen was established with the blessing of the hospital which would have been adopted in any case as soon as the babies reached their own homes.

If during this period of life the interval between feeds is four hours it follows that there will usually be five feeds in the day, thus allowing a clear eight-hour gap at night.

When the baby's mother is inexperienced and anxious or if the baby is being bottle-fed by others who have come new to the responsibility there is much to be said for complete regularity in time and intervals of the feeds. By this means it is ensured that the infant gets enough in the day and that his digestive processes and periods of activity and rest fall into a kind of rhythm, leading to reasonable well-being.

Many mothers have an instinctive ability to nurse their babies and, if they have it, they may safely be left to judge the quantities to give and the times at which they shall be given, whether the baby is fed at the breast or on the bottle. This also applies to the limited number of those skilled women who have the knack of doing the same when bottle-feeding babies on behalf of others.

4. The method of feeding adopted must be *economically possible*. Those methods which require elaborate apparatus, such as sterilizers and refrigerators, costly proprietary ingredients or great time in preparation, have no place except in the homes of the wealthy.

5. The food offered *must be digestible*. The differences between cow's milk and human milk already enumerated must be minimized.

In modifying cow's milk the factors to be considered are the physical properties of its protein, the relatively greater amount of protein, the relatively smaller amount of sugar and the relatively greater amount of mineral matter, in that order of importance. The greatest drawback

of cow's milk as a food for young babies is the way its caseinogen behaves during the course of digestion. Not only is there a large amount of it, but in the baby's stomach it tends to set into a firm, indigestible clot. In theory it should be possible to readjust the total and relative amounts of caseinogen and lactalbumin. Practically, however, it is too tedious to do this as an everyday measure. Consequently it is usual to attack the physical properties of the proteins rather than their proportions so that they form a finer clot in the stomach. According to the way in which this is carried out, other additions may have to be made to the milk in order to maintain the calorie value.

### METHODS OF MODIFYING COW'S MILK

(1) *Heat*. If milk is boiled for five minutes, the caseinogen undergoes a change which makes it more easily digestible. Some of the protein is lost in the "skin" which forms and the total protein content is thereby slightly diminished. Similar changes can be brought about by heating the milk for a longer period at a lower temperature. In Budin's method of infant feeding the milk is heated for forty minutes at  $212^{\circ}$  F. The advantages of treating milk by heat are its simplicity, the unaltered food value (any loss of protein is counteracted by a loss of water), and the fact that the milk is rendered sterile. The disadvantages are the change in flavour, the destruction of the antiscorbutic vitamin, and the failure to raise the sugar content or diminish the amount of mineral matter. This method can be used successfully for feeding many healthy babies, providing care is taken to augment the vitamins by other means, e.g. orange-juice and cod-liver oil. For weakly infants it is not the method of choice.

(2) *Dilution*. The object here is to reduce the caseinogen and mineral matters in cow's milk, to leave the proportion of fat much as it was, and at the same time to increase the amount of sugar. Taking the average composition of cow's milk and human milk, and adding one part of water to one part of cow's milk, we get the following comparative results:

	Human Milk.	Cow's Milk.	Cow's Milk and Water, equal parts.
Protein . . .	1.5	3.5	1.75
Fat . . .	3.5	4.0	2.0
Sugar . . .	6.5	4.5	2.25
Mineral matter . . .	0.2	0.7	0.35

This makes the proportion of protein about right but leaves the sugar too low. If now one adds to every 4 oz. of the mixture one medium-sized teaspoonful of lactose or cane-sugar pressed flat (4 g.) and one teaspoonful

of 40 per cent. cream, these defects are rectified (4 ml.), and, except for an excess of inorganic substances, the mixture will have approximately the same proportion of each ingredient as human milk.

The proportions of milk, water, sugar, and fat can be altered to suit babies at different ages and in varying states of health. Such variations on the theme of dilution provide the basis of the so-called "formula feeding." Some dairies are prepared to carry out the dilution and reconstruction according to prescription and to deliver the milk ready modified.

It is clear that all the methods of dilution have one defect; although they bring down the total amount of protein to the level at which it is in human milk, they do not influence in any way the relative proportions of the two kinds of protein—caseinogen and lactalbumin. For this reason the resulting mixtures must remain more difficult of digestion and less useful in metabolism than human milk. Various methods of getting over this difficulty have been proposed by using whey as a diluent, but all such methods are rather troublesome.

(3) *Dried Milk.* The water in milk can be removed and the solid part left as a powder. This occupies about an eighth of the space of the original fluid, so that if one part of the powder is added to eight of water, the milk is reformed with the fat, protein, and carbohydrates in their original proportions. In the course of drying, especially if this be done by the roller process, the physical properties of the proteins are changed; when the reconstituted milk enters the stomach, the curd formed is more finely divided and more digestible than that of fresh cow's milk. This constitutes the chief claim of dried milk as a substitute feeding for young babies. In addition, it is free from dangerous organisms, easily handled and contains all the vitamins of fresh milk except the vitamin C. Many manufacturers add vitamins to the milk powder, so that in use it has actually a higher proportion of accessory food substances than fresh unheated cow's milk.

Up to this point the description of dried milk is easy. Thereafter it becomes complicated by the fact that it is just as simple to dry a milk which has been modified in some way before processing as it is to reduce the unaltered milk to a powder. Most manufacturers are anxious to put on the market milk powders which have special qualities and which consequently can be considered to have extra advantages by those who are sufficiently suggestible. For the present purposes we are concerned with the usefulness of straightforward dried cow's milk as an alternative food for young babies, and we can leave to a later chapter the more complicated variants.

If these limitations are accepted there are four kinds of dried cow's milk for consideration.

I. *Whole Cream Dried Milk.* This is marketed by many firms either

under their own names or made by them within the specification of National Dried Milk.

II. *Half-Cream Dried Milk*. This powder is derived from milk from which a moiety of the fat has been removed. The food value is to that extent reduced, but owing to the propensity of the fat in dried milk to separate out when the powder is made up with water the half-cream milks are rather easier to handle and more digestible. The National half-cream dried milk and the Cow and Gate special half-cream dried milk belong to this group.

III. *Half-cream dried milk to which sugar has been added* to replace the food value lost by the removal of half the fat. The majority of half-cream dried milks belong to this group. The reconstituted milk has an adequate calorie value. The advantage is that results of the poor emulsification of fat are minimized and the person responsible for making up the feeds has only one powder to deal with. But it is impossible to exclude the added carbohydrate if for any reason this is desirable.

IV. *Separated (or Skimmed) Dried Milk*. This powder is made from cow's milk from which all the fat has been removed. Its food value is proportionately reduced so that reconstituted in the proportion of one part of the powder to eight of water the calorie value is between 10 and 12 to an ounce, instead of the full cream milk's 20. It is unsatisfactory as a food for healthy babies, but it has a very useful place in the treatment of some forms of enteritis. Many of the makers of infant foods include dried skimmed milk in their range of products.

In their powder form these milks have roughly the following percentage compositions:

	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrate.
I. Full Cream Dried Milk	27	27	37
II. Half Cream " "	30	16	44
III. Half Cream " "			
with added sugar	20	15	57
IV. Skimmed Dried Milk	35	1	53

These four simple types of dried milk give more than enough scope for variation. It might be argued that every requirement for baby feeding could be met by using either full cream dried milk or separated dried milk or a combination of the two in whatever proportions are required to diminish the fat. In the instances where a greater or less part of separated milk would have been used, sugar can be added within the tolerance of the infant to the extent necessary to bring the resulting fluid up to the required food value.

In practice, however, many find it easier to use one single powder in which the fat has already been reduced and the sugar and food value increased. For them the half-cream dried milks are a convenience.

Appended to the following chapter is a list in which some of the available dried milks are referred to in somewhat greater detail. In general they are reconstituted by mixing one level measure (supplied by the makers) to each ounce of water. Although an attempt has been made to indicate their approximate composition, it must be emphasized that up-to-date information of this can only be obtained from the manufacturers, for there tend to be minor variations in the composition and in the vitamins and minerals salt additions from time to time. Individuals often find that one or other of the proprietary dried milks is easier to use and seems to offer special advantages. Such a conclusion must be left to the experience gained under the conditions in which the feeding arrangements have to be made.

(4) *Evaporated Milk*. The technique of preserving milk from which part of the water has been removed by evaporation has been practised on a commercial scale for very nearly a century. The earlier method (Borden 1856) depended on the addition of sugar as well as on evaporation and heating to secure prolonged sterility. In 1883 Meyenburg devised a way in which unsweetened evaporated milk can be rendered sterile by superheated steam. Both processes are still in use. Their technical details are complicated but both involve the use of heat to a degree which alters the physical properties of the cow's milk proteins in very much the same way as does roller drying and this leads to their becoming more easily digestible by a young baby.

There are in fact three varieties of evaporated or condensed milk available on the market:

- (a) Evaporated whole milk.
- (b) Evaporated sweetened whole milk.
- (c) Evaporated skimmed milk sweetened or unsweetened.

Only the first of these need concern us here for of the three it is the only one suitable as a food for the healthy infant. Sweetened condensed milk has its uses under special circumstances but normally it contains too high a proportion of carbohydrate for balanced feeding of a nursing. The absence of fat from the evaporated skimmed milk makes its exclusion self-explanatory.

The maximum and minimum values of sweetened condensed whole milk and evaporated whole milk are as follows:— Davies<sup>1</sup>

	Milk Solids	Fat	Protein	Lactose	Ash	Water	Sucrose
Condensed Whole milk, sweetened	29.4	8.0	7.1	11.3	1.7	21.7	37.6
	36.6	11.5	9.5	15.2	2.2	32.2	43.4
Evaporated Whole milk	21.1	7.3	5.8	8.6	1.1	68.0	
	32.0	10.5	8.5	11.9	1.7	78.9	

<sup>1</sup> DAVIES, W. L. *Chemistry of Milk*, London, 1939.

It will be seen that there is a considerable range in the concentration in different samples of evaporated whole milk. The manufacturers of any particular brand will either state on the tin, or in a brochure on request, the average composition of their product. This information is essential before any kind of evaporated whole milk is used as an infant food. The lack of it or disregard for it in the past has led to the relative unpopularity in this country of a method of infant feeding which in fact has much to commend it.

Generally speaking most samples of unsweetened evaporated whole milk in this country are nearer one-third than a half the bulk of the original milk. Using evaporated milk of this kind and diluting it with twice as much water the following approximate percentage composition is arrived at:—

	Fat.	Protein.	Carbohydrate.
Unsweetened whole cream evaporated milk undiluted . . . . .	10	8	11
Diluted with twice its quantity of water . . . . .	3.3	2.7	3.7

The diluted milk has sufficient fat and protein but compared with human milk is slightly deficient in sugar and its food value is to that extent the less. One level teaspoonful of sugar (4 g.) to each six ounces of the diluted milk will remove both defects. Alternatively, a rather less degree of dilution by adding only one-and-a-half parts of water to each part of milk will provide the right food value though the distribution of components would not approximate so closely to that in breast milk.

From this example it will be clear that a less degree of dilution will be needed in the less concentrated samples of evaporated milk. It will be clear too from the table on p. 484 that no amount of dilution will ever get a sweetened condensed milk to a composition in which there is sufficient protein and fat to balance the very large quantity of sugar added in the course of its manufacture.

Evaporated milk has several points of advantage as a method of bottle-feeding babies. Not least of these is the satisfactory state of emulsion of the fat globules in the reconstituted fluid. With many kinds of dried milk, however carefully they are made up with water, fat tends to separate off as an oily layer floating on the surface. Though the bottle be shaken often during the feed there is a likelihood in such cases of the baby getting a very high concentration of fat in the last few mouthfuls. This sometimes nauseates him and makes him sick. The fat in evaporated milk does not separate off in the same way and its use avoids this particular difficulty. Evaporated milk being supplied in tins keeps better over long periods than dried milk. It is easier to

reconstitute than dried milk. While it requires some little skill to measure the right quantity of milk powder, mix it into a smooth paste with a little water and then add more water to bring it up to the required bulk, even the dimmest-witted individual can open a tin of evaporated milk, empty it into a jug and then fill the tin twice more with water and add this to the milk in the jug.

Whole-cream unsweetened evaporated milk, efficient as it is for bottle feeding, owes its relative unpopularity in this country to two main causes. First, it suffers from its kinship to sweetened condensed milk. Misuse of the latter has caused much trouble. Even when it was given in proper dilution the amount of carbohydrate was too high in proportion to the protein and fat (see table, p. 484), and its prolonged use led to babies becoming fat and flabby. Worse still, in the hands of the ignorant, misinformed or poor it was used sparingly in much too great a dilution and the infants who were so treated showed all the defects of deprivation of protein and mineral salts. The second cause for the partial eclipse of evaporated milk as a baby food dates back to 1939. At the beginning of what was likely to be a long war Government authorities had to decide which form of preserved milk would be the least likely in its production, storage and transportation to hinder the national effort. The choice naturally fell on dried milk, partly because of its lesser bulk and simpler form of packaging. From that time, owing to the Government-sponsored National Dried Milk and the various subsidies to make it available for the poorest families, milk powder became used almost to the complete exclusion of other forms of preserved milk. It has been suggested here that under normal conditions all the advantages for the purpose of infant feeding are not with dried milk and that there are some reasons for an occasional alternative in the form of the whole cream evaporated milks.

(5) *Acidifying*. The physical properties of the protein can be modified in some respects by making the milk acid, although the changes brought about are not exactly the same as those produced by heat, peptonizing, or desiccation. The proteins in cow's milk act when in contact with the gastric juice as if they were an alkali, immobilizing some or all of the hydrochloric acid in the juice. The purpose of adding acid beforehand is to exhaust this "buffering" action of the proteins. Incidentally the size of the clot formed can be regulated by the manner in which the acid is added to the milk and there are also some more remote effects from the acid milk on the type of bacteria inhabiting the intestine. Of the many possible methods of acidifying milk, two are in common use. In one a measured quantity of milk-souring bacteria is added to the milk which is kept at blood heat in a suitable apparatus (thermos flask or incubator) for twelve hours before use. A small quantity of this soured milk may be used for starting the process in the next lot, though it is

well not to carry this process through more than five generations before starting with a new supply of acidifying bacteria (see p. 602).

The second, and perhaps simpler, method is the direct addition of acid to the milk. To each pint of boiled milk, which has been allowed to cool to blood heat ( $98.4^{\circ}$  F.), from 40 to 60 drops of 40 per cent. lactic acid are added drop by drop with constant stirring. In this way a very finely divided curd is formed in the milk which is not rendered unpalatable. Care must be taken not to heat the milk above  $40^{\circ}$  C. ( $104^{\circ}$  F.) after the acid is added, otherwise a dense curd will form. When milk treated in this way encounters the acid gastric juice the caseinogen, already curdled, cannot form in the stomach the massive curds produced by fresh cow's milk.

(6) *Peptonizing*. The proteins of cow's milk can be broken down by treating the milk with a proteolytic enzyme. Even when this process of breaking down is carried only a short way the cow's milk proteins become much more readily digestible. Were it not for the almost universal availability of dried or evaporated milks which need very little preparation before they are given to the baby, peptonizing would enjoy considerably greater popularity than is now the case. Even so, there is still scope for its use specially for those infants returning to a full diet after a severe digestive disturbance.

Partial peptonizing can be used with advantage in the case of infants whose stomachs have a greater difficulty than usual in dealing with cow's caseinogen. It can be conveniently carried out by means of Fairchild's Peptogenic Milk-powder (p. 612). Each measure of the powder contains the ferment required to digest a certain quantity of milk, along with some bicarbonate of soda, which renders the milk slightly alkaline, and enough milk-sugar to raise that ingredient to the proportion found in mother's milk.

By following the directions supplied with the powder, the process of digestion is only carried so far as partially to change the caseinogen of the milk, sufficient to prevent its clotting, but not enough to absolve the stomach from all further labour. Thus, digestion is rendered easy without the stomach's being demoralized. Chittenden analysed the resulting mixture, and compared it with human milk as follows:

				Milk prepared by	
				Human Milk.	Peptogenic Milk-powder.
Specific gravity	.	.	.	1031	1032
Water	.	.	.	86.7	86.0
Protein	.	.	.	2.0	2.09
Fat	.	.	.	4.1	4.38
Sugar	.	.	.	6.9	7.26
Mineral matter	.	.	.	0.2	0.26
Total solids	.	.	.	13.2	13.9
Reaction	.	.	.	Alkaline.	Alkaline.

It will be observed that the two fluids are almost identical in composition. Milk prepared by this method does not clot with rennet, even in the presence of a considerable amount of acid.

*Citrating.* It is a popular practice to add one grain of citrate of soda to each ounce of cow's milk in an attempt to soften the clot formed by the casein. The citrate is reputed to act by precipitating some of the calcium which in turn is supposed to modify the coagulation of the protein. There does not seem to be any experimental evidence that anything of the sort happens. Doubts both as to the efficacy and the explanation of this procedure are increased by the fact that some of its practitioners add lime water as well as sodium citrate which must seriously add to the latter's task in dealing with the calcium in the milk.

In conclusion, it is clear from what has been set out above that there are several ways of providing a substitute for human milk. From the fact that there are so many one may safely assume that no one of them is ideal. They should be used only under the pressure of necessity. The home conditions of the baby and the amount of time and money that can be spent in preparing his food, will play a part in deciding the most suitable form to use in each instance. The substitute for human milk may be expected to give him a reasonable chance of survival, but it must be remembered that it remains at best a poor second to his natural food.

## CHAPTER XX

### PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN INFANCY (*continued*). TRANSITIONAL FEEDING: SOME PROPRIETARY FOODS

The transition from a diet wholly of milk, whether human or cow's milk, to the varied diet of children and adults, takes place in several stages. These overlap in time, and, to some extent, fashion rather than reason dictates the point in the baby's life at which each shall be introduced. It has already been suggested that milk alone should form the staple diet for the first four months of life and that usually it should not be the predominant food after the age of nine months. There is a considerable period between the two ages in which there is scope for individual variation in practice and in which from time to time one method or another seems to confer special benefits.

The first phase in the change from a wholly milk diet is directed not so much at introducing more food as at accustoming the baby to new flavours and new consistencies of the substance put in his mouth. Anyone who has had to wean an infant who for eight or nine months has had nothing but milk will realize that there is no form of conservatism so stubborn as his attitude to what he regards as the only possible food. Anything with a different flavour or different feel to the mouth is spat out with a good deal of vigour.

There is, therefore, much to be said for starting at an even tenderer age to get him used to other ways. If at the end of the fourth month of his life a supplement to one of his feeds is devised this should have certain characteristics besides its variety. It should be finely divided for he cannot chew; it should be in a form rather thicker than milk but not so stiff that he cannot deal with it by the sucking movements of his mouth before he swallows it and, because until the age of six months the starch splitting ferments of the infant's digestive tracts are not in full working order, unsplit starch should not predominate in the additional feed. Sieved green or root vegetables made up with gravy from cooked meat fulfil most of these requirements. As time goes on yolk of egg or the scrapings made from cooked meat with a blunt or serrated knife, can be incorporated. By this means a second useful purpose may be served besides that of widening the baby's experience of food. The sieved vegetables add to his mineral, and to some extent of his vitamin intake. The gravy and even more the yolk of egg or

scraped meat make a useful supplement of iron in which both human and cow's milk are deficient.

Providing the constituents of these educative foods are well cooked and well sieved no great elaboration is needed in their preparation. Some of the recipes for the preparation of, say, bone and vegetable broth involve the expenditure of time and fuel out of all proportion to the value of the resulting product which, besides containing a protein of no great nutritive value, gives very much the same minerals as the simpler preparations.

Many firms<sup>1</sup> sell ready-prepared vegetable purées in small tins sufficient each for a single feed. In the course of their manufacture the constituents are reduced to a sufficiently fine state and they form a convenient and safe way of carrying out this part of the infant's education. Simplicity of use apart, they have no advantages over the home-made products.

A second phase in the transition is the introduction of starch as a source of food. Two purposes are thereby served. The baby's digestion is familiarized with what will henceforward be one of the staple ingredients of his diet, and, at the same time, his form of food becomes thicker so that in a short while it is so stiff that it must be eaten with a spoon rather than drunk from a bottle or cup. This stage in his progress should be deferred until it is certain that he is able to break down the relatively complex starches to the simpler dextrans and sugars. Ptyalin is present in saliva from birth but as the infant does little chewing salivary digestion of starch at first plays little part. The full secretion of amylase in pancreatic juice is reached by the sixth month and it is from this time onwards that starch can be substituted for dextrin and sugar as a form of carbohydrate.

The introduction of starch to a bottle-fed baby is relatively simple. To first one and then a second and then a third milk feed is added a small amount of one of the easily prepared starchy infant foods. It is easy to do this if the baby has learnt to take unmodified liquid cows' milk, but there are also many forms of dried milk foods in which the starch is incorporated and these can be used with advantage for those whose food has hitherto been dried milk. In the case of breast-fed babies, the start of a thickened feed must be anticipated for a short time by the substitution of a bottle-feed of sterile and sweetened cows' milk for one of the breast feeds. From then on the sequence is the same as for a bottle-fed infant.

Baby foods suitable for the introduction of starch at this stage fall into two major groups. First (VI) those in which the more complicated carbohydrate has been incorporated with a milk powder, and secondly (VII) those which are really forms of prepared starch ready to be added

<sup>1</sup> Including Messrs. Heinz, Libby, Nestlé's, and Scott's Strained Foods.

to liquid cows' milk. The second group can be further sub-divided on the basis of the degree of preparation. Some need fairly prolonged cooking with the milk. In others the granules are already broken open and need only mixing and warming with the milk. The difference is roughly the same as that between making proper porridge and preparing the kind that can be got ready between waking and breakfast time.

In the table at the end of this chapter are examples of both main types of cereal food, with an indication of their composition, and it will be seen that the two groups roughly conform with the following figures:

	Protein, Per Cent.	Fat. Per Cent.	Carbohydrate, Per Cent.
VI. Dried milk with added cereal . . .	20	15	60
VII. Cereal for addition to liquid milk . . .	10	2	80

There is naturally a much greater variation in these preparations than is the case with the dried milks referred to in the previous chapter. This is fortunate in that it gives an opportunity of selection to suit individual households and it leaves wide scope for changes in flavours and constituencies for each baby.

There are, it will be observed, included in the appended table a group of infant foods (V) to which no reference has hitherto been made. They consist for the most part of dried milks, either whole cream or defatted, which have been modified for special purposes. To some of them substances such as iron or lactic acid have been added. In others the proportions of protein or carbohydrates have been altered as well as those of fat. For the most part they are designed for special therapeutic purposes and, therefore, do not enter into the present consideration, but they include among them infant foods in which modification has been carried out in the proteins beyond that involved in drying and which, therefore, have frequent uses.

Yet another phase in the progress from infant to adult feeding is the acquisition of the art of mastication. A baby learns to go through the motions of chewing long before he has any back teeth with which to chew. He will practise this achievement on a variety of objects, many of them very unsuitable. At some stage it is well that he should come to understand that mastication is normally associated with meal-times and that there are some substances which, with sufficient perseverance, can be relied on to produce results. He cannot make full use of this art until he has cut a reasonable number of teeth at somewhere between the ninth and fifteenth months of his life. Nevertheless he should be given his earlier lessons before this in the form of hard-baked crusts,

rusks and similar relatively safe, slowly disruptible food. The prerequisites are that whatever is used shall be too large to be swallowed as a whole, that it shall disintegrate slowly into a soft mass which he can swallow without choking, and that what he does swallow shall be digestible. There is much to be said for the hard-baked finger of biscuit with a tape threaded through one end. By this means it can be secured from being thrown too often on the floor, and by the same tape it can be hauled back from the infant's gullet if he sees fit to swallow the last part whole.

With the appearance of his back teeth chewing can become a much more regularized procedure associated with mealtimes, and, at the same time, a much wider range of foodstuffs can be offered.

The final phase in the transition towards a full diet occupies the time between nine months and the complete eruption of baby teeth. If at the age of eight or nine months an infant has acquired a fairly catholic taste in flavours and constituencies, if by then he is on three thickened feeds a day and two drinks of milk, if he has had some practice in the art of chewing, the final transition to sharing the family's meals is very largely a matter of commonsense. Three principles have to be borne in mind.

First, until he has most of his teeth, food must not be too difficult to masticate; although scraped meat and pounded fish may not be necessary it is still desirable first to mince and later to cut up finely the meat before it is offered to him. The same applies to vegetables, although they need no longer be sieved they should be cooked until they are soft and to some extent broken up. Bread and butter and such substances as sponge fingers do not offer the same difficulties.

Secondly, in spite of his wider range of foodstuffs, he must continue to have an adequate intake of mineral salts. This can best be supplied as cow's milk and whatever the variety of his diet for the first three or four years of his life, between a pint and a pint and a half of cow's milk should be included either as a straight drink or used in preparing other items in his food.

Thirdly, there must be adequate supply of first-class protein. Healthy children can be left very much on their own devices in deciding on the amount they want to eat in the day but this must include enough protein for healthy growth. Towards the end of the bottle-fed period an infant is taking about 4 g. of first-class protein for each kilogram of his body weight. As the rate of growth slows down between the first and second year this high requirement diminishes but during the whole of childhood it never falls below 2 g. per kg. The requirement increases again between ten and sixteen years, during the second period of rapid growth. Protein has been emphasized because to find the right type, and milk supplies much of it, may be financially difficult. If the minima

referred to above are supplied, the same weight of fat is desirable but it is not as essential and the rest of the infant's food requirements can be made up of carbohydrate. With these principles in mind a very large discretion can be left to the child's appetite and taste and to the circumstances in which he and his family are placed.

It will be found that to many infants and young children, who are otherwise quite healthy and normal, some flavours are distasteful. Substances containing these flavours should not be forced on the child. Often they will acquire a taste for them in later life. Other children suffering from a constitutional disability are found to be sensitive to some special food substances. Sensitivity may show itself in skin eruptions, attacks of vomiting, or even attacks of asthma. Obviously parents of such children will be selective in the choice of food. We are not concerned here with the child who uses a refusal to eat as a weapon in dealing with an environment that he finds hostile.

The final stage in this transition to mixed feeding shared with the rest of the household should be as far as possible free from fads and at the same time meeting the appetite and the tastes of the individual child.

PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION OF SOME INFANT FOODS

Food	Water.	Protein. <i>In Powder Form</i>	Fat.	Carbohydrate.	Inorganic Salts.	Description and General Remarks.
Dried Human Milk	. —	12.8	29.9	55.6	1.7	Included for purposes of comparison.
GROUP I						
Cow & Gate, Full-cream	. 2.5	26.0	27.3	37.6	6.0	Dried whole milk with added iron and vitamin D.
National, Full-cream	. 3	26.5	27.0	37.5	6.0	Dried whole milk with added iron and vitamin D.
Ostermilk No. 2	. 2.8	26.0	26.5	37.5	5.6	Dried whole milk with added vitamin D.
Savory and Moore Milk Food	. 3	27	26	37	3	Dried whole milk with small addition of iron and vitamin D.
Trufood, Full-cream	. 1.85	26.7	27.3	39.1	5.1	Spray dried whole milk reinforced with vitamins A and D and iron.
Dorsella, Full-cream	. 2.7	27.2	26.2	37.1	6.0	Dried whole milk with added vitamin D.
GROUP II						
Cow and Gate Special, Half-cream	2.5	30.3	16.5	43.8	6.9	Dried milk from which half the fat has been separated.
National, Half-cream	. 2.8	31.0	16.0	43.0	6.3	Similar.
GROUP III						
Cow and Gate, Half-cream	. 2.5	19.5	15.5	57.0	5.5	Dried milk with diminished fat and added sugar and vitamin D.
„ „ Tropical	. 2.5	27.0	18.3	45.6	6.4	Similar with more fat and less sugar.

„	„	Humanized	•	2.5	15.5	26.0	52.0	4.0	Dried milk with reduced protein and added sugar and vitamin D.
	Dorsella, Humanized	•	•	2.9	12.4	26.0	55.6	2.9	Similar.
	Frailac	•	•	1.5	11.5	12.0	72.0	3.0	Dried milk with modified protein, diminished fat and added cane sugar and vitamin D.
	Ostermilk No. 1	•	•	1.9	18.1	19.0	56.0	3.9	Dried milk with reduced fat and added sugar, iron and vitamin D.
	Trufood, Humanized	•	•	2.0	14.4	27.3	49.7	6.7	Spray dried milk with modified protein, increased sugar and added vitamin A and D.
	„ Half-cream	•	•	2.0	21.5	14.5	54.4	7.6	Similar, but with less fat.
GROUP IV									
	Cow and Gate, Separated	•	•	3.0	35.5	0.8	52.8	7.9	Dried skimmed milk with added vitamin D.
	National Dried Milk Household (Separated)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Dried skimmed milk.
GROUP V									
	Allergilac	•	•	3.0	26.8	16.0	43.4	8.0	Dried milk with greatly reduced lactalbumin acidified with lactic acid.
	Brestol	•	•	—	1.0	50.0	38.0	—	Homogenised fat emulsified with dextrose and orange juice.
	„ Malted	•	•	—	2.0	20.0	65.0	—	Similar, but malt extract replacing dextrose.
	Beurlac	•	•	3.0	28.8	9.3	48.9	—	Dried naturally soured half-cream milk with added sugar.
	Casilan	•	•	4	90	1	1	4	Roller dried calcium-caseinate.

Food	Water.	Protein. <i>In Powder Form</i>	Fat.	Carbohydrate.	Inorganic Salts.	General Description and Remarks.
Edosol . . . . .	1.8	27.8	28.1	36.8	5.5	Spray dried whole milk with a very low sodium content and added vitamins A, B and D.
Hemolac . . . . .	2.5	26.5	27.2	37.5	6.0	Whole cream dried milk with a therapeutic amount of iron added (0.45 per cent. iron and ammonium citrate).
Lacidac, Full-cream . . . . .	2.5	25.1	26.5	36.4	6.0	{ Similar to the corresponding sweet dried milks, but with 3.5 per cent. lactic acid added.
„ Half-cream . . . . .	2.5	29.3	16.0	42.2	6.5	
„ Separated . . . . .	3.0	34.9	0.7	50.4	7.5	
Modified Lacidac Full-cream . . . . .	2.5	16.6	17.1	35.3	—	{ Dried milks with added dextrin and cane sugar, in one case with reduced fat. Lactic acid 1.8 per cent.
„ Half-cream . . . . .	2.5	24.3	13.2	17.7	—	
Peptalac . . . . .	3.0	19.0	14.0	51.5	6.5	Milk partly peptonized before drying with added dextrin and malt extract.
Prolac . . . . .	2.5	38.0	19.3	30.6	7.5	Similar to Lacidac (above), but with more protein and less fat.
Prosol . . . . .	3.0	63.0	1.0	26.2	6.8	Spray dried skimmed milk with added protein.
Sprulac . . . . .	3.0	34.0	10.6	45.0	7.4	Similar to Beurlac
GROUP VI						
Horlick's Malted milk . . . . .	3.7	13.8	9.0	70.8	2.7	Dried milk with barley malt and wheat dextrin. Contains no unaltered starch when made up.

Follow-on Trufood	.	.	2.0	19.3	24.3	48.0	6.5	Dried milk with added malt sugar, protein, vitamins and iron.
Mellin's Lacto	.	.	3	21.0	11.0	58.0	6.0	Dried milk with added maltose and dextrin.
GROUP VII								
Benger's Food	.	.	5.3	12.2	0.9	80.3	1.0	When mixed with milk as directed, all but 0.5 per cent. of the carbohydrate becomes soluble and the casein is modified by the trypsin in the powder.
Cerex	.	.	4.0	15.9	1.5	77.9	0.7	Partly converted starch prepared from malted wheat flour.
Farex	.	.	6.5	14.2	2.5	72.7	3.6	Cereal prepared from wheat oats and maize with added calcium, iron and vitamins.
Mellin's Food	.	.	6.3	8.0	Trace	85	3.8	Malted food for adding to milk. Carbohydrates soluble as dextrins and maltose.
M.O.F. (Midlothian Oat Food)	.	.	10.2	10.7	6.2	70.0	2.7	Cereal prepared from oat flour with added iron and vitamins.
Ridge's Food	.	.	7.9	9.0	2.0	80.0	0.7	Cereal prepared from wheat flour largely dextrin.
Robinson's Patent Groats	.	.	5.5	12.5	7.3	70.0	1.7	Cereal prepared from oat flour with added iron and calcium.
" " Barley	.	.	—	9.0	1	79.0	1.0	Cereal prepared from barley flour.
Robrex	.	.	—	12.0	5.0	71.8	—	Prepared cereal with added vitamin D.
Sister Laura's Food	.	.	6.8	9.9	0.8	81.0	1.1	Cereal to be added to undiluted milk.
Trufood Cereal Food	.	.	7.0	21.4	5.4	60.7	5.0	Pre-cooked cereal with added protein and vitamins.

## CHAPTER XXI

### THE PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN DISEASE

In this and the succeeding chapter we shall consider the use of food as a therapeutic agent in the treatment of the sick. In dealing with this part of the subject, it will be well to confine our attention as far as possible to the discussion of principles, and to avoid those detailed instructions for the dietetic management of particular cases which find their appropriate place in text-books of therapeutics. If the general principles involved are once fairly grasped, the knowledge we have already acquired as to the composition and uses of different foods should be sufficient to guide us in drawing up a dietary suited to any ordinary case of illness. Nor can one deal in such a book as this with the methods of preparing food for the sick, or invalid cookery, no matter how important some acquaintance with that art must always be to the practical physician.

In deciding upon the dietetic management of any case of disease it is important to bear in mind, what is often forgotten, that a patient is not a mere bundle of separate organs, but an organic whole, and that the diet must often be directed to the needs of the man rather than to those of his malady. The evil results of a forgetfulness of this fact are often seen. A patient's general nutrition may become seriously impaired, for instance, through well-intentioned efforts to lighten the labours of his stomach. Thus it was realized only in 1936<sup>1</sup> that many of the diets used in the treatment of gastric disorders are either wholly deficient, or contain a minimum, of ascorbic acid. Patients who have had these diets for some time are in the subscorvy state as shown by the amount of ascorbic acid they assimilate before the excess is excreted in the urine (see p. 147). The important factor of idiosyncrasy must also be borne in mind, and full recognition made of the fact that different individuals react differently to the same diet just as they do to the same drugs. Nor must it be supposed, as the laity are apparently tempted to do, that diet is a universal panacea which can be counted upon to prevent or to cure all diseases. On the contrary, it has, like other remedial agents, only a limited place in therapeutics, and the few diseases which specially lend themselves to dietetic treatment may

<sup>1</sup> ARCHER, H. E., and GRAHAM, G. (1936). *Lancet*, 2, 364.

be divided into the following groups: (1) Fevers and burns; (2) disorders of metabolism, e.g. diabetes, obesity, gout; (3) affections of the stomach and bowels; (4) disorders of the circulation and blood; (5) diseases of the organs of excretion.

But before one passes to the separate consideration of these groups, it is advisable to point out a few *practical rules* which should always be present in one's mind in drawing up any scheme of diet for a patient. They are these:

1. A special plan of diet must be drawn up and the foods which are forbidden must be specified. In a few cases, only the latter need be mentioned.

The next two rules are corollaries to the first.

2. Before recommending any food it is well to ascertain whether the patient likes it, and how it agrees with him.

3. A food should not be forbidden unless there is a good reason for so doing.

4. Unless there is some strong contra-indication, attention should always be paid to the wishes and tastes of the patient. This rule was first formulated by Hippocrates in the aphorism, "Such food as is most grateful, though not so wholesome, is to be preferred to that which is better, but distasteful"; and Sydenham recognized its value when he wrote: "More importance is to be attached to the desires and feelings of the patient, provided they are not excessive or dangerous, than to doubtful and fallacious rules of medical art."

5. If food disagrees, it should be deleted from the dietary and later on given in small amounts. If this is well tolerated the quantity taken can be increased.

6. Changes of diet should, if possible, be made gradually.

7. A diet should never be prescribed for a patient without having first ascertained what his habits are as regards work and exercise.

These rules require no comment.

### 1. *Principles of Diet in Fever and Burns*

There are few departments of practical medicine in which opinion has undergone a greater revolution than in the question of fever diet.<sup>1</sup> Hippocrates fed his fever cases simply upon wine and "ptisan," or thin barley gruel, and this lowering plan, first practised for centuries on the sole weight of his authority, was afterwards endorsed by the erroneous pathological doctrine first promulgated by Broussais, that fevers proceeded from irritation of the intestinal mucous membrane, and therefore demanded a starvation diet. His contemporary, Brown,

<sup>1</sup> For a full account of the history of the subject, see UFFELMANN, J. (1877), *Die Diät in den Acut-fieberhaften Krankheiten*.

though perhaps not much nearer the truth in his pathology, was better advised in his practice when he taught that fevers were "asthenic" diseases, and required to be treated by liberal feeding. It was not until about the middle of the nineteenth century, however, that Graves, discarding all pathological doctrines, and guided simply by the results of observation, came to the conclusion that the popular starvation method was wrong, and introduced the modern practice, ever since adopted, of "feeding fevers."

The prevailing system at the present time may be fairly described as that of feeding a fever patient up to the limits of his digestive capacity with fluid or semi-fluid food, except, perhaps, in the case of some abdominal conditions. The reaction against starvation diets, in the opinion of some physicians, has gone too far, while others are of the opinion that even now insufficient amounts of food are given.

Any lingering doubts as to the wisdom of the feeding plan tend to be dispelled by the results of researches which have shown (1) that the free administration of food does not, as was formerly supposed, raise the temperature of feverish patients; and (2) that the absorption of light articles of diet, at any rate, goes on as perfectly in the febrile as in the non-febrile state.

It has been shown that a great increase of metabolism occurs during fever and Coleman and Du Bois<sup>1</sup> found in cases of typhoid fever that the basal heat formation rises and falls in a curve roughly parallel with the temperature, and at the height of the fever is 40-50 per cent. above the normal. It has only recently been realized that a great increase in metabolism occurs when a patient has been burnt over a large area and that a high protein and high calorie diet is necessary for a quick recovery.

It is important to consider how the caloric requirements are supplied. If a healthy patient is starved the fat and protein of the body supply the bulk of the Calories which are produced. Thus Benedict<sup>2</sup> estimated the metabolism of a starving healthy man, and the average figure for seven days showed that 1690 Calories were used per day and these were supplied by 139.8 g. of fat, 69.5 g. of protein, and only 23.6 g. of carbohydrate. The chief loss of weight is due to the consumption of fat, though the weakness of the muscles attracts especial attention to the destruction of protein. In the seven days of the fast 486.5 g. of protein were used, which must have come from the muscles; this figure multiplied by 4.8 gives the weight of flesh lost, i.e. 2.33 kg. = 5.12 lb. The loss of muscle is well shown by F. von Müller's experiment. He gave a patient a diet of 1000 Calories containing 51.8 g. protein (8.29 g. nitrogen). The patient lost on balance 86.4 g. of nitrogen in 8

<sup>1</sup> COLEMAN, W., and DU BOIS, E. F. (1915). *Arch. Int. Med.*, 15, 887.

<sup>2</sup> Cit. GRAHAM LUSK. (1928), *Science of Nutrition*, Fourth edition, 98.

days and this is equivalent to a loss of 540 g. of protein or 2.59 kg. of flesh (5.7 lb.).

METABOLISM OF S.A.B. DURING A SEVEN-DAY FAST  
(after Benedict).

Day.	Grammes.			Calories.				R.Q.	Urine.	
	Pro-tein.	Fat.	Glyco-gen.	Calcu-lated from Metabol-ism.	Directly Deter-mined.	Per Kg.	Per Sq.M.		Ratio N:S.	Ratio N:P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> .
1 . . .	73.4	126.4	64.9	1796	1765	29.7	941	.78	19.6	8.55
2 . . .	74.7	147.5	23.1	1790	1768	29.9	946	.75	18.6	5.55
3 . . .	78.1	153.0	5.4	1785	1797	30.8	969	.74	17.38	6.34
4 . . .	69.8	144.7	25.2	1734	1775	30.8	966	.75	16.11	4.83
5 . . .	65.2	144.7	8.2	1636	1649	29.0	905	.74	16.26	5.23
6 . . .	64.4	129.8	21.7	1547	1553	27.5	856	.75	16.27	5.19
7 . . .	60.8	132.5	18.7	1546	1568	28.0	869	.74	16.28	4.87
Average	69.5	139.8	23.6	1691	1696	29.3	922	.75	17.2	5.79

The work of Shaffer and Coleman,<sup>1</sup> and Coleman and Du Bois,<sup>2</sup> on the metabolism of typhoid fever, has shown that the average metabolism of a patient with typhoid fever is 40 Calories per kg., or 2400 for a man of 65 kg. (10 stone 3 lb.). They found that the basal metabolism might be increased by 40-50 per cent. when the temperature was 104° F. (8 per cent. for each degree Fahrenheit). A healthy man was easily kept on a nitrogenous equilibrium on this number of Calories, but the typhoid patient required 52-80 Calories per kg. (3600-5000). It is difficult to understand what happens to this great excess of Calories. Coleman and Du Bois showed that the protein, fat, and carbohydrate were perfectly digested and absorbed and that some fat might be deposited in the tissues, although protein loss was continued. They also found that the specific dynamic action of protein was much reduced or even absent. The great disturbance in metabolism is believed to be due to the action of toxin and not to the actual height of the temperature, since Graham and Poulton<sup>3</sup> showed that destruction of proteins did not occur although the temperature, which was artificially raised, was above 39° C. (102° F.)—for 2-3½ hrs. in four experiments.

The principles of dietetic treatment in fever are (1) to give an adequate amount of protein, 75-87.5 g. of protein (12-14 g. nitrogen), yielding 307-350 Calories, is considered to be sufficient; (2) to give a high caloric value up to 80 Calories per kg. (5200 Calories for a man of 65 kg.). The carbohydrate should provide from 56-60 per cent. of the total, i.e. 2900-3100 Calories, leaving 1800-2000 Calories to be supplied by the combustion of 194-215 g. of fat. The protein is best given in the

<sup>1</sup> SHAFFER, P. A., and COLEMAN, W. (1909), *Arch. Int. Med.*, 4, 538.

<sup>2</sup> COLEMAN, W., and DU BOIS, E. F. (1915), *Arch. Int. Med.*, 15, 887.

<sup>3</sup> GRAHAM, G., and POULTON, E. P. (1912-13), *Quart. Jour. Med.*, 6, 82.

form of milk and eggs: 3 pints milk = 1680 ml. supply 60 g., and 3 eggs supply 17.7 g. The carbohydrate may be given in the form of sugar, and lactose is usually preferred to glucose as it is less sweet, but some patients dislike it. The sugar is usually added to the milk, but may be given in the juice of oranges, lemons, grape-fruit, or pineapple, according to the patient's taste, as a change of flavour is often of great assistance. The milk may be flavoured with tea, coffee, or cocoa, or mixed with meat extracts. Additional carbohydrate can be given in the form of puddings made with rice or semolina, mashed potatoes and gravy, and oatmeal, or the proprietary foods like Benger's or Farex. The extra fat should be given in the form of cream; 300-400 ml. of 20 per cent. cream. The feeds should be given two-hourly by day and four-hourly by night. An estimation of the total nitrogen excreted in the urine and stools in the 24 hours is of great value if the protein intake is known. Since if the protein of the diet is 91.8 g. the nitrogen in the urine and stools should not exceed 14.7 g. If more than this amount is excreted the patient is not in nitrogenous equilibrium and the calorie value of the diet should be increased by the addition of sufficient carbohydrate and fat to achieve the equilibrium.

When this high Calorie diet is used a careful watch must be kept on the stools for signs of undigested material, and if these appear, the amount of food should be reduced, and in some cases very considerably. We have taken typhoid fever as our type, but the same principles apply to other fevers and to patients with severe burns or extensive wounds, and the convalescence from these would be much shorter if more food were given. A patient with influenza often has little appetite and does not want to eat meat or fish, but eggs lightly boiled, poached or buttered are usually acceptable. Raw eggs beaten up in milk are easily swallowed but are not so easily digested as cooked eggs. Milk flavoured with coffee or other agents is acceptable and 200-400 g. of sugar can be added to lemon or orange drinks, and thus raise the Calorie value considerably. Even in a short fever at least 2000 Calories should be given if possible and in a long one this should be increased to over 3000. Fish and meat should be given as soon as the patient's appetite returns, but in rheumatic fever, meat and meat extracts should not be given.

The use of *alcohol* in fevers is an important matter which calls for some special discussion. Hippocrates thought wine was of value in fever, and since his time it has been pretty generally employed. Stokes of Dublin laid down certain imperative indications for its use, and his colleague Graves devoted one of his clinical lectures to a consideration of the place which it should take in the general treatment of fever. The advantages of alcohol, however, were insisted upon more strongly by Todd,<sup>1</sup> about the middle of the nineteenth century, than by any

<sup>1</sup> *Clinical Lectures on Certain Acute Diseases*. London, 1860. Page 438.

## HIGH CALORIE DIET FOR TYPHOID FEVER

	C. g.	P. g.	F. g.	Cals.	C. g.	P. g.	F. g.	Cals.
7 a.m.								
8 oz. Milk . . . . .	10	7.2	8.8	152				
½ oz. Biscuit . . . . .	10	1	2.5	70	20	8.2	11.3	222
9 a.m.								
Egg (scrambled with butter from allowance)	—	5.9	6.2	81				
1 oz. Bread . . . . .	15	2	—	70				
½ oz. Dry Oatmeal . . . . .	10	1.5	1	59				
8 oz. Milk for tea and porridge . . . . .	10	7.2	8.8	152	35	16.6	16.0	362
11 a.m.								
4 oz. Orange-juice (sugar from allowance) . . . . .	10	—	—	41				
1 oz. Biscuits . . . . .	20	2	5	140	30	2	5	181
1 p.m.								
3 oz. White Fish . . . . .	—	15	—	61				
4 oz. Milk for white sauce . . . . .	5	3.6	4.4	76				
3 oz. mashed, old Potatoes . . . . .	15	—	—	61				
2 oz. Blancmange . . . . .	10.5	2	2	70	30.5	20.6	6.4	268
3 p.m.								
4 oz. Milk in tea . . . . .	5	3.6	4.4	76				
1½ oz. White Bread . . . . .	22.5	3	—	105				
½ oz. Honey, Syrup or Jam without seeds . . . . .	10	—	—	41	37.5	6.6	4.4	222
5 p.m.								
8 oz. Milk . . . . .	10	7.2	8.8	152				
½ oz. Ovaltine, Benger's Food, or Bournvita . . . . .	10	2	1	57	20	9.2	9.8	209
7 p.m.								
1 Egg (poached or lightly boiled) . . . . .	—	5.9	6.2	81				
1 oz. Toast . . . . .	15	2	—	70				
4 oz. Orange-juice . . . . .	10	—	—	41				
8 oz. Milk as junket . . . . .	10	7.2	8.8	152	35	15.1	15.0	344
9 p.m.								
8 oz. Milk with . . . . .	10	7.2	8.8	152				
½ oz. Ovaltine (or Ben- ger's Food, etc.) . . . . .	10	2	1	57				
½ oz. Biscuit . . . . .	10	1	2.5	70	30	10.2	12.3	279
ALLOWANCE FOR THE DAY: 3 oz. Sugar					85	—	—	348
3 oz. Butter					—	—	72	660
3 oz. Thick Cream (40%)					1.5	1.5	35	336
					324.5	90.0	187.2	3431

*Note.*—If it is found that the nitrogen excreted in the urine and stools is more than 14.7 g. the patient is using up his body proteins because the caloric value is insufficient. If such is the case extra sugar and fat should be added to the diet.

preceding English author. By the end of the nineteenth century the administration of brandy had become a routine treatment, and 1, 2 or 3 oz. were given every four hours to most of the ill patients and even to young children. Since then opinions about the use of alcohol in disease have altered considerably.

Alcohol was strongly recommended for the following conditions:

(1) Failing circulation, as exhibited (i) in a persistently rapid pulse (120 or more), or if it be weak, irregular, unequal, or dicrotic; (ii) by a faint or inaudible first sound of the heart.<sup>1</sup>

It is difficult to understand how alcohol can be of much value in any of these conditions. Higgins showed that alcohol causes a slight quickening of the pulse rate and that this may last for thirty minutes. This quickening suggested that the myocardium was definitely stimulated by the alcohol, and Dixon, working on the isolated rabbit heart, observed a slight stimulant action. This is denied by other workers, and would in any case be of little value. The blood pressure does not rise after alcohol because it has no direct stimulant action on the vasomotor centre, but if the amount taken is sufficient to cause excitement the blood pressure may rise. Alcohol produces a change in the distribution of the blood since the skin becomes red and flushed. This increased blood supply to the skin would cause a greater pulsation in the radial artery, and would suggest that alcohol was a cardiac stimulant.

These considerations suggest that no reliance should be placed on alcohol for the treatment of cardiac affections.

(2) Nervous exhaustion, as manifested by sleeplessness, low delirium, and tremors. Alcohol has a depressing effect on the higher centres of the brain. The depression which results therefrom is often of value in aiding sleep as the patient becomes more tolerant of his troubles. If the patient is unaccustomed to alcohol,  $\frac{1}{2}$  or 1 oz. of whisky may be sufficient to ensure sleep, but if he habitually takes 4-6 oz. at bed time, smaller amounts will be valueless. A low delirium and tremors would probably be made worse by alcohol.

(3) Failure of digestive-power, as indicated by inability to take food, and diarrhoea. Alcohol is often taken by patients who suffer from indigestion as they are thereby enabled to eat their meals better. This is a bad practice as the patient is thereby induced to eat food which his stomach cannot tolerate and is better without. Further, alcohol by itself tends to cause a gastritis and so intensifies the damage already done to the stomach. It has no effect in checking diarrhoea.

(4) High temperature, especially if persistent. Alcohol is of some value in lowering the temperature as it dilates the peripheral vessels and therefore causes an increased loss of heat. It is now recognized that the fever is often beneficial to the patient and (unless the patient

<sup>1</sup> STOKES. (1839), *Dublin Med. Journ.* (1st series), 15, 1.

is in danger of developing a hyperpyrexia, i.e. a temperature rising rapidly to  $108^{\circ}$ ) alcohol should not be used for this purpose.

(5) A bad general condition—e.g. in feeble, exhausted, elderly, or alcoholic subjects. Alcohol is frequently given under these conditions and may induce the patient to take food which he would not otherwise do. It should not be pressed on patients if they dislike it, as its real value is very small. It is often necessary to give it to patients who feel miserable or who cannot sleep without any alcohol, but it should only be given in small amounts. If a patient cannot eat his meals without alcohol it is probable that some definite lesion of the stomach is present and the patient should be examined from this point of view.

(6) As a food. Alcohol has a high Calorie value as 1 gramme yields 7 Calories. It is, however, burnt very slowly in the body, only 10 ml. (8 g.) of absolute alcohol can be oxidized an hour and these yield 56 Calories. This amount is given by  $\frac{2}{3}$  oz. of brandy, 45 per cent.; or  $1\frac{1}{3}$  oz. of whisky (post-war) 20-25 per cent. The maximum amount of brandy which could be oxidized in twenty-four hours is thus 16 oz. (whisky 32 oz.) and would contain 192 g. of absolute alcohol. This amount of alcohol would yield 1344 Calories. A patient, who was unaccustomed to alcohol, would be made very drunk, although a seasoned toper might be unaffected. It is probable that  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of brandy every four hours by day and once in the night (i.e. 5 doses) is as much as most patients can stand, though double or treble the dose used to be given. This would give 36 g. in the day and 252 Calories. This number of Calories is supplied by 61 g. of sugar and is better tolerated by all patients unless they habitually take large amounts of alcohol. It must be remembered that all the alcohol is not burnt, for some of it is excreted in the urine or breath and is thus lost.

*The Kind of Alcohol.* Some authorities have laid great stress on the types of alcohol used. They believe that a preparation rich in volatile esters like genuine cognac is much better than ordinary brandy or whisky, but there is no pharmacological evidence that this is the case. A good dry champagne has been recommended in the treatment of vomiting and was formerly much used.

The views about alcohol are those, which we have formed from the consideration of the physiological evidence and of the medical experience of one of us, but we thought it desirable to consider the current practice as shown by the amount of wines and spirits ordered in eight different hospitals.

The table shows the cost of the wines and spirits at nine hospitals in London and big towns, and is the actual cost in the years 1903, 1908, etc. The number of beds shown is the figure for 1938, and in many cases is greater than it was in 1903, and in one case (H) is nearly double, owing to the presence of many patients with cancer. The price of

## COST OF ALCOHOL CONSUMED AT NINE HOSPITALS

Hosp-ital.	No. of Beds in 1938.	1903 £	1908 £	1913 £	1918 £	1923 £	1928 £	1933 £	1938 £	1953 £
A	670	717	559	323	482	644	281	72	26	112
B	300	77	42	31	86	182	115	55	51	63
C	673	171	48	28	112	172	180	82	73	113
D	649	368	133	238	276	308	174	123	102	—
E	849	545	298	143	381	519	398	168	125	371
F	476	246	79	70	80	164	149	205	182	294
G	436	—	—	—	—	484	345	424	289	140
H	601	224	97	88	205	522	438	297	332	464
I	642	—	—	136	294	252	272	316	374	901

alcohol was much greater in the years immediately after the 1914-18 war than it was before then, and in 1953 is two and a half times as much as it was in 1938. The results are uneven and reflect the different opinions and customs in the different hospitals. It is clear, however, that a big change has taken place and that alcohol is regarded as of much less value than in 1923. In one hospital which contains many patients dying of cancer, the consumption of alcohol increased in 1923 to £522, but is now £464, although the cost of alcohol is so much greater.

On the whole, the figures for the hospitals are in agreement with the views we have set out.

The figures for the different kinds of alcohol used in hospital A in 1903 and the succeeding years are shown on page 507. The consumption of these is still considerable and has increased in recent years. At one large hospital it was £60 in 1938 but was £660 in 1953. It does not seem to be prescribed for medicinal purposes but rather as a beverage, and an aid to sleep and for those patients who have been accustomed to drink a good deal of beer and are miserable without it.

## 2. Disorders of Metabolism

### THE DIETETIC TREATMENT OF DIABETES MELLITUS

The change which has taken place in the dietetic treatment of diabetes mellitus since this book was first published in 1900 is very remarkable. At that time the patients were given a diet containing 100-150 g. of protein, 250 g. or more of fat and very little carbohydrate. The protein of the diet was high because of the different so-called diabetic foods which were eaten. The best of these contained no carbohydrate at all, though in many of them the carbohydrate was little reduced. The former were unpalatable whereas the latter were less so, in proportion as they contained more carbohydrate.

COMPARISON OF CONSUMPTION OF STIMULANTS, 1903-38

	Port.		Sherry.		Gin.		Burgundy.		Whisky.		Brandy.		Rum.		Champagne				
	G. P. Oz.		G. P. Oz.		G. P. Oz.		Bottles.		G. P. Oz.		G. P. Oz.		G. P. Oz.		Bottles (1)				
1903	414	1	5	5	13	3	5	16	33	23	7	10	370	6	15	1	2	2	98
1908	236	2	4	1	13	1	1	0	120	12	0	19	260	5	5	—	—	—	184
1913	212	2	3	20	7	2	0	10	38	2	1	2	233	4	13	2	2	0	147
1918	154	7	1	—	—	—	6	12	91	1	2	17	155	1	2	1	1	0	126
1923	103	5	4	3	4	3	3	0	46	2	5	0	77	7	4	3	3	0	104
									G. P. Oz.										
1928	19	5	5	4	9	1	4	7	3	3	16	16	66	3	9	—	—	10	85
1933	4	5	4	—	—	—	1	6	1	5	4	—	11	2	3	—	—	—	17
1938	1	4	12	1	0	—	—	—	2	0	0	3	5	7	12	2	2	12	10
1953	0	1	10	0	1	2	2	15	—	—	—	0	7	3	3	—	—	—	4½

Nowadays the amount of protein is about 1 g. per kg. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  g. per lb.) body weight; the fat has been reduced to 100 g. or less while the carbohydrate has been increased to a minimum of 100 g. for elderly people who refuse insulin and is usually 150-200 g. and may be up to 300 g. for young active people.

These striking changes<sup>1</sup> have been brought about by the discovery of insulin by Banting and Best<sup>2</sup> in 1922.

The problem of treating a patient with diabetes is still not an easy one as patients of all ages develop the disease and have very different dietetic requirements. Few doubt that the general health of all patients is benefited by the giving of insulin and a well-balanced diet, but many older patients refuse to have it. If they are fat, diet alone may be tried with advantage, but if they are thin, insulin should always be recommended. It is therefore necessary to consider other forms of treatment.

*The Under-nutrition Diet.* This consists of giving a diet of very little food value, i.e. tea, coffee, with a little milk, gravy soup, lemonade, and plenty of water. The fast used to be maintained until the glycosuria disappeared, but nowadays is usually broken after one or two days, irrespective of whether the glycosuria has gone or not. The diet used to be increased gradually so that 10 days might elapse before it contained 100 grammes of carbohydrate. Nowadays a diet containing this amount is often given at once.

The diet is usually chosen in an arbitrary manner, but it can be calculated in the following manner and is then called a *maintenance* diet as it is sufficient for the basal needs of the body.

The figures for the basal needs of young children and adolescents are given in a table (p. 46). Those for adults are obtained from the Boothby and Sandiford nomograph, p. 46. An approximate result can be obtained by multiplying the patient's weight by 11.3. Thus an adult who weighs 132 lb. will require  $132 \times 11.3 = 1491$  Calories for his basal needs, and this is divided between the protein, carbohydrate, and fat in the following way:

The amount of protein is first settled.

An adult requires about 0.5 g. of protein per 1 lb. of body-weight

A child of 12 "	"	1.0 g.	"	"	1 lb.	"	"	"
" " " 6 "	"	1.5 g.	"	"	1 lb.	"	"	"
" " " 2 "	"	2.0 g.	"	"	1 lb.	"	"	"

An adult weighing 132 lb. should be given 66 g. of protein, and this figure multiplied by 4.1 (the Calorie value of protein) gives 270.6 Calories and leaves 1221 for the carbohydrate and fat. The amount of carbohydrate should not be less than 100 g. This figure multiplied by  $4.1 = 410$  Calories; 1221 minus 410, leaves 811 Calories for the fat.

<sup>1</sup> The history of the changes since 1900 is given in the 10th edition, p. 583.

<sup>2</sup> BANTING, F. G., and BEST, C. H. (1921-2), *Journ. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 7, 251.

This figure divided by 9.3, the caloric value of fat, gives 87.2 g. for the fat of the diet. The diet is then prescribed as carbohydrate 100 g., protein 66 g., fat 87 g., Calories 1497. This diet is divided into four meals of approximately the following amounts: breakfast, lunch, and dinner, C. 30 g., P. 21 g., F. 27 g., Cal. 460; tea, C. 10 g., P. 3 g., F. 6 g., Cal. 109.

A sample diet (p. 510) shows one way in which a diet containing 100 g. of carbohydrate, 48 g. of protein and 53 g. of fat, Calories 1093, can be arranged. The amounts of protein and fat are rather less than in the basal diet and so continue the process of undernutrition. The amounts of carbohydrate taken at each meal should be kept as constant as possible though the amount of protein and fat need not be so accurate. The diet should be varied as much as possible and the food tables (p. 515-8) which are very simple, make it easy to do this. The diet contains twenty 5-g. portions of carbohydrate and about seven 7-g. protein—5 g. fat portions, with the addition of half an ounce of butter, and these can be varied at will. If it is desired to increase this diet to that necessary for the basal needs of the patient weighing 132 lb., three 7-g. protein—5-g. fat portions with the addition of two-thirds of an ounce of butter, i.e. 21 g. protein and 35 g. fat should be added to the diet.

When a patient with a mild diabetes is given such a diet the glycosuria may disappear and if so the amount of the carbohydrate should be increased by 10 g. every three or four days until a diet of 130 or 150 g. is reached, provided that the urine passed after the evening meal is sugar-free. The amount of protein and fat may also be increased. A diet containing 150 g. of carbohydrate, 73.4 g. protein, and 97.4 g. fat, Calories, 1814, is set out on p. 511.

If, however, the glycosuria reappears after a few days with a diet of 100 g. carbohydrate, the amount of carbohydrate should not be reduced below 100 g., as this amount seems to be necessary for the correct metabolism of the fat; if 80 g. only are taken ketone bodies usually appear in the urine. The effect of another fast day can be tried but the patient should be advised to start insulin and have a good diet containing 130-150 or more g. of carbohydrate.

Many elderly patients with small appetites do not want to eat more than 130 g. but the middle-aged usually prefer 150-170 g., while the younger people should have over 200 g. and some take 300 g. or more. The amount of fat given under these conditions varies according to the views of different workers. Some give 150 g. or more, whereas most restrict the fat to 100 g. or so, and a few insist that if the carbohydrate is raised to over 200 g. that the fat should be reduced and believe that it should be as low as 50 g. There are advantages and disadvantages of this diet: the amount of carbohydrate is so great that a difference of

20 or 30 g. is negligible and it is unnecessary to weigh the carbohydrate foods accurately, but the amount of fat is so small that many people feel the deprivation either of fatty foods like bacon, which they like, or if they eat bacon they miss the butter.

EXAMPLE 1<sup>1</sup>

## DIET FOR AN ADULT—

	C.	P.	F.	Cal.	C.	P.	F.	Cal.
Breakfast:								
1 oz. bread or toast .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70				
2 5-g. portions of fruit or $\frac{1}{2}$ oz. jam .	10.0	—	—	41				
					25.0	2.4	0.3	111
Midday Meal:								
Gravy Soup .	Negligible food value.							
2 oz. meat or 2 oz. white fish and $\frac{1}{2}$ oz. butter .	—	14.0	14.0	188				
6 oz. green vegetables	Negligible food value.							
$\frac{3}{4}$ oz. cheese .	—	6.7	8.2	105				
Two 5-g. portions of fruit .	10.0	—	—	41				
1 oz. bread .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70	25.0	23.1	22.5	404
Tea:								
1 oz. bread .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70	15.0	2.4	0.3	70
Dinner:								
Gravy soup .	Negligible food value.							
2 oz. meat or 2 oz. white fish and $\frac{1}{2}$ oz. butter .	—	14.0	14.0	188				
2 oz. potatoes .	10.0	—	—	41				
6 oz. green vegetables.	Negligible food value.							
1 oz. bread .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70				
One 5-g. portion of fruit .	5.0	—	—	21				
					30.0	16.4	14.3	320
$3\frac{1}{2}$ oz. milk in the day .	—	—	—	—	5.0	3.7	3.5	68
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. butter in the day	—	—	—	—	—	—	12.5	120
Totals .					100.0	48.0	53.4	1093

At present it is not possible to say which is the best diet, but we would put the outside limits as follows: C. 150 g.; P. 70-100 g.; F. 100 g.; Calories, 1810-1930; and C. 250-350 g.; P. 70-100 g.; F. 50 g.; Calories 1745-2265. It will be seen that the Calorie value is below that believed

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted, with the permission of the Publishers, from *An Index of Treatment*.

# EXAMPLE 2

## HIGH-CARBOHYDRATE DIET—

	C.	P.	F.	Cal.	C.	P.	F.	Cal.
Breakfast:								
1 egg . . . . .	—	5.9 g.	6.2 g.	81				
1 oz. bacon . . . . .	—	5.1	15.0	160				
1 oz. bread toasted . . . . .	15.0 g.	2.4	0.3	70				
Two 5-g. portions of fruit, say 4 oz. apples . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41				
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. ordinary jam or marmalade . . . . .	10.2	—	—	41				
					35.0 g.	13.4 g.	21.5 g.	393
11 a.m.:								
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. biscuit . . . . .	—	—	—	—	10.0	1.6	0.2	48
Midday meal:								
Gravy soup . . . . .	Negligible food value.							
3 oz. meat (or 3 oz. salmon) . . . . .	—	21.0	21.0	282				
3 oz. potatoes . . . . .	15.0	—	—	61				
6 oz. green vegetable . . . . .	Negligible food value.							
Two 5-g. portions of fruit, 4 oz. orange . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41				
1 oz. bread . . . . .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70				
					40.0	23.4	21.3	454
Tea:								
$\frac{2}{3}$ oz. bread . . . . .	—	—	—	—	10.0	1.6	0.2	48
Evening meal:								
Gravy soup . . . . .	Negligible food value.							
2 oz. meat (or 2 oz. white fish and $\frac{1}{2}$ oz. butter) . . . . .	—	14.0	14.0	188				
3 oz. potatoes . . . . .	15.0	—	—	61				
6 oz. green vegetables . . . . .	Negligible food value.							
1 oz. bread . . . . .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70				
$\frac{3}{4}$ oz. cheese . . . . .	—	6.7	8.2	105				
Two 5-g. portions of fruit or $\frac{1}{2}$ oz. cheese biscuit . . . . .	10.0	1.6	0.2	48				
					40.0	24.7	22.7	472
11 p.m.:								
$\frac{3}{4}$ oz. biscuit . . . . .	5.0	0.8	—	24				
$3\frac{1}{2}$ oz. milk . . . . .	5.0	3.7	3.5	68				
					10.0	4.5	3.5	92
In the whole day:								
$3\frac{1}{2}$ oz. milk . . . . .	—	—	—	—	5.0	3.7	3.5	68
1 oz. butter . . . . .	—	—	—	—	—	—	25.0	240
					150.0	72.9	97.9	1815

necessary for health and normal activities. It is remarkable that patients keep well, maintain or even gain weight on so little food and the reason is not understood. Some authorities increase the Calorie value considerably and allow the patient to choose his own diet and have what is called a "Free Diet." Opinion is divided on the merits of the system but Dunlop<sup>1</sup> whose patients did well in the first five years abandoned this system during the second five years, because the number of serious complications which developed was considerable. A compromise solution is to allow the patient to decide how much he wishes to eat at each meal and to stabilize the diet at this level, instead of allowing wide variations. Once the level is settled the patient must be taught how to vary his diet by the aid of the food tables in order that he may have plenty of variety in his meals. Good control of the diabetic condition with insulin is much easier to achieve and maintain if the diet is kept stable and if the calorie value is a little on the low side and this prevents the patient becoming fat. However, sufficient carbohydrate must be allowed for full activities and for growth in young patients.

Diets for children and adolescents are a little more difficult to arrange as they require more food than adults to enable them to grow and develop properly. The number of Calories required by children is shown on p. 46 and the amount of protein on p. 508, and these figures are of use in arranging the diets. It is suggested that those over the age of 12 should be given about 60 per cent. of the caloric allowance for full activities. The initial diet should contain 150 g. of carbohydrate and the full diet for an adult, Example 2, can be used. When the patients begin to take exercise the carbohydrate must be increased and the protein raised to 1 g. per lb. of body weight. Children about 12 can also be started on the same diet and the diet increased later, but the final requirements should be about 66 per cent. of the full values.

Children of about 6, weighing 3 stone, need 1550 Calories for their full activity and it is suggested that the initial diet should contain 70 per cent. of this amount, i.e. 1080 Calories. The diet is determined in the following way: The protein should be 68 g., allowing 1.5 g. per lb. of body weight. The carbohydrate should be at least 100 g. These two account for 689 Calories, leaving  $1085 - 689 = 396$  Calories for the fat. This number divided by 9.3, the caloric value of fat, gives 43 g. for the fat ration. This diet is then prescribed as C. 100, P. 63, F. 43, Cal. 1085. The example below shows one way in which approximately this amount of food can be divided to make a palatable diet. The amount of fat is slightly higher than in the calculation. If it is desired to give the exact amount of fat some of the whole milk must be exchanged for skimmed milk.

<sup>1</sup> DUNLOP, D. M. (1954), *Brit. med. Journ.*, 2, 383.

### EXAMPLE 3

### DIET FOR CHILD OF SIX—

	C.	P.	F.	Cal.	C.	P.	F.	Cal.
<b>Breakfast:</b>								
3½ oz. milk . . .	5.0	3.7	3.5	68				
1 egg . . .	—	5.9	6.2	80				
1 oz. bread . . .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70				
Two 5-g. portions of fruit . . .	10.0	—	—	41				
					30.0	12.0	10.0	259
<b>First Drink:</b>								
3½ oz. milk . . .					5.0	3.7	3.5	68
<b>Mid-day Meal:</b>								
2 oz. meat . . .	—	14.0	14.0	187				
2 oz. potatoes . . .	10.0	—	—	41				
6 oz. green vegetables	Negligible food value.							
½ oz. rice . . .	10.0	—	—	41				
3½ oz. milk . . .	5.0	3.7	3.5	68				
1 oz. bread . . .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70				
					40.0	20.1	17.8	407
<b>Tea:</b>								
3 oz. white fish . . .	—	21.0	—	86				
1 oz. bread . . .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70				
3½ oz. milk . . .	5.0	3.7	3.5	68				
					20.0	27.1	3.8	224
<b>Second drink:</b>								
3½ oz. milk . . .					5.0	3.7	3.5	68
½ oz. butter in the day . . .					—	—	9.0	84
<b>Totals . . .</b>					100.0	66.6	47.6	1110

A child of 2 years weighing 26 lb. requires 1150 Calories for his full activities and it is suggested that he should have 75 per cent. of this amount, i.e. 860 Calories. The amount of carbohydrate is settled arbitrarily at 80 g. which provides 328 Calories. The amount of protein required is also settled arbitrarily at 50 g., 2 g. per lb. of body weight. This provides 205 Calories and leaves  $860 - 533 = 327$  for the fat. This figure divided by the Caloric value of fat, 9.3, gives 35 g. for the fat ration. The diet is then prescribed as C. 80, P. 50, F. 35. The example given below shows one way in which approximately this amount of food can be arranged.

Patients and especially young ones should be allowed to choose which amount of carbohydrate and fat they want and the dose of insulin adjusted to meet these demands; otherwise they will probably



## CARBOHYDRATE-CONTAINING FOODS

Five g. carbohydrates are contained in the undermentioned weights of the edible parts of the various foods: any one item, therefore, may be substituted for any other, without risk of serious error. The vegetables are cooked, unless otherwise stated. Each portion provides about 20 Calories.

The carbohydrate food tables, Table I, show the amount of food which contains 5 g. carbohydrate and are arranged in four classes: (a) The vegetables are divided into two groups. Group I includes those which contain so little carbohydrate that they need not be weighed or taken into consideration. Group II includes those which contain enough carbohydrate to make it necessary to weigh the article of food. (b) The fruits are arranged in one table. Most of them contain little carbohydrate and two 5-g. portions make an average helping. (c) The nuts. (d) The starchy foods. (e) Milk. These are rich in carbohydrate and should be carefully weighed or measured.

TABLE I—CARBOHYDRATE

The following articles of food contain approximately 5 grammes of carbohydrate and may be substituted for each other without causing serious error.

*Group I.*—These vegetables contain so little carbohydrate that they need not be weighed.

	oz.		oz.
Asparagus . . . .	16	Mustard and Cress . . . .	20
Brussels sprouts . . . .	10	Onions . . . .	6
Cabbage . . . .	18	Radishes . . . .	6½
Cauliflower . . . .	15	Rhubarb . . . .	18
Celery (raw) . . . .	14	Sea-kale . . . .	29
Cucumber (raw) . . . .	9¾	Spinach . . . .	13
French beans . . . .	16	Turnips . . . .	7
Lettuce (raw) . . . .	9¾	Watercress (raw) . . . .	25
Marrow . . . .	13		

*Group II.*

	oz.		oz.
(a) Beans, broad . . . .	2½	Parsnips . . . .	1½
Beans, haricot . . . .	1	Peas (dried) . . . .	1
Beetroot . . . .	2	Peas (green) . . . .	2
Carrots . . . .	4	Potatoes . . . .	1
Leeks . . . .	4		

(b) *Fruits* (weighed with stones but no peel).

	oz.		oz.
Apple (raw) . . . . .	2	Loganberries . . . . .	5
Apple (stewed) . . . . .	4	Melon . . . . .	3½
Apricot (fresh) . . . . .	3	Orange . . . . .	2
Bananas . . . . .	1	Peaches . . . . .	2
Blackberries . . . . .	3	Pears . . . . .	2
Cherries . . . . .	1½	Pineapple (fresh) . . . . .	1½
Currants (red or black) . . . . .	3½	Pineapple (tinned) . . . . .	½
Damsons . . . . .	2	Prunes (dried, stewed) . . . . .	1
Gooseberries (raw, ripe) . . . . .	2	Plums . . . . .	2
Gooseberries (unripe, stewed) . . . . .	10	Raspberries . . . . .	3
Grapefruit . . . . .	3½	Strawberries . . . . .	3
Grapes. . . . .	1	Tangerines . . . . .	2
Greengage . . . . .	1½	Tomatoes . . . . .	6

(c) *Nuts*.

	oz.		oz.
Almonds . . . . .	1	Hazel nuts . . . . .	1½
Chestnuts . . . . .	½	Walnuts . . . . .	1½

(d) *Starchy Foods*.

	oz.		oz.
Biscuit (plain) . . . . .	¼	Oatmeal (dry) . . . . .	¼
Bread . . . . .	½	Rice or tapioca (dry) . . . . .	½
Cornflakes or Force . . . . .	¼		
Jam or Marmalade . . . . .	¼		

(e) Milk . . . . . 4

Each portion = 5 g. carbohydrate.

Additional values for fruits and vegetables are given in the medical Research Council's Food Tables, McCANCE, R. A., WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1940).

### PROTEIN-CONTAINING FOODS

The protein content of food is shown in Table II. Each portion contains approximately 7 g. of protein, and 7 g. of fat, and can be exchanged for any other portion without causing serious error. Great attention was formerly paid to the exact content of these foods, when the carbohydrate content of the diet was very low, but this is unnecessary, provided that the carbohydrate value of the diet is over 100 g. The amounts of protein-containing foods should be weighed at first, but it is unnecessary to continue to do this when the patient has learnt the approximate values of the diet. Elderly people as a rule have a small appetite and often do not want to eat the full protein ration.

TABLE II—PROTEIN AND FAT

The following articles of food contain approximately 7 g. of protein and 7 g. of fat and may be substituted for each other without causing serious error.

(a) *Meat and Fish and Cheese.*

	Edible Weight.	Additional Butter.
	oz.	oz.
Beef . . . . .	1	0
Chicken . . . . .	2	$\frac{1}{8}$
Duck . . . . .	2	0
Ham (lean) . . . . .	1	0
Herring . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	0
Kipper . . . . .	2	0
Lamb . . . . .	1	0
Mackerel . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	0
Mutton . . . . .	1	0
Pheasant . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
Pork (lean) . . . . .	1	0
Rabbit . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
Salmon . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	0
Sardines . . . . .	1	0
Sweetbreads . . . . .	1	$\frac{1}{8}$
Tripe . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$
Turkey . . . . .	1	$\frac{1}{8}$
Veal . . . . .	1	0
White Fish . . . . .	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{5}$
	Edible Weight.	Reduction of Butter.
	oz.	oz.
Cheese . . . . .	1	$\frac{1}{4}$
Ham (fat and lean) . . . . .	2	$\frac{1}{2}$
Bacon (raw) . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

Each portion = approximately 7 g. protein and 7 g. fat.  
= approximately 75 Calories.

(b) *Miscellaneous.*

	Carbohydrate.	Grammes of Protein.	Fat.	Calories.
3 oz. Bread . . . . .	45	7.2	0.9	210
1 Egg . . . . .	—	5.9	6.2	81
8 oz. Milk . . . . .	10	7.2	8.8	152

FAT-CONTAINING FOODS

The following fatty foods should be carefully weighed as it is important to restrict their amount. The following portions contain about 5 g. of fat:

TABLE III

Cream (average) . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
Cream (Devonshire) . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$ ..
Butter or Margarine . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ..

*Note.* The *Cookery Book for Diabetics* published by the Diabetic Association is of value in varying the diet.

*How to Use the Food Tables.* Intelligent patients soon learn to arrange a diet and vary it so that it is not monotonous. If the patient finds difficulty in doing so, the diet can be ordered as so many carbohydrate and protein-fat rations. Thus a diet of 100 g. carbohydrates, 66 g. protein, and 84 g. fat, can be ordered as twenty 5-g. carbohydrate (Table I) and nine protein-fat rations (Table II). The nine protein-fat rations contain 45 g. fat and the remaining 39 g. are supplied by  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz. butter. The three principal meals of the day should be about equal and contain 6 carbohydrate rations and 3 protein-fat rations, leaving 2 carbohydrate rations for tea. If the carbohydrate ration is increased by 30 g., two 5-g. rations are added to the three principal meals. If the protein-fat ration is insufficient, it is better to add a protein-fat ration, i.e. 7 g. protein and 5 g. fat, either to the midday or evening meals or to both.

**The Arrangement of the Diet with and without Insulin.** If no insulin is given, a diet containing 100 g. carbohydrate should be divided between four meals in equal amounts, thus: Breakfast 25 g., Lunch 25 g., Tea 25 g., and Dinner 25 g.

If a diet of 200 or 250 g. of carbohydrate is given, the same balance between the meals should be maintained.

When insulin is given, the arrangement of carbohydrate should be different, and also depends on the type of insulin used. The original insulin is soluble, and the new insulin zinc suspension which is amorphous (trade name, Semi Lente) is insoluble, but both have a quick action. In order to delay and prolong the action of the insulin, various modifications have been made. Zinc is added to all of them, globin is added to Globin insulin, protamine to Protamine insulin with zinc, protamine to Isophane insulin, the new insulin zinc suspension is crystalline (trade name, Ultra Lente). All these insulins, except Globin, are insoluble and therefore turbid. If an insulin is required which acts less slowly, the original insulin can be added in any suitable amount of Globin, protamine zinc or Isophane insulins, but not to the crystalline suspension (Ultra Lente). The amorphous suspension (Semi Lente) can be added to the crystalline, and in a proportion of 3 amorphous to 7 crystalline is available under the name of Lente insulin.

If a dose of a quick-acting insulin is given in the morning and before the evening meal the proportion should be: Breakfast 35 g., Lunch 30 g., Tea 15 g., Dinner 20 g.

The insulin is usually given half an hour before breakfast and half an hour before the evening meal. The balance of a diet of 150 g. of carbohydrate should be: Breakfast 45 g., Lunch 45 g., Tea 15 g., and Dinner 45 g.

If patients are liable to have an overdose, before lunch and during the night "buffer" meals should be given—thus, with a 150-g. carbo-

hydrate diet: Breakfast 40 g., "Buffer" 10 g., Lunch 40 g., Tea 15 g., Dinner 35 g., "Buffer" 10 g.; or with a diet of 210 g. carbohydrate, Breakfast 50 g., "Buffer" 15 g., Lunch 55 g., Tea 15 g., Dinner 60 g., "Buffer" 15 g.

*With Slow-acting Insulins.* If one dose of a slow-acting insulin is given before breakfast the carbohydrate at breakfast should be reduced and that at tea-time increased to prevent hypoglycæmia between tea and the evening meals. It is sometimes advisable to give 10 g. carbohydrate at the same time as the insulin so as to prevent a reaction before breakfast, thus:

- C. 150 g. With insulin 10 g. Breakfast 25 g., Lunch 25 g., Tea 30 g.,  
Dinner 50 g., "Buffer" 10 g.  
C. 200 g. With insulin 15 g. Breakfast 35 g., Lunch 35 g., Tea 40 g.,  
Dinner 60 g., "Buffer" 15 g.

If a mixture of a quick and slow-acting insulin is given in one dose the breakfast must be increased.

- C. 150 g. With insulin 10 g. Breakfast 30 g., "Buffer" 10 g., Lunch 30 g.,  
Tea 30 g., Dinner 30 g., "Buffer" 10 g.  
C. 200 g. With insulin 15 g. Breakfast 45 g., "Buffer" 10 g., Lunch 45 g.,  
Tea 30 g., Dinner 45 g., "Buffer" 10 g.

It must be remembered that patients vary very much in their reaction to insulin and the balance of the diets suggested should be changed according to circumstances.

The dose of insulin may be small, 5 to 10 units given once or twice a day, but may be large, 50, 100, 200 units, and it is rare for a patient to require more than this amount each day. In emergencies much larger doses may be necessary in order to save life, e.g., 500-1000 units or more.

**So-called Diabetic Foods.** Before the discovery of insulin, these foods, especially bread and biscuits, were of some value to the diabetic. Some which contained little or no carbohydrate were of especial value, but unfortunately were often unpalatable. Others which still contained a considerable amount of starch together with an increased quantity of protein and fat were less unpalatable, but often caused the glycosuria to persist. Fortunately, with the discovery of insulin, and the introduction of the high carbohydrate diet, they are no longer used for the patients who are taking insulin. Unfortunately many elderly patients dislike the thought of a daily injection and prefer to eat an unpalatable diet. The so-called diabetic breads and biscuits are of value until the patients suffer so much from their ill-health that they are persuaded to start insulin and to eat palatable foods once more. The following is a list of some of the foods:

		BREAD Starch. per cent.	Protein. per cent.	Fat. per cent.
Energen	.	46	40	3.3
Procea	.	37	22	5.6
Heudebert	.	35	65	0.7
Nutrex				
White	.	40.7	11.56	1.29
Brown	.	39.8	13.6	1.29
Diabetic	.	33.5	23.8	1.29
		BISCUITS		
Energen	.	44	26	24
		FLOUR		
Energen	.	63.3	21	1.75

The reader should consult:

- (1) JOSLIN, E. P. (1952), *The Treatment of Diabetes*.
- (2) LAWRENCE, R. D. (1950), *The Diabetic Life*.
- (3) ABRAHAM, M., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1951), *Modern Dietary Treatment*.
- (4) GRAHAM, G. (1946), *Index of Treatment*. Hutchison & Hilton.

### HYPOGLYCÆMIA

This condition in which the blood-sugar is below 70 mg. per 100 ml. may occur under various conditions.

(1) After very strenuous activities and is the important factor causing fatigue. In the well-trained athlete the exercise must be very great, but in the untrained relatively light exercise will cause symptoms. Athletes should have a high carbohydrate diet and should take sugar 20-40 g. as soon as fatigue is felt, and repeat it if necessary.

(2) Some two to four hours after a meal, the symptoms of hunger, weakness, sweating, tremor of the fingers, ataxia, irritability<sup>1, 2</sup> are noticed.

The hypoglycæmia follows a very rapid increase in the blood-sugar which rises from a fasting value of 80-120 mg. per 100 ml. to above the usual amount of 150-180 mg. per 100 ml. (capillary blood) to 250 or even 300 mg. per 100 ml. at the end of half an hour. It then decreases to about 200 mg. per 100 ml. at the end of the hour, and has usually decreased to 120 mg. per 100 ml. at the one and a half hours, and in the next half or one hour is below 70 mg. per 100 ml. The symptoms of hypoglycæmi usually occur when the blood-sugar is near this level. Glycæmia will be present in the first one and a half hours and will suggest the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus. This is disproved by the

<sup>1</sup> CONN, J. W. (1940), *Journ. Amer. Med. Ass.*, **115**, 1669.

<sup>2</sup> WILDER, R. M. (1940), *Clinical Diabetes Mellitus and Hyperinsulin*, W. B. Saunders, Philadelphia, p. 357.

shape of the sugar tolerance curve, which is called the Lag or Steeple curve. This condition occurs in

(a) People who are otherwise quite well but have the symptom usually in the course of the morning and especially if any exercise is taken. Other members of the family may be affected. The condition if mild is relieved at once by giving 10-15 g. sugar which may have to be repeated. If the condition is more severe and only relieved temporarily by glucose a high protein low carbohydrate diet, say 120 g. protein, 100 g. carbohydrate, 150-170 g. fat, Calories 2175-2500, will often prevent the onset of the symptoms. If they do occur a small amount of carbohydrate 10-15 g. will give instant relief.

(b) In patients who have had a partial gastrectomy performed and suffer from the "dumping syndrome". The Lag or Steeple blood-sugar curve is diagnostic of the hypoglycæmia which occurs after the initial symptoms of fullness and abdominal discomfort has passed.<sup>1</sup> The hypoglycæmia if mild is easily relieved by 10-15 g. sugar. If more severe a high fat diet may relieve or the giving of an ounce of olive oil before meals.<sup>2, 3</sup>

(3) Much more serious symptoms occur in patients who have an adenoma, hyperplasia or malignant growth of the beta cells of the islands of Langerhans. In addition to the other symptoms, the patient may have become violent, have fits or become unconscious. The blood-sugar in this type of case is very low 50 mg. per 100 ml. or lower and barely rises above 120 mg. per 100 ml.<sup>4</sup> after a dose of 50 g. of sugar. The high protein low carbohydrate high fat diet reduces the severity of the symptoms slightly but complete relief can only be obtained by operation if the tumour can be found and removed and is not malignant.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> EVENSON, K. O. (1942), *Acta Med. Scand. Suppl.*, 126, 148.

<sup>2</sup> GILBERT, J. A. L., and DUNLOH, D. W., (1947), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 2, 330.

<sup>3</sup> HASTINGS-JAMES, R. T. (1949), *Lancet*, 1, 358.

<sup>4</sup> CONN, J. W. (1940), *Journ. Amer. Med. Ass.*, 115, 1669.

<sup>5</sup> GRAHAM, G., and OAKLEY, W. G. (1950), *Quart. Journ. Med.*, N.S., 19, 21.

## CHAPTER XXII

### THE PRINCIPLES OF FEEDING IN DISEASE

(continued)

#### THE DIETETIC TREATMENT OF OBESITY

The occurrence of obesity is an indication of a disproportion between the intake of potential energy in the form of food and the output of actual energy in the form of work. Sometimes the fault lies in an unduly large income, sometimes in too small an expenditure; not unfrequently both factors co-operate.

Obesity increases the liability to degenerative diseases like hypertension, pulmonary emphysema, diabetes mellitus, degenerative heart disease, atherosclerosis, and perhaps other diseases. The shortage of food during the war years demonstrated a definite decrease in the incidence of these diseases.

The popular belief that an individual is fat because he is a large eater may or may not be true. Some patients are fat because they eat large amounts of food and take little exercise; others, although they eat ordinary amounts and take moderate exercise; and others again although they eat very little food and take much exercise. The common factor producing obesity is the eating of more food than the patient needs. To use more scientific language, the Calorie requirements of patients vary enormously. The youth of 18 who is doing military training needs 4200 Calories because he is still growing. The man of 21 who has stopped growing doing similar work needs 3600. The same man doing sedentary work needs 2500-3000 Calories, while if he is in bed only 2000 Calories. The middle-aged and old people who have ceased to take much exercise, move about in a leisurely manner and rest longer in the day-time need considerably less to eat than when young. In these instances the basal metabolism is supposed to be the same, but the normal limits of variation in the basal metabolic rate are from  $-10$  per cent. to  $+10$  per cent. Thus a man whose basal metabolic rate is  $+10$  would need 2200 while in bed, while if the basal metabolic rate was  $-10$  he would need only 1800 Calories. If the basal metabolic rate were  $-40$  per cent., as is the case in myxœdema, only 1340 Calories would be required, while if the basal metabolic rate were  $+40$  per cent., as is often the case in toxic goitre, 2666 calories would be necessary to

maintain weight. These instances show that the needs of the body vary widely and explain the great majority of cases of obesity. Some, however, are not readily explained. Thus Rubner<sup>1</sup> compared the metabolism of a fat boy aged 10 and weighing 41 kg. with that of his thin brother, who was a year older and only weighed 26 kg. The fat boy took 434 more Calories, but as he was so big the Calories per square metre of body surface were approximately equal, while the Calories per kg. were about 8 less for the fat boy than the thin one. This experiment shows that the big frame requires more food to maintain weight than the small one once the condition is established.

*Treatment of Obesity.* The best-known is that described by William Banting in 1863<sup>2</sup> (the verb "to bant" has now passed into the English language). He suffered from an extreme degree of obesity, so great, he tells us, as to render him unable to tie his shoe-strings, and to compel him to go downstairs backwards. He was 62 lb. overweight at the age of 66 and lost 48 of these in the next year. The diet consisted of:

**BREAKFAST.**

4 to 5 oz. of beef, mutton, kidneys, broiled fish, bacon, or any cold meat except pork; a large cup of plain tea, and a little biscuit or 1 oz. of toast.

**DINNER.**

5 to 6 oz. of any lean meat or fish, any vegetable except potatoes, 1 oz. of dry toast, some fruit out of a pudding, any kind of poultry or game, and 2 to 3 glasses of good claret, sherry or maderia.

**TEA.**

2 to 3 oz. of fruit, a rusk or two, and a cup of plain tea.

**SUPPER.**

3 to 4 oz. of meat or fish as at dinner, and a glass or two of claret.

For a "night-cap" he was allowed a tumbler of "grog" without sugar, or a glass or two of claret or sherry.

On this regimen Banting lost 35 lb. of weight in thirty-eight weeks, which is not surprising, considering that his diet hitherto had consisted of bread-and-milk for breakfast, or a cup of tea with plenty of sugar and milk, and buttered toast; meat, beer, much bread (of which he was always very fond), and pastry, for dinner; a tea of the same composition as breakfast, and a fruit tart or bread-and-milk for supper. He found sugar the most fattening of all foods, 5 oz. of it in a week causing his weight to rise 1 lb.; and he calls milk, sugar, beer, and butter "human beans," because they have the same effect in the human subject that beans have in the case of the horse, and he regards these articles as "the most insidious enemy an elderly man with a tendency to corpulency

<sup>1</sup> RUBNER, M. (1902), *Beiträge zur Ernährung in Knabenalter*. Berlin.

<sup>2</sup> BANTING, W. "A letter on corpulence addressed to the Public." London, 1863.

can possess, though eminently friendly to youth." He adds: "I can conscientiously assert that I never lived so well as under the new plan of dietary."

The approximate value of this diet excluding the alcohol is carbohydrate 80 g., protein 84-105 g. and fat 80-100 g., Calories 1480-1650. The Calorie value of this diet is considerably less than that required by a healthy man lying in bed, i.e. 2000, and Banting was up and about; the carbohydrate portion is small, the fat ration somewhat reduced while the protein at 84-105 g. is less than that which Voit allowed for the Bavarian peasant, 120 g., but is more than the average individual eats. Protein is essential for the repair of the body but it is unnecessary to give the large amounts of 80 to 100 g. used by Banting. Chittenden found that he and his laboratory workers and his active students maintained nitrogenous equilibrium on 36 g. of protein. But if this amount only is given the benefit of the specific dynamic action of the protein is lost and many people prefer to give about double this amount—say 1 g. per kg. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  g. per lb.) of the ideal weight of the patient. If the carbohydrate is reduced to 80 g. or less as Banting did; many patients lose weight but may complain of feeling limp and tired and consequently abandon all dieting as being too unpleasant, although others can tolerate the lack of carbohydrate without any difficulty.

These complaints were difficult to understand until the introduction of insulin. We now know that these symptoms are due to hypoglycæmia and are a sign that the diet is deficient in carbohydrate for a patient who produces a normal amount of insulin. Experience shows that the amount of carbohydrate necessary to prevent the feeling of hunger and limpness is 100 g. or more, and varies between 125 and 150 g. in individual cases. This amount of carbohydrate thus supplies from 410 to 615 Calories.

If the patient wants to reduce weight quickly it is better to reduce the carbohydrate rather than the fat, because carbohydrate is a better sparer of protein than fat if the Calorie value is kept the same. Hence, paradoxical though it may be, an obese patient is made to call on his own fat depots more quickly if the carbohydrate is kept low and the fat only moderately reduced. He is rather more likely to complain of the restriction of the diet than if the fat is more reduced than the carbohydrate, and it is for this reason that we have given diets arranged on this plan as well as a diet in which the carbohydrate is more reduced than the fat.

The chief difficulty in making a patient lose weight is to decide how much to reduce the caloric value. Some patients have always been big eaters and have further had extra snacks. If so the restriction to the 3 regular meals and tea may be sufficient. Many fat people, however, have already reduced their diet without success and a considerable

reduction of Calorie value is necessary and it is better to reduce it drastically.

Treatment is sometimes started by a fast of 1-5 days duration as was once the practice in the treatment of diabetes mellitus. This has the advantage that some weight is lost quickly and the appetite for food is much reduced. The disadvantage is that the patient continues to excrete 5-7 g. of nitrogen a day. This is derived from 31-43 g. of protein and can only come from the breakdown of the muscles. In addition a ketosis will develop; which is undesirable. Another way of starting treatment, which also has the advantage of reducing the appetite—is to give a diet containing 100 g. of carbohydrate for one to three days.

This is best taken in the form of fruit, and the following portions of fruit each contain 25 g. of carbohydrate, and can be varied according to taste.

PORTIONS CONTAINING 25 G. OF CARBOHYDRATE

4 oz. Orange-juice  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. Sugar

8 oz. Lemon-juice  
 $\frac{3}{4}$  oz. Sugar

6 oz. Melon  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. Sugar

6 oz. Pineapple-juice

4 oz. Tomato-juice  
 1 Pear  
 1 Orange

3 oz. Grapes  
 4 oz. Plums

Tea and coffee may be taken as desired, with a very small amount of milk.

Lettuce, cucumber, watercress, and mustard and cress can be taken as desired.

This will provide 410 Calories so that the loss of body protein will be less and a ketosis will not occur.

It seems preferable to start treatment with a diet which will cause little or no breakdown of body proteins. A diet (I) containing 130 g. carbohydrate 71.4 g. protein and 39 g. fat, calories 1190 is suitable for the initial treatment.

The diet should be varied with the aid of the Food Tables. The egg may be omitted from the breakfast meal and the equivalent amount of protein and fat taken at the midday or evening meal.

It gives a fair variety and can be taken by an intelligent patient who has some of his meals away from home. Diet I provides plenty of green vegetables, either cooked or raw, and fruit and would contain an adequate amount of the vitamins B, and C, but would probably be deficient in the fat-soluble vitamin A and D. Fortunately this can be given in concentrated form and at least 4500 I.U. vitamin A and 900 I.U. vitamin D should be given each day.

## DIET I

	Carbo- hydrate.	Protein.	Fat.	Calories.
BREAKFAST.				
2 Eggs . . . . .	—	11.8 g	12.4 g	162
2 oz. Bread . . . . .	30 g	4.8	0.6	148
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say				
4 oz. Apple . . . . .	10	—	—	41
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. Jam or Marmalade . . . . .	10	—	—	41
MIDDAY MEAL.				
3 oz. Lean Meat . . . . .	—	21.0	15.0	225
3 oz. Potatoes . . . . .	15	—	—	61
Green Vegetables to taste . . . . .		Negligible		
1 oz. Bread. . . . .	15	2.4	0.3	74
TEA.				
1 oz. Bread . . . . .	15	2.4	0.3	74
Lettuce and medium-sized Tomato if desired . . . . .		Negligible		
EVENING MEAL.				
4 oz. steamed white Fish . . . . .	—	20.0	—	88
3 oz. Potatoes . . . . .	15	—	—	61
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say				
4 oz. Orange . . . . .	10	—	—	41
8 oz. Milk in the day . . . . .	10	7.2	8.8	152
4500 I.U. of vitamin A and 900 I.U. of vitamin D should be given each day.	130	69.6	37.4	1168

This diet containing 70 g. of protein would provide 1 g. per kg. (0.5 g. per lb.) for a man weighing 70 kg. or 11 stones and the full advantage of the specific dynamic action of the protein will be obtained. The amount of carbohydrate should be sufficient to prevent hypoglycæmia with its coincident fatigue and slack sensation.

The patients taking these diets live on their own fat and so remain in nitrogenous equilibrium, and keep well for an indefinite period. They should lose weight slowly, 1 or 2 lb. a week until a reasonable weight for the height and age is reached. When this occurs the Calorie value should be gradually increased and a careful watch kept on the weight. Many patients either do not begin to lose weight or lose very little until they have taken a diet for 14 days or even longer. Anderson<sup>1</sup> suggested that sodium chloride was retained in the tissues and was responsible for the failure to excrete water. He found that a change to

<sup>1</sup> ANDERSON, A. B. (1944), *Quart. Journ. Med.*, 13, 27.

a low salt diet caused an immediate decrease in weight. Low salt diets containing 0.1 and 0.5 g. may be seen on p. 595.

If the patient is either very fat or after four weeks loses weight very slowly, he should try Diet II which contains 117.5 g. carbohydrate, 51.6 g. protein, and 24.8 g. fat, Calories 927, or Diet III which contains 81.4 g. carbohydrate, 41.7 g. protein, 32.17.2 g. fat, Calories 799-659 (p. 530).

The use of these diets will cause a more rapid loss of weight and provided additional vitamin A and D is added to the diet no ill effects will ensue. These diets contain so little fat that it is difficult for patients to have their meals away from home or special diet kitchens. The treatment is best started in a hospital or nursing home so that the patients may learn how to arrange and vary their diets. If these patients complain of tiredness and loss of energy at certain times of the day an additional 10 g. of carbohydrate taken, before the onset of the symptoms, will usually prevent them. It is most important to treat these symptoms promptly so as to make the patients feel well for otherwise they may relinquish the diet before any real benefit has resulted.

Another method in which the carbohydrate is reduced to a small amount, 20 g., while the protein and fat are maintained at 91 g. and 77 g. respectively, Calories 1188, has been found by Kekwich and Pawson<sup>1</sup> to be very effective in causing loss of weight, although the Calorie value is not very low. Diet IV.

This may be due to the fat not being so good a sparer of protein metabolism as carbohydrate. Zeller.<sup>2</sup>

The very low carbohydrate does not seem to cause symptoms of hypoglycæmia in many patients and the loss of weight is gratifying. This diet is certainly worth a trial if the weight does not decrease quickly enough when the carbohydrate is kept at a higher level.

If the symptoms of hunger, etc., are complained about although weight has been lost, Diet I can be tried again, and the two diets alternated if necessary.

Some workers consider that it is unnecessary to specify the amounts of carbohydrate, protein, fat and Calories, but give their patients lists of foods which contain much or little carbohydrate, protein and fat, and tell them to avoid all foods which contain much of anything. This advice may suit patients who habitually eat much too much, but will hardly help those who require a really low Calorie diet. In our experience it is much better to teach the patient the value of the different kinds of food. This can easily be done with the modern Food Tables which are simple to understand and especially so if a trained dietitian is available. It is very necessary for the patient to be

<sup>1</sup> KEKWICH, A., and PAWSON, G. I. (1953) *Arch. Middlesex Hosp.*, 3, 139.

<sup>2</sup> ZELLER, H. (1914) *Arch. f. Physiol.*, 213.

seen regularly by a doctor when he is taking a low Calorie diet so that any symptoms which arise may be treated and the diet modified.

#### OTHER MEASURES.

(1) *Restriction of fluids.* This was advocated by Dancel in 1864. He allowed his patients only 7 to 14 oz. of fluid a day. Oertel allowed  $2\frac{1}{4}$  pints while Von Schweningen gave 3 pints a day, but insisted that the fluid should not be drunk at meals. It has been shown that the restriction of fluids has no direct influence though it may have an indirect one by reducing the amount of food which is eaten. It is probable, too, that one reason why restriction of fluids has given better results on the Continent than is seen in this country is, that in Germany at least, restriction of fluids was often synonymous with restriction of beer.

(2) Exercise is very disappointing in its effects since walking a mile uses up only 100 Calories which would be supplied by a little less than one and one-third ounces of bread.

(3) *The administration of substances which raise the Basal Metabolic Rate.* The most important of these is thyroid extract. It is often ordered if the patient fails to lose weight after a reasonable period of dieting. It should only be used if an estimation of the Basal Metabolic Rate has shown that it is between  $-10$  per cent. and  $-5$  per cent. If it is given, the Basal Metabolic Rate should be estimated at monthly intervals to make certain that it is not raised above  $+10$  per cent. The indiscriminate administration of thyroid extract in doses of 2-5 grains for long periods may cause symptoms of hyperthyroidism or apparently determine the onset of glycosuria.

The use of other substances which raise the basal metabolism has been suggested. Dinitrophenol has this property but is apt to produce toxic symptoms. Dodds and Pope<sup>1</sup> found that dinitro *o*-cresol was more potent and less toxic than dinitrophenol. Dodds and Robertson<sup>2</sup> found that a basal metabolic rate of  $+50$  per cent. could be maintained with a dose of 0.5-1 mg. per kg. (0.25-0.5 mg. per lb.) of body-weight, but toxic symptoms were produced with bigger doses. Since then fatalities have occurred with the smaller doses and its use is not recommended. Amphetamine sulphate (benzidine sulphate) dextro-rotatory, 5 mg. three times a day is of value in decreasing the appetite for food and therefore makes the restrictions of the meals more tolerable. Neither the laeo-rotatory nor the racemic form should be used as they may have excitatory effects. This drug should be used only if the patient is under close medical supervision.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> DODDS, E. C., and POPE, W. J. (1933), *Lancet*, 2, 352.

<sup>2</sup> DODDS, E. C., and ROBERTSON, J. D. (1933), *Lancet*, 2, 1137, 1197.

<sup>3</sup> RYNEARSON, E. H., and GASTINEAU, C. F. *Obesity* (1953), Oxford.

## DIET II

	Carbo- hydrate.	Protein.	Fat.	Calories.
BREAKFAST.				
Tea with Lemon . . . . .	—	—	—	—
1½ oz. Bread . . . . .	22.5 g.	3.6 g.	0.4 g.	111
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say 4 oz. Orange . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
MID-MORNING.				
Unsweetened Lemonade or Marmite	—	—	—	—
Medium-sized Tomato and Lettuce	—	Negligible	—	—
Bran Biscuits . . . . .	—	—	—	—
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say 4 oz. Apple . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
MIDDAY MEAL.				
3 oz. Meat (lean) . . . . .	—	21.0	15.0	225
Green Vegetables . . . . .	—	Negligible	—	—
Three 5-g. portions of Fruit, say 3½ oz. Grapefruit and 2 oz. Prunes (or 3 oz. Tinned Pears, Peaches, or Apricots) . . . . .	15.0	—	—	61
Food-valueless Jelly . . . . .	—	—	—	—
TEA.				
Tea with Lemon . . . . .	—	—	—	—
1 oz. Bread . . . . .	15.0	2.4	0.3	74
Medium-sized Tomato and Lettuce .	—	Negligible	—	—
SUPPER.				
3 oz. steamed white fish . . . . .	—	15.0	—	66
2 oz. potatoes . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
Green vegetables to taste . . . . .	—	Negligible	—	—
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say 8 oz. Orange . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
Bread 1 oz. . . . .	15.0	2.4	0.3	74
Milk 8 oz. . . . .	10.0	7.2	8.8	152
4500 I.U. of vitamin A and 900 I.U. vitamin D should be given each day.	117.5	51.6	24.8	927

This diet contains twenty-three and a half 5-g. carbohydrate portions and six 7-g. protein—3-g. fat portions. The diet should be varied with the aid of the Food Tables, pp. 515-17.

Of the different sorts of *beverages* in common use, water and the saline mineral and table waters may be regarded as harmless; but the sweetened effervescing waters such as lemonade, ginger beer, ginger ale, and tonic water should be avoided unless the sugar content of the beverage is ascertained and this amount deducted from the food allowed. Tea and coffee may be freely permitted, if taken with little

## DIET III

	Carbo- hydrate.	Protein.	Fat.	Calories.
BREAKFAST.				
Tea with Lemon . . . .	—	—	—	—
1 oz. Bread . . . .	15.0 g.	2.4 g.	0.3 g.	74
$\frac{1}{4}$ oz. Jam . . . .	5.0	—	—	20
MIDDAY MEAL				
3 oz. Meat (lean) . . . .	—	{ 21.0 or 20.0	15.0	225
or 4 oz. White Fish . . . .	—		—	85
Green Vegetables . . . .	—	—	—	—
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say 4 oz. Apple or 4 oz. Pear . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
Food-valueless Jelly . . . .	—	—	—	—
TEA.				
Tea with Lemon . . . .	—	—	—	—
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. Biscuit . . . .	10.0	1.6	0.2	46
Lettuce . . . .	—	—	—	—
SUPPER.				
10 g. Cocoa . . . .	6.4	1.1	0.7	39
1 Egg . . . .	—	5.9	6.2	81
$\frac{2}{3}$ oz. Bread . . . .	10.0	1.6	0.2	49
Salad . . . .	—	—	—	—
Three 5-g. portions of Fruit, say 6 oz. Grapefruit . . . .	15.0	—	—	61
Bran Biscuits . . . .	—	—	—	—
Milk 8 oz. . . .	10.0	7.2	8.8	152
	81.4	40.8 or 39.8	31.4 or 16.4	788 or 648

Butter nil.

900 I.U. of vitamin D should be given each day.

This diet contains twenty 5-g. carbohydrate portions and gives about six 7-g. protein—four and a half to one 5-g. fat portion.

milk and no sugar. Cocoa is often forbidden, but the amount of nutriment which an ordinary cupful of it contains is so small as to be hardly appreciable if it is not made with milk. In many people, also, it has the advantage of lessening the appetite for solid food.

Alcoholic beverages should be avoided as far as possible, for alcohol is a direct sparer of fat. If a small allowance is indicated because the patient is unhappy without alcohol, a dry natural wine should be selected, or its alcoholic equivalent of well-matured spirit freely diluted with water. All strong and sweet wines, liqueurs, and malt liquors should be interdicted.

## DIET IV

	Carbo- hydrate.	Protein.	Fat.	Calories
<b>BREAKFAST.</b>				
Tea with lemon . . . .	—	—	—	—
1 Egg . . . .	—	5.9 g.	6.2 g.	81
or				
1 oz. Lean meat				
One 5-g. portion fruit . .	5.0 g.	—	—	20.5
Energen roll . . . .	2.0	2.0	0.5	21
<b>MID-MORNING.</b>				
Tea with lemon or milk from ration . . . .	—	—	—	—
<b>LUNCH.</b>				
Meat extract . . . .	—	—	—	—
4 oz. Lean meat . . . .	—	28.0	28.0	374
Green vegetable or Salad <i>ad lib.</i> .	—	—	—	—
Black coffee . . . .	—	—	—	—
<b>TEA.</b>				
Tea with milk from ration or lemon . . . .	—	—	—	—
1 oz. Cheese . . . .	—	8.8	11.0	140
Energen roll . . . .	2.0	2.0	0.5	21
Butter from ration . . . .	—	—	—	—
<b>DINNER.</b>				
Meat extract . . . .	—	—	—	—
6 oz. Fish . . . .	—	30.0	—	132
Green vegetables or Salad <i>ad lib.</i> .	—	—	—	—
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. Cheese . . . .	—	4.4	5.5	70
Tea with lemon . . . .	—	—	—	—
Energen roll . . . .	2.0	2.0	0.5	21
<b>BEDTIME.</b>				
Tea with lemon . . . .	—	—	—	—
Energen roll . . . .	2.0	2.0	0.5	21
<b>DAILY.</b>				
$\frac{3}{4}$ oz. Butter . . . .	—	—	18.7	180
5 oz. Milk . . . .	7.1	5.3	5.0	97
	20	90.4	76.2	1177

## FATTENING DIET

In the previous section we have dealt with the dietetic methods of reducing fat. We have now to consider the means at our disposal for increasing it.

Generally speaking, any excess of food which is supplied to the body beyond the amount required to meet the current outgoings of energy in the form of heat and work will be stored up in the form of fat. One does, it is true, meet with cases in which, owing probably to some failure of assimilative power, it is found to be very difficult to achieve the laying on of fat, even although a considerable surplus of food is supplied, but as a rule one may say that in order to fatten the body one has merely to insure the supply of an excess of food.

It will be obvious that one important means of bringing about such a surplus of income over expenditure is to diminish the outgoings of energy from the body. For this reason, rest, more or less complete, is always an important aid for patients whom it is wished to fatten.

The diet should contain an increased amount of protein, carbohydrate and fat, but respect must be paid to the likes and dislikes of the patient, since it is useless to order extra meat, etc., which the patient refuses to eat.

Fat itself is the best of all fattening foods, as Rubner has shown that, in the formation of new fat, 100 parts of fat are equal to 248 parts of carbohydrate or 313 parts of protein.

It can be given in the form of cream which is easily added to various articles of diet without causing any distaste on the part of the patient. Butter may be more difficult as the patient may dislike greasy cooking but jam or honey may be spread on well buttered bread. The fat on meat is very useful for many, but unfortunately the thin people often dislike it. The fish which contain fat like salmon, herring, should be taken in place of white fish.

Carbohydrates are very useful since extra amounts can so easily be added to the diet. It is more useful than fat as a sparer of protein as it will establish a positive nitrogen equilibrium more quickly than fat does. Protein is not such a good fattening agent as the other two but it is very useful in bringing a patient into nitrogenous equilibrium, provided an adequate caloric value is maintained with the aid of carbohydrate and fat. It will only be laid down as muscle when the muscles are either exercised or have wasted in the course of an acute disease. Otherwise the amino acid groups will be split off and excreted as urea and the carbohydrate fraction will be used to lay down fat. If the individual is a heavy smoker, a considerable reduction in the amount of tobacco smoked will often coincide with a gain in weight.

A fattening diet is wanted in three chief sets of conditions: (1) In

convalescence from acute illness; (2) in wasting diseases, such as tuberculosis; (3) in some nervous disorders, of which neurasthenia may be regarded as the type.

In *convalescence*. If the high Calorie diet used in the treatment of patients with typhoid fever has been used (pp. 503) the loss of protein and fat should be very small. The great demands for food due to the fever persist for three or more days after the temperature is normal, and after this the diet can be gradually reduced from the 5 or 4000 Calories to 2500 or 3000. This can be done by omitting the extra cream and sugar which was given and adding fish and meat, etc.

If the old-fashioned low Calorie diet has been used, a considerable loss of body proteins and fat will have occurred. The Caloric value should be increased by the addition of cream and sugar, and the patent foods like Ovaltine, Benger's Food, Farex, and Horlick's Malted Milk are all of use. Fish and eggs are added to the diet and when the patient's appetite returns, chicken and meat are appreciated. Jellies, though of little food value, are agreeable to the convalescent and with custard and light milk puddings are well liked. Light and moderate exercise will greatly aid the gain in weight as the patient's muscles will gradually recover their size and become firm instead of flabby.

In *wasting disease* the addition of extra milk, cream, and sugar are of great value, and the principles of the diet used for typhoid fever form the basis of the treatment.

In the *treatment of tuberculosis* there have been various fashions. At one time it was the custom to give plenty of fat in the form of butter, bacon, pork, salad oil, and cream. Patients as a rule disliked this fatty diet. Later came the belief<sup>1</sup> that a high protein diet increased the richness and bactericidal power of the blood, stimulated leucocytosis, and replaced the waste of the muscular tissues, and diets containing 150 g. protein were therefore prescribed. The evidence in support of this hypothesis is still lacking, and Rich<sup>2</sup> "has not encountered any studies in which diets rich or deficient in protein, carbohydrate or in fat respectively have been compared upon tuberculosis in susceptible animals suffering from tuberculosis under adequately controlled conditions." The modern view<sup>3</sup> is that the dietetics of tuberculosis demands no more than a full, well-balanced intake. The current custom is to give diets which are high in Calorie value, 3000 to 4000, as for treatment of typhoid fever. If the patient is very ill a fluid diet should be given. The protein is usually made up to about 100-120 g. with milk, eggs, meat, or fish. The carbohydrate should be about 400 g. and the

<sup>1</sup> BURDOWELL, GOODBODY and CHAPMAN. (1902), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 449.

<sup>2</sup> RICH, A. R. (1951), *Pathogenesis of Tuberculosis*, p. 620.

<sup>3</sup> KEERS. (1944), *Lancet*, 2, 599.

fat about 200 g. This practice is at variance with the careful observations of McCann and Barr.<sup>1</sup> They found that the basal metabolic rate (B.M.R.) of tuberculous patients may be normal or slightly above the normal rate of healthy adults of comparable size, provided the temperature is within normal limits. If the temperature is raised  $5.4^{\circ}$  F. to  $104^{\circ}$  F. ( $40^{\circ}$  C.) the basal metabolic rate may be 30 per cent. above the average normal and by 6-7 per cent. for each degree F. of temperature. They found that a toxic destruction of protein occurs but it is very small. The most important observation they made was that the rise in the B.M.R. in tuberculous patients due to the specific dynamic action of protein closely corresponded with that which occurred in healthy adults. This showed that the intake of oxygen and output of carbon dioxide by the lungs is considerably increased when a high protein diet is eaten. Hence the work of the lungs is increased and is equivalent to mild muscular activity, and breaks the principle that the respiratory movement should be reduced to a minimum either by complete muscular rest for the severely ill patients. These were not allowed to sit up or feed themselves and in addition the movements of the affected lung were greatly reduced by an artificial pneumothorax.

The use of streptomycin, para amino-salicylic acid and isoniazid which destroy the tubercle bacilli has improved the condition of the patient so much that absolute rest is no longer insisted on. Hence a good mixed diet of sufficient Calorie value is indicated as for any fever and the higher the temperature the higher the Calorie value should be. During convalescence less food should be given unless the patient has lost a great deal of weight. An occasional estimation of the total nitrogen excreted in the 24 hours, when the patient is having a known amount of protein is of value since it will show whether the patient is in nitrogenous equilibrium or no.

There is no real evidence that excess of vitamins has any effect on the course of the disease though it is believed that more ascorbic acid is needed. It is advisable to ensure that the diet should contain plenty of vitamins A and D, and this can be supplied by giving cod liver or halibut liver oil. Many patients dislike these and if so the A and D vitamins can be given in gelatine capsules. A dose of 4500 I.U. of vitamin A and 900 I.U. of vitamin D should be given. It is important to ensure that an adequate amount of vitamin C is taken either in fruit or green vegetables. If patients for some reason do not eat these foods, a tablet of ascorbic acid, 50 mg., should be given, and double this amount if the fever is high. Before operations on the lung and chest at least 2000 mg. of ascorbic acid should be given to ensure rapid healing of the wound.

A few patients have a poor appetite and the isoniazid drugs may help but if not a dose of insulin, 10 units twice a day, should be tried.

<sup>1</sup> McCANN, W. S., and BARR, D. P. (1920), *Arch. Int. Med.*, 26, 663.

## TREATMENT OF NEURASTHENIA

Symptoms very like those of neurasthenia can be produced by a diet which contains very little thiamine<sup>1</sup> (see p. 128), a diet containing 0.185 mg. prevented any symptoms during 161 days but a further restriction to 0.03 mg. for 23 days was followed by symptoms typical of neurasthenias. These disappeared rapidly when 1-2 mg. thiamine were given daily. It seems unlikely that neurasthenia can be produced by peculiarities in diet since thiamine is widely distributed in foods unless there is, for some reason, a great demand for thiamine by the tissues. Thus an ordinary diet contains the following amounts of thiamine:

Bread 80 per cent. extraction	8 oz.	0.336 mg.
Milk . . . . .	10 oz.	0.130 mg.
Meat . . . . .	6 oz.	0.120 mg.
Potatoes . . . . .	8 oz.	0.208 mg.
Green vegetables . . . . .	8 oz.	0.166 mg.
Total . . . . .		0.960 mg.

This diet should be adequate to prevent any symptoms of neurasthenia. However, a diet containing more thiamine is easy to arrange and can do no harm. The giving of Marmite or wheat germ will give plenty even if the patient prefers a diet containing very little.

A method of treating *neurasthenic patients* called the Weir Mitchell Treatment or Rest Cure was once much used. It consisted of giving a very high Calorie diet, and the details will be found in the 8th Edition (p. 541). It is now no longer used.

## ANOREXIA NERVOSA

In this condition the patient must be given a good mixed diet containing an abundance of all the vitamins. The physician must gain the confidence of the patient and induce her to eat in spite of lack of appetite, nausea and abdominal discomfort. A careful watch must be kept on the patient since she may vomit the food or conceal it by various subterfuges.

Since the patient has often eaten very little for a long time it is probable that she has had very small amounts of vitamins. The work of Keys *et al.*, p. 128,<sup>2</sup> suggests that severe lack of vitamins may play a part in the symptoms of neurasthenia. Their patients recovered very quickly when 1 mg. was given daily, but it is probably better to start treatment with a subcutaneous injection of the following vitamins:

<sup>1</sup> KEYS, A., *et al.* (1945), *Amer. Journ. Physiol.* 144, 5.

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*

Thiamine	.	.	.	.	25 mg.
Vitamin A	.	.	.	.	25000 I.U.
" D	.	.	.	.	5000 I.U.
Nicotinamide	.	.	.	.	100 mg.
Riboflavine	.	.	.	.	10 mg.
Ascorbic acid	.	.	.	.	1000 mg.

Thereafter a daily dose of the following should be given by mouth:

Thiamine	.	.	.	.	1 mg.
Vitamin A	.	.	.	.	4500 I.U.
" D	.	.	.	.	900 I.U.
Nicotinamide	.	.	.	.	50 mg.
Riboflavine	.	.	.	.	3 mg.
Ascorbic acid	.	.	.	.	50 mg.

until the patient has begun to recover. If she eats appreciable amounts of food containing vitamins, the dose of the pure vitamin can be reduced.

These patients are difficult to treat and great skill and perseverance is required.

### THE DIETETICS OF GOUT

The exact cause of gout is still doubtful, but it is certainly intimately associated with the metabolism and excretion of uric acid. The uric acid which is excreted in the urine is derived from two sources: (1) Endogenous, which is (a) derived from the breakdown of nucleins of cells, and (b) synthesized from the amino acids arising from digestion. (2) Exogenous, from the purines of the foodstuffs.

The amount of uric acid excreted in the urine can be considerably diminished by a healthy adult if a diet is taken which contains no purines, but it can never be eliminated on account of the endogenous uric acid, which varies between 0.5 and 0.7 g. per day. The amount excreted by gouty patients varies greatly according to the state of health. During an acute attack a great deal may be excreted for a few days, 0.7 to 1 g. but then the amount becomes normal (0.5 to 0.7 g.) for a long or short period. The excretion, however, gradually decreases and may sink to a very small amount (0.10 to 0.20 g.) just before an attack is due; to be again followed by a copious excretion immediately after the onset of the acute attack, and after repeated attacks the usual output may be very small, 0.20 g. or less. It is unknown whether the small excretion is due to the combination of the uric acid with some other substance which is excreted by the kidney with difficulty, or to a direct failure of the kidney to excrete uric acid.

If extra nucleo-proteins in the form of pancreas and thymus are given to a gouty patient between attacks, the uric acid excretion is

neither so prompt nor so complete as in healthy persons, and in some cases is followed by an actual decrease in the excretion. These facts explain the rationale of the low purine diet. The practice varies from the strict *Haig diet*, in which no purine-containing foods are eaten and no beverages like tea, coffee, or cocoa, because of their content of methyl purines, are drunk—to a moderate diet in which only the *foods with a high purine content* are barred.

## THE PURINE CONTENT OF VARIOUS FOODS

Purine Nitrogen. g. per 100 g. (3½ oz.).		Purine Nitrogen. g. per 100 g. (3½ oz.).	
Herring Roe (soft)	0.484	Pheasant	0.095
Sweetbreads	0.426	Trout	0.092
Whitebait	0.335	Whiting	0.090
Sprats (smoked)	0.250	Veal	0.089
Sardines	0.234	Mutton (leg, roast)	0.077
Heart	0.174	Salmon	0.078
Herring	0.172	Haddock	0.072
Mussels	0.154	Chicken	0.072
Liver	0.143	Pollack	0.071
Kidney	0.137	Bacon	0.069
Bloater	0.133	Pork	0.066
Cod's Roe	0.130	Ham	0.064
Goose	0.100	Cod	0.062
Venison	0.097	Crab	0.061
Beef (sirloin, roast)		0.060	

(Less than 0.06 g. of purine nitrogen per 100 g.)

Beans

Beef (corned)

Brains

Bread

Eggs

Flour and other cereals

Green-leaf Vegetables

Nuts

Peas

Root Vegetables

Tripe

*Foods Free from Purines.*

Butter, cheese, cream, fruits, honey, jam, marmalade, milk (fresh or tinned), sugar, vegetable soups,

*Beverages Rich in Purines.*

Cocoa, coffee, chocolate, meat extracts, meat soups, tea.

Tea, coffee, cocoa, and chocolate are usually allowed in moderation, but the meat extracts and meat soups are forbidden.

There are two foods, soft herring roe, and sweetbreads, which contain over 0.400 g. of purine nitrogen per 100 g. of edible material, and three, whitebait, sprats and sardines, which contain over 0.234 g. per cent.; eight foods contain over 0.100 g. per cent. and seventeen between 0.094 and 0.059 g. per cent. The difference between these foods is often slight and partly explain the conflicting views on diet. Thus whiting and veal contain 0.090 and 0.089 respectively. Should these be barred while bacon, pork, and cod containing only 0.069 and 0.063 are

allowed? Or should all foods which contain more than 0.069 g. be forbidden?

The decision is a difficult one, and it seems better to lay down some postulates—(1) In the acute attack only foods are allowed which are free from purines; (2) in convalescence from an acute attack, or if the patient is liable to frequent attacks, foods are allowed which are either free from purine or contain less than 0.07 g. per 100 g.; (3) in the long intervals between attacks, foods which contain less than 0.1 g. per 100 g. are allowed. These restrictions do not entail any real hardship. (4) In patients who have had only one attack, foods containing as much as 0.150 g. per cent. may perhaps be allowed. It must be remembered that 30 g. (1 oz.) of sardine or 50 g. (1½ oz.) of kidney contain, 0.07 g., the same amount as 100 g. (3½ oz.) of pork or cod and could be exchanged for one another without causing any harm, but the 30 g. of sardine should not of course be taken as a savoury after the full ration of meat has been eaten. Meat extracts, gravy soups and meat stocks are better avoided altogether as they always contain a good deal of purines. Vegetable soups are allowed.

The cooking of these foods is also much disputed. Some recommend that the food should be plainly cooked and that all highly seasoned dishes and rich sauces should be barred. These instructions are difficult to justify on physiological grounds unless the seasoning is done with foods which contain much purines, e.g. shrimp sauce. These rules are probably a relic of the times before the importance of purines was recognized. Similarly, the recommendation that sugar and sweet things should be taken sparingly is probably due to the presence of glycosuria in some gouty patients. It seems unnecessary to forbid all gouty patients to eat sugar because a few have diabetes mellitus.

*Beverages.* Tea, coffee, and cocoa all contain methylpurines, but there is little evidence that these increase the output of uric acid in health. Haig thought that they should be forbidden, but nowadays they are usually allowed in moderation. Alcohol *per se* is not believed to have any effect in causing gout and it is certain that gout is very uncommon among whisky drinkers. On the other hand, it is common among those races which drink malt liquors like beer and stout, and it seems a wise precaution to forbid these. Some workers, however, allow them when their patients are taking sodium salicylate or Benemid every day. Wines present a more difficult problem. Red wines like port and claret and burgundy have been responsible for causing attacks in some patients, while a white wine from a neighbouring vineyard may be drunk with impunity. Champagne is also regarded as a precipitating cause of gout, even though other white wines and cider are safe. Some patients are said to be able to take red wines in safety but to suffer from gout after drinking white wines. These observations suggest that

it is not the alcohol of the wine but some substance in the red or white wine to which the patient is allergic and is responsible for the tendency to gout. The great majority of patients seem to be able to take white wine and cider without risk, and it is on these grounds that the following table has been constructed, but it must be recognized that red wines may not harm some patients while the white ones may be deleterious.

*Drinks to be Avoided.*

Red wines, champagne, all malt liquors, like beer and stout.

*Drinks Allowed.*

White wines, except champagne, cider, spirits in moderation.

### RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS, ARTHRITIS, OSTEO-ARTHRITIS AND FIBROSITIS

A raw vegetable and fruit diet has been used for the treatment of muscular rheumatism, osteo-arthritis, and rheumatoid arthritis.<sup>1</sup> The immediate results are said to be good in a high proportion of cases but no improvement occurred in two old cases of rheumatoid arthritis. The diet was:

#### DIET I

(Daily Rations. A raw diet continued for two weeks only.)

	oz.	
Vegetables . . . .	14	Salads, Tomatoes, Roots.
Fruit: Citrus . . . .	8	Orange, Lemon, Grapefruit.
Apple . . . .	6	
Dried . . . .	4	Apricot, Prune, Raisins, etc.
Nuts . . . .	2	Brazil, Cashew, Hazel, etc.
Oats, crushed . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Served after soaking, uncooked.
Sugar . . . .	$\frac{1}{8}$	One lump.
Salad oil . . . .	2	Or Heinz Mayonnaise mixed with oil.
Cream, 20 per cent. . . .	3	
Milk . . . .	12	
Salt . . . .	None	
Fluids . . . .	unrestricted	Tea, Water, etc.

*Food Values (approx.).*

Carbohydrate . . . .	145 g.
Protein . . . .	35 g.
Fat . . . .	143 g.

Average Calorie value about 2000.

<sup>1</sup> HARE, D. C., and WILLIAMS, M. B. (1938), *Lancet*, **1**, 20. HARE, D. C. (1936). *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **30**, 1.

## SAMPLE MENU. DIET I

BREAKFAST.  
 Apple porridge, i.e.—  
 Grated Apple.  
 Soaked raw Oatmeal.  
 Grated Nuts.  
 Cream.  
 Fresh Orange.  
 Tea with milk and cream.

MID-MORNING.  
 Tomato purée with lemon.

DINNER.  
 Salad Dish, i.e. Lettuce, Cabbage.  
 Tomato, Roots, etc. Salad dressing  
 with oil.  
 Mixed Fruit Salad and cream.

TEA.  
 Dried Fruits.  
 Nuts.  
 Tea with milk and cream.

SUPPER.  
 Fruit Porridge (Prune, Apricot,  
 Apple).  
 Salad Dish with dressing.

BEDTIME.  
 Lemon and Orange-juice with hot  
 water.

## DIET II

(A modified diet given for periods of several weeks)

After two weeks on the Raw Diet I the following additions were made:

*Cooked Foods:* Vegetable soup

Eggs	.	.	.	.	.	1
Meat	.	.	.	.	.	2 oz.
Bacon	.	.	.	.	.	2 oz.
Bread	.	.	.	.	.	2 oz.

*Uncooked Foods:* Butter . . . 1 oz.  
 Cheese . . . 1 oz.  
 Milk . . . 8 oz. (total milk = 20 oz.)  
 Salt as present in the food but no added salt.  
 Oil and cream were reduced as necessary.

*Food Values (approx.).*

Carbohydrate	.	.	.	.	.	146 g.
Protein	.	.	.	.	.	66 g.
Fat	.	.	.	.	.	142 g.

Average Calorie value about 2200.

The preparation and serving of the diets must receive close attention. The green vegetables and roots are finely shredded through a special mincing machine; pulped apple is prepared in the same way and mixed with a little lemon-juice to prevent discoloration. Dried fruits, such as apricots, prunes, and raisins are soaked in water and then pulped or served whole, raw oatmeal too is soaked before serving. Nuts are taken whole or finely ground, sprinkled over the fruit. A good variety of salads and fruits should be obtained and the food daintily served. This attention to detail is mentioned because it is an essential to success,

otherwise the food looks and tastes unappetizing and even the willing patient cannot eat it.

The benefits observed in these diseases may be associated with either the high intake of vitamin C as the patients were all in the sub-scurvy state before the treatment was started, or with the low chloride content of the diet.

It is doubtful whether this diet is of value in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis as it is low both in protein and Calorie value. These patients are often not in nitrogenous equilibrium and really need a high protein—high Calorie diet. This is a good example of a pure vegetarian diet.

Extra protein can be given in the form of eggs and cheese. The dried milk food like sprulac, casilac, etc. (p. 495) can be used to thicken milk or milk puddings and extra starch, sugar and butter if necessary. If this diet is used, it is advisable to determine whether the patient is in nitrogenous equilibrium.

#### FIBROSITIS

Dietetic treatment is of no value.

#### GRAVEL

This is the name given to the deposition in the urine of urates and uric acid. These substances are very insoluble in an acid urine,<sup>1</sup> and fall out of solution when the urine gets cold. If the urine is very acid they may be precipitated at body temperature. In this case the gravel will collect in the bladder, and may cause symptoms. In the past it has been suggested that the amount of purines in the diet should be decreased as in the treatment of gout. It is quite unnecessary to do this, as the condition is easily cured by making the urine less acid so that the uric acid may remain in solution, until the urine has been passed. This can be done either by eating more of the foods which produce alkalis and eating less of those which form acids, or by giving a daily dose of alkalis. The foods which produce alkalis and acids are shown (pp. 112-13). It will be seen that milk, fruit, and all vegetables except peas tend to make the urine alkaline while all the sources of animal proteins together with bread, rice, and oatmeal, tend to make the urine acid. The amount of vegetables and fruit in the diet should first of all be increased and if this fails to keep the uric acid in solution an adequate dose of potassium acetate, potassium citrate or potassium bicarbonate should be given. The right dose must be determined by testing the urine with blue litmus paper. The dose may be as large as 2-3 g. (30-45

<sup>1</sup> ROBERTS, W. (1876), *Urinary and Renal Diseases*, Third Edition, 299.

grs.) every 3 or 4 hours. Sodium salts do not dissolve urates so well as potassium salts. The urine should not be too alkaline as phosphates prevent the solution of urates.

### PHOSPHATURIA

This is due to the urine being too alkaline. It may be clear when passed but precipitate when it is cold or may even be turbid when passed. It is said to occur in neurasthenic patients. It is certainly desirable that the urine when passed should be clear and should not deposit much phosphate on cooling and this is especially the case if the patient has had a phosphatic calculus. The urine can be made more acid by reducing the amount of vegetables and milk and by increasing the amount of animal protein, bread, rice and oatmeal. (See tables, pp. 112-113). If these dietetic changes fail, some acid sodium phosphate 0.6-1.3 g. (10-20 g.) should be taken three times a day or more often. It is important to find out when the urine is most alkaline and to give the acid sodium phosphate at the appropriate time. Each specimen of urine should be tested with red litmus paper or in cases of difficulty, the *pH* of the urine should be estimated. This procedure will enable the size and time of the dose or doses to be determined. If the patients with phosphaturia live in hot climates and sweat a great deal, an extra amount of fluid must also be taken to prevent the concentration of the urine.

### OXALURIA

Crystals of calcium oxalate are found in the urine when it is very acid and/or foods containing large amounts of calcium oxalate are eaten. Under these conditions, pain in the loins and hæmaturia may occur in some individuals. The leaves of spinach, beet and purslane contain over 0.9 g. per cent., rhubarb 0.5 g. per cent., chard swiss leaves 0.66 g. per cent., endive 0.273 g. per cent., but all the other vegetables and fruits contain negligible amounts,<sup>1</sup> nevertheless pain and hæmaturia have occurred after strawberries, or grape-fruit have been eaten. It seems that some other factor is responsible for the hæmaturia. Susceptible individuals should avoid all the foods mentioned above and anything which has caused hæmaturia before.

### DIETETIC TREATMENT OF SCURVY

The history and present state of our knowledge has already been discussed (p. 141), and it is only necessary here to mention the conditions under which especial care must be taken in order to prevent

<sup>1</sup> COOKE, E. N., and CLARK, A. L. (1933), *Proc. Staff Mayo Clinic*, 8, 222.

the occurrence of either scurvy or the sub-scurvy state. It is unnecessary to dilate on the care which should be taken in providing an adequate amount of ascorbic acid for those taking long sea journeys to the Arctic regions, etc., where fresh meat or fish is unobtainable, as these are so well known. In this country scurvy still occurs among infants who are fed on artificial foods (see p. 149) and it is essential to add to the diet sufficient fresh (not boiled) orange- or lemon-juice to provide 25 mg. of ascorbic acid per day. If for any reason these disagree the ascorbic acid should be added to the milk in tablet form. Raw-meat juice does contain some ascorbic acid but should never be used because of the risk of conveying the eggs of intestinal parasites.

Frank scurvy is rare among adults but occurs among patients like old men who, living alone, do their own cooking or do not get fresh fruits (Bachelor's Scurvy). We feel that there is some danger in the present tendency to cook with gas obtained from a slot meter instead of with a coal-fire. Vegetables like cabbage which are a good source of ascorbic acid must be put into a small amount of boiling water. The lid must be placed on the saucepan which is heated for 10 minutes (see pp. 144-5). This is readily done over a coal-fire whereas in poor households the cost of gas for this purpose seems extravagant. Foods therefore tend to be fried and vegetables are not used. This does not really matter if plenty of fresh meat or some good fruit is eaten, but it is in these cases that either the cost is prohibitive or the patient has never learnt to eat it. Recent work has shown that many patients, and especially those being dieted for diseases of the alimentary tract, are in the sub-scurvy state, and frank scurvy may even occur. This is readily treated with orange-, lemon- or blackcurrant-juice, but if hæmorrhage from the stomach or intestines has taken place ascorbic acid, 300 mg. three times a day, should be given by mouth for two or four days (1800-3600 mg.), and thereafter a maintenance dose of 25 mg. a day.

The diet of patients, with either a wound or fracture or who are about to undergo operations, should always be enquired into and unless it is certain that the diet was adequate full doses of ascorbic acid should be given. For if, for some reason, the diet has been very freakish neither the wound nor bone will heal quickly, while abdominal wounds either of the stomach or skin may burst open.

#### DIETETIC TREATMENT OF INFANTILE SCURVY

The treatment of infantile scurvy is purely dietetic. Fresh milk contains so little vitamin C that it does not make any real difference whether the milk has been pasteurized, as it should be, or given as a dried powder. Under present conditions extra vitamin C should always

be given. Scurvy is easily prevented by giving the juices of fruits which contain plenty of vitamin C; e.g. "freshly" squeezed juice of oranges, lemons, grapefruits, swedes, or tomatoes, are all very valuable but if the fresh juice has been standing more than half an hour it will have deteriorated considerably. It is destroyed when boiled. Fruit juice from a tin loses about half its vitamin C content in the process of preparation. See Food Tables, pp. 149-50.

The "war-time" products of rose-hip syrup or blackcurrant juice and purée are very useful, but the vitamin C content should be stated on the label. At least 25 mg. ascorbic acid should be given each day. In an emergency 100 mg. of ascorbic acid should be given for two or three days.

#### TREATMENT OF RICKETS AND DISEASES DUE TO LACK OF VITAMIN D

Rickets is due to several factors.

(1) The amount of vitamin D in the ordinary food is small. Milk in the summer contributes 57 I.U. per pint and butter 113 I.U. per 1 ounce, but the milk from the stall-fed cow in the winter contains very little, if any. The yolk of an egg in the summer may give 75 I.U. but 22 I.U. only in the winter. These amounts seem very small and help to explain why the disease is commoner in winter than summer.

(2) Vitamin D is believed to be made as the result of exposure of the skin not only to sunlight but also to indirect light when the sun is obscured by clouds (sky shine). The smoky atmosphere of some of the northern cities prevents this effect and is probably responsible for the prevalence of rickets in those cities. The vitamin D is probably made from the sterols of the milk and other foods.

(3) The sufficiency of phosphorus and calcium must be supplied in the diet, and this will always be the case if the babies are given sufficient milk and later on cheese and an egg.

(4) Excess of cereal may be responsible and should be avoided. The use of patent foods containing much starch should be forbidden as they in some way upset the balance of the diet. Some cereals like oatmeal are more harmful than others as they contain excess of phytic acid which combines with the calcium and so prevents its absorption. Since the foods taken by babies and young children contain so little vitamin D and since they do not have the opportunity to make much vitamin D in the skin when they are brought up in large towns, it is necessary to give them extra supplies of the vitamin by mouth. This is administered in the form of liver oils which contain an adequate amount of vitamin D. The vitamin content of the oil should be clearly stated on the label. The British Pharmacopœa states that 1 drachm of oil should contain at least 300 I.U. of vitamin D, and 2000 I.U. of A. Cod-liver oil used to

have a very unpleasant taste and unless a child was given it early he would often refuse to take it later on, and few adults will face it even now that it is relatively tasteless. The best oils, which are made from the liver which has been processed before decomposition of the liver has started, do not have an unpleasant taste. The synthetic product, calciferol, should be used if the patient dislikes the oil, but the cost is about ten times as great. It can be given as a tablet or dissolved in arachis oil as a liquid or in a gelatine capsule. Vitamin A is often added to its preparations. Six drops of a good preparation usually contain 6000 I.U. of A and 1200 I.U. of D.

It is believed that the maintenance dose of vitamin D for a child of two should be at least 300-400 I.U. and that the curative dose is 1000-2000 units.<sup>1</sup> It may be much more in refractory cases and should then be given subcutaneously.

*In Older Children and Adults.* Rickets may develop in young children after the age of two years if they suffer from coeliac disease. Older patients also develop a similar disease, idiopathic steatorrhœa, and show changes in the bones similar to osteomalacia.<sup>2</sup> The condition is treated by ordering a diet containing the minimum amount of fat and giving vitamin D in the form of calciferol. For a child 5000-10,000 I.U. should be given daily, but an adult may require 10,000-20,000 I.U.

Rickets also develops in children of 4 to 12 or older who have a chronic kidney disease of moderate severity. Vitamin D is not of any value unless sufficient alkali is given by mouth to bring the alkali reserve within the limits of normal. When this is done, vitamin D in dose of 10,000-20,000 units cures the rickets.<sup>3</sup>

*Hunger osteomalacia* may occur in adults or older children as a result of long-continued undernutrition with a great deficiency of vitamin D in the diet. *Puerperal osteomalacia* occurs under similar conditions when the woman is pregnant. Both these diseases are readily cured when the deficiencies in protein, fat and calories are remedied and vitamin D in doses of 10,000-30,000 I.U. administered daily. This treatment relieves the symptoms and heals the bones very quickly.

*Senile osteoporosis* with fracture of the lumbar or lower thoracic vertebræ, but without any of the symptoms of osteomalacia, is a different disease of unknown causation.<sup>4</sup> It is much commoner in women than in men and may be associated with a deficiency in the male and female sex hormones. A diet rich in calcium and phosphorus should be given and in addition calcium in the form of calcium

<sup>1</sup> JEANS, P. C., and STEARN, G. (1938), *Journ. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, **111**, 703.

<sup>2</sup> BENNETT, T. I., HUNTER, D., VAUGHAN, J. (1932), *Quart. J. Med.*, **1**, (25), 603.

<sup>3</sup> GRAHAM, G., and OAKLEY, W. G. (1938), *Arch. Dis. Child.*, **1**, 1.

<sup>4</sup> BURROWS, H. J., and GRAHAM, G. (1945), *Quart. J. Med.*, in the Press.

phosphate 3 g. a day and 6 g. of sodium phosphate in the form of a powder. This will provide 1 g. of calcium and 0.6 g. of phosphorus. Vitamin D 5000-10,000 I.U. may be given at the same time to aid the absorption of the calcium and phosphorus from the gut, but the condition does not respond quickly like osteomalacia but improves very slowly. Specific treatment with a mixture of the male and female hormones is of value. Testosterone propionate, 10-20 mg. by injection or methyl testosterone, 30 mg. by mouth is given daily. The female hormone must be given at the same time, œstradiol benzoate 2 mg. by injection or diœstrol, 1 mg. by mouth. Both are given daily for four weeks and the course repeated after a two weeks' pause. This treatment must be persevered with for a long time, one or two years.<sup>1</sup>

It has been suggested that delay in the *healing of fractures* may be due to lack of vitamin D.<sup>2</sup> This is probably the case if the patient has taken a deficient diet for some time. Very large doses, 750,000 I.U., were given by Tumulty and Howard<sup>3</sup> for 10-17 days in two patients respectively in the hopes of healing fractures more quickly. The patients developed nausea, vomiting and slight albuminuria with the presence of a few red cells and casts. The serum calcium rose to 15 and 18 mg. per 100 c.c. These unfavourable symptoms passed off quickly when the administration stopped, but the bones did not heal any quicker than usual. Small doses of 2000-5000 I.U. will aid the absorption of calcium and phosphorus from the gut and cannot do any harm.

### 3. *Diet in Disorders of the Stomach*

#### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Seeing that the essential rôle of the stomach is a mechanical rather than a truly digestive one, the physical form of the food must always be of more importance in dyspepsia than its chemical composition. In proof of this one finds that so long as the stomach is able to pass the food on into the intestine, absorption and nutrition go on without impairment, even although the digestive juices of the stomach itself are no longer present and even if a very large part of the stomach has been removed. The first rule to be observed, therefore, in drawing up a dietary for disorders of the stomach, is to see that the food is presented in such a form that the stomach has but little difficulty in driving it on into the duodenum. In practice this means that the food must be in a fine state of division, and should be carefully chewed.

The question of bulk must also be considered. The larger the mass of the food, the greater is the muscular labour imposed on the stomach.

<sup>1</sup> COOKE, A. M. (1955). *Lancet*, **1**, 929.

<sup>2</sup> NELSON, C., F.V.R.C. (1941), *Journ. Amer. Med. Ass.*, 184.

<sup>3</sup> TUMULTY, A. V., and HOWARD, J. F. (1942), *Journ. Amer. Med. Ass.*, **119**, 233.

It is probably on this account that animal foods are, as a class, less troublesome to most dyspeptics than vegetable products. For the same reason, the meals in dyspepsia should be of small size, but taken at rather short intervals.

As regards the behaviour of the dyspeptic stomach to the different chemical ingredients of the food, great individual differences exist, and in no class of case is it more important to study the question of idiosyncrasy. In a majority of instances cooked fat is more apt to give offence than any other constituent. In the process of cooking, fatty acids, acrolein, and other irritating substances, may be formed and if the stomach is not healthy may disagree. On the other hand, milk, butter and bacon-fat which have a low melting point are usually of great value in the treatment of gastric disorders.

We may now pass to the more detailed consideration of the dietetic treatment suitable in different forms of gastric disorder, leaving the discussion of some further general principles until we come to speak of "functional" dyspepsias. In handling the subject it will be well to take up first those diseases of the stomach which are accompanied by definite organic change, and afterwards to consider the so-called "functional" disorders in one group. Such an arrangement is admittedly unscientific, but it has the advantage of practical convenience, and our knowledge does not at present admit of any more satisfactory system of classification.

### GASTRIC ULCER

In the last fifty years great changes have taken place in the treatment of patients with gastric or duodenal ulcers. The principle generally accepted was that the work of the stomach should be as light as possible and that the food should not irritate the mucous membrane. The idea of rest was carried so far at one time that no food was given by mouth and various types of nutrient enemata or water containing salt and sugar were given per rectum. It is now recognized that nutrient enemata are of very little value (p. 605) and they should not be used. Rectal salines are of great value when the patient has lost much fluid either by vomiting, severe hæmorrhage or whenever the patient is unable for some reason to take a sufficient amount of fluid by mouth (p. 605). Under these conditions a 5 per cent. solution of glucose in tap water or  $\frac{1}{2}$  normal saline is of great value, and 3000 ml. may be given in the day if fluid is not given by any other route.

Patients did not do well on this régime, and in 1907 Lenhartz<sup>1</sup> introduced the practice of feeding patients by mouth, starting with very small amounts of an egg and milk mixture and gradually increasing it

<sup>1</sup> LENHARTZ. (1907), *Med. Klin.*, LANGDON BROWN. (1908), *Clin. Journ.* 33, 109.

daily. The guiding principles of the diet were (1) to aid the healing of the ulcer by giving as much nourishing food as possible, (2) to fix the acid of the gastric juice by ensuring that the food contains a large proportion of protein, and so prevent its interfering with healing, (3) to lighten the work of the stomach as much as possible by the use of small feeds. It

					DIETS						
Feeds by day	Food				1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	Milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	¼	¼	¼	¼	¼
2	Egg and milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	¼	¼	¼	¼	¼
3	Milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	—	—	—	¼	¼
4	Egg and milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	¼	¼	¼	¼	¼
5	Milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	—	—	—	¼	¼
6	Egg and milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	¼	¼	¼	¼	¼
7	Milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	—	—	—	¼	¼
8	Egg and milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	¼	¼	¼	¼	¼
Feeds at night if awake	Milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	—	—	—	¼	¼
	Milk	.	.	oz.	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4
	Sugar	.	.		—	—	—	—	—	¼	¼
Daily total	Milk	.	.	oz.	9	15	18	22	27	32	36
	Eggs	.	.		1	1	2	3	3	3	4
	Sugar	.	.	oz.	—	—	1¼	1¼	1¼	2½	2½

APPROXIMATE  
COMPOSITION  
OF DIET

Carbohydrate	.	g.	12	20	59	64	71	114	118
Protein	.	g.	14	19	28	38	42	48	59
Fat	.	g.	16	23	32	43	48	55	66
Calories	.		250	365	635	790	885	1140	1270

## DIETS

[illegible]

Feeds by day	Food		8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Daily	Milk	oz.	46	42	42	42	42	42	42
total	Egg	No.	4	3	3	3	3	3	3
	Butter	oz.	—	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1 $\frac{7}{8}$	2 $\frac{1}{8}$	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2 $\frac{3}{8}$	3
	Sugar	oz.	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$

APPROXIMATE  
COMPOSITION  
OF DIET

Carbohydrate	g.	158	203	208	219	230	241	286
Protein	g.	71	91	92	93	95	97	104
Fat	g.	83	127	130	136	154	161	180
Calories		1710	2380	2440	2550	2770	2880	3270

*Arrangements of Feeds.* Milk is given alternately with egg and milk every two hours by day, and during the night there should be two milk feeds. On Diet I each feed consists of 1 oz. and is increased by  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. for each successive diet reaching 4 oz. on Diet VII.

*Milk Feeds.* Fresh whole milk previously boiled, or dried whole milk should be used. It may be flavoured with Ovaltine, Bournvita or Instant Postum if desired, or Horlick's Malted Milk, or infant food may be substituted for some of the feeds.

*Sugar.* If ordinary sugar is too sweet, glucose or lactose may be substituted.

*Puddings.* Equivalent amounts of the following puddings may be substituted for milk throughout the diets.

Custard-powder custard.

Gruels made from flour of oatmeal, strained porridge, barley groats or patent barley.

Jellies made with milk and orange jelly made with well strained orange juice and gelatine. Flavoured water jellies may be given occasionally provided they are not very acid.

Junket or blancmange flavoured with vanilla, almond or ratafia. Ovaltine or Bournvita may be scattered on the junket if desired.

Milk puddings made from sago, semolina, tapioca, vermicelli, barley kernels, cream of wheat, ground or flaked rice or very well cooked whole rice.

Egg custard boiled or baked.

*Fish.* Fresh haddock, hake, plaice, skate, sole, turbot, and also soft roes. The fish should be slightly salted, boiled or steamed and served with milk and butter or plain white sauce. One tablespoon = 1 oz. approximately. No condiments except salt should be used.

*Water.* This should be drunk between meals not more than 5 oz. at a time.

*Orange Juice.* This should be freshly pressed, and well strained; 3-4 oz. should be taken twice a day between feeds.

*Note.* The continued use of raw eggs commonly recommended in the gastric diets and milk drips is surprising seeing that two raw eggs take 2 $\frac{1}{4}$  hours to leave the healthy stomach, whereas two lightly boiled eggs take only 1 $\frac{3}{4}$  hours (p. 203). Moreover some patients either feel ill after taking raw eggs or detest their taste. There is no reason why the eggs should not be lightly boiled and eaten in the ordinary way. If the egg is hard boiled, poached or scrambled it takes longer to leave the stomach. It is to be hoped that the use of raw eggs will decline. There is an additional reason for abandoning the use of raw eggs since it has been found that egg white destroys the vitamin biotin (p. 139).

is often found that patients may vomit after a 6- or 8-oz. feed, but will not do so after 2-oz. feeds given at one- or two-hourly intervals. The original Lenhartz diet has been much altered and the modification suggested by Abrahams and Widdowson<sup>1</sup> is easy to carry out.

The Lenhartz and other gastric diets in their original forms contained very little ascorbic acid as all vegetables were omitted and the juice of oranges and lemons was forbidden because they have an acid taste. It has been found <sup>2, 3, 4</sup> that patients fed on these diets are in the sub-scurvy state and the degree of deficiency is especially great when patients have had a hæmatemesis. Most patients have had symptoms of dyspepsia some time before they seek medical aid, and it may be assumed that they have omitted from their diet the common sources of ascorbic acid. It was recommended (Archer and Graham) that 100 mg. ascorbic acid should be given each day for three days to all patients with symptoms of gastric and duodenal ulcer and for four days if a hæmatemesis had occurred. Thereafter a maintenance dose of 25-50 mg. should be given daily either in the form of orange or lemon juice (freshly pressed), blackcurrant purée or syrup, or hip and haw syrup, or as pure ascorbic acid.

The amounts of foods in Diets I-VIII are very small seeing that the Calorie value varies from 250 to 1710, and these diets are rarely used nowadays for patients with gastric or duodenal ulcers, unless they have severe epigastric pain and vomiting, which is often associated with an acute gastritis. Patients taking these diets are having insufficient food, and will in consequence, live on their own fat and muscles, and will not be in nitrogenous equilibrium. The recovery of strength will inevitably be slow and the convalescence prolonged. The Diets IX-XIV do not err in this respect since the Calorie value varies from 2380-3270. The last diet would be suitable for a patient with a moderately high fever (p. 503).

In 1934 Meulengracht<sup>5</sup> laid stress on the importance of feeding patients suffering from hæmatemesis with a fair amount of food since he found that the mortality was lower in his series of cases. This principle is generally accepted now, and the Diets VIII-XIV of the modified Lenhartz are very suitable for this purpose. A patient who has had either an acute gastric or duodenal ulcer with or without hæmatemesis should be started on Diet VIII and the meals should be given at 2-hourly intervals. Some patients have either so much pain or vomiting

<sup>1</sup> ABRAHAMS, M., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1951), *Modern Dietary Treatment*.

<sup>2</sup> HARRIS, L. J., ABBASY, M. A., YUDKIN, K., and KELLY, S. (1936), *Lancet*, **I**, 1488.

<sup>3</sup> ARCHER, H. E., and GRAHAM, G. (1936), *Lancet*, **2**, 364.

<sup>4</sup> PORTNOY, B., and WILKINSON, J. F. (1938), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **I**, 553.

<sup>5</sup> MEULENGRACHT, E. (1934), *Acta Med. Scand.*, **59**, 374.

that they cannot tolerate this diet. Formerly Diets I-VII would have been tried, but nowadays this type of patient is given a continuous milk drip by means of a fine Einhorn's tube which just enters the stomach. Six pints of milk and 3 raw eggs are mixed together, and allowed to enter the stomach at the rate of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  oz. an hour. This mixture will contain 150 g. carbohydrate, 127 g. protein, and 149 g. fat, Calorie value 2529. The patient will frequently respond to this treatment, and lose all his symptoms. Seeing that a lightly boiled egg is more easily digested and leaves the stomach more quickly there is no reason why the eggs should not be eaten 3 times a day instead of being taken raw, especially as some patients much dislike the raw egg and milk mixture. Further raw egg white destroys the vitamin biotin.<sup>1,2</sup> The milk drip is usually continued for 7-10 days, and when all symptoms have subsided the amount of milk is gradually reduced and Diets IX or X cautiously instituted until the full diet is being taken, when the Einhorn's tube should be removed. If the diet has to be continued for some time, it is advisable to give adequate amounts of other vitamins, say:

Vitamin A	.	.	.	3000 I.U.
Vitamin D	.	.	.	600 I.U.
Thiamine	.	.	.	9 mg.
Riboflavin	.	.	.	3 mg.
Nicotinamide	.	.	.	50 mg.

and if orange and lemon juice is not given, ascorbic acid 50-100 mg. a day.

The after-treatment is very important if the ulcer is to heal soundly. Alcohol should not be allowed as it is liable to cause or keep up a gastritis. The use of foods highly seasoned with mustard, pepper, spices, and condiments of all kinds should be forbidden for the same reason. Tea and coffee should either be forbidden or only allowed if well diluted with water or milk. Cane-sugar should not be given because it causes a large secretion of mucus; glucose and lactose are said to do less harm.

The smoking of all kinds of tobacco should be forbidden. The evil effect of tobacco is probably due to the nicotine and its decomposition products, e.g. pyridine, being dissolved in the saliva and so swallowed. The taste of the saliva of a heavy smoker can be best appreciated by a non-smoker if, when working in a laboratory, he uses the distilled-water wash bottle of the smoker. Many patients find great difficulty in giving up smoking.

### JEJUNAL FEEDING

If the ulcer is very large or heals very slowly in spite of the milk drip resort may be had to jejunal feeding.

<sup>1</sup> SYDENSTRICKER *et al.* (1942), *Journ. Amer. Med. Ass.*, 118, 1199.

<sup>2</sup> DAM, H. (1939), *Lancet*, 2, 1157, 1162.

A soft pliable Einhorn's tube is passed into the stomach and after the tip has passed the pylorus it is pushed onwards until the tip is 32 in. to 35 in. from the lips. The initial feeds should consist of 1 raw egg beaten up, 150 ml. (5 oz.) milk and 15 g. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  oz.) lactose. This is strained through several layers of gauze warmed to a temperature of 100° F.; placed in a receiver 4 in. above the upper surface of the abdomen. The size of each feed is increased by 10 ml. ( $\frac{1}{3}$  oz.) each day until 210-240 ml. are administered. The tube is left in position and washed through after each feed with normal saline and air. Extra fluid is given on the second day in the form of 350 ml. of one-third normal saline twice a day and the volume is increased up to 750 ml. b.d.; 100 mg. ascorbic acid should be given daily. Ten feeds were given but it is better to use the "continuous" drip method.

An alkaline powder consisting of magnesium oxide gr. 3., bismuth subnitrate gr. 15., water to 1 oz. is given by mouth between feeds and a double dose at night so as to ensure that the stomach mucosa is always alkaline.

The tube is removed after two weeks and a Diet 9-12 is given for the next two weeks.

A jejunostomy is sometimes performed if patients with severe gastric diseases suffer from uncontrollable vomiting, alkalosis and renal failure which cannot be controlled by intravenous therapy. The patients must be fed by this route for some weeks. The indwelling catheter must be size 17 or greater.

Scott and Ivy have been able to keep dogs alive and well with the following mixture which Colp and Druickerman<sup>1</sup> have used with success on men.

Four hours after the jejunostomy 60 ml. of warm normal saline are given every 2 hours. After 12 hours 60 ml. (2 oz.) of the Scott-Ivy pabulum is given every 2 hours alternately with 60 ml. (2 oz.) saline. The quantity of the feed is gradually increased to 120 ml. (4 oz.).

If the ulcer does not heal after a good trial has been given to these various measures, a partial gastrectomy should be considered.

*Scott-Ivy Pabulum.*<sup>2</sup> Sugar 150 g., water 3000 ml. Add peptone 100 g. and wait till it dissolves. Heat to 60° C. for a few minutes and add it to 300 g. of wheat flour making a paste at first and then diluting it with all the peptone and sugar. Then add 2000 ml. milk mixed with 1000 ml. cream 20 per cent. and bring to a boil quickly, stirring vigorously, but do not allow to boil. Maintain just below the boiling point until it thickens to the consistency of a thick cream soup. Cool and place in a refrigerator where it will keep for 4-5 days.

<sup>1</sup> COLP, R., and DRUICKERMAN, L. J. (1943), *Ann. of Surgery*, 117, 387.

<sup>2</sup> SCOTT, H. G., and IVY, A. C. (1931), *Ann. of Surgery*, 93, 1197.

100 ml. contains	Protein	. . .	3.5g.	} = 85 Calories.
	Carbohydrate	. . .	8.1	
	Fat	. . .	4.3	
	Add 10 c.c. emulsified bile.			
3000 ml. will supply 2550 Calories				
Vitamins.	Vitamin A	. . .	3000 I.U.	
	„ D	. . .	600 I.U.	
	Thiamine	. . .	9 mg.	
	Riboflavine	. . .	3 mg.	
	Nicotinamide	. . .	50 mg.	
	Vitamin C	. . .	100 mg.	

### DIETS IN CONVALESCENCE FROM ACUTE DYSPEPSIA

Diets Nos. 1, 2, and 3 are useful for convalescence, and if a patient can take Diet 3 without any symptoms he may then begin to return to an unrestricted diet. He should understand that as soon as any symptoms return he should use the convalescent Diet 1, and if the symptoms continue should use a lower stage of diet, say the 9th Lenhartz Diet.

**DIET I.** Eight feeds should be taken during the day, the first on waking; milk and biscuits should be taken during the night whenever the patient wakes. The four main meals which are given below, should be equal in size, and small "between" meals should be given about two hours after the main meals. These *between feeds* should consist of:  $\frac{1}{4}$  pint of warm boiled milk, flavoured if desired with cocoa, Bournvita, Ovaltine, Marmite, Horlick's, Benger's, or the like. Cream crackers, rusks, or other plain biscuits, not wholemeal. If the beverage and biscuits cannot be obtained, one or other will suffice, and should neither be obtainable a piece of plain or milk chocolate may be eaten slowly.

Water (not iced) up to  $\frac{1}{4}$  pint may be taken between feeds, and a small amount with meals.

The well-strained juice of an orange should be taken twice daily, preferably between feeds. Fresh-strained tomato-juice may be substituted occasionally, or a glass of tinned tomato-juice, or black-currant juice or purée, or hip and haw syrup. In cases where fruit juices are not tolerated, one or two tablets of ascorbic acid (25-50 mg.) may be substituted.

Food should be cooked with a little salt, but no other condiments.

**DIET II.** If desired the number of feeds may be reduced to seven, and the interval between them increased to two and a half hours. The main meals should be somewhat bigger than the between feeds.

**DIET III.** This is an easily digested normal diet suitable for constant use by patients who have suffered from gastric or duodenal ulcer or other continued gastric disturbance. The interval between meals may be increased to three or four hours, and the number reduced to four or five. The main meals should be of normal, medium size. If the patient

ought to gain weight, three or four "between" feeds should be given. They should also be given if any discomfort is felt in the interval between meals.

**DIET III ADAPTED FOR ACHLORHYDRIA.** No between feeds should be taken. Only small amounts of fluid should be taken with meals, the rest being drunk between them. Each meal should be begun with a mild appetizer such as tomato, orange, or grapefruit juice, or a small teacupful of Marmite. The latter should be taken daily as a beverage or sandwich spread.

### DIET I

#### BREAKFAST.

One egg, lightly boiled or poached.

White bread, stale and crustless, cut thinly, or crisp toast (not hot), with butter.

Honey (run), golden syrup, apple, black currant, or bramble jellies, or strained jelly marmalade.

Weak tea or cocoa with plenty of milk. Sugar if desired.

#### DINNER.

Fresh white fish, boiled or steamed, or stewed sweetbreads, brains or tripe.

Plain white sauce if desired.

Mashed old potatoes or crustless stale white bread, cut thinly, or plain biscuits.

Milk pudding, custard, junket, blancmange, jelly, or plain steamed cake-mixture pudding.

#### TEA.

White bread or toast and butter as at breakfast.

Honey, etc., as at breakfast, or Marmite.

Plain sponge or Madeira cake or biscuits.

#### SUPPER OR LUNCH.

One or two eggs lightly boiled or poached, or fresh cream or milk cheese.

Cream crackers, rusks, or other plain biscuits.

Warm boiled milk, if desired, flavoured with cocoa, Bournvita, Ovaltine,

Benger's, Horlicks, or the like.

Pudding as at dinner, if desired.

#### "BETWEEN" FEEDS.

Milk 4 oz. flavoured with cocoa, Bournvita, Ovaltine, Horlick's, Benger's food and plain biscuit.

Interval between meals and "between" feeds:—two hours.

#### Not allowed.

Beer, stout, whisky, and other alcoholic drinks, and mineral waters (except soda-water).

Brown bread, new white bread, rolls, buns, porridge, and digestive, whole-meal, ginger, coco-nut, Vitaweat, or Ryvita biscuits.

Coffee.

Fish with fine bones, such as herrings, or salt fish and salmon.

Fried foods of all kinds.

Fruit, skins, seeds and hard fruits such as raw apple, pineapple etc.  
 Jam, peel of marmalade, currants, and other dried fruit, nuts, seeds.  
 Meat, bacon, ham, sausages, chicken and rabbit.  
 Pickles and rich sauces, vinegar, condiments, added salt, or other seasoning  
 Soups, meat extracts, and Marmite.  
 Suet puddings and pastry.  
 Vegetables (except those given above), new potatoes, parsley and salads.  
 Smoking.

## DIET II

### BREAKFAST.

The same as in Diet I.

### DINNER.

As Diet I, with the following additional alternatives:

Boiled or roast chicken (no skin or gristle) or stewed rabbit.

Flower of cauliflower, sieved carrots, spinach, peas or tomatoes.

Baked or stewed apple (no skin or core), sieved stewed prunes, apricots, peaches or pears, fresh or tinned, or sieved raw bananas.

### TEA.

The same as Diet I.

### SUPPER OR LUNCH.

The same as Diet I.

Interval between meals and feeds, two to two and a half hours.

### *Not allowed.*

The same foods as in Diet I.

## DIET III

### BREAKFAST.

As Diets I and II with the following additional alternatives:

Finely ground brown bread.

Fresh white fish, steamed or grilled, or a second egg.

The eggs may be buttered.

### DINNER.

As Diet II with the following additional alternatives:

Tender lamb or mutton, veal, liver, tongue, or ham.

Grapes, soft ripe plums, pears, and peaches, avoiding skin, pips, and stringy portions.

Boiled old potatoes.

Vegetables and fruit in Diet II need not be sieved.

### TEA.

As Diets I and II with the following additional alternatives:

Finely ground brown bread.

Plum or apricot jam.

### SUPPER OR LUNCH.

As Diets I and II with the following additional alternatives:

Steamed or grilled fresh white fish, chicken, etc., as at dinner.

Vegetables and fruit as at dinner.

Interval between meals and feeds, three to four hours.

*Not allowed.*

As in Diets I and II except that the following are now allowed:

Fish with fine bones such as herrings or salt fish and salmon.

Jams, peel of marmalade, currants and other dried fruit.

It should be remembered that not all the "allowed" foods are suitable for every patient and that not all the "not allowed" foods disagree with every patient, since it depends on the individual's likes and dislikes and on what he has found to agree and disagree. Within limits he should be allowed to pick and choose for himself.

### THE "DUMPING" SYNDROME AFTER A PARTIAL GASTRECTOMY

A partial gastrectomy may cause mild or very severe symptoms in a few patients. These may come on very soon after a meal or about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 hours later. The early symptoms, i.e. fullness and abdominal discomfort are due to the rapid emptying of the small stomach with the resultant distension of the jejunum. The symptoms can be alleviated or prevented if the patients either eat their meals lying down, or lie down immediately after the meal is finished. This procedure prevents the stomach emptying so rapidly under the influence of gravity and it is thought that the jejunum is not so distended. The meals should be small and frequent so as to maintain an adequate Calorie value. Fortunately the condition in the great majority of cases improves after a time and these two measures help considerably.

The other symptoms which develop  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 hours after the meal are also a direct cause of the rapid emptying of the stomach into the jejunum. The sudden influx of the carbohydrate causes a more rapid absorption of sugar into the blood. The hyperglycæmia which results is of short duration and is followed by hypoglycæmia which causes the symptoms (for details of treatment see p. 521).

### ACUTE AND CHRONIC GASTRITIS

The disease may start with vomiting, and this may be so severe that even 1-oz. feeds of milk are rejected. In this case fluid should be given per rectum either as a 5 or 6 per cent. solution of glucose in tap water or  $\frac{1}{4}$  or  $\frac{1}{8}$  normal physiological saline or Ringer's Solution. 600 ml. (1 pint) may be given 4-hourly or in the form of a continuous drip, 3000 ml. a day (5 pints). When the gastritis is severe it may be accompanied by an acute enteritis, which renders the giving of fluid per rectum impossible. In these cases the fluid should be given intravenously or intramuscularly, either as a continuous drip of 5 per cent. glucose in  $\frac{1}{4}$  or  $\frac{1}{8}$  normal physiological saline or Ringer's Solution, or 600 ml. may be given three to four times a day (p. 607). When the acute

condition either improves sufficiently for the patient to be fed by mouth or is not severe enough to cause vomiting the early stages of the Lenhartz diets should be used. It is usually possible to increase the diets much more quickly than if an ulcer is present.

In the treatment of chronic gastritis the condition will usually improve quickly with Lenhartz Diet VIII. If there is real delay in recovery a milk drip should be given into the stomach. When the symptoms disappear the diet can, as a rule, be increased more quickly than in the treatment of gastric ulcer.

### ALCOHOLIC GASTRITIS

It is essential that all alcohol should be given up even if the patient says that alcohol is the only thing which enables him to eat a meal. If vomiting is a prominent feature the patient should be in bed and small divided meals should be given, say Lenhartz Diet 8 or 10 or a milk drip. Double the amount of vitamins recommended should be given since many of these patients have had a poor diet for some time. The diet can be increased fairly quickly as soon as the ill effects of the alcohol have passed away.

### DILATATION OF THE STOMACH

**Complete Pyloric Obstruction.** When the diagnosis has been made fluid should not be given by mouth as it cannot pass the pylorus. At least 3000 ml. of fluid should be given either per rectum or intravenously or intramuscularly or by sternal puncture (p. 607). It is essential to give large amounts of ascorbic acid as Payne<sup>1</sup> showed that in 12 out of 51 cases, peritonitis was a serious complication after any operation on the stomach, and that the wounds showed no sign of healing. Archer and Graham<sup>2</sup> suggested that this was due to a lack of ascorbic acid. They recommended that at least 3000 mg. should be given before any operation. The electrolyte content of the blood is usually upset by the vomiting and estimation of the sodium and potassium of the serum should be made and the deficiencies corrected by intravenous therapy.<sup>3</sup>

The patients are usually in the sub-scurvy state and it is important to give at least 3000 mg. of ascorbic acid. If the pyloric obstruction is severe it is necessary to give it intramuscularly.

If large doses of ascorbic acid are given intravenously some will be excreted in the urine and suggest that the patient was not in the sub-scurvy state. One of us (G. G.) has found that 300 mg. can be given

<sup>1</sup> PAYNE, R. T. (1936), *St. Bart's Hosp. Reports*, 69, 191.

<sup>2</sup> ARCHER, H. E., and GRAHAM, G. (1936), *Lancet*, II, 364.

<sup>3</sup> GRAHAM, G. (1954), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1, 225.

intravenously twice a day without causing much loss of ascorbic acid in the urine. If this amount is given for five days the risk of the wounds failing to heal is very small, but it is advisable to give a daily dose of 1000 mg. of ascorbic acid for the first three days after the operation.

**Partial Obstruction.** It is often uncertain whether the dilatation of the stomach is due to an organic obstruction or to an atony of the walls of the stomach. The food should consist of milk, egg and milk, or milk and cream, or other substances which will pass through the pylorus easily. About 200 g. of glucose should be added to the feeds during the day. Two or three ounces of the mixture should be given every one or two hours during the day. A stomach tube should be passed two or three hours after the last meal, say at 9 or 10 p.m. The contents should be withdrawn with the aid of a Senoran's bottle, and should be measured. The stomach should then be washed out with water once or twice and completely emptied. Finally 200 ml. (7 oz.) of a solution containing—

Ammonium chloride	.	.	.	3.74 g.
Sodium	"	.	.	3.68 g.
Potassium	"	.	.	1.27 g.
Water	.	.	.	1000 ml.

should be run into the stomach to prevent loss of electrolytes. If large amounts of fluid are recovered each night, some fluid should be given per rectum so as to prevent the patient from suffering from loss of fluid. A good idea of the progress of the case can be gained by the amount of fluid withdrawn each night. If the amount recovered each night shows no decrease in about two weeks it is probable that the dilatation is due to an organic stricture. The electrolyte content of the blood should be investigated and any deficiencies corrected by intravenous therapy (p. 607). If the dilatation was due to atony of the muscles these may regain their tone with the rest and the amount of fluid removed each night will get less and less. If this occurs the diet can be increased but the amount of fluid which is given should be small, say 1200 ml. (1½ pints) and a diet suitable for flatulent dyspepsia is of value (p. 562).

Ascorbic acid should be given in the same dosage as for patients with complete obstruction. It may be necessary to give it intramuscularly if much fluid is removed each night, as little of the ascorbic acid may be absorbed.

**Non-obstructive (Atonic Dilatation).** In cases of atonic dilatation the diet should be the same as for flatulent dyspepsia (p. 562).

### FUNCTIONAL DYSPEPSIAS

Under this heading one may group for convenience that large and heterogeneous class of patients in whom pain occurs after meals, but

in whom no organic change in the organs of digestion can be discovered. In some of these cases the chemistry of the stomach is at fault, in more there is a disorder of motility, but in some there may be a hyperæsthesia of the stomach, an undue sensitiveness to normal irritants.

In treating them it is essential to keep one or two principles clearly before one's mind. (1) Every effort should be made to discover the cause of the condition and to exclude the presence of other disease. (2) In many of these cases the patient's general nutrition requires to be considered rather than his mere gastric sensations. If the nervous system and blood can be raised to a proper level of health, the dyspeptic symptoms often disappear spontaneously. For this reason great harm may be done by too strict dieting. The tendency in such patients is to go on cutting off one article of food after another until a state of semi-starvation is induced, in which it is impossible for any organ in the body properly to perform its work. Instead of adopting this plan, it would be well if such patients could be induced to follow the advice of King-Chambers, and add to the diet any article of food that had once been found to agree, rather than to cut out of it anything that had ever disagreed. (3) Mental and physical rest, preferably in bed, is a great and sometimes indispensable aid to treatment. It acts both by economizing vascular and nervous energy and by enabling nutrition to be efficiently carried out upon a minimum quantity of food, and therefore with the least amount of labour on the part of the digestive organs. (4) In no class of gastric disorders does the question of idiosyncrasy play a greater part than in this. Due regard must therefore always be paid to the inclinations of individual patients in arranging the diet-sheet.

In all cases of this class, the same elementary dietetic rules must be observed as in other forms of digestive trouble. The food must be in a suitable physical form, all notoriously indigestible articles being avoided; the meals should be properly arranged, and chewing carefully performed. To these simple directions one need only add that good cooking and attractive presentation of the meals are here of the first importance.

In all cases the most easily-digested foods should be selected, these being

- (a) Meats: Mutton, venison, sweetbreads, chicken, tripe, rabbit, grouse, partridge, pheasant.
- (b) Fish: Whiting, sole, turbot.
- (c) Farinaceous foods: Crisp toast, rusks, plain biscuits, rice, tapioca, sago, arrowroot.
- (d) Vegetables: Asparagus, sea-kale, spinach, cauliflower, French beans.
- (e) Fruits: Baked apples, or the juice of oranges or grapes.

"Rich dishes," twice-cooked meats, sauces, pastry, pickles, cheese, sweets and preserves should be avoided altogether. Meat should be slightly underdone; fish should be boiled or steamed, or if it is deep fried, the batter coating should not be eaten.

The special rules of diet will depend upon the particular form of dyspepsia with which one has to deal. For practical purposes one may distinguish the following varieties:

1. Defective secretion (hypochlorhydria, achlorhydria and achylia).
2. Excessive secretion (hyperchlorhydria).
3. Defective motility ("atonic" dyspepsia).
4. Excessive sensibility (gastralgia).

The principles to be observed in prescribing rules of diet in each of these forms may now be briefly discussed.

1. *Defective Secretion.* There may be no symptoms of dyspepsia in patients with hypochlorhydria or complete achlorhydria, and if so dietetic regulations are not required. Some of these patients have pain and discomfort immediately after the meal is taken and examination of the gastric contents and with X-rays show that the stomach empties very quickly. The foods should either be pounded, minced or sieved, so as to ensure the food being finely divided when it reaches the intestines. In mild cases, thorough mastication of the meat, etc., may suffice. The rapid passage of the food may be reduced or prevented by giving fatty foods with the meals, or an oil like odourless cod-liver oil, olive or almond after the meal has started.<sup>1</sup>

#### DIRECTIONS FOR DIET IN ACHLORHYDRIA.

1. The diet should contain the usual amount of eggs, milk, cheese, fish and meat. (The latter two may have to be pounded or minced.)
2. Salt, pepper, mustard, meat extract, Marmite, gravies, meat soup, spices, pickles, condiments, are allowed in normal amounts.
3. Bread, potatoes are allowed.
4. Orange- or lemon-juice, freshly pressed, 4 oz., or other fresh fruit should be taken once or twice a day. If these disagree, 25 mg. of ascorbic acid should be given each day.
5. Fluid should not be taken at meals though one glass of wine, red or white, is allowed.
6. Hydrochloric acid dil. B.P., minims 15, may be taken in 3 oz. of water with the meals.
7. Sufficient fluid should be taken either half an hour before meals or two hours after meals to relieve thirst or any discomfort from lack of fluid. At least 2 to 3 pints of fluid should be taken daily.

2. *Excessive Secretion.* The diet which is used for the treatment of a gastric or duodenal ulcer is most suitable for this condition. It is usually sufficient to give the 8th or 10th Lenhartz diet and if the condition is

<sup>1</sup> ROBERTS, M. (1931), *Quart. Journ. Med.*, 24, 133.

not severe the patient need not be in bed. Once the symptoms have abated the convalescent diets recommended for patients with gastric ulcer should be used.

There is both experimental and clinical evidence<sup>1, 2, 3</sup> to show that fats and oils have a restraining influence on gastric secretion. Linseed oil is unpleasant to take but cod-liver oil prepared from fresh liver is more palatable than it used to be. Olive or almond oil are less effective but pleasanter to take. It is advisable to vary the kind of oil used. The usual dose is 1 oz. and it should be taken before meals.

Foods rich in carbohydrates, on the other hand, must be eaten sparingly, as free acid appears in the stomach very early after their use, and the conversion of their starch by the saliva is interfered with. For this reason the addition of malt to farinaceous foods is often of great service in cases of hyperacidity.

3. *Defective Motility* (Atonic or Flatulent Dyspepsia). In this form of dyspepsia the mechanical form of the food, as in cases of defective secretion, is of chief importance. It is essential to avoid burdening the stomach with large quantities of material, especially such as is of a bulky sort (e.g. green vegetables). The simultaneous presence in the stomach of solids and liquids is specially injurious, for in such circumstances the fluid part of the meal is retained for a long time in the organ, and tends to dilate it by its mere weight. The meals should therefore be dry, and care should be taken not to drink for at least two hours after solid food has been taken.

If flatulence<sup>4</sup> is much complained of—as it often is—green vegetables, peas and beans should be avoided altogether, on account of their “windy” tendency, and the starchy foods should be strictly limited. The necessity for reducing the starches in flatulence is a principle derived from experience for which it is difficult to find a satisfactory reason. It certainly does not reside in the “fermentable” character of starchy food, for the flatulence of atonic dyspepsia is not due to fermentation since the “wind” brought up consists mainly of air which has been swallowed and not of the gases of fermentation, i.e. carbon dioxide and methane. But there is no doubt about the practical harmfulness of the carbohydrates, explain it how one may.

Restriction of fluids is also of special importance in cases of flatulence, tea, especially, being peculiarly noxious to some of these patients. On the other hand, it is in atonic dyspepsia that the moderate use of alcoholic beverages at meals, preferably in the form of a little good

<sup>1</sup> PAVLOV, I. P. (1902). *The Work of the Digestive Glands*, p. 189.

<sup>2</sup> GILBERT, J. A. L., and DUNLOP, O. W. (1947). *Brit Med. Journal*, **2**, 330.

<sup>3</sup> HASTING-JAMES, R. T. (1946). *Lancet*, **1**, 358.

<sup>4</sup> Flatulence may be due to the swallowing of air and can be prevented by placing a cork ( $\frac{1}{2}$  inch) between the teeth for 10 minutes after meals.

wine, often gives the happiest results, for alcohol is a stimulant both to the secretory and motor functions of the debilitated stomach.

The above general principles may be summed up in the following directions:

#### DIRECTIONS FOR DIET IN ATONIC AND FLATULENT DYSPEPSIA.

1. The following articles should be avoided:  
Green vegetables (except sieved spinach and cauliflower tops); turnip and carrots; peas, beans, and lentils; fruits (except the *pulp* of baked apples or of stewed prunes); sugar and jam; soups.
2. Potatoes should be taken very sparingly.
3. Crisp toast, rusks or pulled bread should be taken in place of ordinary bread.
4. Orange- or lemon-juice, freshly pressed, or other fresh fruit should be taken once or twice a day. If this disagrees 25 mg. of ascorbic acid should be given each day.
5. *As little fluid as possible should be taken at meals.* A little hot water may be sipped between meals if flatulence is troublesome.
6. Tea should be avoided entirely if it is always followed by flatulence, and coffee or cocoa taken with plenty of milk unless they also disagree.

The above rules are applicable in all cases of atonic dyspepsia of moderate degree.

#### DISEASES OF THE INTESTINES

In the *acute diarrhœa* due to food poisoning all food should be withheld until the acute stage is over. Water should be given by mouth, 4 or 6 oz. every one to two hours, to prevent the body becoming dehydrated. Four to five pints of fluid, 2400-3000 c.c., should be given in the 24 hours. Barley water, rice water, lemon- or orange-juice, strained and well diluted, are all of value, and sugar should be added to the feeds so that at least 200 grammes (6½ oz.) are taken in the day. If the condition is very severe the patient loses so much fluid that the blood becomes concentrated. The electrolyte content of the blood will be disturbed. It is essential to estimate the amount of sodium and potassium in the blood serum so that the correct amount of potassium and sodium chloride and water can be given to correct the condition. This procedure has greatly reduced the mortality of severe gastro-enteritis in children, and of dysentery and cholera in adults. The fast can be broken either with milk and water, or milk thickened with one of the cereal preparations, arrowroot, rice, cornflour, sago, or one of the patent cereal foods like Benger's or Farex. Gravy soup, well strained, or one of the patent meat extracts are often of great value. Raw meat juice was formerly recommended, but should not be used

because of the risk of carrying the eggs of parasites. Albumen water is expensive and offers little advantage over plain water.

In *acute dysentery* or *acute ulcerative colitis*, when the number of stools is very great, the diet should be the same as that for an acute diarrhœa.

In *chronic diarrhœa*, *chronic dysentery*, and *ulcerative colitis* all foods like vegetables and fruits, which leave a residue, are forbidden. A suitable diet is shown in the following table.

#### LOW-RESIDUE DIET

##### BREAKFAST.

Tea or coffee with milk and sugar to taste.

Puffed rice, cornflakes, or patent barley, with milk and sugar.

Boiled, poached, or scrambled eggs (not fried), or boiled or steamed white fish, or smoked haddock.

White bread and butter.

Honey, golden syrup, black treacle, strained jelly marmalade, or jelly.

##### MID-MORNING.

Coffee, cocoa, milk, or any other form of milk food. Sugar to taste. Plain biscuits (not digestive, wholemeal, coconut, Vitaweat, or Ryvita).

##### DINNER.

Boiled or steamed fish (except herrings and other fish containing small bones), or rabbit, chicken, sweetbreads, brains, tripe (no onion), or minced tender lamb.

Gravy or white sauce (not containing parsley or any other vegetables).

Mashed old potatoes. (No other vegetables are allowed.)

Milk pudding, custard, blancmange, junket, plain jelly, or steamed cake mixture pudding (no fruit, jam, etc.).

Chocolate may be eaten after meals, or used as flavouring.

##### TEA.

Tea with milk and sugar to taste.

White bread and butter.

Honey, golden syrup, black treacle, jelly, cream cheese, or Marmite.

Sponge or plain madeira cake (no fruit, peel, seeds, or nuts) or plain biscuits (not digestive, wholemeal, coconut, Vitaweat, or Ryvita).

##### SUPPER.

Tea, coffee, or cocoa made with milk, or any other form of milk food. Sugar to taste.

White bread or plain biscuits and butter.

Eggs, white fish, smoked haddock, soft cheese, or pudding.

Mashed old boiled potatoes and sieved vegetables.

##### BEDTIME.

Cocoa, milk, or any other form of milk food. Sugar to taste.

Plain biscuits if desired.

Well strained and sweetened freshly pressed orange, lemon, or grapefruit juice should be taken two or three times a day.

The foods may be arranged according to taste.

Meals should never be eaten in a hurry, and at least ten minutes' rest should be taken after finishing them.

*Foods not allowed*

All foods which leave a residue after digestion. These include:

Biscuits, such as digestive, wholemeal, coconut, macaroons, Vitaweat, and Ryvita.

Brown bread, wholemeal, and other varieties.

Fish with small bones (eels, herrings, kippers, bloaters, and sardines).

Fried foods.

Fruits, stewed, tinned, or raw, except strained orange, lemon, or grape-fruit juice.

Jams, peel marmalade, and dried fruits, such as currants, sultanas, cherries, etc.

Meat, except rabbit, chicken, sweetbreads, brains, tripe (no onion), or minced tender lamb.

Nuts.

Porridge, Shredded Wheat, and all wholemeal cereals.

Salads and parsley.

Vegetables (unless well sieved), except mashed old potatoes.

If the diarrhoea is associated with *achylia*, the diet suitable for this condition should be used (p. 561). If the stools are acid in reaction the amount of starch in the diet should be reduced to a minimum; when the diarrhoea has ceased the carbohydrate should be cautiously increased. If the stools are alkaline in reaction, the smell is often very offensive. Meat should be withheld, but milk, cheese and carbohydrates are usually well tolerated. If the stools are acid, meat (minced) should be given early. When the diarrhoea ceases fish and meat should be added gradually.

**Diseases** in which there is an increase of fat in the stools are:—

- (a) Coeliac disease.
- (b) Tropical sprue.
- (c) Idiopathic steatorrhoea.
- (d) Fibrocystic disease of the pancreas.
- (e) Carcinoma of the pancreas.
- (f) Severe pancreatitis.

In all these conditions the dried stool contains more than 25 per cent. of fat, and the amount of fat absorbed decreases from the usual 90-95 per cent. to 60 per cent. or less. The sugar tolerance curve is flattened, and for the first 45 minutes and thereafter there is a variable rise. Urea is also absorbed more slowly than usual. In coeliac disease, tropical sprue and idiopathic steatorrhoea the ferments amylase trypsin and lipase are present in normal amounts in the duodenum, whereas in

fibrocystic disease of the pancreas and carcinoma of the pancreas and chronic pancreatitis they are much reduced, or absent. In spite of this difference the fat in both types of disease is well split, but is not well absorbed, so that the stools are large, pale and evil smelling. Bacteria are very numerous and fermentation of the carbohydrates takes place, making the stools very frothy. The cause of the condition differs in each case.

*Cæliac Disease.* The condition is noticed soon after the child is weaned and given starchy food and is often well marked at the age of one year. It was pointed out by Howland<sup>1</sup> that the condition improved when wheat flour was removed from the diet. Although this was confirmed by Sauer,<sup>2</sup> and Haas<sup>3</sup> little attention was paid to it until Andersen<sup>4</sup>, Sheldon<sup>5</sup> and Dicks<sup>6</sup> again drew attention to this point. In 1950, Weijers and van den Kamer<sup>7</sup> showed that when the gluten was removed from the wheat or rye flour the children improved. This has been abundantly confirmed by Frazer and his colleagues in Birmingham.<sup>8, 9</sup> The condition recurs again as soon as wheat or rye flour or gluten is added to the diet.

If the condition is of short duration the removal of all gluten-containing foods may be sufficient. But if it is of long standing and the child is ill a low fat—high protein diet should be given. Biscuits made from (Soya bean flour 6 oz., butter 4 oz., sugar 1 oz.) Sheldon<sup>10</sup> were useful, but are unnecessary now.

#### BREAKFAST.

A high protein milk drink, either Prosol, Casilan or high protein Truefood.  
Biscuits, made from gluten-free cereals or soya bean flour.

Jam, honey, golden syrup, black treacle.

Apples (stewed), banana (mashed), fresh orange, lemon or grapefruit juice.

#### MID-MORNING.

A high protein milk drink.

Biscuits of gluten-free cereals.

#### DINNER.

Fish, boiled or steamed in skim milk, tomato sauce thickened with wheat starch.

<sup>1</sup> HOWLAND, J. (1921), *Trans. Amer. Pediat. Soc.*, 33, 11.

<sup>2</sup> SAUER, L. W. (1925), *Amer. Journ. Dis. Child.*, 29, 155.

<sup>3</sup> HAAS, S. V. (1938), *Journ. Pediat.*, 13, 390.

<sup>4</sup> ANDERSEN, D. H. (1947), *Journ. Pediat.*, 30, 564.

<sup>5</sup> SHELDON, W. (1949), *Arch. Dis. Child.*, 24, 81.

<sup>6</sup> DICKS, W. K. (1950), *Coeliakie*, Utrecht. M.D. Thesis.

<sup>7</sup> WEIJERS, H. A., and VAN DEN KAMER, J. H. (1950), *Central Inst. v. Voeding-sonderzoek*, T.N.O., M.113, Utrecht.

<sup>8</sup> ANDERSON, C. M., and FRAZER, A. C., *et al.* (1952), *Lancet*, 1, 836.

<sup>9</sup> ANDERSON, C. M., and FRAZER, A. C., *et al.* (1954), *Gastroenterologia*, 81, 98.

<sup>10</sup> *Loc. cit.* This recipe is in the Sheldon paper already referred to.

Chicken, rabbit or minced meat, liver (stewed in skim milk).  
Green vegetables and mashed potato.  
Milk pudding made with skim milk, rice or gluten-free cereals, flavoured with jam or treacle.  
Fresh or stewed fruit.

**TEA.**

A high protein milk drink.

Gluten-free biscuits.

Jam, jelly, marmalade, golden syrup, black treacle, Marmite or meat extract.

Mashed banana or fresh fruit juice.

**SUPPER.**

As at tea.

**BED-TIME.**

High-protein milk drink and gluten-free biscuits.

Boiled sweets may be taken with meals and laevulose, which is often well tolerated, may be added to drinks.

*Allowed.* Arrowroot, oatmeal, potatoes, rice, sago, soya bean flour, tapioca. Cornflour made from maize is harmless, but often contains either wheat or rye flour. It should not be given until this is ascertained.

Extra amounts of the fat-soluble vitamins must be given as they are not well absorbed (9000-15,000 I.U. of A and 1800-3000 I.U. of D). The vitamin B complex is destroyed by the bacterial fermentation and extra amounts should be given. (Thiamine 3-10 mg., nicotinamide 50-100 mg. and 3-6 mg. of riboflavin.) Provided the child will take the fresh fruit juice extra ascorbic acid is unnecessary.

*Not allowed.* All foods made with wheat or rye flour, such as bread, cakes, macaroni or semolina.

Sauces which are thickened with wheat or rye flour.

Cornflour, which is mixed with wheat or rye flour.

Custard powder.

*Progress.* The appetite is poor at first but should soon improve and extra food can be given. In 3-4 weeks or less the stools should become normal and the skim milk can be replaced by full cream milk, butter and fatty foods can be given. But foods containing gluten should not be given for 6-12 months. After this period a little wheat starch can be cautiously added but a careful watch must be kept on the stools. The intolerance to gluten usually disappears in the end.

If the diagnosis is made early there is no need to restrict fats at all, as the condition rapidly improves as soon as the gluten is omitted.

*Tropical Sprue and Idiopathic Steatorrhæa.* These two are very similar since the character of the stools, presence of the ferments and sugar tolerance curve are alike. Tropical sprue occurs in some countries like India and Burma, and may be associated with rancid fat, but it does not occur where palm and coconut oil form the main fat. A

macrocytic anæmia is often present. The condition usually recovers completely once the patient has returned to Great Britain. Idiopathic steatorrhœa has no connection with tropical conditions and, although it can be alleviated by treatment, it is incurable, and dietetic restrictions must always be maintained. The treatment for both these conditions is similar and that recommended by N. H. Fairley is very satisfactory.<sup>1</sup>

#### HIGH-PROTEIN DIET 1 (Calorie value, 1005)

Carbohydrate 73 g., Protein 72 g., Fat 45 g.

- 8 a.m. Underdone beef, 3 oz.; juice of half an orange, and glucose, 2 drachms; rusks,  $\frac{3}{4}$  oz.  
 12 a.m. Soup, 4 oz. + liver extract (equivalent to  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb.); underdone beef, 3 oz.; rusks,  $\frac{3}{4}$  oz.; juice of half an orange, and glucose, 1 drachm.  
 6 p.m. The same as at 12 a.m.

#### HIGH-PROTEIN DIET 2 (Calorie value, 1756)

Carbohydrate 128.5 g., Protein 128 g., Fat 77 g.

- 8 a.m. Underdone beef, 5 oz.; rusks, 1 oz.; calves-foot jelly, 2 oz.; juice of an orange, and glucose, 2 drachms.  
 12 a.m. Soup, 4 oz. + liver extract (equivalent to  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb.); underdone beef, 5 oz.; rusks, 1 oz.; juice of an orange, and glucose, 2 drachms.  
 4 p.m. Tea, 10 oz.; milk, 2 oz.  
 7 p.m. The same as at 12 a.m., with calves-foot jelly, 2 oz.

#### HIGH-PROTEIN DIET 3 (Calorie value, 2317)

Carbohydrate 185 g., Protein 164.5 g., Fat 97 g.

- 6 a.m. Tea, 10 oz.; milk, 2 oz.  
 8 a.m. Underdone beef, 6 oz.; rusks,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz.; calves-foot jelly, 2 oz.; juice of an orange, and glucose, 2 drachms.  
 10 a.m. 1 baked apple; custard, 1 oz.  
 12 a.m. Soup, 4 oz. + liver extract (equivalent to  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb.); underdone beef, 6 oz.; calves-foot jelly, 2 oz.; rusks,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz.; juice of an orange, and glucose, 2 drachms.  
 4 p.m. Tea, 10 oz.; milk, 2 oz.; baked apple, 1 oz.; custard, 1 oz.  
 7 p.m. The same as at 12 a.m.

#### HIGH-PROTEIN DIET 4 (Calorie value, 2782)

Carbohydrate 223.5 g., Protein 179.5 g., Fat 116 g.

- 6 a.m. Tea, 10 oz.; milk, 2 oz.  
 8 a.m. Underdone beef, 7 oz.; rusks,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz.; calves-foot jelly, 2 oz.; juice of an orange, and glucose, 2 drachms.  
 10 a.m. One baked apple; custard, 2 oz.  
 12 noon. Soup, 5 oz. + liver extract (equivalent to  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb.); underdone beef, 7 oz.; calves-foot jelly, 2 oz.; rusks, 3 oz.; juice of an orange, and glucose, 2 drachms.

<sup>1</sup> MANSON-BAHR, P. (1939), *The Dysenteric Disorders*, p. 389.

- 4 p.m. Tea, 10 oz.; milk, 2 oz.; 1 baked apple; custard, 3 oz.  
 7 p.m. The same as at 12 a.m., but only  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of rusks allowed.

## HIGH-PROTEIN DIET 5

(Calorie value, 3557)

Carbohydrate 375 g., Protein 199 g., Fat 123 g.

- 6 a.m. Tea, 10 oz.; milk, 2 oz.; glucose, 2 drachms; rusks,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz.; butter, 1 drachm; one scraped ripe apple or one fully ripe Canary banana (yellow ends).  
 8 a.m. Underdone beef, 7 oz.; rusks, 3 oz.; calves-foot jelly, 2 oz.; juice of an orange, and glucose,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz.; honey, 2 drachms; butter, 1 drachm.  
 10 a.m. 1 baked apple; custard, 3 oz.  
 12 a.m. Soup, 5 oz. + liver extract (equivalent to  $\frac{5}{8}$  lb.); underdone beef, 7 oz.; calves-foot jelly, 2 oz.; rusks,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz.; juice of an orange, and glucose,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz.  
 4 p.m. Tea, 10 oz.; milk, 2 oz.; glucose, 2 drachms; rusks, 3 oz.; baked apple, 1 oz.; custard, 3 oz. (egg, boiled or poached sometimes substituted); honey, 2 drachms.  
 7 p.m. The same as at 12 a.m.

A high protein milk is of value. A liver soup was formerly of great value in the treatment of the macrocytic anæmia. It is unnecessary now that potent liver preparations or cyanocobalamine (B<sub>12</sub>) can be injected. Full doses of vitamin A and of the B complex should be given as in the treatment of coeliac disease.

A few patients improve markedly when wheat and rye flour is omitted from the diet and suggests that the gluten in bread is at fault. The bacterial infection of the intestinal contents can be greatly reduced by alternative courses of sulphonamides, and this sometimes followed by considerable subjective improvement. Greenberg and Frazer,<sup>1, 2</sup> Anderson, Frazer *et al.*<sup>3</sup>

**Fibrocystic Disease of the Pancreas.** This is a familial disease which is present at birth. It may be fatal in the first week of life, owing to intestinal obstruction, caused by masses of meconium. Steatorrhœa appears very early and the clinical condition resembles coeliac disease, though it develops much earlier. The gluten in wheat and rye plays no part in the condition. The babies also develop severe lung infections at an early stage. The sugar tolerance curve is flat and the duodenum contains little or no amylase, trypsin or lipase. The stools resemble those of children with coeliac disease, though the smell may be yet more offensive. The fat is well split in spite of the absence of the lipase. Andersen.<sup>4</sup>

A complete, well-balanced diet, in amounts sufficient to satisfy the appetite should be given, and one should not become guilty of treating

<sup>1</sup> FRAZER, A. C. (1952), *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. and Hyg.*, 46, 576.

<sup>2</sup> GREENBERG, S. M., and FRAZER, A. C. (1953), *Journ. Nutrition*, 50, 421.

<sup>3</sup> ANDERSON, C. M., and FRAZER, A. C., *et al.* (1943), *Gastroenterologia*, 81, 98.

<sup>4</sup> ANDERSEN, D. H. (1938), *Amer. Dis. Child.*, 56, 344.

the stools rather than the child (May and Lowe).<sup>1</sup> The diet is very similar to that given to children with coeliac disease, except that wheat and rye flour are allowed. The appetite is good and, since so much of the food is lost in the stools, extra amounts must be given. If the child does not gain in weight yet more food must be given although it is advisable to keep the fat on the low side since the smell of the stools is more offensive when large amounts of fat are being excreted. The giving of an active pancreatic extract is of value, but unfortunately some extracts are valueless. The potency of the extract should be tested before it is given to the child. The giving of short courses of the different sulphonamides, as in sprue and idiopathic steatorrhœa, is of value, since it decreases the bacterial fermentation. The same large doses of vitamins A, D and B should be given as for patients with coeliac disease.

*Carcinoma of the Head of the Pancreas and Chronic Pancreatitis.* In these diseases the character of the stools is similar to that of fibrocystic disease of the pancreas since the ferments are excluded from the duodenum. The dietetic treatment is, therefore, identical but the diet must be arranged for an adult.

*Mucous Colitis.* Dietetic treatment is difficult, and either a low-residue (p. 564) or a high-residue diet (p. 572) should be tried. Cullinan.<sup>2</sup>

### DIET IN CONSTIPATION

Constipation<sup>3</sup> is usually due to one of three main causes, two of which may be helped by diet. The first is *dyschezia* or failure of the defaecatory reflex due to careless habits, etc., in the past. Diet is of little avail in this state. The body must be re-educated to respond to the reflex.

The second cause is *spasticity of the colon*, usually more marked in the ascending colon than the transverse or descending colon, though spasticity may extend to them as well. A large percentage of the cases of chronic constipation are due to this cause, the estimates by American physicians ranging, according to Cowgill, from 20 to 50 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> MAY, C. D., and LOWE, C. K. (1949), *Journ. Paediatric*, **34**, 663.

<sup>2</sup> CULLINAN, E. R. (1950), *Encyclopædia of Medicine*, **3**, 569.

<sup>3</sup> Readers interested in this common and much advertised complaint are advised to read Alvarez's "Nervous Indigestion," Barclay's "The Alimentary Tract," and Abraham's (1950) *Encyclopædia of Medicine*, III, 617. From the *Lancet*, 1930, I, 597, we cull the following on the centenary of the publication of Sir Henry Holland's *Medical Notes and Reflections*. "It is certain," wrote that physician to the Royal Family, "that the natural constitution of different persons is very various as to this point, as well as the constitution of the same person at different periods of life. The cases are common of individuals in perfect health who have action of the bowels only every second or third day." Alvarez is saying the same to-day (*op. cit.*).

Alvarez, at one time, was inclined to put it still higher. In this condition of the gut, the circular muscles are firmly contracted and they reduce the colon to a hard rubber-like tube, easily felt through the abdominal wall, along which material is slow in passage.

As anything irritating to the gut in the way of coarse fibres of vegetables, bran, and seeds of fruit such as tomatoes and figs increase its spasticity such foods are contra-indicated and a *low-residue diet* should be given. Attempts to relieve this type of constipation by recourse to the so commonly recommended roughage result in pain in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen as the consequence of distension of the cæcum, and appendicitis may be suspected.

The only difficulty to be met in a low-residue diet is the supply of vitamin C. This should be regularly given in the form of well-strained orange-, lemon-, grapefruit, blackcurrant and rose-hip juices, or tomato-juice. The foods to avoid are brown or wholemeal bread, digestive and coconut biscuits or macaroons, dried fruits, wholemeal flour, fruits with edible pips and skins such as gooseberries, currants, figs, etc., green vegetables, coarse root vegetables, jams with pips and skins, nuts, oatmeal, peas and beans, shredded wheat, salad vegetables. The foods to take are plain biscuits, white bread, butter, plain cake with no fruit, cheese, cream, eggs, steamed white fish, golden syrup or black treacle, honey, jelly, juices of grapefruit, lemon, orange, or tomato, meat, milk in moderation, rusks, fairy toast, or pulled bread and sugar.

The third cause is *lack of tone in the muscles* of the large intestine; the exact opposite of the state of spasticity described above. It is possible that this type of constipation is due to over-activity of the sympathetic system—and that the spastic colon is due to over-activity of the parasympathetic nerves.

Dietetic treatment of *atonic constipation* is along the lines of giving foods which leave a large amount of residue in the intestine.

Generally speaking, all foods rich in cellulose belong to this class, e.g. oatmeal, green vegetables, wholemeal bread, and some fruits. All of these should therefore find a place in the diet. Water also acts in a large measure mechanically by increasing the fluidity of the intestinal secretion, but in part also its action may be reflex. It is best given cold the first thing in the morning. In districts in which the water contains much calcium a pure artificial aerated water may be taken instead (e.g. Salutaris). Fats and oils, too, act as mechanical lubricants, and sufferers from constipation should partake of all of them freely, especially if the motions are small and dry. Honey, treacle, and marmalade have also a slightly aperient action.

The vegetable foods have a laxative action partly because they undergo fermentation in the intestines and often cause considerable flatulence and the passage of flatus. They also cause a great increase

in the bulk of the stools which is mainly due to the water present, two to three times as much as on an ordinary diet.<sup>1</sup>

Beverages like beer, stout, and cider often have a laxative action, though they may cause colic in some patients. Red wines are thought to be astringent, but the constipation which ensues may be due to the small amount of fluid which the wine drinker takes in the day.

It was thought at one time that milk and eggs were a cause of constipation. It is difficult to be certain on this point as larger amounts of these foods are usually given when the patient is strictly confined to bed, which of itself often causes constipation. It is probable that some patients are affected either by milk or eggs, but the majority are unaffected. Tea and coffee are said to cause constipation in some patients.

The amount of fluid taken in the day should be at least 3 pints.

These principles are expressed in the following rules for patients:

#### DIRECTIONS FOR DIET IN CHRONIC ATONIC CONSTIPATION.

1. The following foods should be partaken of freely:

Porridge made from medium oatmeal; wholemeal bread, gingerbread and "ginger snaps"; green vegetables; fruit (fresh or stewed—especially stewed prunes or figs and baked apples); marmalade, honey and treacle.

Fats—e.g. bacon fat, butter, salad oil.

2. A glass of cold water should be taken on rising, and a few French plums may be eaten before going to bed.
3. A vegetable mucilage should be prescribed as it increases the bulk of the stools. Agar-agar is suitable and the usual dose prescribed is one teaspoonful or twice a day.

#### DISEASES OF THE LIVER

*Fatty Degeneration and Multilobular Cirrhosis.* The conditions under which fatty degeneration and eventually multilobular cirrhosis of the liver occur in rats have been described on p. 76. The importance of an adequate amount of protein and especially of methionine has been stressed.<sup>2</sup> In this country fatty degeneration of the liver occurs in:

(a) Some diabetic patients who nearly always have a marked hyperglycemia and hyperketonemia. The enlarged liver will decrease in size if the diabetic condition can be well stabilized and the patient takes a good diet.

(b) Some people who have taken excessive amounts of alcohol for a

<sup>1</sup> McCANCE, R. A., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1946), *Med. Res. Council Special Report, Series, No. 254*.

<sup>2</sup> TUCKER, H. F., TREADWELL, C. R., ECKSTEIN, H. C. (1940), *Journ. Biol. Chem.*, 135, 85.

long time develop fatty degeneration, and if the alcohol intake is not reduced, eventually a multilobular cirrhosis. These people have usually taken a poor diet, and a deficiency of protein may be responsible for the changes in the liver. There is usually a deficiency in one or more vitamins. If fatty degeneration is present the condition of the liver should improve and the liver decrease in size, provided the alcohol is abandoned or much reduced. Even if cirrhosis has already occurred some fatty degeneration may still be present, and should decrease with treatment. The first step in treatment when the patient is found to have a greatly enlarged liver is to persuade him to give up all alcohol. In most cases it is necessary for him to enter a home which specializes in this treatment. The diet should contain at least 100 g. protein; at least 2 pints of skimmed milk or a high protein-low fat milk p. 496; and 2 oz. cheese made from skimmed milk which will supply 49 g. of first-class protein and an adequate amount of methionine. There does not seem any point in giving the pure amino acid methionine—which is expensive—unless the patient has a poor appetite. If the patient's appetite is small and capricious 6 g. choline a day may help to reduce the fatty degeneration. The fat in the diet in the form of butter and cream should be reduced to a minimum and the fat of meat and fat fish should be avoided. It was customary to restrict the spices and condiments. This was probably due to the occurrence of cirrhosis of the liver in India where highly spiced foods are eaten by people who do not take alcohol. In the light of the new work on choline and methionine this limitation seems unnecessary.

At the outset the diet can be arranged as for the treatment of a gastritis but eggs are best avoided because of the high cholesterol content, if the patient has jaundice. The amount of carbohydrate should be, say 250 g., but can be increased later on. The diet should then consist of:

80-100 g. of protein	.	400 or	480	Calories.
50- 80 g. of fat	.	450 or	720	"
250 g. of carbohydrate	.	1000	1000	"
		<hr/>	<hr/>	
		1850	2200	

It is important to give fairly large doses of vitamins since the diet has usually been poor for a long time.

Vitamin A	.	.	.	3000 I.U.
Vitamin D	.	.	.	600 I.U.
Thiamine	.	.	.	9 mg.
Riboflavine	.	.	.	3 mg.
Nicotinamide	.	.	.	50 mg.
Ascorbic acid	.	.	.	100 mg.

The protein and carbohydrate content should be increased as soon as the appetite returns.

*Jaundice* may be due to many causes but the general principles of diet are—so far as is known—the same. The fat of the diet should be as small as possible for two reasons. Firstly, because if the bile is not entering the duodenum the fat will be poorly absorbed in the absence of the bile salts, which lower the surface tension of the intestinal contents and so aid the fat globules to pass through the epithelium. The stools are apt to be very offensive if much fat is present in the large intestine owing to bacterial decomposition (see p. 569). Secondly, it is important for the health of the liver that the fatty content of the diet should be as low as possible. The type of low fat, high carbohydrate, high protein diet which is recommended for the treatment of fatty degeneration of the liver is suitable. The cholesterol should be small in amount if the jaundice is obstructive since it is excreted in the bile. In the treatment of infective hepatitis it is customary to inject in addition 6-10 units of protamine zinc insulin once a day, partly to ensure that the high carbohydrate diet does not cause any hyperglycæmia and partly to ensure that the liver contains sufficient glycogen. The proteins which have a high content of methionine—milk and cheese—should be taken as well as lean meat, but eggs and fat fish should be avoided.

Patients with obstructive jaundice are very liable to bleed after operations. The prothrombin in this type of patient is decreased in amount but is restored to normal by the injection of 1-4 mg. of vitamin K for two or three days before operation. The condition cannot be improved by giving the green vegetables by mouth which contain vitamin K (p. 137) since it cannot be absorbed from the intestines in the absence of bile salts.

Attempts have been made<sup>1, 2</sup> to shorten the course of infective hepatitis by giving 5 g. methionine dissolved in a solution of 1.4 ml. of concentrated hydrochloric acid and 142 ml. water. An ounce of this solution containing 1 g. was given five times a day.<sup>2</sup> Seeing that the serum methionine is raised under these conditions<sup>3</sup>, it does not seem likely that extra methionine would affect the progress of the disease and this proved to be the case.

Beattie,<sup>4</sup> on the other hand, working with patients who had developed infective hepatitis during treatment with arsaphenamine, thought that he could reduce the time the patient spent in hospital by 37 per cent. by giving a very high protein diet—150 g. a day.

<sup>1</sup> WILSON, POLLOCK, and HARRIS. (1945), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **1**, 399.

<sup>2</sup> HIGGINS, O'BRIEN, PETERS, STEWART, and WITTS, *ibid.* (1945), **1**, 401.

<sup>3</sup> WALSHE, J. M. (1953), *Quart. Journ. Med.*, **22**, 483.

<sup>4</sup> BEATTIE, J. (1943-4), *Royal College of Surgeons Scientific Report*.

There are but few indications to be met in the dietetic treatment of cases of *gall-stones*. Seeing that the taking of food into the stomach stimulates the expulsion of bile, it will be well to see that the meals are rather frequent—at least five being taken in the course of the day. The amount of cholesterol ingested should be reduced as much as possible by omitting eggs, brains, sweetbreads, liver, kidneys, since these foods contain more cholesterol than others. It is believed that this procedure reduces the liability to the formation of gall-stones, but of course it cannot affect stones which have already formed. Most clinical observers are agreed that the drinking of large quantities of water is advisable, even although there is no actual experimental evidence to show that the fluidity of the bile is increased thereby.

In cases of "*biliousness*" or "*chill on the liver*"—a condition which is perhaps due to a functional disorder of the liver, the diet should be reduced to gravy soups, meat extracts, dry toast, or biscuits. This diet should be maintained for at least 24 hours, or until the condition has improved. The diet may then be increased by the addition of fruit juice, or cooked fruit, milk, steamed fish, lean meat, potatoes. If this is well borne the diet should be increased but the fat content should be kept low and all alcohol forbidden for at least three days or until the appetite returns.

#### 4. Disorders of the Circulation

The stomach is only separated from the heart by the diaphragm and any distension of the stomach will tend to embarrass the heart's action. If the latter is impaired it is very important to prevent the distension of the stomach with wind, and the diet which is suitable for a flatulent dyspepsia should be used (p. 563).

When a serious degree of cardiac dropsy is present the old fashioned treatment consisted in giving a diet containing very little fluid, 200 ml. a day. This restriction was very unpleasant and of little value. In the modern treatment a good mixed diet is given but the sodium chloride is greatly restricted from the normal 5-10 g. to 0.1-1.0 g. (p. 595).

It was thought at first that the reduction in the salt prevented the body from retaining so much fluid and that it was then excreted. McDowall *et al.*<sup>1, 2</sup> working with a strip of mammalian cardiac muscle, have shown that the anoxia which occurs in cardiac failure causes the sodium to enter the muscle cells and so reduce the force of the cardiac contraction. When the concentration of the sodium in the bath surrounding the strip of muscle is reduced, the sodium leaves the muscle and the strength of the muscle contraction improves. This is the case whether or not œdema is present.

<sup>1</sup> McDOWALL, R. J. S., and ZAYAT, A. F. (1953), *Journ. Physiol.*, 120, 13P.

<sup>2</sup> McDOWALL, R. J. S., and SOLIMAN, A. A. L. (1954), *Lancet*, I, 1166.

The value of ascorbic acid has been stressed by W. Evans.<sup>1</sup> He compared the action of 75 or 150 mg. of ascorbic acid with theobromine, ammonium chloride, digitalis, and mersalyl, on eight patients with cardiac failure associated either with normal rhythm or with auricular fibrillation. The ascorbic acid increased the urinary output in every case and was sometimes more efficient and at other times less so than the other remedies. Unfortunately the excretion of ascorbic acid was not estimated in these cases and it is impossible to say whether the patients were in the subcurvy state or not. The experience of one of us (G. G.) suggests that the ascorbic acid will only be of benefit where the previous diet has lacked ascorbic acid. It is, therefore, important to make certain that a good diet has been taken and if this is not the case extra ascorbic acid should be given.

The œdema which occurs in the wet type of beri-beri disappears as soon as sufficient thiamine is given.

Famine œdema is associated with low serum proteins and responds readily to a diet which contains plenty of first-class protein. But it is important to give a low protein, low Calorie diet to begin with since the digestion is easily upset. The increase in the diet must be done slowly.

A semi-starvation diet has been recommended in the treatment of *angina of effort*, *coronary thrombosis*, and of *hypertensive heart disease*.<sup>2</sup> This treatment lowers the basal metabolic rate and so reduces the demands of the coronary circulation. If the patient is overweight it is very important to make him lose weight as this by itself will reduce the work of the heart on exertion. The diets suggested for weight reduction (p. 529) should be used. The overweight patient will not lose protein and therefore muscle in the process. If the patient is already underweight it seems unwise to reduce the Calorie value as the patient will probably have to use his own muscles for energy purposes and so weaken them.

The dietetic treatment of *aneurism* must be mentioned in order to condemn it. In the past reliance was placed on *Tuffnell's treatment*. The fluid intake was reduced to 10 oz. and only dry articles of food were allowed.



## 5. Anæmia

The amount of iron which a healthy male and a female who has not yet menstruated or who has passed the menopause requires is 5 mg. a day. If a woman is menstruating she requires at least 7 mg. a day, and if pregnant rather more than this in the last 3 months of pregnancy. If a man or woman has an iron deficiency anæmia, more than these amounts are necessary. The foods which are rich in iron (p. 101)

<sup>1</sup> EVANS, W. (1938), *Lancet*, **I**, 306.

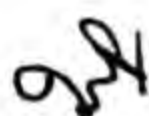
<sup>2</sup> PAUL WHITE. (1937), *Heart Diseases*, 564, 599, 364, 327.

should be eaten but the anæmia will respond more quickly if iron is given in the form of a ferrous salt, which is better absorbed than the ferric salts. It is believed that a deficiency in the hæmoglobin of 1 per cent. means a deficiency of 37 mg. of iron. In difficult cases the iron is sometimes given intravenously.

A great advance in the treatment of pernicious anæmia was made by the work of Minot and Murphy,<sup>1</sup> Castle, and many others. It was found that the anæmia disappeared when patients were fed on liver or hog's stomach.

This diet was always unpleasant, and is now unnecessary, since potent liver extracts became available. Recently vitamin B<sub>12</sub> now called cyanocobalamine (p. 141) has been isolated, and appears to be Castle's extrinsic factor. It is most efficacious and is of great value in the treatment of sub-acute combined degeneration of the spinal cord. It must be given subcutaneously.

*Folic acid.* It has been shown that this fraction of the B complex (p. 140) when given by mouth, 10 mg. twice daily, will cure the anæmia of pernicious anæmia and other hæmolytic anæmia.<sup>2</sup> It should be used with caution since sub-acute combined degeneration of the spinal cord may develop while it is being taken.



## 6. Respiratory Diseases

*Pneumonia.* The diet in pneumonia should proceed on the same principles as in any other acute fever; but as the disease is usually one of short duration, and as the digestive functions are apt to be considerably impaired, particular care should be taken not to overload the stomach. From 2 to 3 pints of milk, plain, diluted, or citrated, with half a pint of broth should be sufficient in the 24 hours. Weak tea may be allowed, and plenty of water or barley water. The use of alcohol is unnecessary unless the patient has habitually taken a great deal and is miserable without it.

*Bronchitis.* In acute bronchitis a diet of "hot slops" (hot milk, broths, gruels, tea, etc.) is best, as it tends to promote secretion from the bronchi. In chronic bronchitis the diet should be much on the lines of that in cases of cardiac disease (p. 575), but in ill-nourished patients plenty of digestible fats should be given.

*Pulmonary Tuberculosis.* The diet in this condition should follow the principles applicable in all cases of tuberculosis (p. 533), but may require modification in accordance with the digestive capacity of the individual patient.

<sup>1</sup> MINOT, G. R., and MURPHY, W. P. (1926), *Journ. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, 87, 470; CASTLE, W. B. (1929), *Amer. Journ. Med. Sci.*, 177, 748. Cit. VAUGHAN, J. (1934). *The Anæmias*, Oxford Med. Press.

<sup>2</sup> SPIES and STONE. (1947), *Lancet*, 1, 174.

*Asthma.* In some cases the asthma attack is directly related to some article of food which the patient has eaten, e.g. an egg or wheat proteins. Every effort should be made by careful enquiry and by the use of skin tests to discover whether this is the case. If so, the noxious food should either be forbidden entirely or an attempt should be made to desensitize the patient by means of subcutaneous injections of an alcoholic extract of the food.

### 7. Renal Diseases

In the dietetic treatment of *nephritis* there are two general principles which should be observed, (1) to avoid the ingestion of any article of food whose breakdown products may irritate the kidney; (2) to lighten the work of the kidney by reducing the amount of urea, uric acid, creatinine, and salt, which has to be excreted.

Amongst the substances calculated to irritate the kidney in the process of their excretion are such articles as spices, mustard, pepper, curry, ginger, radishes, and perhaps asparagus. Alcohol, especially in concentrated forms, is also strongly contra-indicated as some of it is always excreted in the urine, and of non-alcoholic beverages ginger ale should be avoided, owing to the fact that it contains either ginger or capsicum or both.

The various types of nephritis demand very different dietetic treatment.

(A) *Acute Diffuse Nephritis Associated with Hæmaturia, Little or no Œdema, but with Retention of Urea in the Blood.* (Ellis Type I.)<sup>1</sup> Formerly this type of disease was treated with milk, and some physicians gave their patients 3 pints of milk in the day for long periods. This diet contains C. 80, P. 60, F. 60, Cals. 1156, sodium chloride 0.72 g. The amount of nitrogen which has to be excreted in the urine on this diet is 8.4 g. (allowing 1 g. for excretion in the stools), provided that the patient is in nitrogenous equilibrium. But as the total Calorie value of the diet is only 1156 (or about 844 less than the 2000 Calories which are assumed to be necessary for a patient lying in bed) the patients will not be in nitrogenous equilibrium. Such a patient will use up body proteins and will excrete more than 8.4 g. of nitrogen a day. These considerations show that a diet containing 3 pints of milk by itself is not a satisfactory one.

Recently, the use of orange- and lemon-juice with the addition of sugar has been recommended as putting the least possible strain on the kidney.

This diet is very palatable when patients are unwell and is of especial value if they suffer from nausea or vomiting. Under these conditions 2

<sup>1</sup> ELLIS, A. *Lancet*, (1942), I, 34 and 72.

to 3 oz. should be given very hour. The Caloric value of this diet, if 250 g. of glucose are given, is only 1000, and as the diet does not contain any protein the patient will not be in nitrogenous equilibrium, and will have to break up valuable body proteins. A boy of 12, with acute nephritis, whose blood urea was within normal limits, lost 66.6 g. of nitrogen in the urine in the course of 12 days daily (a daily excretion of 5.5 g. of nitrogen or 11.8 g. of urea (Fig. 17). If the 1 g. which was possibly lost in the stools each day is neglected, the total loss of protein in the 12 days was 346.8 g. and the total loss of flesh (66.6 g. nitrogen  $\times$  30) 1998 g. or nearly 4 lb. In the next 7 days he was given 36 g. of protein and 200 g. of sugar and 50 g. of fat, total Calories 1486. He excreted slightly more nitrogen in the urine, 6.81 instead of 5.51 g., and the average daily loss of nitrogen was 0.41 g. (neglecting the possible loss of 1 g. of nitrogen in the stools); the total nitrogen lost in 12 days was 4.92 g. When an additional 100 g. of carbohydrate, Calories 1896, was given the average daily excretion of nitrogen in the urine was 5.67 g., and a positive balance of 0.63 g. was attained (neglecting the possible loss of 1 g. of nitrogen in the stools).<sup>1</sup> This experiment showed that a diet consisting of orange juice and sugar caused a loss of valuable protein while a diet containing 36 g. of protein with adequate amounts of fat and carbohydrates preserved the body protein, and increased the excretion of nitrogen by the kidney from 5.5 to 5.67 g. only; a negligible amount which could certainly have been prevented by giving another 25 g. of glucose or 100 Calories. If the kidneys are incapable of doing their work, as shown by an increase in the blood urea, it is clearly of importance to keep the protein of the diet as small as possible. Chittenden<sup>2</sup> enjoyed excellent health and was kept in nitrogenous equilibrium for nine months on 36.6-40 g. of protein. This diet necessitated the excretion of from 4.86 to 5.4 g. allowing for the daily excretion of 1 g. of nitrogen in the stools.

These considerations show that it is desirable in cases of acute nephritis, in which retention of urea occurs, to reduce the protein to 36-40 g. When the blood urea is very high the total protein of the diet may be reduced to 25 or 30 g. for a short while. When such a small amount of protein is being eaten, nearly all of it should consist of first-class proteins, and the Calorie value of the diet must be higher than the 2000 Calories, which is suitable for a patient lying in bed; say 2500-3000. If the Calorie value is not adequate the patients will not be in nitrogenous equilibrium and will have to break up their body proteins. If this occurs the general nutrition of the body will suffer and the kidney condition will deteriorate. When a very low protein diet is given, it is essential to estimate the total amount of nitrogen excreted in the urine

<sup>1</sup> Figures of a case of acute nephritis treated by one of us (G. G.) unpublished.

<sup>2</sup> Cit. GRAHAM LUSK. (1928), *Science of Nutrition*, 450.

in the 24 hours for two to three days, to make certain that the Calorie value of the diet is adequate to spare the body proteins. Alving<sup>1</sup> believes that patients do better with a higher protein intake, although the blood urea is too high. He thought this was caused by an improvement in the general nutrition of the patient. It may be due to the fact that it is much easier to keep a patient in nitrogenous equilibrium with a protein intake of 50-60 g. than with only 30 g., since the Calorie intake need not be so high.

The kind of protein which should be given has been much disputed. The milk proteins were regarded as of especial value and no other kind of protein was allowed. Later it was realized that egg albumin was as free from objection as milk, and later still also that fish proteins were not injurious and comparatively recently that meat proteins could be given without causing any harm to the patient. All the four kinds of proteins mentioned are digested in the same way (see p. 208) and are broken down by the pepsin and trypsin to the stage of polypeptides and then absorbed into the bloodstream in the form of amino acids. They are then either (1) deaminized and the nitrogen is converted into urea in the liver or into ammonia by the kidney, and so excreted into the urine, while the carbohydrate moiety is utilized for energy purposes, or (2) used for building up or repair of the body proteins, such as the albumin, globulin, and fibrinogen of the blood. But fish, besides proteins, also contains purine bodies, and meat contains the extractives creatinine and creatin as well as the purines. Thus the eating of fish and meat increases the intake and therefore the output by the kidney of uric acid and creatinine. They should therefore be avoided when the blood urea is raised above the normal 40 mg. per 100 c.c., but if it is normal, fish and meat proteins are not contra-indicated.

These considerations suggest that the diet should be arranged as follows:

(1) At the onset of the disease and especially if the patient is very ill with nausea and vomiting, the diet should consist of orange-juice and water and at least 250 g. of glucose. Some loss of valuable muscle protein is inevitable at this stage.

(2) As soon as the patient has lost the nausea, a low-protein diet containing 36-40 g. should be given together with a high-carbohydrate diet, sufficient to prevent the breakdown of body proteins. The protein should be in the form of milk, eggs, bread, rice, etc. The fat should be 50 g. or less.

(3) If and when the blood urea is normal the total protein of the diet may be increased to 50-60 g. (an excretion in the urine of 8-9.5 g. nitrogen), and fish and meat may be added to the diet if the patient

<sup>1</sup> ALVING, A. S. (1934), *Medical Clinics of N. America*, 17, 1195.

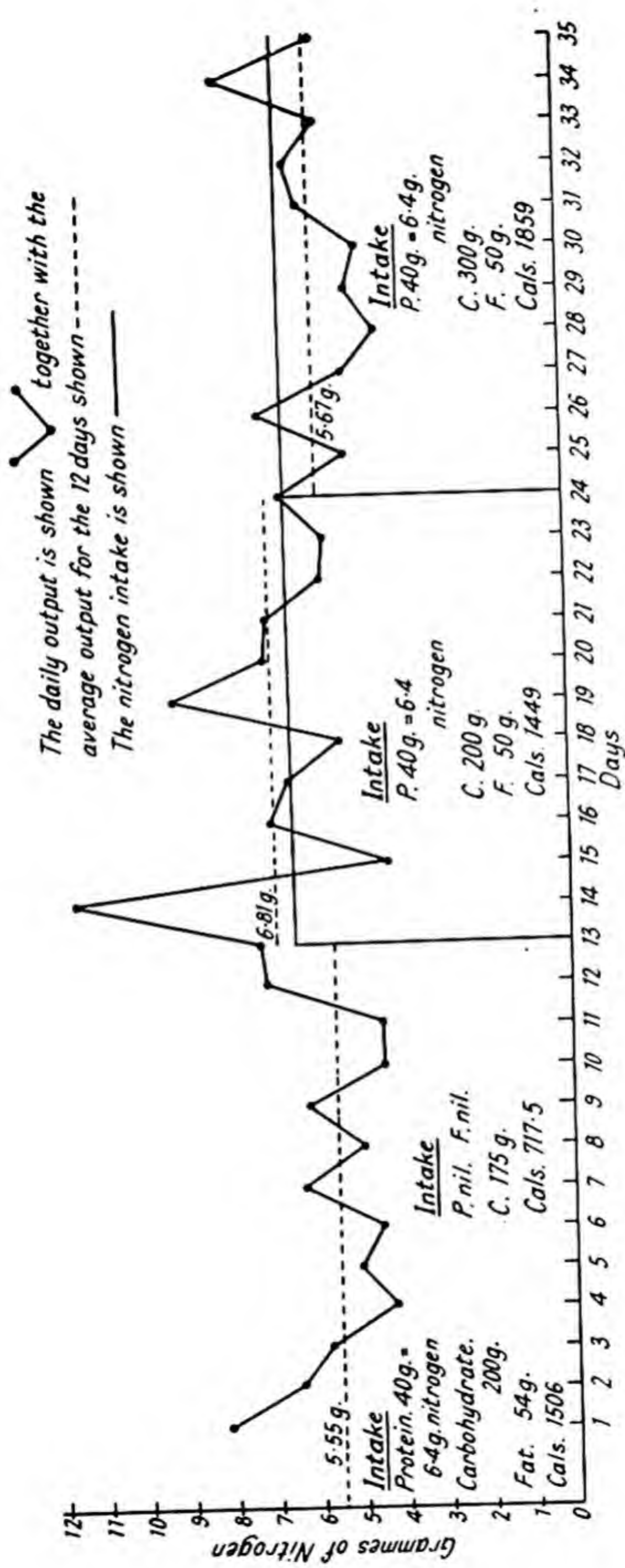


FIG. 17 SHOWS THE OUTPUT OF TOTAL NITROGEN DURING THREE 12-DAY PERIODS BY A BOY AGED 13½ WITH ACUTE NEPHRITIS.

The blood urea was within normal limits throughout the period. The urine contained blood and albumin. The nitrogen in the faeces was not estimated.

desires them, and the carbohydrate and fat increased so as to keep the patient in nitrogenous equilibrium.

(B) The treatment of *chronic diffuse nephritis which is associated with much œdema, and little or no hæmaturia*. (Ellis Type II.)<sup>1</sup>

In this condition the blood urea is usually normal but large amounts of protein, 10-15-30 g., may be lost each day; the total blood proteins are reduced from 7 to 4.5 g. or less owing to the loss of albumin and to a lesser extent of globulin. The osmotic pressure of the albumin is high, and when the amount of albumin is less than 2 g. œdema appears. A cardinal point of treatment is therefore the raising of the amount of albumin in the blood above the critical level. The best way of doing this would be to stop the loss of albumin by the kidneys, but apart from keeping the patient warm in bed and protected from chill, no remedies are available. Since the albumin of the blood must be built up from the amino acids derived from the foods, the amount of protein in the diet is important. The amount lost each day may be as high as 15-30 g. and if the intake were only 36 g. the destruction of the body proteins would be considerable. It is essential to increase the protein intake but it is difficult to say how much should be given.

Epstein<sup>2</sup> recommended that a high-protein diet should be given, of the following composition—protein 120-140 g., carbohydrate 150-300 g., fat 20-40 g., Caloric value 1293-2176. Alving<sup>3</sup> thought that patients did better with a diet consisting of 90-125 g. of protein, and a Caloric value of at least 2500. The body must be in nitrogenous equilibrium if new albumin is to be made. If this is the case the large amount of amino acids circulating in the blood should aid in the formation of new albumin. If the concentration of the albumin increases in the blood, it will drain fluid from the tissues into the blood and so disperse the œdema. A high-protein diet also aids in the excretion of water since urea is a good diuretic, and the additional urea, derived from the protein, is of value in this respect. McLean recommended that 30 g. of urea should be given by mouth for this purpose. It seems a pity not to give the extra protein which will supply the urea for diuretic purposes and at the same time provide the amino acids which may be used for the formation of albumin.

It must be remembered that a high-protein diet should not be given if the blood urea is over 40 mg. per 100 c.c. and that it should be estimated at weekly intervals whenever such a diet is given. A kidney which is capable of excreting 8 g. of nitrogen a day may fail badly if it is required to excrete 16 to 20 g. If the blood urea begins to rise, the

<sup>1</sup> *Ibid.* p. 658.

<sup>2</sup> EPSTEIN (1917), *Amer. Journ. Med. Sci., Journ. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, 1917.

<sup>3</sup> ALVING, A. S. (1934), *Medical Clinics of N. America*, 17, 1195.

protein intake should be reduced at once and the blood urea estimated more frequently.

A salt-poor diet is often of value when œdema is present, since salt may be retained (see p. 595) and water with it in an isoequivalent amount. Improvement often follows the use of a salt-poor diet, seeing that the kidney may have difficulty in excreting the sodium. It is possible that the reduction in the sodium in the muscle (p. 575) will occur and improve the strength of the cardiac muscle, and so aid in reducing the œdema. The electrolytes of the serum should be estimated as the potassium may be increased and a low potassium diet may be of value.

It is unnecessary to restrict the intake of water provided a salt-poor diet is prescribed, for water by itself is readily excreted. An intake of at least 2000 ml. (3 pints 8 oz.) should be allowed, as an intake of 1000 ml. (1 pint 9 oz.) makes life unpleasant for the patient.

**Chronic Renal Disease** (Chronic Interstitial Nephritis). This condition is often associated with (1) a raised blood pressure, and (2) a raised blood urea. It is doubtful whether the height of the blood pressure can be influenced by any article of food. The custom of spending one day each week in bed and abstaining from meat or soup on that day probably owes its beneficial effects to the rest and not to the avoidance of meat and its extractives. Alcohol should be forbidden when the blood pressure is high. If the patient is overweight he should submit to the dietetic régime suitable for obese patients (p. 522). If the blood urea is raised, a low-protein diet of high Calorie value should be given, sufficient to keep the body in nitrogenous equilibrium.

The condition is usually associated with an acidæmia, and the alkali reserve may be considerably less than the normal values of 55 to 70 volumes (25-35 m. Eq.) of carbon dioxide for 100 ml. blood. It may be associated with an alkalæmia if much vomiting has occurred, with the result that the alkali reserve may be 80-90 vols. (36-40 m. Eq.) per 100 ml. blood. If the alkali reserve is only slightly lowered, say to 50 vols., it may be raised to within normal limits by avoiding the acid-forming foods like meat and eating those forming alkalis like vegetables (p. 113). If this is unsuccessful and if the alkali reserve is less than 50 volumes of carbon dioxide per 100 ml. blood (25 m. Eq.), a definite dose of alkali, say 2-6 g. (30-90 gr.) of sodium bicarbonate, must be taken two or three times a day; the alkali reserve must be estimated at intervals to make certain that the correct dose of alkali is given. If the alkali reserve is slightly too high, say 75 vols. (33.7 m. Eq.) per 100 ml., more acid and less alkali forming foods should be eaten. If this fails or if the alkali reserve is over 75 vols. (33.7 m. Eq.) per 100 ml. acid sodium phosphate, 1-3 g. (15-45 gr.), should be given by mouth.

The plasma chloride varies between the normal limits of 580-620 mg.

## DIET FOR ACUTE NEPHRITIS

	Carbo- hydrate.	Protein.	Fat.	Calories.
<i>1st Feed:</i>				
4 oz. Milk . . . . .	5.0 g.	3.6 g.	4.4 g.	76
1 oz. Bread (Butter from ration) .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70
<i>2nd Feed:</i>				
4 oz. Orange-juice . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
1 oz. Sugar . . . . .	28.4	—	—	116
<i>3rd Feed:</i>				
4 oz. Milk . . . . .	5.0	3.6	4.4	76
1 oz. Bread (Butter from ration) .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. Jam . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
<i>4th Feed:</i>				
4 oz. Lemon-juice . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
1 oz. Sugar . . . . .	28.4	—	—	116
<i>5th Feed:</i>				
4 oz. Milk . . . . .	5.0	3.6	4.4	76
1 Egg . . . . .	—	6.8	7.0	92
1 oz. Bread (Butter from ration) .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70
<i>6th Feed:</i>				
7 oz. Grape Fruit-juice . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
1 oz. Sugar . . . . .	28.4	—	—	116
<i>7th Feed:</i>				
4 oz. Milk . . . . .	5.0	3.6	4.4	76
1 oz. Bread (Butter from ration) .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70
$\frac{3}{4}$ oz. Jam . . . . .	15.0	—	—	61
<i>8th Feed:</i>				
3 oz. Pineapple-juice . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
1 oz. Sugar . . . . .	28.4	—	—	116
DURING THE NIGHT				
<i>1st Feed:</i>				
4 oz. Milk . . . . .	5.0	3.6	4.4	76
1 oz. Bread (Butter from ration) .	15.0	2.4	0.3	70
<i>2nd Feed:</i>				
4 oz. Orange-juice . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. Sugar . . . . .	14.2	—	—	58
Butter ration for the day = 1 oz.	—	—	24.0	220
	292.8	36.8	54.5	1871

This diet contains approximately sixty 5-g. carbohydrate portions and five 7-g. protein—7-g. fat portions, with the addition of  $\frac{3}{4}$  oz. of butter. (See "Food Tables," p. 515.) Other fruit juices can be used to vary the diet.

(96-106 m. Eq.) per 100 ml. and in cases of renal failure it often varies inversely with the alkali reserve. When the latter is high, the plasma chloride is low and cannot be raised by increasing the salt intake of the diet. This is the experience of one of us (G. G.).

It is essential to estimate the amount of sodium, potassium, chlorine, and carbon dioxide in the serum in order to determine which is increased or decreased. With this information, water containing the

## DIET FOR CHRONIC NEPHRITIS WITH A RAISED BLOOD UREA

	Carbo- hydrate.	Protein.	Fat.	Calories.
<b>BREAKFAST.</b>				
$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. Dry Oatmeal as porridge . . . . .	10.3 g.	1.9 g.	1.1 g.	60
4 oz. Milk for tea and porridge . . . . .	5.0	3.6	4.4	76
2 oz. Bread . . . . .	30.0	4.8	0.6	140
1 oz. Jam or Marmalade . . . . .	20.0	—	—	82
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say				
4 oz. Apple . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
<b>MIDDAY MEAL.</b>				
2 oz. Chicken . . . . .	—	9	2.2	58
4 oz. Potatoes . . . . .	20.0	—	—	82
Green Vegetables . . . . .		Negligible		
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say				
4 oz. Orange . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
2 oz. Bread . . . . .	30.0	4.8	0.6	140
<b>TEA.</b>				
2 oz. Bread . . . . .	30.0	4.8	0.6	140
1 oz. Jam . . . . .	20.0	—	—	82
1 oz. Plain Cake . . . . .	15.0	1.8	6.8	130
2 oz. Milk . . . . .	2.5	1.8	2.2	38
<b>EVENING MEAL</b>				
1 oz. White Fish . . . . .	—	5.22	—	33
4 oz. Potatoes . . . . .	20.0	—	—	82
2 oz. Bread . . . . .	30.0	4.8	0.6	140
2 oz. Milk . . . . .	2.5	1.8	2.2	38
Two 5-g. portions of Fruit, say				
2 oz. Banana . . . . .	10.0	—	—	41
$2\frac{1}{4}$ oz. Butter in the day . . . . .	—	—	54.0	495
$1\frac{1}{2}$ oz. Sugar in the day . . . . .	42.6	—	—	174
	307.9	43.1	75.3	2970

This diet contains approximately sixty-two 5-g. carbohydrate portions, and seven 7-g. protein—7-g. fat portions, with the equivalent of 1 oz. of butter. The diet contains little first-class protein but it can be increased without adding to the total protein if the chicken or fish is increased and potatoes and fruit substituted for some of the bread which contains a good deal of vegetable protein. Thus if the amount of bread in the above diet is reduced from 8 oz. to 4 oz. the protein is reduced from 19.2 to 9.6 g. which would allow another 2 oz. of chicken. The reduction in the carbohydrate intake of 60 g. is made up by giving another 6 oz. of potatoes or  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. dry rice and 10 oz. milk as a pudding or six 5-g. portions of fruit, say, the juice of 3 oranges. (See p. 515.)

desirable amounts of the electrolytes in isotonic solution, with or without glucose 5 per cent., should be given slowly intravenously. It may be necessary to give a daily infusion, but its exact composition will vary

with the changes which occur in the serum electrolytes. The potassium in the serum is often increased in renal failure from 16 mg. (4 m. Eq.) per 100 ml. to 20 mg. or more (5 m. Eq.), and a low potassium diet should be used.

The amount of fluid given to these patients should be considerably increased above the usual amount of two pints a day. A careful watch must be kept for œdema of the back and legs. The kidney is often only able to secrete a urine of low specific gravity and the more fluid it has to secrete the greater the chance that it will be able to excrete the urea and other substances which tend to be retained. The daily intake should be increased to three or four pints in the day. This extra fluid will not be retained in the circulating blood but will be rapidly excreted in the urine, so long as the myocardium is healthy.<sup>1</sup> If the latter begins to fail as shown by the appearance of œdema of the legs the cardiac condition should be treated with the appropriate measures and the fluid intake should not be reduced except as a last resort, as it is very important to maintain the action of the kidneys.

If a high-protein diet is required for the treatment of *nephrosis* (Ellis Type II)<sup>2</sup> the protein ration should be increased to 85 or 110 g. and the fat to 94 or 114 g. (twelve or sixteen protein-fat portions) (see "Food Tables," pp. 515-18), and the carbohydrate should be increased by 50 g. (ten 5-g. portions) so as to maintain the patient in nitrogenous equilibrium.

The use of alcohol is contra-indicated in all types of nephritis.

A new dietetic treatment has been introduced by Bull, Joeques, and Lowe<sup>3</sup> for patients with the acute renal failure which occurs after the transfusion of an incompatible blood or a septic abortion or bilateral renal calculi. In this type of case the kidney ceases to excrete any urine and there is in consequence an increase in the urea and electrolytes in the blood and body fluids. It has been found that the loss of fluid from the lungs and skin is about 600-1000 ml. a day and the fluid intake should not exceed 1000 ml. for an adult, i.e. about 154 ml. per kg. The volume should be reduced proportionately to the weight of the individual. The diet should not contain any protein since the blood urea rises rapidly owing to the break-down of the muscle proteins.

The diet suggested consists of:—

Glucose	.	.	.	400 g.
Peanut Oil	.	.	.	100 ml.
Acacia	.	.	.	q.s.
Vitamin A	.	.	.	3000 I.U.
Vitamin D	.	.	.	600 I.U.

<sup>1</sup> PRIESTLEY, J. G. (1931), *Journ. Physiol.*, 55, 305.

<sup>2</sup> *Loc. cit.*, p. 658.

<sup>3</sup> BULL, G. M., JOEKES, A. M., and LOWE, K. G. (1949), *Lancet*, 2, 229. (1950), *Clinical Science*, 9, 379.

Thiamine	.	.	3 mg.
Riboflavine	.	.	1 mg.
Nicotinamide	.	.	50 mg.
Ascorbic acid	.	.	50 mg.
Water	.	.	to 1000 ml.
Calorie Value	.	.	2570

This mixture has an unpleasant taste and is best given as a continuous gastric drip at the rate of 42 ml. per hour. If the patient vomits, the fluid is collected, strained through lint and added to the food container. This high Calorie diet reduces the amount of protein which has to be broken up to the small amount which is necessary for the "wear and tear" of the body,<sup>1</sup> the blood urea increases very slowly, about 50 mg. per 100 ml. a day. The amount of salts or electrolytes in the body are sufficient, seeing that none are lost, and the 1000 ml. of water suffices for the loss of vapour by the lungs and skin.

The patients feel comfortable on this régime and, unless the condition had become very serious before treatment was started, often recover. As soon as urine begins to be excreted, the electrolytes in the urine should be estimated and the appropriate amounts together with volume of water should be added to the food container to ensure that the right balance is maintained. When the blood urea is once more within normal limits and over 1000 ml. of urine are excreted, the gastric drip is terminated. A diet such as the one suitable for a patient convalescing from acute nephritis with sufficient glucose and fat to raise the Calorie value to 2500 calories should be given.

The glucose-peanut oil diet can also be given to patients in uræmia from other causes. Since in these cases either an acidæmia or alkalæmia is present and the electrolytes are often abnormal, the serum electrolytes must be estimated (see p. 607), and a diet low in sodium or potassium instituted (see pp. 595 and 598).

### 8. Diseases of the Nervous System

Dietetic measures are of comparatively little value in the treatment of nervous diseases. In most cases the food must be adapted to the condition of the patient's other organs.

**Epilepsy.** This condition has in the past been treated with various dietetic restrictions such as abstinence from meat, purines, and alcohol; the substitution of sodium bromide for sodium chloride was also advocated. Experience has shown that none of these régimes has any real effect, but that a ketogenic diet in which the carbohydrate ration is very small in amount and the fat ration very large is of more value.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> RUBNER. (1908), *Arch. F. Hygiene*, 66, 45.

<sup>2</sup> PETERMAN. (1924), *Amer. Journ. Dis. Children*, 27, 28. (1927), *Journ. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, 88, 1868.

The ketogenic diet is no longer used for this purpose as it has been replaced by several new drugs. It was also of use in the treatment of urinary infection since the  $\beta$  oxybutyric acid killed some types of bacteria at pH 5.2.<sup>1</sup> But again the introduction first of mandelic acid and then of sulphonamides has rendered the use of this unpleasant diet unnecessary. The details will be found in the 10th Edition (p. 667).

Certain neurological conditions which may either be a severe neuritis or a sub-acute combined degeneration of the cord may occur when the patient has a pernicious anæmia or a hæmolytic anæmia, though it may occur in patients who are not anæmic. The condition is greatly improved by intramuscular injections of a potent liver extract or of cyanocobalamine (B<sub>12</sub>). Folic acid, one of the fractions of the vitamin B complex (p. 140) which cures the anæmia, has no effect on the neurological conditions which may develop while the folic acid is being given.<sup>2</sup>

*Chorea* is a complication of Rheumatic Fever which usually occurs in children. Special care must be taken in feeding children when the movements are very violent. A fluid diet of this type used for the treatment of an acute fever should be given though the calorie value need not be so high since the temperature is usually normal.

In the treatment of *headaches*—especially of the periodic migrainous or bilious variety—diet is sometimes of great help. During the attack the patients usually eat and drink very little and should be allowed to have anything they may fancy. The evidence that migraine is caused by certain foods is not convincing, as the offending food is very difficult to determine either by the history or skin tests. If any food is known to be followed by headache it should not be eaten.

Various types of diet are sometimes useful; a strict purine-free diet (p. 536) with the avoidance of the methyl purines in tea, coffee; a considerable reduction in the amount of meat eaten; a strict vegetarian diet; the avoidance of all "fancy" diets. A full Calorie diet should be given between the attacks so as to ensure good health.

### 9. Diseases of the Skin

There are four ways in which diet may conceivably influence the skin;<sup>3</sup> (1) By affecting general nutrition; (2) reflexly from the alimentary canal; (3) by giving rise to the absorption into the blood of irritating or decomposition products or by producing allergy; (4) by the elimination through the skin of certain constituents of the food.

It must be admitted, however, that when we come to use dietetic methods in the actual treatment of cutaneous disorders, we find

<sup>1</sup> FULLER, A. T., and COLEBROOK, L. (1933), *Lancet*, 2, 735.

<sup>2</sup> SPIES and STONE. (1947), *Lancet*, 1, 174.

<sup>3</sup> WALTER SMITH. (1898), *Brit. Journ. of Dermat.*, 7, 328.

ourselves greatly hampered both by our ignorance of the precise part played by diet in any given case, and by the always unknown factor of personal idiosyncrasy. So much is this the case that it may be said without fear of contradiction that there are but few diseases of the skin in which treatment by diet is of much value, and that the potentialities of this line of attack are much less promising than patients generally believe.

In the great majority of cases of skin disease, therefore, either no special rules of diet are required, or they must be drawn up with reference to the patient's general condition without regard to the state of the skin. There are a few cutaneous diseases, however, in which diet may be of some direct help, and these may be briefly considered.

**Urticaria.** This is the clearest instance of a skin disease being affected by diet. The urticarial wheal develops some hours after eating either a common article of food like shellfish, fish, eggs, pork or bacon, milk, cheese, pickles, strawberries, and other fruits, or to some uncommon food to which the patient is sensitive. Sometimes it only develops when the food is not quite fresh. The treatment consists in avoiding the special article of food. This is easy if the food is an uncommon one, but difficult to achieve in the case of a common article like an egg. In the latter case an attempt should be made to desensitize the patient by subcutaneous injections of an alcoholic precipitate of the offending substance.

**Eczema.** Some cases are caused, or made worse, by some articles of food like rhubarb, tomatoes, sour fruits, pungent articles like ginger, over-ripe cheese, and high game. Children may be sensitive to milk or eggs. Alcohol usually aggravates the condition either because of the impurities which give the flavour to the wine or spirit, or by dilating the skin capillaries. In some cases a strict milk diet may be helpful if it is known that the patient is not sensitive to it. The diet should always be plain and simple, so that any injurious article of food can be easily detected. A low-salt diet does not appear to be of any value. If a patient is fond of rich food and is inclined to be stout, a general reduction of food and drink is often beneficial.

**Acne Vulgaris and Seborrhœa.** These conditions are apparently made worse by excess of carbohydrate food, and especially of chocolates. It has been found that the constituent in chocolate which aggravates the acne is cocoa butter.

**Lupus vulgaris.** This condition has been treated with Finsen light for many years and it has long been thought that the improvement which occurs is due to the calciferol which is formed by the ultra-violet rays in skin. Treatment with big doses, 150,000 I.U. of calciferol by mouth, will often cure the condition.

In *psoriasis* various "systems" of diet occasionally meet with success.

Bulkley<sup>1</sup> recommends absolute vegetarianism, forbidding even milk and eggs, and says he has seen the worst eruptions disappear under such a plan, whilst *per contra* the quite opposite regimen of meat and hot water only,<sup>2</sup> or an exclusively milk diet, has proved successful in the hands of others. In the majority of cases, diet has probably little or no influence.

In *rosacea* the diet should be arranged to meet any form of dyspepsia which may be present (pp. 546 *et seq.*), but alcohol, tea, coffee, spices, and anything which causes flushing of the face must be rigidly excluded.

In *pruritus*, especially of the anus or vulva, all highly-seasoned salted, or preserved foods should be avoided, besides alcohol and coffee. Should diabetes be present, the dietetic indications are, of course, the same as for that disease (pp. 506 *et seq.*).

In concluding this section, one cannot do better than quote the wise words of an eminent dermatologist:<sup>3</sup> "After all, it is in comparatively few cases of skin disease that the diet is really of any particular importance. . . . Put not your faith in printed dietaries, or indeed in any general formularies. Above all, remember that the patient has larger and better opportunities of observation than the doctor, and, if he is a person of ordinary intelligence and self-control, he should be trusted. The doctor, who attempts to dictate as an oracle in the matter of diet, is like Lord Foppington's bootmaker, who insisted that he knew better than his client whether or not the shoe pinched."

### 10. Allergy

Foods are disliked for various reasons. It may be that they are badly cooked or cooked in some way which is different from the usual way on which the patient has been brought up at home. It may be that the actual taste is disliked or it may be pure prejudice, either as a result of upbringing by someone who disliked the food and instilled the distaste, or an instinctive dislike like that of a lady who had never eaten a tomato—although she would pick one for other people—because she knew she would not like it. On the other hand there are people who refuse good, well cooked foods because they know, by bitter experience, that they will be ill. Such people used to be called "Fads," but it is now recognized that they often have reason on their side. Thus some people refuse eggs because they know that vomiting, diarrhoea, urticaria or asthma will follow. The amount of egg white in the glaze of a bun or that which is necessary to make the bread crumbs stick to fried

<sup>1</sup> *Journ. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, (1908), February 22.

<sup>2</sup> PARKES. (1874), *Lancet*, I, 722; and MALCOLM MORRIS. (1906), *Practitioner*, 76, 575.

<sup>3</sup> MALCOLM MORRIS, *op. cit.*, 76, 584.

fish has caused vomiting, while the filtering of coffee through eggshells caused a bad attack of asthma in an egg-sensitive boy. Some people are sensitive to one kind of food, whether it be beef, mutton, pork, chicken or one kind of game, rabbit, horse-meat or one kind of fish. Raw eggs are much disliked by some people with gastric disease, as they cause discomfort, and at least one patient who had had a severe hæmatemesis has discharged himself from hospital because the physician insisted on giving him raw eggs in milk, which he could not "abide." Fruits will similarly affect a few people; thus strawberries may cause an urticaria. Some again are upset by wheat proteins and not by rye or barley or *vice versa*. It is now known that it is the gluten of wheat or rye which causes coeliac disease in children. Some people again are upset by either Indian or China tea or by both. In some cases the food does not disagree if it is absolutely fresh, but if it has begun to go "off" symptoms will develop in one person whereas the rest of the party are quite unaffected. Thus a "sleepy" pear will cause severe diarrhœa and vomiting within the hour in one person and fish or meat which is slightly tainted may similarly affect one person only. People who are "upset" in this way are said to be "allergic" to the particular food.

The task of discovering the particular causative factor for the vomiting, diarrhœa, asthma, urticaria, and other skin diseases may be exceedingly difficult. If the incident follows very soon after the eating of a particular food like an egg on many occasions, the attention of the mother will be drawn to it, but as vomiting may have also occurred after a piece of cake made with eggs, the egg sensitivity may not be recognized for some time. A careful history will often give a pointer to a particular. Fortunately many "sensitive" people will give a "skin reaction" when an alcoholic extract is applied to a lightly scratched surface, and this, if well marked, will clinch the diagnosis. Unfortunately, the skin may give a mild reaction to many substances. However it is important to recognize that if a patient refuses to eat a certain food he should not necessarily be regarded as a "faddist." If a particular food can be identified, the patient should refrain from eating it. It is possible in some cases to desensitize the person against the food.

## CHAPTER XXIII

### SOME DIETETIC "CURES" AND "SYSTEMS"

In the earlier part of this book reference has been made to the so-called milk, whey, koumiss, grape and orange "cures." In the present chapter we propose to deal briefly with some of the more elaborate "systems" of diet which are sometimes useful in the treatment of disease. That such systems are occasionally of great therapeutic value no one can deny, but they must be used discreetly, bearing in mind the dangers and fallacies inherent in all attempts to treat disease on a "system," regardless of the peculiarities of the individual case, and remembering that no such system can ever be a panacea, but is at best of restricted, and often only of temporary, value. The reckless and uncritical advocacy of the faddist can only serve to bring such systems into disrepute.

#### VEGETARIAN AND LACTO-VEGETARIAN DIET

In a previous chapter (pp. 390-2) the question of vegetarianism was discussed in detail, and the conclusion arrived at that it is not a form of diet which is to be unreservedly commended for healthy persons. People who live on a pure vegetarian diet without eggs or dairy foods keep well for a long time but may later develop weakness of the limbs with severe spinal pains.<sup>1</sup> If eggs, milk, and cheese are eaten together with a vegetarian diet all the necessary amino acids are eaten and the general health appears unaffected. None the less, as a mode of treatment in certain cases of disease, such a regimen is deserving of the careful consideration of the medical profession, and all the more that hitherto it has been mainly exploited by the large body of "amateur" practitioners.

There are certain well-recognized peculiarities and properties of a meat-free diet which justify the expectation that it will prove of use in some morbid states. In the first place, such a diet is comparatively free from the purine-bodies, the share of which in the production of gout has already been discussed (pp. 536-9), besides containing almost always less total protein than a mixed diet. In the second place, a diet from which meat is excluded, and which contains a large proportion

<sup>1</sup> WOKES, F. (1952), *Proc. Nutrition Soc.*, 6, 108.

of milk, tends greatly to prevent the stools being evil smelling. Now, there is some reason to believe that certain obscure conditions of general ill-health may be produced and maintained when the stools are really offensive and the urine contains indican. In the third place, such a diet is peculiarly rich in inorganic material if milk, eggs, and cheese are included, and although the part played by these in metabolism is at present but ill-understood, there is yet reason to believe that, by altering the "balance" of the salts in the body, nutrition may sometimes be influenced for good. It also reduces the intake of acid-forming substances and tends to raise the alkali reserve. In the last place, a diet which is of mainly vegetable composition leaves a large residue in the bowel, and may counteract a tendency to constipation of the atonic type with all its attendant evils; moreover it increases the intake of vitamin C.

Much careful observation and clinical experiment will certainly be required before we are able clearly to discern exactly in what cases a diet of this sort is likely to be of benefit, but meantime, the following list of diseases in which there is at least presumptive evidence that a vegetarian or lacto-vegetarian regimen exercises a beneficial influence may be tentatively put forward.<sup>1</sup>

- (1) Corpulence complicated by atonic constipation in middle life.
- (2) Alcoholism.
- (3) Some forms of functional dyspepsia and intestinal affections of nervous origin.
- (4) Idiopathic neuralgias and those having a gouty basis.
- (5) Headaches and other disorders dependent on atonic constipation in neurasthenic, hysterical, and epileptic patients.
- (6) Many cases of nervous insomnia.

It is almost always wise to make the change from an ordinary diet gradually, and in many cases it is inadvisable to continue the vegetarian plan for longer than six weeks at a time unless the patient has been greatly benefited.

#### FRUIT AND RAW VEGETABLE CURES

We have referred elsewhere (p. 382) to the so-called "Grape Cure," but from time to time diets have been introduced into which raw fruit and vegetables enter largely if not exclusively. Lahmann advocated such a diet many years ago, and it has been re-introduced in Germany.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See L. KUTTNER. (1902), *Berliner Klinik*, January; ALBU. (1902), *Die Vegetarische Diät* (Leipzig: Georg Thieme), 130.

<sup>2</sup> E. MÜLLER. (1930), *Med. Klinik*, No. 5. See also VON NOORDEN. (1928), "Über Obstkuren und über Rohkost," *Therap. d. Gegenw.*, 69, 289. It is sometimes called the Sauerbruch-Hermannsdorfer-Gerson Diet after its chief advocates. (See CHALMERS WATSON. (1930), *The Med. Press*, September 10, 207).

Its chief feature is the large use of fresh fruit and raw vegetables with little meat and no common salt, the place of which is taken by a vegetable salt. Fresh milk, eggs, and whole-meal bread are allowed in moderation. Lahmann also advised the use of vegetable fats in cooking.

Such a diet is, of course, of low protein and Calorie value and from the character of its mineral constituents is "alkalizing." It is to a large extent also "salt free" (see p. 112), and has a laxative tendency.

These diets may be expected to be of use in obesity and atonic constipation and to have some diuretic action, and may be advised in the same diseases and disorders as a lacto-vegetarian regimen.

A diet consisting of the juice of eight to twelve oranges is sometimes recommended. This contains 40-60 g. of sugar and an excess of vitamin C, but no protein.

In most of these diets the patients will not be in nitrogenous equilibrium and will break up their muscle proteins.

### THE HAY DIET

In this system it is recommended that protein and carbohydrate should not be eaten at the same meal. It is claimed that an almost unbelievable gain in health results from this procedure. The diet has also been used as a cure for obesity. It has already been pointed out (p. 86) that when protein is eaten without any carbohydrate, the amino acids are broken down immediately so that the carbohydrate fraction of the amino acid can be used for energy purposes. The  $\text{NH}_2$  group is converted into urea and excreted in the urine. Thus none of the amino acids are available for conversion into protein for use in the body. The same observation has now been made with the intravenous injections of protein digests for patients who cannot take any food by mouth (p. 608). It was found necessary to give glucose at the same time in order to prevent the excretion of the whole of the nitrogen into the urine within a short time. In the light of this experimental evidence, the principle of eating all the animal protein at one meal without any carbohydrate foods would mean that, all the amino acids derived from the first-class protein would be lost and that the amino acids derived from the second-class proteins present in wheat, etc., would have to be used for building up into the body proteins. Thus the experimenters would be much worse off than the vegetarians who do at least use the first-class protein present in milk, cheese and eggs. For these reasons we do not propose to give any details of the diets used as we unhesitatingly consider that they are dangerous.

### EXCLUSIVE PROTEIN DIET

That man can live on a predominatingly protein diet is undoubtedly

true. The Eskimos have used this diet for ages and Stefánsson<sup>1</sup> in his Arctic expeditions showed that it was possible to live on animal and fish foods alone. He felt well and was able to undergo great hardships. The amount of fat eaten with the protein is considerable.

He and Andersen lived on this diet for a year in the United States and under close supervision in the Bellevue Hospital for three months, and were passed fit in every respect.

Such a diet was practised years ago under the name of the *Salisbury cure* and great claims were made for it; e.g. that it cured or alleviated chronic articular gout, some skin diseases such as psoriasis and certain intractable forms of dyspepsia, especially when associated with atonic dilatation of the stomach. The system has fallen into desuetude and is omitted in this book. The details of the treatment will be found in earlier editions.

### ZOMOTHERAPY

By the term "zomotherapy" (*Zωμος*, meat-juice) is meant treatment by raw meat or raw meat-juice. This was used in the treatment of patients with anæmia, neurasthenia, debility, convalescence, and latent, incipient, or active tuberculosis. There is no evidence that raw meat-juice aids these conditions and its use is fraught with some risk since the eggs of parasites may be ingested. Details of the diet will be found in the 7th Edition.

### LOW-SALT DIET

The average amount of common salt in an ordinary diet is about 10 g. per day, and although it is impossible, even were it desirable, to construct a genuinely "salt-free" diet, yet by a judicious selection of foods it is easy to reduce the daily intake to about 2 g. Such a limitation of salt is of use in the treatment of the dropsy, of cardiac failure and of chronic parenchymatous nephritis. It was shown by Widal—to whom much of the credit of introducing the salt-free diet is due—that a chronically inflamed kidney is incapable of excreting common salt freely. It is now known that the sodium is excreted with difficulty while the chlorine ion is readily excreted with potassium (Blum). The sodium is therefore retained in the body, and, in order that the normal composition of the body fluids may be maintained, water is kept back also, with the result that dropsy sets in. When the amount of salt in the food is reduced the percentage of it in the blood gradually falls, the salt which has been stored up in the dropsical effusion is drawn upon to make good the deficiency in the blood, and with its withdrawal the dropsy subsides. Such, put briefly, is

<sup>1</sup> STEFÁNSSON, V. (1936), *Adventures in Diet*.

the rationale of the plan, and of its usefulness in cases of chronic parenchymatous nephritis, and also, though less conspicuously, in cardiac dropsy, and in the ascites of cirrhosis there can be no doubt (see p. 583). A salt-poor diet is easily arranged, and the following diets containing 0.1 g. and 0.5 g. of sodium chloride are useful.<sup>1</sup>

### FOOD LIST FOR LOW-SALT DIETS

<i>Foods Allowed in Strictly Low-Salt Diets.</i>	<i>Additional Foods Allowed in Less Strict Diets.</i>	<i>Foods Forbidden in Diets with Salt Restriction.</i>
Barley sugar	Chicken, boiled	Bacon
Boiled sweets	Chocolate	Baked beans
Bread, low-salt, with or without casein	Fresh fish, steamed or boiled without salt	Beef, corned
Butter, low-salt	Eggs	Beef, salt
Cornflour	Meat, stewed without salt. No gravy	Bloater
Cream	Milk, cow's	Bread, baker's
Cream cheese, low-salt	Vegetables, raw or boiled without salt or soda (beetroot, carrots, celery, radish, spinach, watercress)	Butter, salted
Flour		Gravy
Fruit, fresh, stewed, or tinned		Haddock, smoked
Fondant		Ham
Gelatine		Kippers
Golden syrup		Meat extracts
Green salads		Olives, bottled
Honey		Salmon, tinned
Jam		Sardines
Jelly		Sausages
Macaroni		Shellfish
Marmalade		
Meat dishes, low-salt		
Milk, low-salt		
Mustard		
Nuts (not salted)		
Olive oil		
Pepper		
Rice		
Sugar		
Tapioca		
Tomatoes		
Vegetables, raw or boiled without salt or soda (not beetroot, carrots, celery, radish, spinach, watercress)		
Vegetables fried in salt- free butter or olive oil		
Vinegar (distilled white wine)		

<sup>1</sup> ABRAHAM, M., and WIDDOWSON, E. M. (1951), *Modern Dietary Treatment*, Baillière Tindal & Cox, pp. 203-5.

## LOW-SALT DIETS

### DIET I

*(Strict, containing about 0.1 g. sodium chloride)*

#### BREAKFAST.

Grapefruit or other fruit, fresh or stewed, with sugar if desired.  
Low-salt casein bread, toasted if desired.  
Low-salt butter.  
Jam or marmalade.  
Tea or coffee with low-salt milk and sugar as desired.

#### DINNER.

Low-salt meat or savoury dish.  
Vegetables, boiled without added salt or soda. Low-salt butter may be added as desired.  
Stewed fruit.  
Cream or custard-powder custard or blancmange made with low-salt milk.  
Low-salt casein bread.

#### TEA.

Low-salt casein bread.  
Low-salt butter.  
Jam, marmalade, honey, tomato, or mustard and cress.  
Tea with low-salt milk and sugar as desired.

#### SUPPER.

Low-salt casein bread.  
Low-salt butter.  
Low-salt cream cheese.  
Raw tomato with pepper.  
Tea or coffee with low-salt milk and sugar as desired.

### DIET II

*(Less strict, containing about 0.5 g. sodium chloride)*

#### BREAKFAST.

Grapefruit with sugar.  
Low-salt bread.  
Low-salt butter.  
Boiled egg.  
Jam or marmalade.  
Tea or coffee with cow's milk and sugar as desired.

#### LUNCH.

Beef stewed without salt. Curry powder may be added if desired.  
Potatoes and boiled rice.  
Vegetables boiled without added salt or soda.  
Baked apple.  
Cream if desired.

#### TEA.

Low-salt bread.  
Low-salt butter.  
Jam, marmalade, honey, tomato, or mustard and cress.  
Shortbread.  
Tea with cow's milk and sugar as desired.

## DINNER.

Cold boiled chicken or steamed fish.

Green salad or celery, radishes, or tomato with pepper.

Low-salt bread.

Low-salt butter.

Tea, coffee, or cocoa with cow's milk and sugar as desired.

The salt contents of some common articles of food are—

	mg. per oz.		mg. per oz.
Ham . . . . .	595	Lentils . . . . .	10
Bacon . . . . .	314	Flour . . . . .	.8
Cheese . . . . .	260	Nuts . . . . .	1-8
Bread (baker's) . . . . .	146	Greens . . . . .	2
Fresh butter . . . . .	63	Rice . . . . .	2
Sea-fish . . . . .	34-54	Potatoes . . . . .	1
Egg . . . . .	47	Fruit . . . . .	1
Meat . . . . .	20	Freshwater fish . . . . .	Low
Milk . . . . .	12	Peas . . . . .	Trace
Oatmeal . . . . .	10		

## THE POTASSIUM-POOR DIET

The preparation of a potent extract from the cortex of the adrenal gland which is now used in the treatment of patients with Addison's disease has greatly increased our knowledge of this disease. It is now known that the adrenal cortex controls the sodium of the body and that in Addison's disease the blood sodium is lower than the normal of 325 to 350 mg. per 100 ml., while the potassium in the blood is increased above the normal of 18 mg. per 100 ml. because the blood volume is concentrated.<sup>1</sup> Further work has shown that there is a direct antagonism between the potassium and sodium of the blood.<sup>2</sup> Thus in a case of Addison's disease an increase in the potassium intake from 1 to 4 g. lowered the blood sodium from 325 to 310 mg. per 100 ml. in five days and increased the output of sodium in the urine from 220 mg. to 440 mg. a day.

These observations suggested that a diet containing little potassium might be of value in the treatment of Addison's disease. It has been found that with this diet the expensive cortical extract necessary for health can be either greatly reduced in amount or given up altogether. Unfortunately the diet is apt to be unattractive and lacking in variety. The tables prepared by Miss M. Abrahams, late Dietitian at St. Bartholomew's Hospital, and her colleagues, are very useful in arranging a diet and should enable patients to get the variety which they need. In a recent case (under the care of G. G.) the blood potassium decreased

<sup>1</sup> LOEB, R. F. (1932), *Science*, 76, 420.

<sup>2</sup> WILDER, R. M., SNELL, A. M., KEHLER, E. J., RYNEARSON, E. H., ADAMS, M., and KENDAL, E. C. (1936), *Proc. Mayo Clinic*, 11, 273.

from 24 to 18 mg. when 10 g. of sodium chloride was given; kept at 18 mg. with the use of salt and 10 ml. of cortical extract, and decreased from 18 mg. to 13.5 mg. when a diet containing 1.5 g. only of potassium was given, although no cortical extract was given.

The potassium-poor high-sodium diets must be used with caution when desoxycorticosterone, one of the active principles extracted from the adrenal cortex, is used either by injection or by implantation of a pellet. The general condition usually improves greatly, the blood chemistry becomes normal but some œdema of the legs may develop and the blood pressure may rise. In some of these cases death may occur very suddenly at the very moment that the prognosis seems especially good. It is believed that the low potassium in the blood plays some part and it seems wiser not to prescribe a low potassium diet when desoxycorticosterone is being given, but to restrict its use to the mild cases which do not need any injections of cortical extracts.<sup>1, 2</sup>

In some patients with uræmia the serum potassium may be very high 39.1 mg. (10 m. Eq.) per 100 ml. The immediate treatment is to give 50 g. of glucose intravenously followed by 50 units of insulin. This reduces the serum potassium temporarily since it is laid down with the glycogen in the muscles. A low potassium diet should be given to such a patient seeing that the potassium is excreted with difficulty.<sup>3, 4</sup>

#### THE POTASSIUM-POOR DIET CONTAINING 1.50 G. OF POTASSIUM

	Potassium (g.)
BREAKFAST.	
2 oz. white bread . . . . .	0.10
1 egg . . . . .	0.07
1½ oz. raw apple, or other fruit, amount in list (or containing 0.05 g. K) . . . . .	0.05
2 oz. milk in tea or coffee . . . . .	0.10
DINNER.	
3 oz. roast beef, mutton, port, steamed or fried cod, or steamed plaice, or any other meat or fish in the list . . . . .	0.30
2 oz. carrots, or marrow, or other vegetables, amount in list (or containing 0.05 g. K) . . . . .	0.05
2½ oz. potatoes cut very small and cooked in eight times their volume of water . . . . .	0.10
6 oz. stewed apples, or 5 oz. stewed pears, or other fruit, twice amount in list (or containing 0.10 g. K) . . . . .	0.10
¾ oz. cheddar cheese and ⅝ oz. sweet or water biscuit or ¾ oz. cereal and 1 oz. cream as pudding (cereal cooked in water with sugar, and cream added before serving) . . . . .	0.05

<sup>1</sup> KUHLMAN, D., RAGAN, C., FERREBEE, J. W., ATCHLEY, D. W., and LOEB, R. F. (1939), *Science*, **90**, 496.

<sup>2</sup> TOOKE, T. B., POWER, M. H., and KEPLER, E. J. (1940), *Proc. Mayo Clinic*, **365**.

<sup>3</sup> BYWATERS, E. G. L. (1944), *Journ. Amer. Med. Ass.*, **124**, 1103.

<sup>4</sup> BULL, G. M. (1951-52), *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **45**, 849.

## TEA.

2 oz. white bread	0.10
1½ oz. jam or 1 oz. lettuce or ½ oz. tomatoes	0.05
2 oz. milk in tea	0.10

## SUPPER.

1½ oz. white bread, or ½ oz. biscuits, not digestive	0.07
1½ oz. salmon or haddock or chicken, or 3 oz. stewed beef or boiled mutton, or three times meat or fish in list	0.15
2 oz. orange, or other fruit, twice amount in list (or containing 0.10 g. K)	0.10
2½ oz. butter all day	0.01
	<hr/>
	1.50
	<hr/>

Sugar or glucose, butter, suet, and salt may be taken as desired.

Ordinary gravy and the water from cooked fruit or vegetables must not be used.

Special gravy may be made with cornflour and water, coloured with browning and salted.

## PORTIONS OF CARBOHYDRATE FOODS CONTAINING 50 MG. OF POTASSIUM

*(A) Vegetables. Cooked in the usual way*

	oz.		oz.
Asparagus, boiled	2	Onions, boiled	2½
Broad beans, boiled	¾	Onions, spring, raw	¾
Beans, French or runner	1½	Parsnips, boiled	¾
Beetroot, boiled	½	Peas, fresh, boiled	1
Brussels sprouts	¾	Peas, dried, boiled	¾
Cabbage, boiled	1½	Potatoes, old, boiled	½
Carrots, boiled	2	Potatoes, new, boiled	½
Cauliflower, boiled	1	Radishes	¾
Celery, boiled	1½	Spinach, cooked without water	½
Celery, raw	½	Spring greens, boiled	1½
Cucumber, raw	1½	Swedes, boiled	1½
Leeks, boiled	½	Tomatoes	½
Lentils, raw weight	¼	Turnips	1
Lettuce	¾	Watercress, raw	½
Marrow	2		

*Vegetables. Cut very finely and cooked in eight times their volume of water*

	oz.		oz.
Asparagus	2½	Parsnips	1½
Cabbage	1½	Peas, fresh or tinned	1½
Carrots	2½	Potatoes	1½
Cauliflower	1½	String beans	1½
Onions	2½	Turnips	2½

(B) *Fruits*

	oz.		oz.
Apricots, dried, stewed . . . . .	$\frac{1}{5}$	Lemon-juice . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$
Apricots, raw, fresh . . . . .	$\frac{2}{3}$	Melon, cantaloupe or yellow . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$
Apples, raw, eating . . . . .	$1\frac{3}{4}$	Orange or orange-juice . . . . .	1
Bananas . . . . .	$\frac{1}{3}$	Peach, fresh, raw . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
Blackberries, stewed . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Peach, dried, stewed . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Blackcurrants, stewed . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Pears, raw, eating . . . . .	$1\frac{3}{4}$
Cherries, raw . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Pears, stewed . . . . .	$2\frac{1}{2}$
Cherries, stewed . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Pineapple, raw . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
Currants, dried . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$	Plums, raw dessert, or stewed . . . . .	1
Damsons, raw . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Prunes . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Damsons, stewed . . . . .	1	Raisins, dried . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$
Green figs . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Raspberries, raw . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
Gooseberries, ripe, raw . . . . .	1	Raspberries, stewed . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$
Gooseberries, unripe, stewed . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Red currants, raw or stewed . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
Grapes . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Rhubarb, stewed . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Grapefruit . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Strawberries, raw . . . . .	1
Greengages, raw . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$	Sultanas, dried . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$
Greengages, stewed . . . . .	1	Tomatoes, raw . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$

(C) *Nuts*

	oz.		oz.
Almonds . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$	Cobnuts . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Barcelonas . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$	Desiccated coco-nut . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$
Brazils . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$	Peanuts . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$
Chestnuts . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$	Walnuts . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$

The above fruits are weighed with their stones if they are usually served with them.

(D) *Starchy Foods*

	oz.		oz.
Biscuits, sweet or water . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$	Flour . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$
Biscuits, digestive . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$	Oatmeal, or Quaker Oats, raw weight . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Biscuits, cream crackers . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$	Rice, raw weight . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$
Bread, brown . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$	Rusks . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
Bread, white . . . . .	1	Tapioca . . . . .	10
Cornflour . . . . .	$2\frac{3}{4}$		

(E) *Sugar Rich Foods*

	oz.		oz.
Chocolate, plain or milk . . . . .	$\frac{1}{3}$	Honey . . . . .	$3\frac{1}{4}$
Cocoa . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$	Jam . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{4}$
Golden Syrup . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Marmalade . . . . .	4

## PORTIONS OF PROTEIN AND FAT CONTAINING 50 MG. POTASSIUM

	OZ.		OZ.
Bacon, raw weight . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Lobster, boiled . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
Beef, corned . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Milk, fresh, whole . . . . .	1
Beef, roast or salt, boiled . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$	Milk, evaporated, sweetened or	
Beef, stewed . . . . .	1	unsweetened . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
Butter . . . . .	12	Milk, skimmed, sweetened,	
Cheese, cream . . . . .	4	condensed . . . . .	$\frac{1}{3}$
Cheese, cheddar . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Mutton, boiled . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
Cheese, soft . . . . .	2	Mutton, roast . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Chicken, boiled or roast . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$	Mutton neck, stewed . . . . .	1
Cod, steamed or fried . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$	Plaice, steamed . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Crab, boiled . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$	Pork, roast, or salt, boiled . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Cream, 50 per cent . . . . .	$1\frac{3}{4}$	Rabbit . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Egg (one contains about 70		Salmon, fresh steamed or tinned . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
mg. of Potassium) . . . . .		Sardines, tinned . . . . .	$\frac{1}{3}$
Haddock, fresh or dried,		Sole, steamed . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$
steamed . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$	Sweetbreads . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Hake . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$	Tripe, stewed . . . . .	16
Ham, lean, boiled . . . . .	$1\frac{1}{3}$	Veal, roast . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$
Kidney, stewed ox . . . . .	1		

## FOODS CONTAINING NEGLIGIBLE AMOUNTS OF, OR NO, POTASSIUM

Sugar, glucose, lactose  
Butter, suet

Tapioca  
Tripe

## SOUR MILK TREATMENT

Curdled milk has long entered into the diet of many countries in the Near East (e.g. Roumania, Bulgaria, the Caucasus), and owing to the vivacious advocacy of Metchnikoff it had an enormous vogue in this country in the early years of this century. Soured milk therapy is still practised and has some advantages in treatment of dyspepsia.

The theory of its use is that the milk-souring bacilli antagonize the growth of the putrefactive bacilli and so, if established in the large intestine, prevent the production of histamine, tyramine, indol, and phenol in that part of the body. Metchnikoff assumed without sufficient evidence that the products of putrefaction shortened life.<sup>1</sup>

The "fermentation" of milks<sup>2</sup> in their country of origin is used to preserve the milk, and to make a pleasant and "stimulating" comestible. Yeasts and lactic acid bacilli are used for this purpose. Of the bacilli the strains utilized are the *Bacillus bulgaricus* (Metchnikoff), which occurs naturally in the cow, the *Bacillus acidophilus* found in

<sup>1</sup> METCHNIKOFF. (1907). *The Prolongation of Life*, p. 16.

<sup>2</sup> For the account of these products the authors are indebted to Dr. Cuthbert Dukes.

man, and the *Bacillus bifidus* found in the alimentary tract of the infant. The differences are very slight but the *Bacillus bulgaricus* is more resistant and more active. Cultures of lactic-acid-producing microbes (usually cocci) are utilized in the souring of milk for the production of margarine.

Soured milk is intended (1) to change the flora of the large intestine, and (2) to produce an easily digested milk. Of the two reasons the latter is the more important, for the curds are smaller and softer than those normally produced in digestion of whole milk. It is not possible to change the flora of the intestine merely by feeding cultures by the mouth, but excess of lactose in the diet will encourage the growth of lactic-acid-producing microbes in the large intestine, even in the absence of soured milk or artificial cultures taken via the mouth.

Commercial preparations of the lactic acid bacilli are put up in the form of tablets and ampoules. Both contain negligible quantities of living bacilli if taken by the mouth but can be used as "starters" in building up a culture.

**The Preparation of Acidophilus Milk.** (i) *From whole milk.* Boil the milk and cool it to about 42° C. Inoculate the milk with 1 tablet of a good commercial culture and keep it either in a thermostat at 42° C. or in a thermos flask at this temperature for about 24 hours. Subculture it daily by adding two to three tablespoonfuls to freshly boiled milk when its temperature has fallen to about 24° C. It takes about a week before a sufficiently good culture is obtained and the milk curdles in about 12 hours. The curdled milk can either be eaten at once or placed in a refrigerator until it is wanted.

(ii) *From unsweetened condensed milk.* Pour the milk into a scalded pan. Wash out the tin with an equal quantity of boiling water and add it to the condensed milk. Allow it to cool as above and add the commercial culture.

**Commercial Preparations of Soured Milk.** *Kéfir.* An effervescent soured milk prepared in its country of origin from cow's, goat's, or sheep's milk. Kéfir "grains" are used. These are masses of yeasts, moulds, and lactic-acid-producing bacilli. These are inoculated into the milk, which is kept in large leather bottles which are kept warm and shaken periodically. This soured milk contains 1 per cent. lactic acid and 2 per cent. alcohol.

It is prepared by adding Kéfir grains and commercial strains of lactic acid organisms to pasteurized milk kept at room temperature for 12 hours. The resulting fluid is strained and fermented for 24 hours at 12-15° C. The higher the temperature, the more alcohol and the lower the temperature, the more lactic acid is formed.

*Koumiss* is fermented mare's milk.

*Yoghurt.* The countries of origin are the Balkan States. It is made

from cow's or sheep's milk, boiled to half its volume, cooled and inoculated with some of the previous preparation as a starter. It consists of a semi-solid creamy substance containing 2-3 per cent. lactic acid and bacilli of the *Bulgaricus* strain plus streptococci. There is no alcohol in this preparation.

Sundry dairy firms will carry out the production of Kéfir and Yoghourt in this country.

The value of soured milk as a therapeutic agent is somewhat doubtful, but it has been recommended in cases of chronic ill-health without obvious cause, in neurasthenia and intestinal affections—e.g. colitis, fermentative diarrhoea, constipation—besides gout, arterio-sclerosis, and some skin diseases. As regards many of these affections it may be pointed out that there is little or no proof that they are really the result of intestinal putrefaction, and any improvement which soured milk may produce in them is probably to be ascribed to the fact that it provides an easily-digested form of food and so improves the patient's nutrition. In cases of hyperchlorhydria and chronic gastritis soured milk is contra-indicated.

## CHAPTER XXIV

### ARTIFICIAL FEEDING AND ARTIFICIAL AND PREDIGESTED FOODS

In this chapter we shall consider the methods of administering food otherwise than by the mouth, and describe some patent and artificial foods not yet dealt with.

#### Artificial Feeding

##### RECTAL FEEDING AND NUTRIENT ENEMATA

Rectal feeding has constituted a therapeutic resource ever since medical science existed,<sup>1</sup> but it is only within recent times that the value of this method of administering nourishment has been subjected to careful scientific scrutiny.

*Water* is readily absorbed in the form of tap water. It is best given by a continuous rectal drip at the rate of 125 ml. per hour and 3000 ml. can be given in the 24 hours if nothing is taken by mouth. Normal physiological saline is not well tolerated as the salt irritates the mucous membrane so that it soon ceases to be absorbed. In any case if 3000 ml. were given in the day it would entail the giving of 27 grammes of sodium chloride which would be too much for the kidney to excrete. If one-fifth normal physiological solutions are used they are much better retained and the total salt administered in 3000 ml. is 5.4 grammes, which the kidney should be able to excrete easily. One-third normal physiological solutions are also used and 3000 ml. would mean the excretion of 9 grammes of sodium chloride.

*Carbohydrates.* Glucose is the only sugar which can be absorbed from the large intestine. If used in a high concentration it irritates the mucous membrane and is rejected after a while. Mutch and Ryffel<sup>2</sup> found that a 6 per cent. solution was well tolerated and this can be given either in tap water or one-fifth normal physiological saline as a rectal drip at the maximum rate of 125 ml. per hour, or 3000 ml. per 24 hours if nothing else is taken by mouth or intravenously. In this way 180 g. of glucose can be administered and supply 738 Calories.

<sup>1</sup> For a sketch of the history of the subject, see the valuable monograph by A. P. GROS, *Traitement de certaines Maladies de l'Estomac par la Cure de Repos absolu*, etc., Paris, 1898.

<sup>2</sup> MUTCH, N., and RYFFEL, J. H. (1913), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **1**, 111.

While the evidence is in favour of the absorption of glucose alone of the sugars from the solutions given per rectum (Tallerman),<sup>1</sup> it is not clear whether the sugar is absorbed from the large intestine or whether it must pass into the small intestine before absorption can take place. Davidson and Garry<sup>2</sup> have shown that practically no absorption of glucose or of any mono-saccharide takes place from the large intestine and cæcum of the rat. When, however, sugar was injected into the small intestine of the rat under the same conditions of anaesthesia, etc., a large proportion of the sugar was absorbed.

*Proteins.* The absorptive power of the large intestine for proteins has been investigated many times and it was thought by earlier workers that substances like peptone, eggs with salt, raw beef-juice were well absorbed, but later observations tend to throw much doubt upon the trustworthiness of the earlier experiments upon the absorption of proteins from nutrient enemata. Rendle Short and Bywaters, for instance, who reinvestigated the whole subject, came to these conclusions:

1. The older observations on the absorption of foodstuffs from rectal enemata, based on the analysis of rectal "wash-outs," are unreliable.

2. The daily output of nitrogen in the urine of patients given nutrient enemata of milk or eggs peptonized for twenty or thirty minutes demonstrates that almost no nitrogenous matter is absorbed.

3. Modern physiological opinion holds that proteins are absorbed principally as amino acids. The failure of the rectum to absorb ordinary nutrient enemata is largely due to the fact that peptones are given instead of amino acids.

4. Chemically prepared amino acids, or milk pancreatized for 24 hours so that amino acids are separated, allows of a much better absorption of nitrogenous foodstuffs from the rectum, as demonstrated in five cases by the high nitrogen output in the urine.

5. The low output of ammonia nitrogen shows that this high output was not due to the absorption of putrefactive bodies. The rectal washings were not offensive.

#### PEPTONIZED MILK

Boil  $1\frac{1}{2}$  pints of milk in flask, cool to  $37^{\circ}$  C.  
 Add  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of an active pancreatic preparation.  
 $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of glucose.  
 Keep at  $37^{\circ}$  C. for 24 hours.  
 Give 5-7 oz. every four hours.

*Fats.* These have been given as a suspension, but there is little evidence that they are absorbed and they should not be given.

<sup>1</sup> TALLERMAN, (1920), *Quart. Journ. Med.*, **13**, 350

<sup>2</sup> DAVIDSON, J. N., and GARRY, K. G. (1930), *Journ. Physiol.*, **96**, 172.

*Nutrient suppositories* cannot be recommended. They usually contain peptone, but at most not more than 8 g. in each, which means, even assuming complete absorption, an energy value of less than 35 Calories. The value of such suppositories is negligible.

### INTRAVENOUS FEEDING

*Water, Sugar and Salt.* These are best administered by the intravenous route if a patient cannot take anything by mouth. For a short infusion the vein may be pierced by a fine needle, but for a long infusion, one to three days, it is better to cut down on a small vein and tie in a cannula. The antecubital veins should not be used except in emergency as it is very uncomfortable for the patient to keep his arm quite still. A cannula should never be tied into this vein as this will destroy it completely.

If after an abdominal operation a patient can take nothing by mouth he should be given a five per cent. glucose solution either in normal physiological saline, followed by 2000 ml. of one fifth normal physiological saline containing five per cent. of glucose. If nothing is given by mouth, this amount of fluid is well tolerated and will contain 150 g. of glucose supplying 615 Calories and 12.6 g. of sodium chloride.<sup>1</sup>

This procedure is quite safe for 24 hours, but after this time it is essential to estimate the potassium and sodium in the serum.<sup>2</sup> If the operation has been a severe one, potassium leaves the cells in the muscles and may be retained in the serum if the kidneys are unable, for some reason, to excrete it. The sodium replaces the potassium in the cells and the serum sodium decreases. Hence potassium should never be given until more than 24 hours after the operation and an estimation of the serum potassium has been made. After this period the serum potassium may be low and the cells of the body suffer from lack of potassium and from an excess of sodium. This condition rights itself as soon as the patient can take meat extract, and soups, and other foods which are rich in potassium.

If the patient is unable to eat, it is necessary to give fluid intravenously; and the amount of sodium and potassium which is desirable being determined, after these electrolytes have been estimated in the serum.<sup>2</sup> The following solutions are of value:<sup>3</sup>

(a) If the serum potassium is reduced to 10-12 mg. per 100 ml.:

Sodium chloride	.	.	.	6.44 g.
Potassium chloride	.	.	.	2.44 g.
Glucose	.	.	.	50 g.
Water	.	.	.	to 1000 ml.

<sup>1</sup> JONES, F., AVERY, and MORGAN, C., NAUNTON. (1938), *St. Barts. Rep.*, 71, 83.

<sup>2</sup> GRAHAM, G. (1954), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1, 225.

<sup>3</sup> COOKE, R. E., and CROWLEY, L. G. (1952), *New Engl. Journ. Med.*, 246, 637.

(b) If the patient is very ill and the serum potassium less than 10 m.g per 100 ml.:

Potassium chloride	.	.	.	2.24 g.
Glucose	.	.	.	50 g.
Water	.	.	.	to 1000 ml.

The decision to give potassium intravenously should only be taken after the serum potassium has been estimated and an electrocardiogram taken.

Since the Calorie value is low, 615 Calories, the patients will lose about 5 to 7 g. of nitrogen a day which must come from the breakdown of muscle protein, and will also lose a good deal of fat (see p. 579).

If it is given for more than two days at least 25 mg. of ascorbic acid should be added to the perfusion fluid. If the patient had not been saturated with ascorbic acid before the operation, at least 1000 mg. a day should be given for three days in order to ensure the healing of the wounds.

*Amino acids.* Protein hydrolysates in intravenous alimentation.

Various attempts have been made to give patients sufficient food to maintain life at a high level by intravenous methods. These have been successful in the hands of research workers and may be available for ordinary use and a short account of the work is given here. The proteins have been digested either by hydrolysis with acids, alkalis, or with enzymes. The disadvantage of the acid hydrolysis of casein is that tryptophane is destroyed in the preparation and it together with methionine and cystine must be added. The alkaline hydrolysate preserves the tryptophane but destroys the methionine and cystine and a mixture of acid and alkaline hydrolysates has been advocated, but its trial has not yet been reported. Digestion with enzymes like trypsin or papain or with a mixture (Beattie) has been used. These have the advantage that the amino acids are not destroyed but the digestion takes several days instead of a few hours and sterility of the mixture is difficult to maintain.

*Technique.* A solution of protein hydrolysate plus 10 per cent. glucose is made up in cold freshly distilled water and passed through a Berkefeld filter autoclaved for 30 minutes at 5 lb. pressure (Elman, 1940). This is injected into a vein at a rate 300-500 ml. an hour. As much as 3000 ml. in the 24 hours containing 75 g. of protein hydrolysate and 300 g. of glucose (Calories 1537) have been given and this has been maintained for 23 days by Elman.<sup>1</sup> It was possible in this way to maintain the body in nitrogen equilibrium and in weight which is remarkable as the Calorie value is so low. Taylor<sup>2</sup> (1943) gave much

<sup>1</sup> ELMAN and LISCHER. (1943), *Ann. Surgery*, **118**, 225.

<sup>2</sup> TAYLOR *et al.* (1943), *Ann. Surgery*, **118**, 215.

larger doses—200 g. of the protein hydrolysate together with 300 g. of protein by mouth to a patient who was very ill with extensive burns. The treatment was continued for over 40 days and the patient, who at the outset seemed likely to die, recovered. The protein hydrolysates have been used for patients with malignant disease of the œsophagus, stomach and ulcerative colitis and it was usually possible to maintain nitrogen equilibrium. If, however, the output of nitrogen was very large, as occurs after operations, it was not possible to attain nitrogen equilibrium. (Elman, 1939, 1940).

Good results have been obtained in patients with severe burns.<sup>1</sup> The results with dysentery and severe ulcerative colitis are good, but those with liver diseases are conflicting. Alstruter *et al.*,<sup>1</sup> 1942, thought they were contra-indicated, but Landesman and Weinstein,<sup>2</sup> Stewart and Rourke,<sup>3</sup> found that the patients used the digests and often with benefit. They are also of value in promoting the regeneration of plasma proteins after hæmorrhage and it was found that cystine was of greater value than methionine, which is not present in horse serum albumen.<sup>4</sup>

Examination of patients who have died during the course of treatment showed that the hydrolysate was not responsible for any of the deaths.

Although these observations suggested that great benefit might be obtained by this treatment, it now seems unlikely. The injection may be followed by flushing, burning of the skin, headaches, backache, rigors, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, phlebitis and thromboses. This is due to impurities, and it was hoped that it would be possible to prepare solutions which were reliable. Unfortunately this has so far not occurred, and since the complications are unpredictable, the use of these solutions has decreased.

A mixture of the ten essential amino acids, *d*-threonine, *d*-valine, *l*-leucine, *d*-isoleucine, *d*-lysine, *l*-tryptophane, *l*-phenyl alanine, *l*-methionine, *l*-histidine, *d*-arginine, has been used and is said to give good results. The cost of the pure amino acids is so great that the method is impracticable at present.<sup>5</sup>

One of the difficulties of intravenous therapy is to give sufficient Calories to maintain an ill patient in nitrogenous equilibrium with the amino acids and glucose. Attempts are being made to add an emulsified fat to the infusion, and if and when this succeeds and either the protein hydrolysates become reliable or the amino acids are prepared cheaply, the method should be valuable.

<sup>1</sup> ALTSTRUTER and TAYLOR. (1943), *Arch. Inst. Med.*, **70**, 749.

<sup>2</sup> LANDESMAN and WEINSTEIN. (1942), *Surg. Gyn. Obst.*, **75**, 300.

<sup>3</sup> STEWART and ROURKE. (1942), *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med.*, **51**, 369.

<sup>4</sup> BRAND and KASSELL. (1941), *J. Bio. Chem.*, **141**, 999.

<sup>5</sup> MAGEE, H. E. (1948), *Brit. Med. Journ.*, **1**, 4.

They should be useful in the treatment of patients with malnutrition, but the evidence at present suggests that plasma given intravenously to begin with is more useful for the very ill patients.

### SUBCUTANEOUS FEEDING

The injection of nutritive substances under the skin was first introduced by Menzel and Perco in the year 1869,<sup>1</sup> and is now very little used as this has been replaced by the intravenous route. Sugar and salt may be given subcutaneously in the same quantities as for intravenous infusions if these cannot be performed and the patient cannot take anything by mouth or by the rectum.

### Artificial Foods

The objects of artificial foods may be said to be either (1) to present a maximum of nourishment in a minimum of bulk, or (2) to enable one easily to enrich the diet in respect of certain of its chemical constituents.

In regard to the former of these objects, it is well to realize at the outset what *degree of concentration of food* is chemically possible. Let us take first the case of the *proteins*. Lean meat may be regarded as the type of a natural protein food. It contains about one-fifth of its weight of that constituent, the rest being chiefly made up of water. If all the water is driven off from 5 oz. of meat, there will be left behind about an ounce of what is practically pure protein. Now, this may be regarded as the maximum degree of concentration of which protein food is capable. In other words, an ounce of any artificial protein food can never represent more than 5 oz. of lean meat. A more concentrated protein food than that is a chemical impossibility. We can realize from this the absurdity of such preparations as beef-lozenges. Even if these did consist of pure protein (which they never do), it would require 1 oz. of them at least to be equal in food value to 5 oz. of fresh meat, so that the amount of nutriment contained in one lozenge must be very small indeed.

Starch is the most concentrated carbohydrate food and 1 g. supplies 4.15 Calories. It cannot be eaten raw, and in the cooking takes up water and ceases to be a very concentrated food. Biscuits are an exception since the water is evaporated after it has been cooked. Cane sugar and lactose supply 3.95 Calories per 1 g., and are slightly better than glucose at 3.75 Calories. Lactose and glucose are less sweet than cane sugar and are therefore better tolerated if large amounts are added to a diet.

<sup>1</sup> For the history of subcutaneous feeding, see BAUER, "The Dietary of the Sick" (Von Ziemssen's *Handbook of General Therapeutics*, I, 271), and LEUBE in LEYDEN'S *Handbuch der Ernährungstherapie*, I, 513.

Malt extracts come next since they always contain some water.

The same is true of *fats*. No artificial preparation can have a higher food value than pure olive oil, which contains no water, or dripping, from which all the water has been driven off by heat. Ordinary butter contains four-fifths of its weight of pure fat.

There are, then, distinct limits beyond which the concentration of foods cannot be carried, and the idea that "food tabloids" might be prepared, one or two of which would be the equivalent of an ordinary meal, is seen to be an impossible dream. At the most, all that the maker of concentrated artificial foods can hope to do is to drive off from the natural food the excess of water which it contains, and even then most, if not all, of the original water must be returned to the food before it can be eaten.

It may be questioned, too, *whether the use of highly concentrated foods is physiologically defensible*. The digestive organs are not constructed for the disposal of foods in an extremely compact form. Such forms of nutriment make large demands upon the secretory powers of the stomach, and are apt to be irritating to the digestive organs, in addition to which the total absence in them of "ballast" renders them unable to supply an adequate stimulus to the peristaltic movements of the intestines. As exclusive foods, therefore, such preparations are eminently unsuitable.

The second object of these substances, that of enabling us to *enrich the diet in certain ingredients*, is more legitimate. Here the artificial food is used simply as an accessory to supplement the lack of protein, carbohydrate, or fat in other articles of diet. Their small bulk is here a decided advantage, for it enables them to be added to fluid foods without appreciably increasing the total amount of material to be swallowed and in many cases of illness this is a desirable thing to do.

We may conclude, then, that concentrated foods are only to be used as accessories, and that they have no legitimate place in the dietary of health.

In cases of illness, however, they have a definite but limited sphere of action. In these circumstances, when appetite is in abeyance, it is often a question not so much of getting the patient to take much nourishment as of persuading him to eat at all. It is then that the artificial foods serve a useful purpose, for they can be varied to suit the caprices of the patient, and though the amount of actual nourishment which they yield may be small, they may yet kindle a desire for ordinary foods. The value of any artificial preparation in such a case is not to be estimated by the amount of energy it yields, so much as by its æsthetic qualities and the degree to which it pleases the patient. Suggestion, in fact, plays a large part in bringing about whatever good results artificial foods are capable of producing.

## ARTIFICIAL PROTEIN FOODS

1. **Undigested**—(a) *Milk Products*. Most of these infant feeds (p. 495) contain protein fat and carbohydrate, but the half-cream foods have less fat. Others like sprulac and casilan have little fat and are enriched in protein. While the skimmed milk has practically no fat but is high in protein and sugar; the wheys are very high in sugar, moderately low in protein and very low in fat. All these foods are useful when a patient either has a poor appetite or it is desired to increase the protein of the diet. They can be added to milk, or milk puddings and will not be noticed by the patient; dried egg powder is also of value in this respect.

(b) *Meat and Fish*. These are now obtainable in a "dehydrated" state, but as they have to be soaked in water before use they cease to be concentrated foods, though they can be used to thicken soups.

(c) *Vegetable Proteins*. These are no longer available in a concentrated form.

2. **Digested Protein Foods or Peptone Preparations**. These had at one time a considerable vogue in dietetics. The proteins are partially broken down in the normal stomach to peptones and albumoses (p. 207). They can either be prepared at home (p. 606) or a commercial preparation heptalac (Cow and Gate composition: water, 87.9 per cent., soluble proteins chiefly albumoses 4.2 per cent., carbohydrate 6.2 per cent., fat 0.9 per cent., inorganic constituents 0.8 per cent.) may be useful. If these products are given to a healthy person they are further broken down in the course of digestion to polypeptides and amino acids in the same way as the original proteins, and are therefore capable of replacing them. Their use should relieve the stomach of some of the preliminary work of digestion. In practice this is of little value as the stomach and intestines are rarely so damaged that they are unable to digest the protein of eggs and milk. In such a case intravenous therapy, either with electrolytes or protein hydrolysate may be tried. Further, these products are liable to cause diarrhoea for some unknown reason if given in large amounts, though they are well tolerated in small quantities.

## ARTIFICIAL CARBOHYDRATE FOODS

Many patent foods which might justly be included in this section have been already dealt with under the cereals, pulses, etc., or in the section on Infant Foods. The only group which remains to be considered is the *malt-extracts*. These are prepared by evaporating down an infusion of malted barley at low temperatures or *in vacuo*. The object of evaporating them in that way is to preserve in an active form the diastatic ferment present in the malt; and the special apparatus

required for this purpose is one cause of the expense of such preparations.

The following table contains the results of the analyses of some standard malt-extracts:

COMPOSITION OF MALT-EXTRACTS

	Total Solids.	Reducing Sugars as Maltose.	Protein.	Dextrin.	Ash.	Alcohol.	Diastatic Power Lintner Units.
Kepler Extract of Malt . . . . .	78.5	65.5	5.5	6.2	1.3	—	900-1000
Standard Malt-extract . . . . .	79.4	60.3	6.5	10.5	1.4	—	30-40
Extract of Malt . . . . .	80	50.5	5.2	—	1.2	—	—

The average value of these foods is 58.6 g. of sugar, 5.8 g. of protein, 8.3 g. of dextrin, and the Calorie value is 283 per 100 g. 1 oz. yields about 80 Calories, or a little more than one egg. The diastatic value is low except in the Kepler Extract of Malt.

In the above analyses the whole of the nitrogenous matter has been counted as protein, but it is very doubtful if that is quite accurate. Some of the nitrogen is almost certainly present in other forms.

Malt-extracts may be prescribed with one or two objects: (1) To enrich the supply of carbohydrates in the diet; (2) to aid the digestion of starchy foods by means of the diastase which the extract contains. The advantages possessed by malt-extracts for accomplishing the former of these objects are not quite apparent. *Treacle and golden syrup* both contain a considerably higher percentage of sugar, and are vastly cheaper. It is true that malt-sugar is less apt to irritate the stomach than the cane-sugar which treacle and syrup contain, and although not capable of direct absorption as such, maltose may yet be regarded as a partially digested form of carbohydrate. But in both these respects we have in ordinary honey a superior food.

*Honey* has the following composition:

Water . . . . .	16 to 13 per cent.
Invert sugar . . . . .	71.4 "
Cane-sugar . . . . .	2.69 "
Protein . . . . .	0.4 "
Ash . . . . .	0.12 "

That is to say that it is actually richer in sugar than malt-extract, but has less protein and no dextrin; the Calorie value of 1 oz. is 104. Furthermore, the sugar of honey is really in a predigested form, and ready for immediate assimilation. As a source of carbohydrate,

therefore, honey is in every way preferable to malt-extracts, besides being a good deal cheaper; and it may be used with great advantage in every case in which one wishes to supplement the supply of carbohydrates in the diet.

The second property of malt-extracts—that of acting upon starch by means of the diastase which they contain—is but rarely present in the mind of the prescriber. The cases in which such an action is desired are not, indeed, at all numerous, and are practically confined to the group of so-called amylaceous dyspepsias. Even in such a case malt-extract is not the best preparation to employ. No matter how carefully the extract may be prepared, it always seems to lose something of its diastatic power in the process; and it is far more certain, as well as cheaper, and one may add pleasanter, to make an infusion of malt at home, and either use it as a beverage at meals, or, preferably, stir it into starchy foods, such as puddings or gruel, before they are eaten.

The value of *milk-sugar* as a means of supplementing the carbohydrates of the diet must not be forgotten. Its comparative freedom from sweetness makes it specially suitable for such a purpose. If  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of it is dissolved in 5 or 6 oz. of milk, the nutritive value of the latter is increased by nearly 60 Calories. This may often be taken advantage of in feeding patients with acute fevers.

The number of preparations which contain the various vitamins has now grown so large that it has been reluctantly decided to omit the full list. It was last published in the *Pharmaceutical Journal*, 1948, and in the 10th Edition of this book.

*A vitamin preparation should not be used unless the contents are clearly stated on the label in either international units, mg. or  $\mu$ g.*

The values for the different vitamins are expressed either in international (I.U.) units or those in common use and in terms of the actual vitamin if this is known. The weights of the vitamins are expressed either in milligrams (mg.) or in microgramme ( $\mu$ g. =  $\frac{1}{1000}$  part of a milligramme).

*Vitamin A.* One international unit (I.U.) = 0.6  $\mu$ g. of pure  $\beta$ -carotene. = 0.34  $\mu$ g. vitamin A acetate.

*Vitamin B.* One I.U. = 3  $\mu$ g. and 333 I.U. = 1 mg.

Other vitamins of the B complex:

*Riboflavine.* There is no international unit and one Sherman unit = 2.0-2.5  $\mu$ g. of pure riboflavine.

*Nicotinic acid (P.P.).* The pure substance is known.

*Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>.* There is no international unit and one rat unit = 5  $\mu$ g. (*circa*). The pure substance is known.

*Vitamin C.* One I.U. = 0.05 mg. and 1 mg. of ascorbic acid = 20 units.

*Vitamin D.* One I.U. = 0.025  $\mu$ g. calciferol.

*Vitamin E.* ( $\alpha$ -Tocopherol) One I.U. = 1 mg. of the standard substance (synthetic racemic  $\alpha$ -tocopherol acetate).

*Vitamin K.* There is no international unit and the Dam units are given.

## INDEX

- Abdominal plethora, grape cure in, 382, 593
- Absinthe, 433, 453
- Absorption of proteins, fats and carbohydrates, 210  
(*see also* under various foods)
- Achylia, 565
- Acid-base equilibrium, 112-15, 379
- Acidity of foods, 112-15  
of gastric contents, 200
- Acidosis caused by foods, 114
- Acids of fruits and vegetables, 113, 379
- Acne, 142, 589
- Adolescent girl, need for iron, 101-2
- Aerated bread, 281  
distilled waters, 404  
milk, 334  
waters, 404  
— varieties of, 403-6
- Age, food requirements at different, 54-9, 229  
influence on basal metabolism, 43
- Agene, 45
- Albumin, excretion of, in renal disease, 580, 582
- Alcohol, 442-5, 504-7  
amount oxidizable in body, 423-4  
505,  
and neuritis, 424  
as false stimulant, 424  
as food and fuel, 423  
idiosyncrasy in consumption, 423, 425, 506  
in beer, 426, 436  
in bread, 281  
— disease, 502-6  
— koumiss and kephir, 343, 603  
— spirits, 426  
— wines, 441, 445-52  
local effects, 423  
no vitamins in, 423  
paralysing action, 424  
physiological effects, 423-5  
pharmacology of, 424-5  
proof spirit, 426  
use in fevers, 502-6  
— health, 453-5  
— hospitals, 425, 502-7
- Alcohol (*continued*)  
use in obesity, 523, 530  
vascular paralysis, due to, 425
- Alcoholic beverages, 425-55
- Ales, 434-5
- Algæ, 106
- Alimentary tract, diagram of, 209
- Alkalies, addition to milk, 335
- Alkalinity of foods, 112-15
- Allergilac, 495
- Allergy, 11, 320, 340, 355, 578, 588-91
- Allspice, 395
- Almonds, 305, 307, 516
- Aluminium, 111
- Amino-acids, 61-4, 83, 86, 221, 315, 476, 608
- Anæmia and lack of iron, 102-3  
pernicious, dietetic treatment, 577
- Aneurine, 127-32
- Aneurism, dietetic treatment, 576
- Animal foods, 323-77  
compared with vegetable foods, 77, 130, 315, 390-2
- Anisette, composition of, 432
- Anorexia nervosa, 535-6
- Anti-infective vitamin, 121-7
- Anti-neuritic vitamin, 127-32
- Anti-ophthalmic vitamin, 121-7
- Antipellagric vitamin, 135-9
- Anti-rachitic vitamin, 151-6
- Anti-scorbutic vitamin, 141-51
- Apéritifs, 453
- Apollinaris water, 403
- Appetite, as stimulant of gastric juice, 199
- Apples, composition of, 149, 380-1, 516
- Apricots, amount of sugar in, 516  
composition of, 125, 381, 516
- Arrowroot, 312
- Arterial hypertension, 576
- Arthritis, dietetic treatment, 539
- Artichokes, 311, 388
- Artificial feeding, 605-10  
of infants, 472-8
- Artificial foods, 610-14  
(*see also* Infant Foods)  
carbohydrate, 612-14  
— golden syrup, 258, 613

- Artificial foods (*continued*)  
 carbohydrate, honey, 259, 613  
 — milk-sugar, 255, 473, 614  
 — treacle, 258, 613  
 fatty, cod-liver oil, 125, 152-4  
 protein, 612  
 "As purchased," 32  
 Ascorbic acid, 141-51, 381, 383-91  
 Asparagine in vegetables, 308  
 Asparagus, carbohydrate in, 315  
   cooked, composition of, 390  
 Ass's milk, 473  
 Asthma, diet in, 578, 591  
 Athletes, diet suitable for, 227  
 Atonic dilatation, diet in, 559  
 Australian wines, 446  
 Availability, 92-3, 102, 126  
 Avitaminosis A, 122-4, 264  
   B<sub>1</sub>, 128-9  
   Riboflavine, 134  
   nicotinic acid, 135, 137  
   C, 142, 264  
   D, 151-3, 264  
   K, 159  
   P, 158  
 Axerophthol, 121-7
- Bacon, 24, 78, 130, 164, 168, 361-2,  
 371, 598  
   digestibility of, 363  
 Bacteria, in intestinal digestion, 203,  
 211, 214, 603  
 Bain-marie, cooking with, 180  
 Baking, losses involved in, 181  
 Baking-powder, composition of, 281  
 Ballast (*see* Roughage), 213  
 Banana as food, 381, 383-4, 510, 601  
 Banting, treatment of obesity, 527  
 Barcelona nut, 305  
 Barley, 295-6  
   sugar, 258  
 Barley-water, 296  
   addition to milk, 334  
 Barlow's disease, 543  
 Basal metabolism, 40-50  
   factors influencing, 43-5  
   relation to pathological conditions,  
   45  
 Basic foods, 112-15  
 Beans, 299-303, 387, 390, 515  
 Beef, calorie value, 24  
   — composition of, 360-2  
   — raw, boiled and roasted, 183,  
   362,  
   digestibility of, 204 363-4  
   losses on cooking, 183-5  
   potted, 369  
   protein value, 360-2, 517  
 Beef Extracts, 373-5  
 Beef-juices, 373  
   in illness, 556, 561  
 Beef powders, 166,  
 Beef-tea, 373  
 Beer, 434-7  
   action on digestion, 437  
   as food, 437-8  
   German, 436  
   manufacture of, 434-6  
   strength of, 436-7  
 Beetroot, 388, 515  
 Beet-sugar, 256-7  
 Bemax, 129, 136, 139  
 Benedictine, 432  
 Benger's Food, 497  
 Beri-beri, 117, 118, 128  
   cured by vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, 129  
 Beurlac, 495  
 Biliousness, diet in, 575  
 Biotin, 139, 140  
 Biscuits, 285, 516  
   diabetic, 520  
 Bitters, 432  
 Blackberries, composition of, 381  
 Blood as article of food, 367  
   influence of water on volume of,  
   400  
 Body heat, loss of, and skin area,  
   41-2  
   maintenance by food, 15  
 Body processes, food suitable for, 16  
 Bones, composition of, 377  
 Boorde's *Dietary of Health*, xii  
 Botulism, 170  
 Bournvita, 419  
 Bovril, 373  
 Brain, animal, as food, 367-9  
   effect of alcohol on, 424  
   food suitable for, 228-9  
   importance of digestion of food for  
   brain-worker, 229  
 Bran (wheat), 264, 266-7, 277  
   composition of, 266  
   digestibility, 278  
 Brandy, 426, 431, 505  
 Brazil nuts, composition of, 305  
 Bread, 279-88  
   absorption of, 286  
   aeration, 281  
   alcohol in, 281  
   ascorbic acid, absence of, in, 264,  
   276  
   black, 270, 296  
   brown, 283  
   calorie value, 24, 283, 288  
   changes undergone on keeping, 284  
   composition of, 284, 288, 516  
   — special, 288, 520,  
   cooking of, 284  
   diabetic, 520

- Bread (*continued*)  
 digestibility, 284-7  
 economic value of, 287  
 fancy, 288  
 fermentation process in, 279-80  
 germ, 283, 288  
 inorganic materials in, 274-76, 283  
 made from maize, 294  
 malted, 283, 288  
 nutritive value, 278, 287-8  
 — of white and wholemeal compared, 273, 278, 283  
 patent, 283, 288  
 proteins in, 264-6, 272, 278, 281, 283, 288  
 — defective absorption of, 286  
 "pulled," 284  
 staleness, causes of, 284  
 Vienna, 283  
 vitamins in, 278, 288  
 wholemeal, 278  
 — absorption of, 273  
 — — compared with white bread, 273, 275, 276  
 — — inorganic material, 275-6  
 — composition compared with white, 283  
 — digestibility of, 273  
 — — compared with white, 273  
 — inorganic constituents of, 274-6, 283  
 — proteins absorbed, 273
- Brestol, 495
- Bright's disease, dietetic treatment, 578  
 (*see also* Nephritis)
- Bronchitis, diet in, 577
- Brose, 292
- Brussels sprouts, composition of, 386-7, 515
- Buckwheat, 299
- Building material, cheapest sources of, 245  
 (*see also* Protein)
- Bulgarian bacillus, in sour milk preparations, 602-3
- Burgundy, 446
- Burns, dietetic needs after, 499
- Butter, 249-51  
 caloric value, 24, 251  
 nut substitutes, 307  
 use of in disease, 251
- Butter beans, cooked, composition of, 303
- Butter milk, 342-3
- Butyric acid and butyric in butter and margarine, 250, 252
- Cabbage, amount of carbohydrate in, 515
- Cabbage (*continued*)  
 composition of, 384, 386-7, 515  
 effect of cooking on, 144-5, 386-7
- Café au lait, 415
- Caffeine, physiological effects, 418  
 in tea, coffee and cocoa, 418
- Calciferol, 152
- Calcifying vitamin, 151-6
- Calcium, amount required daily, 93-7  
 — during lactation, 96-7, 459  
 — during pregnancy, 95-6, 457  
 foods containing, 98
- Calf's-foot jelly, 377
- Calorie, coefficient of women and children, 6, 37-8, 53  
 definition of, 22  
 intake and age, 46, 55-8  
 — and activity, 46-51, 55  
 — and sex, 48-9, 53  
 — family, 37  
 requirements, tables of, 56-7  
 value of different foods, 24  
 — — calculation of, 27
- Calories, source of in average diet, 248-314  
 yielded by various foods, 24, 248-314
- Calorimetry, 23 *et seq.*
- Cane-sugar, 255-6  
 raw, 256
- Caramel, 258
- Carbohydrate foods, artificial, 612-14
- Carbohydrates, 16, 18-20  
 absorption of, 210, 260, 273  
 concentration of, maximum, 610  
 effect of heat on, 19, 183, 284  
 in vegetable foods, 387-90  
 source of muscular energy, 262
- Cardiac disease, acute, diet in, 575-6
- Carotene, source and standard of vitamin A, 121-2
- Carrageen moss, 389
- Carrara water, 405
- Carrots, 386, 388, 390, 515
- Casein, preparations, 344, 495
- Caseinogen, 333, 466, 475-6  
 digestibility increased for infants, 323, 324, 327, 486-7
- Casilan, 495
- Cassia, 395
- Cauliflower, composition of, 384, 387
- Caviare, 354
- Celery, composition of, 388, 390, 515
- Cellulose, 19, 182-3, 264, 306, 391  
 effect of heat, moisture, and milling on, 182-3  
 effect on digestion, 182  
 in vegetable foods, 379, 391
- Celsus and dietetics, x

- Cereals, 262-99  
   antagonizing effect on vitamin D, 153, 264, 544  
   fat in, 266, 283, 285, 288, 289, 290, 293, 295-9  
   infant foods prepared from, 496-6  
   inorganic matter in, 274-5  
   products derived from, composition of, 266 *et seq.*  
 Cerex, 497  
 Chablis, 446  
 Champagne, 449-50, 505  
 Chartreuse, 432-3  
 Cheese, 345-9  
   calorie value, 24, 254, 346, 348  
   protein value, 346, 348, 517  
 Cherries, composition of, 149, 381, 516  
 Chestnuts, 305-7, 516  
 Chicken, composition of, 362, 517  
   digestibility of, 364  
 Chicory, 415  
 Children, calories required daily, 54-8, 512-13  
   carbohydrate requirement, 512-13  
   diets for, 512-13  
   fat requirement, 512-13  
   feeding of, 224-6, 240-1, 489-93  
   — — inorganic materials, 94-5, 103, 105, 489-90  
   — — protein, 81-5  
   protein requirement, 81-5, 512-13  
 Chlorine in diet, 110  
 Chocolate, 259, 419, 421  
 Cholesterol, 152, 317  
 Choline, 132  
 Cider, 451  
 Cinnamon, 395  
 Circulation, diseases of, dietetic treatment, 575-7  
 Cirrhosis of the liver, dietetic treatment, 572-4, *see also* 70, 76  
 Citrate of soda, added to milk to aid digestion, 334, 488  
 Claret, 445, 450  
 Climate, influence on food required, 88-9, 232-6, 364  
 Cloves, 395  
 Cobalt, 111, 141  
 Cobnut, 305  
 Cocoa, 415-421  
   length of stay in stomach, 420  
   malted, 419  
   — nibs, 416  
   nutritive value, 421  
   soluble, 416  
   uses of, 421  
   varieties of, 416-19  
 Coco-nuts, composition of, 305  
 Cod, analysis of, 349-50  
   calorie value, 350, 353-4  
   cheapness for protein, 354  
   protein value, 78, 349  
 Cod-liver oil, as food, 3, 152  
   as source of vitamins A and D, 125, 127, 154, 544  
 Coefficients (*see also* Man values), 6, 37-8, 58  
 Coeliac disease, 93, 293, 294, 298  
 Coffee, 413-15  
   as stimulant, 418, 421  
   cereal, 422  
   composition of, 414-15  
   effects of excess of, 421  
   varieties of, 413-14  
   with meals, 420  
 Cold weather diet, 234-6  
 Colitis, acute and ulcerative, diet in, 564  
 Colon, 212-15  
 Colostrum, composition of, 465  
 Concentration of foods, 610  
 Condensed eggs, 167, 321-2  
 Condensed milk, 167 331-2  
   composition of, 494-6  
 Condiments, 391-8  
   (*see also* Spices)  
 Conditioned food reflexes, 12-14, 239-244, 489-90  
 Constipation, dietetic treatment, 213, 570-2  
 Contrexéville water, 403  
 Cooker, fireless, 186-7  
 Cooking, effect on composition of foods, 177-87  
 Cooker, fireless, 186-7  
 Cooking, effect on composition of foods, 177-87  
   slow, 185  
 Copper, 111-12  
 Cornflakes, 294, 516  
 Cornflour, 294  
 Corn meal, composition of, 293  
 Cow and Gate Infant Foods, 494-5  
 Cow's Milk, 323-40, 473-88, 516  
 Crab, 354  
 Cramp, miner's, 107  
 Cranberries, 115  
 Cream, 341-2, 482, 503, 517, 532, 533  
   as source of fat, 341-2  
   clotted, Cornish or Devonshire, 342, 517  
   Ice, 342  
 Crème de Menthe, 432  
 Cucumber, composition of, 386, 389, 515  
 Curaçao, 432

- Currants, composition of, 149, 150, 381, 516  
 — dried, 384-5  
 Custard-powders, 322
- Damsons, 381, 516  
 Dates, composition of, 384-5  
 Defæcation, 213, 216  
 Defective motility of alimentary tract, diet in, 562  
 Dehydration, 167-8  
 Dental caries and vitamin D, 151, 156  
 — — fluorine, 112  
 Devonshire Cream, 342, 517  
 Dextrin, 18-19, 178, 281  
 Diabetes mellitus, 506-520  
   diets for, 508-14  
   calorie value of diet in diabetes, 510-12  
   calories and weight maintenance, 512  
   carbohydrate in diabetic diet, 508-9, 511, 512, 513  
   diet, with and without insulin, 508, 518  
   elderly patients, 508, 509  
   fat in diabetic diet, 508 *et seq.*  
   food tables for, 515-18  
   foods, diabetic, so-called, 519  
   foods predominantly carbohydrate, 515  
   — — fat, 517  
   — — protein, 517  
   high carbohydrate diet, 511  
   insulin, 508, 518  
   — protamine-zinc, 518  
   — slow-acting, 518  
   maintenance diet, 508  
   protein in diabetic diet, 508  
   tables, food, 515-17  
   — — use of, 518  
 Diarrhœa, acute, diet in, 563  
   chronic, diet in, 564  
   gastrogenic, diet in, 565  
   vitamins and, 570  
 Diet, amount of protein, fat and carbohydrate in, 16, 87  
   and instinct, 12, 239-44  
   and personal peculiarity, 236, 239-41  
   at puberty, 226  
   for athlete, 227  
   — infants and children, 224-6, 456-97  
   — lactation, 230-2, 458-62  
   — manual worker, 226  
   — mental worker, 227  
   — pregnancy, 230, 456-8  
   in disease, 489-614
- Diet (*continued*)  
   mixed, digestion of, summary, 215  
   — necessity for, 195  
   — suitable for cold weather, 234  
   — — hot weather, 234  
   safe, 163-5  
   surveying, 28-40  
   temperature of, 206  
 Dietaries, actual, of various classes, 49-59  
   group dietaries, 35-40  
 Dietetic cures and systems, 592-604  
 Dietetics, definition of, 1, 5  
   history of, ix-xviii  
   inaccurate, unscientific, 7  
   normal, 223-47  
 Dietitians, 7  
 Digestibility, 320, 347, 362-4  
 Digestion, 195-217  
   influence of exercise and rest on, 198, 216  
   in intestine, 208-12  
   in the mouth, 195-6  
   in the stomach, 196-208  
   objects of, 195  
   of mixed diet, summary of, 215-16  
   rate of, for different foods, 204  
   (*see also* under various foods)  
 Disaccharides, 18, 255-8  
 Diseases, diet in, 489-614  
 Diuresis, 340, 400, 412  
 Dorsella, infant foods, 494-5  
 Dough, in breadmaking, 279-82  
 Dripping, 252-3  
 Dropsy, cardiac, dietetic treatment, 11, 576  
 Duck, composition of, 362, 364, 517  
 Duck's egg, composition of, 321  
 Dysentery, dietetic treatment, 564  
 Dyspepsia, acute, 554  
   atonic or flatulent, diet in, 563  
   diet in, 546-70  
   functional, 559-63
- Economy in diet, 244-7  
 Eczema, diet in, 589  
   produced by contact with sugar, 260  
 "Edible portion," 33  
 Egg-powders, 322  
 Eggs, 315-22  
   absorption of, 320  
   albumin, 315, 590-1  
   avidin in, 139, 316  
   calorie value, 246, 321  
   carbohydrate in, 316  
   changes when kept, 319  
   — rotten, 320

- Eggs (*continued*)  
 cholesterol in, 317  
 composition of, 316-20, 322, 517  
 — compared with meat, 319  
 condensed, 321  
 digestibility, 320  
 dried, 195-6, 321  
 economic value, 246, 321  
 idiosyncrasy towards, 320  
 in children's diet, 489  
 mineral elements in, 317  
 nutritive value, 321  
 proteins in, 316-17  
 rotten, 320  
 shell, composition of, 316  
 white, composition of, 316  
 — digestibility of, 320  
 yolk, composition of, 317  
 — digestibility of, 320  
 Ellis, diets in renal disease, 578, 582  
 Endive, composition of, 388  
 Edosol, 496  
 Endosperm of wheat, 265-6, 289  
 Enemas, 605-6  
 Energen, 320  
 Energy, 20-2  
 amount afforded by average diet,  
 14, 16, 37, 49, 50, 53, 56-9  
 derived from food, 15-59, 248-314  
 experiments on output of man, 22,  
 23-7  
 output per day, 47, 51, 53  
 source of, for muscular work, 226,  
 227, 262  
 value of various foods, 24  
 Enteric fever, diet in, 500-2  
 Epilepsy, diet in, 587-8  
 Ergosterol, 152  
 Eskimo diet, 73  
 Extractives in fish, 351  
 — in meat, 357, 359, 372-5  
 Extracts prepared from yeast, 375
- Fæces, 213, 216  
 Farex, 497  
 Fat, 17-18  
 and carbohydrate, relation be-  
 tween, 509 *et seq.*  
 concentration of, maximum, 87,  
 219-20, 611  
 economical forms of, 245-6, 252  
 effect of heat on, 178  
 increase of, in body, 532-4  
 Fattening diet, 532-4  
 Feeding, subcutaneous, 610  
 Fermentation process in bread-mak-  
 ing, 279-81  
 of beer, 434-6  
 of kéfir, 603  
 of wine, 440
- Fever, change of metabolism in, 500  
 and alcohol, 502-6  
 diet in, 501-6  
 — milk and sugar in, 502  
 enteric, diet in, 501-3  
 Fibrositis, diet in, 541  
 Figs, composition of, 384-5  
 Fining, 435, 440  
 Fireless cooker, 186  
 Fish, 349-56  
 absorption of, 352  
 and allergy, 355  
 as a "brain food," 353  
 comparative costs of protein and  
 energy, 353  
 composition of, 349-50  
 cooking of, 181-2  
 digestibility of, 352  
 economic value of, 353  
 fat, 349, 517  
 fat, digestibility of, 352, 565  
 fried *v.* steamed, 352  
 nutritive value of, 352  
 processing of, 351  
 offal, 353-4  
 roe, 353-4  
 shell, 354-5  
 white, 349, 517  
 Flavours, 393-8  
 Flatulence, diet in, 347, 392, 562  
 Flour, 267-279  
 addition of malt to, 283  
 composition of, 272  
 cookery of, 279-90  
 diabetic, 520  
 "self-raising," 282  
 Folic acid, 140, 577  
 Follicular Keratosis, 142  
 Fondants, 259  
 Food and work, 15, 46-53, 58  
 analysis, 27  
 as energy producer, 15-16, 24, 248-  
 314  
 constituents in, 16, 17-20  
 cooking of, 177-187  
 definition of, 3-5  
 digestion of, 195-222  
 (*see also* under various foods and  
 also Digestion)  
 losses on cooking, 180, 183-5  
 mineral elements, 90-115  
 processing of, 162-82  
 reflexes, 239-43  
 requirements at various ages, 54-9,  
 76-7, 96-7, 102, 124, 130-1, 154-5  
 tables, 28, 514-20. *See also* under  
 separate foods.  
 unavoidable wastage, 33  
 uses of, 16, 161

- Foods, acidity and alkalinity of, 112-15  
     as purchased and edible portion, 32-3  
     protective, 162-5  
 Force, 290, 516  
 Forsyth's *Dictionary of Diet*, xv  
 Fowl, composition of, 362, 517  
 Fractionation of food, 168-9  
 Frailac, 495  
 Frogs' legs as food, 356  
 Fructose, 18, 19, 210, 217-18, 258, 379  
 Fruit diet cures, 382, 593  
     juices, 406  
 Fruits, as food, 378-84  
     as source of vitamin C, 149-50, 382-3  
     carbohydrates in, 379-84, 516  
     composition of, 379-84  
     digestibility of, 380  
     dried, 383-5  
     effect of cooking on, 380  
     mineral constituents, 98, 101, 102, 110, 379  
     odour and flavour of, 380  
     sugar in, 379, 516  
     vitamins in, 125, 130, 136, 139, 149-50, 381, 385  
 Fruit sugar, 18, 210, 218, 258, 261  
 Frumenty, 267  
 Functional dyspepsias, diet in, 559-70  
 Fusel-oil in spirits, 427-8
- Galen and dietetics, ix, xi  
 Gall-stones, dietetic treatment, 575  
 Gas storage of foods, 172-3  
 Gastralgia, diet in, 561  
 Gastric contents, acidity of, 200-2, 204-6, 207, 561-2  
 Gastric juice, antiseptic action of, 197  
     — Foods that depress, 200  
     secretion of, 198-201  
     stimulated by appetite, 199  
 Gastric secretion, chemical causes of, 199-200  
     defective, dietetic treatment of, 561  
 Gastric ulcer, dietetic treatment, 547-54  
     need for vitamin C in, 550-4  
     — Lenhartz diet, 547-51  
 Gastritis, alcoholic, 558  
     acute and chronic, diet in, 549  
 Gelatin, 66, 376-7  
 German beers, 436  
 Ghee, 250  
 Gin, 426, 431-2  
 Ginger, 396-7  
 Ginger-ale, 406  
 Ginger-beer, 405  
 Glaxo (*see* Ostermilk), 494-5  
 Glucose, 8, 18, 19, 210, 258, 259, 379  
     commercial, 260  
 Glycosuria, alimentary, 261  
     dietetic treatment, 506-20  
 Goat's milk, composition of, 473  
 Golden syrup, 258  
 Goose, composition of, 362, 364  
 Gooseberries, composition of, 149, 150, 381, 516  
 Gout, 536-9  
 Grape-cure, 382, 593  
 Grape-fruit, 149, 150, 379, 381, 516  
 Gravel, dietetic treatment of, 541-2  
 Greek wines, 449-50  
 Greengages, composition of, 149, 381, 516  
 Greens (vegetables), composition of, 7, 98, 118, 125, 136, 139, 150, 156, 161, 163, 384-7, 515  
 Groats, 291  
 Grouse, composition of, 362  
 Guinea-fowl, 362  
 Guinea-fowl's egg, 319
- Haddock, 78, 349, 350, 354  
 Hæmoglobin, digestibility and absorption of, 359, 368  
     in meat, 359  
 Hæmolac, 496  
 Ham, composition of, 362, 371, 517  
     — potted, 369  
 Hare, composition of, 362  
 Haut Brion, 445  
 Haybox cooker, 184  
 Hay diet, 86, 207, 211, 224, 594  
 Hazel nuts, composition of, 516  
 Headaches, dietetic treatment, 588  
 Heart, animal, as food, 367  
 Heart disease, diet in, 576  
 Height, influence on basal metabolism, 41, 44  
 Hemolac, 496  
 Hen's egg, composition of, 315-19  
 Herring, cheapness for protein, 246, 353-4  
     composition of, 349-50, 517  
 Heudebert bread, 520  
 Hirschsprung's diseases, 651  
 Hock, 446, 450  
 Hominy, 294  
 Honey, 259, 613  
 Hookworm disease and pellagra 137.  
 Hoosh, 372  
 Hop oil, 434  
 Hops, use in brewing, 169, 434-5  
 Horlick's Malted Milk, 496

- Hot Springs Conference, 7  
 Hot weather, diet for, 234-5  
 Hovis bread, 269, 263, 288  
 Human milk, 458-71  
   amount required by infant, 462-5  
   and cow's milk compared, 473, 475-9  
   composition of, 465-6, 469, 473, 474-8  
   — compared with other animals, 474  
   digestibility of, 478  
   — compared with cow's milk, 478  
   dried, 495  
   influence of alcohol in diet on, 461  
   — coffee in diet on, 461  
   — diet on, 458-61  
   mineral elements in, 469  
   nitrogenous matters in, 466-7  
   nutritive value of, 465-71  
   — compared with cow's milk, 473, 475-8  
   proteins in, 465-6  
   substitutes for, 472-97  
   variations in, 470  
   — — period of suckling, 464, 465, 469-70  
 Hungarian wines, 445  
 Hunger, nature of, 198  
 Hygiene of food, 188-94  
 Hyperchlorhydria, diet in, 561-2  
 Hyperpyrexia, diet in, 499-504  
 Hypersecretion, diet in, 561-2  
 Hypoglycæmia, 218, 520
- Ice-cream, 342  
 Index, Calorie, 37  
 Indian Corn (Maize), 293-5  
 Individual diets, 29-31  
 Infancy, carbohydrate in diet, 490-1  
   diarrhœa of, diet in, 383, 461  
   fat in diet, 465, 467, 473-5, 481-3, 487  
   inorganic ingredients in diet, 474-7  
   protein in diet, 475  
   (see also Infant-feeding and foods)  
 Infant-feeding, 472-97  
   proprietary foods, 494-7  
   with condensed milks, 484  
   with cow's milk, 479-82  
   with dried milk, 482-3  
   with partially peptonized milk, 487  
 Infant foods, constituents of, 494-7  
 Infantile scurvy, dietetic treatment, 543-4  
 Infants, diets for, 472-97  
   milk required by, 464  
 Inorganic constituents of food, 90-115  
 Inositol, 140
- Insomnia, 593  
 Instant Postum, 422  
 Instinct and diet, 11, 239-44  
 Insulin, 217-20, 508-13  
 Intestinal putrefaction, 213-15  
 Intestine, large, absorption in, 130, 140, 214, 605-7  
 Intestines, diseases of, dietetic treatment, 563-9  
 Intravenous feeding, 607-10  
 Invert sugar, 255, 257, 259  
 Iodine, amount required daily, 105  
   foods containing, 106  
 Irish Moss, 389-90  
 Iron, amount required daily, 105  
   anæmia caused by lack of, 101, 103  
   foods containing, 102, 384, 387  
 Isinglass, 376  
 Italian pastes, 289  
 Italian Wines, 446
- Jams, 260, 516  
   digestibility of, 296  
 Jaundice, dietetic treatment, 574-5  
 Jellies, 376-7  
 Joannitius and dietetics, xi
- Kemposan, 345  
 Képhir, 343, 603  
 Kepler's Extract of Malt, 613  
 Keratomalacia, 188, 123  
 Keratosis, follicular, 142  
 Ketogenic diet, 587-8  
 Kidney, animal, as food, 366-7  
 Kidneys, foods affecting, 578-87  
 Kipper, 350, 517  
 Kirsch, 432  
 Koumiss, 343, 603  
 Kümmell, 432  
 Kwashiorkor, related to low protein intake, 76, 304
- Lacidac infant foods, 496  
 Lactation, food requirement, 96, 232, 458-62  
 Lactic acid in milk, 328, 343, 603  
   production in koumiss, etc., 603  
 Lacto, Mellins, 497  
 Lactose, 18, 324, 467-8, 502  
 Lacto-vegetarian diet, 392, 592-3  
 Lævulose, or fructose, 18, 19, 210, 217-18, 258, 379  
 Lamb, composition of, 357, 517  
   digestion of, 204  
 Leeks, composition of, 388, 515  
 Lemonade, 143, 165  
   so-called, 405  
 Lemon-juice, composition of, 381, 552

- Lenhartz diet, 547-52  
 Lentil, 302, 303,  
 Lettuce, composition of, 150, 388,  
     515  
 Liebig's Beef Extract, 373  
 Liqueurs, 432-3  
 Lithia water, 405  
 Liver, as food, 125, 130, 136, 139, 141,  
     367, 371, 577, 588  
     diseases of, dietetic treatment,  
     572-5  
 Lobster, 354  
 Loganberries, 149-50, 381, 516  
 Low-salt diet, 595-8  
 Lungs, as food, 367-71
- M.O.F., 497  
 Macaroni, 289  
 Mackerel, 349, 517  
 Madeira wine, 445, 450  
 Magnesia water, 405  
 Magnesium, foods containing, 109,  
     386  
 Maize, 293-5  
     associated with pellagra, 135, 138,  
     293-4  
     composition of, 293  
     economic value, 295  
     meal, 293  
     nutritive value, 295  
     preparations of, 294  
 Malt, 283, 428, 434  
 Malted Milk Cocoa, 419  
 Malt-Extracts, 612-3  
 Malt liquors, 433-8  
     action on digestion, 437  
     ale, 434-5  
     as foods, 437-8  
     beer, 434-6  
     composition of, 436  
     effect on gout, 438  
     — obesity, 438  
 Maltose, 18, 258, 434  
 Malt sugar, 18, 258, 434  
 Man values, 37  
 Manganese, 112  
 Maple sugar, 257  
 Maraschino, 433  
 Mare's milk composition of, 473  
 Margarine, 154, 251-2  
 Marmalade, 516  
 Marmite, 130, 136, 139, 375  
 Marrow, composition of, 389, 515  
 Marsala wine, 449, 450  
 Mastication of food, effect on diges-  
     tion, 195, 546  
 Maté, 422  
 Meals, hours of taking, number and  
     size of, 223-5
- Meat, 356-72  
     absorption of, 362-4  
     acids in, 358  
     chemical composition of, 359-61  
     — compared with eggs, 321  
     chilled, 172, 366  
     cooking of, 179-81, 361-2  
     — effect on digestibility, 363  
     essences and extractives, 359, 373-5  
     — as stimulants, 373  
     — effect on flow of gastric juice,  
     373  
     — almost valueless as food, 373  
     flavour of, 358-9  
     hæmoglobin in, 359  
     iron in, 102  
     juices, 373-5  
     losses on cooking, 180-1, 361-2  
     nicotinic acid, 138-9  
     nutritive value, 138-9, 364-5  
     physical structure, 357-8  
     potted, 369  
     powders, 166, 372  
     proteins in, 358, 360  
     psychological effect of, 364  
     vitamins of, 130, 136, 139, 366  
     waste matters, 359  
 Medicated wines, 452  
 Mellin's Food, and Lacto, 497  
 Melons, composition of, 381, 516  
 Mental work, diet suitable for, 227-9  
 Metabolism, 20-59, 217-22  
     basal, 40-7  
     carbohydrate, 217-19  
     disorders of, 499-521  
     fat, 219-20  
     proteins, 64-8, 73-6, 113, 220-2  
     total, 45-59  
 Methionine, 63, 64, 66, 466, 572  
 Midlothian Oat Food, 497  
 Milk, 323-40, 462-97  
     absorption of, 335-7  
     — boiled and unboiled, 332-4, 334,  
     481  
     — compared with human, 478-9  
     — in adults, 336  
     — in children, 336  
     aeration, 334  
     amount required by infants, 463-5  
     as a cause of disease, 189, 329-31  
     as article of diet in disease, 338-40,  
     *see also* 548-52  
     bacteriology of, 324, 328, 329-30,  
     602-4  
     boiled, 334-5  
     — absorption of, compared with  
     unboiled 335  
     calorie value, 24, 338, 479  
     caseinogen in, 323-4, 327-8, 333,  
     466, 475-6

Milk (*continued*)

citrated, 334, 488  
 citric acid in, 325  
 clotting of, in stomach, 327-8  
 coagulation, 327-8  
 compared with human milk, 473-9  
 composition of, 323-8  
 — effect of heat on, 328-31  
 — from different animals, 324, 473  
 — variations in, 326, 470  
 condensed, 331, 484  
 — unsweetened, 485  
 curdling of, 328  
 desiccated, 167, 331-2, 482-4, 494-7  
 diet in disease, 338-40, *see also* 548-52  
 digestibility of, 332-5, 478-9, 481-4  
 — compared with human milk, 478-9  
 — improved by dilution, 333, 481-2  
 dilution, for infant's diet, 481-2  
 dried, composition of, 331-2, 482-4, 494-6, 494-7  
 effect on growth and health of children, 338  
 evaporated, 331, 484-6  
 fat in, 249, 324-5  
 — guide to quality of, 327  
 human, 465-70, 494  
 humanized, 481  
 — defects of, in infant feeding, 482  
 in infant's diet, 479-91  
 inorganic matter in, 324-5, 473-77  
 iron in, 102, 325, 477  
 lactic acid and, 324, 328, 487, 496  
 malted, composition of, 496  
 mare's, 324, 473  
 mineral elements in, 324-5, 473-77  
 not a perfect food, 338  
 nutritive value, 337-40  
 — compared with human milk, 473-9  
 pasteurization of, 330-1  
 peptonized, 487  
 — dried, 496  
 — partially for infant feeding, 487  
 powders, 494-7  
 preservation of, 171, 331-2  
 proteins in, 323  
 protein value, 78, 85  
 separated, 325, 483, 494-5  
 skim, 325, 483, 494-5  
 sour, 343-4, 602-4  
 — treatment, 602-4  
 soured, 343-4, 602-4  
 sterilization, 329-31  
 sugar, 324  
 variations of, 470  
 vitamins in, 325-6, 478  
 water in, 326

Millet, 299  
 Milling wheat, 267-79  
 products, composition of, 272-9  
 Milt, 354  
 Mineral constituents of food, 90-112  
 — substances, amount required daily, 94-7, 99, 102, 105, 107, 108, 110-12  
 Mineral waters, 403-6  
 — effect on stomach, 404  
 — natural, 403  
 — — avoided in certain diseases, 404  
 — — better than artificial, 405  
 — — contamination of, 404  
 — — imitations of, 405  
 Miner's Calories, 48  
 cramp, 107  
 Mixed diet, advisability of, 63, 64, 66, 67, 77, 87, 89, 98, 102, 106, 124, 131, 135, 137, 155, 158  
 digestion of, 215-16  
 Mock-turtle soup, 355  
 Molasses, 258  
 Molluscs, as food, 355  
 Monosaccharides, 18, 210, 214, 217-19, 258-9  
 Moselles, composition of, 450  
 Moss, Iceland, 390  
 Irish, 389  
 Muscle-food, sugar as, 218, 227, 262  
 Muscular energy, source of, 218, 227, 262  
 Mush (maize), 294  
 Mushrooms, 397-8  
 Mussels as food, 255  
 Must, composition of, 441  
 Mustard, 396  
 Mustard and Cress, 515  
 Mutton, composition of, 361-2  
 digestibility of, 363, 365

National full cream dried milk, 494  
 National half cream dried milk, 494  
 National household cream dried milk 495  
 Nephritis, acute, 578-82, 584  
 chronic, diet in, 582-7  
 Nervogen, 345  
 Nervous system, diseases of, dietetic treatment, 587-8  
 Neurasthenia, diet of, 535  
 Nicotinic acid, 135-9  
 — and pellagra, 135-8  
 Nitrogen, amount excreted daily, 65, 68, 578-87  
 Nitrogenous equilibrium, 65, 68, 578, 579

- Noyau, 433  
 Nutmeg, 396  
 Nutriment, cost of in various forms, 244-7  
 Nutritive constituents of food, and work, 16, 20, 226-7, 248-314  
 Nuts, 305-7  
     economic value of, 307  
  
 Oat Food, Midlothian, 497  
 Oatmeal, 291-3  
 Oats, 290-3  
 Obesity, restriction of alcohol in, 530  
     amount of fluid allowed in, 528  
     Banting system of treatment, 523  
     beverages in, 529-30  
     carbohydrate minimum in, 524  
     causes of, 236-7  
     dietetic treatment of, 522-31  
     exercise in, 528  
     fat in, 524  
     influence on basal metabolism, 520-1  
     use of thyroid extract and nitrobenzene compounds, 528  
     vitamins in, 527  
 Edema and low protein intake, 76  
 Offal, 366-9  
     of fish, 353-4  
 Old age, basal metabolism in, 43-4, 229  
     dietetic requirement, 229-30  
 Olive oil, 18, 253, 394, 502  
 Olliver, M., 383, 384, 387, 388f.n., 390  
 Onions, 386, 388-9  
     composition of, 388-9, 515  
 Orange juice, composition of, 381, 407  
 Oranges, amount of sugar in, 516  
 Osteo-arthritis, diet in, 539  
 Osteomalacia, 545  
 Osteoporosis 545  
 Ostermilk, 494-5  
 Ovaltine, 422  
 Oxalic acid, amount in foods, 93, 114-15  
 Oxalic calculus, cause of, 542  
 Oxaluria, connection with intake of oxalic acid, 155, 542  
     dietetic treatment, 114-15, 542  
 Oxo, 373  
 Oysters and typhoid, 355  
  
*p*-aminobenzoic acid, 140  
 Pancreatic secretion, 209-10  
 Pantothenic acid, 140  
 Paprika, 143  
 Paraguay tea, 422  
 Paris's *Treaties of Diet*, xv  
 Parsnips, 386, 388, 450, 515  
 Partridge, 356, 362  
  
 Pasteurization, 171, 330-1  
 Paté de foie gras, 212, 369  
 Pavy, *Treatise on Food and Dietetics*, xvi, xvii  
 Peaches, composition, 125, 380-1, 516  
 Peanuts, 85, 249, 253, 304-5  
 Pears, 149, 380-1, 516  
 Peas, 148, 301-3, 387, 515  
     Calorie value, 24  
     dried, composition of, 302-3, 515  
     green, composition of, 302, 387, 390, 515  
     protein value, 85, 301-3, 387  
 Pectin, 19, 260, 379  
 Pellagra, relation to maize eating, 117, 135, 137  
     protection from, by nicotinic acid, 138  
 Pemmican, 166, 372  
 Pentosans, in vegetable foods, 379  
 Pentose, 379  
 Pepper, 396  
 Peppers, green, vitamin C in, 150  
 Peptalac, 496  
 Peptone, 207, 487, 606, 607  
 Peptonized foods, home-made, 487, 606  
     milk, 487, 606  
     — dried, 496  
 Pereira, *Treatise on Food and Diet*, xvi  
 Peristalsis, 203, 208  
     reverse, 213  
 Pernicious anæmia, B<sub>12</sub>, folic acid and diet in, 577  
 Perrier water, 403  
 Perry, 451  
 Personal peculiarities, influence on diet, 10, 236-44  
 Pheasant, roast, 362, 517  
 Phosphorus, amount in foods, 99-101  
     amount required per day, 99  
 Phthisis, diet in, 146, 533-4  
 Physical exercise and digestion, 198, 216  
     — and food, 47-8, 52, 55, 226  
 Phytates, 93, 100, 153, 274, 275, 276, 291, 306  
 Pig, the, and thiamine and nicotinic acid, 129, 136  
 Pigeon, composition of, 362  
 Pimento, 395  
 Pineapples, amount of sugar in, 516  
     composition of, 381, 516  
 Plover's eggs, 319  
 Plums, 148-9, 381, 516  
 Pneumonia diet in, 577  
 Poliomyelitis virus, *see* Hygiene of Food, 190  
 Pop-corn, 294-5

- Pork, 130, 190, 357, 361, 363  
 digestibility of, 204, 363
- Porridge, 292-3
- Port, 440, 448
- Porter, 434-436
- Potash water, 405
- Potassium, foods containing, 108-9  
 598-602
- Potassium-poor diet, 598-602
- Potato-belly, 310
- Potatoes, 307-11  
 calorie value, 24  
 changes effected by cooking, 184-5,  
 309-10  
 sweet, 311  
 vitamin C in, 309
- Potted meats, composition of, 369
- Poultry, composition of, 362, 364
- Predigested foods, 612
- Pregnancy, food requirements, 79,  
 95-6, 102, 124, 131, 134, 155,  
 156-7, 158, 230-2, 456-8
- Procea diabetic bread, 520
- Processing of Foods, 166-76
- Prolac, 496
- Prosol, 496
- Protective foods, 162-5, 378-92
- Protein, 16-17, 20, 60-89  
 absorption of, 210, 220, 606  
 action of liver on, 86, 220-1  
 amount in average diet, 68-70, 76-7  
 78-84  
 — of first-class protein necessary,  
 77-8, 89  
 and burns, fractures, cirrhosis and  
 operations, 76, 499  
 and energy, 20, 72, 87  
 animal and amino-acids, 66  
 — — compared with vegetable,  
 66, 235-6  
 — as source of energy, 20, 87  
 biological value of, 64-8  
 bulk of foods yielding, 85, 301-2,  
 391-2  
 composition of, 60-8  
 concentration of, maximum, 610  
 cost of, in different forms, 245-7  
 daily intake, 68-84  
 during pregnancy and lactation, 79  
 effect of heat on, 178, 180, 185  
 — low amount in diet, 70, 574  
 foods, artificial, 611-12  
 important foods for, 85, 315-77  
 in bread, 288  
 in diet for athletes, 227  
 lowest amount permissible in diet,  
 70  
 metabolism, 73-6, 220-2  
 necessary for children, 80-4, 492
- Protein (*continued*)  
 nutritive values of various kinds,  
 64-8  
 optimum, xvii, 76  
 relative value of animal and vege-  
 table, 67, 263-4, 300, 390-2  
 specific dynamic action, 72-3, 234,  
 235-6  
 vegetables and amino-acids, 64-5,  
 73  
 — effect of heat on, 178
- Provost Oats, 291
- Prunes, composition of, 385, 516
- Pruritus, diet in, 590
- Psoriasis, diet in, 589-90
- Pulses, 299-306  
 calories from, 301  
 protein in, 301
- Purgatives, deleterious effect on ab-  
 sorption of calcium, 92, 211
- Purine-free diet, 537  
 — for gout, 536-9
- Purines in various foods, 538-9
- Pyloric obstruction, diet in, 558-9
- Pyridoxine, 140
- Pyruvic acid, 129
- Quaker Oats, 291
- Rabbit, composition of, 362, 517  
 expensive form of meat, 366
- Radishes, composition of, 150, 388,  
 515
- Raisins, composition of, 384-5
- Raspberries, sugar in, 516  
 composition of, 149, 381, 516
- Ratafia, 433
- Rectal feeding, 605-7
- Reflexes, conditioned, in feeding, 11,  
 14, 236-44
- Refrigeration, 171-2, 192, 351, 366
- Renal disease, dietetic treatment,  
 578-87
- Rennin, 332
- Respiratory diseases, dietetic treat-  
 ment, 577-8
- Rest, basal metabolism during, 41,  
 45, 229, 522  
 influence on digestion, 216
- Rheumatism, 539-41
- Rheumatoid arthritis, 539-40
- Rhubarb, composition of, 381, 516  
 leaves, 115
- Riboflavine, chemistry of, 133-5  
 sources of, 135-6
- Rice, 297-8  
 boiled, composition of, 297  
 composition of, 297, 516

- Rice (*continued*)  
 digestibility and nutritive value of,  
 117, 127, 129, 297-8  
 Rickets, 93, 117-18, 151-6, 457, 544-5  
 Ridge's Food, 497  
*Rigor mortis*, 358  
 Roasting, 180-1, 362  
 Robinson's Groats, 497  
 Patent Barley, 497  
 Robrex, 497  
 Roe, as an article of diet, 246, 353-4  
 Root vegetables, 386, 388  
 Rosacea, diet in, 590  
 Roughage, 19, 183, 213-14, 267, 272,  
 277, 278, 392, 571  
 stimulus to colonic spasm, 571  
 Rower's diet, 52, 227  
 Rum, 426, 430-1  
 Runner beans, 387  
 Rusks, 284, 492  
 Rye, 296-7  
 Ryvita, 297
- Saccharin, 396  
 Sago, 312-13  
 Saliva, 195-6  
 Salmon, 349, 350, 353, 354, 571  
 Salt, common, 106-7, 396, 595-8  
 (*see also* Sodium)  
 amount in foods, 107, 596-8  
 Salt-low diet, 595-8  
 Sanatogen, 345  
 Sardines, 154, 349, 350, 351  
 Sausages, 369-70  
 Sauterne, 443, 445, 450  
 Savory and Moore's infant food, 494  
 Scallops, 355  
 Scarlet runners, 387  
 Scott-Ivy pabulum, 553  
 Scurvy and vitamin C, 117, 118,  
 141-2, 143, 146-7  
 cured by vitamin C, 143, 147  
 dietetic treatment, 542-4  
 infantile, dietetic treatment, 543-4  
 Sea-kale, 386  
 Season, influence on diet, 232-6  
 Seborrhœa, 134, 589  
 Secretion, defective, diet in, 561  
 excessive, diet in, 561-2  
 Secwa, 341  
 Self-raising flour, 282  
 Seltzer-water, 405  
 Semolina, 268, 290  
 cooked, composition, 290  
 Sex, influence of, on basal meta-  
 bolism, 43  
 — — on amount of food required,  
 37, 53, 56-7, 78-9 (*see also* Preg-  
 nancy and Lactation)
- Sherry, 443, 445, 446-8  
 Shredded wheat, 290  
 Sister Laura's Food, 497  
 Skin, diseases of, dietetic treatment,  
 588-90  
 Sleep, effect on basal metabolism, 45  
 Slow cooking, 185-7  
 Soda-water, 405  
 Sodium, 106-7  
 and Addison's disease, 107, 598-602  
 and miner's cramp, 107  
 Soups, 373-4  
 Sour milk diet, 602-4  
 Soya bean, 302-4  
 Soyolk, 304  
 Spanish wines, 446-8  
 Spastic colon, diet for, 571  
 Spices, 395-6  
 Spinach, carbohydrate in, 515  
 composition of, 387  
 iron in, 5, 102  
 Spirit, proof, 426  
 silent, 427  
 Spirits, 427-32  
 Sprue, dietetic treatment, 567  
 Sprulac, 496  
 Standard dietaries, 223-47  
 Standard Liquid Malt-Extract, 613  
 Starch, 18-19  
 action of cooking on, 178, 184  
 convertibility to sugar in plants,  
 383  
 digestion of, in mouth, 195-6  
 — in stomach, 201  
 effect of heat and moisture on, 184  
 Stark, W., and experimental diet-  
 etics, xv, xvii  
 Stefánsson, 2, 16, 113, 240, 243, 262,  
 364, 595  
 Sterols, 151-2  
 Stirabout, 294  
 Stomach, absorptive power, 208  
 acidity of contents, 200-1  
 — relative to morbid gastric sen-  
 sation, 201  
 digestion in, 196-208  
 — in infants, 481, 487  
 dilatation of, diet in, 559  
 disorders of, diet in, 546-63  
 function as a reservoir, 197  
 — in digestion, 196-208  
 hæmatinic principle of, 208  
 local effect of extremes of tem-  
 perature, 206  
 motility, defective, diet in, 562  
 movements of, 202-3  
 pain in, caused by acid, 201-2  
 — in, relieved by hot water, 207  
 rate of passage of food through,  
 203-5

Stomach (*continued*)

- reduction of food to semi-liquid by, 196, 198-203
- secretion of gastric juice by, 198-202
- sterilizing power of, 197, 205-6
- temperature of food entering, 206

Storage of foods, 166-76

Stout, 436-7

Strawberries, composition of, 7, 149, 150, 381, 516

Sucrose, 18, 210, 254-8, 379

Sugar, 254-262

- as a fat-former 523
- diet for training, 227
- muscle food, 262
- assimilation limit, 261-2
- Barbados, 257
- composition of, 257
- conversion into glycogen, 261
- dangers of, 254
- digestibility of, effect of concentration, 260
- economic value, 262
- effect on skin, 260
- stomach, 260
- teeth, 254, 261
- in various fruits, 379, 381, 382, 383, 384, 516
- vegetable foods, 515
- invert, 258-9
- nutritive value, 262
- substitutes, 396

Sugar-corn, 205

Sulphur, in proteins, 63, 66, 109

Surface area and metabolism, 41

Surgery, Diet after, 142, 534, 557, 558, 574

Swedes, 150, 388

Sweetbreads, as food, 307-9, 517, 537

rapid digestion, 368

Sweetmeats, 259

Sweet potatoes, 311

Tangerines, 516

Tannin, influence on digestion, 420

- in cocoa, 417
- in tea, 410, 411, 412, 413, 420,
- in wine, 420, 441

Tapioca, 312, 313, 314

Tartaric acid, 281, 379, 442, 446, 447, 448

Tea, 407-13, 418-21

- black, 408
- composition of, 410-13
- caffeine in, 410-12, 418
- Ceylon, 409, 412
- China, 408, 409-10, 412
- effect on nervous system, 418
- on stomach, 420

Tea (*continued*)

- effects of excess, 421
- green, 408, 409, 410
- history of, 407
- idiosyncrasy in effect of, 421
- Indian, 407, 408, 409, 411, 412
- infusion, 412
- judging of, 413
- manufacture of, 408
- tannin in, 410-12
- amount extracted in various times, 411
- with meals, 420

Teeth, effect of absence of vitamin D, 151, 155

Fluorine, 112

effect of sugar on, 261

— on digestion, 193

Temperature of foods, effect on stomach, 206

Theobromine in cocoa, 417

Thiamine, 127-132

Threshold for glucose, 261

Thyroid gland

- and basal metabolism, 43, 45
- and iodine, 105-6

Thyroxine, 91, 106

Tissue repair, 4, 66, 70

Toast, 284

Toffee, 259

Tomatoes, 13, 115, 125, 136, 149, 150, 381, 516

Tongue (ox), 139, 307, 372

Tortilla, 294

Total metabolism, 22-3, 23-40, 45-59

Training, sugar in, 227

Treacle, 102, 258

Tripe, as food, 98, 366-8, 517, 537

Trufood Infant Food, 494-5, 497

Tuberculosis, conveyed by milk, 330

- diet in, 533
- vitamins in, 147, 534

Tubers, 307-11

Tuffnell's diet for aneurism 576

Turkey, composition of, 362, 517

egg, composition of, 319

Turnip, 388-9, 515

vitamin C in, 150, 389

Turnip tops, iron in, 102, 389

Turtle, composition of, 355

Typhoid fever, conveyed by milk, 330

- oysters, 355
- diet in, 500-2

Urticaria, diet in, 589

Variability, human, 0

Veal, composition of, 357, 359, 361, 362, 517

digestibility of, 363

- Vegetable diet, value in various diseases, 592-3
- Vegetable foods, 254-314, 378-98  
 absorption of, 391-2  
 as source of carbohydrate, 254-314  
 — protein, 267, 272, 301, 378  
 bulkiness of, 392  
 cheese as supplement to, 392  
 chemical composition, 386-390  
 compared with meat diet, 390-2  
 composition of cooked, 182-3, 390  
 cooking of, 182-3  
 dehydrated, 166-7  
 digestibility of, 392  
 eggs and milk as supplements, 392  
 nutritive value, 254-314, 384-92  
 physiological effect, 392  
 vitamins in, 121, 125, 127, 130, 136, 139, 150, 158, 387-90
- Vegetable, raw, diet cures, 539-40, 593-4
- Vegetarianism, 9, 390-2, 592-4  
 cheese as supplement to, 392  
 effect on digestion, 392  
 eggs and milk as supplement to, 392  
 in treatment of arthritis, 539-40  
 in treatment of gout, 392, 592  
 lack of protein in, 391  
 physiological effect, 392  
 value in various diseases, 539-40, 592-4
- Venison, composition of, 362
- Venner and dietetics, xiii
- Vermicelli, 289
- Vermouth, 453
- Vichy (État) water, 404
- Vienna bread, 283
- Vinegar, 396-7  
 and hyperchlorhydria and peptic ulcer, 397
- Vitamin A, 121-7
- Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, 127-32
- Vitamin C, 141-51
- Vitamin D, 151-6
- Vitamin E, 156-7
- Vitamin K, 157-8
- Vitamin P, 158-9
- Vitamins 116-59  
 discovery and research on, xviii, 118-21, *et seq.*
- Vitellin, 317
- Voit, 3, 64, 72, 76
- Walnuts, composition, 305
- Waste of food avoidable, 33, 35  
 on cooking, 183-4  
 unavoidable, 33, 35
- Wasting diseases, diet in, 533
- Water, amount required daily, 400  
 danger of contaminated, 189-90  
 drinking, properties of, 400-3  
 effects of amount in diet, 402-3  
 — drinking on empty stomach, 400  
 elimination of waste matter by, 402  
 hard, 402  
 hot, effect on digestion, 206-7  
 in diet, 399-406  
 not absorbed by stomach, 401  
 soft, 403  
 varieties of, 402-6
- Water-arrowroot, 312
- Watercress, composition of, 150, 387, 515  
 vitamin C in, 150, 387
- Weaning, 489 *et seq.*
- Weight, influence on basal metabolism, 41-2, 43  
 regulation of body, 236-7, 522-34
- Welbank Boilerette, 186
- Whale oil, 251
- Wheat, 263, 264-79  
 blending of, 271  
 bran, 264, 266, 267-70  
 — composition of, 266  
 composition of, 265-6  
 constituents lost in milling, 272  
 endosperm, 265-6, *et seq.*  
 English, 271-2  
 flour, composition of, 272  
 germ, 264-6  
 — composition of, 266  
 meal, composition of, 272  
 milling of, 267-70  
 preparations of, 289-90  
 shredded, 289-90  
 strong, 271
- Whelks, 355
- Whey, 340-1
- Whisky, 426, 427-9, 431
- Whortleberries, 115
- Willich's *Lectures on Diet*, xv
- Wincarnis, 452
- Wine, 438-55  
 acids in, 439, 441, 442-3, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451  
 — digestion, 454  
 alcohol in, 441, 442, 446, 448, 450, 452  
 — action in health, 455  
 changes after bottling, 441  
 — on storage, 440  
 composition of, 441, *et seq.*  
 constituents of, 441  
 esters in, 441, 444, 445, 447, 448, 449  
 fortified, 440, 445, 447, 448, 449  
 glycerol in, 444

Wine (*continued*)

Italian, 446  
medicated, 452  
natural, 445  
non-alcoholic, 453  
plastering of, 447  
sugar in, 443  
summary on use of wine, 453-5  
tannin in, influence on health, 454  
total acidity of, 443

## Winkles, 355

Women, diet for, 42, 53-4, 78-80, 95-6,  
101-2, 124, 131, 138, 153, 155,  
156, 158, 230-2, 458-62

## Work and calories, 45-51

mental, amount and nature of food  
required, 227-9  
— action of alcohol on, 424  
muscular, amount of protein re-  
quired, 87, 226

Work (*continued*)

relation between and Calorie in-  
take, 45-51  
Wrestler, diet of, 9

## Xerophthalmia, 123

## Yams, 311

Yeast, action in bread-making, 280-1  
extracts prepared from, 375  
in malt liquors, 434-5  
in wine, 440  
vitamins in, 130, 136, 139, 140

## Yoghourt, 343, 603-4

## Yolk, egg, 316-19

## Zinc, 90, 91, 112

## Zemotherapy, 595

